

तमसो मा ज्योतिर्गमय

VISVA BHARATI  
LIBRARY  
SANTINIKETAN

822.3

O. E.

V. 2

1587











# THE HISTORIES AND POEMS

OF

# SHAKESPEARE

THE TEXT OF THE OXFORD EDITION PREPARED BY  
W. J. CRAIG; WITH INTRODUCTORY STUDIES OF  
THE SEVERAL PLAYS AND POEMS BY  
EDWARD DOWDEN, AND A  
FULL GLOSSARY



HENRY FROWDL

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

LONDON, NEW YORK, TORONTO AND MELBOURNE

1912





WILLIAM SHAKESPEARE

*The bust at Stratford-on-Avon seen in profile*



# THE LIFE AND DEATH OF KING JOHN

## INTRODUCTION

THE editors of the first folio arranged the English historical plays of Shakespeare in the order of the successive reigns of kings, and therefore *King John* is placed first and *King Henry VIII* last. No quarto of *King John* had appeared, and it has the singularity among its author's undoubted plays then added of not having been entered in the register of the Stationers' Company.

*King John* is mentioned by Merès in his *Palladis Tamia* of 1598. Neither external nor internal evidence sufficient to ascertain its precise date can be discovered. It contains much less rhymed verse than does *King Richard II*; it has, through the character of Faulconbridge, a larger element of humour; like *Richard II* it admits no prose. We may well believe that it immediately followed *Richard II*, and that the date 1595 is approximately correct.

For his material Shakespeare does not seem to have gone to the chroniclers. He based his *King John* upon an older dramatic treatment of the reign in two parts, which had been printed in 1591 under the title *The Troublesome Raigne of King John of England*. The authorship of these old plays is a matter of mere conjecture. In the main Shakespeare follows the course of *The Troublesome Raigne*; yet scarcely a line of *King John* agrees with a line of his predecessor. His work consisted in free alteration, condensation, and, where he deemed fit, development. From the present play better than from any other we learn how the greatest of dramatic poets dealt with dramatic material which came to his hand; a comparison of the older with the newer play exhibits Shakespeare at work in the processes of his art.

We may at once set aside, as too profound or too



**THE LIFE AND DEATH OF  
KING JOHN**



# CONTENTS

	PAGE
THE LIFE AND DEATH OF KING JOHN . . .	1
THE TRAGEDY OF KING RICHARD THE SECOND . .	81
THE FIRST PART OF KING HENRY THE FOURTH .	167
THE SECOND PART OF KING HENRY THE FOURTH	257
THE LIFE OF KING HENRY THE FIFTH . . .	355
THE FIRST PART OF KING HENRY THE SIXTH .	449
THE SECOND PART OF KING HENRY THE SIXTH	533
THE THIRD PART OF KING HENRY THE SIXTH .	631
THE TRAGEDY OF KING RICHARD THE THIRD .	729
THE FAMOUS HISTORY OF THE LIFE OF KING HENRY THE EIGHTH . . . . .	845
VENUS AND ADONIS . . . . .	941
THE RAPE OF LUCRECE . . . . .	985
SONNETS . . . . .	1049
A LOVER'S COMPLAINT . . . . .	1123
THE PASSIONATE PILGRIM . . . . .	1135
SONNETS TO SUNDRY NOTES OF MUSIC . .	1150
THE PHOENIX AND THE TURTLE . . . . .	1157
GLOSSARY TO THE HISTORIES AND POEMS . .	1165

shallow, those commentators who allege that Shakespeare designed here to present a philosophical view of history. He was quite content with the politics of the old play. He reproduced its historical errors and confusions, and even added something to them. King John was not regarded by his contemporaries as a usurper. Philip of France, when he claimed the overlordship of the continental possessions of the English king, did not aim at placing Arthur on the English throne. The Arthur of history had a good deal more in common with the aspiring prince of the old play than he had with Shakespeare's pathetic child. The Austria of the drama is confounded by Shakespeare's predecessor with the Lymoges before whose castle Richard Cœur-de-Lion was slain, and Shakespeare repeats the historical error. His sorrowful widow Constance in fact married a second and a third husband. The chronology of the reign is hopelessly confused; in the fourth Act of *King John* we pass from 1202 and 1203 to the arrival of Pandulph in England in 1216; we return to 1203, and find occurrences of that year and of 1216 represented as almost simultaneous. The most memorable event of the reign—the granting of the Great Charter—is never referred to in the old play and is never referred to by Shakespeare. Three great powers—the English Monarchy, the Barons, the Church—are exhibited in their mutual relations. It could hardly have been otherwise if the matter of history were handled at all. But Shakespeare presents these contending powers in no new light. It is a perversion of criticism to maintain that in this play he made any original contribution to the philosophy of English history. He was before all else a dramatic poet, caring in chief for the characters, the passions, and the actions of individual men and women. If these were connected with the life of a nation, they stood out from an impressive background. In writing *King John* Shakespeare was animated by an ardent patriotic feeling, which finds its exponent in the bastard Faulconbridge; but Faulconbridge is no type or abstraction; he is first of all an individual, and his patriotic passion forms only one element of his character.

All the dramatis personae, with one exception, may

be found in the old plays. That exception is James Gurney, servant to Lady Faulconbridge, who appears for a moment in the first Act, utters four words—'God leave, good Philip'—and is withdrawn that certain disclosures may be made which cannot with propriety reach his ears. The king, who more than any other of Shakespeare's kings of England unites weakness with wickedness; Cardinal Pandulph, representative of the power and policy of Rome; Philip Faulconbridge, representative of English courage, manliness, tenderness and humour; Constance, the afflicted mother; and her gentle Arthur—these are eminently dramatic figures, and it is on these that Shakespeare expends the energy of his imagination. He at once decided that Faulconbridge must be the true hero of the piece, and several of the alterations which he effected are determined by this fact. He touches with darker shadow the figure of the king. He deepens the pathos of Arthur's little life by a violation of historical fact, which changes him from ambitious youth to innocent childhood. He presents the maternal passion, its hopes, griefs, despair in the person of Constance.

Shakespeare's omissions from the old plays are noteworthy and are characteristic of his method or principles of work. In the struggle for power, between Rome and England his sympathies are strongly with his own country; but he does not import into his patriotism the bitterness of theological strife. *The Troublesome Raigne* endeavours to cast contempt and odium upon the old faith; its temper is violently, bitterly Protestant. Almost every editor of Shakespeare has noticed his omission of a ribald scene in which Faulconbridge, commissioned by the king to make provision for the wars, ransacks a Franciscan monastery, and discovers the iniquity of its inmates. Again, at the close of the old play, when King John in his hour of decline and sickness seeks refuge, like a creature wounded to death, in the Abbey at Swinstead, he is received by the abbot with words of welcome, and good wishes for his health and happiness; but presently the monk who is to prepare poison for the king, plans the murder with the approval of the abbot, and, before the crime, receives absolution at his hands.

The king's dying words are a declaration that since he yielded to the priest of Rome neither he nor his has prospered, accompanied with words which prophesy the better days of Henry VIII, when the Babylonian harlot shall be cast down from her throne of exaltation. In Shakespeare the crime is referred to in one line as a possible explanation of the king's sudden malady—'The king, I fear, is poison'd by a monk'—and John utters no ecclesiastical moral to account for his calamities. The old play represents Peter of Pomfret, prophet and hermit, as a somewhat vulgar impostor; for the common people he reads fortunes in the lines of the hand, and promises husbands to pining maidens; he receives a prophet's reward in the form of a cheese and ribs of bacon. With Shakespeare, while Peter is not deprived of his prophetic character, he becomes significant chiefly as an exponent of those popular rumours and forecasts which Bacon tells us in one of his Essays are often 'the preludes of sedition'; and, as a substitute for the interpretation of the five moons that have appeared, we are given a highly dramatic description of the excitement of the populace. The scene in the old play in which Hubert's branding-irons are heated to destroy young Arthur's eyes is impressive, as is the corresponding scene in Shakespeare. But the Arthur of the elder dramatist pleads on grounds of religion for a reversal of the sentence. In Shakespeare the boy's appeal is not to his keeper's religious feeling but to his humanity, and Hubert relents because he is touched by human pity.

On various occasions Shakespeare enhances the part of Faulconbridge. In *The Troublesome Raigne* his half-brother Robert appears as appellant while Philip is the respondent; with Shakespeare Philip becomes the appellant, and as he is magnified Robert is diminished and lowered in contrast with one who has a trick of Cœur-de-Lion's face, and token of his parentage in the 'large composition' of his manhood. Philip in the old play, is an aspirant for the hand of Blanch. Shakespeare's Bastard is not a lover but a mocker at the amorous gallantry behind which lie self-interested motives. His is a spirit made for action of a more strenuous kind than capering nimbly in a lady's

chamber. He is sufficiently happy in reducing the insolent pride of Austria and in taking vengeance for his father's death. The lines in sonnet-form which mock the blandishments of the lovers—'Drawn in the flattering table of her eye!' and what follows—are of Shakespeare's invention. When the English queen-mother is captured by the French, it is King John who, in the old play, recaptures Elinor. Shakespeare transfers the action from his ignoble king to the gallant Faulconbridge. The soliloquy of the Bastard that closes Act II, a soliloquy which bravely rails against 'commodity', has nothing corresponding to it in the old play. We feel that some honest voice is needed as a relief after all the Machiavellian statecraft; and if Philip professes in the end that he too must be governed by self-interest, we know how to interpret a turn given humorously to his indignation at the baseness of the men about him—'Why unpack my heart with words?' he would say. 'Am I any better than my fellows? In a society given over to evil must not I too accept my evil destiny?' And as a fact he never accepts it.

With the third Act of *King John* the female characters disappear. The stage in the fourth and fifth Acts is filled with armed warriors, amid whom moves the great figure of Cardinal Pandulph, dominating material power by spiritual authority, and for a short time we see the pathetic boy, Arthur, now a prisoner and with no mother near to comfort him or to clamour to unheeding ears on his behalf. In his re-creation of the characters of Constance and Arthur the genius of Shakespeare especially asserts itself. The Arthur of *The Troublesome Raigne* is hardly self-consistent; he is in early youth, yet he is not without a certain knowledge of the world, some craft, and not a little of political ambition. Shakespeare makes him a comparatively passive centre for the tug this way and that of rival political powers, and he thus deepens the pathos of the situation. All the eloquent grief of Constance in her interview with Salisbury, all her pomp of woe, and all her energy of despair when Arthur is separated from her may be said to be Shakespeare's creation. Nothing in the old play resembles her

rhetoric of sorrow, nor is there anything really resembling those fluctuations of passion rising from a uniformity of woe, like waves that leap and are tossed back by the gale, while yet the whole tide sets towards an iron coast of death. That outcry of forlorn weakness, with its invocation of the strength of the universe which must refuse to support the fraud and cruelty of men—‘A widow cries; be husband to me, heavens!’—is wholly the word of Shakespeare’s genius. But the later scene, when Constance and the French king meet, after Arthur has been dispatched to England, has its germ in the old play. Each dramatist desires to suggest in words the aspect of the afflicted mother, as she is seen approaching. ‘Your face,’ exclaims King Philip in the words of Shakespeare’s predecessor, ‘imports a tragic tale that’s yet untold.’ These words are not without suggestive power; but compare them with Shakespeare’s line—‘Look, who comes here! a grave unto a soul!’

There is another remarkable scene in *King John* which is derived from a mere hint found in *The Troublesome Raigne*—that in which King John first insinuates and then less obscurely suggests to Hubert the murder of Arthur. These are the lines of the old play which Shakespeare so strikingly developed:—

Hubert do Burgh take Arthur here to thee,  
Be he thy prisoner: Hubert keep him safe,  
For on his life doth hang thy sovereign’s crown,  
But in his death consists thy sovereign’s bliss;  
Then Hubert as thou shortly hear’st from me  
So use the prisoner I have given in charge.

Shakespeare’s King John, amid flatteries and vague promises addressed to the boy’s keeper, creates, as it were, an evil mist under cover of which Hubert may already in thought commit the crime—‘I had a thing to say, but I will fit it with some better time’—‘I had a thing to say, but let it go.’ And then creeping forward in the darkness of his suggestion, the king breathes the words—

Good Hubert! Hubert, Hubert, throw thine eye  
On yon young boy.

At last the words form themselves on John’s pale lips—‘Death,’ and ‘A grave,’ and, in the relief from the tension of the moment; the king, who is no lover of ‘that idiot,’ laughter, could even be merry.



## DRAMATIS PERSONAE.

KING JOHN.

PRINCE HENRY, Son to the King.

• ARTHUR, Duke of Britaine, Nephew to the King.

THE EARL OF PEMBROKE. •

THE EARL OF ESSEX.

THE EARL OF SALISBURY.

THE LORD BIGOT.

HUBERT DE BURGH.

ROBERT FAULCONBRIDGE, Son to Sir Robert Faulconbridge.

PHILIP THE BASTARD, his half-brother.

JAMES GURNEY, Servant to Lady Faulconbridge.

PETER OF POMFRET, a Prophet.

• PHILIP, King of France.

LEWIS, the Dauphin.

LYMOGES, Duke of Austria.

CARDINAL PANDULPH, the Pope's Legate.

MELUN, a French Lord.

CHATILLON, Ambassador from France.

• QUEEN ELINOR, Mother to King John.

CONSTANCE, Mother to Arthur.

BLANCH OF SPAIN, Niece to King John.

LADY FAULCONBRIDGE. •

Lords, Ladies, Citizens of Angiers, Sheriff, Heralds, Officers,  
Soldiers, Messengers, and other Attendants.

SCENE.—Sometimes in England, and sometimes in France. •

# THE LIFE AND DEATH OF KING JOHN

## ACT I.

SCENE I.—A Room of State in the Palace.

Enter KING JOHN, QUEEN ELINOR, PEMBROKE, ESSEX, SALISBURY,  
and Others, with CHATILLON.

KING JOHN. Now, say, Chatillon, what would France  
with us ?

CHATILLON. Thus, after greeting, speaks the King of  
France,

In my behaviour, to the majesty,  
The borrow'd majesty of England here.

ELINOR. A strange beginning ; ' borrow'd majesty ! '

KING JOHN. Silence, good mother ; hear the embassy.

CHATILLON. Philip of France, in right and true behalf  
Of thy deceased brother Geffrey's son,

Arthur Plantagenet, lays most lawful claim

To this fair island and the territories,

To Ireland, Poitiers, Anjou, Touraine, Maine,

Desiring thee to lay aside the sword

Which sways usurpingly these several titles,

And put the same into young Arthur's hand,

Thy nephew and right royal sovereign.

KING JOHN. What follows if we disallow of this ?

CHATILLON. The proud control of fierce and bloody  
war,

To enforce these rights so forcibly withheld.

KING JOHN. Here have we war for war, and blood for  
blood,

Controlment for controlment : so answer France.

CHATILLON. Then take my king's defiance from my  
mouth,

The furthest limit of my embassy..

KING JOHN. Bear mine to him, and so depart in peace :  
Be thou as lightning in the eyes of France ;

For ere thou canst report I will be there,  
 The thunder of my cannon shall be heard.  
 So, hence ! Be thou the trumpet of our wrath  
 And sullen presage of your own decay. 28  
 An honourable conduct let him have :  
 Pembroke, look to 't. Farewell, Chatillon.

[Exit CHATILLON and PEMBROKE.]

ELINOR. What now, my son ! have I not ever said  
 How that ambitious Constance would not cease. 32  
 Till she had kindled France and all the world  
 Upon the right and party of her son ?  
 This might have been prevented and made whole  
 With very easy arguments of love, 36  
 Which now the manage of two kingdoms must  
 With fearful bloody issue arbitrate.

KING JOHN. Our strong possession and our right for us.

ELINOR. Your strong possession much more than your  
 right, 40

Or else it must go wrong with you and me  
 So much my conscience whispers in your ear,  
 Which none but heaven and you and I shall hear.

Enter a Sheriff, who whispers ESSEX.

ESSEX. My liege, here is the strangest controversy,  
 Come from the country to be judg'd by you, 45  
 That e'er I heard : shall I produce the men ?

KING JOHN. Let them approach. [Exit Sheriff.]  
 Our abbeyes and our priories shall pay 48  
 This expedition's charge.

Re-enter Sheriff, with ROBERT FAULCONBRIDGE and PHILIP, his  
 bastard Brother.

" What men are you ?

THE BASTARD. Your faithful subject I, a gentleman  
 Born in Northamptonshire, and eldest son,  
 As I suppose, to Robert Faulconbridge, 52  
 A soldier, by the honour-giving hand  
 Of Cœur-de-Lion knighted in the field.

KING JOHN. What art thou ? 55

ROBERT. The son and heir to that same Faulconbridge.

KING JOHN. Is that the elder, and art thou the heir ?  
 You came not of one mother then, it seems.

THE BASTARD. Most certain, of one mother, mighty  
 king,  
 That is well known : and, as I think, one father : 60

But for the certain knowledge of that truth  
I put you o'er to heaven and to my mother :  
Of that I doubt, as all men's children may.

ELINOR. Out on thee, rude man ! thou dost shame thy  
mother 64

And wound her honour with this diffidence.

THE BASTARD. I, madam ? no, I have no reason for it ;  
That is my brother's plea and none of mine ;  
The which if he can prove, a' pops me out 68  
At least from fair five hundred pound a year :  
Heaven guard my mother's honour and my land !

KING JOHN. A good blunt fellow. Why, being younger  
born,  
Doth he lay claim to thine inheritance ? 72

THE BASTARD. I know not why, except to get the  
land.

But once he slander'd me with bastardy :  
But whe'r I be as true-begot or no,  
That still I lay upon my mother's head ; 76  
But that I am as well-begot, my liege,—  
Fair fall the bones that took the pains for me !—  
Compare our faces and be judge yourself.  
If old Sir Robert did beget us both, 80  
And were our father, and this son like him ;  
O old Sir Robert, father, on my knee  
I give heaven thanks I was not like to thee !

KING JOHN. Why, what a madcap hath heaven lent us  
here ! 84

ELINOR. He hath a trick of Cœur-de-Lion's face :  
The accent of his tongue affecteth him.

Do you not read some tokens of my son  
In the large composition of this man ? 88

KING JOHN. Mine eye hath well examined his parts,  
And finds them perfect Richard. Sirrah, speak :  
What doth move you to claim your brother's land ?

THE BASTARD. Because he hath a half-face, like my  
father. 92

With half that face would he have all my land ;  
A half-fac'd groat five hundred pound a year !

ROBERT. My gracious liege, when that my father liv'd,  
Your brother did employ my father much,— 96

THE BASTARD. Well, sir, by this you cannot get my land :  
Your tale must be how he employ'd my mother.

ROBERT. And once dispatch'd him in an embassy  
 To Germany, there with the emperor 100  
 To treat of high affairs touching that time.  
 The advantage of his absence took the king,  
 And in the mean time sojourn'd at my father's ;  
 Where how he did prevail I shame to speak, 104  
 But truth is truth : large lengths of seas and shores  
 Between my father and my mother lay,—  
 As I have heard my father speak himself,—  
 When this same lusty gentleman was got, 108  
 Upon his death-bed he by will bequeath'd  
 His lands to me, and took it on his death  
 That this my mother's son was none of his ;  
 An if he were, he came into the world 112  
 Full fourteen weeks before the course of time.  
 Then, good my liege, let me have what is mine,  
 My father's land, as was my father's will.

KING JOHN. Sirrah, your brother is legitimate ;  
 Your father's wife did after wedlock bear him, 117  
 And if she did play false, the fault was hers ;  
 Which fault lies on the hazards of all husbands  
 That marry wives. Tell me, how if my brother, 120  
 Who, as you say, took pains to get this son,  
 Had of your father claim'd this son for his ?  
 In sooth, good friend, your father might have kept  
 This calf bred from his cow from all the world ; 124  
 In sooth he might : then, if he were my brother's,  
 My brother might not claim him ; nor your father,  
 Being none of his, refuse him : this concludes ;  
 My mother's son did get your father's heir ; 128  
 Your father's heir must have your father's land.

ROBERT. Shall then my father's will be of no force  
 To dispossess that child which is not his ?

THE BASTARD. Of no more force to dispossess me, sir,  
 Than was his will to get me, as I think, 133

ELINOR. Whether hadst thou rather be a Faulconbridge  
 And like thy brother, to enjoy thy land,  
 Or the reputed son of Cœur-de-Lion, 136  
 Lord of thy presence and no land beside ?

THE BASTARD. Madam, an if my brother had my shape,  
 And I had his, Sir Robert his, like him ;  
 And if my legs were two such riding-rods, 140  
 My arms such eel-skin stuff'd, my face so thin

That in mine ear I durst not stick a rose  
Lest men should say, 'Look, where three-farthings goes !'  
And, to his shape, were heir to all this land, 144  
Would I might never stir from off this place,  
I'd give it every foot to have this face :  
I would not be Sir Nob in any case.

ELINOR. I like thee well ; wilt thou forsake thy fortune,  
Bequeath thy land to him, and follow me ? 149  
I am a soldier and now bound to France.

THE BASTARD. Brother, take you my land, I'll take  
my chance.

Your face hath got five hundred pounds a year, 152  
Yet sell your face for five pence and 'tis dear.  
Madam, I'll follow you unto the death.

ELINOR. Nay, I would have you go before me thither.

THE BASTARD. Our country manners give our betters  
way. 156

KING JOHN. What is thy name ?

THE BASTARD. Philip, my liege, so is my name begun ;  
Philip, good old Sir Robert's wife's eldest son.

KING JOHN. From henceforth bear his name whose  
form thou bearest : 160

Kneel thou down Philip, but arise more great ;  
Arise Sir Richard, and Plantagenet.

THE BASTARD. Brother by the mother's side, give me  
your hand :

My father gave me honour, yours gave land, 164  
Now blessed be the hour, by night or day,  
When I was got, Sir Robert was away !

ELINOR. The very spirit of Plantagenet !  
I am thy grandam, Richard : call me so. 168

THE BASTARD. Madam, by chance but not by truth ;  
what though ?

Something about, a little from the right,  
In at the window, or else o'er the hatch :  
Who dares not stir by day must walk by night, 172  
And have is have, however men do catch.  
Near or far off, well won is still well shot,  
And I am I, howe'er I was begot.

KING JOHN. Go, Faulconbridge : now hast thou thy  
desire ; 176

A landless knight makes thee a landed squire.  
Come, madam, and come, Richard : we must speed

For France, for France, for it is more than need.

THE BASTARD. Brother, adieu : good fortune come to thee ! 180

For thou wast got i' the way of honesty.

[Exeunt all but the BASTARD.]

A foot of honour better than I was,

But many a many foot of land the worse.

Well, now can I make any Joan a lady. 184

'Good den, Sir Richard !' 'God-a-mercy, fellow !'

And if his name be George, I'll call him Peter ;

For new-made honour doth forget men's names :

'Tis too respective and too sociable 188

For your conversion. Now your traveller,

He and his toothpick at my worship's mess,

And when my knightly stomach is suffic'd,

Why then I suck my teeth, and catechize 192

My picked man of countries : 'My dear sir,—

Thus, leaning on mine elbow, I begin,—

'I shall beseech you,—that is question now ;

And then comes answer like an absey-book : 196

'O, sir,' says answer, 'at your best command ;

At your employment ; at your service, sir :'

'No, sir,' says question, 'I, sweet sir, at yours :'

And so, ere answer knows what question would, 200

Saving in dialogue of compliment,

And talking of the Alps and Apennines,

The Pyrenean and the river Po,

It draws toward supper in conclusion so. 204

But this is worshipful society

And fits the mounting spirit like myself ;

For he is but a bastard to the time,

That doth not smack of observation ; 208

And so am I, whether I smack or no ;

And not alone in habit and device,

Exterior form, outward accoutrement,

But from the inward motion to deliver 212

Sweet, sweet, sweet poison for the age's tooth :

Which, though I will not practise to deceive,

Yet, to avoid deceit, I mean to learn ;

For it shall strew the footsteps of my rising. 216

But who comes in such haste in riding-robcs ?

What woman-post is this ? hath she no husband

That will take pains to blow a horn before her ?

Enter LADY FAULCONBRIDGE and JAMES GURNEY.

O me ! it is my mother. How now, good lady ! 220  
What brings you here to court so hastily ?

LADY FAULCONBRIDGE. Where is that slave, thy  
brother ? where is he,  
That holds in chase mine honour up and down ?

THE BASTARD. My brother Robert ? old Sir Robert's  
son. ? 224

Colbrand the giant, that same mighty man ?  
Is it Sir Robert's son that you seek so ?

LADY FAULCONBRIDGE. Sir Robert's son ! Ay, thou  
unreverend boy,  
Sir Robert's son : why scorn'st thou at Sir Robert ?

He is Sir Robert's son, and so art thou. 229

THE BASTARD. James Gurney, wilt thou give us leave  
awhile ?

GURNEY. Good leave, good Philip.

THE BASTARD. Philip ! sparrow ! James,  
There's toys abroad : anon I'll tell thee more. [Exit GURNEY.  
Madam, I was not old Sir Robert's son : 233

Sir Robert might have eat his part in me  
Upon Good-Friday and ne'er broke his fast.

Sir Robert could do well : marry, to confess, 236  
Could he get me ? Sir Robert could not do it :

We know his handiwork : therefore, good mother,  
To whom am I beholding for these limbs ?

Sir Robert never help to make this leg. 240

LADY FAULCONBRIDGE. Hast thou conspired with thy  
brother too,

That for thine own gain shouldst defend mine honour ?

What means this scorn, thou most untoward knave ?

THE BASTARD. Knight, knight, good mother, Basilisco-  
like. 244

What ! I am dubb'd ; I have it on my shoulder

But, mother, I am not Sir Robert's son ;

I have disclaim'd Sir Robert and my land ;

Legitimation, name, and all is gone. 248

Then, good my mother, let me know my father ;

Some proper man, I hope ; who was it, mother ?

LADY FAULCONBRIDGE. Hast thou denied thyself a  
Faulconbridge ?

THE BASTARD. As faithfully as I deny the devil.



LADY FAULCONBRIDGE. King Richard Cœur-de-Lion  
was thy father : 253

By long and vehement suit I was seduc'd  
To make room for him in my husband's bed.  
Heaven lay not my transgression to my charge ! 256  
Thou art the issue of my dear offence,  
Which was so strongly urg'd past my defence.

THE BASTARD. Now, by this light, were I to get again,  
Madam, I would not wish a better father. 260  
Some sins do bear their privilege on earth  
And so doth yours ; your fault was not your folly :  
Needs must you lay your heart at his dispose,  
Subjected tribute to commanding love, 264  
Against whose fury and unmatched force  
The aweless lion could not wage the fight,  
Nor keep his princely heart from Richard's hand.  
He that perforce robs lions of their hearts 268  
May easily win a woman's. Ay, my mother,  
With all my heart I thank thee for my father !  
Who lives and dares but say thou didst not well  
When I was got, I'll send his soul to hell. 272  
Come, lady, I will show thee to my kin ;

And they shall say, when Richard me begot,  
If thou hadst said him nay, it had been sin :

Who says it was, he lies : I say, 'twas not. [Exeunt.]

## ACT II.

SCENE I.—France. Before the Walls of Angiers.

Enter, on one side, the DUKE OF AUSTRIA, and Forces ; on the other,  
PHILIP, King of France, and Forces, LEWIS, CONSTANCE, ARTHUR,  
and Attendants.

KING PHILIP. Before Angiers well met, brave Austria:  
Arthur, that great forerunner of thy blood,  
Richard, that robb'd the lion of his heart  
And fought the holy wars in Palestine, 4  
By this brave duke came early to his grave :  
And, for amends to his posterity,  
At our importance hither is he come,  
To spread his colours, boy, in thy behalf, 8  
And to rebuke the usurpation

Of thy unnatural uncle, English John :  
Embrace him, love him, give him welcome hither.

ARTHUR. God shall forgive you Cœur-de-Lion's death  
The rather that you give his offspring life, 13  
Shadowing their right under your wings of war.  
I give you welcome with a powerless hand,  
But with a heart full of unstained love : 16  
Welcome before the gates of Angiers, duke.

PHILIP. A noble boy ! Who would not do thee right ?

AUSTRIA. Upon thy cheek lay I this zealous kiss,  
As seal to this indenture of my love, 20  
That to my home I will no more return  
Till Angiers, and the right thou hast in France,  
Together with that pale, that white-fac'd shore,  
Whose foot spurns back the ocean's roaring tides 24  
And coops from other lands her islanders,  
Even till that England, hedg'd in with the main,  
That water-walled bulwark, still secure  
And confident from foreign purposes, 28  
Even till that utmost corner of the west  
Salute thee for her king : till then, fair boy,  
Will I not think of home, but follow arms.

CONSTANCE. O ! take his mother's thanks, a widow's  
thanks, 32  
Till your strong hand shall help to give him strength  
To make a more requital to your love.

AUSTRIA. The peace of heaven is theirs that lift their  
swords.

In such a just and charitable war. 36

PHILIP. Well then, to work : our cannon shall be bent  
Against the brows of this resisting town.  
Call for our chiefest men of discipline,  
To cull the plots of best advantages : 40  
We'll lay before this town our royal bones,  
Wade to the market-place in Frenchmen's blood,  
But we will make it subject to this boy.

CONSTANCE. Stay for an answer to your embassy,  
Lest unadvis'd you stain your swords with blood. 45  
My Lord Chatillon may from England bring  
That right in peace which here we urge in war ;  
And then we shall repent each drop of blood 48  
That hot rash haste so indirectly shed.

Enter CHATILLON.

PHILIP. A wonder, lady ! lo, upon thy wish,  
Our messenger, Chatillon, is arriv'd !  
What England says, say briefly, gentle lord ; 52  
We coldly pause for thee ; Chatillon, speak.

CHATILLON. Then turn your forces from this paltry  
siege

And stir them up against a mightier task.  
England, impatient of your just demands, 56  
Hath put himself in arms ; the adverse winds,  
Whose leisure I have stay'd, have given him time  
To land his legions all as soon as I ;  
His marches are expedient to this town, 60,  
His forces strong, his soldiers confident.  
With him along is come the mother-queen,  
An Ate, stirring him to blood and strife ;  
With her her niece, the Lady Blanch of Spain ; 64  
With them a bastard of the king's deceas'd ;  
And all the unsettled humours of the land,  
Rash, inconsiderate, fiery voluntaries,  
With ladies' faces and fierce dragons' spleens, 68  
Have sold their fortunes at their native homes,  
Bearing their birthrights proudly on their backs,  
To make a hazard of new fortunes here.  
In brief, a braver choice of dauntless spirits 72  
Than now the English bottoms have waft o'er  
Did never float upon the swelling tide,  
To do offence and scathe in Christendom.

[Drums heard within.

The interruption of their churlish drums 76  
Cuts off more circumstance : they are at hand,  
To parley or to fight ; therefore prepare.

PHILIP. How much vnlook'd for is this expedition !

AUSTRIA. By how much unexpected, by so much 81  
We must awake endeavour for defence,  
For courage mounteth with occasion :  
Let them be welcome then, we are prepar'd.

Enter KING JOHN, ELINOR, BLANCH, the BASTARD, Lords, and  
Forces.

KING JOHN. Peace be to France, if France in peace  
permit 84  
Our just and lineal entrance to our own ;

If not, bleed France, and peace ascend to heaven,  
 Whiles we, God's wrathful agent, do correct 87  
 Their proud contempt that beats his peace to heaven.

PHILIP. Peace be to England, if that war return  
 From France to England, there to live in peace.  
 England we love; and, for that England's sake  
 With burden of our armour here we sweat: 92  
 This toil of ours should be a work of thine;  
 But thou from loving England art so far  
 That thou hast under-wrought his lawful king,  
 Cut off the sequence of posterity, 96  
 Out-faced infant State, and done a rape  
 Upon the maiden virtue of the crown.  
 Look here upon thy brother Geffrey's face:  
 These eyes, these brows, were moulded out of his;  
 This little abstract doth contain that large 101  
 Which died in Geffrey, and the hand of time  
 Shall draw this brief into as huge a volume.  
 That Geffrey was thy elder brother born, 104  
 And this his son; England was Geffrey's right  
 And this is Geffrey's. In the name of God  
 How comes it then that thou art call'd a king,  
 When living blood doth in these temples beat, 108  
 Which owe the crown that thou o'ermasterest?

KING JOHN. From whom hast thou this great commis-  
 sion, France,  
 To draw my answer from thy articles?

PHILIP. From that supernal judge, that stirs good  
 thoughts 112

In any breast of strong authority,  
 To look into the blots and stains of right:  
 That judge hath made me guardian to this boy:  
 Under whose warrant I impeach thy wrong, 116  
 And by whose help I mean to chastise it.

KING JOHN. Alack! thou dost usurp authority.

PHILIP. Excuse; it is to beat usurping down.

ELINOR. Who is it thou dost call usurper, France?

CONSTANCE. Let me make answer; thy usurping son.

ELINOR. Out, insolent! thy bastard shall be king,  
 That thou mayst be a queen, and check the world!

CONSTANCE. My bed was ever to thy son as true  
 As thine was to thy husband, and this boy 125  
 Likier in feature to his father Geffrey

Than thou and John in manners ; being as like  
As rain to water, or devil to his dam. 128

My boy a bastard ! By my soul I think

His father never was so true begot :

It cannot be an if thou wert his mother.

ELINOR. There's a good mother, boy, that blots thy  
father. 132

CONSTANCE. There 's a good grandam, boy, that would  
• blot thee.

AUSTRIA. Peace !

THE BASTARD. Hear the crier.

AUSTRIA. What tife devil art thou ?

THE BASTARD. One that will play the devil, sir, with  
you,

An a may catch your hide and you alone. 136

You are the hare of whom the proverb goes,

Whose valour plucks dead lions by the beard.

I'll smoke your skin-coat, an I catch you right.

Sirrah, look to 't ; i' faith, I will, i' faith. 140

BLANCH. O ! well did he become that lion's robe,  
That did disrobe the lion of that robe.

THE BASTARD. It lies as sightly on the back of him  
As great Alcides' shows upon an ass : 144

But, ass, I'll take that burden from your back,

Or lay on that shall make your shoulders crack.

AUSTRIA. "What cracker is this same that deafs our  
ears

With this abundance of superfluous breath ? 148

King,—Lewis, determine what we shall do straight.

PHILIP. Women and fools, break off your conference.

King John, this is the very sum of all :

England and Ireland, Anjou, Touraine, Maine, 152

In right of Arthur do I claim of thee. •

Wilt thou resign them and lay down thy arms ?

KING JOHN. My life as soon : I do defy thee, France,  
Arthur of Britaine, yield thee to my hand ; 156

And out of my dear love I'll give thee more

Than e'er the coward hand of France can win.

Submit thee, boy.

ELINOR. Come to thy grandam, child.

CONSTANCE. Do, child, go to it grandam, child ; 160  
Give grandam kingdom, and it grandam will  
Give it a plum, a cherry, and a fig :

There's a good grandam.

ARTHUR.

Good my mother, peace!

I would that I were low laid in my grave : 164

I am not worth this coil that's made for me.

ELINOR. His mother shames him so, poor boy, he weeps.

CONSTANCE. Now shame upon you, where she does  
or no ! 167

His grandam's wrongs, and not his mother's shames,  
Draw those heaven-moving pearls from his poor eyes,

Which heaven shall take in nature of a fee ;

Ay, with these crystal beads heaven shall be brib'd

To do him justice and revenge on you. 172

• ELINOR. Thou monstrous slanderer of heaven and earth!

CONSTANCE. Thou monstrous injurer of heaven and  
earth !

Call not me slanderer ; thou and thine usurp

The dominations, royalties, and rights 176

Of this oppressed boy : this is thy eld'st son's son ;

Infortunate in nothing but in thee :

Thy sins are visited in this poor child ;

The canon of the law is laid on him, 180

Being but the second generation

Removed from thy sin-conceiving womb.

KING JOHN. Bedlam, have done.

CONSTANCE. I have but this to say,

That he's not only plagued for her sin, 184

But God hath made her sin and her the plague

On this removed issue, plagu'd for her,

And with her plague, her sin ; his injury

Her injury, the beadle to her sin, 188

All punish'd in the person of this child,

And all for her. A plague upon her !

ELINOR. Thou unadvised scold, I can produce

A will that bars the title of thy son. 192

CONSTANCE. Ay, who doubts that ? a will ! a wicked  
will ;

A woman's will ; a canker'd grandam's will !

PHILIP. Peace, lady ! pause, or be more temperate :

It ill beseems this presence to cry aim 196

To these ill-tuned repetitions.

Some trumpet summon hither to the walls

These men of Angiers ; let us hear them speak

Whose title they admit, Arthur's or John's. 200

Trumpet sounds. Enter Citizens upon the Walls.

FIRST CITIZEN. Who is it that hath warn'd us to the walls ?

PHILIP. 'Tis France, for England.

KING JOHN. England for itself.

You men of Angiers, and my loving subjects,—

PHILIP. You loving men of Angiers, Arthur's subjects,  
Our trumpet call'd you to this gentle parle,— 205

KING JOHN. For our advantage ; therefore hear us first.

These flags of France, that are advanced here  
Before the eye and prospect of your town, 208

Have hither march'd to your endamagement :

The cannons have their bowels full of wrath,

And ready mounted are they to spit forth

Their iron indignation 'gainst your walls : 212

All preparation for a bloody siege

And merciless proceeding by these French

Confronts your city's eyes, your winking gates ;

And but for our approach those sleeping stones, 216

That as a waist do girdle you about,

By the compulsion of their ordinance

By this time from their fixed beds of lime

Had been dishabited, and wide havoc made, 220

For bloody power to rush upon your peace.

But on the sight of us your lawful king,—

Who painfully with much expedient march

Have brought a countercheck before your gates, 224

To save unscratch'd your city's threaten'd cheeks—

Behold, the French amaz'd vouchsafe a parle ;

And now, instead of bullets wrapp'd in fire,

To make a shaking fever in your walls, 228

They shoot but calm words folded up in smoke,

To make a faithless error in your ears :

Which trust accordingly, kind citizens,

And let us in, your king, whose labour'd spirits, 232

Forwearied in this action of swift speed,

Crave harbourage within your city walls.

PHILIP. When I have said, make answer to us both.

Lo ! in this right hand, whose protection 236

Is most divinely vow'd upon the right

Of him it holds, stands young Plantagenet,

Son to the elder brother of this man,  
 And king o'er him and all that he enjoys : 240  
 For this down-trodden equity, we tread  
 In warlike march these greens before your town,  
 Being no further enemy to you  
 Than the constraint of hospitable zeal, 244  
 In the relief of this oppressed child,  
 Religiously provokes. Be pleased then  
 To pay that duty which you truly owe :  
 To him that owes it, namely, this young prince ; 248  
 And then our arms, like to a muzzled bear,  
 Save in aspect, have all offence seal'd up ;  
 Our cannons' malice vainly shall be spent  
 Against the invulnerable clouds of heaven ; 252  
 And with a blessed and unvex'd retire,  
 With unhack'd swords and helmets all unbruis'd,  
 We will bear home that lusty blood again  
 Which here we came to spout against your town, 256  
 And leave your children, wives, and you, in peace.  
 But if you fondly pass our proffer'd offer,  
 'Tis not the roundure of your old-fac'd walls  
 Can hide you from our messengers of war, 260  
 Though all these English and their discipline  
 Were harbour'd in their rude circumference.  
 Then tell us, shall your city call us lord,  
 In that behalf which we have challeng'd at ? 264  
 Or shall we give the signal to our rage  
 And stalk in blood to our possession ?

FIRST CITIZEN. In brief, we are the King of England's  
 subjects :

For him, and in his right, we hold this town. 268

KING JOHN. Acknowledge then the king, and let me  
 in.

FIRST CITIZEN. That can we not ; but he that proves  
 the king,

To him will we prove loyal : till that time  
 Have we ramm'd up our gates against the world. 272

KING JOHN. Doth not the crown of England prove  
 the king ?

And if not that, I bring you witnesses,  
 Twice fifteen thousand hearts of England's breed,—

THE BASTARD. Bastards, and else. 276

KING JOHN. To verify our title with their lives.



PHILIP. As many and as well-born bloods as those,—

THE BASTARD. Some bastards too.

PHILIP. Stand in his face to contradict his claim.

FIRST CITIZEN. Till thou compound whose right is worthiest, 281

We for the worthiest hold the right from both.

KING JOHN. Then God forgive the sins of all those souls

That to their everlasting residence, 284

Before the dew of evening fall, shall fleet,

In dreadful trial of our kingdom's king!

PHILIP. Amen, Amen! Mount, chevaliers! to arms!

THE BASTARD. Saint George, that swirg'd the dragon, and e'er since 286

Sits on his horse back at mine hostess' door,

Teach us some fence! [To AUSTRIA.] Sirrah, were I at home,

At your den, sirrah, with your lioness,

I would set an ox-head to your lion's hide, 292

And make a monster of you.

AUSTRIA. Peace! no more.

THE BASTARD. O! tremble, for you hear the lion roar.

KING JOHN. Up higher to the plain; where we'll set forth

In best appointment all our regiments. 296

THE BASTARD. Speed then, to take advantage of the field.

PHILIP. It shall be so; [To LEWIS.] and at the other hill Command the rest to stand. God, and our right! [Exeunt.

Alarums and excursions; then a retreat. Enter a French Herald, with trumpets, to the gates.

FRENCH HERALD. You men of Angiers, open wide your gates, 300

And let young Arthur, Duke of Britaine, in,

Who, by the hand of France this day hath made

Much work for tears in many an English mother,

Whose sons lie scatter'd on the bleeding ground; 304

Many a widow's husband grovelling lies,

Coldly-embracing the discolour'd earth;

And victory, with little loss, doth play

Upon the dancing banners of the French, 308

Who are at hand, triumphantly display'd,

To enter conquerors and to proclaim  
Arthur of Britaine England's king and yours.

Enter English Herald, with trumpets.

ENGLISH HERALD. Rejoice, you men of Angiers, ring  
your bells ; 312

King John, your king and England's, doth approach,  
Commander of this hot malicious day.  
Their armours, that march'd hence so silver-bright,  
Hither return all gilt with Frenchmen's blood ; 316  
There stuck no plume in any English crest  
That is removed by a staff of France ;

Our colours do return in those same hands  
That did display them when we first march'd forth ;  
And, like a jolly troop of huntsmen, come 321  
Our lusty English, all with purpled hands  
Dy'd in the dying slaughter of their foes.  
Open your gates and give the victors way. 324

FIRST CITIZEN. Heralds, from off our towers we might  
behold,

From first to last, the onset and retire  
Of both your armies ; whose equality  
By our best eyes cannot be censured : 328  
Blood hath bought blood, and blows have answerd blows ;  
Strength match'd with strength, and power confronted  
power :

Both are alike ; and both alike we like.  
One must prove greatest : while they weigh so even,  
We hold our town for neither, yet for both. 333

Re-enter the two KINGS, with their powers, severally.

KING JOHN. France, hast thou yet more blood to cast  
away ?

Say, shall the current of our right run on ?  
Whose passage, vex'd with thy impediment, 336  
Shall leave his native channel and o'erswell  
With course disturb'd even thy confining shores,  
Unless thou let his silver water keep  
A peaceful progress to the ocean. 340

PHILIP. England, thou hast not sav'd one drop of  
blood,

In this hot trial, more than we of France ;  
Rather, lost more : and by this hand I swear,

That sways the earth this climate overlooks, 344  
 Before we will lay down our just-borne arms,  
 We'll put thee down, 'gainst whom these arms we bear,  
 Or add a royal number to the dead,  
 Gracing the scroll that tells of this war's loss 348  
 With slaughter coupled to the name of kings.

THE BASTARD. Ha, majesty! how high thy glory  
 towers

When the rich blood of kings is set on fire! 351  
 O! now doth Death line his dead chaps, with steel;  
 The swords of soldiers are his teeth, his fangs;  
 And now he feasts, mousing the flesh of men,  
 In undetermin'd differences of kings.  
 Why stand these royal fronts amazed thus? 356  
 Cry 'hæroc!' kings; back to the stained field,  
 You equal-potents, fiery-kindled spirits!  
 Then let confusion of one part confirm 359

The other's peace; till then, blows, blood, and death!

KING JOHN. Whose party do the townsmen yet admit?

PHILIP. Speak, citizens, for England; who's your king?

FIRST CITIZEN. The King of England, when we know  
 the king. 363

PHILIP. Know him in us, that here hold up his right.

KING JOHN. In us, that are our own great deputy,  
 And bear possession of our person here,  
 Lord of our presence, Angiers, and of you.

FIRST CITIZEN. A greater power than we denies all  
 this; 368

And, till it be undoubted, we do lock

Our former scruple in our strong-barr'd gates;

Kings of ourselves; until our fears, resolv'd,

Be by some certain king purg'd and depos'd. 372

THE BASTARD. By heaven, these scroyles of Angiers  
 flout you, kings,

And stand securely on their battlements

As in a theatre, whence they gape and point

At your industrious scenes and acts of death. 376

Your royal presences be rul'd by me:

Do like the mutines of Jerusalem,

Be friends awhile and both conjointly bend

Your sharpest deeds of malice on this town. 380

By east and west let France and England mount

Their battering cannon charged to the mouths,

Till their soul-fearing clamours have brawl'd down  
 The flinty ribs of this contemptuous city : 384  
 I'd play incessantly upon these jades,  
 Even till unfenced desolation

Leave them as naked as the vulgar air.  
 That done, dissever your united strengths, 388

And part your mingled colours once again ;  
 Turn face to face and bloody point to point ;  
 Then, in a moment, Fortune shall cull forth

Out of one side her happy minion, 392

To whom in favour she shall give the day,

And kiss him with a glorious victory.

How like you this wild counsel, mighty states ?

Smacks it not something of the policy ? 396

KING JOHN. Now, by the sky that hangs above our  
 heads,

I like it well. France, shall we knit our powers

And lay this Angiers even with the ground ;

Then after fight who shall be king of it ? 400

THE BASTARD. An if thou hast the mettle of a king,

Being wrong'd as we are by this peevish town,

Turn thou the mouth of thy artillery,

As we will ours, against these saucy walls ; 404

And when that we have dashed them to the ground,

Why then defy each other, and, pell-mell,

Make work upon ourselves, for heaven or hell. 407

PHILIP. Let it be so. Say, where will you assault ?

KING JOHN. We from the west will send destruction  
 Into this city's bosom.

AUSTRIA. I from the north.

PHILIP. Our thunder from the south

Shall rain their drift of bullets on this town. 412

THE BASTARD. O, prudent discipline ! From north to  
 south •

Austria and France shoot in each other's mouth :

I'll stir them to it. Come, away, away !

FIRST CITIZEN. Hear us, great kings : vouchsafe a  
 while to stay, 416

And I shall show you peace and fair-fac'd league ;

Win you this city without stroke or wound ;

Rescue those breathing lives to die in beds,

That here come sacrifices for the field. 420

Persever not, but hear me, mighty kings.

KING JOHN. Speak on with favour : we are bent to hear.

FIRST CITIZEN. That daughter there of Spain, the Lady Blanch,

Is near to England : look upon the years 424

Of Lewis the Dauphin and that lovely maid.

If lusty love should go in quest of beauty,

Where should he find it fairer than in Blanch ?

If zealous love should go in search of virtue, 428

Where should he find it purer than in Blanch ?

If love ambitious sought a match of birth,

Whose veins bound richer blood than Lady Blanch ?

Such as she is, in beauty, virtue, birth, 432

Is the young Dauphin every way complete :

If not complete of, say he is not she ;

And she again wants nothing, to name want,

If want it be not that she is not he : 436

He is the half part of a blessed man,

Left to be finished by such a she ;

And she a fair divided excellence,

Whose fulness of perfection lies in him. 440

O ! two such silver currents, when they join,

Do glorify the banks that bound them in ;

And two such shores to two such streams made one,

Two such controlling bounds shall you be, kings, 444

To these two princes if you marry them.

This union shall do more than battery can

To our fast-closed gates ; for at this match,

With swifter spleen than powder can enforce, 448

The mouth of passage shall we fling wide open,

And give you entrance ; but without this match,

The sea enraged is not half so deaf,

Lions more confident, mountains and rocks 452

More free from motion, no, not death himself

In mortal fury half so peremptory,

As we to keep this city.

THE BASTARD. Here's a stay,

That shakes the rotten carcase of old Death 456

Out of his rags ! Here's a large mouth, indeed,

That spits forth death and mountains, rocks and seas,

Talks as familiarly of roaring lions

As maids of thirteen do of puppy-dogs. 460

What cannoneer begot this lusty blood ?

He speaks plain cannon fire, and smoke and bounce ;  
 He gives the bastinado with his tongue ;  
 Our ears are cudgell'd not a word of his 484  
 But buffets better than a fist of France.  
 'Zounds ! I was never so bethump'd with words  
 Since I first call'd my brother's father dad.

ELINOR. [Aside to KING JOHN.] Son, list to this conjunction, make this match ; 468  
 Give with our niece a dowry large enough ;  
 For by this knot thou shalt so surely tie  
 Thy now unsur'd assurance to the crown,  
 That yon green boy shall have no sun to ripe 472  
 The bloom that promiseth a mighty fruit.  
 I see a yielding in the looks of France ;  
 Mark how they whisper : urge them while their souls  
 Are capable of this ambition, 476  
 Lest zeal, now melted by the windy breath  
 Of soft petitions, pity and remorse,  
 Cool and congeal again to what it was.

FIRST CITIZEN. Why answer not the double majesties 480

This friendly treaty of our threaten'd town ?

PHILIP. Speak England first, that hath been forward first

To speak unto this city : what say you ?

KING JOHN. If that the Dauphin there, thy princely son,  
 Can in this book of beauty read ' I love ' , 485

Her dowry shall weigh equal with a queen :

For Anjou, and fair Touraine, Maine, Poitiers,

And all that we upon this side the sea,— 488

Except this city now by us besieg'd,—

Find liable to our crown and dignity,

Shall gild her bridal bed and make her rich

In titles, honours, and promotions, 492

As she in beauty, education, blood,

Holds hand with any princess of the world.

PHILIP. What sayst thou, boy ? look in the lady's face.

LEWIS. I do, my lord ; and in her eye I find 496

A wonder, or a wondrous miracle,

The shadow of myself form'd in her eye ;

Which, being but the shadow of your son

Becomes a sun, and makes your son a shadow : 500

I do protest I never lov'd myself  
Till now infixed I beheld myself,  
Drawn in the flattering table of her eye.

[Whispers with BLANCH.

THE BASTARD. Drawn in the flattering table of her  
eye! 504

Hang'd in the frowning wrinkle of her brow!  
And quarter'd in her heart! he doth espy

"Himself love's traitor: this is pity now,  
That hang'd and drawn and quarter'd, there should be  
In such a love so vile a lout as he. 509

BLANCH. My uncle's will in this respect is mine:  
If he see aught in you that makes him like,  
That anything he sees, which moves his liking, 512

I can with ease translate it to my will;  
Or if you will, to speak more properly,  
I will enforce it easily to my love.

Further I will not flatter you, my lord, 516  
That all I see in you is worthy love.

Than this: that nothing do I see in you,  
Though churlish thoughts themselves should be your  
judge,

That I can find should merit any hate. 520

KING JOHN. What say these young ones? What say  
you, my niece?

BLANCH. That she is bound in honour still to do  
What you in wisdom still vouchsafe to say.

KING JOHN. Speak then, Prince Dauphin; can you  
love this lady? 524

LEWIS. Nay, ask me if I can refrain from love;  
For I do love her most unfeignedly.

KING JOHN. Then do I give Volquessen, Touraine,  
Maine,

Poictiers, and Anjou, these five provinces, 528

With her to thee; and this addition more,

Full thirty thousand marks of English coin.

Philip of France, if thou be pleas'd withal,  
Command thy son and daughter to join hands. 532

PHILIP. It likes us well. Young princes, close your  
hands.

AUSTRIA. And your lips too; for I am well assur'd  
That I did so when I was first assur'd.

PHILIP. Now, citizens of Angiers, ope your gates,

Let in that amity which you have made ; 537

For at Saint Mary's chapel presently

The rites of marriage shall be solemniz'd.

Is not the Lady Constance in this troop ? 540

I know she is not ; for this match made up

Her presence would have interrupted much :

Where is she and her son ? tell me, who knows.

LÉWIS. She is sad and passionate at your highness' tent. 544

PHILIP. And, by my faith, this league that we have made

Will give her sadness very little cure.

Brother of England, how may we content

This widow lady ? In her right we came ; 548

Which we, God knows, have turn'd another way,

To our own vantage.

KING JOHN. We will heal up all ;

For we'll create young Arthur Duke of Britaine .

And Earl of Richmond ; and this rich fair town 552

We make him lord of. Call the Lady Constance :

Some speedy messenger bid her repair

To our solemnity : I trust we shall,

If not fill up the measure of her will, 556

Yet in some measure satisfy her so,

That we shall stop her exclamation.

Go we, as well as haste will suffer us,

To this unlook'd-for unprepared pomp. 560

[Exeunt all except the BASTARD. The Citizens retire from the walls.

THE BASTARD. Mad world ! mad kings ! mad composition !

John, to stop Arthur's title in the whole,

Hath willingly departed with a part ;

And France, whose armour conscience buckled on, 564

Whom zeal and charity brought to the field,

As God's own soldier, rounded in the ear

With that same purpose-changer, that sly devil,

That broker, that still breaks the pate of faith, 568

That daily break-vow, he that wins of all,

Of kings, of beggars, old men, young men, maids,

Who having no external thing to lose 571

But the word ' maid ', cheats the poor maid of that,

That smooth-fac'd gentleman, tickling Commodity,

Commodity, the bias of the world ;



The world, who of itself is peized well,  
 Made to run even upon even ground, 570  
 Till this advantage, this vile-drawing bias,  
 This sway of motion, this Commodity,  
 Makes it take head from all indifferency,  
 From all direction, purpose, course, intent : 580  
 And this same bias, this Commodity,  
 This bawd, this broker, this all-changing word,  
 Clapp'd on the outward eye of fickle France,  
 Hath drawn him from his own determin'd aid, 584  
 From a resolv'd and honourable war,  
 To a most base and vile-concluded peace.  
 And why rail I on this Commodity ?  
 But for because he hath not woo'd me yet. 588  
 Not that I have the power to clutch my hand  
 When his fair angels would salute my palm ;  
 But for my hand, as unattempted yet,  
 Like a poor beggar, raileth on the rich. 592  
 Well, whiles I am a beggar, I will rail,  
 And say there is no sin but to be rich ;  
 And being rich, my virtue then shall be  
 To say there is no vice but beggary. 596  
 Since kings break faith upon Commodity,  
 Gain, be my lord, for I will worship thee ! [Exit.

## ACT III.

SCENE I.—France. The French King's Tent.

Enter CONSTANCE, ARTHUR, and SALISBURY.

CONSTANCE. Gone to be married ! gone to swear a peace !

False blood to false blood join'd ! gone to be friends !  
 Shall Lewis have Blanch, and Blanch those provinces ?  
 It is not so ; thou hast misspoke, misheard ; 4  
 Be well advis'd, tell o'er thy tale again :  
 It cannot be ; thou dost but say 'tis so.  
 I trust I may not trust thee, for thy word  
 Is but the vain breath of a common man : 8  
 Believe me, I do not believe thee, man ;  
 I have a king's oath to the contrary.  
 Thou shalt be punish'd for thus frightening me.

For I am sick and capable of fears ; 12  
 Oppress'd with wrongs, and therefore full of fears ;  
 A widow, husbandless, subject to fears ;  
 A woman, naturally born to fears ;  
 And though thou now confess thou didst but jest, 16  
 With my vex'd spirits I cannot take a truce,  
 But they will quake and tremble all this day.  
 What dost thou mean by shaking of thy head ?  
 Why dost thou look so sadly on my son ? 20  
 What means that hand upon that breast of thine ?  
 Why holds thine eye that lamentable rheum,  
 Like a proud river peering o'er his bounds ?  
 Be these sad signs confirmers of thy words ? 24  
 Then speak again ; not all thy former tale,  
 But this one word, whether thy tale be true.

SALISBURY. As true as I believe you think them false  
 That give you cause to prove my saying true. 28

CONSTANCE. O ! if thou teach me to believe this  
 sorrow,  
 Teach thou this sorrow how to make me die ;  
 And let belief and life encounter so.  
 As doth the fury of two desperate men 32  
 Which in the very meeting fall and die.  
 Lewis marry Blanch ! O boy ! then where art thou ?  
 France friend with England, what becomes of me ?  
 Fellow, be gone ! I cannot brook thy sight : 36  
 This news hath made thee a most ugly man.

SALISBURY. What other harm have I, good lady,  
 done,  
 But spoke the harm that is by others done ?

CONSTANCE. Which harm within itself so heinous is  
 As it makes harmful all that speak of it. 41

ARTHUR. I do beseech you, madam, be content.

CONSTANCE. If thou, that bidd'st me be content, wert  
 grim,

Ugly and slanderous to thy mother's womb, 44  
 Full of unpleasing blots and sightless stains,  
 Lame, foolish, crooked, swart, prodigious,  
 Patch'd with foul moles and eye-offending marks,  
 I would not care, I then would be content ; 48  
 For then I should not love thee, no, nor thou  
 Become thy great birth, nor deserve a crown.  
 But thou art fair ; and at thy birth, dear boy,

Nature and Fortune join'd to make thee great : 52  
 Of Nature's gifts thou mayst with lilies boast  
 And with the half-blown rose. But Fortune, O !  
 She is corrupted, chang'd, and won from thee :  
 She adulterates hourly with thine uncle John, 56  
 And with her golden hand hath pluck'd on France  
 To tread down fair respect of sovereignty  
 And made his majesty the bawd to theirs.  
 France is a bawd to Fortune and King John, 60  
 That strumpet Fortune, that usurping John !  
 Tell me, thou fellow, is not France forsworn ?  
 Envenom him with words, or get thee gone  
 And leave those woes alone which I alone 64  
 Am bound to underbear.

SALISBURY.

Pardon me, madam,

I may not go without you to the kings.

CONSTANCE. Thou mayst, thou shalt : I will not go  
 with thee.

I will instruct my sorrows to be proud ; 68  
 For grief is proud and makes his owner stoop.  
 To me and to the state of my great grief  
 Let kings assemble ; for my grief's so great  
 That no supporter but the huge firm earth 72  
 Can hold it up : here I and sorrows sit ;  
 Here is my throne, bid kings come bow to it.

[Seats herself on the ground.

Enter KING JOHN, KING PHILIP, LEWIS, BLANCH, ELINOR, the  
 BASTARD, DUKE OF AUSTRIA, and Attendants.

PHILIP. 'Tis true, fair daughter ; and this blessed day  
 Ever in France shall be kept festival : 76  
 To solemnize this day the glorious sun  
 Stays in his course and plays the alchemist,  
 Turning with splendour of his precious eye  
 The meagre cloddy earth to glittering gold : 80  
 The yearly course that brings this day about  
 Shall never see it but a holiday.

CONSTANCE. [Rising.] A wicked day, and not a holy day !  
 What hath this day deserv'd ? what hath it done 84  
 That it in golden letters should be set  
 Among the high tides in the calendar ?  
 Nay, rather turn this day out of the week,  
 This day of shame, oppression, perjury : 86

Or, if it must stand still, let wives with child  
 Pray that their burdens may not fall this day,  
 Lest that their hopes prodigiously be cross'd :  
 But on this day let seamen fear no wrack ;  
 No bargains break that are not this day made ;  
 'This day all things begun come to ill end ;  
 Yea, faith itself to hollow falsehood change !

PHILIP. By heaven, lady, you shall have no cause  
 To curse the fair proceedings of this day :  
 Have I not pawn'd to you my majesty ?

CONSTANCE. You have beguil'd me with a counterfeit  
 Resembling majesty, which, being touch'd and tried,  
 Proves valueless : you are forsworn, forsworn ;  
 You came in arms to spill mine enemies' blood,  
 But now in arms you strengthen it with yours :  
 The grappling vigour and rough frown of war  
 Is cold in amity and painted peace,  
 And our oppression hath made up this league.  
 Arm, arm, you heavens, against these perjur'd kings !  
 A widow cries ; be husband to me, heavens !  
 Let not the hours of this ungodly day  
 Wear out the day in peace ; but, ere sunset,  
 Set armed discord 'twixt these perjur'd kings !  
 Hear me ! O, hear me !

AUSTRIA. Lady Constance, peace !

CONSTANCE. War ! war ! no peace ! peace is to me a  
 war.

O, Lymoges ! O, Austria ! thou dost shame  
 That bloody spoil ; thou slave, thou wretch, thou  
 coward !

Thou little valiant, great in villany !

Thou ever strong upon the stronger side !

Thou Fortune's champion, that dost never fight

But when her humorous ladyship is by

To teach thee safety ! thou art perjur'd too,

And sooth'st up greatness. What a fool art thou,

A ramping fool, to brag and stamp and swear

Upon my party ! Thou cold-blooded slave,

Hast thou not spoke like thunder on my side ?

Been sworn my soldier ? bidding me depend

Upon thy stars, thy fortune, and thy strength ?

And dost thou now fall over to my foes ?

Thou wear a lion's hide ! doff it for shame,

And hang a calf's-skin on those recreant limbs.

AUSTRIA. O ! that a man should speak those words to me.

THE BASTARD. And hang a calf's-skin on those recreant limbs.

AUSTRIA. Thou dar'st not say so, villain, for thy life.

THE BASTARD. And hang a calf's-skin on those recreant limbs. 133

KING JOHN. We like not this ; thou dost forget thyself.

Enter PANDULPH.

PHILIP. Here comes the holy legate of the pope.

PANDULPH. Hail, you anointed deputies of heaven ! To thee, King John, my holy errand is. 137

I Pandulph, of fair Milan cardinal,  
And from Pope Innocent the legate here,  
Do in his name religiously demand 140

Why thou against the church, our holy mother,  
So wilfully dost spurn ; and, force perforce,  
Keep Stephen Langton, chosen Archbishop  
Of Canterbury, from that holy see ? 144  
This, in our foresaid holy father's name,  
Pope Innocent, I do demand of thee.

KING JOHN. What earthly name to interrogatories  
Can task the free breath of a sacred king ? 148  
Thou canst not, cardinal, devise a name  
So slight, unworthy and ridiculous,  
To charge me to an answer, as the pope.

Tell him this tale ; and from the mouth of England  
Add thus much more : that no Italian priest 153  
Shall tithe or toil in our dominions ;

But as we under heaven are supreme head,  
So under him that great supremacy, 156  
Where we do reign, we will alone uphold,

Without the assistance of a mortal hand :  
So tell the pope ; all reverence set apart  
To him, and his usurp'd authority. 160

PHILIP. Brother of England, you blaspheme in this.

KING JOHN. Though you and all the kings of Christendom

Are led so grossly by this meddling priest,  
Dreading the curse that money may buy out ; 164  
And, by the merit of vile gold, dross, dust,

Purchase corrupted pardon of a man,  
Who in that sale sells pardon from himself ;  
Though you and all the rest so grossly led 168  
This juggling witchcraft with revenue cherish ,  
Yet I alone, alone do me oppose  
Against the pope, and count his friends my foes.

PANDULPH. Then, by the lawful power that I have,  
Thou shalt stand curs'd and excommunicate : 173  
And blessed shall he be that doth revolt  
From his allegiance to a heretic ;  
And meritorious shall that hand be call'd, 176  
Canonized and worshipp'd as a saint,  
That takes away by any secret course  
Thy hateful life.

CONSTANCE. O ! lawful let it be  
That I have room with Rome to curse awhile. 180  
Good father cardinal, cry thou amen  
To my keen curses ; for without my wrong  
There is no tongue hath power to curse him right.

PANDULPH. There's law and warrant, lady, for my  
curse. 184

CONSTANCE. And for mine too : when law can do no  
right,  
Let it be lawful that law bar no wrong.  
Law cannot give my child his kingdom here,  
For he that holds his kingdom holds the law : 188  
Therefore, since law itself is perfect wrong,  
How can the law forbid my tongue to curse ?

PANDULPH. Philip of France, on peril of a curse,  
Let go the hand of that arch-heretic, 192  
And raise the power of France upon his head,  
Unless he do submit himself to Rome.

ELINOR. Look'st thou pale, France ? do not let go  
thy hand.

CONSTANCE. Look to that, devil, lest that France repent,  
And by disjoining hands, hell lose a soul. 197

AUSTRIA. King Philip, listen to the cardinal.

THE BASTARD. And hang a calf's-skin on his recreant  
limbs.

AUSTRIA. Well, ruffian, I must pocket up these wrongs,  
Because—

THE BASTARD. Your breeches best may carry them.

KING JOHN. Philip, what sayst thou to the cardinal ?

CONSTANCE. What should he say, but as the cardinal ?

LEWIS. Bethink you, father ; for the difference  
Is purchase of a heavy curse from Rome, 205  
Or the light loss of England for a friend :  
Forego the easier.

BLANCH. That's the curse of Rome.

CONSTANCE. O Lewis, stand fast ! the devil tempts  
thee here, 208  
In likeness of a new untrimmed bride.

BLANCH. The Lady Constance speaks not from her  
faith,  
But from her need.

CONSTANCE. O ! if thou grant my need,  
Which only lives but by the death of faith, 212  
That need must needs infer this principle,  
That faith would live again by death of need :  
O ! then, tread down my need, and faith mounts up ;  
Keep my need up, and faith is trodden down. 216

KING JOHN. The king is mov'd, and answers not to  
this.

CONSTANCE. O ! be remov'd from him, and answer  
well.

AUSTRIA. Do so, King Philip : hang no more in doubt.  
THE BASTARD. Hang nothing but a calf's-skin, most  
sweet lout. 220

PHILIP. I am perplex'd, and know not what to say.

PANDULPH. What canst thou say but will perplex  
thee more,

If thou stand excommunicate and curs'd ?

PHILIP. Good reverend father, make my person yours,  
And tell me how you would bestow yourself. 225

This royal hand and mine are newly knit,  
And the conjunction of our inward souls,  
Married in league, coupled and link'd together 228

With all religious strength of sacred vows ;  
The latest breath that gave the sound of words  
Was deep-sworn faith, peace, amity, true love,  
Between our kingdoms and our royal selves ; 232

And even before this truce, but new before,  
No longer than we well could wash our hands  
To clap this royal bargain up of peace,

Heaven knows, they were besmear'd and overstain'd  
With slaughter's pencil, where revenge did paint 237

The fearful difference of incensed kings :  
And shall these hands, so lately purg'd of blood,  
So newly join'd in love, so strong in both, 240  
Unyoke this seizure and this kind regret ?  
Play fast and loose with faith ? so jest with heaven,  
Make such unconstant children of ourselves,  
As now again to snatch our palm from palm, 244  
Unswear faith sworn, and on the marriage-bed  
Of smiling peace to march a bloody host,  
And make a riot on the gentle brow  
Of true sincerity ? O ! holy sir, 248  
My reverend father, let it not be so !  
Out of your grace, devise, ordain, impose  
Some gentle order, and then we shall be bless'd  
To do your pleasure and continue friends. 252

PANDULPH. All form is formless, order orderless,  
Save what is opposite to England's love.  
Therefore to arms ! be champion of our church,  
Or let the church, our mother, breathe her curse, 256  
A mother's curse, on her revolting son.  
France, thou mayst hold a serpent by the tongue,  
A chafed lion by the mortal paw,  
A fasting tiger safer by the tooth, 260  
Than keep in peace that hand which thou dost hold.

PHILIP. I may disjoin my hand, but not my faith.

PANDULPH. So mak'st thou faith an enemy to faith :  
And like a civil war sett'st oath to oath, 264  
Thy tongue against thy tongue. O ! let thy vow  
First made to heaven, first be to heaven perform'd ;  
That is, to be the champion of our church.  
What since thou swor'st is sworn against thyself, 268  
And may not be performed by thyself ;  
For that which thou hast sworn to do amiss  
Is not amiss when it is truly done ;  
And being not done, where doing tends to ill, 272  
The truth is then most done not doing it.  
The better act of purposes mistook  
Is to mistake again ; though indirect,  
Yet indirection thereby grows direct, 276  
And falsehood falsehood cures, as fire cools fire  
Within the scorched veins of one new-burn'd.  
It is religion that doth make vows kept ;  
But thou hast sworn against religion 280



By what thou swear'st, against the thing thou swear'st,  
 And mak'st an oath the surety for thy truth  
 Against an oath : the truth thou art unsure  
 To swear, swears only not to be forsworn ; 284  
 Else what a mockery should it be to swear !  
 But thou dost swear only to be forsworn ;  
 And most forsworn, to keep what thou dost swear.  
 Therefore thy later vows against thy first 288  
 Is in thyself rebellion to thyself ;  
 And better conquest never canst thou make  
 Than arm thy constant and thy nobler parts  
 Against these giddy loose suggestions 292  
 Upon which better part our prayers come in,  
 If thou vouchsafe them ; but, if not, then know  
 The peril of our curses light on thee  
 So heavy as thou shalt not shake them off, 296  
 But in despair die under their black weight.

AUSTRIA. Rebellion, flat rebellion !

THE BASTARD. Will 't not be ?  
 Will not a calf's-skin stop that mouth of thine ?

LEWIS. Father, to arms !

BLANCH. Upon thy wedding-day ?  
 Against the blood that thou hast married ? 301  
 What ! shall our feast be kept with slaughter'd men ?  
 Shall braying trumpets and loud churlish drums,  
 Clamours of hell, be measures to our pomp ? 304  
 O husband, hear me ! ay, alack ! how new  
 Is husband in my mouth ; even for that name,  
 Which till this time my tongue did ne'er pronounce,  
 Upon my knee I beg, go not to arms 308  
 Against mine uncle.

CONSTANCE. O ! 'upon my knee,  
 Made hard with kneeling, I do pray to thee,  
 Thou virtuous Dauphin, alter not the doom  
 Forethought by heaven. 312

BLANCH. Now shall I see thy love : what motive may  
 Be stronger with thee than the name of wife ?

CONSTANCE. That which upholdeth him that thee up-  
 holds, 315

His honour : O ! thine honour, Lewis, thine honour.

LEWIS. I muse your majesty doth seem so cold,  
 When such profound respects do pull you on.

PANDULPH. I will denounce a curse upon his head.

• PHILIP. Thou shalt not need. England, I'll fall from thee. 320

CONSTANCE. O fair, return of banish'd majesty !

ELINOR. O foul revolt of French inconstancy !

KING JOHN. France, thou shalt rue this hour within this hour.

THE BASTARD. Old Time the clock-setter, that baid sexton Time, 324

Is it as he will ? well then, France shall rue.

BLANCH. The sun's o'ercast with blood : fair day, adieu !

Which is the side that I must go withal ?

I am with both : each army hath a hand ; 328

And in their rage, I having hold of both,

They whirl asunder and dismember me.

Husband, I cannot pray that thou mayst win ;

Uncle, I needs must pray that thou mayst lose ; 332

Father, I may not wish the fortune thine ;

Grandam, I will not wish thy wishes thrive :

Whoever wins, on that side shall I lose ;

Assured loss before the match be play'd. 336

LEWIS. Lady, with me ; with me thy fortune lies.

BLANCH. There where my fortune lives, there my life dies.

KING JOHN. Cousin, go draw our puissance together.

[Exit the BASTARD.

France, I am burn'd up with inflaming wrath ; 340

A rage whose heat hath this condition,

That nothing can allay, nothing but blood,

The blood, and dearest-valu'd blood of France.

PHILIP. Thy rage shall burn thee up, and thou shalt turn 344

To ashes, ere our blood shall quench that fire :

Look to thyself, thou art in jeopardy.

KING JOHN. No more than he that threatens. To arms let's hie ! [Exeunt.

SCENE II.—The Same. Plains near Angiers.

Alarums ; excursions. Enter the BASTARD, with the DUKE OF AUSTRIA's head.

THE BASTARD. Now, by my life, this day grows wondrous hot ;

Some airy devil hovers in the sky

And pours down mischief. Austria's head lie there,  
While Philip breathes. 4

Enter KING JOHN, ARTHUR, and HUBERT.

KING JOHN. Hubert, keep this boy. Philip, make  
up.  
My mother is assailed in our tent,  
And ta'en, I fear.

THE BASTARD. My lord, I rescu'd her ;  
Her highness is in safety, fear you not : 8  
But on, my liege ; for very little pains  
Will bring this labour to a happy end. [Exeunt.

SCENE III.—The Same.

Alarums ; excursions ; retreat. Enter KING JOHN, ELINOR,  
ARTHUR, the BASTARD, HUBERT, and Lords.

KING JOHN. [To ELINOR.] So shall it be ; your grace shall  
stay behind  
So strongly guarded. [To ARTHUR.] Cousin, look not sad :  
Thy grandam loves thee ; and thy uncle will  
As dear be to thee as thy father was. 4

ARTHUR. O ! this will make my mother die with  
grief.

KING JOHN. [To the BASTARD.] Cousin, away for England !  
haste before ;  
And, ere our coming, see thou shake the bags  
Of hoarding abbots ; set at liberty 8  
Imprison'd angels : the fat ribs of peace  
Must by the hungry now be fed upon :  
Use our commission in his utmost force.

THE BASTARD. Bell, book, and candle shall not drive  
me back 12

When gold and silver becks me to come on.  
I leave your highness. Grandam, I will pray,—  
If ever I remember to be holy,—  
For your fair safety ; so I kiss your hand. 16

ELINOR. Farewell, gentle cousin.

KING JOHN.

Coz, farewell.

[Exit the BASTARD.]

ELINOR. Come hither, little kinsman ; hark, a word.

[She takes ARTHUR aside.]

KING JOHN. Come hither, Hubert. O my gentle Hubert,  
We owe thee much : within this wall of flesh 20

There is a soul counts thee her creditor,  
And with advantage means to pay thy love :  
And, my good friend, thy voluntary oath  
Lives in this bosom, dearly cherished. 24  
Give me thy hand. I had a thing to say,  
But I will fit it with some better time.  
By heaven, Hubert, I am almost asham'd  
To say what good respect I have of thee. 28

HUBERT. I am much bounden to your majesty.

KING JOHN. Good friend, thou hast no cause to say  
so yet ;

But thou shalt have ; and creep time ne'er so slow,  
Yet it shall come for me to do thee good. 32  
I had a thing to say, but let it go :  
The sun is in the heaven, and the proud day,  
Attended with the pleasures of the world,  
Is all too wanton and too full of gawds 36  
To give me audience : if the midnight bell  
Did, with his iron tongue and brazen mouth,  
Sound one into the drowsy race of night ;  
If this same were a churchyard where we stand, 40  
And thou possessed with a thousand wrongs ;  
Or if that surly spirit, melancholy,  
Had bak'd thy blood and made it heavy-thick,  
Which else runs tickling up and down the veins, 44  
Making that idiot, laughter, keep men's eyes  
And strain their cheeks to idle merriment,  
A passion hateful to my purposes ;  
Or if that thou couldst see me without eyes, 48  
Hear me without thine ears, and make reply  
Without a tongue, using conceit alone,  
Without eyes, ears, and harmful sound of words ;  
Then, in despite of brooded watchful day, 52  
I would into thy bosom pour my thoughts :  
But ah ! I will not : yet I love thee well ;  
And, by my troth, I think thou lov'st me well.

HUBERT. So well, that what you bid me undertake,  
Though that my death were adjunct to my act, 57  
By heaven, I would do it.

KING JOHN. Do not I know thou wouldst ?  
Good Hubert ! Hubert, Hubert, throw thine eye  
On yon young boy : I'll tell thee what, my friend,  
He is a very serpent in my way ; 61

And wheresoe'er this foot of mine doth tread  
 He lies before me : dost thou understand me ?  
 Thou art his keeper.

HUBERT. And I'll keep him so 64  
 That he shall not offend your majesty.

KING JOHN. Death.

HUBERT. My lord ?

KING JOHN. A grave.

HUBERT. He shall not live.

KING JOHN. Enough.

I could be merry now. Hubert, I love thee ;  
 Well, I'll not say what I intend for thee : 68  
 Remember. Madam, fare you well :  
 I'll send those powers o'er to your majesty.

ELINOR. My blessing go with thee !

KING JOHN. For England, cousin ; go :  
 Hubert shall be your man, attend on you 72  
 With all true duty. On toward Calais, ho ! [Exeunt.

SCENE IV.—The Same. The French King's Tent.

Enter KING PHILIP, LEWIS, PANDULPH, and Attendants.

PHILIP. So, by a roaring tempest on the flood,  
 A whole armado of convicted sail  
 Is scatter'd and disjoin'd from fellowship. 3

PANDULPH. Courage and comfort ! all shall yet go well.

PHILIP. What can go well when we have run so ill ?  
 Are we not beaten ? Is not Angiers lost ?  
 Arthur ta'en prisoner ? divers dear friends slain ?  
 And bloody England into England gone, 8  
 O'erbearing interruption, spite of France ?

LEWIS. What he hath won that hath he fortified :  
 So hot a speed with such advice dispos'd,  
 Such temperate order in so fierce a cause, 12  
 Doth want example : who hath read or heard  
 Of any kindred action like to this ?

PHILIP. Well could I bear that England had this  
 praise,  
 So we could find some pattern of our shame. 16

Enter CONSTANCE.

Look, who comes here ! a grave unto a soul ;  
 Holding the eternal spirit, against her will,

In the vile prison of afflicted breath.

I prithee, lady, go away with me. 20

CONSTANCE. Lo now! now see the issue of your peace.

PHILIP. Patience, good lady! comfort, gentle Constance!

CONSTANCE. No, I defy all counsel; all redress,  
But that which ends all counsel, true redress, 24  
Death, death: O, amiable lovely death!

Thou odoriferous stench! sound rottenness!  
Arise forth from the couch of lasting night,  
Thou hate and terror to prosperity, 28

And I will kiss thy detestable bones,  
And put my eyeballs in thy vaulty brows,  
And ring these fingers with thy household worms,  
And stop this gap of breath with fulsome dust, 32

And be a carrion monster like thyself:  
Come, grin on me; and I will think thou smil'st

And buss thee as thy wife! Misery's love,  
O! come to me.

PHILIP. O fair affliction, peace! 36

CONSTANCE. No, no, I will not, having breath to cry:  
O! that my tongue were in the thunder's mouth!

Then with a passion would I shake the world,  
And rouse from sleep that fell anatomy 40  
Which cannot hear a lady's feeble voice,  
Which scorns a modern invocation.

PANDULPH. Lady, you utter madness, and not sorrow.

CONSTANCE. Thou art not holy to belie me so; 44  
I am not mad: this hair I tear is mine;

My name is Constance; I was Geoffrey's wife;  
Young Arthur is my son, and he is lost!  
I am not mad: I would to heaven I were! 48

For then 'tis like I should forget myself:  
O! if I could, what grief should I forget.

Preach some philosophy to make me mad,  
And thou shalt be canoniz'd, cardinal; 52  
For being not mad but sensible of grief,

My reasonable part produces reason  
How I may be deliver'd of these woes,  
And teaches me to kill or hang myself: 56

If I were mad, I should forget my son,  
Or madly think a babe of clouts were he.

I am not mad : too well, too well I feel  
The different plague of each calamity.

60

PHILIP. Bind up those tresses. O ! what love I note  
In the fair multitude of those her hairs :  
Where but by chance a silver drop hath fallen,  
Even to that drop ten thousand wiry friends  
Do glue themselves in sociable grief ;  
Like true, inseparable, faithful loves,  
Sticking together in calamity.

64

CONSTANCE. To England, if you will.

PHILIP. Bind up your hairs.

68

CONSTANCE. Yes, that I will ; and wherefore will I do  
it ?

I tore them from their bonds, and cried aloud  
' O ! that these hands could so redeem my son,  
As they have given these hairs their liberty !'  
But now I envy at their liberty,  
And will again commit them to their bonds,  
Because my poor child is a prisoner.  
And, father cardinal, I have heard you say  
That we shall see and know our friends in heaven.  
If that be true, I shall see my boy again ;  
For since the birth of Cain, the first male child,  
To him that did but yesterday suspire,  
There was not such a gracious creature born.  
But now will canker-sorrow eat my bud  
And chase the native beauty from his cheek,  
And he will look as hollow as a ghost,  
As dim and meagre as an ague's fit,  
And so he'll die ; and, rising so again,  
When I shall meet him in the court of heaven  
I shall not know him : therefore never, never  
Must I behold my pretty Arthur more.

72

76

80

84

88

PANDULPH. You hold too heinous a respect of grief.

CONSTANCE. He talks to me, that never had a son.

PHILIP. You are as fond of grief as of your child.

CONSTANCE. Grief fills the room up of my absent  
child,

93

Lies in his bed, walks up and down with me,  
Puts on his pretty looks, repeats his words,  
Remembers me of all his gracious parts,  
Stuffs out his vacant garments with his form :  
Then have I reason to be fond of grief.

96

Fare you well : had you such a loss as I,  
I could give better comfort than you do. 100  
I will not keep this form upon my head  
When there is such disorder in my wit.

O Lord ! my boy, my Arthur, my fair son !  
My life, my joy, my food, my all the world ! 101  
My widow-comfort, and my sorrows' cure ! [Exit.

PHILIP. I fear some outrage, and I'll follow her. [Exit.

LEWIS. There's nothing in this world can make me  
joy :

Life is as tedious as a twice-told tale, 108  
Vexing the dull ear of a drowsy man ;  
And bitter shame hath spoil'd the sweet world's taste.  
That it yields nought but shame and bitterness.

PANDULPH. Before the curing of a strong disease,  
Even in the instant of repair and health, 113  
The fit is strongest : evils that take leave,  
On their departure most of all show evil.  
What have you lost by losing of this day ? 116

LEWIS. All days of glory, joy, and happiness.

PANDULPH. If you had won it, certainly you had.  
No, no ; when Fortune means to men most good,  
She looks upon them with a threatening eye. 120  
'Tis strange to think how much King John hath lost  
In this which he accounts so clearly won.

Are not you griev'd that Arthur is his prisoner ?

LEWIS. As heartily as he is glad he hath him. 124

PANDULPH. Your mind is all as youthful as your blood.  
Now hear me speak with a prophetic spirit ;  
For even the breath of what I mean to speak  
Shall blow each dust, each stray, each little rub, 128  
Out of the path which shall directly lead  
Thy foot to England's throne ; and therefore mark.  
John hath seiz'd Arthur ; and it cannot be,

That whiles warm life plays in that infant's veins 132  
The misplac'd John should entertain an hour,  
One minute, nay, one quiet breath of rest.

A sceptre snatch'd with an unruly hand  
Must be as boisterously maintain'd as gain'd ; 136  
And he that stands upon a slippery place

Makes nice of no vile hold to stay him up :  
That John may stand, then Arthur needs must fall ;  
So be it, for it cannot be but so. 140



LEWIS. But what shall I gain by young Arthur's fall ?

PANDULPH. You, in the right of Lady Blanch your wife,

May then make all the claim that Arthur did.

LEWIS. And lose it, life and all, as Arthur did. 144

PANDULPH. How green you are and fresh in this old world !

John lays you plots ; the times conspire with you ;  
For he that steeps his safety in true blood  
Shall find but bloody safety and untrue. 148

This act so evilly borne shall cool the hearts  
Of all his people and freeze up their zeal,  
That none so small advantage shall step forth  
To check his reign, but they will cherish it ; 152

No natural exhalation in the sky,  
No scope of nature, no distemper'd day,  
No common wind, no custom'd event,  
But they will pluck away his natural cause. 156

And call them meteors, prodigies, and signs,  
Abortives, presages, and tongues of heaven,  
Plainly denouncing vengeance upon John.

LEWIS. May be he will not touch young Arthur's life,  
But hold himself safe in his prisonment. 161

PANDULPH. O ! sir, when he shall hear of your approach,

If that young Arthur be not gone already,  
Even at that news he dies ; and then the hearts 164  
Of all his people shall revolt from him

And kiss the lips of unacquainted change,  
And pick strong matter of revolt and wrath • •  
Out of the bloody fingers' ends of John. 168

Methinks I see this hurly all on foot :  
And, O ! what better matter breeds for you  
Than I have nam'd. • The bastard Faulconbridge

Is now in England ransacking the church, 172  
Offending charity : if but a dozen French  
Were there in arms, they would be as a call

To train ten thousand English to their side ;  
Or as a little snow, tumbled about, 176  
Anon becomes a mountain. O noble Dauphin !

Go with me to the king. 'Tis wonderful  
What may be wrought out of their discontent  
Now that their souls are topful of offence. 180

## SCENE IV]

## KING JOHN

For England go ; I will whet on the king.

LEWIS. Strong reasons make strong actions, let us  
go :

If you say ay, the king will not say no. [Exeunt.

## ACT IV.

SCENE I.—Northampton. A Room in the Castle.

Enter HUBERT and Two Attendants.

HUBERT. Heat me these irons hot ; and look thou  
stand

Within the arras : when I strike my foot  
Upon the bosom of the ground, rush forth,  
And bind the boy which you shall find with me 4  
Fast to the chair : be heedful. Hence, and watch.

FIRST ATTENDANT. I hope your warrant will bear out  
the deed.

HUBERT. Uncleanly scruples ! fear not you : look  
to 't. [Exeunt Attendants.

Young 'lad, come forth ; I have to say with you. 8

Enter ARTHUR.

ARTHUR. Good morrow, Hubert.

HUBERT. Good morrow, little prince.

ARTHUR. As little prince,—having so great a title  
To be more prince,—as may be. You are sad.

HUBERT. Indeed, I have been merrier.

ARTHUR. Mercy on me ! 12

Methinks nobody should be sad but I :  
Yet I remember, when I was in France,  
Young gentlemen would be as sad as night,  
Only for wantonness. By my christendom, 16

So I were out of prison and kept sheep,  
I should be as merry as the day is long ;  
And so I would be here, but that I doubt  
My uncle practises more harm to me : 20

He is afraid of me, and I of him.

Is it my fault that I was Geoffrey's son ?

No, indeed, is 't not ; and I would to heaven  
I were your son, so you would love me, Hubert. 24

HUBERT. [Aside.] If I talk to him with his innocent prate

He will awake my mercy which lies dead :

Therefore I will be sudden and dispatch.

ARTHUR. Are you sick, Hubert ? you look pale to-day :  
In sooth, I would you were a little sick, 29  
That I might sit all night and watch with you :

I warrant I love you more than you do me.

HUBERT. [Aside.] His words do take possession of  
my bosom. 32

Read here, young Arthur. [Showing a paper.]

[Aside.] How now, foolish rheum !

Turning spiteous torture out of door !

I must be brief, lest resolution drop

Out at mine eyes in tender womanish tears. 33

Can you not read it ? is it not fair writ ?

ARTHUR. Too fairly, Hubert, for so foul effect.

Must you with hot irons burn out both mine eyes ?

HUBERT. Young boy, I must.

ARTHUR. And will you ?

HUBERT. And I will.

ARTHUR. Have you the heart ? When your head did  
but ache, 41

I knit my handkercher about your brows,—

The best I had, a princess wrought it me,—

And I did never ask it you again ; 44

And with my hand at midnight held your head,

And like the watchful minutes to the hour,

Still and anon cheer'd up the heavy time,

Saying, ' What lack you ? ' and, ' Where lies your  
grief ? ' 48

Or, ' What good love may I perform for you ? '

Many a poor man's son would have lain still,

And ne'er have spoke a loving word to you

But you at your sick-service had a prince.

Nay, you may think my love was crafty love,

And call it cunning : do an if you will.

If heaven be pleas'd that you must use me ill,

Why then you must. Will you put out mine eyes ?

These eyes that never did nor never shall 57

So much as frown on you ?

HUBERT. I have sworn to do it ;

And with hot irons must I burn them out.

ARTHUR. Ah! none but in this iron age would do it!  
 The iron of itself, though heat red-hot, 61  
 Approaching near these eyes, would drink my tears,  
 And quench this fiery indignation  
 Even in the matter of mine innocence; 64  
 Nay, after that, consume away in rust,  
 But for containing fire to harm mine eye.  
 Are you more stubborn-hard than hammer'd iron?  
 An if an angel should have come to me 68  
 And told me Hubert should put out mine eyes,  
 I would not have believ'd him; no tongue but Hubert's.

HUBERT. [Stamps.] Come forth.

Re-enter Attendants, with cord, irons, &c.

Do as I bid you do. 72

ARTHUR. O! save me, Hubert, save me! my eyes  
 are out

Even with the fierce looks of these bloody men.

HUBERT. Give me the iron, I say, and bind him here.

ARTHUR. Alas! what need you be so boisterous-  
 rough? 73

I will not struggle; I will stand stone-still.

For heaven's sake, Hubert, let me not be bound!

Nay, hear me, Hubert: drive these men away,

And I will sit as quiet as a lamb; 80

I will not stir, nor wince, nor speak a word,

Nor look upon the iron angrily.

Thrust but these men away, and I'll forgive you,

Whatever torment you do put me to. 84

HUBERT. Go, stand within: let me alone with him.

FIRST ATTENDANT. I am best pleas'd to be from such  
 a deed. [Exeunt Attendants.]

ARTHUR. Alas! I then have chid away my friend:

He hath a stern look, but a gentle heart. 88

Let him come back, that his compassion may

Give life to yours.

HUBERT. Come, boy, prepare yourself.

ARTHUR. Is there no remedy?

HUBERT. None, but to lose your eyes.

ARTHUR. O heaven! that there were but a mote in  
 yours, 92

A grain, a dust, a gnat, a wandering hair,

Any annoyance in that precious sense;

Then feeling what small things are boisterous there,  
Your vile intent must needs seem horrible. 96

HUBERT. Is this your promise? go to, hold your  
tongue.

ARTHUR. Hubert, the utterance of a brace of tongues  
Must needs want pleading for a pair of eyes :

Let me not hold my tongue ; let me not, Hubert : 100

Or Hubert, if you will, cut out my tongue,

So I may keep mine eyes : O ! spare mine eyes,

Though to no use but still to look on you :

Lo ! by my troth, the instrument is cold 104

And would not harm me.

HUBERT. I can heat it, boy.

ARTHUR. No, in good sooth ; the fire is dead with  
grief,

Being create for comfort, to be us'd

In undeserv'd extremes : see else yourself ; 108

There is no malice in this burning coal ;

The breath of heaven hath blown his spirit out

And strew'd repentant ashes on his head. 111

HUBERT. But with my breath I can revive it, boy.

ARTHUR. An if you do you will but make it blush  
And glow with shame of your proceedings, Hubert :

Nay, it perchance will sparkle in your eyes ;

And like a dog that is compell'd to fight, 116

Snatch at his master that doth tarre him on.

All things that you should use to do me wrong

Deny their office : only you do lack

That mercy which fierce fire and iron extends, 120

Creatures of note for mercy-lacking uses.

HUBERT. Well, see to live ; I will not touch thine  
eyes

For all the treasure that thine uncle owes :

Yet am I sworn and I did purpose, boy, 124

With this same very iron to burn them out.

ARTHUR. O ! now you look like Hubert, all this while  
You were disguised.

HUBERT. Peace ! no more. Adieu.

Your uncle must not know but you are dead ; 128

I'll fill these dogged spies with false reports :

And pretty child, sleep doubtless and secure,

That Hubert for the wealth of all the world 131

Will not offend thee.

ARTHUR.

O heaven! I thank you, Hubert.

HUBERT. Silence! no more, go closely in with me:  
Much danger do I undergo for thee. [Exeunt.

SCENE II.—The Same. A Room of State in the Palace.

Enter KING JOHN, crowned; PEMBROKE, SALISBURY, and other  
Lords. The KING takes his state.

KING JOHN. Here once again we sit, once again  
crown'd,

And look'd upon, I hope, with cheerful eyes.

PEMBROKE. This 'once again', but that your high-  
ness pleas'd,

Was once superfluous: you were crown'd before, 4

And that high royalty was ne'er pluck'd off,

The faiths of men ne'er stained with revolt;

Fresh expectation troubled not the land

With any long'd-for change or better state. 8

SALISBURY. Therefore, to be possess'd with double  
pomp,

To guard a title that was rich before,

To gild refined gold, to paint the lily,

To throw a perfume on the violet, 12

To smooth the ice, or add another hue

Unto the rainbow, or with taper-light

To seek the beautiful eye of heaven to garnish,

Is wasteful and ridiculous excess. 16

PEMBROKE. But that your royal pleasure must be  
done,

This act is as an ancient tale new told,

And in the last repeating troublesome,

Being urg'd at a time unseasonable. 20

SALISBURY. In this the antique and well-noted face

Of plain old form is much disfigured;

And, like a shifted wind unto a sail,

It makes the course of thoughts to fetch about, 24

Startles and frights consideration,

Makes sound opinion sick and truth suspected,

For putting on so new a fashion'd robe.

PEMBROKE. When workmen strive to do better than  
well 28

They do confound their skill in covetousness;

And oftentimes excusing of a fault

Doth make the fault the worse by the excuse :  
 As patches set upon a little breach 32  
 Discredit more in hiding of the fault  
 Than did the fault before it was so patch'd.

SALISBURY. To this effect, before you were new-crown'd,

We breathed our counsel : but it pleas'd your highness  
 To overbear it, and we are all well pleas'd ; 37  
 Since all and every part of what we would  
 Doth make a stand at what your highness will.

KING JOHN. Some reasons of this double coronation  
 I have possess'd you with and think them strong ; 41  
 And more, more strong,—when lesser is my fear,—  
 I shall indue you with : meantime but ask  
 What you would have reform'd that is not well ; 44  
 And well shall you perceive how willingly  
 I will both hear and grant you your requests.

REMBROKE. Then I,—as one that am the tongue of  
 these  
 To sound the purposes of all their hearts,— 48  
 Both for myself and them,—but, chief of all,  
 Your safety, for the which myself and them  
 Bend their best studies,—heartily request  
 The enfranchisement of Arthur ; whose restraint 52  
 Doth move the murmuring lips of discontent.  
 To break into this dangerous argument :  
 If what in rest you have in right you hold,  
 Why then your fears,—which, as they say, attend 56  
 The steps of wrong,—should move you to mew up  
 Your tender kinsman, and to choke his days  
 With barbarous ignorance, and deny his youth  
 The rich advantage of good exercise ? 60  
 That the time's enemies may not have this  
 To grace occasions, let it be our suit  
 That you have bid us ask his liberty ;  
 Which for our goods we do no further ask 64  
 Than whereupon our weal, on you depending,  
 Counts it your weal he have his liberty.

Enter HUBERT.

KING JOHN. Let it be so : I do commit his youth  
 To your direction. Hubert, what news with you ?

(Taking him apart.

• PEMBROKE. This is the man should do the bloody deed:  
 He show'd his warrant to a friend of mine :  
 The image of a wicked heinous fault  
 Lives in his eye ; that close aspect of his 72  
 Does show the mood of a much troubled breast ;  
 And I do fearfully believe 'tis done,  
 What we so fear'd he had a charge to do.

SALISBURY. The colour of the king doth come and go  
 Between his purpose and his conscience, 77  
 Like heralds 'twixt two dreadful battles set :  
 His passion is so ripe it needs must break.

PEMBROKE. And when it breaks, I fear will issue  
 thence 80  
 The foul corruption of a sweet child's death.

KING JOHN. We cannot hold mortality's strong  
 hand :  
 Good lords, although my will to give is living,  
 The suit which you demand is gone and dead : 84  
 He tells us Arthur is deceas'd to-night.

SALISBURY. Indeed we fear'd his sickness was past  
 cure.

PEMBROKE. Indeed we heard how near his death he  
 was  
 Before the child himself felt he was sick : 88  
 This must be answer'd, either here or hence.

KING JOHN. Why do you bend such solemn brows on  
 me ?

Think you I bear the shears of destiny ?  
 Have I commandment on the pulse of life ? 92

SALISBURY. It is apparent foul play ; and 'tis shame  
 That greatness should so grossly offer it :  
 So thrive it in your game ! and so, farewell.

PEMBROKE. Stay yet, Lord Salisbury ; I'll go with  
 thee, 96

• And find the inheritance of this poor child,  
 His little kingdom of a forced grave. •  
 That blood which ow'd the breadth of all this isle,  
 Three foot of it doth hold : bad world the while ! 100  
 This must not be thus borne : this will break out •  
 To all our sorrows, and ere long I doubt. [Exeunt Lords.

KING JOHN. They burn in indignation. I repent :  
 There is no sure foundation set on blood, 104  
 No certain life achiev'd by others' death.



Enter a Messenger.

A fearful eye thou hast : where is that blood  
That I have seen inhabit in those cheeks ?  
So foul a sky clears not without a storm : 108  
Pour down thy weather : how goes all in France ?

MESSENGER. From France to England. Never such  
a power

For any foreign preparation  
Was levied in the body of a land. 112

The copy of your speed is learn'd by them ;  
For when you should be told they do prepare,  
The tidings come that they are all arriv'd.

KING JOHN. O ! where hath our intelligence been  
drunk ? 116

Where hath it slept ? Where is my mother's care  
That such an army could be drawn in France,  
And she not hear of it ?

MESSENGER. My liege, her ear  
Is stopp'd with dust : the first of April died 120  
Your noble mother ; and, as I hear, my lord,  
The Lady Constance in a frenzy died  
Three days before : but this from rumour's tongue  
I idly heard ; if true or false I know not. 124

KING JOHN. Withhold thy speed, dreadful occasion !  
O ! make a league with me, till I have pleas'd  
My discontented peers. What ! mother dead !  
How wildly then walks my estate in France ! 128  
Under whose conduct came those powers of France  
That thou for truth giv'st out are landed here ?

MESSENGER. Under the Dauphin.

KING JOHN. Thou hast made me giddy  
With these ill tidings.

Enter the BASTARD, and PETER OF POMFRET.

Now, what says the world . . .  
To your proceedings ? do not seek to stuff 133  
My head with more ill news, for it is full.

THE BASTARD. But if you be afeard to hear the worst,  
Then let the worst unheard fall on your head. 136

KING JOHN. Bear with me, cousin, for I was amaz'd  
Under the tide ; but now I breathe again  
Aloft the flood, and can give audience  
To any tongue, speak it of what it will. 140

THE BASTARD. How I have sped among the clergymen,  
 The sums I have collected shall express.  
 But as I travell'd hither through the land,  
 I find the people strangely fantasied, 144  
 Possess'd with rumours, full of idle dreams,  
 Not knowing what they fear, but full of fear.  
 And here's a prophet that I brought with me  
 From forth the streets of Pomfret, whom I found 148  
 With many hundreds treading on his heel's ;  
 To whom he sung, in rude harsh-sounding rimes,  
 That, ere the next Ascension-day at noon,  
 Your highness should deliver up your crown. 152

KING JOHN. Thou idle dreamer, wherefore didst thou  
 so ?

PETER. Foreknowing that the truth will fall out so.

KING JOHN. Hubert, away with him ; imprison him :  
 And on that day at noon, whereon, he says, 156  
 I shall yield up my crown, let him be hang'd.  
 Deliver him to safety, and return,  
 For I must use thee. [Exit HUBERT, with PETER.

O my gentle cousin,  
 Hear'st thou the news abroad, who are arriv'd ? 160

THE BASTARD. The French, my lord ; men's mouths  
 are full of it :

Besides, I met Lord Bigot and Lord Salisbury,  
 With eyes as red as new-enkindled fire, •  
 And others more, going to seek the grave 164  
 Of Arthur, whom they say is kill'd to-night  
 On your suggestion.

KING JOHN. Gentle kinsman, go,  
 And thrust thyself into their companies.  
 I have a way to win their loves again ; 168  
 Bring them before me.

THE BASTARD. I will seek them out.

KING JOHN. Nay, but make haste ; the better foot  
 before.

O ! let me have no subject enemies  
 When adverse foreigners affright my towns 172  
 With dreadful pomp of stout invasion.  
 Be Mercury, set feathers to thy heels,  
 And fly like thought from them to me again.

THE BASTARD. The spirit of the time shall teach me  
 speed, 176

KING JOHN. Spoke like a sprightful noble gentleman.

[Exit the BASTARD.]

Go after him ; for he perhaps shall need  
Some messenger betwixt me and the peers ;  
And be thou he.

MESSANGER. With all my heart, my liege. [Exit.]

KING JOHN. My mother dead ! 181

Re-enter HUBERT.

HUBERT. My lord, they say five moons were seen  
to-night :

Four fixed, and the fifth did whirl about  
The other four in wondrous motion. 184

KING JOHN. Five moons !

HUBERT. Old men and beldams in the streets  
Do prophesy upon it dangerously :

Young Arthur's death is common in their mouths ;  
And when they talk of him, they shake their heads  
And whisper one another in the ear. 189

And he that speaks, doth gripe the hearer's wrist  
Whilst he that hears makes fearful action,  
With wrinkled brows, with nods, with rolling eyes.  
I saw a smith stand with his hammer, thus, 193

The whilst his iron did on the anvil cool,  
With open mouth swallowing a tailor's news ;  
Who, with his shears and measure in his hand, 196  
Standing on slippers,—which his nimble haste  
Had falsely thrust upon contrary feet,—

Told of a many thousand warlike French,  
That were embattailed and rank'd in Kent. 200  
Another lean unwash'd artificer

Cuts off his tale and talks of Arthur's death.

KING JOHN. Why seek'st thou to possess me with  
these fears ?

Why urgest thou so oft young Arthur's death ? 204

Thy hand hath murder'd him : I had a mighty cause  
To wish him dead, but thou hadst none to kill him.

HUBERT. No had, my lord ! why, did you not pro-  
• voke me ? 207

KING JOHN. It is the curse of kings to be attended  
By slaves that take their humours for a warrant  
To break within the bloody house of life,  
And on the winking of authority

To understand a law, to know the meaning 212  
Of dangerous majesty, when, perchance, it frowns  
More upon humour than advis'd respect.

HUBERT. Here is your hand and seal for what I did.

KING JOHN. O ! when the last account 'twixt heaven  
and earth 216

Is to be made, then shall this hand and seal  
Witness against us to damnation.  
How oft the sight of means to do ill deeds  
Makes ill deeds done ! Hadst not thou been by, 220  
A fellow by the hand of nature mark'd,  
Quoted and sign'd to do a deed of shame,  
This murder had not come into my mind ;  
But taking note of thy abhorr'd aspect, 224  
Finding thee fit for bloody villany,  
Apt, liable to be employ'd in danger,  
I faintly broke with thee of Arthur's death ;  
And thou, to be endeared to a king, 228  
Made it no conscience to destroy a prince.

HUBERT. My lord,—

KING JOHN. Hadst thou but shook thy head or made  
a pause

When I spake darkly what I purposed, 232  
Or turn'd an eye of doubt upon my face,  
As bid me tell my tale in express words,  
Deep shame had struck me dumb, made me break off,  
And those thy fears might have wrought fears in me :  
But thou didst understand me by my signs 237  
And didst in signs again parley with sin ;  
Yea, without stop, didst let thy heart consent,  
And consequently thy rude hand to act 240  
The deed which both our tongues held vile to name.  
Out of my sight, and never see me more !  
My nobles leave me ; and my state is brav'd,  
Even at my gates, with ranks of foreign powers : 244  
Nay, in the body of this fleshly land,  
This kingdom, this confine of blood and breath,  
Hostility and civil tumult reigns  
Between my conscience and my cousin's death. 248

HUBERT. Arm you against your other enemies,  
I'll make a peace between your soul and you.  
Young Arthur is alive : this hand of mine  
Is yet a maiden and an innocent hand, 252

Not painted with the crimson spots of blood.  
 Within this bosom never enter'd yet  
 The dreadful motion of a murderous thought ;  
 And you have slander'd nature in my form, 256  
 Which, howsoever rude exteriorly,  
 Is yet the cover of a fairer mind  
 Than to be butcher of an innocent child.

KING JOHN. Doth Arthur live ? O ! haste thee to the  
 peers, 260  
 Throw this report on their incensed rage,  
 And make them tame to their obedience.  
 Forgive the comment that my passion made  
 Upon thy feature ; for my rage was blind, 264  
 And foul imaginary eyes of blood  
 Presented thee more hideous than thou art.  
 O ! answer not ; but to my closet bring  
 The angry lords, with all expedient haste. 268  
 I conjure thee but slowly ; run more fast. [Exeunt.

SCENE III.—The Same. Before the Castle.

Enter ARTHUR, on the Walls.

ARTHUR. The wall is high ; and yet will I leap down.  
 Good ground, be pitiful and hurt me not !  
 There's few or none do know me ; if they did,  
 This ship-boy's semblance hath disguis'd me quite. 4  
 I am afraid ; and yet I'll venture it.  
 If I get down, and do not break my limbs, . . .  
 I'll find a thousand shifts to get away :  
 As good to die and go, as die and stay. [Leaps down.  
 O me ! my uncle's spirit is in these stones : 9  
 Heaven take my soul, and England keep my bones ! [Dies.

Enter PEMBROKE, SALISBURY, and BIGOT.

SALISBURY. Lords, I will meet him at Saint Edmunds-  
 bury.  
 It is our safety, and we must embrace 12  
 This gentle offer of the perilous time.  
 PEMBROKE. Who brought that letter from the car-  
 dinal ?  
 SALISBURY. The Count Melun, a noble lord of France ;  
 Whose private with me of the Dauphin's love, 16  
 Is much more general than these lines import

BIGOT. To-morrow morning let us meet him then.

SALISBURY. Or rather then set forward ; for 'twill be  
Two long days' journey, lords, or e'er we meet. 20

Enter the BASTARD.

THE BASTARD. Once more to-day well met, distemper'd lords !

The king by me requests your presence straight.

SALISBURY. The king hath dispossest himself of us :  
We will not line his thin bestained cloak 24

With our pure honours, nor attend the foot  
That leaves the print of blood where'er it walks.

Return and tell him so : we know the worst.

THE BASTARD. Whate'er you think, good words, I  
think, were best. 28

SALISBURY. Our griefs, and not our manners, reason  
now.

THE BASTARD. But there is little reason in your grief ;  
Therefore 'twere reason you had manners now.

PEMBROKE. Sir, sir, impatience hath his privilege.

THE BASTARD. 'Tis true ; to hurt his master, no man  
else. 33

SALISBURY. This is the prison. [Seeing ARTHUR.

What is he lies here ?

PEMBROKE. O death, made proud with pure and  
princely beauty !

The earth had not a hole to hide this deed. 36

SALISBURY. Murder, as hating what himself hath done,  
Doth lay it open to urge on revenge.

BIGOT. Or when he doom'd this beauty to a grave,  
Found it too precious-princely for a grave. 40

SALISBURY. Sir Richard, what think you ? Have you  
beheld,

Or have you read, or heard ? or could you think ?

Or-do you almost think, although you see,  
That you do see ? could thought, without this object,  
Form such another ? This is the very top, 45

The height, the crest, or crest unto the crest,  
Of murder's arms : this is the bloodiest shame,

The wildest savagery, the vilest stroke, 48  
That ever wall-eyed wrath or staring rage

Presented to the tears of soft remorse.

PEMBROKE. All murders past do stand excus'd in this :

And this, so sole and so unmatched,  
 Shall give a holiness, a purity,  
 To the yet unbegotten sin of times ;  
 And prove a deadly bloodshed but a jest,  
 Exemplified by this heinous spectacle. 56

THE BASTARD. It is a damned and a bloody work ;  
 The graceless action of a heavy hand,  
 If that it be the work of any hand.

•SALISBURY. If that it be the work of any hand !  
 We had a kind of light what would ensue : 61  
 It is the shameful work of Hubert's hand ;  
 The practice and the purpose of the king :  
 From whose obedience I forbid my soul, 64  
 Kneeling before this ruin of sweet life,  
 And breathing to his breathless excellence  
 The incense of a vow, a holy vow,  
 Never to taste the pleasures of the world, 68  
 Never to be infected with delight,  
 Nor conversant with ease and idleness,  
 Till I have set a glory to this hand,  
 By giving it the worship of revenge. 72

PEMBROKE. } Our souls religiously confirm thy words.  
 BIGOT. }

Enter HUBERT.

HUBERT. Lords, I am hot with haste in seeking you :  
 Arthur doth live : the king hath sent for you.

SALISBURY. O ! he is bold and blushes not at death.  
 Avaunt, thou hateful villain ! get thee gone. 77

HUBERT. I am no villain.

SALISBURY. [Drawing his sword.] Must I rob the law ?

THE BASTARD. Your sword is bright, sir ; put it up  
 again.

SALISBURY. Not till I sheathe it in a murderer's skin.

HUBERT. Stand back, Lord Salisbury, stand back, I  
 say : 81

By heaven, I think my sword's as sharp as yours.  
 I would not have you, lord, forget yourself,  
 Nor tempt the danger of my true defence ; 84  
 Lest I, by marking of your rage, forget  
 Your worth, your greatness, and nobility.

BIGOT. Out, dunghill ! dar'st thou brave a noble-  
 man ?

HUBERT. Not for my life ; but yet I dare defend  
My innocent life against an emperor. 89

SALISBURY. Thou art a murderer.

HUBERT. Do not prove me so ;  
Yet I am none. Whose tongue soe'er speaks false,  
Not truly speaks ; who speaks not truly, lies. 92

PEMBROKE. Cut him to pieces.

THE BASTARD.

Keep the peace, I say.

SALISBURY. Stand by, or I shall gall you, Faulcon-  
bridge.

THE BASTARD. Thou wert better gall the devil, Salis-  
bury :

If thou but frown on me, or stir thy foot, 96  
Or teach thy hasty spleen to do me shame,  
I'll strike thee dead. Put up thy sword betime :  
Or I'll so maul you and your toasting-iron,  
That you shall think the devil is come from hell. 100

BIGOT. What wilt thou do, renowned Faulcon-  
bridge ?

Second a villain and a murderer ?

HUBERT. Lord Bigot, I am none.

BIGOT. Who kill'd this prince ?

HUBERT. 'Tis not an hour since I left him well :  
I honour'd him, I lov'd him ; and will weep 105  
My date of life out for his sweet life's loss.

SALISBURY. Trust not those cunning waters of his  
eyes,

For villany is not without such rheum ; 108  
And he, long traded in it, makes it seem  
Like rivers of remorse and innocency.

Away with me, all you whose souls abhor  
The uncleanly savours of a slaughter-house ; 112  
For I am stifled with this smell of sin.

BIGOT. Away toward Bury ; to the Dauphin there !

PEMBROKE. There tell the king he may inquire us  
out. [Exeunt Lords.

THE BASTARD. Here 's a good world ! Knew you of  
this fair work ? 116

Beyond the infinite and boundless reach  
Of mercy, if thou didst this deed of death,  
Art thou damn'd, Hubert.

HUBERT. Do but hear me, sir.

THE BASTARD. Ha ! I'll tell thee what ; 120



Thou art damn'd as black—nay, nothing is so black ;  
 Thou art more deep damn'd than Prince Lucifer :  
 There is not yet so ugly a fiend of hell  
 As thou shalt be, if thou didst kill this child. 124

HUBERT. Upon my soul,—

THE BASTARD. If thou didst but consent  
 To this most cruel act, do but despair ;  
 And if thou want'st a cord, the smallest thread  
 That ever spider twisted from her womb 128  
 Will serve to strangle thee ; a rush will be a beam  
 To hang thee on ; or wouldst thou drown thyself,  
 Put but a little water in a spoon,  
 And it shall be as all the ocean, 132  
 Enough to stifle such a villain up.  
 I do suspect thee very grievously.

HUBERT. If I in act, consent, or sin of thought,  
 Be guilty of the stealing that sweet breath 136  
 Which was embounded in this beauteous clay,  
 Let hell want pains enough to torture me.  
 I left him well.

THE BASTARD. Go, bear him in thine arms.  
 I am amaz'd, methinks, and lose my way 140  
 Among the thorns and dangers of this world.  
 How easy dost thou take all England up !  
 From forth this morsel of dead royalty,  
 The life, the right and truth of all this realm 144  
 Is fled to heaven ; and England now is left  
 To tug and scramble and to part by the tectle  
 The unow'd interest of proud swelling state.  
 Now for the bare-pick'd bone of majesty 148  
 Doth dogged war bristle his angry crest,  
 And snarleth in the gentle eyes of peace :  
 Now powers from home and discontents at home  
 Meet in one line ; and vast confusion waits, 152  
 As doth a raven on a sick-fallen beast,—  
 The imminent decay of wrested pomp.  
 Now happy he whose cloak and ceinture can  
 Hold out this tempest. Bear away that child 156  
 And follow me with speed : I'll to the king :  
 A thousand businesses are brief in hand,  
 And heaven itself doth frown upon the land. [Exeunt.

## ACT V.

SCENE I.—The Same. A Room in the Palace.

Enter KING JOHN, PANDULPH with the crown, and Attendants.

KING JOHN. Thus have I yielded up into your hand  
The circle of my glory.

PANDULPH. [Giving JOHN the crown.] Take again  
From this my hand, as holding of the pope,  
Your sovereign greatness and authority. 4

KING JOHN. Now keep your holy word : go meet the  
French,

And from his holiness use all your power  
To stop their marches 'fore we are inflam'd.  
Our discontented counties do revolt, 8

Our people quarrel with obedience,  
Swearing allegiance and the love of soul  
To stranger blood, to foreign royalty.

This inundation of mistemper'd humour 12  
Rests by you only to be qualified :

Then pause not ; for the present time's so sick,  
That present medicine must be minister'd,  
Or overthrow incurable ensues. 16

PANDULPH. It was my breath that blew this tempest  
up

Upon your stubborn usage of the pope ;  
But since you are a gentle convertite,  
My tongue shall hush again this storm of war 20

And make fair weather in your blustering land.  
On this Ascension-day, remember well,  
Upon your oath of service to the pope,  
Go I to make the French lay down their arms. [Exit. 25

KING JOHN. Is this Ascension-day ? Did not the  
prophet 25

Say that before Ascension-day at noon  
My crown I should give off ? Even so I have :  
I did suppose it should be on constraint ; 28  
But, heaven be thank'd, it is but voluntary.

Enter the BASTARD.

THE BASTARD. All Kent hath yielded ; nothing there  
holds out

But Dover Castle : London hath receiv'd,  
 Like a kind host, the Dauphin and his powers : 32  
 Your nobles will not hear you, but are gone  
 To offer service to your enemy ;  
 And wild amazement hurries up and down  
 The little number of your doubtful friends. 36

KING JOHN. Would not my lords return to me again  
 After they heard young Arthur was alive ?

. THE BASTARD. They found him dead and cast into the  
 streets,

An empty casket, where the jewel of life 40  
 By some damn'd hand was robb'd and ta'en away.

KING JOHN. That villain Hubert told me he did live.

THE BASTARD. So, on my soul, he did, for aught he  
 knew.

But wherefore do you droop ? why look you sad ? 44

Be great in act, as you have been in thought ;

Let not the world see fear and sad distrust

Govern the motion of a kingly eye :

Be stirring as the time ; be fire with fire ; 48

Threaten the threatener, and outface the brow

Of bragging horror : so shall inferior eyes,

That borrow their behaviours from the great,

Grow great by your example and put on 52

The dauntless spirit of resolution.

Away ! and glisten like the god of war

When he intendeth to become the field :

Show boldness and aspiring confidence. 56

What ! shall they seek the lion in his den

And fright him there ? and make him tremble there ?

O ! let it not be said. Forage, and run

To meet displeasure farther from the doors, 60

And grapple with him ere he comes so nigh.

KING JOHN. The legate of the pope hath been with me

And I have made a happy peace with him ;

And he hath promis'd to dismiss the powers 64

Led by the Dauphin.

THE BASTARD. O inglorious league !

Shall we, upon the footing of our land,

Send fair-play orders and make compromise,

Insinuation, parley and base truce 68

To arms invasive ? shall a beardless boy,

A cocker'd silken wanton, brave our fields,

And flesh his spirit in a warlike soil,  
 Mocking the air with colours idly spread, 72  
 And find no check? Let us, my liege, to arms:  
 Perchance the cardinal cannot make your peace;  
 Or if he do, let it at least be said  
 They saw we had a purpose of defence. 76

KING JOHN. Have thou the ordering of this present time.

THE BASTARD. Away then, with good courage! yet,  
 I know,  
 Our party may well meet a prouder foe. [Exeunt.

SCENE II.—A Plain, near St. Edmundsbury. The French Camp.

Enter, in arms, LEWIS, SALISBURY, MELUN, PEMBROKE, BIGOT,  
 and Soldiers.

LEWIS. My Lord Melun, let this be copied out,  
 And keep it safe for our remembrance.  
 Return the precedent to these lords again;  
 That, having our fair order written down, 4  
 Both they and we, perusing o'er these notes,  
 May know wherefore we took the sacrament,  
 And keep our faiths firm and inviolable.

SALISBURY. Upon our sides it never shall be broken.  
 And, noble Dauphin, albeit we swear 9  
 A voluntary zeal, an unurg'd faith  
 To your proceedings; yet, believe me, prince,  
 I am not glad that such a sore of time 12  
 Should seek a plaster by contemn'd revolt,  
 And heal the inveterate canker of one wound  
 By making many. O! it grieves my soul  
 That I must draw this metal from my side 16  
 To be a widow-maker! O! and there  
 Where honourable rescue and defence  
 Cries out upon the name of Salisbury.  
 But such is the infection of the time, 20  
 That, for the health and physic of our right,  
 We cannot deal but with the very hand  
 Of stern injustice and confused wrong.  
 And is't not pity, O my grieved friends! 24  
 That we, the sons and children of this isle,  
 Were born to see so sad an hour as this;  
 Wherein we step after a stranger march

Upon her gentle bosom, and fill up 28  
 Her enemies' ranks,—I must withdraw and weep  
 Upon the spot of this enforced cause,—  
 To grace the gentry of a land remote,  
 And follow unacquainted colours here ? 32  
 What, here ? O nation ! that thou couldst remove ;  
 That Neptune's arms, who clippeth thee about,  
 Would bear thee from the knowledge of thyself,  
 And gripple thee unto a pagan shore ; 36  
 Where these two Christian armies might combine  
 The blood of malice in a vein of league,  
 And not to spend it so unneighbourly !

LEWIS. A noble temper dost thou show in this ; 40  
 And great affections wrestling in thy bosom  
 Do make an earthquake of nobility.  
 O ! what a noble combat hast thou fought  
 Between compulsion and a brave respect. 44  
 Let me wipe off this honourable dew,  
 That silverly doth progress on thy cheeks :  
 My heart hath melted at a lady's tears,  
 Being an ordinary inundation ; 48  
 But this effusion of such manly drops,  
 This shower, blown up by tempest of the soul,  
 Startles mine eyes, and makes me more amaz'd  
 Than had I seen the vaulty top of heaven . 52  
 Figur'd quite o'er with burning meteors.  
 Lift up thy brow, renowned Salisbury,  
 And with a great heart heave away this storm :  
 Commend these waters to those baby eyes 56  
 That never saw the giant world enrag'd ;  
 Nor met with fortune other than at feasts,  
 Full warm of blood, of mirth, of gossiping.  
 Come, come ; for thou shalt thrust thy hand as deep  
 Into the purse of rich prosperity 61  
 As Lewis himself : so, nobles, shall you all,  
 That knit your sinews to the strength of mine.

Enter PANDULPH, attended.

And even there, methinks, an angel spake : 64  
 Look, where the holy legate comes apace,  
 To give us warrant from the hand of heaven,  
 And on our actions set the name of right  
 With holy breath.

PANDULPH. Hail, noble prince of France ! 68  
 The next is this : King John hath reconcil'd  
 Himself to Rome ; his spirit is come in  
 That so stood out against the holy church,  
 The great metropolis and see of Rome. 72  
 Therefore thy threatening colours now wind up,  
 And tame the savage spirit of wild war,  
 That, like a lion foster'd up at hand,  
 It may lie gently at the foot of peace, 76  
 And be no further harmful than in show.

LEWIS. Your grace shall pardon me ; I will not back :  
 I am too high-born to be propertied,  
 To be a secondary at control, 80  
 Or useful serving-man and instrument  
 To any sovereign state throughout the world.  
 Your breath first kindled the dead coals of wars  
 Between this chastis'd kingdom and myself, 84  
 And brought in matter that should feed this fire ;  
 And now 'tis far too large to be blown out  
 With that same weak wind which enkindled it.  
 You taught me how to know the face of right, 88  
 Acquainted me with interest to this land,  
 Yea, thrust this enterprise into my heart ;  
 And come you now to tell me John hath made 91  
 His peace with Rome ? What is that peace to me ?  
 I, by the honour of my marriage-bed,  
 After young Arthur, claim this land for mine ;  
 And, now it is half-conquer'd, must I back 95  
 Because that John hath made his peace with Rome ?  
 Am I Rome's slave ? What penny hath Rome borne,  
 What men provided, what munition sent,  
 To underprop this action ? is't not I  
 That undergo this charge ? who else but I, 100  
 And such as to my claim are liable,  
 Sweat in this business and maintain this war ?  
 Have I not heard these islanders shout out,  
 ' Vive le roy ! ' as I have bank'd their towns ? 104  
 Have I not here the best cards for the game  
 To win this easy match play'd for a crown ?  
 And shall I now give o'er the yielded set ?  
 No, no, on my soul, it never shall be said. 108

PANDULPH. You look but on the outside of this work.

LEWIS. Outside or inside, I will not return

Till my attempt so much be glorified  
 As to my ample hope was promised 112  
 Before I drew this gallant head of war,  
 And cull'd these fiery spirits from the world,  
 To outlook conquest and to win renown  
 Even in the jaws of danger and of death. [Trumpet sounds.  
 What lusty trumpet thus doth summon us ? 117

Enter the BASTARD, attended.

THE BASTARD. According to the fair play of the world,  
 Let me have audience ; I am sent to speak :  
 My holy Lord of Milan, from the king 120  
 I come, to learn how you have dealt for him ;  
 And, as you answer, I do know the scope  
 And warrant limited unto my tongue.

PANDULPH. The Dauphin is too wilful-opposite,  
 And will not temporize with my entreaties : 125  
 He flatly says he'll not lay down his arms.

THE BASTARD. By all the blood that ever fury  
 breath'd,  
 The youth says well. Now hear our English king ;  
 For thus his royalty doth speak in me. 129  
 He is prepar'd ; and reason too he should :  
 This apish and unmannerly approach,  
 This harness'd masque and unadvised revel, 132  
 This unhair'd sauciness and boyish troops,  
 The king doth smile at ; and is well prepar'd  
 To whip this dwarfish war, these pigmy arms,  
 From out the circle of his territories. 136  
 That hand which had the strength, even at your door,  
 To cudgel you and make you take the hatch ;  
 To dive, like buckets, in concealed wells ;  
 To crouch in litter of your stable planks ; 140  
 To lie like pawns lock'd up in chests and trunks ;  
 To hug with swine ; to seek sweet safety out  
 In vaults and prisons ; and to thrill and shake,  
 Even at the crying of your nation's crow, 144  
 Thinking this voice an armed Englishman :  
 Shall that victorious hand be feebled here  
 That in your chambers gave you chastisement ?  
 No ! Know, the gallant monarch is in arms, 148  
 And like an eagle o'er his airy towers,  
 To souse annoyance that comes near his nest.

And you degenerate, you ingrate revolts,  
 You bloody Neroes, ripping up the womb 152  
 Of your dear mother England, blush for shame;  
 For your own ladies and pale-visag'd maids  
 Like Amazons come tripping after drums,  
 Their thimbles into armed gauntlets change, 156  
 Their needs to lances, and their gentle hearts  
 To fierce and bloody inclination.

LEWIS. There end thy brave, and turn thy face in  
 peace;  
 We grant thou canst outscold us : fare thee well ; 160  
 We hold our time too precious to be spent  
 With such a brabblor.

PANDULPH. Give me leave to speak.

THE BASTARD. No, I will speak.

LEWIS. We will attend to neither.  
 Strike up the drums ; and let the tongue of war 164  
 Plead for our interest and our being here.

THE BASTARD. Indeed, your drums, being beaten, will  
 cry out ;  
 And so shall you, being beaten. Do but start  
 An echo with the clamour of thy drum, 168  
 And even at hand a drum is ready brac'd  
 That shall reverberate all as loud as thine ;  
 Sound but another, and another shall  
 As loud as thine rattle the welkin's ear 172  
 And mock the deep-mouth'd thunder : for at hand,—  
 Not trusting to this halting legate here,  
 Whom he hath us'd rather for sport than need,—  
 Is warlike John ; and in his forehead sits 176  
 A bare-ribb'd death, whose office is this day  
 To feast upon whole thousands of the French.

LEWIS. Strike up our drums, to find this danger out.

THE BASTARD. And thou shalt find it, Dauphin, do not  
 • • doubt. • • [Exeunt.

SCENE III.—The Same. A Field of Battle.

Alarums. Enter KING JOHN and HUBERT.

KING JOHN. How goes the day with us ? O ! tell me,  
 Hubert.

HUBERT. Badly, I fear. How fares your majesty ?

KING JOHN. This fever, that hath troubled me so long,  
 Lies heavy on me : O ! my heart is sick. 4



Enter a Messenger.

MESSANGER. My lord, your valiant kinsman, Faulconbridge,  
Desires your Majesty to leave the field,  
And send him word by me which way you go.

KING JOHN. Tell him, toward Swinstead, to the abbey  
there. 8

MESSENGER. Be of good comfort : for the great supply  
That was expected by the Dauphin here,  
Are wrack'd three nights ago on Goodwin sands.  
This news was brought to Richard but even now. 12  
The French fight coldly, and retire themselves.

KING JOHN. Ay me ! this tyrant fever burns me up,  
And will not let me welcome this good news.  
Set on toward Swinstead : to my litter straight ; 16  
Weakness possesseth me, and I am faint. [Exeunt.

SCENE IV.—The Same. Another Part of the Same.

Enter SALISBURY, PEMBROKE, BIGOT, and Others.

SALISBURY. I did not think the king so stor'd with  
friends.

PEMBROKE. Up once again ; put spirit in the French :  
If they miscarry we miscarry too.

SALISBURY. That misbegotten devil, Faulconbridge,  
In spite of spite, alone upholds the day. 5

PEMBROKE. They say King John, sore sick, hath left  
the field.

Enter MELUN wounded, and led by Soldiers.

MELUN. Lead me to the revolts of England here.

SALISBURY. When we were happy we had other names.

PEMBROKE. It is the Count Melun.

SALISBURY. Wounded to death.

MELUN. Fly, noble English ; you are bought and sold ;  
Unthread the rude eye of rebellion, 12

And welcome home again discarded faith.

Seek out King John and fall before his feet ;  
For if the French be lords of this loud day,  
Hé means to recompense the pains you take

By cutting off your heads. Thus hath he sworn, 16  
And I with him, and many moe with me

Upon the altar at Saint Edmundsbury ;  
Even on that altar where we swore to you

Dear amity and everlasting love. 20

SALISBURY. May this be possible ? may this be true ?

MELUN. Have I not hideous death within my view,  
Retaining but a quantity of life,  
Which bleeds away, even as a form of wax 21  
Resolveth from his figure 'gainst the fire ?

What in the world should make me now deceive,  
Since I must lose the use of all deceit ?

Why should I then be false, since it is true 28  
That I must die here and live hence by truth ?

I say again, if Lewis do win the day,  
He is forsworn, if e'er those eyes of yours  
Behold another day break in the east : 32

But even this night, whose black contagious breath  
Already smokes about the burning crest  
Of the old, feeble, and day-wearied sun,  
Even this ill night, your breathing shall expire, 36

Paying the fine of rated treachery  
Even with a treacherous fine of all your lives,  
If Lewis by your assistance win the day.

Commend me to one Hubert with your king ; 40  
The love of him, and this respect besides,

For that my grandsire was an Englishman,  
Awakes my conscience to confess all this.

In lieu whereof, I pray you, bear me hence 44

From forth the noise and rumour of the field,  
Where I may think the remnant of my thoughts

In peace, and part this body and my soul  
With contemplation and devout desires. 48

SALISBURY. We do believe thee : and beshrew my soul  
But I do love the favour and the form

Of this most fair occasion, by the which  
We will untread the steps of damned flight, 52

And like a bated and retired flood,  
Leaving our rankness and irregular course,

Stoop low within those bounds we have o'erlook'd,  
And calmly run on in obedience, 56

Even to our ocean, to our great King John.

My arm shall give thee help to bear thee hence,

For I do see the cruel pangs of death

Right in thine eye. Away, my friends ! New flight ;  
And happy newness, that intends old right. 61

[Exit, leading off MELUN.]

SCENE V.—The Same. The French Camp.

Enter LEWIS and his Train

LEWIS. The sun of heaven methought was loath to  
set,  
But stay'd and made the western welkin blush,  
When the English measur'd backward their own ground  
In faint retire. O ! bravely came we off, 4  
When with a volley of our needless shot,  
After such bloody toil, we bid good night,  
And wound our tottering colours clearly up,  
Last in the field, and almost lords of it ! 8

Enter a Messenger.

MESSENGER. Where is my prince, the Dauphin ?

LEWIS. Here : what news ?

MESSENGER. The Count Melun is slain ; the English  
lords,

By his persuasion, are again fall'n off ;  
And your supply, which you have wish'd so long, 12  
Are cast away and sunk, on Goodwin sands.

LEWIS. Ah, foul shrewd news ! Beshrew thy very heart !  
I did not think to be so sad to-night

As this hath made me. Who was he that said 16

King John did fly an hour or two before

The stumbling night did part our weary powers ?

MESSENGER. Whoever spoke it, it is true, my lord.

LEWIS. Well ; keep good quarter and good care to-  
night : 20

The day shall not be up so soon as I,

To try the fair adventure of to-morrow. [Exeunt.

SCENE VI.—An open Place in the neighbourhood of Swinstead  
Abbey.

Enter the BASTARD and HUBERT, severally.

HUBERT. Who's there ? speak, ho ! speak quickly, or  
I shoot.

THE BASTARD. A friend. What art thou ?

HUBERT. Of the part of England.

THE BASTARD. Whither dost thou go ?

HUBERT. What's that to thee ? Why may not I de-  
mand 4

Of thine affairs as well as thou of mine ?

THE BASTARD. Hubert, I think ?

HUBERT. Thou hast a perfect thought :  
I will upon all hazards well believe  
Thou art my friend, that know'st my tongue so well.  
Who art thou ? 7

THE BASTARD. Who thou wilt : and if thou please,  
Thou mayst befriend me so much as to think  
I come one way of the Plantagenets.

HUBERT. Unkind remembrance ! thou and eyeless night  
Have done me shame : brave soldier, pardon me, 13  
That any accent breaking from thy tongue  
Should 'scape the true acquaintance of mine ear.

THE BASTARD. Come, come ; sans compliment, what  
news abroad ? 16

HUBERT. Why, here walk I in the black brow of night,  
To find you out.

THE BASTARD. Brief, then ; and what's the news ?

HUBERT. O ! my sweet sir, news fitting to the night,  
Black, fearful, comfortless, and horrible. 20

THE BASTARD. Show me the very wound of this ill  
news :

I am no woman : I'll not swoon at it.

HUBERT. The king, I fear, is poison'd by a monk :  
I left him almost speechless ; and broke out 24  
To acquaint you with this evil, that you might  
The better arm you to the sudden time  
Than if you had at leisure known of this.

THE BASTARD. How did he take it ? who did taste to  
him ? 28

HUBERT. A monk, I tell you ; a resolved villain,  
Whose bowels suddenly burst out : the king  
Yet speaks, and peradventure may recover.

THE BASTARD. Whom didst thou leave to tend his  
majesty ? 32

HUBERT. Why, know you not ? the lords are all come  
back,

And brought Prince Henry in their company ;  
At whose request the king hath pardon'd them,  
And they are all about his majesty. 36

THE BASTARD. Withhold thine indignation, mighty  
heaven,  
And tempt us not to bear above our power !  
I'll tell thee, Hubert, half my power this night, .

Passing these flats, are taken by the tide ; 40  
 These Lincoln Washes have devoured them :  
 Myself, well-mounted, hardly have escap'd.  
 Away before ! conduct me to the king ;  
 I doubt he will be dead or ere I come. [Exeunt.

SCENE VII.—The Orchard of Swinstead Abbey.

Enter PRINCE HENRY, SALISBURY, and BIGOT.

PRINCE HENRY. It is too late : the life of all his blood  
 Is touch'd corruptibly ; and his pure brain,—  
 Which some suppose the soul's frail dwelling-house,—  
 Doth, by the idle comments that it makes, 4  
 Foretell the ending of mortality.

Enter PEMBROKE.

PEMBROKE. His highness yet doth speak ; and holds  
 belief  
 That, being brought into the open air, • • •  
 It would allay the burning quality 8  
 Of that fell poison which assaileth him.

PRINCE HENRY. Let him be brought into the orchard  
 here.  
 Doth he still rage ? [Exit BIGOT.

PEMBROKE. He is more patient  
 Than when you left him : even now he sung. 12

PRINCE HENRY. O, vanity of sickness ! fierce extremes  
 In their continuance will not feel themselves—  
 Death, having prey'd upon the outward parts,  
 Leaves them invisible ; and his siege is now 16  
 Against the mind, the which he pricks and wounds  
 With many legions of strange fantasies,  
 Which, in their throng and press to that last hold,  
 Confound themselves. 'Tis strange that death should  
 sing. 20.

I am the cygnet to this pale faint swan,  
 Who chants a doleful hymn to his own death,  
 And from the organ-pipe of frailty sings  
 His soul and body to their lasting rest. 24

SALISBURY. Be of good comfort, prince ; for you are  
 born  
 To set a form upon that indigest  
 Which he hath left so shapeless and so rude.

Re-enter BIGOT and Attendants, carrying KING JOHN in a chair.

KING JOHN. Ay, marry, now my soul hath elbow-room;  
It would not out at windows, nor at doors. 29  
There is so hot a summer in my bosom  
That all my bowels crumble up to dust :  
I am a scribbled form, drawn with a pen 32  
Upon a parchment, and against this fire  
Do I shrink up.

PRINCE HENRY. How fares your majesty ?

KING JOHN. Poison'd, ill-fare'd; dead, forsook, cast off ;  
And none of you will bid the winter come 36  
To thrust his icy fingers in my maw ;  
Nor let my kingdom's rivers take their course  
Through my burn'd bosom ; nor entreat the north  
To make his bleak winds kiss my parched lips 40  
And comfort me with cold. I do not ask you much :  
I beg cold comfort ; and you are so strait  
And so ingrateful you deny me that.

PRINCE HENRY. O ! that there were some virtue in my  
tears, 44  
That might relieve you.

KING JOHN. The salt in them is hot.  
Within me is a hell ; and there the poison  
Is as a fiend confin'd to tyrannize  
On unreprieveable condemned blood. 48

Enter the BASTARD.

THE BASTARD. O ! I am scalded with my violent motion  
And spleen of speed to see your majesty.

KING JOHN. O cousin ! thou art come to set mine eye :  
The tackle of my heart is crack'd and burn'd, 52  
And all the shrouds wherewith my life should sail  
Are turned to one thread, one little hair ;  
My heart hath one poor string to stay it by,  
Which holds but till thy news be uttered ; 56  
And then all this thou seest is but a clod  
And module of confounded royalty.

THE BASTARD. The Dauphin is preparing hitherward,  
Where heaven he knows how we shall answer him :  
For in a night the best part of my power, 61  
As I upon advantage did remove,  
Were in the Washes all unwarily

Devoured by the unexpected flood. [The King dies.

SALISBURY. You breathe these dead news in as dead an ear. 65

My liege ! my lord ! But now a king, now thus.

PRINCE HENRY. Even so must I run on, and even so stop.

What surety of the world, what hope, what stay, 68

When this was now a king, and now is clay ?

THE BASTARD. Art thou gone so ? I do but stay behind

To do the office for thee of revenge,

And then my soul shall wait on thee to heaven, 72

As it on earth hath been thy servant still.

Now, now, you stars, that move in your right spheres,

Where be your powers ? Show now your mended faiths,

And instantly return with me again, 76

To push destruction and perpetual shame

Out of the weak door of our fainting land.

Straight let us seek, or straight we shall be sought :

The Dauphin rages at our very heels. 80

SALISBURY. It seems you know not then so much as we.

The Cardinal Pandulph is within at rest,

Who half an hour since came from the Dauphin,

And brings from him such offers of our peace 84

As we with honour and respect may take,

With purpose presently to leave this war

THE BASTARD. He will the rather do it when he sees

Ourselves well sinewed to our defence. 88

SALISBURY. Nay, it is in a manner done already ;

For many carriages he hath dispatch'd

To the sea-side, and put his cause and quarrel

To the disposing of the cardinal : 92

With whom yourself, myself, and other lords,

If you think meet, this afternoon will post

To consummate this business happily.

THE BASTARD. Let it be so. And you, my noble prince,

With other princes that may best be spar'd, 97

Shall wait upon your father's funeral.

PRINCE HENRY. At Worcester must his body be interr'd ;

For so he will'd it.

THE BASTARD. Thither shall it then. 100

And happily may your sweet self put on

The lineal state and glory of the land !

To whom, with all submission, on my knee, ,

I do bequeath my faithful services  
And true subjection everlastingly. 104

SALISBURY. And the like tender of our love we make,  
To rest without a spot for evermore.

PRINCE HENRY. I have a kind soul that would give you  
thanks, 108

And knows not how to do it but with tears.

THE BASTARD. O ! let us pay the time but needful woe  
Since it hath been beforehand with our griefs.

This England never did, nor never shall, 112

Lie at the proud foot of a conqueror,  
But when it first did help to wound itself.

Now these her princes are come home again,  
Come the three corners of the world in arms, 116

And we shall shock them. Nought shall make us rue,  
If England to itself do rest but true. [Exeunt.





**THE TRAGEDY OF  
KING RICHARD THE SECOND**

# THE TRAGEDY OF KING RICHARD THE SECOND

## INTRODUCTION

THE first mention known to us of *King Richard II* is the entry in the Stationers' Register dated August 29, 1597. In the same year the play was printed in a quarto. The second quarto, which appeared in 1598, gives the name of the author—'William Shake-speare.' In 1608 a third quarto was published; on the title-page of the second issue of this, attention is called to something that was new in print—'additions of the Parliament Sceane, and the deposing of King Richard.' These additions consist of lines 154–318 of the first scene of Act IV (from 'May it please you, lords' to 'a true king's fall'). From the fourth quarto—that of 1615—the folio text was taken, with corrections from some better MS. text, and the play was then divided into acts and scenes.

It seems probable that the lines of Act IV, Scene i, which represent the deposition of King Richard II, formed part of the play as originally written, and were omitted from the earlier quartos on the ground of prudence, as possibly of a nature to give offence to the authorities. The words of the Abbot—'A woeful pageant have we here beheld'—seem to refer to the deposition. 'It was,' as Halliwell-Phillipps has said, 'an exceedingly dangerous theme,' especially at a time when the Pope—whose Bull of 1597 incited English subjects to disloyalty—and continental Catholics contemplated the possibility of the deposition of Queen Elizabeth. In 1599 Sir John Hayward, in his first part of the *Life and Raigne of King Henry the Fourth*, gave an account of the deposition of Richard; he was reprimanded by the Star Chamber and was imprisoned. In 1601 the queen exclaimed to Lambert—'I am Richard the Second, knowe yee not that?' and she went on to refer to some tragedy that was 'played fourtie times in open streets and houses'. There were several plays which dealt with the reign of Richard.

One of these—certainly not Shakespeare's play—was seen by Forman at the Globe in April 1611. Another, 'concluding with the murder of the Duke of Gloucester,' was privately printed from the MS. by Halliwell-Phillipps, and is reprinted in vol. xxxv of the *Shakespeare Jahrbuch*; but these do not deal with the deposition of the king.

That the fears of the authorities were not wholly without warrant appears from an incident closely connected with the rising of Essex in 1601. On the afternoon immediately preceding the outbreak of the conspirators a play concerned with the deposition of King Richard was enacted. It had been 'bespoken' by Sir Gilly Merrick, an adherent of Essex; the arrangement was made with Augustine Phillipps, a member of the company to which Shakespeare belonged; the play was performed at the Globe Theatre. Perhaps it was Shakespeare's play. But on the other hand we are informed in the official account of the conspiracy that 'the playe was old', and it is referred to by Camden as an 'old out-worne' piece. The players declared that they would be losers by its performance, and were promised 'forty shillings extraordinary' as compensation for presenting it. If we may judge by the number of quarto editions of Shakespeare's play, it was neither 'out-worne' in 1601 nor unpopular; and the prudent omission of the deposition scene in 1597 and 1598 does not support the notion that this particular play would be presented on the eve of a rash conspiracy in 1601 with matter which had already been recognized as dangerous. But on this point, it must be admitted, certainty is unattainable, and some of the best authorities are of opinion that the play was that of Shakespeare.

As to the date when Shakespeare composed his play we have no decisive evidence beyond the fact that it cannot have been later than the summer of 1597. But the internal evidence indicates a considerably earlier date. The influence of Marlowe's *Edward II* is obvious. The influence of Greene in the many rhymed passages can hardly be doubted. In 1597 Shakespeare had escaped from the influence of both Marlowe and Greene. 'The point of most interest in the tragedy or history of *King Richard II*,' wrote Swinburne in a special study of this play, 'is the obvious evidence which it gives of the

struggle between the worse and the better genius of its author. . . . The author of *Selimus* and *Andronicus* [whom Swinburne supposed to be Greene] is visibly contending with the author of *Faustus* and *Edward II* for the mastery of Shakespeare's poetic and dramatic adolescence.' In *Richard III* the dominant power of Marlowe, if not the hand of Marlowe, is evident. In *King John* more of independence is exhibited by Shakespeare than in either *Richard III* or *Richard II*. But, as with *King John*, prose is wholly absent from the present play. We may believe that it lies in point of date after *Richard III*, which evidently is closely connected with the *Third Part of Henry VI*, and perhaps before *King John*, though on the latter point there is a difference of opinion among competent critics. We may venture to name the year 1594 or 1595 as an approximate date for our play. It may be well to add that the argument of Grant White, founded on alleged debts to Shakespeare in a supposed second edition (1595) of Daniel's *Civil Wars*, cannot be sustained. There is no evidence of two issues of Daniel's poem in that year. (See Introduction to *King Richard II* by Charlotte Porter in the 'First Folio' edition, New York, 1910.)

The historical basis of the drama was found in Holinshed's *Chronicle*; but Shakespeare has dealt somewhat freely with the matter of history. The queen, for example, as we see her in the play, is transformed for dramatic effect from the Isabel of history, and is needed for the romantic feeling of the close of the play. In Shakespeare's hand the literal facts of history are pliable for the purposes of the imagination. The queen was in fact a child. Here Daniel in the *Civil Wars* departed from history as did Shakespeare, and Daniel offered an apology to his readers in prose. The poet expends his strength in presenting the character of the king, or rather in exhibiting the contrast between Richard, who was fashioned for failure, and Bolingbroke, who was fashioned for a worldly success. He has aimed at showing Richard as hateful through his egoism and self-indulgence, and yet as possessed of a certain charm which, when misfortunes crowd upon him, may justify our pity. He is the 'sweet Richard' of his queen; his groom, half through affection for his master and half through his

feeling for 'roan Barbary', is faithful to the last. Shakespeare, however, before he would have us pity Richard has taught us to detest him. And yet his wickedness as an evil king is rather criminal weakness than such energy of guilt as we perceive in the third Richard. Coleridge has spoken happily of Richard's 'constant overflow of emotions from a total incapability of controlling them', and thence his 'waste of that energy which should have been reserved for actions, in the passion and effort of mere resolves and menaces'. The consequence, Coleridge adds, is 'moral exhaustion and rapid alternations of unmanly despair and ungrounded hope—every feeling being abandoned for its direct opposite upon the pressure of external accident'. His own rhetorical gift is a snare to Richard; from every circumstance of good or ill fortune he can extract the material for splendid speech, but he does not pass beyond speech to effective action. It is curious to notice how Shakespeare's effort to exhibit the king as both detestable and pitiable has called forth estimates of Richard's character of kinds most widely divergent. For Swinburne he is a 'histrionic young tyrant' placed by his callous cruelty and heartless hypocrisy beyond reach of compassion unqualified by scorn. Certain other critics lament the misfortune that Richard was a king; he was 'originally gentle, good because untempted, imaginative, loving'. He had 'some touch of wild genius', was almost a poet, and the pity of it is that a poet should be the occupant of a throne. 'He failed,' writes Mr. Yeats, 'a little because he lacked some qualities that were doubtless common among his scullions, but more because he had certain qualities that are uncommon in all ages.' Shakespeare, it is true, has a certain sympathy with Richard, because the breadth of Shakespeare's humanity did not exclude from sympathy even a self-indulgent wanton, to whom nature had lent some attractive gifts which he misused, a wanton who claims pity through his suffering and his degradation. But our great poet was no sentimentalist. We cannot imagine any position in life which calls for wisdom, self-restraint, resolution, in which Richard might not easily have passed—as in fact he did—from weakness to wickedness. He is sometimes a splendid rhetorician; a poet, possessed, as a poet must be, of the co-ordinating power

of will and imagination. Richard never could have been. His speeches are at best what the Elizabethans might have styled 'flourishes of fancy'.

Over against Richard stands a man whom Shakespeare cannot wholly love, cannot wholly honour, but who is as little excluded from his sympathy as is the king thrust by Bolingbroke from the throne. While Richard's speeches are the overflow of sentiment, which is often only the shadow of real passion, every word of his rival tends to action. When Bolingbroke desires to give utterance to his thought or his purpose he can speak with power. His indictment of Bushy and Green has a force which crushes those caterpillars of the commonwealth; nothing could be better said; but each clause and sentence leads up to the short and decisive final word—

My Lord Northumberland, see them dispatch'd.

And where speech does not include a purpose Bolingbroke chooses to be silent. He, too, has an imagination of his own; but it is wholly occupied with forecasting events, anticipating difficulties, confronting opposition, attaining ends. For none of his kinsfolk or friends is Henry a 'sweet, lovely rose'; but at least he is a strong man armed. And as we follow his career in the later Lancastrian plays, we see that Shakespeare has pity not only for Richard but for Richard's rival and subduer. For, though the usurper can win followers and supporters, he cannot bind them to him in the bands of loyalty and love. He courts his people, but many of them fall away. His nobles plot against him. His great son, while at heart loyal, flies from the coldness of the court to the mirth of the tavern; he is for a time content to be misunderstood by the father whom he would sustain and comfort in his solitude if that were possible. Such is the inevitable punishment for Bolingbroke's defects of character; but while Shakespeare exhibits those defects, he pities the strong man whom years and toil have at last bowed down and broken. The portrait so effectively outlined in *Richard II* is completed with perfect consistency of design in the first and second parts of *Henry IV*.

The present play—apart from the spectacle for which it affords occasion—gains less than many other plays of Shakespeare by being seen in the theatre. Its stage

history is not remarkable. Nahum Tate in 1681 produced an adaptation of it entitled *The Sicilian Usurper*. Theobald offered the public a version of his own in 1719, with additions and large omissions. In a later version appeared Edmund Kean. The article by Hazlitt in *The Examiner*, reprinted in his *View of the English Stage*, is probably the most authoritative criticism of Kean's performance. 'There are only,' he writes, 'one or two electrical shocks given in it; and in many of his characters he gives a much greater number.—The excellence of his acting is in proportion to the number of hits. . . . Mr. Kean made Richard a character of *passion*, that is, of feeling combined with energy; whereas it is a character of *pathos*, that is to say, of feeling combined with weakness. . . . Mr. Kean expresses all the violence, the extravagance, and fierceness of the passions, but not their misgivings, their helplessness, and sinkings into despair. . . . We might instance to the present purpose, his dashing the glass down with all his might in the scene with Hereford, instead of letting it fall out of his hands, as from an infant's; also his manner of expostulating with Bolingbroke, "Why on thy knee, thus low, &c.," which was altogether fierce and heroic, instead of being sad, thoughtful, and melancholy.' Hazlitt quotes from Wroughton's version of 1815, which described itself as having 'considerable alterations and additions from the writings of Shakespeare'.



## DRAMATIS PERSONAE

KING RICHARD THE SECOND.

JOHN OF GAUNT, Duke of Lancaster, }  
EDMUND OF LANGLEY, Duke of York, } Uncles to the King.

HENRY, surnamed BOLINGBROKE, Duke of Hereford, Son to John  
of Gaunt: afterwards King Henry IV.

DUKE OF AUMERLE, Son to the Duke of York.

THOMAS MOWBRAY, Duke of Norfolk.

DUKE OF SURREY.

EARL OF SALISBURY.

LORD BERKELEY.

BUSHY, }  
BAGOT, } Servants to King Richard.  
(GREEN, )

EARL OF NORTHUMBERLAND.

HENRY PERCY, surnamed Hotspur, his Son.

LORD ROSS.

LORD WILLOUGHBY.

LORD FITZWATER.

BISHOP OF CARLISLE.

ABBOT OF WESTMINSTER.

LORD MARSHAL.

SIR PIERCE OF EXTON.

SIR STEPHEN SCROOP.

Captain of a Band of Welshmen.

QUEEN TO KING RICHARD.

DUCHESS OF GLOUCESTER.

DUCHESS OF YORK.

Lady attending on the Queen.

Lords, Heralds, Officers, Soldiers, Gardeners, Keeper, Messenger,  
Groom, and other Attendants.

SCENE.—Dispersedly in England and Wales.

# THE TRAGEDY OF KING RICHARD THE SECOND

## ACT I.

SCENE I.—London. A Room in the Palace.

Enter KING RICHARD, attended; JOHN OF GAUNT, and other Nobles.

KING RICHARD. Old John of Gaunt, time-honour'd Lancaster,

Hast thou, according to thy oath and band,  
Brought hither Henry Hereford thy bold son,  
Here to make good the boisterous late appeal, 4  
Which then our leisure would not let us hear,  
Against the Duke of Norfolk, Thomas Mowbray?

GAUNT. I have, my liege.

KING RICHARD. Tell me, moreover, hast thou sounded him, 8

If he appeal the duke on ancient malice,  
Or worthily, as a good subject should,  
On some known ground of treachery in him?

GAUNT. As near as I could sift him on that argument,  
On some apparent danger seen in him 13  
Aim'd at your highness, no inveterate malice.

KING RICHARD. Then call them to our presence: face to face,  
And frowning brow to brow, ourselves will hear 16  
The accuser and the accused freely speak:

[Exeunt some Attendants.]

High-stomach'd are they both, and full of ire,  
In rage deaf as the sea, hasty as fire.

Re-enter Attendants, with BOLINGBROKE and MOWBRAY.

BOLINGBROKE. Many years of happy days befall 20  
My gracious sovereign, my most loving liege!

MOWBRAY. Each day still better other's happiness  
Until the heavens, envying earth's good hap,  
Add an immortal title to your crown! 24

KING RICHARD. We thank you both : yet one but flatters us,

As well appeareth by the cause you come ;  
Namely, to appeal each other of high treason.  
Cousin of Hereford, what dost thou object 28  
Against the Duke of Norfolk, Thomas Mowbray ?

BOLINGBROKE. First,—heaven be the record to my speech !—

In the devotion of a subject's love,  
Tendering the precious safety of my prince, 32  
And free from other misbegotten hate,  
Come I appellant to this princely presence.  
Now, Thomas Mowbray, do I turn to thee,  
And mark my greeting well ; for what I speak 36  
My body shall make good upon this earth,  
Or my divine soul answer it in heaven.  
Thou art a traitor and a miscreant ;  
Too good to be so and too bad to live, 40  
Since the more fair and crystal is the sky,  
The uglier seem the clouds that in it fly.  
Once more, the more to aggravate the note,  
With a foul traitor's name stuff I thy throat ; 44  
And wish, so please my sovereign, ere I move,  
What my tongue speaks, my right drawn sword may  
prove.

MOWBRAY. Let not my cold words here accuse my zeal :

'Tis not the trial of a woman's war, 48  
The bitter clamour of two eager tongues,  
Can arbitrate this cause betwixt us twain ;  
The blood is hot that must be cool'd for this :  
Yet can I not of such tame patience boast 52  
As to be hush'd and nought at all to say.  
First, the fair reverence of your highness cums me  
From giving reins and spurs to my free speech ;  
Which else would post until it had return'd 56  
These terms of treason doubled down his throat.  
Setting aside his high blood's royalty,  
And let him be no kinsman to my liege,  
I do defy him, and I spit at him ; 60  
Call him a slanderous coward and a villain :  
Which to maintain I would allow him odds,  
And meet him, were I tied to run afoot

Even to the frozen ridges of the Alps, 64  
Or any other ground inhabitable,  
Wherever Englishman durst set his foot.  
Meantime let this defend my loyalty :  
By all my hopes, most falsely doth he lie. 68

BOLINGBROKE. Pale trembling coward, there I throw  
my gage,  
Disclaiming here the kindred of the king ;  
And lay aside my high blood's royalty,  
Which fear, not reverence, makes thee to except : 72  
If guilty dread have left thee so much strength  
As to take up mine honour's pawn, then stoop :  
By that, and all the rites of knighthood else,  
Will I make good against thee, arm to arm, 76  
What I have spoke, or thou canst worse devise.

MOWBRAY. I take it up ; and by that sword I swear,  
Which gently laid my knighthood on my shoulder,  
I'll answer thee in any fair degree, 80  
Or chivalrous design of knightly trial :  
And when I mount, alive may I not light,  
If I be traitor or unjustly fight !

KING RICHARD. What doth our cousin lay to Mow-  
bray's charge ? 84

It must be great that can inherit us  
So much as of a thought of ill in him.

BOLINGBROKE. Look, what I speak, my life shall prove  
it true ; 87

That Mowbray hath receiv'd eight thousand nobles  
In name of lendings for your highness' soldiers,  
The which he hath detain'd for lewd employments,  
Like a false traitor and injurious villain.  
Besides I say and will in battle prove, 92  
Or here or elsewhere to the furthest verge  
That ever was survey'd by English eye,  
That all the treasons for these eighteen years  
Complotted and contrived in this land, 96  
Fetch from false Mowbray their first head and spring.  
Further I say and further will maintain  
Upon this bad life to make all this good,  
That he did plot the Duke of Gloucester's death, 100  
Suggest his soon-believing adversaries,  
And consequently, like a traitor coward,  
Sluic'd out his innocent soul through streams of blood :

Which blood, like sacrificing Abel's, cries, 104  
 Even from the tongueless caverns of the earth,  
 To me for justice and rough chastisement ;  
 And, by the glorious worth of my descent,  
 This arm shall do it, or this life be spent. 108

KING RICHARD. How high a pitch his resolution  
 soars !

Thomas of Norfolk, what sayest thou to this ?

MOWBRAY. O ! let my sovereign turn away his face  
 And bid his ears a little while be deaf, 112  
 Till I have told this slander of his blood  
 How God and good men hate so foul a liar.

KING RICHARD. Mowbray, impartial are our eyes and  
 ears :

Were he my brother, nay, my kingdom's heir,— 116  
 As he is but my father's brother's son,—  
 Now, by my sceptre's awe I make a vow,  
 Such neighbour nearness to our sacred blood  
 Should nothing privilege him, nor partialize 120  
 The unstooping firmness of my upright soul.  
 He is our subject, Mowbray ; so art thou :  
 Free speech and fearless I to thee allow. 123

MOWBRAY. Then, Bolingbroke, as low as to thy heart,  
 Through the false passage of thy throat, thou liest.  
 Three parts of that receipt I had for Calais  
 Disburs'd I duly to his highness' soldiers ;  
 The other part reserv'd I by consent, 128  
 For that my sovereign liege was in my debt —  
 Upon remainder of a dear account,  
 Since last I went to France to fetch his queen,  
 Now swallow down that lie. For Gloucester's death,  
 I slew him not ; but to mine own disgrace 133  
 Neglected my sworn duty in that case.  
 For you, my noble Lord of Lancaster,  
 The honourable father to my foe, 136  
 Once did I lay an ambush for your life,  
 A trespass that doth vex my grieved soul ;  
 But ere I last receiv'd the sacrament  
 I did confess it, and exactly begg'd 140  
 Your Grace's pardon, and I hope I had it.  
 This is my fault : as for the rest appeal'd,  
 It issues from the rancour of a villain,  
 A recreant and most degenerate traitor ; 144

Which in myself I boldly will defend,  
And interchangeably hurl down my gage  
Upon this overweening traitor's foot,  
To prove myself a loyal gentleman 148  
Even in the best blood chamber'd in his bosom.  
In haste whereof, most heartily I pray  
Your highness to assign our trial day.

KING RICHARD. Wrath-kindled gentlemen, be rul'd by  
me ; 152

Let's purge this choler without letting blood :  
This we prescribe, though no physician ;  
Deep malice makes too deep incision :  
Forget, forgive ; conclude and be agreed, 156  
Our doctors say this is no month to bleed.  
Good uncle, let this end where it begun ;  
We'll calm the Duke of Norfolk, you your son. 159

GAUNT. To be a make-peace shall become my age :  
Throw down, my son, the Duke of Norfolk's gage.

KING RICHARD. And, Norfolk, throw down his.

GAUNT. When, Harry, when ?  
Obedience bids I should not bid again.

KING RICHARD. Norfolk, throw down, we bid ; there  
is no boot. 164

MOWBRAY. Myself I throw, dread sovereign, at thy  
foot.

My life thou shalt command, but not my shame :  
The one my duty owes ; but my fair name,—  
Despite of death that lives upon my grave,— 168  
To dark dishonour's use thou shalt not have.  
I am disgrac'd, impeach'd, and baffled here,  
Pierc'd to the soul with slander's venom'd spear,  
The which no balm can cure but his heart-blood 172  
Which breath'd this poison.

KING RICHARD. Rage must be withstood :  
Give me his gage ; lions make leopards tame.

MOWBRAY. Yea, but not change his spots : take but  
my shame,

And I resign my gage. My dear dear lord, 176  
The purest treasure mortal times afford  
Is spotless reputation ; that away,  
Men are but gilded loam or painted clay.  
A jewel in a ten-times-barr'd-up chest 180  
Is a bold spirit in a loyal breast.

Mine honour is my life; both grow in one;  
 Take honour from me, and my life is done;  
 Then, dear my liege, mine honour let me try; 184  
 In that I live and for that will I die.

KING RICHARD. Cousin, throw down your gage: do  
 you begin.

BOLINGBROKE. O! God defend my soul from such  
 deep sin.

Shall I seem crest-fall'n in my father's sight, 188  
 Or with pale beggar-fear impeach my height  
 Before this out-dar'd dastard? Ere my tongue  
 Shall wound mine honour with such feeble wrong,  
 Or sound so base a parle, my teeth shall tear 192  
 The slavish motive of recanting fear,  
 And spit it bleeding in his high disgrace,  
 Where shame doth harbour, even in Mowbray's face.

[Exit GAUNT.]

KING RICHARD. We were not born to sue, but to com-  
 mand: 196

Which since we cannot do to make you friends,  
 Be ready, as your lives shall answer it,  
 At Coventry, upon Saint Lambert's day:  
 There shall your swords and lances arbitrate 200  
 The swelling difference of your settled hate:  
 Since we cannot atone you, we shall see  
 Justice design the victor's chivalry.  
 Marshal, command our officers-at-arms 204  
 Be ready to direct these home alarms. [Exeunt.]

SCENE II.—The Same. A Room in the DUKE OF LANCASTER'S  
 Palace.

Enter GAUNT and DUCHESS OF GLOUCESTER.

GAUNT. Alas! the part I had in Woodstock's blood  
 Doth more solicit me than your exclams,  
 To stir against the butchers of his life.  
 But since correction lieth in those hands. 4  
 Which made the fault that we cannot correct,  
 Put we our quarrel to the will of heaven;  
 Who, when they see the hours ripe on earth,  
 Will rain hot vengeance on offenders' heads. 8

DUCHESS. Finds brotherhood in thee no sharper spur?  
 Hath love in thy old blood no living fire?

Edward's seven sons, whereof thyself art one,  
Were as seven vials of his sacred blood, 12  
Or seven fair branches springing from one root :  
Some of those seven are dried by nature's course,  
Some of those branches by the Destinies cut ;  
But Thomas, my dear lord, my life, my Gloucester,  
One vial full of Edward's sacred blood, 17  
One flourishing branch of his most royal root,  
Is crack'd, and all the precious liquor spilt ;  
Is hack'd down, and his summer leaves all vaded, 20  
By envy's hand and murder's bloody axe.

Ah, Gaunt ! his blood was thine : that bed, that womb,  
That metal, that self-mould, that fashion'd thee  
Made him a man ; and though thou liv'st and breath'st,  
Yet art thou slain in him : thou dost consent 25  
In some large measure to thy father's death  
In that thou seest thy wretched brother die,  
Who was the model of thy father's life. 28  
Call it not patience, Gaunt ; it is despair :  
In suffering thus thy brother to be slaughter'd  
Thou showest the naked pathway to thy life,  
Teaching stern murder how to butcher thee : 32  
That which in mean men we entitle patience  
Is pale cold cowardice in noble breasts.

What shall I say ? to safeguard thine own life,  
The best way is to vengeance my Gloucester's death. 36

GAUNT. God's is the quarrel ; for God's substitute,  
His deputy, anointed in his sight,  
Hath caus'd his death ; the which if wrongfully,  
Let heaven revenge, for I may never lift 40  
An angry arm against his minister.

DUCHESS. Where then, alas ! may I complain myself ?

GAUNT. To God, the widow's champion and defence.

DUCHESS. Why then, I will. Farewell, old Gaunt.  
Thou go'st to Coventry, there to behold 45  
Our cousin Hereford and fell Mowbray fight :  
O ! sit my husband's wrongs on Hereford's spear,  
That it may enter butcher Mowbray's breast. 48  
Or if misfortune miss the first career,  
Be Mowbray's sins so heavy in his bosom  
That they may break his foaming courser's back,  
And throw the rider headlong in the lists, 52  
A caitiff recreant to my cousin Hereford !



Farewell, old Gaunt : thy sometimes brother's wife  
With her companion grief must end her life.

GAUNT. Sister, farewell ; I must to Coventry. 56  
As much good stay with thee as go with me !

DUCHESS. Yet one word more. Grief boundeth where  
it falls,

Not with the empty hollowness, but weight :

I take my leave before I have begun, 60

For sorrow ends not when it seemeth done.

Commend me to my brother, Edmund York.

Lo ! this is all : nay, yet depart not so ;

Though this be all, do not so quickly go ; 64

I shall remember more. Bid him—ah, what ?—

With all good speed at Plashy visit me.

Alack ! and what shall good old York there see . . . 68

But empty lodgings and unfurnish'd walls,

Unpeopled offices, untrodden stones ?

And what hear there for welcome but my groans ?

Therefore commend me ; let him not come there,

To seek out sorrow that dwells every where. 72

Desolate, desolate will I hence, and die :

The last leave of thee takes my weeping eye. [Exeunt.

SCENE III.—Open Space, near Coventry. Lists set out, and  
a Throne. Heralds, &c., attending.

Enter the Lord Marshal and AUMERLE.

MARSHAL. My Lord Aumerle, is Harry Hereford arm'd ?

AUMERLE. Yea, at all points, and longs to enter in.

MARSHAL. The Duke of Norfolk, sprightly and bold.  
Stays but the summons of the appellant's trumpet. 4

AUMERLE. Why then, the champions are prepar'd, and  
stay

For nothing but his majesty's approach.

Flourish. Enter KING RICHARD, who takes his seat on his Throne ;  
GAUNT, BUSHY, BAGOT, GREEN, and Others, who take their  
places. A trumpet is sounded, and answered by another trumpet  
within. Then enter MOWBRAY, in armour, defendant, preceded  
by a Herald.

KING RICHARD. Marshal, demand of yonder champion  
The cause of his arrival here in arms : 8  
Ask him his name, and orderly proceed

To swear him in the justice of his cause.

MARSHAL. In God's name, and the king's, say who thou art,

And why thou com'st thus knightly clad in arms, 12  
Against what man thou comest, and what thy quarrel.  
Speak truly, on thy knighthood and thine oath ;  
As so defend thee heaven and thy valour !

MOWBRAY. My name is Thomas Mowbray, Duke of Norfolk, 16

Who hither come engaged by my oath,—  
Which God defend a knight should violate !—  
Both to defend my loyalty and truth  
To God, my king, and his succeeding issue, 20  
Against the Duke of Hereford that appeals me ;  
And, by the grace of God and this mine arm,  
To prove him, in defending of myself,  
A traitor to my God, my king, and me : 24  
And as I truly fight, defend me heaven ! [He takes his seat.

Trumpet sounds. Enter BOLINGBROKE, appellant, in armour,  
preceded by a Herald.

KING RICHARD. Marshal, ask yonder knight in arms,  
Both who he is and why he cometh hither  
Thus plated in habiliments of war ; 28  
And formally, according to our law,  
Depose him in the justice of his cause.

MARSHAL. What is thy name ? and wherefore com'st thou hither,  
Before King Richard in his royal lists ? 32  
Against whom comest thou ? and what's thy quarrel ?  
Speak like a true knight, so defend thee heaven !

BOLINGBROKE. Harry of Hereford, Lancaster, and Derby,  
Am I ; who ready here do stand in arms, 36  
To prove by God's grace and my body's valour,  
In lists, on Thomas Mowbray, Duke of Norfolk,  
That he's a traitor foul and dangerous,  
To God of heaven, King Richard, and to me : 40  
And as I truly fight, defend me heaven !

MARSHAL. On pain of death, no person be so bold  
Or daring-hardy as to touch the lists,  
Except the marshal and such officers 44  
Appointed to direct these fair designs.

BOLINGBROKE. Lord marshal, let me kiss my sovereign's hand,

And bow my knee before his majesty :  
For Mowbray and myself are like two men 48  
That vow a long and weary pilgrimage ;  
Then let us take a ceremonious leave  
And loving farewell of our several friends.

MARSHAL. The appellant in all duty greets your high-  
ness, 52

And craves to kiss your hand and take his leave.

KING RICHARD. [Descends from his throne.] We will descend  
— and fold him in our arms.

Cousin of Hereford, as thy cause is right,  
So be thy fortune in this royal fight ! 56  
Farewell, my blood ; which if to-day thou shed,  
Lament we may, but not revenge thee dead.

BOLINGBROKE. O ! let no noble eye profane a tear  
For me, if I be gor'd with Mowbray's spear. 60

As confident as is the falcon's flight  
Against a bird, do I with Mowbray fight.  
My loving lord, I take my leave of you ;  
Of you, my noble cousin, Lord Aumerle ; 64

Not sick, although I have to do with death,  
But lusty, young, and cheerly drawing breath.  
Lo ! as at English feasts, so I regret  
The daintiest last, to make the end most sweet : 68

O thou, the earthly author of my blood,  
Whose youthful spirit, in me regenerate,  
Doth with a twofold vigour lift me up  
To reach at victory above my head, 72

Add proof unto mine armour with thy prayers,  
And with thy blessings steel my lance's point,  
That it may enter Mowbray's waxen coat,  
And furbish new the name of John a Gaunt, 76  
Even in the lusty haviour of his son.

GAUNT. God in thy good cause make thee prosperous !  
Be swift like lightning in the execution ;  
And let thy blows, doubly redoubled, 80

Fall like amazing thunder on the casque  
Of thy adverse pernicious enemy :  
Rouse up thy youthful blood, be valiant and live. 83

BOLINGBROKE. Mine innocency and Saint George to  
thrive !  
[He takes his seat.]

MOWBRAY. [Rising.] However God or fortune cast my lot,  
 There lives or dies, true to King Richard's throne.  
 A loyal, just, and upright gentleman.  
 Never did captive with a freer heart 88  
 Cast off his chains of bondage and embrace  
 His golden uncontroll'd enfranchisement,  
 More than my dancing soul doth celebrate  
 This feast of battle with mine adversary. 92  
 Most mighty liege, and my companion peers,  
 Take from my mouth the wish of happy years.  
 As gentle and as jocund as to jest,  
 Go I to fight : truth has a quiet breast. 96

KING RICHARD. Farewell, my lord : securely I espy  
 Virtue with valour couched in thine eye.  
 Order the trial, marshal, and begin.

[The KING and the Lords return to their seats.]

MARSHAL. Harry of Hereford, Lancaster, and Derby,  
 Receive thy lance ; and God defend the right ! 101

BOLINGBROKE. [Rising.] Strong as a tower in hope, I cry  
 ' amen '.

MARSHAL. [To an Officer.] Go bear this lance to Thomas,  
 Duke of Norfolk.

FIRST HERALD. Harry of Hereford, Lancaster, and  
 Derby, 104

Stands here for God, his sovereign, and himself,  
 On pain to be found false and recreant,  
 To prove the Duke of Norfolk, Thomas Mowbray,  
 A traitor to his God, his king, and him ; 108  
 And dares him to set forward to the fight.

SECOND HERALD. Here standeth Thomas Mowbray,  
 Duke of Norfolk,

On pain to be found false and recreant,  
 Both to defend himself and to approve 112  
 Henry of Hereford, Lancaster, and Derby,  
 To God, his sovereign, and to him, disloyal ;  
 Courageously and with a free desire,  
 Attending but the signal to begin. 116

MARSHAL. Sound, trumpets ; and set forward, comba-  
 tants. [A charge sounded.]

Stay, stay, the king hath thrown his warder down.

KING RICHARD. Let them lay by their helmets and  
 their spears,  
 And both return back to their chairs again : 120

Withdraw with us ; and let the trumpets sound  
While we return these dukes what we decree. [A long flourish.

[To the Combatants.] Draw near,

And list what with our council we have done. 124

For that our kingdom's earth should not be soil'd

With that dear blood which it hath fostered ;

And for our eyes do hate the dire aspect

Of civil wounds plough'd up with neighbours' swords ;

And for we think the eagle-winged pride 129

Of sky-aspiring and ambitious thoughts,

With rival-hating envy, set on you

To wake our peace, which in our country's cradle 132

Draws the sweet infant breath of gentle sleep ;

Which so rous'd up with boisterous untun'd drums,

With harsh-resounding trumpets' dreadful bray, 136

And grating shock of wrathful iron arms,

Might from our quiet confines fright fair peace

And make us wade even in our kindred's blood :

Therefore, we banish you our territories :

You, cousin Hereford, upon pain of life, 140

Till twice five summers have enrich'd our fields,

Shall not regret our fair dominions,

But tread the stranger paths of banishment.

BOLINGBROKE. Your will be done : this must my comfort be, 144

That sun that warms you here shall shine on me ;

And those his golden beams to you here lent

Shall point on me and gild my banishment.

KING RICHARD. Norfolk, for thee remains a heavier doom, 148

Which I with some unwillingness pronounce :

The sly slow hours shall not determinate

The dateless limit of thy dear exile ;

The hopeless word of ' never to return ' 152

Breathe I against thee, upon pain of life.

MOWBRAY. A heavy sentence, my most sovereign liege,

And all unlook'd for from your highness' mouth :

A dearer merit, not so deep a maim 156

As to be cast forth in the common air,

Have I deserved at your highness' hands.

The language I have learn'd these forty years.

My native English, now I must forego ; 160

And now my tongue's use is to me no more

Than an unstringed viol or a harp,  
 Or like a cunning instrument cas'd up,  
 Or, being open, put into his hands 164  
 That knows no touch to tune the harmony :  
 Within my mouth you have engaol'd my tongue,  
 Doubly portcullis'd with my teeth and lips ;  
 And dull, unfeeling, barren ignorance 168  
 Is made my gaoler to attend on me.  
 I am too old to fawn upon a nurse,  
 Too far in years to be a pupil now :  
 What is thy sentence then but speechless death, 172  
 Which robs my tongue from breathing native breath ?

KING RICHARD. It boots thee not to be compassionate :  
 After our sentence plaining comes too late.

MOWBRAY. Then, thus I turn me from my country's  
 light, 176  
 To dwell in solemn shades of endless night. [Retiring.

KING RICHARD. Return again, and take an oath with  
 thee.  
 Lay on our royal sword your banish'd hands ;  
 Swear by the duty that you owe to God— 180  
 Our part therein we banish with yourselves—  
 To keep the oath that we administer :  
 You never shall,—so help you truth and God !—  
 Embrace each other's love in banishment ; 184  
 Nor never look upon each other's face ;  
 Nor never write, regreet, nor reconcile  
 This lowering tempest of your home-bred hate ;  
 Nor never by advised purpose meet 188  
 To plot, contrive, or complot any ill  
 'Gainst us, our state, our subjects, or our land.

BOLINGBROKE. I swear.

MOWBRAY. And I, to keep all this. 192

BOLINGBROKE. Norfolk, so far, as to mine enemy :—  
 By this time, had the king permitted us,  
 One of our souls had wander'd in the air,  
 Banish'd this frail sepulchre of our flesh, 196  
 As now our flesh is banish'd from this land :  
 Confess thy treasons ere thou fly the realm ;  
 Since thou hast far to go, bear not along  
 The clogging burden of a guilty soul. 200

MOWBRAY. No, Bolingbroke : if ever I were traitor,  
 My name be blotted from the book of life,

And I from heaven banish'd as from hence !  
 But what thou art, God, thou, and I do know ; 204  
 And all too soon, I fear, the king shall rue.  
 Farewell, my liege. Now no way can I stray ;  
 Save back to England, all the world's my way. [Exit.

KING RICHARD. Uncle, even in the glasses of thine  
 eyes 208

I see thy grieved heart : thy sad aspect  
 Hath from the number of his banish'd years  
 Pluck'd four away.—[To BOLINGBROKE.] Six frozen winters  
 spent,

Return with welcome home from banishment. 212

BOLINGBROKE. How long a time lies in one little word !  
 Four lagging winters and four wanton springs  
 End in a word : such is the breath of kings.

GAUNT. I thank my liege, that in regard of me  
 He shortens four years of my son's exile ; 217  
 But little vantage shall I reap thereby :  
 For, ere the six years that he hath to spend  
 Can change their moons and bring their times about,  
 My oil-dried lamp and time-bewasted light 221  
 Shall be extinct with age and endless night ;  
 My inch of taper will be burnt and done,  
 And blindfold death not let me see my son. 224

KING RICHARD. Why, uncle, thou hast many years to  
 live.

GAUNT. But not a minute, king, that thou canst give :  
 Shorten my days thou canst with sullen sorrow,  
 And pluck nights from me, but not lend a morrow ;  
 Thou canst help time to furrow me with age, 229  
 But stop no wrinkle in his pilgrimage ;  
 Thy word is current with him for my death,  
 But dead, thy kingdom cannot buy my breath. 232

KING RICHARD. Thy son is banish'd upon good advice,  
 Whereto thy tongue a party-verdict gave :  
 Why at our justice seem'st thou then to lower ?

GAUNT. Things sweet to taste prove in digestion sour.  
 You urg'd me as a judge ; but I had rather 237  
 You would have bid me argue like a father.  
 O ! had it been a stranger, not my child,  
 To smoothe his fault I should have been more mild :  
 A partial slander sought I to avoid, 241  
 And in the sentence my own life destroy'd.

Alas ! I look'd when some of you should say,  
I was too strict to make mine own away ; 244  
But you gave leave to my unwilling tongue  
Against my will to do myself this wrong.

KING RICHARD. Cousin, farewell ; and, uncle, bid him  
so :

Six years we banish him, and he shall go. 248

{Flourish. Exeunt KING RICHARD and Train.

AUMERLE. Cousin, farewell : what presence must not  
know,

From where you do remain let paper show.

MARSHAL. My lord, no leave take I ; for I will ride,  
As far as land will let me, by your side. 252

GAUNT. O ! to what purpose dost thou hoard thy  
words,

That thou return'st no greeting to thy friends ?

BOLINGBROKE. I have too few to take my leave of  
you,

When the tongue's office should be prodigal 256  
To breathe the abundant dolour of the heart.

GAUNT. Thy grief is but thy absence for a time.

BOLINGBROKE. Joy absent, grief is present for that  
time.

GAUNT. What is six winters ? they are quickly gone.

BOLINGBROKE. To men in joy ; but grief makes one  
hour ten. 261

GAUNT. Call it a travel that thou tak'st for pleasure.

BOLINGBROKE. My heart will sigh when I miscall it so,  
Which finds it an enforced pilgrimage. 264

GAUNT. The sullen passage of thy weary steps

Esteem as foil wherein thou art to set

The precious jewel of thy home return.

BOLINGBROKE. Nay, rather, every tedious stride I  
make . 268

Will but remember me what a deal of world

I wander from the jewels that I love.

Must I not serve a long apprenticeship

To foreign passages, and in the end, 272

Having my freedom, boast of nothing else

But that I was a journeyman to grief ?

GAUNT. All places that the eye of heaven visits  
Are to a wise man ports and happy havens. 276

Teach thy necessity to reason thus ;



There is no virtue like necessity.  
 Think not the king did banish thee,  
 But thou the king. Woe doth the heavier sit, 280  
 Where it perceives it is but faintly borne.  
 Go, say I sent thee forth to purchase honour,  
 And not the king exil'd thee ; or suppose  
 Devouring pestilence hangs in our air, 284  
 And thou art flying to a fresher clime.  
 Look, what thy soul holds dear, imagine it  
 To lie that way thou go'st, not whence thou com'st.  
 Suppose the singing birds musicians, 288  
 The grass whereon thou tread'st the presence strew'd,  
 The flowers fair ladies, and thy steps no more  
 Than a delightful measure or a dance ;  
 For gnarling sorrow hath less power to bite 292  
 The man that mocks at it and sets it light.

BOLINGBROKE. O ! who can hold a fire in his hand  
 By thinking on the frosty Caucasus ?  
 Or cloy the hungry edge of appetite 296  
 By bare imagination of a feast ?  
 Or wallow naked in December snow  
 By thinking on fantastic summer's heat ?  
 O, no ! the apprehension of the good 300  
 Gives but the greater feeling to the worse :  
 Fell sorrow's tooth doth never rankle more  
 Than when it bites, but lanceth not the sore.

GAUNT. Come, come, my son, I'll bring thee on thy  
 way. 304

Had I thy youth and cause, I would not stay.

BOLINGBROKE. Then, England's ground, farewell ;  
 sweet soil, adieu :

My mother, and my nurse, that bears me yet !  
 Where'er I wander, boast of this I can, 308  
 Though banish'd, yet a true-born Englishman. [Exeunt.

SCENE IV.—London. A Room in the King's Castle.

Enter KING RICHARD, BAGOT, and GREEN at one door ;  
 AUMERLE at another.

KING RICHARD. We did observe. Cousin Aumerle,  
 How far brought you high Hereford on his way ?

AUMERLE. I brought high Hereford, if you call him so,  
 But to the next highway, and there I left him. 4

KING RICHARD. And say, what store of parting tears  
were shed ?

AUMERLE. Faith, none for me ; except the north-east-  
wind,

Which then blew bitterly against our faces,  
Awak'd the sleeping rheum, and so by chance 8  
Did grace our hollow parting with a tear.

KING RICHARD. What said our cousin when you  
parted with him ?

AUMERLE. 'Farewell : '

And, for my heart disdained that my tongue 12  
Should so profane the word, that taught me craft  
To counterfeit oppression of such grief  
That words seem'd buried in my sorrow's grave.  
Marry, would the word 'farewell' have lengthen'd hours  
And added years to his short banishment, 17  
He should have had a volume of farewells ;  
But, since it would not, he had none of me.

KING RICHARD. He is our cousin, cousin ; but 'tis  
doubt, 20

When time shall call him home from banishment,  
Whether our kinsman come to see his friends.  
Ourself and Bushy, Bagot here and Green  
Observ'd his courtship to the common people, 24  
How he did seem to dive into their hearts  
With humble and familiar courtesy,  
What reverence he did throw away on slaves,  
Wooing poor craftsmen with the craft of smiles 28  
And patient underbearing of his fortune,  
As 'twere to banish their affects with him  
Off goes his bonnet to an oyster-wench ;  
A brace of draymen bid God speed him well, 32  
And had the tribute of his supple knee,  
With 'Thanks, my countrymen, my loving friends' ;  
As were our England in reversion his,  
And he our subjects' next degree in hope. 36

GREEN. Well, he is gone ; and with him go these  
thoughts.

Now for the rebels which stand out in Ireland ;  
Expedient manage must be made, my liege,  
Ere further leisure yield them further means 40  
For their advantage and your highness' loss.

KING RICHARD. We will ourself in person to this war.

And, for our coffers with too great a court  
 And liberal-largess are grown somewhat light, 44  
 We are enforc'd to farm our royal realm ;  
 The revenue whereof shall furnish us  
 For our affairs in hand. If that come short, 47  
 Our substitutes at home shall have blank charters ;  
 Whereto, when they shall know what men are rich,  
 They shall subscribe them for large sums of gold,  
 And send them after to supply our wants ;  
 For we will make for Ireland presently. 52

Enter BUSHY.

Bushy, what news ?

BUSHY. Old John of Gaunt is grievous sick, my lord,  
 Suddenly taken, and hath sent post-haste  
 To entreat your majesty to visit him 56

KING RICHARD. Where lies he ?

BUSHY. At Ely House.

KING RICHARD. Now, put it, God, in his physician's  
 mind  
 To help him to his grave immediately ! 60  
 The lining of his coffers shall make coats  
 To deck our soldiers for these Irish wars.  
 Come, gentlemen, let's all go visit him :  
 Pray God we may make haste, and come too late. 64  
 ALL. Amen. [Exeunt.

## ACT II.

SCENE I.—London. An Apartment in Ely House.

GAUNT on a couch ; the DUKE OF YORK and Others standing  
 by him.

GAUNT. Will the king come, that I may breathe my  
 last  
 In wholesome counsel to his unstaïd youth ?

YORK. Vex not yourself, nor strive not with your  
 breath ;

For all in vain comes counsel to his ear. 4

GAUNT. O ! but they say the tongues of dying men  
 Enforce attention like deep harmony :  
 Where words are scarce, they are seldom spent in vain,  
 For they breathe truth that breathe their words in pain.

He that no more must say is listen'd more 9

Than they whom youth and ease have taught to close ;  
More are men's ends mark'd than their lives before :

The setting sun, and music at the close, 12

As the last taste of sweets, is sweetest last,

Writ in remembrance more than things long past :

Though Richard my life's counsel would not hear,

My death's sad tale may yet undeaf his ear. 16

YORK. No ; it is stopp'd with other flattering sounds,

As praises of his state : then there are fond

Lascivious metres, to whose venom sound

The open ear of youth doth always listen : 20

Report of fashions in proud Italy,

Whose manners still our tardy apish nation

Limps after in base imitation.

Where doth the world thrust forth a vanity,— 24

So it be new there's no respect how vile,—

That is not quickly buzz'd into his ears ?

Then all too late comes counsel to be heard,

Where will doth mutiny with wit's regard. 28

Direct not him whose way himself will choose :

'Tis breath thou lack'st, and that breath wilt thou lose.

GAUNT. Methinks I am a prophet new inspir'd,

And thus expiring do foretell of him : 32

His rash fierce blaze of riot cannot last,

For violent fires soon burn out themselves ;

Small showers last long, but sudden storms are short ;

He tires betimes that spurs too fast betimes ; 36

With eager feeding food doth choke the feeder :

Light vanity, insatiate cormorant,

Consuming means, soon preys upon itself.

This royal throne of kings, this scepter'd isle, 40

This earth of majesty, this seat of Mars,

This other Eden, demi-paradise,

This fortress built by Nature for herself

Against infection and the hand of war, 44

This happy breed of men, this little world,

This precious stone set in the silver sea,

Which serves it in the office of a wall,

Or as a moat defensive to a house, 48

Against the envy of less happier lands,

This blessed plot, this earth, this realm, this England,

This nurse, this teeming womb of royal kings,

Fear'd by their breed and famous by their birth, 52  
 Renowned for their deeds as far from home,—  
 For Christian service and true chivalry,—  
 As is the sepulchre in stubborn Jewry  
 Of the world's ransom, blessed Mary's Son : 56  
 This land of such dear souls, this dear, dear land,  
 Dear for her reputation, through the world,  
 Is now leas'd out,—I die pronouncing it,—  
 Like to a tenement, or pelting farm : 60  
 England, bound in with the triumphant sea,  
 Whose rocky shore beats back the envious siege  
 Of watery Neptune, is now bound in with shame,  
 With inky blots, and rotten parchment bonds : 64  
 That England, that was wont to conquer others,  
 Hath made a shameful conquest of itself.  
 Ah ! would the scandal vanish with my life,  
 How happy then were my ensuing death. 68

Enter KING RICHARD and QUEEN ; AUMERLE, BUSH GREEN,  
 BAGOT, ROSS, and WILLOUGHBY.

YORK. The king is come : deal mildly with his youth ;  
 For young hot colts, being rag'd, do rage the more.

QUEEN. How fares our noble uncle, Lancaster ?

KING RICHARD. What comfort, man ? How is't with  
 aged Gaunt ? 72

GAUNT. O ! how that name befits my composition ;  
 Old Gaunt indeed, and gaunt in being old :  
 Within me grief hath kept a tedious fast ;  
 And who abstains from meat that is not gaunt ? 76  
 For sleeping England long time have I watch'd ;  
 Watching breeds leanness, leanness is all gaunt.  
 The pleasure that some fathers feed upon  
 Is my strict fast, I mean my children's looks ; 80  
 And therein fasting hast thou made me gaunt.  
 Gaunt am I for the grave, gaunt as a grave,  
 Whose hollow womb inherits nought but bones.

KING RICHARD. Can sick men play so nicely with their  
 names ? 84

GAUNT. No ; misery makes sport to mock itself :  
 Since thou dost seek to kill my name in me,  
 I mock my name, great king, to flatter thee.

KING RICHARD. Should dying men flatter with those  
 that live ? 88

GAUNT. No, no ; men living flatter those that die.

KING RICHARD. Thou, now a-dying, sayest thou flatterest me.

GAUNT. O, no ! thou diest, though I the sicker be.

KING RICHARD. I am in health, I breathe, and see thee ill.

92

GAUNT. Now, he that made me knows I see thee ill ;  
Ill in myself to see, and in thee seeing ill.

Thy death-bed is no lesser than thy land

Wherein thou liest in reputation sick :

96

And thou, too careless patient as thou art,

Committ'st thy anointed body to the cure  
Of those physicians that first wounded thee :

A thousand flatterers sit within thy crown,

100

Whose compass is no bigger than thy head ;

And yet, incaged in so small a verge,

The waste is no whit lesser than thy land.

O ! had thy grandsire, with a prophet's eye,

104

Seen how his son's son should destroy his sons,

From forth thy reach he would have laid thy shame,

Deposing thee before thou wert possess'd,

Which art possess'd now to depose thyself.

108

Why, cousin, wert thou regent of the world,

It were a shame to let this land by lease ;

But for thy world-enjoying but this land,

Is it not more than shame to shame it so ?

112

Landlord of England art thou now, not king :

Thy state of law is bondslave to the law,

And—

KING RICHARD. And thou a lunatic lean-witted fool,  
Presuming on an ague's privilege,

116

Dar'st with thy frozen admonition

Make pale our cheek, chasing the royal blood

With fury from his native residence.

Now, by my seat's right royal majesty,

120

Wert thou not brother to great Edward's son,—

This tongue that runs so roundly in thy head

Should run thy head from thy unreverent shoulders.

GAUNT. O ! spare me not, my brother Edward's son,  
For that I was his father Edward's son.

125

That blood already, like the pelican,

Hast thou tapp'd out and drunkenly carous'd :

My brother Gloucester, plain well-meaning soul,— 128

Whom fair befall in heaven 'mongst happy souls !—  
 May be a precedent and witness good  
 That thou respect'st not spilling Edward's blood :  
 Join with the present sickness that I have ; 132  
 And thy unkindness be like crooked age,  
 To crop at once a too-long wither'd flower.  
 Live in thy shame, but die not shame with thee !  
 These words hereafter thy tormentors be ! 136  
 Convey me to my bed, then to my grave :  
 Love they to live that love and honour have.

[Exit, borne out by his Attendants.

KING RICHARD. And let them die that age and sullens  
 have ;  
 For both hast thou, and both become the grave. 140  
 YORK. I do beseech your majesty, impute his words  
 To wayward sickliness and age in him :  
 He loves you, on my life, and holds you dear  
 As Harry, Duke of Hereford, were he here. 144  
 KING RICHARD. Right, you say true : as Hereford's  
 love, so his ;  
 As theirs, so mine ; and all be as it is.

Enter NORTHUMBERLAND.

NORTHUMBERLAND. My liege, old Gaunt commends  
 him to your majesty.  
 KING RICHARD. What says he ? 148  
 NORTHUMBERLAND. Nay, nothing ; all is said :  
 His tongue is now a stringless instrument ;  
 Words, life, and all, old Lancaster hath spent.  
 YORK. Be York the next that must be bankrupt so !  
 Though death be poor, it ends a mortal woe. 153  
 KING RICHARD. The ripest fruit first falls, and so doth  
 he :  
 His time is spent ; our pilgrimage must be.  
 So much for that. Now for our Irish wars. 156  
 We must supplant those rough rug-headed kerns,  
 Which live like venom where no venom else  
 But only they have privilege to live.  
 And for these great affairs do ask some charge, 160  
 Towards our assistance we do seize to us  
 The plate, coin, revenues, and moveables,  
 Whereof our uncle Gaunt did stand possess'd.  
 YORK. How long shall I be patient ? Ah ! how long

Shall tender duty make me suffer wrong ? 165  
 Not Gloucester's death, nor Hereford's banishment,  
 Not Gaunt's rebukes, nor England's private wrongs,  
 Nor the prevention of poor Bolingbroke 168  
 About his marriage, nor my own disgrace,  
 Have ever made me sour my patient cheek,  
 Or bend one wrinkle on my sovereign's face.  
 I am the last of noble Edward's sons, 172  
 Of whom thy father, Prince of Wales, was first ;  
 In war was never lion rag'd more fierce,  
 In peace was never gentle lamb more mild,  
 Than was that young and princely gentleman. 176  
 His face thou hast, for even so look'd he,  
 Accomplish'd with the number of thy hours ;  
 But when he frown'd, it was against the French,  
 And not against his friends ; his noble hand 180  
 Did win what he did spend, and spent not that  
 Which his triumphant father's hand had won :  
 His hands were guilty of no kindred's blood,  
 But bloody with the enemies of his kin. 184  
 O Richard ! York is too far gone with grief,  
 Or else he never would compare between.

KING RICHARD. Why, uncle, what's the matter ?

YORK. O ! my liege.

Pardon me, if you please ; if not, I, pleas'd 188  
 Not to be pardon'd, am content withal.  
 Seek you to seize and gripe into your hands  
 The royalties and rights of banish'd Hereford ?  
 Is not Gaunt dead, and doth not Hereford live ? 192  
 Was not Gaunt just, and is not Harry true ?  
 Did not the one deserve to have an heir ?  
 Is not his heir a well-deserving son ?  
 Take Hereford's rights away, and take from Time 196  
 His charters and his customary rights ;  
 Let not to-morrow then ensue to-day ;  
 Be not thyself ; for how art thou a king  
 But by fair sequence and succession ? 200  
 Now, afore God,—God forbid I say true !—  
 If you do wrongfully seize Hereford's rights,  
 Call in the letters-patent that he hath  
 By his attorneys-general to sue 204  
 His livery, and deny his offer'd homage,  
 You pluck a thousand dangers on your head,



You lose a thousand well-disposed hearts,  
 And prick my tender patience to those thoughts 208  
 Which honour and allegiance cannot think.

KING RICHARD. Think what you will : we seize into  
 our hands

His plate, his goods, his money, and his lands.

YORK. I'll not be by the while : my liege, farewell :  
 What will ensue hereof, there's none can tell ; 213

But by bad courses may be understood  
 That their events can never fall out good. [Exit.

KING RICHARD. Go, Bushy, to the Earl of Wiltshire  
 straight : 216

Bid him repair to us to Ely House  
 To see this business. To-morrow next  
 We will for Ireland ; and 'tis time, I trow : 220

And we create, in absence of ourself,  
 Our uncle York lord governor of England ;  
 For he is just, and always lov'd us well.

Come on, our queen : to-morrow must we part ;  
 Be merry, for our time of stay is short. [Flourish.

[Exeunt KING, QUEEN, BUSHY, AUMERLE, GREEN, and BAGOT.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Well, lords, the Duke of Lancas-  
 ter is dead. 225

ROSS. And living too ; for now his son is duke.

WILLOUGHBY. Barely in title, ~~not~~ in revenue.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Richly in both, if justice had her  
 right. 228

ROSS. My heart is great ; but it must break with  
 silence,

Ere't be disburden'd with a liberal tongue. .

NORTHUMBERLAND. Nay, speak thy mind ; and let  
 him ne'er speak more

That speaks thy words again to do thee harm ! 232

WILLOUGHBY. Tends that thou'dst speak to the Duke  
 of Hereford ?

If it be so, out with it boldly, man ;

Quick is mine ear to hear of good towards him.

ROSS. No good at all that I can do for him, 236

Unless you call it good to pity him,

Bereft and gelded of his patrimony.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Now, afore God, 'tis shame such  
 wrongs are borne

In him ; a royal prince, and many more 240

Of noble blood in this declining land.  
The king is not himself, but basely led  
By flatterers ; and what they will inform,  
Merely in hate, 'gainst any of us all, 244  
That will the king severely prosecute  
'Gainst us, our lives, our children, and our heirs.

ROSS. The commons hath he pill'd with grievous  
taxes,

And quite lost their hearts : the nobles hath he fin'd  
For ancient quarrels, and quite lost their hearts. 249

WILLOUGHBY. And daily new exactions are devis'd ;  
As blanks, benevolences, and I wot not what :  
But what, o' God's name, doth become of this ? 252

NORTHUMBERLAND. Wars have not wasted it, for  
warr'd he hath not,  
But basely yielded upon compromise  
That which his ancestors achiev'd with blows.  
More hath he spent in peace than they in wars. 256

ROSS. The Earl of Wiltshire hath the realm in farm.

WILLOUGHBY. The king's grown bankrupt, like a  
broken man.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Reproach and dissolution hangeth  
over him.

ROSS. He hath not money for these Irish wars,  
His burdenous taxations notwithstanding, 261  
But by the robbing of the banish'd duke.

NORTHUMBERLAND. His noble kinsman : most degenerate king !

But, lords, we hear this fearful tempest sing, 264  
Yet seek no shelter to avoid the storm ;  
We see the wind sit sore upon our sails,  
And yet we strike not, but securely perish.

ROSS. We see the very wrack that we must suffer ;  
And unavoided is the danger now, 269  
For suffering so the causes of our wrack.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Not so : even through the hollow  
eyes of death

I spy life peering ; but I dare not say 272  
How near the tidings of our comfort is.

WILLOUGHBY. Nay, let us share thy thoughts, as thou  
dost ours.

ROSS. Be confident to speak, Northumberland :  
We three are but thyself : and, speaking so, 276

Thy words are but as thoughts ; therefore, be bold.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Then thus : I have from Port le  
Blanc, a bay

In Brittany, receiv'd intelligence

That Harry Duke of Hereford, Rainold Lord Cobham,

That late broke from the Duke of Exeter, 281

His brother, Archbishop late of Canterbury,

Sir Thomas Erpingham, Sir John Ramston,

Sir John Norbery, Sir Robert Waterton, and Francis

Quoint, 284

All these well furnish'd by the Duke of Britaine,

With eight tall ships, three thousand men of war,

Are making hither with all due expedience,

And shortly mean to touch our northern shore. 288

Perhaps they had ere this, but that they stay

The first departing of the king for Ireland.

If then we shall shake off our slavish yoke,

Imp out our drooping country's broken wing, 292

Redeem from broking pawn the blemish'd crown,

Wipe off the dust that hides our sceptre's gilt,

And make high majesty look like itself,

Away with me in post to Ravenspurgh ; 296

But if you faint, as fearing to do so,

Stay and be secret, and myself will go.

ROSS. To horse, to horse ! urge doubts to them that  
fear. 299

WILLOUGHBY. Hold out my horse, and I will first be  
there. [Exeunt.]

SCENE II.—The Same. A Room in the Palace.

Enter QUEEN, BUSHY, and BAGOT.

BUSHY. Madam, your majesty is too much sad :

You promis'd, when you parted with the king,

To lay aside life-harming heaviness,

And entertain a cheerful disposition. 4

QUEEN. To please the king I did ; to please myself  
I cannot do it ; yet I know no cause

Why I should welcome such a guest as grief,

Save bidding farewell to so sweet a guest 8

As my sweet Richard : yet, again, methinks,

Some unborn sorrow, ripe in fortune's womb,

Is coming towards me, and my inward soul

With nothing trembles ; at some thing it grieves 12  
More than with parting from my lord the king.

BUSHY. Each substance of a grief hath twenty shadows,

Which show like grief itself, but are not so. 16  
For sorrow's eye, glazed with blinding tears,

Divides one thing entire to many objects ;

Like perspectives, which rightly gaz'd upon

Show nothing but confusion ; ey'd awry

Distinguish form : so your sweet majesty, 20

Looking awry upon your lord's departure,

Finds shapes of grief more than himself to wail ;

Which, look'd on as it is, is nought but shadows

Of what it is not. Then, thrice-gracious queen, 24

More than your lord's departure weep not : more's not  
seen ;

Or if it be, 'tis with false sorrow's eye,

Which for things true weeps things imaginary. 27

QUEEN. It may be so ; but yet my inward soul

Persuades me it is otherwise : howe'er it be,

I cannot but be sad, so heavy sad,

As, though in thinking on no thought I think,

Makes me with heavy nothing faint and shrink. 32

BUSHY. 'Tis nothing but conceit, my gracious lady.

QUEEN. 'Tis nothing less : conceit is still deriv'd

From some forefather grief ; mine is not so,

For nothing hath begot my something grief ; 36

Or something hath the nothing that I grieve :

'Tis in reversion that I do possess ;

But what it is, that is not yet known ; what

I cannot name ; 'tis nameless woe, I wot. 40

Enter GREEN.

GREEN. God save your majesty ! and well met, gentlemen :

I hope the king is not yet shipp'd for Ireland.

QUEEN. Why hop'st thou so ? 'tis better hope he is,

For his designs crave haste, his haste good hope : 44

Then wherefore dost thou hope he is not shipp'd ?

GREEN. That he, our hope, might have retir'd his  
power,

And driven into despair an enemy's hope,

Who strongly hath set footing in this land : 48

The banish'd Bolingbroke repeals himself,  
And with uplifted arms is safe arriv'd  
At Ravenspurgh.

QUEEN. Now God in heaven forbid ! 51

GREEN. Ah ! madam, 'tis too true : and that is worse,  
The Lord Northumberland, his son young Henry Percy,  
The Lords of Ross, Beaumont, and Willoughby,  
With all their powerful friends, are fled to him.

BUSHY. Why have you not proclaim'd Northum-  
berland 56

And all the rest of the revolted faction traitors ?

GREEN. We have : whereupon the Earl of Worcester  
Hath broke his staff, resign'd his stewardship,  
And all the household servants fled with him 60  
To Bolingbroke.

QUEEN. So, Green, thou art the midwife to my woe,  
And Bolingbroke my sorrow's dismal heir :  
Now hath my soul brought forth her prodigy, 64  
And I, a gasping new-deliver'd mother,  
Have woe to woe, sorrow to sorrow join'd.

BUSHY. Despair not, madam.

QUEEN. Who shall hinder me ?  
I will despair, and be at enmity 68

With cozening hope : he is a flatterer,  
A parasite, a keeper-back of death,  
Who gently would dissolve the bands of life,  
Which false hope lingers in extremity. 72

Enter YORK.

GREEN. Here comes the Duke of York.

QUEEN. With signs of war about his aged neck :  
O ! full of careful business are his looks.  
Uncle, for God's sake, speak comfortable words. 76

YORK. Should I do so, I should belie my thoughts :  
Comfort's in heaven ; and we are on the earth, 78  
Where nothing lives but crosses, cares, and grief.  
Your husband, he is gone to save far off, 80

Whilst others come to make him lose at home :  
Here am I left to underprop his land,  
Who, weak with age, cannot support myself.  
Now comes the sick hour that his surfeit made ; 84  
Now shall he try his friends that flatter'd him.

Enter a Servant.

SERVANT. My lord, your son was gone before I came.

YORK He was ? Why, so ! go all which way it will !  
The nobles they are fled, the commons they are cold,  
And will, I fear, revolt on Hereford's side. 89  
Sirrah, get thee to Plashy, to my sister Gloucester ;  
Bid her send me presently a thousand pound.  
Hold, take my ring. 92

SERVANT. My lord, I had forgot to tell your lordship :  
To-day, as I came by, I called there ;  
But I shall grieve you to report the rest.

YORK. What is 't, knave ? 96

SERVANT. An hour before I came the duchess died.

YORK. God for his mercy ! what a tide of woes  
Comes rushing on this woeful land at once !  
I know not what to do : I would to God,— 100  
So my untruth had not provok'd him to it,—  
The king had cut off my head with my brother's.  
What ! are there no posts dispatch'd for Ireland ?  
How shall we do for money for these wars ? 104  
Come, sister,—cousin, I would say,—pray, pardon me.—  
Go, fellow, get thee home ; provide some carts  
And bring away the armour that is there. [Exit Servant.  
Gentlemen, will you go muster men ? If I know 108  
How or which way to order these affairs  
Thus thrust disorderly into my hands,  
Never believe me. Both are my kinsmen :  
The one is my sovereign, whom both my oath 112  
And duty bids defend ; the other again  
Is my kinsman, whom the king hath wrong'd,  
Whom conscience and my kindred bids to right.  
Well, somewhat we must do. Come, cousin, 116  
I'll dispose of you. Gentlemen, go muster up your men,  
And meet me presently at Berkeley Castle.  
I should to Plashy too :  
But time will not permit. All is uneven, 120  
And every thing is left at six and seven.

[Exeunt YORK and QUEEN.

BUSHY. The wind sits fair for news to go to Ireland,  
But none returns. For us to levy power  
Proportionable to the enemy 124  
Is all impossible.

GREEN. Besides, our nearness to the king in love  
Is near the hate of those love not the king.

BAGOT. And that's the wavering commons; for their  
love 128

Lies in their purses, and whoso empties them,  
By so much fills their hearts with deadly hate.

BUSHY. Wherein the king stands generally con-  
demn'd. 131

BAGOT. If judgment lie in them, then so do we,  
Because we ever have been near the king.

GREEN. Well, I'll for refuge straight to Bristol Castle;  
The Earl of Wiltshire is already there. 135

BUSHY. Thither will I with you; for little office  
Will the hateful commons perform for us,  
Except like curs to tear us all to pieces.  
Will you go along with us?

BAGOT. No; I will to Ireland to his majesty. 140  
Farewell: if heart's presages be not vain,  
We three here part that ne'er shall meet again.

BUSHY. That's as York thrives to beat back Boling-  
broke. 143

GREEN. Alas, poor duke! the task he undertakes  
Is numbering sands and drinking oceans dry:  
Where one on his side fights, thousands will fly.  
Farewell at once; for once, for all, and ever. 147

BUSHY. Well, we may meet again.

BAGOT. I fear me, never.

[Exeunt.

### SCENE III.—The Wolds in Gloucestershire.

Enter BOLINGBROKE and NORTHUMBERLAND, with Forces.

BOLINGBROKE. How far is it, my lord, to Berkeley now?

NORTHUMBERLAND. Believe me, noble lord,  
I am a stranger here in Gloucestershire:  
These high wild hills and rough uneven ways 4  
Draw out our miles and make them wearisome;  
But yet your fair discourse hath been as sugar,  
Making the hard way sweet and delectable.  
But I bethink me what a weary way 8  
From Ravenspurgh to Cotswold will be found  
In Ross and Willoughby, wanting your company  
Which, I protest, hath very much beguil'd

The tediousness and process of my travel : 12  
But theirs is sweeten'd with the hope to have  
The present benefit which I possess ;  
And hope to joy is little less in joy  
Than hope enjoy'd : by this the weary lords 15  
Shall make their way seem short, as mine hath done  
By sight of what I have, your noble company.  
BOLINGBROKE. Of much less value is my company  
Than your good words. But who comes here ? 20

Enter HENRY PERCY.

NORTHUMBERLAND. It is my son, young Harry Percy,  
Sent from my brother Worcester, whencesoever.  
Harry, how fares your uncle ?

HENRY PERCY. I had thought, my lord, to have  
learn'd his health of you. 24

NORTHUMBERLAND. Why, is he not with the queen ?

HENRY PERCY. No, my good lord ; he hath forsook  
the court,

Broken his staff of office, and dispers'd  
The household of the king.

NORTHUMBERLAND. What was his reason ? 28  
He was not so resolv'd when last we spake together.

HENRY PERCY. Because your lordship was proclaimed  
traitor.

But he, my lord, is gone to Ravenspurgh,  
To offer service to the Duke of Hereford, 32  
And sent me over by Berkeley to discover  
What power the Duke of York had levied there ;  
Then with direction to repair to Ravenspurgh.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Have you forgot the Duke of  
Hereford, boy ? 36

HENRY PERCY. No, my good lord ; for that is not  
forgot

Which ne'er I did remember : to my knowledge  
I never in my life did look on him.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Then learn to know him now :  
this is the duke. 40

HENRY PERCY. My gracious lord, I tender you my  
service,

Such as it is, being tender, raw, and young,  
Which elder days shall ripen and confirm  
To more approved service and desert. 44



BOLINGBROKE. I thank thee, gentle Percy ; and be  
sure

I count myself in nothing else so happy  
As in a soul remembering my good friends ;  
And as my fortune ripens with thy love, 48  
It shall be still thy true love's recompense :  
My heart this covenant makes, my hand thus seals it.

NORTHUMBERLAND. How far is it to Berkeley ? and  
what stir

Keeps good old York there with his men of war ? 52

HENRY PERCY. There stands the castle, by yon tuft of  
trees,

Mann'd with three hundred men, as I have heard ;  
And in it are the Lords of York, Berkeley, and Seymour ;  
None else of name and noble estimate. 56

Enter ROSS and WILLOUGHBY.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Here come the Lords of Ross and  
Willoughby,

Bloody with spurring, fiery-red with haste.

BOLINGBROKE. Welcome, my lords. I wot your love  
pursues

A banish'd traitor ; all my treasury 60  
Is yet but unfelt thanks, which, more enrich'd,  
Shall be your love and labour's recompense.

ROSS. Your presence makes us rich, most noble lord.

WILLOUGHBY. And far surmounts our labour to attain  
it. 64

BOLINGBROKE. Evermore thanks, the exchequer of  
the poor ;

Which, till my infant fortune comes to years,  
Stands for my bounty. But who comes here ?

Enter BERKELEY.

NORTHUMBERLAND. It is my Lord of Berkeley, as I  
guess. 68

BERKELEY. My Lord of Hereford, my message is to  
you.

BOLINGBROKE. My lord, my answer is—to Lancaster ;  
And I am come to seek that name in England ;  
And I must find that title in your tongue 72  
Before I make reply to aught you say.

BERKELEY. Mistake me not, my lord ; 'tis not my  
meaning

To raze one title of your honour but :  
 To you, my lord, I come, what lord you will, 76  
 From the most gracious regent of this land,  
 The Duke of York, to know what pricks you on  
 To take advantage of the absent time  
 And fright our native peace with self-born arms. 80

Enter YORK, attended.

BOLINGBROKE. I shall not need transport my words  
 by you :  
 Here comes his Grace in person. •

My noble uncle ! [Kneels.

YORK. Show me thy humble heart, and not thy knee,  
 Whose duty is deceivable and false. 84

BOLINGBROKE. My gracious uncle—

YORK. Tut, tut !

Grace me no grace, nor uncle me no uncle :  
 I am no traitor's uncle ; and that word ' grace ' 88  
 In an ungracious mouth is but profane.

Why have those banish'd and forbidden legs  
 Dar'd once to touch a dust of England's ground ?  
 But then, more ' why ? ' why have they dar'd to march  
 So many miles upon her peaceful bosom, 93  
 Frighting her pale-fac'd villages with war  
 And ostentation of despised arms ?

Com'st thou because the anointed king is hence ? 96  
 Why, foolish boy, the king is left behind,  
 And in my loyal bosom lies his power.

Were I but now the lord of such hot youth  
 As when brave Gaunt thy father, and myself, 100  
 Rescu'd the Black Prince, that young Mars of men,  
 From forth the ranks of many thousand French,  
 O ! then, how quickly should this arm of mine,  
 Now prisoner to the palsy, chastise thee 104  
 And minister correction to thy fault !

BOLINGBROKE. My gracious uncle, let me know my  
 fault :

On what condition stands it and wherein ?

YORK. Even in condition of the worst degree, 108  
 In gross rebellion and detested treason :  
 Thou art a banish'd man, and here art come  
 Before the expiration of thy time,  
 In braving arms against thy sovereign. 112

BOLINGBROKE. As I was banish'd, I was banish'd  
Hereford ;

But as I come, I come for Lancaster.

And, noble uncle, I beseech your Grace  
Look on my wrongs with an indifferent eye : 116

You are my father, for methinks in you  
I see old Gaunt alive : O ! then, my father,  
Will you permit that I shall stand condemn'd 120

A wandering vagabond ; my rights and royalties  
Pluck'd from my arms perforce and given away  
To upstart unthrifths ? Wherefore was I born ?

If that my cousin king be King of England,  
It must be granted I am Duke of Lancaster. 124

You have a son, Aumerle, my noble kinsman ;  
Had you first died, and he been thus trod down,  
He should have found his uncle Gaunt a father,  
To rouse his wrongs and chase them to the bay. 128

I am denied to sue my livery here,  
And yet my letters-patent give me leave :  
My father's goods are all distrain'd and sold,  
And these and all are all amiss employ'd. 132

What would you have me do ? I am a subject,  
And challenge law : attorneys are denied me,  
And therefore personally I lay my claim  
To my inheritance of free descent. 136

NORTHUMBERLAND. The noble duke hath been too  
much abus'd.

ROSS. It stands your Grace upon to do him right.

WILLOUGHBY. Base men by his endowments are made  
great. 139

YORK. My lords of England, let me tell you this :  
I have had feeling of my cousin's wrongs,  
And labour'd all I could to do him right ;  
But in this kind to come, in braving arms,  
Be his own carver and cut out his way, 144  
To find out right with wrong, it may not be ;  
And you that do abet him in this kind  
Cherish rebellion and are rebels all.

NORTHUMBERLAND. The noble duke hath sworn his  
coming is 148

But for his own ; and for the right of that  
We all have strongly sworn to give him aid ;  
And let him ne'er see joy that breaks that oath !

YORK. Well, well, I see the issue of these arms :  
 I cannot mend it, I must needs confess, 153  
*Because my power is weak and all ill left ;*  
 But if I could, by him that gave me life,  
 I would attach you all and make you stoop 156  
 Unto the sovereign mercy of the king ;  
 But since I cannot, be it known to you  
 I do remain as neuter. So, fare you well ;  
 Unless you please to enter in the castle 160  
 And there repose you for this night.

BOLINGBROKE. An offer, uncle, that we will accept :  
 But we must win your Grace to go with us  
 To Bristol Castle ; which they say is held 164  
 By Bushy, Bagot, and their complices,  
 The caterpillars of the commonwealth,  
 Which I have sworn to weed and pluck away.

YORK. It may be I will go with you ; but yet I'll  
 pause ; 168  
 For I am loath to break our country's laws.  
 Nor friends nor foes, to me welcome you are :  
 Things past redress are now with me past care. [Exeunt.]

## SCENE IV.—A Camp in Wales.

Enter SALISBURY and a Captain.

CAPTAIN. My Lord of Salisbury, we have stay'd ten  
 days,  
 And hardly kept our countrymen together,  
 And yet we hear no tidings from the king ;  
 Therefore we will disperse ourselves : farewell. 4

SALISBURY. Stay yet another day, thou trusty Welsh-  
 man :  
 The king reposeth all his confidence in thee.

CAPTAIN. 'Tis thought the king is dead : we will not  
 stay. 8  
 The bay-trees in our country are all wither'd  
 And meteors fright the fixed stars of heaven,  
 The pale-fac'd moon looks bloody on the earth  
 And lean-look'd prophets whisper fearful change, •  
 Rich men look sad and ruffians dance and leap, 12  
 The one in fear to lose what they enjoy,  
 The other to enjoy by rage and war :  
 These signs forerun the death or fall of kings.

Farewell : our countrymen are gone and fled, 16  
 As well assur'd Richard their king is dead. [Exit.

SALISBURY. Ah, Richard ! with the eyes of heavy  
 mind

I see thy glory like a shooting star  
 Fall to the base earth from the firmament. 20  
 Thy sun sets weeping in the lowly west,  
 Witnessing storms to come, woe, and unrest.  
 Thy friends are fled to wait upon thy foes,  
 And crossly to thy good all fortune goes. [Exit.

### ACT III.

SCENE I.—Bristol. BOLINGBROKE's Camp.

Enter BOLINGBROKE, YORK, NORTHUMBERLAND, HENRY PERCY,  
 WILLOUGHBY, ROSS ; Officers behind, with BUSHY and GREEN,  
 prisoners.

BOLINGBROKE. Bring forth these men.  
 Bushy and Green, I will not vex your souls—  
 Since presently your souls must part your bodies—  
 With too much urging your pernicious lives, 4  
 For 'twere no charity ; yet, to wash your blood  
 From off my hands, here in the view of men  
 I will unfold some causes of your deaths.  
 You have misled a prince, a royal king, 8  
 A happy gentleman in blood and lineaments,  
 By you unhappied and disfigur'd clean :  
 You have in manner with your sinful hours  
 Made a divorce betwixt his queen and him, 12  
 Broke the possession of a royal bed,  
 And stain'd the beauty of a fair queen's cheeks  
 With tears drawn from her eyes by your foul wrongs.  
 Myself, a prince by fortune of my birth, 16  
 Near to the king in blood, and near in love  
 Till you did make him misinterpret me,  
 Have stoop'd my neck under your injuries,  
 And sigh'd my English breath in foreign clouds, 20  
 Eating the bitter bread of banishment ;  
 Whilst you have fed upon my signories,  
 Dispark'd my parks, and felled my forest woods,  
 From mine own windows torn my household coat,

Raz'd out my impress, leaving me no sign,  
 Save men's opinions and my living blood,  
 To show the world I am a gentleman.  
 This and much more, much more than twice all this,  
 Condemns you to the death. See them deliver'd over  
 To execution and the hand of death.

BUSHY. More welcome is the stroke of death to me  
 Than Bolingbroke to England. Lords, farewell. 32

GREEN. My comfort is, that heaven will take our souls  
 And plague injustice with the pains of hell.

BOLINGBROKE. My Lord Northumberland, see them  
 dispatch'd.

[Exeunt NORTHUMBERLAND and Others, with BUSHY and GREEN.  
 Uncle, you say the queen is at your house ; 36  
 For God's sake, fairly let her be entreated :  
 Tell her I send to her my kind commends ;  
 Take special care my greetings be deliver'd.

YORK. A gentleman of mine I have dispatch'd  
 With letters of your love to her at large. 41

BOLINGBROKE. Thanks, gentle uncle. Come, lords,  
 away,  
 To fight with Glendower and his complices :  
 Awhile to work, and after holiday. [Exeunt.

SCENE II.—The Coast of Wales. A Castle in view.

Flourish : drums and trumpets. Enter KING RICHARD, the  
 BISHOP OF CARLISLE, AUMERLE, and Soldiers.

KING RICHARD. Barkloughly Castle call they this at  
 hand ?

AUMERLE. Yea, my lord. How brooks your Grace  
 the air,

After your late tossing on the breaking seas ?

KING RICHARD. Needs must I like it well : I weep for  
 joy 4

To stand upon my kingdom once again.

Dear earth, I do salute thee with my hand,  
 Though rebels wound thee with their horses' hoofs :  
 As a long-parted mother with her child 8

Plays fondly with her tears and smiles in meeting,  
 So, weeping, smiling, greet I thee, my earth,  
 And do thee favour with my royal hands.  
 Feed not thy sovereign's foe, my gentle earth, 12

Nor with thy sweets comfort his ravenous sense ;  
 But let thy spiders, that suck up thy venom,  
 And heavy-gaited toads lie in their way,  
 Doing annoyance to the treacherous feet 16  
 Which with usurping steps do trample thee.  
 Yield stinging nettles to mine enemies ;  
 And when they from thy bosom pluck a flower,  
 Guard it, I pray thee, with a lurking adder 20  
 Whose double tongue may with a mortal touch  
 Throw death upon thy sovereign's enemies.  
 Mock not my senseless conjuration, lords :  
 This earth shall have a feeling, and these stones 24  
 Prove armed soldiers, ere her native king  
 Shall falter under foul rebellion's arms.

CARLISLE. Fear not, my lord : that power that made  
 you king

Hath power to keep you king in spite of all. 28  
 The means that heaven yields must be embrac'd,  
 And not neglected ; else, if heaven would,  
 And we will not, heaven's offer we refuse,  
 The proffer'd means of succour and redress. 32

AUMERLE. He means, my lord, that we are too remiss ;  
 Whilst Bolingbroke, through our security,  
 Grows strong and great in substance and in friends.

KING RICHARD Discomfortable cousin ! know'st thou  
 not 36

That when the searching eye of heaven is hid  
 Behind the globe, and lights the lower world,  
 Then thieves and robbers range abroad unseen,  
 In murders and in outrage bloody here ; 40  
 But when, from under this terrestrial ball  
 He fires the proud tops of the eastern pines  
 And darts his light through every guilty hole,  
 Then murders, treasons, and detested sins, 44  
 The cloak of night being pluck'd from off their backs,  
 Stand bare and naked, trembling at themselves ?  
 So when this thief, this traitor, Bolingbroke,  
 Who all this while hath revell'd in the night 48  
 Whilst we were wandering with the antipodes,  
 Shall see us rising in our throne, the east,  
 His treasons will sit blushing in his face,  
 Not able to endure the sight of day, 52  
 But self-affrighted tremble at his sin.

Not all the water in the rough rude sea  
 Can wash the balm from an anointed king ;  
 The breath of worldly men cannot depose 56  
 The deputy elected by the Lord.  
 For every man that Bolingbroke hath press'd  
 To lift shrewd steel against our golden crown,  
 God for his Richard hath in heavenly pay 60  
 A glorious angel : then, if angels fight,  
 Weak men must fall, for heaven still guards the right.

Enter SALISBURY.

Welcome, my lord : how far off lies your power ?  
 SALISBURY. Nor near nor further off, my gracious  
 lord, 64

Than this weak arm : discomfort guides my tongue  
 And bids me speak of nothing but despair.  
 One day too late, I fear me, noble lord,  
 Hath clouded all thy happy days on earth. 68  
 O ! call back yesterday, bid time return,  
 And thou shalt have twelve thousand fighting men :  
 To-day, to-day, unhappy day too late,  
 O'erthrows thy joys, friends, fortune, and thy state ;  
 For all the Welshmen, hearing thou wert dead, 73  
 Are gone to Bolingbroke, dispers'd and fled.

AUMERLE. Comfort, my liege ! why looks your Grace  
 so pale ?

KING RICHARD. But now, the blood of twenty thou-  
 sand men 76

Did triumph in my face, and they are fled ;  
 And till so much blood thither come again  
 Have I not reason to look pale and dead ?  
 All souls that will be safe, fly from my side ; 80  
 For time hath set a blot upon my pride.

AUMERLE. Comfort, my liege ! remember who you are.

KING RICHARD. I had forgot myself. Am I not king ?  
 Awake, thou sluggard majesty ! thou sleepest. 84  
 Is not the king's name twenty thousand names ?  
 Arm, arm, my name ! a puny subject strikes  
 At thy great glory. Look not to the ground,  
 Ye favourites of a king : are we not high ? 88  
 High be our thoughts : I know my uncle York  
 Hath power enough to serve our turn. But who comes  
 here ?



Enter SIR STEPHEN SCROOP.

SCROOP. More health and happiness betide my liege  
Than can my care-tun'd tongue deliver him ! 92

KING RICHARD. Mine ear is open and my heart pre-  
par'd :

The worst is worldly loss thou canst unfold.  
Say, is my kingdom lost ? why, 'twas my care ;  
And what loss is it to be rid of care ? 96  
Strives Bolingbroke to be as great as we ?  
Greater he shall not be : if he serve God  
We'll serve him too, and be his fellow so :  
Revolt our subjects ? that we cannot mend ; 100  
They break their faith to God as well as us :  
Cry woe, destruction, ruin, loss, decay ;  
The worst is death, and death will have his day.

SCROOP. Glad am I that your highness is so arm'd  
To bear the tidings of calamity. 105  
Like an unseasonable stormy day  
Which makes the silver rivers drown their shores,  
As if the world were all dissolv'd to tears, 108  
So high above his limits swells the rage  
Of Bolingbroke, covering your fearful land  
With hard bright steel and hearts harder than steel.  
White-beards have arm'd their thin and hairless scalps  
Against thy majesty ; and boys, with women's voices,  
Strive to speak big, and clap their female joints  
In stiff unwieldy arms against thy crown ;  
Thy very beadsmen learn to bend their bows 116  
Of double-fatal yew against thy state ;  
Yea, distaff-women manage rusty bills  
Against thy seat : both young and old rebel,  
And all goes worse than I have power to tell. 120

KING RICHARD. Too well, too well thou tell'st a tale  
so ill.

Where is the Earl of Wiltshire ? where is Bagot ?  
What is become of Bushy ? where is Green ?  
That they have let the dangerous enemy 124  
Measure our confines with such peaceful steps ?  
If we prevail, their heads shall pay for it.  
I warrant they have made peace with Bolingbroke.

SCROOP. Peace have they made with him, indeed, my  
lord. 128

KING RICHARD. O villains, vipers, damna'd without redemption !

Dogs, easily won to fawn on any man ! 130

Snakes, in my heart-blood warm'd, that sting my heart !

Three Judases, each one thrice worse than Judas !

Would they make peace ? terrible hell make war

Upon their spotted souls for this offence !

SCROOP. Sweet love, I see, changing his property,  
Turns to the sourest and most deadly hate. 136

Again uncure their souls ; their peace is made

With heads and not with hands : those whom you curse

Have felt the worst of death's destroying wound

And lie full low, grav'd in the hollow ground. 140

AUMERLE. Is Bushy, Green, and the Earl of Wiltshire  
dead ?

SCROOP. Yea, all of them at Bristol lost their heads.

AUMERLE. Where is the duke my father with his  
power ?

KING RICHARD. No matter where. Of comfort no man  
speak : 144

Let's talk of graves, of worms, and epitaphs ;

Make dust our paper, and with rainy eyes

Write sorrow on the bosom of the earth ;

Let's choose executors and talk of wills : 148

And yet not so—for what can we bequeath

Save our deposed bodies to the ground ?

Our lands, our lives, and all are Bolingbroke's,

And nothing can we call our own but death, 152

And that small model of the barren earth

Which serves as paste and cover to our bones.

For God's sake, let us sit upon the ground

And tell sad stories of the death of kings : 156

How some have been deposed, some slain in war,

Some haunted by the ghosts they have deposed,

Some poison'd by their wives, some sleeping kill'd ;

All murder'd : for within the hollow crown 160

That rounds the mortal temples of a king

Keeps Death his court, and there the antick sits,

Scorning his state and grinning at his pomp ;

Allowing him a breath, a little scene, 164

To monarchize, be fear'd, and kill with looks,

Infusing him with self and vain conceit

As if this flesh which walls about our life

Were brass impregnable ; and humour'd thus 168  
 Comes at the last, and with a little pin  
 Bores through his castle wall, and farewell king !  
 Cover your heads, and mock not flesh and blood  
 With solemn reverence : throw away respect, 172  
 Tradition, form, and ceremonious duty,  
*For you have but mistook me all this while :*  
 I live with bread like you, feel want,  
 Taste grief, need friends : subjected thus, 176  
 How can you say to me I am a king ?

CARLISLE. My lord, wise men ne'er sit and wail their  
 woes,

But presently prevent the ways to wail.  
 To fear the foe, since fear oppresses strength, 180  
 Gives in your weakness strength unto your foe,  
 And so your follies fight against yourself.  
 Fear and be slain ; no worse can come to fight :  
 And fight and die is death destroying death ; 184  
 Where fearing dying pays death servile breath.

AUMERLE. My father hath a power ; inquire of him  
 And learn to make a body of a limb.

KING RICHARD. Thou chid'st me well. Proud Boling-  
 broke, I come 188

To change blows with thee for our day of doom.  
 This ague-fit of fear is over-blown ;  
 An easy task it is, to win our own.—  
 Say, Scroop, where lies our uncle with his power ? 192  
 Speak sweetly, man, although thy looks be sour.

SCROOP. Men judge by the complexion of the sky  
 The state and inclination of the day ;  
 So may you by my dull and heavy eye, 196  
 My tongue hath but a heavier tale to say.  
 I play the torturer, by small and small  
 To lengthen out the worst that must be spoken  
 Your uncle York is join'd with Bolingbroke, 200  
 And all your northern castles yielded up,  
 And all your southern gentlemen in arms  
 Upon his party.

KING RICHARD. Thou hast said enough.

[TO AUMERLE.] Beshrew thee, cousin, which didst lead me  
 forth 204

Of that sweet way I was in to despair !  
 What say you now ? What comfort have we now ?

By heaven, I'll hate him everlastingly  
That bids me be of comfort any more. 206  
Go to Flint Castle : there I'll pine away ;  
A king, woe's slave, shall kingly woe obey.  
That power I have, discharge ; and let them go  
To ear the land that hath some hope to grow, 212  
For I have none : let no man speak again  
To alter this, for counsel is but vain.

AUMERLE. My liege, one word.

KING RICHARD. He does me double wrong,  
That wounds me with the flatteries of his tongue. 216  
Discharge my followers ; let them hence away,  
From Richard's night to Bolingbroke's fair day. [Exeunt.

SCENE III. —Wales. Before Flint Castle.

Enter, with drum and colours, BOLINGBROKE and Forces ; YORK,  
NORTHUMBERLAND, and Others.

BOLINGBROKE. So that by this intelligence we learn  
The Welshmen are dispers'd and Salisbury  
Is gone to meet the king, who lately landed  
With some few private friends upon this coast. 4

NORTHUMBERLAND. The news is very fair and good,  
my lord :

Richard not far from hence hath hid his head.

YORK. It would beseem the Lord Northumberland  
To say ' King Richard ' : alack the heavy day 8  
When such a sacred king should hide his head !

NORTHUMBERLAND. Your Grace mistakes ; only to be  
brief

Left I his title out.

YORK. The time hath been,  
Would you have been so brief with him, he would 12  
Have been so brief with you, to shorten you,  
For taking so the head, your whole head's length.

BOLINGBROKE. Mistake not, uncle, further than you  
should,

YORK. Take not, good cousin, further than you  
should. 16

Lest you mistake the heavens are o'er our heads.

BOLINGBROKE. I know it, uncle ; and oppose not  
myself

Against their will. But who comes here ? 19

Enter HENRY PERCY.

Welcome, Harry : what, will not this castle yield ?

HENRY PERCY. The castle royally is mann'd, my lord,  
Against thy entrance.

BOLINGBROKE. Royally !  
Why, it contains no king ?

HENRY PERCY. Yes, my good lord, 24

It doth contain a king : King Richard lies  
Within the limits of yon lime and stone ;  
And with him are the Lord Aumerle, Lord Salisbury,  
Sir Stephen Scroop ; besides a clergyman 28  
Of holy reverence ; who, I cannot learn.

NORTHUMBERLAND. O ! belike it is the Bishop of  
Carlisle.

BOLINGBROKE. [To NORTHUMBERLAND.] Noble lord,  
Go to the rude ribs of that ancient castle, 32  
Through brazen trumpet send the breath of parley  
Into his ruin'd ears, and thus deliver :

Henry Bolingbroke  
On both his knees doth kiss King Richard's hand,  
And sends allegiance and true faith of heart 37

To his most royal person ; hither come  
Even at his feet to lay my arms and power,  
Provided that my banishment repeal'd, 40  
And lands restor'd again be freely granted.

If not, I'll use the advantage of my power,  
And lay the summer's dust with showers of blood  
Rain'd from the wounds of slaughter'd Englishmen :  
The which, how far off from the mind of Bolingbroke  
It is, such crimson tempest should bedrench  
The fresh green lap of fair King Richard's land,  
My stooping duty tenderly shall show. 48

Go, signify as much, while here we march  
Upon the grassy carpet of this plain.  
Let's march without the noise of threatening drum,  
That from the castle's totter'd battlements 52

Our fair appointments may be well perus'd.  
Methinks King Richard and myself should meet  
With no less terror than the elements  
Of fire and water, when their thundering shock 56

At meeting tears the cloudy cheeks of heaven.  
Be he the fire, I'll be the yielding water :

The rage be his, while on the earth I rain  
 My waters ; on the earth, and not on him. 60  
 March on, and mark King Richard how he looks.

A Parley sounded, and answered by a Trumpet within. Flourish.  
 Enter on the Walls, KING RICHARD, the BISHOP OF CARLISLE,  
 AUMERLE, SCROOP, and SALISBURY.

HENRY PERCY. See, see, King Richard doth himself  
 appear,

As doth the blushing discontented sun  
 From out the fiery portal of the east, 64  
 When he perceives the envious clouds are bent  
 To dim his glory and to stain the track  
 Of his bright passage to the occident.

YORK. Yet looks he like a king : behold, his eye,  
 As bright as is the eagle's, lightens forth 69  
 Controlling majesty : alack, alack, for woe,  
 That any harm should stain so fair a show !

KING RICHARD. [To NORTHUMBERLAND.] We are amaz'd ;  
 and thus long have we stood 72

To watch the fearful bending of thy knee,  
 Because we thought ourself thy lawful king :  
 And if we be, how dare thy joints forget  
 To pay their awful duty to our presence ? 76

If we be not, show us the hand of God  
 That hath dismiss'd us from our stewardship ;  
 For well we know, no hand of blood and bone  
 Can gripe the sacred handle of our sceptre, 80  
 Unless he do profane, steal, or usurp.

And though you think that all, as you have done,  
 Have torn their souls by turning them from us,  
 And we are barren and bereft of friends ; 84

Yet know, my master, God omnipotent,  
 Is mustering in his clouds on our behalf  
 Armies of pestilence ; and they shall strike  
 Your children yet unborn and unbegot, 88

That lift your vassal hands against my head  
 And threat the glory of my precious crown.  
 Tell Bolingbroke,—for yond methinks he is,—  
 That every stride he makes upon my land 92

Is dangerous treason : he is come to open  
 The purple testament of bleeding war ;  
 But ere the crown he looks for live in peace,  
 Ten thousand bloody crowns of mothers' sons 96

Shall ill become the flower of England's face,  
 Change the complexion of her maid-pale peace  
 To scarlet indignation, and bedew  
 Her pastures' grass with faithful English blood. 100

NORTHUMBERLAND. The king of heaven forbid our  
 lord the king

Should so with civil and uncivil arms  
 Be rush'd upon ! Thy thrice-noble cousin,  
 Harry Bolingbroke, doth humbly kiss thy hand ; 104  
 And by the honourable tomb he swears,  
 That stands upon your royal grandsire's bones,  
 And by the royalties of both your bloods,  
 Currents that spring from one most gracious head,  
 And by the buried hand of warlike Gaunt, 109  
 And by the worth and honour of himself,  
 Comprising all that may be sworn or said,  
 His coming hither hath no further scope 112  
 Than for his lineal royalties and to beg  
 Enfranchisement immediate on his knees :  
 Which on thy royal party granted once,  
 His glittering arms he will commend to rust, 116  
 His barbed steeds to stables, and his heart  
 To faithful service of your majesty.  
 This swears he, as he is a prince, is just ;  
 And, as I am a gentleman, I credit him. 120

KING RICHARD. Northumberland, say, thus the king  
 returns :

His noble cousin is right welcome hither ;  
 And all the number of his fair demands  
 Shall be accomplish'd without contradiction : 124  
 With all the gracious utterance thou hast  
 Speak to his gentle hearing kind commends.

[NORTHUMBERLAND retires to BOLINGBROKE.]

[To AUMERLE.] We do debase ourself, cousin, do we not,  
 To look so poorly and to speak so fair ? 128  
 Shall we call back Northumberland and send  
 Defiance to the traitor, and so die ?

AUMERLE. No, good my lord ; let's fight with gentle  
 words,

Till time lend friends and friends their helpful swords.

KING RICHARD. O God ! O God ! that e'er this  
 tongue of mine, 133

That laid the sentence of dread banishment

On yond proud man, should take it off again  
 With words of sooth. O ! that I were as great 136  
 As is my grief, or lesser than my name,  
 Or that I could forget what I have been,  
 Or not remember what I must be now.

Swell'st thou, proud heart ? I'll give thee scope to beat,  
 Since foes have scope to beat both thee and me. 141

AUMERLE. Northumberland comes back from Boling-  
 broke.

KING RICHARD. What must the king do now ? Must  
 he submit ? •

The king shall do it : must he be depos'd ? 144

The king shall be contented : must he lose

The name of king ? o' God's name, let it go :

I'll give my jewels for a set of beads,

My gorgeous palace for a hermitage, 148

My gay apparel for an almsman's gown,

My figur'd goblets for a dish of wood,

My sceptre for a palmer's walking-staff,

My subjects for a pair of carved saints, 152

And my large kingdom for a little grave,

A little little grave, an obscure grave ;

Or I'll be buried in the king's highway,

Some way of common trade, where subjects' feet

May hourly trample on their sovereign's head ; 157

For on my heart they tread now whilst I live ;

And buried once, why not upon my head ?

Aumerle, thou weep'st, my tender-hearted cousin !

We'll make foul weather with despised tears ; 161

Our sighs and they shall lodge the summer corn,

And make a dearth in this revolting land.

Or shall we play the wantons with our woes, 164

And make some pretty match with shedding tears ?

As thus ; to drop them still upon one place,

Till they have fretted us a pair of graves 167

Within the earth ; and, there inlaid : ' There lies

Two kinsmen digg'd their graves with weeping eyes.'

Would not this ill do well ? Well, well, I see

I talk but idly and you laugh at me. •

Most mighty prince, my Lord Northumberland, 172

What says King Bolingbroke ? will his majesty

Give Richard leave to live till Richard die ?

You make a leg, and Bolingbroke says ay.



**NORTHUMBERLAND.** My lord, in the base court he doth attend 176

To speak with you ; may't please you to come down ?

**KING RICHARD.** Down, down, I come ; like glistening Phaethon,

Wanting the manage of unruly jades.

In the base court ? Base court, where kings grow base,  
To come at traitors' calls and do them grace. 181

In the base court ? Come down ? Down, court ! down,  
king !

For night-owls shriek where mounting larks should sing.

[Exeunt from above.

**BOLINGBROKE.** What says his majesty ?

**NORTHUMBERLAND.** Sorrow and grief of heart  
Makes him speak fondly, like a frantic man :  
Yet he is come.

Enter **KING RICHARD**, and his Attendants.

**BOLINGBROKE.** Stand all apart,  
And show fair duty to his majesty. [Kneeling. 189

My gracious lord,—  
**KING RICHARD.** Fair cousin, you debase your princely  
knee

To make the base earth proud with kissing it :  
Me rather had my heart might feel your love 192  
Than my unpleas'd eye see your courtesy.  
Up, cousin, up ; your heart is up, I know,  
Thus high at least, although your knee be low.

**BOLINGBROKE.** My gracious lord, I come but for mine  
own. 193

**KING RICHARD.** Your own is yours, and I am yours,  
and all.

**BOLINGBROKE.** So far be mine, my most redoubted  
lord,

As my true service shall deserve your love.

**KING RICHARD.** Well you deserve : they well deserve  
to have 200

That know the strong'st and surest way to get.

Uncle, give me your hand : nay, dry your eyes ;

Tears show their love, but want their remedies.

Cousin, I am too young to be your father, 204

Though you are old enough to be my heir.

What you will have I'll give, and willing too ;

For do we must what force will have us do.

Set on towards London. Cousin, is it so ?

208

BOLINGBROKE. Yea, my good lord.

KING RICHARD.

Then I must not say no.

[Flourish. Exeunt.

SCENE IV.—Langley. The DUKE OF YORK'S Garden.

Enter the QUEEN and two Ladies.

QUEEN. What sport shall we devise here in this garden,

To drive away the heavy thought of care ?

FIRST LADY. Madam, we'll play at bowls.

QUEEN. 'Twill make me think the world is full of rubs,

4

And that my fortune runs against the bias.

FIRST LADY. Madam, we'll dance.

QUEEN. My legs can keep no measure in delight  
When my poor heart no measure keeps in grief :

8

Therefore, no dancing, girl ; some other sport.

FIRST LADY. Madam, we'll tell tales.

QUEEN. Of sorrow or of joy ?

FIRST LADY.

Of either, madam.

QUEEN. Of neither, girl :

12

For if of joy, being altogether wanting,

It doth remember me the more of sorrow ;

Or if of grief, being altogether had,

It adds more sorrow to my want of joy :

16

For what I have I need not to repeat,

And what I want it boots not to complain.

FIRST LADY. Madam, I'll sing.

QUEEN. 'Tis well that thou hast cause ;  
But thou shouldst please me better wouldst thou weep.

FIRST LADY. I could weep, madam, would it do you good.

21

QUEEN. And I could sing, would weeping do me good,  
And never borrow any tear of thee.

But stay, here come the gardeners :

24

Let's step into the shadow of these trees.

My wretchedness unto a row of pins,

They'll talk of state ; for every one doth so

Against a change : woe is forerun with woe.

28

[QUEEN and Ladies retire.

Enter a Gardener and two Servants.

GARDENER. Go, bind thou up yon dangling apricocks,  
Which, like unruly children, make their sire  
Stoop with oppression of their prodigal weight :  
Give some supportance to the bending twigs. 32  
Go thou, and like an executioner,  
Cut off the heads of too fast growing sprays,  
That look too lofty in our commonwealth :  
All must be even in our government. 36  
You thus employ'd, I will go root away  
The noisome weeds, that without profit suck  
The soil's fertility from wholesome flowers.

FIRST SERVANT. Why should we in the compass of a  
pale 40  
Keep law and form and due proportion,  
Showing, as in a model, our firm estate,  
When our sea-walled garden, the whole land,  
Is full of weeds, her fairest flowers chok'd up, 44  
Her fruit-trees all unprun'd, her hedges ruin'd,  
Her knots disorder'd, and her wholesome herbs  
Swarming with caterpillars ?

GARDENER. Hold thy peace :  
He that hath suffer'd this disorder'd spring 48  
Hath now himself met with the fall of leaf ;  
The weeds that his broad-spreading leaves did shelter,  
That seem'd in eating him to hold him up,  
Are pluck'd up root and all by Bolingbroke ; 52  
I mean the Earl of Wiltshire, Bushy, Green.

FIRST SERVANT. What ! are they dead ?

GARDENER. They are ; and Bolingbroke  
Hath seiz'd the wasteful king. O ! what pity is it  
That he hath not so trimm'd and dress'd his land 56  
As we this garden. We at time of year  
Do wound the bark, the skin of our fruit-trees,  
Lest, being over-proud with sap and blood,  
With too much riches it confound itself : 60  
Had he done so to great and growing men,  
They might have liv'd to bear and he to taste  
Their fruits of duty : superfluous branches  
We lop away that bearing boughs may live : 64  
Had he done so, himself had borne the crown,  
Which waste of idle hours hath quite thrown down.

FIRST SERVANT. What ! think you then the king shall  
be depos'd ?

GARDENER. Depress'd he is already, and depos'd  
'Tis doubt he will be : letters came last night 69  
To a dear friend of the good Duke of York's,  
That tell black tidings.

QUEEN. O ! I am press'd to death through want of  
speaking. [Coming forward.  
Thou, old Adam's likeness, set to dress this garden,  
How dares thy harsh rude tongue sound this displeasing  
news ?

What Eve, what serpent, hath suggested thee  
To make a second fall of cursed man ? 76  
Why dost thou say King Richard is depos'd ?  
Dar'st thou, thou little better thing than earth,  
Divine his downfall ? Say, where, when, and how  
Cam'st thou by these ill tidings ? speak, thou wretch.

GARDENER. Pardon me, madam : little joy have I  
To breathe these news, yet what I say is true.  
King Richard, he is in the mighty hold 83  
Of Bolingbroke ; their fortunes both are weigh'd :  
In your lord's scale is nothing but himself,  
And some few vanities that make him light ;  
But in the balance of great Bolingbroke,  
Besides himself, are all the English peers, 88  
And with that odds he weighs King Richard down.  
Post you to London and you'll find it so ;  
I speak no more than every one doth know.

QUEEN. Nimble mischance, that art so light of foot,  
Doth not thy embassy belong to me, 93  
And am I last that knows it ? O ! thou think'st  
To serve me last, that I may longest keep  
Thy sorrow in my breast. Come, ladies, go, 96  
To meet at London London's king in woe.  
What ! was I born to this, that my sad look  
Should grace the triumph of great Bolingbroke ?  
Gardener, for telling me these news of woe, 100  
Pray God the plants thou graft'st may never grow. •

[Exeunt QUEEN and Ladies.

GARDENER. Poor queen ! so that thy state might be  
no worse,  
I would my skill were subject to thy curse.  
Here did she fall a tear ; here, in this place, 104

I'll set a bank of rue, sour herb of grace ;  
 Rue, even for ruth, here shortly shall be seen,  
 In the remembrance of a weeping queen. [Exeunt.

## ACT IV.

SCENE I.—London. Westminster Hall.

The Lords spiritual on the right side of the throne : the Lords temporal on the left ; the Commons below. Enter BOLINGBROKE, AUMERLE, SURREY, NORTHUMBERLAND, HENRY PERCY, FITZWATER, another Lord, the BISHOP OF CARLISLE, the ABBOT OF WESTMINSTER, and Attendants. Officers behind with BAGOT.

BOLINGBROKE. Call forth Bagot  
 Now, Bagot, freely speak thy mind ;  
 What thou dost know of noble Gloucester's death,  
 Who wrought it with the king, and who perform'd  
 The bloody office of his timeless end. 5

BAGOT. Then set before my face the Lord Aumerle.

BOLINGBROKE. Cousin, stand forth, and look upon  
 that man.

BAGOT. My Lord Aumerle, I know your daring tongue  
 Scorns to unsay what once it hath deliver'd.  
 In that dead time when Gloucester's death was plotted,  
 I heard you say, ' Is not my arm of length,  
 That reacheth from the restful English court 12  
 As far as Calais, to my uncle's head ? '  
 Amongst much other talk, that very time,  
 I heard you say that you had rather refuse  
 The offer of a hundred thousand crowns 16  
 Than Bolingbroke's return to England ;  
 Adding withal, how blest this land would be  
 In this your cousin's death.

AUMERLE. Princes and noble lords,  
 What answer shall I make to this base man ? 20  
 Shall I so much dishonour my fair stars,  
 Or equal terms to give him chastisement ?  
 Either I must, or have mine honour soil'd  
 With the attainder of his slanderous lips. 24  
 There is my gage, the manual seal of death,  
 That marks thee out for hell : I say thou liest,  
 And will maintain what thou hast said is false

In thy heart-blood, though being all too base 28  
To stain the temper of my knightly sword.

BOLINGBROKE. Bagot, forbear; thou shalt not take  
it up.

AUMERLE. Excepting one, I would he were the best  
In all this presence that hath mov'd me so. 32

FITZWATER. If that thy valour stand on sympathies,  
There is my gage, Aumerle, in gage to thine :  
By that fair sun which shows me where thou stand'st;  
I heard thee say, and vauntingly thou spak'st it, 36  
That thou wert cause of noble Gloucester's death.

If thou deny'st it twenty times, thou liest;  
And I will turn thy falsehood to thy heart,  
Where it was forged, with my rapier's point. 40

AUMERLE. Thou dar'est not, coward, live to see that  
day.

FITZWATER. Now, by my soul, I would it were this  
hour.

AUMERLE. Fitzwater, thou art damn'd to hell for this.

HENRY PERCY. Aumerle, thou liest; his honour is  
as true 44

In this appeal as thou art all unjust;  
And that thou art so, there I throw my gage,  
To prove it on thee to the extremest point  
Of mortal breathing: seize it if thou dar'st. 48

AUMERLE. And if I do not may my hands rot off  
And never brandish more revengeful steel  
Over the glittering helmet of my foe!

LORD. I task the earth to the like, forsworn Aumerle;  
And spur thee on with full as many lies 53  
As may be holla'd in thy treacherous ear  
From sun to sun: there is my honour's pawn;  
Engage it to the trial if thou dar'st. 56

AUMERLE. Who sets me else? by heaven, I'll throw  
at all:

I have a thousand spirits in one breast,  
To answer twenty thousand such as you.

SURREY. My Lord Fitzwater, I do remember well.  
The very time Aumerle and you did talk. 61

FITZWATER. 'Tis very true: you were in presence  
then;

And you can witness with me this is true.

SURREY. As false, by heaven, as heaven itself is true.

FITZWATER. Surrey, thou liest.

SURREY. Dishonourable boy !

That lie shall lie so heavy on my sword  
That it shall render vengeance and revenge,  
Till thou the lie-giver and that lie do lie 68  
In earth as quiet as thy father's skull.  
In proof whereof, there is my honour's pawn :  
Engage it to the trial if thou darest.

FITZWATER. How fondly dost thou spur a forward  
horse ! 72

If I dare eat, or drink, or breathe, or live,  
I dare meet Surrey in a wilderness,  
And spit upon him, whilst I say he lies  
And lies, and lies : there is my bond of faith 76  
To tie thee to my strong correction.  
As I intend to thrive in this new world,  
Aumerle is guilty of my true appeal :  
Besides, I heard the banish'd Norfolk say. 80  
That thou, Aumerle, didst send two of thy men  
To execute the noble duke at Calais.

AUMERLE. Some honest Christian trust me with a gage.  
That Norfolk lies, here do I throw down this, 84  
If he may be repeal'd to try his honour.

BOLINGBROKE. These differences shall all rest under  
gage  
Till Norfolk be repeal'd : repeal'd he shall be,  
And though mine enemy, restor'd again 88  
To all his lands and signories ; when he's return'd,  
Against Aumerle we will enforce his trial.

CARLISLE. That honourable day shall ne'er be seen.  
Many a time hath banish'd Norfolk fought 92  
For Jesu Christ in glorious Christian field,  
Streaming the ensign of the Christian cross  
Against black pagans, Turks, and Saracens ;  
And toil'd with works of war, retir'd himself 96  
To Italy ; and there at Venice gave  
His body to that pleasant country's earth,  
And his pure soul unto his captain Christ,  
Under whose colours he had fought so long. 100

BOLINGBROKE. Why, bishop, is Norfolk dead ?

CARLISLE. As surely as I live, my lord.

BOLINGBROKE. Sweet peace conduct his sweet soul  
to the bosom

Of good old Abraham ! Lords appellants, 104  
Your differences shall all rest under gage  
Till we assign you to your days of trial.

Enter YORK, attended.

YORK. Great Duke of Lancaster, I come to thee  
From plume-pluck'd Richard ; who with willing soul  
Adopts thee heir, and his high sceptre yields 109  
To the possession of thy royal hand.

Ascend his throne, descending now from him ;  
And long live Henry, of that name the fourth ! 112

BOLINGBROKE. In God's name, I'll ascend the regal  
throne.

CARLISLE. Marry, God forbid !  
Worst in this royal presence may I speak,  
Yet best beseeching me to speak the truth. 116

Would God that any in this noble presence  
Were enough noble to be upright judge  
Of noble Richard ! then, true noblesse would  
Learn him forbearance from so foul a wrong. 120

What subject can give sentence on his king ?  
And who sits here that is not Richard's subject ?  
Thieves are not judg'd but they are by to hear,  
Although apparent guilt be seen in them ; 124

And shall the figure of God's majesty,  
His captain, steward, deputy elect,  
Anointed, crowned, planted many years,  
Be judg'd by subject and inferior breath, 128

And he himself not present ? O ! forfend it, God,  
That in a Christian climate souls refin'd,  
Should show so heinous, black, obscene a deed.  
I speak to subjects, and a subject speaks, 132

Stirr'd up by God thus boldly for his king.  
My Lord of Hereford here, whom you call king,  
Is a foul traitor to proud Hereford's king ;  
And if you crown him, let me prophesy, 136

The blood of English shall manure the ground  
And future ages groan for this foul act ;  
Peace shall go sleep with Turks and infidels,  
And in this seat of peace tumultuous wars 140

Shall kin with kin and kind with kind confound ;  
Disorder, horror, fear and mutiny  
Shall here inhabit, and this land be call'd



The field of Golgotha and dead men's skulls. 144

O ! if you rear this house against this house,

It will the woofullest division prove

That ever fell upon this cursed earth.

Prevent it, resist it, let it not be so, 148

Lest child, child's children, cry against you ' woe ! '

NORTHUMBERLAND. Well have you argu'd, sir ; and,  
for your pains,

Of capital treason we arrest you here.

My Lord of Westminster, be it your charge 152

To keep him safely till his day of trial.

May it please you, lords, to grant the commons' suit.

BOLINGBROKE. Fetch hither Richard, that in common  
view

He may surrender ; so we shall proceed 156

Without suspicion.

YORK I will be his conduct. [Exit.

BOLINGBROKE. Lords, you that here are under our  
arrest,

Procure your sureties for your days of answer.

[To CARLISLE.] Little are we beholding to your love, 160

And little look'd for at your helping hands.

Re-enter YORK, with KING RICHARD, and Officers bearing the  
Crown, &c.

KING RICHARD. Alack ! why am I sent for to a king  
Before I have shook off the regal thoughts

Wherewith I reign'd ? I hardly yet have learn'd 164

To insinuate, flatter, bow, and bend my limbs :

Give sorrow leave awhile to tutor me

To this submission. Yet I well remember

The favours of these men : were they not mine ? 168

Did they not sometime cry, ' All hail ! ' to me ?

So Judas did to Christ : but he, in twelve,

Found truth in all but one ; I, in twelve thousand, none.

God save the king ! Will no man say, amen ? 172

Am I both priest and clerk ? well then, amen.

God save the king ! although I be not he ;

And yet, amen, if heaven do think him me.

To do what service am I sent for hither ? 176

YORK. To do that office of thine own good will  
Which tired majesty did make thee offer,  
The resignation of thy state and crown

To Henry Bolingbroke.

180

KING RICHARD. Give me the crown. Here, cousin, seive  
the crown ;

Here cousin,

Or this side my hand and on that side thine.

Now is this golden crown like a deep well 184

That owes two buckets filling one another ;

The emptier ever dancing in the air,

The other down, unseen and full of water :

That bucket down and full of tears am I, 188  
Drinking my griefs, whilst you mount up on high.

BOLINGBROKE. I thought you had been willing to  
resign.

KING RICHARD. My crown, I am ; but still my griefs  
are mine.

You may my glories and my state depose, 192

But not my griefs ; still am I king of those.

BOLINGBROKE. Part of your cares you give me with  
your crown.

KING RICHARD. Your cares set up do not pluck my  
cares down.

My care is loss of care, by old care done ; 196

Your care is gain of care, by new care won.

The cares I give I have, though given away ;

They tend the crown, yet still with me they stay.

BOLINGBROKE. Are you contented to resign the crown ?

KING RICHARD. Ay, no ; no, ay ; for I must nothing  
be ; • 201

Therefore no no, for I resign to thee.

Now mark me how I will undo myself :

I give this heavy weight from off my head, 204

And this unwieldy sceptre from my hand,

The pride of kingly sway from out my heart ;

With mine own tears I wash away my balm,

With mine own hands I give away my crown, 208

With mine own tongue deny my sacred state,

With mine own breath release all duteous rites :

All pomp and majesty I do forswear ;

My manors, rents, revenues, I forego ; 212

My acts, decrees, and statutes I deny :

God pardon all oaths that are broke to me !

God keep all vows unbroke are made to thee !

Make me, that nothing have, with nothing griev'd,

And thou with all pleas'd, that hast all achiev'd !  
 Long mayst thou live in Richard's seat to sit,  
 And soon lie Richard in an earthy pit !  
 God save King Henry, unking'd Richard says,      220  
 And send him many years of sunshine days !  
 What more remains ?

NORTHUMBERLAND. [Offering a paper.] No more, but that  
 you read

These accusations and these grievous crimes  
 Committed by your person and your followers      224  
 Against the state and profit of this land ;  
 That, by confessing them, the souls of men  
 May deem that you are worthily depos'd.      227

KING RICHARD. Must I do so ? and must I ravel out  
 My weav'd-up follies ? Gentle Northumberland,  
 If thy offences were upon record,  
 Would it not shame thee in so fair a troop  
 To read a lecture of them ? If thou wouldst,      232  
 There shouldst thou find one heinous article,  
 Containing the deposing of a king,  
 And cracking the strong warrant of an oath,  
 Mark'd with a blot, damn'd in the book of heaven.  
 Nay, all of you that stand and look upon me,      237  
 Whilst that my wretchedness doth bait myself,  
 Though some of you with Pilate wash your hands,  
 Showing an outward pity ; yet you Pilates      240  
 Have here deliver'd me to my sour cross,  
 And water cannot wash away your sin.

NORTHUMBERLAND. My lord, dispatch ; read o'er these  
 articles.

KING RICHARD. Mine eyes are full of tears, I cannot  
 see :      244

And yet salt water blinds them not so much  
 But they can see a sort of traitors here.  
 Nay, if I turn mine eyes upon myself,  
 I find myself a traitor with the rest ;      248  
 For I have given here my soul's consent  
 To undeck the pompous body of a king ;  
 Made glory base and sovereignty a slave,  
 Proud majesty a subject, state a peasant.      252

NORTHUMBERLAND. My lord,—

KING RICHARD. No lord of thine, thou haught insult-  
 ing man,

Nor no man's lord ; I have no name, no title,  
 No, not that name was given me at the font, 256  
 But 'tis usurp'd : alack the heavy day !  
 That I have worn so many winters out,  
 And know not now what name to call myself.  
 O ! that I were a mockery king of snow, 260  
 Standing before the sun of Bolingbroke,  
 To melt myself away in water-drops.  
 Good king, great king,—and yet not greatly good,  
 An if my word be sterling yet in England, 264  
 Let it command a mirror hither straight,  
 That it may show me what a face I have,  
 Since it is bankrupt of his majesty.

BOLINGBROKE. Go some of you and fetch a looking-glass. [Exit an Attendant.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Read o'er this paper while the glass doth come. 269

KING RICHARD. Fiend ! thou torment'st me ere I come to hell.

BOLINGBROKE. Urge it no more, my Lord Northumberland.

NORTHUMBERLAND. The commons will not then be satisfied. 272

KING RICHARD. They shall be satisfied : I'll read enough

When I do see the very book indeed  
 Where all my sins are writ, and that's myself.

Re-enter Attendant, with a glass.

Give me the glass, and therein will I read. 276

No deeper wrinkles yet ? Hath sorrow struck  
 So many blows upon this face of mine  
 And made no deeper wounds ? O, flattering glass !  
 Like to my followers in prosperity, 280

Thou dost beguile me. Was this face the face  
 That every day under his household roof  
 Did keep ten thousand men ? Was this the face  
 That like the sun did make beholders wink ? 284

Was this the face that fac'd so many follies,  
 And was at last out-fac'd by Bolingbroke ?  
 A brittle glory shineth in this face :  
 As brittle as the glory is the face ; 288

[Dashes the glass against the ground.

For there it is, crack'd in a hundred shivers  
 Mark, silent king, the moral of this sport,  
 How soon my sorrow hath destroy'd my face.

BOLINGBROKE. The shadow of your sorrow hath de-  
 stroy'd 292

The shadow of your face.

KING RICHARD. Say that again.

The shadow of my sorrow ! Ha ! let's see :

'Tis very true, my grief lies all within ;  
 And these external manners of laments 296

Are merely shadows to the unseen grief

That swells with silence in the tortur'd soul ;

There lies the substance : and I thank thee, king,

For thy great bounty, that not only givest 300

Me cause to wail, but teachest me the way

How to lament the cause. I'll beg one boon,

And then be gone and trouble you no more.

Shall I obtain it ?

BOLINGBROKE. Name it, fair cousin. 304

KING RICHARD. ' Fair cousin ' ! I am greater than a  
 king ;

For when I was a king, my flatterers

Were then but subjects ; being now a subject,

I have a king here to my flatterer. 308

Being so great, I have no need to beg.

BOLINGBROKE. Yet ask.

KING RICHARD. And shall I have ?

BOLINGBROKE. You shall. 312

KING RICHARD. Then give me leave to go.

BOLINGBROKE. Whither ?

KING RICHARD. Whither you will, so I were from your  
 sights.

BOLINGBROKE. Go, some of you convey him to the  
 Tower. 316

KING RICHARD. O, good ! convey ? conveyers are you  
 all,

That rise thus nimbly by a true king's fall.

[Exeunt KING RICHARD and Guard.

' BOLINGBROKE. On Wednesday next we solemnly set  
 down

Our coronation : lords, prepare yourselves. 320

[Exeunt all except the BISHOP of CARLISLE, the ABBOT OF  
 WESTMINSTER, and AUMERLE.

ABBOT. A woeful pageant have we here beheld.

CARLISLE. The woe's to come; the children yet unborn  
Shall feel this day as sharp to them as thorn.

AUMERLE. You holy clergyman, is there no plot  
To rid the realm of this pernicious blot? 325

ABBOT. My lord,  
Before I freely speak my mind herein,  
You shall not only take the sacrament 328  
To bury mine intents, but also to effect  
Whatever I shall happen to devise.

I see your brows are full of discontent,  
Your hearts of sorrow, and your eyes of tears: 332

Come home with me to supper; I will lay  
A plot shall show us all a merry day. [Exeunt.

## ACT V.

SCENE I.—London. A Street leading to the Tower.

Enter the QUEEN and Ladies.

QUEEN. This way the king will come; this is the way  
To Julius Cæsar's ill-erected tower,  
To whose flint bosom my condemned lord  
Is doom'd a prisoner by proud Bolingbroke. 4  
Here let us rest, if this rebellious earth  
Have any resting for her true king's queen.

Enter KING RICHARD and Guard.

But soft, but see, or rather do not see,  
My fair rose wither: yet look up, behold, 8  
That you in pity may dissolve to dew,  
And wash him fresh again with true-love tears.  
Ah! thou, the model where old Troy did stand,  
Thou map of honour, thou King Richard's tomb, 12  
And not King Richard; thou most beauteous inn,  
Why should hard-favour'd grief be lodg'd in thee,  
When triumph is become an alehouse guest?

KING RICHARD. Join not with grief, fair woman, do  
not so, 16

To make my end too sudden: learn, good soul,  
To think our former state a happy dream;  
From which awak'd, the truth of what we are

Shows us but this. I am sworn brother, sweet, 20  
 To grim Necessity, and he and I  
 Will keep a league till death. Hie thee to France,  
 And cloister thee in some religious house :  
 Our holy lives must win a new world's crown, 24  
 Which our profane hours here have stricken down.

QUEEN. What ! is my Richard both in shape and  
 mind

Transform'd and weaken'd ! Hath Bolingbroke depos'd  
 Thine intellect ? hath he been in thy heart ? 28  
 The lion dying thrusteth forth his paw  
 And wounds the earth, if nothing else, with rage  
 To be o'erpower'd ; and wilt thou, pupil-like,  
 Take thy correction mildly, kiss the rod, 32  
 And fawn on rage with base humility,  
 Which art a lion and a king of beasts ?

KING RICHARD. A king of beasts, indeed ; if aught  
 but beasts,

I had been still a happy king of men. 36  
 Good sometime queen, prepare thee hence for France,  
 Think I am dead, and that even here thou tak'st,  
 As from my death-bed, my last living leave.  
 In winter's tedious nights sit by the fire 40  
 With good old folks, and let them tell thee tales  
 Of woeful ages, long ago betid ;  
 And ere thou bid good night, to quit their grief,  
 Tell thou the lamentable tale of me, 44  
 And send the hearers weeping to their beds :  
 For why, the senseless brands will sympathize  
 The heavy accent of thy moving tongue,  
 And in compassion weep the fire out ; 48  
 And some will mourn in ashes, some coal-black,  
 For the deposing of a rightful king.

Enter NORTHUMBERLAND, attended.

NORTHUMBERLAND. My lord, the mind of Bolingbroke  
 is chang'd ;

You must to Pomfret, not unto the Tower. 52  
 And, madam, there is order ta'en for you ;  
 With all swift speed you must away to France.

KING RICHARD. Northumberland, thou ladder where-  
 withal

The mounting Bolingbroke ascends my throne, 56

The time shall not be many hours of age  
More than it is, ere foul sin gathering head  
Shall break into corruption. Thou shalt think,  
Though he divide the realm and give thee half, 60  
It is too little, helping him to all ;  
And he shall think that thou, which know'st the way  
To plant unrightful kings, wilt know again,  
Being ne'er so little urg'd, another way 64  
To pluck him headlong from the usurped throne.  
The love of wicked friends converts to fear ;  
That fear to hate, and hate turns one or both  
To worthy danger and deserved death. 68

NORTHUMBERLAND. My guilt be on my head, and  
there an end.

Take leave and part ; for you must part forthwith.

KING RICHARD. Doubly divorc'd ! Bad men, ye  
violate

A twofold marriage ; 'twixt my crown and me, 72  
And then, betwixt me and my married wife.

Let me unkiss the oath 'twixt thee and me ;

And yet not so, for with a kiss 'twas made.

Part us, Northumberland : I towards the north, 76

Where shivering cold and sickness pines the clime ;

My wife to France : from whence, set forth in pomp,

She came adorned hither like sweet May,

Sent back like Hallowmas or short'st of day. 80

QUEEN. And must we be divided ? must we part ?

KING RICHARD. Ay, hand from hand, my love, and  
heart from heart.

QUEEN. Banish us both and send the king with me.

NORTHUMBERLAND. That were some love but little  
policy. 84

QUEEN. Then whither he goes, thither let me go.

KING RICHARD. So two, together weeping, make one  
woe.

Weep thou for me in France, I for thee here ;

Better far off than near, be ne'er the near. 88

Go, count thy way with sighs, I mine with groans.

QUEEN. So longest way shall have the longest moans.

KING RICHARD. Twice for one step I'll groan, the way  
being short,

And piece the way out with a heavy heart. 92

Come, come, in wooing sorrow let's be brief,



Since, wedding it, there is such length in grief.

One kiss shall stop our mouths, and dumbly part ;

Thus give I mine, and thus take I thy heart. [They kiss.

QUEEN. Give me mine own again ; 'twere no good part  
To take on me to keep and kill thy heart. [They kiss again.

So, now I have mine own again, be gone,

That I may strive to kill it with a groan. 100

KING RICHARD. We make woe wanton with this fond  
delay :

Once more, adieu ; the rest let sorrow say. [Exeunt.

SCENE II.—The Same. A Room in the DUKE OF YORK's Palace.

Enter YORK and his DUCHESS.

DUCHESS. My lord, you told me you would tell the  
rest,

When weeping made you break the story off,  
Of our two cousins coming into London, 3

YORK. Where did I leave ?

DUCHESS. At that sad stop, my lord.  
Where rude misgovern'd hands, from windows' tops,  
Threw dust and rubbish on King Richard's head.

YORK. Then, as I said, the duke, great Bolingbroke,  
Mounted upon a hot and fiery steed, 8

Which his aspiring rider seem'd to know,  
With slow but stately pace kept on his course,  
While all tongues cried, ' God save thee, Bolingbroke ! '

You would have thought the very windows spake,  
So many greedy looks of young and old 13

Through casements darted their desiring eyes  
Upon his visage, and that all the walls  
With painted imagery had said at once 16

' Jesu preserve thee ! welcome, Bolingbroke ! '  
Whilst he, from one side to the other turning,

Bare-headed, lower than his proud steed's neck,  
Bespake them thus, ' I thank you, countrymen : ' 20  
And thus still doing, thus he pass'd along.

DUCHESS. Alack, poor Richard ! where rode he the  
whilst ?

YORK. As in a theatre, the eyes of men,  
After a well-grac'd actor leaves the stage, 24  
Are idly bent on him that enters next,  
Thinking his prattle to be tedious ;

Even so, or with much more contempt, men's eyes  
 Did scowl on Richard : no man cried, ' God save him ; '  
 No joyful tongue gave him his welcome home ; 29  
 But dust was thrown upon his sacred head,  
 Which with such gentle sorrow he shook off,  
 His face still combating with tears and smiles, 32  
 The badges of his grief and patience,  
 That had not God, for some strong purpose, steel'd  
 The hearts of men, they must perforce have melted,  
 And barbarism itself have pitied him. 36  
 But heaven hath a hand in these events,  
 To whose high will we bound our calm contents.  
 To Bolingbroke are we sworn subjects now,  
 Whose state and honour I for aye allow. 40

DUCHESS. Here comes my son Aumerle.

YORK. Aumerle that was ;  
 But that is lost for being Richard's friend,  
 And, madam, you must call him Rutland now.  
 I am in parliament pledge for his truth 44  
 And lasting fealty to the new made king.

Enter AUMERLE.

DUCHESS. Welcome, my son : who are the violets  
 now  
 That strew the green lap of the new come spring ?  
 AUMERLE. Madam, I know not, nor I greatly care  
 not : 48  
 God knows I had as lief be none as one.

YORK. Well, bear you well in this new spring of time,  
 Lest you be cropp'd before you come to prime.

What news from Oxford ? hold those justs and triumphs ?

AUMERLE. For aught I know, my lord, they do.

YORK. You will be there, I know.

AUMERLE. If God prevent it not, I purpose so.

YORK. What seal is that that hangs without thy  
 bosom ? 56

Yea, look'st thou pale ? let me see the writing.

AUMERLE. My lord, 'tis nothing.

YORK. No matter then, who sees it :  
 I will be satisfied ; let me see the writing.

AUMERLE. I do beseech your Grace to pardon me :  
 It is a matter of small consequence, 61  
 Which for some reasons I would not have seen.

YORK. Which for some reasons, sir, I mean to see.  
I fear, I fear,—

DUCHESS. What should you fear? 64  
'Tis nothing but some bond he's enter'd into  
For gay apparel 'gainst the triumph day.

YORK. Bound to himself! what doth he with a bond  
That he is bound to? Wife, thou art a fool. 68  
Boy, let me see the writing.

AUMERLE. I do beseech you, pardon me; I may not  
show it.

YORK. I will be satisfied; let me see it, I say.

[Snatches it, and reads.

Treason! foul treason! villain! traitor! slave! 72

DUCHESS. What is the matter, my lord?

YORK. Ho! who is within there?

Enter a Servant.

Saddle my horse.

God for his mercy! what treachery is here!

DUCHESS. Why, what is it, my lord? 76

YORK. Give me my boots, I say; saddle my horse.  
Now, by mine honour, by my life, my troth,  
I will appeach the villain. [Exit Servant.

DUCHESS. What's the matter?

YORK. Peace, foolish woman. 80

DUCHESS. I will not peace. What is the matter,  
Aumerle?

AUMERLE. Good mother, be content; it is no more  
Than my poor life must answer.

DUCHESS. Thy life answer!

YORK. Bring me my boots: I will unto the king.

Re-enter Servant with boots.

DUCHESS. Strike him, Aumerle. Poor boy, thou art  
amaz'd. 85

[To Servant.] Hence, villain! never more come in my  
sight. [Exit Servant.

YORK. Give me my boots, I say.

DUCHESS. Why, York, what wilt thou do? 88

Wilt thou not hide the trespass of thine own?

Have we more sons, or are we like to have?

Is not my teeming date drunk up with time?

And wilt thou pluck my fair son from mine age, 92

And rob me of a happy mother's name ?

Is he not like thee ? is he not thine own ?

YORK. Thou fond, mad woman,  
Wilt thou conceal this dark conspiracy ? 96  
A dozen of them here have ta'en the sacrament,  
And interchangeably set down their hands,  
To kill the king at Oxford.

DUCHESS. He shall be none ; 99  
We'll keep him here : then, what is that to him ?

YORK. Away, fond woman ! were he twenty times  
My son, I would appeach him.

DUCHESS. Hadst thou groan'd for him  
As I have done, thou'dst be more pitiful.  
But now I know thy mind : thou dost suspect 104  
That I have been disloyal to thy bed,  
And that he is a bastard, not thy son :  
Sweet York, sweet husband, be not of that mind :  
He is as like thee as a man may be, 108  
Not like to me, nor any of my kin,  
And yet I love him.

YORK. Make way, unruly woman ! [Exit.

DUCHESS. After, Aumerle ! Mount thee upon his horse ;  
Spur post, and get before him to the king, 112  
And beg thy pardon ere he do accuse thee.  
I'll not be long behind ; though I be old,  
I doubt not but to ride as fast as York :  
And never will I rise up from the ground 116  
Till Bolingbroke have pardon'd thee. Away ! be gone.  
[Exeunt.

SCENE III.—Windsor. A Room in the Castle.

Enter BOLINGBROKE as King ; HENRY PERCY, and other Lords.

BOLINGBROKE. Can no man tell of my unthrifty son ?  
'Tis full three months since I did see him last.  
If any plague hang over us, 'tis he.  
I would to God, my lords, he might be found : 4  
Inquire at London, 'mongst the taverns there,  
For there, they say, he daily doth frequent,  
With unrestrained loose companions, •  
Even such, they say, as stand in narrow lanes 8  
And beat our watch and rob our passengers ;  
While he, young wanton and effeminate boy,  
Takes on the point of honour to support

So dissolute a crew.

12

HENRY PERCY. My lord, some two days since I saw  
the prince,

And told him of these triumphs held at Oxford.

BOLINGBROKE. And what said the gallant ?

HENRY PERCY. His answer was : he would unto the  
stews,

16

And from the common'st creature pluck a glove,

And wear it as a favour ; and with that

He would unhorse the lustiest challenger.

BOLINGBROKE. As dissolute as desperate ; yet through  
both,

20

I see some sparkles of a better hope,

Which elder days may happily bring forth.

But who comes here ?

Enter AUMERLE.

AUMERLE.

Where is the king ?

BOLINGBROKE.

What means

Our cousin, that he stares and looks so wildly ?

AUMERLE. God save your Grace ! I do beseech your  
majesty,

25

To have some conference with your Grace alone.

BOLINGBROKE. Withdraw yourselves, and leave us  
here alone.

[Exit HENRY PERCY and Lords.]

What is the matter with our cousin now ?

28

AUMERLE. [Kneels.] For ever may my knees grow to  
the earth,

My tongue cleave to my roof within my mouth,

Unless a pardon ere I rise or speak.

BOLINGBROKE. Intended or committed was this fault ?

If on the first, how heinous e'er it be,

33

To win thy after-love I pardon thee.

AUMERLE. Then give me leave that I may turn the  
key,

That no man enter till my tale be done.

36

BOLINGBROKE. Have thy desire. [AUMERLE locks the door.]

YORK. [Within.] My liege, beware ! look to thyself ;

Thou hast a traitor in thy presence there.

BOLINGBROKE. [Drawing.] Villain, I'll make thee safe.

AUMERLE. Stay thy revengeful hand ; thou hast no  
cause to fear.

41

YORK. [Within.] Open the door, secure, foolhardy king :

Shall I for love speak treason to thy face ?

Open the door, or I will break it open.

44

[BOLINGBROKE unlocks the door ; and afterwards relocks it.

Enter YORK.

BOLINGBROKE. What is the matter, uncle ? speak ;  
Recover breath ; tell us how near is danger,  
That we may arm us to encounter it.

YORK. Peruse this writing here, and thou shalt know  
The treason that my haste forbids me show. 49

AUMERLE. Remember, as thou read'st, thy promise  
pass'd :

I do repent me ; read not my name there ;  
My heart is not confederate with my hand. 52

YORK. 'Twas, villain, ere thy hand did set it down.  
I tore it from the traitor's bosom, king ;  
Fear, and not love, begets his penitence.  
Forget to pity him, lest thy pity prove 56  
A serpent that will sting thee to the heart.

BOLINGBROKE. O heinous, strong, and bold con-  
spiracy !

O loyal father of a treacherous son !  
Thou sheer, immaculate, and silver fountain, 60  
From whence this stream through muddy passages  
Hath held his current and defil'd himself !  
Thy overflow of good converts to bad,  
And thy abundant goodness shall excuse 64  
This deadly blot in thy digressing son.

YORK. So shall my virtue be his vice's bawd,  
And he shall spend mine honour with his shame,  
As thriftless sons their scraping fathers' gold. 68  
Mine honour lives when his dishonour dies,  
Or my sham'd life in his dishonour lies :  
Thou kill'st me in his life ; giving him breath,  
The traitor lives, the true man's put to death. 72

DUCHESS. [Within.] What ho, my liege ! for God's sake  
let me in.

BOLINGBROKE. What shrill-voic'd suppliant makes  
this eager cry ?

DUCHESS. [Within.] A woman, and thine aunt, great  
king ; 'tis I.

Speak with me, pity me, open the door : 76  
A beggar begs, that never begg'd before.

BOLINGBROKE. Our scene is alter'd from a serious thing,  
 And now chang'd to 'The Beggar and the King'.  
 My dangerous cousin, let your mother in : 80  
 I know she's come to pray for your foul sin.

[AUMERLE unlocks the door.

YORK. If thou do pardon, whosoever pray,  
 More sins, for this forgiveness, prosper may.  
 This fester'd joint cut off, the rest rests sound ; 84  
 This, let alone, will all the rest confound.

Enter DUCHESS.

DUCHESS. O king ! believe not this hard-hearted man :  
 Love, loving not itself, none other can.

YORK. Thou frantic woman, what dost thou make  
 here ? 88  
 Shall thy old dugs once more a traitor rear ?

DUCHESS. Sweet York, be patient. [Kneels.  
 Hear me, gentle liege.

BOLINGBROKE. Rise up, good aunt.

DUCHESS. Not yet, I thee beseech.  
 For ever will I walk upon my knees, 92  
 And never see day that the happy sees,  
 Till thou give joy : until thou bid me joy,  
 By pardoning Rutland, my transgressing boy. 95

AUMERLE. Unto my mother's prayers I bend my  
 knee. [Kneels.

YORK. Against them both, my true joints bended be.  
 [Kneels.

Ill mayst thou thrive if thou grant any grace !

DUCHESS. Pleads he in earnest ? look upon his face ;  
 His eyes do drop no tears, his prayers are in jest ; 100  
 His words come from his mouth, ours from our breast :  
 He prays but faintly and would be denied ;  
 We pray with heart and soul and all beside :  
 His weary joints would gladly rise, I know ; 104  
 Our knees shall kneel till to the ground they grow :  
 His prayers are full of false hypocrisy ;  
 Ours of true zeal and deep integrity.

Our prayers do out-pray his ; then let them have  
 That mercy which true prayer ought to have. 109

BOLINGBROKE. Good aunt, stand up.

DUCHESS. Nay, do not say 'stand up' ;

But 'pardon' first, and afterwards 'stand up'.  
 An if I were thy nurse, thy tongue to teach, 112  
 'Pardon' should be the first word of thy speech.

I never long'd to hear a word till now;  
 Say 'pardon', king; let pity teach thee how:  
 The word is short, but not so short as sweet: 116  
 No word like 'pardon', for kings' mouths so meet.

YORK. Speak it in French, king; say, 'pardonnez  
 moy'.

DUCHESS. Dost thou teach pardon pardon to destroy?  
 Ah! my sour husband, my hard-hearted lord, 120  
 That sett'st the word itself against the word.  
 Speak 'pardon' as 'tis current in our land;  
 The chopping French we do not understand.  
 Thine eye begins to speak, set thy tongue there, 124  
 Or in thy piteous heart plant thou thine ear,  
 That hearing how our plaints and prayers do pierce,  
 Pity may move thee pardon to rehearse.

BOLINGBROKE. Good aunt, stand up.

DUCHESS. I do not sue to stand;  
 Pardon is all the suit I have in hand. 129

BOLINGBROKE. I pardon him, as God shall pardon me.

DUCHESS. O happy vantage of a kneeling knee!  
 Yet am I sick for fear: speak it again; 132  
 Twice saying 'pardon' doth not pardon twain,  
 But makes one pardon strong.

BOLINGBROKE. With all my heart  
 I pardon him.

DUCHESS. A god on earth thou art.

BOLINGBROKE. But for our trusty brother-in-law and  
 the abbot, 136

With all the rest of that consorted crew,  
 Destruction straight shall dog them at the heels.  
 Good uncle, help to order several powers  
 To Oxford, or where'er these traitors are: 140  
 They shall not live within this world, I swear,  
 But I will have them; if I once know where.  
 Uncle, farewell: and cousin too, adieu: 143  
 Your mother well hath pray'd, and prove you true.

DUCHESS. Come, my old son: I pray God make thee  
 new. [Exeunt.]



SCENE IV.—Another Room in the Castle.

Enter EXTON and a Servant.

EXTON. Didst thou not mark the king, what words he spake ?

‘ Have I no friend will rid me of this living fear ? ’  
Was it not so ?

SERVANT. Those were his very words.

EXTON. ‘ Have I no friend ? ’ quoth he : he spake it twice, 4

And urg’d it twice together, did he not ?

SERVANT. He did.

EXTON. And speaking it, he wistly looked on me,  
As who should say, ‘ I would thou wert the man 8  
That would divorce this terror from my heart ; ’  
Meaning the king at Pomfret. Come, let’s go :  
I am the king’s friend, and will rid his foe. [Exeunt.

SCENE V.—Pomfret. The Dungeon of the Castle.

Enter KING RICHARD.

KING RICHARD. I have been studying how I may compare

This prison where I live unto the world :  
And for because the world is populous,  
And here is not a creature but myself, 4  
I cannot do it ; yet I’ll hammer it out.  
My brain I’ll prove the female to my soul ;  
My soul the father : and these two beget  
A generation of still-breeding thoughts, 8  
And these same thoughts people this little world  
In humours like the people of this world,  
For no thought is contented. The better sort,  
As thoughts of things divine, are intermix’d 12  
With scruples, and do set the word itself  
Against the word :  
As thus : ‘ Come, little ones ; ’ and then again,  
‘ It is as hard to come as for a camel 16  
To thread the postern of a needle’s eye.’  
Thoughts tending to ambition, they do plot  
Unlikely wonders ; how these vain weak nails  
May tear a passage through the flinty ribs 20  
Of this hard world, my ragged prison walls ;

And, for they cannot, die in their own pride.  
Thoughts tending to content flatter themselves  
That they are not the first of fortune's slaves, 24  
Nor shall not be the last ; like silly beggars  
Who sitting in the stocks-refuge their shame,  
That many have and others must sit there :  
And in this thought they find a kind of ease, 28  
Bearing their own misfortune on the back  
Of such as have before endur'd the like.  
Thus play I in one person many people,  
And none contented : sometimes am I king ; 32  
Then treason makes me wish myself a beggar,  
And so I am : then crushing penury  
Persuades me I was better when a king ;  
Then am I king'd again ; and by and by 36  
Think that I am unking'd by Bolingbroke,  
And straight am nothing : but whate'er I be,  
Nor I nor any man that but man is  
With nothing shall be pleas'd, till he be eas'd 40  
With being nothing. Music do I hear ? [Music.  
Ha, ha ! keep time. How sour sweet music is  
When time is broke and no proportion kept !  
So is it in the music of men's lives. 44  
And here have I the daintiness of ear  
To check time broke in a disorder'd string ;  
But for the concord of my state and time  
Had not an ear to hear my true time broke. 48  
I wasted time, and now doth time waste me ;  
For now hath time made me his numbering clock :  
My thoughts are minutes, and with sighs they jar  
Their watches on unto mine eyes, the outward watch,  
Whereto my finger, like a dial's point, 53  
Is pointing still, in cleansing them from tears.  
Now sir, the sound that tells what hour it is  
Are clamorous groans, that strike upon my heart, 56  
Which is the bell : so sighs and tears and groans  
Show minutes, times, and hours ; but my time  
Runs posting on in Bolingbroke's proud joy,  
While I stand fooling here, his Jack o' the clock. 60  
This music mads me : let it sound no more ;  
For though it have help madmen to their wits,  
In me it seems it will make wise men mad.  
Yet blessing on his heart that gives it me ! 64

For 'tis a sign of love, and love to Richard  
Is a strange brooch in this all-hating world.

Enter a Groom of the Stable.

GROOM. Hail, royal prince !

KING RICHARD. Thanks, noble peer ;  
The cheapest of us is ten groats too dear. 68  
What art thou ? and how comest thou hither, man,  
Where no man never comes but that sad dog  
That brings me food to make misfortune live ? 71

GROOM. I was a poor groom of thy stable, king,  
When thou wert king ; who, travelling towards York,  
With much ado at length have gotten leave  
To look upon my sometimes royal master's face.  
O ! how it yearn'd my heart when I beheld 76  
In London streets, that coronation day  
When Bolingbroke rode on roan Barbary,  
That horse that thou so often hast bestrid,  
That horse that I so carefully have dress'd. 80

KING RICHARD. Rode he on Barbary ? Tell me,  
gentle friend,  
How went he under him ?

GROOM. So proudly as if he disdain'd the ground.

KING RICHARD. So proud that Bolingbroke was on  
his back ! 84

That jade hath eat bread from my royal hand ;  
This hand hath made him proud with clapping him.  
Would he not stumble ? Would he not fall down,—  
Since pride must have a fall,—and break the neck 88  
Of that proud man that did usurp his back ?  
Forgiveness, horse ! why do I rail on thee,  
Since thou, created to be aw'd by man,  
Wast born to bear ? I was not made a horse ; 92  
And yet I bear a burden like an ass,  
Spur-gall'd and tir'd by jauncing Bolingbroke.

Enter Keeper, with a dish.

• KEEPER. [To the Groom.] Fellow, give place ; here is no  
longer stay.

KING RICHARD. If thou love me, 'tis time thou wert  
away. 96

GROOM. What my tongue dares not, that my heart  
shall say. [Exit.

KEEPER. My lord, will 't please you to fall to ?

KING RICHARD. Taste of it first, as thou art wont to do. 99

KEEPER. My lord, I dare not : Sir Pierce of Exton, Who lately came from the king, commands the contrary.

KING RICHARD. The devil take Henry of Lancaster, and thee !

Patience is stale, and I am weary of it. [S'rikes the Keeper.

KEEPER. Help, help, help ! 104

Enter EXTON and Servants, armed.

KING RICHARD. How now ! what means death in this rude assault ?

Villain, thine own hand yields thy death's instrument.

[Snatching a weapon and killing one.

Go thou and fill another room in hell.

[He kills another : then EXTON strikes him down.

That hand shall burn in never-quenching fire 108

That staggers thus my person. Exton, thy fierce hand Hath with the king's blood stain'd the king's own land, Mount, mount, my soul ! thy seat is up on high, Whilst my gross flesh sinks downward, here to die. [Dies.

EXTON. As full of valour as of royal blood : 113

Both have I spilt ; O ! would the deed were good ;

For now the devil, that told me I did well,

Says that this deed is chronicled in hell. 116

This dead king to the living king I'll bear.

Take hence the rest and give them burial here. [Exeunt.

SCENE VI.—Windsor. An Apartment in the Castle.

Flourish. Enter BOLINGBROKE and YORK, with Lords and Attendants.

BOLINGBROKE. Kind uncle York, the latest news we hear

Is that the rebels have consum'd with fire

Our town of Cicester in Gloucestershire ;

But whether they be ta'en or slain we hear not. 4

Enter NORTHUMBERLAND.

Welcome, my lord. What is the news ?

NORTHUMBERLAND. First, to thy sacred state wish I all happiness.

The next news is : I have to London sent

The heads of Salisbury, Spencer, Blunt, and Kent. 8

The manner of their taking may appear

At large discoursed in this paper here.

BOLINGBROKE. We thank thee, gentle Percy, for thy pains,

And to thy worth will add right worthy gains. 12

*Enter FITZWATER.*

FITZWATER. My lord, I have from Oxford sent to London

The heads of Brocas and Sir Bennet Seely,

Two of the dangerous consorted traitors

That sought at Oxford thy dire overthrow. 16

BOLINGBROKE. Thy pains, Fitzwater, shall not be forgot ;

Right noble is thy merit, well I wot.

*Enter HENRY PERCY, with the BISHOP OF CARLISLE.*

HENRY PERCY. The grand conspirator, Abbot of Westminster,

With clog of conscience and sour melancholy, 20

Hath yielded up his body to the grave ;

But here is Carlisle living, to abide

Thy kingly doom and sentence of his pride.

BOLINGBROKE. Carlisle, this is your doom : 24

Choose out some secret place, some reverend room,

More than thou hast, and with it joy thy life ;

So, as thou livest in peace, die free from strife :

For though mine enemy thou hast ever been, 28

High sparks of honour in thee have I seen.

*Enter EXTON, with Attendants bearing a coffin.*

EXTON. Great king, within this coffin I present

Thy buried fear : herein all breathless lies

The mightiest of thy greatest enemies, 32

Richard of Bordeaux, by me hither brought.

BOLINGBROKE. Exton, I thank thee not ; for thou hast wrought

A deed of slander with thy fatal hand

Upon my head and all this famous land. 36

EXTON. From your own mouth, my lord, did I this deed.

BOLINGBROKE. They love not poison that do poison need,

Nor do I thee : though I did wish him dead,  
I hate the murderer, love him murdered. 40  
The guilt of conscience take thou for thy labour,  
But neither my good word nor princely favour :  
With Cain go wander through the shade of night,  
And never show thy head by day nor light. 44  
Lords, I protest, my soul is full of woe,  
That blood should sprinkle me to make me grow :  
Come, mourn with me for that I do lament,  
And put on sullen black incontinent. 48  
I'll make a voyage to the Holy Land,  
To wash this blood off from my guilty hand.  
March sadly after ; grace my mournings here,  
In weeping after this untimely bier. [Exeunt.



**THE FIRST PART OF  
KING HENRY THE FOURTH**





# THE FIRST PART OF KING HENRY THE FOURTH

## INTRODUCTION

ON February 25, 1597-8, there was entered to Andrew Wise in the Stationers' Register 'a booke intituled "The Historie of Henry the IV<sup>th</sup> with his battaile of Shrewsburye against Henry Hottspurre of the North with the conceived mirth of Sir John Ffalstoff"'. The first quarto of our play was published by Wise in the same year. Five later quartos appeared before the publication of the Folio, 1623, where the text seems to have been taken from a partially corrected copy of the fifth quarto, 1613. Meres names *King Henry IV* in his *Palladis Tamia*, 1598; we cannot be certain whether he refers to both parts, or, as I believe, to the first alone. In the second quarto, 1599, which is represented as having been 'newly corrected', the name of the author 'W. Shakespeare' appears on the title-page.

It is to be noted that the fat knight is named in the entry of February 25, 1597-8, Sir John Falstaff. Now there can be little doubt that originally his name in at least the First Part was Sir John Oldcastle. In the Epilogue to the Second Part an apology is made for the indiscreet use of a name which probably had given offence (as we are told by Richard James, who died in 1638) to the Lord Cobham of Shakespeare's day or 'personages descended from the title' of the original Lord Cobham: 'Oldcastle died a martyr, and this is not the man.' In the First Part, Act I, Scene ii, Prince Henry plays upon the original name—'As the honey of Hybla, my old lad of the castle'; and again in the 1600 edition of the Second Part the prefix '*Old*.' stands by mistake before one of Falstaff's speeches. Silence is informed in Part II, Act III, Scene ii, that Falstaff when a boy was page to Thomas Mowbray, Duke of Norfolk, which the historical Oldcastle, the Lollard martyr, is said by Weever to have

been. In 1618 the fat knight is named by Nat. Field 'Oldcastle', and there are other references of a like kind and of an earlier date. It has been argued that since the name had been changed to Falstaff at the date of the entry in the Stationers' Register, 1598, the Second Part, where the prefix 'Old.' seems to indicate that the name was originally Oldcastle, must also have been written before that date; but Falstaff seems, in spite of the change, to have been often remembered by his original name, and an error of the transcriber of copy for the printer may easily have occurred, even though the manuscript were one of 1599. We may on good grounds ascribe the authorship of Part I to the year 1597 and that of Part II to the following year.

Shakespeare's sources for the play are Holinshed's *Chronicle* and to some extent an old play produced not later than 1588 (the year of the death of Richard Tarlton, who took the part of Derrick, the clown), licensed for the press in 1594 and printed in 1598, if not earlier,—*The Famous Victories of Henry the Fifth*. In this old play, which is of rude workmanship, Prince Henry appears, and among the boon companions of his riotous youth is Sir John Oldcastle, or more familiarly 'Jockey', who at his first entrance on the stage informs the Prince that the town of 'Detford' is risen with hue and cry after his man, who has robbed a carrier. There are suggestions in this play from which Shakespeare developed his dramatic record of Prince Hal's youthful adventures and also that noble scene in the Second Part where the Prince removes the crown and makes himself at last known aright to his dying father. From the *Famous Victories* Shakespeare caught up the name Oldcastle, and he may at first have had no recollection that this was also the name of the martyred Lord Cobham. In casting about for a second name Shakespeare perhaps remembered the cowardly knight of the First Part of *Henry VI*—Sir John Fastolfe, and adopted his name, but with a difference. And here again Shakespeare was unfortunate, or, if not unfortunate, he triumphed over history. The historical Sir John Fastolfe was a grasping landowner, of whom we read in *The Paston Letters*, but—though the imputation had once been made against him—he was no coward. It is a curious coincidence that he, too, is said to have been

brought up in the household of the Duke of Norfolk, as was Oldcastle ; he, too, was a Lollard ; and we hear of him in connexion with the Boar's Head in Southwark. His bequest to Magdalen College, Oxford, provided for the support of seven priests and seven poor scholars ; Dr. Lee, in his article in the *Dictionary of National Biography*, tells us that in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries these scholars at Magdalen were known as 'Fastolf's buckram-men'.

In Shakespeare's Lancastrian tetralogy the action runs on continuously from Bolingbroke's challenge of Mowbray in the opening of *Richard II* to the victory of Henry V at Agincourt and his wooing of the French Katharine. But though the action is continuous a considerable time elapsed between the composition of *Richard II* and that of *Henry IV*, and a great development in Shakespeare's art is observable. During the interval *King John* was probably written, and in *King John* something of humour is allied with history through the character of Faulconbridge. In the two Parts of *Henry IV* Shakespeare's work in this kind reaches its culmination. Comedy and history are now fused into one. It may be that his acquaintance with that rough-and-tumble play *The Famous Victories* revealed to Shakespeare the boundless possibilities for mirth as well as for grave historical drama that lay in the subject before him. If so, we may indeed be grateful to the writer of the old play. Never had anything comparable to *Henry IV* been previously seen upon the English stage. The two Parts constitute a single play in ten Acts, and the Introductions to each in this edition should be read together. The action progresses from one Part into the other ; the characters develop, but remain essentially the same. There is nothing invertebrate in this great drama ; all is coherent, well-knit and compacted.

In *King Richard II* we were shown the aspiring Bolingbroke in the full strength of his manhood and his ambition. In his appeal of Mowbray his eye is already fastened upon the crown. Here—in *Henry IV*—he has attained by craft and caution and courage the end of his desires ; but to hold what he has won has tasked all a strong man's powers. The opening words of the

play are a sigh for the rest which it was never his to possess—

So shaken as we are, so wan with care,  
Find we a time for frightened peace to pant.

But no such time comes. He would fain make England forget, in the enthusiasm of a crusade to the Holy Land, her internal strifes. A noble victory has been won by Percy over the Scots at Holmedon, but Percy, inspired perhaps by his uncle Worcester, refuses to render up his prisoners; and presently Hotspur and Worcester, Glendower and Lord Mortimer, Douglas and the Scots, with the Archbishop of York to bless their enterprise, are united against him. If the weary ruler of England is to die—as has been foretold—in Jerusalem, it must be another Jerusalem than that of Palestine. Add to such griefs as these the abiding sorrow that Henry's eldest son is in his eyes not like the gallant son of Northumberland—

the theme of honour's tongue;  
Amongst a grove the very straightest plant;

but is stained on the brow with riot and dishonour, a reckless youth degrading his royal promise in the tavern and on the highway. Never does the strain relax until Henry's dying hour, and yet he never fails to summon his best energies to meet the inevitable. Sleep forsakes his fatigued eyes, yet he rouses himself to confront the necessity of the moment. When at last the tidings reach him of the overthrow of the rebels he is too faint to receive the good news with joy—

The incessant care and labour of his mind  
Hath wrought the mure that should confine it in  
So thin, that life looks through and will break out.

He can only long for some dull and favourable hand to whisper music to his weary spirit. Almost at the close comes the start and shock of the vacant place whence the crown has disappeared from his pillow. And then at last reconciliation and a hope for the time to come—not for himself but for his son—words of characteristically politic counsel, and death in the Jerusalem chamber. With pity as poignant as that which he rendered to the second Richard in the dungeon of Pomfret Shakespeare leans over the death-bed of the usurper.

Such a story as this of the strong man broken, Shake-

speare felt, had need of relief. Some such relief comes through the gallantry of Hotspur and through the Celtic flamboyancy of Glendower. Hotspur was at the same time required by Shakespeare's art to stand over against his other Harry, the young Prince of Wales, and with this in view he is represented as much younger than the Henry Percy of history. Before the Prince was in his cradle Percy had distinguished himself at the battle of Otterburn. Shakespeare's Hotspur is indeed gallant, made to be a bright banner, an oriflamme of war, in a border foray; passionate for honour; quick in resentment; quick in tenderness for the wife whom in a breath he mocks and loves; but lacking the calculating power, the patience and persistence, lacking too the reasonable fears that temper hope, which are part of the qualifications of a military leader who conducts to success a real campaign. The Prince, who seems to his father so reckless, is in truth prudent and politic compared with his rival. He, like Hotspur, is a devotee of honour—

if it be a sin to covet honour,  
I am the most offending soul alive.

But the honour which he seeks lies in the achievement of deeds that duty has imposed upon him. He is not fascinated as Hotspur is merely by the splendid danger of an enterprise. 'I'll read you matter,' cries the tempter Worcester,

deep and dangerous,  
As full of peril and adventurous spirit  
As to o'er-walk a current roaring loud,  
On the unsteadfast footing of a spear.

And this is enough for Hotspur :—

If he fall in, good night ! or sink or swim :  
Send danger from the east unto the west,  
So honour cross it from the north to south,  
And let them grapple.

'We like Hotspur,' wrote Hazlitt, 'the best upon the whole, perhaps because he was unfortunate.' With some readers it may be so. But Hotspur's own temper it was which doomed him to misfortune; and if Prince Henry is successful, he knows how to be modest in success. There can be no question as to which of the two Shakespeare honoured most Prince Henry can

smile as Falstaff, the contemner of honour, with Hotspur's body on his back, labours across the field and claims the glory of his conquest. Shakespeare himself was content to write his plays and leave them ; perhaps had he seen the entire contents of the first Folio mounted upon Bacon's shoulders, he too, like Prince Henry, would have smiled, and spoken the word—

For my part, if a lie may do thee grace,  
I'll gild it with the happiest terms I have.

The victor of Agincourt can afford to let the event speak for itself, and in a word—

• Take it, God,  
For it is none but thine !—

to render praise where praise is due. Yet Henry is more fitted to win admiration and enthusiastic loyalty than personal love, and the 'sweet Harry' of Lady Percy—'my heart's dear Harry'—is as lovable as he is gallant, and is made to be the centre of a woman's affection as well as pride. Therefore it was, and not because he was unfortunate, that Hazlitt liked Hotspur 'the best upon the whole'.

With the facts of history Shakespeare in these plays deals with his accustomed freedom. In some details he was misled by Holinshed ; other errors are not errors from a dramatic point of view. Hotspur and his wife may in great measure be regarded as of his own creation. Owen Glendower is transported into the play from the chronicles. 'Strange wonders,' Holinshed tells us, 'happened at the nativity of this man.' When the King went to chastise his presumption, 'Owen conveyed himself out of the way into his known lurking-places, and, as was thought through art magic, he caused such foul weather of winds, tempests, rain, snow, and hail to be raised for the annoyance of the King's army, that the King was constrained to return home.' But, though a half-barbaric chieftain, he had been 'set to study the laws of the realm, and became an utter barrister, or an apprentice of the law, as they termed him.' Shakespeare has given him this English culture, of which we read in Holinshed, together with the superstitious exaltations and the wonder at himself as one in whom the powers of nature are interested, which call forth the

mockery of Hotspur. The contrast between the diverse elements from which the party of rebellion is formed and the single and steadfast purpose of the King is emphasized by Shakespeare. The national cause is opposed by the rivalry of contending personal ambitions ; the rash heat of youth and the timidity of elder years work against each other for the destruction of the revolters.

The historical period covered by the action of the first Part of the play is less than a year—from September, 1402 to July 1403 ; in the second Part Shakespeare deals in his own dramatic fashion with a period of some ten years. On Passion Sunday, April 9, 1413, King Henry V was crowned at Westminster.



## DRAMATIS PERSONAE

KING HENRY THE FOURTH.

HENRY, Prince of Wales, } Sons to the King.

JOHN OF LANCASTER,

EARL OF WESTMORELAND.

SIR WALTER BLUNT.

THOMAS PERCY, Earl of Worcester.

HENRY PERCY, Earl of Northumberland.

HENRY PERCY, surnamed Hotspur, his son.

EDMUND MORTIMER, Earl of March.

RICHARD SCROOP, Archbishop of York.

ARCHIBALD, Earl of Douglas.

OWEN GLENDOWER.

SIR RICHARD VERNON.

SIR JOHN FALSTAFF.

SIR MICHAEL, a Friend to the Archbishop of York.

POINS.

GADSHILL.

PETO.

BARDOLPH.

LADY PERCY, Wife to Hotspur, and Sister to Mortimer.

LADY MORTIMER, Daughter to Glendower, and Wife to Mortimer.

MISTRESS QUICKLY, Hostess of the Boar's Head Tavern in Eastcheap.

Lords, Officers, Sheriff, Vintner, Chamberlain, Drawers, two Carriers,  
Travellers, and Attendants.

SCENE.—England.

# THE FIRST PART OF KING HENRY THE FOURTH

## ACT I.

SCENE I.—London. The Palace.

Enter KING HENRY, WESTMORELAND, and Others.

KING HENRY. So shaken as we are, so wan with care,  
Find we a time for frightened peace to pant,  
And breathe short-winded accents of new broils  
To be commenc'd in stronds afar remote. 4  
No more the thirsty entrance of this soil  
Shall daub her lips with her own children's blood ;  
No more shall trenching war channel her fields,  
Nor bruise her flowerets with the armed hoofs 8  
Of hostile paces : those opposed eyes,  
Which, like the meteors of a troubled heaven,  
All of one nature, of one substance bred,  
Did lately meet in the intestine shock 12  
And furious close of civil butchery,  
Shall now, in mutual well-beseeming ranks,  
March all one way, and be no more oppos'd  
Against acquaintance, kindred, and allies : 16  
The edge of war, like an ill-sheathed knife,  
No more shall cut his master. Therefore, friends,  
As far as to the sepulchre of Christ,—  
Whose soldier now, under whose blessed cross 20  
We are impressed and engag'd to fight,—  
Forthwith a power of English shall we levy,  
Whose arms were moulded in their mothers' womb  
To chase these pagans in those holy fields 24  
Over whose acres walk'd those blessed feet  
Which fourteen hundred years ago were nail'd  
For our advantage on the bitter cross.  
But this our purpose is a twelvemonth old, 28  
And bootless 'tis to tell you we will go :

Therefore we meet not now. Then let me hear  
 Of you, my gentle cousin Westmoreland,  
 What yesternight our council did decree 32  
 In forwarding this dear expedience.

WESTMORELAND. My liege, this haste was hot in  
 question.

And many limits of the charge set down  
 But yesternight ; when all athwart there came 36  
 A post from Wales loaden with heavy news ;  
 Whose worst was, that the noble Mortimer,  
 Leading the men of Herefordshire to fight  
 Against the irregular and wild Glendower, 40  
 Was by the rude hands of that Welshman taken,  
 And a thousand of his people butchered ;  
 Upon whose dead corpse' there was such misuse,  
 Such beastly shameless transformation 44  
 By those Welshwomen done, as may not be  
 Without much shame re-told or spoken of.

KING HENRY. It seems then that the tidings of this  
 broil  
 Brake off our business for the Holy Land. 48

WESTMORELAND. This match'd with other like, my  
 gracious lord ;  
 For more uneven and unwelcome news  
 Came from the north and thus it did import :  
 On Holy-rood day, the gallant Hotspur there, 52  
 Young Harry Percy and brave Archibald,  
 That ever-valiant and approv'd Scot,  
 At Holmedon met,  
 Where they did spend a sad and bloody hour ; 56  
 As by discharge of their artillery,  
 And shape of likelihood, the news was told ;  
 For he that brought them, in the very heat  
 And pride of their contention did take horse, 60  
 Uncertain of the issue any way.

KING HENRY. Here is a dear and true industrious  
 friend,  
 Sir Walter Blunt, new lighted from his horse,  
 Stain'd with the variation of each soil 64  
 Betwixt that Holmedon and this seat of ours ;  
 And he hath brought us smooth and welcome news.  
 The Earl of Douglas is discomfited ;  
 Ten thousand bold Scots, two and twenty knights,

Balk'd in their own blood did Sir Walter see 69  
On Holmedon's plains : of prisoners Hotspur took  
Mordake the Earl of Fife, and eldest son  
To beaten Douglas, and the Earls of Athol, 72  
Of Murray, Angus, and Menteith.

And is not this an honourable spoil ?

A gallant prize ? ha, cousin, is it not ?

WESTMORELAND. In faith, 76

It is a conquest for a prince to boast of.

KING HENRY. Yea, there thou mak'st me sad and  
mak'st me sin

In envy that my lord Northumberland  
Should be the father to so blest a son, 80

A son who is the theme of honour's tongue ;

Amongst a grove the very straightest plant ;

Who is sweet Fortune's minion and her pride :

Whilst I, by looking on the praise of him, 84

See riot and dishonour stain the brow

Of my young Harry. O ! that it could be prov'd

That some night-tripping fairy had exchang'd

In cradle-clothes our children where they lay, 88

And call'd mine Percy, his Plantagenet.

Then would I have his Harry, and he mine.

But let him from my thoughts. What think you, coz,

Of this young Percy's pride ? the prisoners, 92

Which he in this adventure hath surpris'd,

To his own use he keeps, and sends me word,

I shall have none but Mordake Earl of Fife.

WESTMORELAND. This is his uncle's teaching, this is

Worcester, 96

Malevolent to you in all respects ;

Which makes him prune himself, and bristle up

The crest of youth against your dignity.

KING HENRY. But I have sent for him to answer this ;

And for this cause a while we must neglect 101

Our holy purpose to Jerusalem.

Cousin, on Wednesday next our council we

Will hold at Windsor ; so inform the lords : 104

But come yourself with speed to us again ;

For more is to be said and to be done

Than out of anger can be uttered.

WESTMORELAND. I will, my liege.

[Exeunt.

SCENE II.—The Same. An Apartment of the PRINCE'S.

Enter the PRINCE and FALSTAFF.

FALSTAFF. Now, Hal, what time of day is it, lad ?

PRINCE. Thou art so fat-witted, with drinking of old sack, and unbuttoning thee after supper, and sleeping upon benches after noon, that thou hast forgotten to demand that truly which thou wouldst truly know. What a devil hast thou to do with the time of the day ? unless hours were cups of sack, and minutes capons, and clocks the tongues of bawds, and dials the signs of leap-ing-houses, and the blessed sun himself a fair hot wench in flame-colour'd taffeta, I see no reason why thou shouldst be so superfluous to demand the time of the day. 12

FALSTAFF. Indeed, you come near me now, Hal ; for we that take purses go by the moon and the seven stars, and not by Phœbus, he, ' that wandering knight so fair.' And, I prithee, sweet wag, when thou art king,—as, God save thy Grace,—majesty, I should say, for grace thou wilt have none,—

PRINCE. What ! none ? 19

FALSTAFF. No, by my troth ; not so much as will serve to be prologue to an egg and butter.

PRINCE. Well, how then ? come, roundly, roundly.

FALSTAFF. Mairry, then, sweet wag, when thou art king, let not us that are squires of the night's body be called thieves of the day's beauty : let us be Diana's foresters, gentlemen of the shade, minions of the moon ; and let men say, we be men of good government, being governed as the sea is, by our noble and chaste mistress the moon, under whose countenance we steal. 30

PRINCE. Thou sayest well, and it holds well too ; for the fortune of us that are the moon's men doth ebb and flow like the sea, being governed as the sea is, by the moon. As for proof now : a purse of gold most resolutely snatched on Monday night and most dissolutely spent on Tuesday morning ; got with swearing ' Lay by ' ; and spent with crying ' Bring in ' : now in as low an ebb as the foot of the ladder, and by and by in as high a flow as the ridge of the gallows. 39

FALSTAFF. By the Lord, thou sayest true, lad. And is not my hostess of the tavern a most sweet wench?

PRINCE. As the honey of Hybla, my old lad of the castle. And is not a buff jerkin a most sweet robe of durance?

FALSTAFF. How now, how now, mad wag! what, in thy quips and thy quiddities? what a plague have I to do with a buff jerkin?

PRINCE. Why, what a pox have I to do with my hostess of the tavern?

FALSTAFF. Well, thou hast called her to a reckoning many a time and oft.

PRINCE. Did I ever call for thee to pay thy part?

FALSTAFF. No; I'll give thee thy due, thou hast paid all there.

PRINCE. Yea, and elsewhere, so far as my coin would stretch; and where it would not, I have used my credit.

FALSTAFF. Yea, and so used it that, were it not here apparent that thou art heir apparent,—But, I prithee, sweet wag, shall there be gallows standing in England when thou art king, and resolution thus fobbed as it is with the rusty curb of old father antick the law? Do not thou, when thou art king, hang a thief.

PRINCE. No; thou shalt.

FALSTAFF. Shall I? O rare! By the Lord, I'll be a brave judge.

PRINCE. Thou judgest false already; I mean, thou shalt have the hanging of the thieves and so become a rare hangman.

FALSTAFF. Well, Hal, well; and in some sort it jumps with my humour as well as waiting in the court, I can tell you.

PRINCE. For obtaining of suits?

FALSTAFF. Yea, for obtaining of suits, whereof the hangman hath no lean wardrobe. 'Sblood, I am as melancholy as a gib cat, or a lugged bear.

PRINCE. Or an old lion, or a lover's lute.

FALSTAFF. Yea, or the drone of a Lincolnshire bagpipe.

PRINCE. What sayest thou to a hare, or the melancholy of Moor-ditch?

FALSTAFF. Thou hast the most unsavoury similes, and art, indeed, the most comparative, rascalliest, sweet

young prince ; but, Hal, I prithee, trouble me no more with vanity. I would to God thou and I knew where a commodity of good names were to be bought. An old lord of the council rated me the other day in the street about you, sir, but I marked him not ; and yet he talked very wisely, but I regarded him not ; and yet he talked wisely, and in the street too. 89

PRINCE. Thou didst well ; for wisdom cries out in the streets, and no man regards it.

FALSTAFF. O ! thou hast damnable iteration, and art indeed able to corrupt a saint. Thou hast done much harm upon me, Hal ; God forgive thee for it ! Before I knew thee, Hal, I knew nothing ; and now am I, if a man should speak truly, little better than one of the wicked. I must give over this life, and I will give it over ; by the Lord, an I do not, I am a villain : I'll be damned for never a king's son in Christendom.

PRINCE. Where shall we take a purse to-morrow, Jack ? 101

FALSTAFF. Zounds ! where thou wilt, lad, I'll make one ; an I do not, call me a villain and baffle me.

PRINCE. I see a good amendment of life in thee ; from praying to purse-taking. 105

Enter POINS, at a distance.

FALSTAFF. Why, Hal, 'tis my vocation, Hal ; 'tis no sin for a man to labour in his vocation. Poins ! Now shall we know if Gadshill have set a match. O ! if men were to be saved by merit, what hole in hell were hot enough for him ? This is the most omnipotent villain that ever cried ' Stand ! ' to a true man.

PRINCE. Good morrow, Ned. 112

POINS. Good morrow, sweet Hal. What says Monsieur Remorse ? What says Sir John Sack-and-Sugar ? Jack ! how agrees the devil and thee about thy soul, that thou soldest him on Good-Friday last for a cup of Madeira and a cold capon's leg ? 117

PRINCE. Sir John stands to his word, the devil shall have his bargain ; for he was never yet a breaker of proverbs : he will give the devil his due. 120

POINS. Then art thou damned for keeping thy word with the devil.

PRINCE. Else he had been damned for cozening the devil. 124

POINS. But my lads, my lads, to-morrow morning, by four o'clock, early at Gadshill ! There are pilgrims going to Canterbury with rich offerings, and traders riding to London with fat purses : I have vizards for you all ; you have horses for yourselves. Gadshill lies to-night in Rochester ; I have bespoke supper to-morrow night in Eastcheap : we may do it as secure as sleep. If you will go I will stuff your purses full of crowns ; if you will not, tarry at home and be hanged. 133

FALSTAFF. Hear ye, Yedward : if I tarry at home and go not, I'll hang you for going. 133

POINS. You will, chops ? 136

FALSTAFF. Hal, wilt thou make one ?

PRINCE. Who, I rob ? I a thief ? not I, by my faith.

FALSTAFF. There's neither honesty, manhood, nor good fellowship in thee, nor thou camest not of the blood royal, if thou darest not stand for ten shillings. 141

PRINCE. Well then, once in my days I'll be a mad-cap.

FALSTAFF. Why, that's well said. 144

PRINCE. Well, come what will, I'll tarry at home.

FALSTAFF. By the Lord, I'll be a traitor then, when thou art king.

PRINCE. I care not. 148

POINS. Sir John, I prithee, leave the prince and me alone : I will lay him down such reasons for this adventure that he shall go. 151

FALSTAFF. Well, God give thee the spirit of persuasion and him the ears of profiting, that what thou speakest may move, and what he hears may be believed, that the true prince may, for recreation sake, prove a false thief ; for the poor abuses of the time want countenance. Farewell : you shall find me in Eastcheap. 158

PRINCE. Farewell, thou latter spring ! Farewell, All-hallow'n summer !

[Exit FALSTAFF.]

POINS. Now, my good sweet honey lord, ride with us to-morrow : I have a jest to execute that I cannot manage alone. Falstaff, Bardolph, Peto, and Gadshill shall rob those men that we have already waylaid ; yourself and I will not be there ; and when they have the booty, if you and I do not rob them, cut this head from my shoulders. 167



PRINCE. But how shall we part with them in setting forth ?

POINS. Why, we will set forth before or after them, and appoint them a place of meeting, wherein it is at our pleasure to fail ; and then will they adventure upon the exploit themselves, which they shall have no sooner achieved but we'll set upon them.

PRINCE. Yea, but 'tis like that they will know us by our horses, by our habits, and by every other appointment, to be ourselves. 177

POINS. Tut ! our horses they shall not see, I'll tie them in the wood ; our vizards we will change after we leave them ; and, sirrah, I have cases of buckram for the nonce, to inmask our noted outward garments.

PRINCE. Yea, but I doubt they will be too hard for us. 183

POINS. Well, for two of them, I know them to be as true-bred cowards as ever turned back ; and for the third, if he fight longer than he sees reason, I'll forswear arms. The virtue of this jest will be, the incomprehensible lies that this same fat rogue will tell us when we meet at supper : how thirty, at least, he fought with ; what wards, what blows, what extremities he endured ; and in the reproof of this lies the jest. 191

PRINCE. Well, I'll go with thee : provide us all things necessary and meet me to-morrow night in Eastcheap ; there I'll sup. Farewell.

POINS. Farewell, my lord. [Exit. 197

PRINCE. I know you all, and will awhile uphold  
The unyok'd humour of your idleness : 197  
Yet herein will I imitate the sun,  
Who doth permit the base contagious clouds  
To smother up his beauty from the world, 200  
That when he please again to be himself,  
Being wanted, he may be more wonder'd at,  
By breaking through the foul and ugly mists  
Of vapours that did seem to strangle him. 204  
If all the year were playing holidays,  
To sport would be as tedious as to work ;  
But when they seldom come, they wish'd for come,  
And nothing pleaseth but rare accidents. 208  
So, when this loose behaviour I throw off,  
And pay the debt I never promised,

By how much better than my word I am  
 By so much shall I falsify men's hopes ; 212  
 And like bright metal on a sullen ground,  
 My reformation, glittering o'er my fault,  
 Shall show more goodly and attract more eyes  
 Than that which hath no foil to set it off. 216  
 I'll so offend to make offence a skill ;  
 Redeeming time when men think least I will. [Exit.

## SCENE III.—The Same. The Palace.

Enter KING HENRY, NORTHUMBERLAND, WORCESTER, HOTSPUR,  
 SIR WALTER BLUNT, and Others.

KING HENRY. My blood hath been too cold and tem-  
 perate,  
 Unapt to stir at these indignities,  
 And you have found me ; for accordingly  
 You tread upon my patience : but, be sure, 4  
 I will from henceforth rather be myself,  
 Mighty, and to be fear'd, than my condition,  
 Which hath been smooth as oil, soft as young down,  
 And therefore lost that title of respect 8  
 Which the proud soul ne'er pays but to the proud.

WORCESTER. Our house, my sovereign liege, little  
 deserves  
 The scourge of greatness to be us'd on it ; 11  
 And that same greatness too which our own hands  
 Have help to make so portly.

NORTHUMBERLAND. My lord,—

KING HENRY. Worcester, get thee gone ; for I do see  
 Danger and disobedience in thine eye. 16  
 O, sir, your presence is too bold and peremptory,  
 And majesty might never yet endure  
 The moody frontier of a servant brow.  
 You have good leave to leave us ; when we need 20  
 Your use and counsel we shall send for you.

[Exit WORCESTER.]

[To NORTHUMBERLAND.] You were about to speak.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Yea, my good lord.  
 Those prisoners in your highness' name demanded,  
 Which Harry Percy here at Holmedon took, 24  
 Were, as he says, not with such strength denied  
 As is deliver'd to your majesty :  
 Either envy, therefore, or misprision

Is guilty of this fault and not my son. 28

HOTSPUR. My liege, I did deny no prisoners :  
But I remember, when the fight was done,  
When I was dry with rage and extreme toil,  
Breathless and faint, leaning upon my sword, 32  
Came there a certain lord, neat, and trimly dress'd,  
Fresh as a bridegroom ; and his chin, new reap'd,  
Show'd like a stubble-land at harvest-home :

He was perfumed like a milliner, 36

And 'twixt his finger and his thumb he held  
A pouncet-box, which<sup>e</sup>ver and anon  
He gave his nose and took't away again ;

Who therewith angry, when it next came there, 40

Took it in snuff : and still he smil'd and talk'd ;

And as the soldiers bore dead bodies by,

He call'd them untaught knaves, unmannerly, 44

To bring a slovenly unhandsome corpse

Betwixt the wind and his nobility.

With many holiday and lady terms

He question'd me ; among the rest, demanded 48

My prisoners in your majesty's behalf.

I then all smarting with my wounds being cold,

To be so pester'd with a popinjay,

Out of my grief and my impatience

Answer'd neglectingly, I know not what, 52

He should, or he should not ; for he made me mad

To see him shine so brisk and smell so sweet

And talk so like a waiting-gentlewoman

Of guns, and drums, and 'wounds,—God save the 56

mark !—

And telling me the sovereign'st thing on earth

Was parmaceti for an inward bruise ;

And that it was great pity, so it was,

This villanous saltpetre should be digg'd 60

Out of the bowels of the harmless earth,

Which many a good tall fellow had destroy'd

So cowardly ; and but for these vile guns,

He would himself have been a soldier. 64

This bald unjointed chat of his, my lord,

I answer'd indirectly, as I said ;

And I beseech you, let not his report

Come current for an accusation 68

Betwixt my love and your high majesty.

BLUNT. The circumstance consider'd, good my lord,  
Whatever Harry Percy then had said  
To such a person and in such a place, 72  
At such a time, with all the rest re-told,  
May reasonably die and never rise  
To do him wrong, or any way impeach  
What then he said, so he unsay it now. 76

KING HENRY. Why, yet he doth deny his prisoners,  
But with proviso and exception,  
That we at our own charge shall ransom straight  
His brother-in-law, the foolish Mortimer ; 80  
Who, on my soul, hath wilfully betray'd  
The lives of those that he did lead to fight  
Against the great magician, damn'd Glendower,  
Whose daughter, as we hear, the Earl of March 84  
Hath lately married. Shall our coffers then  
Be emptied to redeem a traitor home ?  
Shall we buy treason, and indent with fears,  
When they have lost and forfeited themselves ? 88  
No, on the barren mountains let him starve ;  
For I shall never hold that man my friend  
Whose tongue shall ask me for one penny cost  
To ransom home revolted Mortimer. 92

HOTSPUR. Revolted Mortimer !  
He never did fall off, my sovereign liege,  
But by the chance of war : to prove that true 95  
Needs no more but one tongue for all those wounds,  
Those mouthed wounds, which valiantly he took,  
When on the gentle Severn's sedgy bank,  
In single opposition, hand to hand,  
He did confound the best part of an hour 100  
In changing hardiment with great Glendower.  
Three times they breath'd and three times did they drink,  
Upon agreement, of swift Severn's flood,  
Who then, affrighted with their bloody looks, 104  
Ran fearfully among the trembling reeds,  
And hid his crisp head in the hollow bank  
Blood-stained with these valiant combatants.  
Never did base and rotten policy 108  
Colour her working with such deadly wounds ;  
Nor never could the noble Mortimer  
Receive so many, and all willingly :  
Then let him not be slander'd with revolt. 112

**KING HENRY.** Thou dost belie him, Percy, thou dost belie him :

He never did encounter with Glendower :

I tell thee,

He durst as well have met the devil alone 116

As Owen Glendower for an enemy.

Art thou not asham'd ? But, sirrah, henceforth

Let me not hear you speak of Mortimer :

Send me your prisoners with the speediest means,

Or you shall hear in such a kind from me 121

As will displease you. My Lord Northumberland,

We license your departure with your son.

Send us your prisoners, or you'll hear of it. 124

[Exeunt KING HENRY, BLUNT, and Train.

**HOTSPUR.** An if the devil come and roar for them,

I will not send them : I will after straight

And tell him so ; for I will ease my heart,

Albeit I make a hazard of my head. 128

**NORTHUMBERLAND.** What ! drunk with choler ? stay,

and pause awhile :

Here comes your uncle.

Re-enter WORCESTER.

**HOTSPUR.** Speak of Mortimer !

'Zounds ! I will speak of him ; and let my soul

Want mercy if I do not join with him : 132

In his behalf I'll empty all these veins,

And shed my dear blood drop by drop i' the dust,

But I will lift the down-trod Mortimer

As high i' the air as this unthankful king, 136

As this ingrate and canker'd Bolingbroke.

**NORTHUMBERLAND.** Brother, the king hath made your nephew mad.

**WORCESTER.** Who struck this heat up after I was gone ?

**HOTSPUR.** He will, forsooth, have all my prisoners ;

And when I urg'd the ransom once again 141

Of my wife's brother, then his cheek look'd pale,

And on my face he turn'd an eye of death,

Trembling even at the name of Mortimer. 144

**WORCESTER.** I cannot blame him : was he not proclaim'd

By Richard that dead is the next of blood ?

**NORTHUMBERLAND.** He was ; I heard the proclamation :

And then it was when the unhappy king,— 148  
Whose wrongs in us God pardon!—did set forth  
Upon his Irish expedition;

From whence he, intercepted, did return  
To be depos'd, and shortly murdered. 152

WORCESTER. And for whose death we in the world's  
wide mouth

Live scandaliz'd and foully spoken of.

HOTSPUR. But, soft! I pray you, did King Richard  
then

Proclaim my brother Edmund Mortimer 156  
Heir to the crown?

NORTHUMBERLAND. He did; myself did hear it.

HOTSPUR. Nay, then I cannot blame his cousin king,  
That wish'd him on the barren mountains starve.

But shall it be that you, that set the crown 160

Upon the head of this forgetful man,

And for his sake wear the detested blot

Of murd'rous subornation, shall it be,

That you a world of curses undergo, 164

Being the agents, or base second means,

The cords, the ladder, or the hangman rather?

O! pardon me that I descend so low,

To show the line and the predicament 168

Wherein you range under this subtle king.

Shall it for shame be spoken in these days,

Or fill up chronicles in time to come,

That men of your nobility and power, 172

Did gage them both in an unjust behalf,

As both of you—God pardon it!—have done,

To put down Richard, that sweet lovely rose,

And plant this thorn, this canker, Bolingbroke? 176

And shall it in more shame be further spoken,

That you are fool'd, discarded, and shook off

By him for whom these shames ye underwent?

No; yet time serves wherein you may redeem 180

Your banish'd honours, and restore yourselves

Into the good thoughts of the world again;

Revenge the jeering and disdain'd contempt

Of this proud king, who studies day and night 184

To answer all the debt he owes to you,

Even with the bloody payment of your deaths.

Therefore, I say,—

WORCESTER. Peace, cousin ! say no more :  
 And now I will unclasp a secret book, 188  
 And to your quick-conceiving discontents  
 I'll read you matter deep and dangerous,  
 As full of peril and adventurous spirit  
 As to o'er-walk a current roaring loud, 192  
 On the unsteadfast footing of a spear.

HOTSPUR. If he fall in, good night ! or sink or swim :  
 Send danger from the east unto the west,  
 So honour cross it from the north to south, 196  
 And let them grapple : O ! the blood more stirs  
 To rouse a lion than to start a hare.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Imagination of some great exploit  
 Drives him beyond the bounds of patience. 200

HOTSPUR. By heaven methinks it were an easy leap  
 To pluck bright honour from the pale-fac'd moon,  
 Or dive into the bottom of the deep,  
 Where fathom-line could never touch the ground,  
 And pluck up drowned honour by the locks ; 205  
 So he that doth redeem her thence might wear  
 Without corrival all her dignities :  
 But out upon this half-fac'd fellowship ! 208

WORCESTER. He apprehends a world of figures here,  
 But not the form of what he should attend.  
 Good cousin, give me audience for a while.

HOTSPUR. I cry you mercy.

WORCESTER. Those same noble Scots  
 That are your prisoners,—

HOTSPUR. I'll keep them all ; 213  
 By God, he shall not have a Scot of them :  
 No, if a Scot would save his soul, he shall not :  
 I'll keep them, by this hand.

WORCESTER. You start away, 216  
 And lend no ear unto my purposes.  
 Those prisoners you shall keep.

HOTSPUR. Nay, I will ; that's flat :  
 He said he would not ransom Mortimer ;  
 Forbade my tongue to speak of Mortimer ; 220  
 But I will find him when he lies asleep,  
 And in his ear I'll holla ' Mortimer !'  
 Nay,

I'll have a starling shall be taught to speak 224  
 Nothing but ' Mortimer ', and give it him,

To keep his anger still in motion.

WORCESTER. Hear you, cousin ; a word.

HOTSPUR. All studies here I solemnly defy, 228  
Save how to gall and pinch this Bolingbroke :

And that same sword-and-buckler Prince of Wales,  
But that I think his father loves him not,  
And would be glad he met with some mischance, 232  
I would have him poison'd with a pot of ale.

WORCESTER. Farewell, kinsman : I will talk to you  
When you are better temper'd to attend.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Why, what a wasp-stung and  
impatient fool 236

Art thou to break into this woman's mood,  
Tying thine ear to no tongue but thine own !

HOTSPUR. Why, look you, I am whipp'd and scourg'd  
with rods,

Nettled, and stung with pismires, when I hear 240  
Of this vile politician, Bolingbroke.

In Richard's time,—what do ye call the place ?—

A plague upon 't—it is in Gloucestershire ;—  
'Twas where the madcap duke his uncle kept, 244  
His uncle York ; where I first bow'd my knee  
Unto this king of smiles, this Bolingbroke,  
'Sblood !

When you and he came back from Ravenspurgh. 248

NORTHUMBERLAND. At Berkeley Castle.

HOTSPUR. You say true.

Why, what a candy deal of courtesy  
This fawning greyhound then did proffer me ! 252

Look, ' when his infant fortune came to age,'  
And ' gentle Harry Percy ', and ' kind cousin '.

O ! the devil take such cozeners. God forgive me !  
Good uncle, tell your tale, for I have done. 256

WORCESTER. Nay, if you have not, to 't again ;  
We'll stay your leisure.

HOTSPUR. I have done, i' faith.

WORCESTER. Then once more to your Scottish  
prisoners.

Deliver them up without their ransom straight, 260

And make the Douglas' son your only mean

For powers in Scotland ; which, for divers reasons

Which I shall send you written, be assur'd,  
Will easily be granted. [To NORTHUMBERLAND.] You, my lord,



Your son in Scotland being thus employ'd, 265  
 Shall secretly into the bosom creep  
 Of that same noble prelate well belov'd,  
 The Archbishop. 266

HOTSPUR. Of York, is it not ?

WORCESTER. True ; who bears hard  
 His brother's death at Bristol, the Lord Scroop.  
 I speak not this in estimation, 272  
 As what I think might be, but what I know  
 Is ruminated, plotted, and set down ;  
 And only stays but to behold the face  
 Of that occasion that shall bring it on. 276

HOTSPUR. I smell it.

Upon my life it will do wondrous well.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Before the game's afoot thou still  
 lett'st slip.

HOTSPUR. Why, it cannot choose but be a noble plot :  
 And then the power of Scotland and of York, 281  
 To join with Mortimer, ha ?

WORCESTER. And so they shall.

HOTSPUR. In faith, it is exceedingly well aim'd.

WORCESTER. And 'tis no little reason bids us speed,  
 To save our heads by raising of a head ; 285  
 For, bear ourselves as even as we can,  
 The king will always think him in our debt,  
 And think we think ourselves unsatisfied, 288  
 Till he hath found a time to pay us home.  
 And see already how he doth begin  
 To make us strangers to his looks of love. 291

HOTSPUR. He does, he does : we'll be reveng'd on him.

WORCESTER. Cousin, farewell : no further go in this,  
 Than I by letters shall direct your course.  
 When time is ripe,—which will be suddenly,—  
 I'll steal to Glendower and Lord Mortimer ; 296  
 Where you and Douglas and our powers at once,—  
 As I will fashion it,—shall happily meet,  
 To bear our fortunes in our own strong arms,  
 Which now we hold at much uncertainty. 300

NORTHUMBERLAND. Farewell, good brother : we shall  
 thrive, I trust.

HOTSPUR. Uncle, adieu : O ! let the hours be short,  
 Till fields and blows and groans applaud our sport !

[Exeunt.]

ACT II, SC. I] KING HENRY THE FOURTH

ACT II

SCENE I.—Rochester. An Inn-Yard.

Enter a Carrier, with a lanthorn in his hand.

FIRST CARRIER. Heigh-ho! An't be not four by the day I'll be hanged: Charles' Wain is over the new chimney, and yet our horse not packed. What, ostler!

OSTLER. [Within.] Anon, anon. 4

FIRST CARRIER. I prithee, Tom, beat Cut's saddle, put a few flocks in the point; the poor jade is wrung in the withers out of all cess.

Enter another Carrier.

SECOND CARRIER. Peas and beans are as dank here as a dog, and that is the next way to give poor jades the bots; this house is turned upside down since Robin Ostler died. 11

FIRST CARRIER. Poor fellow! never joyed since the price of oats rose; it was the death of him.

SECOND CARRIER. I think this be the most villanous house in all London road for fleas: I am stung like a tench. 16

FIRST CARRIER. Like a tench! by the mass, there is ne'er a king christen could be better bit than I have been since the first cock.

SECOND CARRIER. Why, they will allow us ne'er a jordan, and then we leak in the chimney; and your chamber-lie breeds fleas like a loach.

FIRST CARRIER. What, ostler! come away and be hanged, come away. 21

SECOND CARRIER. I have a gammon of bacon and two razes of ginger, to be delivered as far as Charing-cross.

FIRST CARRIER. Godsboddy! the turkeys in my pannier are quite starved. What, ostler! A plague on thee! hast thou never an eye in thy head? canst not hear? An'twere not as good a deed as drink to break the pate on thee, I am a very villain. Come, and be hanged! hast no faith in thee? 33

Enter GADSHILL.

GADSHILL. Good morrow, carriers. What's o'clock?

FIRST CARRIER. I think it be two o'clock.

GADSHILL. I prithee, lend me thy lanthorn, to see my gelding in the stable. 37

FIRST CARRIER. Nay, by God, soft : I know a trick worth two of that, i' faith.

GADSHILL. I prithee, lend me thine. 40

SECOND CARRIER. Ay, when ? canst tell ? Lend me thy lanthorn, quoth a' ? marry, I'll see thee hanged first.

GADSHILL. Sirrah carrier, what time do you mean to come to London ? 45

SECOND CARRIER. Time enough to go to bed with a candle, I warrant thee. Come neighbour Mugs, we'll call up the gentlemen : they will along with company, for they have great charge. [Exeunt Carriers.

GADSHILL. What, ho ! chamberlain ! 50

CHAMBERLAIN. [Within.] ' At hand, quoth pick-purse.'

GADSHILL. That's even as fair as, ' at hand, quoth the chamberlain ;' for thou variest no more from picking of purses than giving direction doth from labouring ; thou layest the plot how. 55

Enter CHAMBERLAIN.

CHAMBERLAIN. Good morrow, Master Gadshill. It holds current that I told you yesternight : there's a franklin in the wild of Kent hath brought three hundred marks with him in gold : I heard him tell it to one of his company last night at supper ; a kind of auditor ; one that hath abundance of charge too, God knows what. They are up already and call for eggs and butter : they will away presently. 63

GADSHILL. Sirrah, if they meet not with Saint Nicholas' clerks, I'll give thee this neck.

CHAMBERLAIN. No, I'll none of it : I prithee, keep that for the hangman ; for I know thou worship'st Saint Nicholas as truly as a man of falsehood may. 68

GADSHILL. What talkest thou to me of the hangman ? If I hang I'll make a fat pair of gallows ; for if I hang, old Sir John hangs with me, and thou knowest he's no starveling. Tut ! there are other Troyans that thou dreamest not of, the which for sport sake are content to do the profession some grace ; that would, if matters should be looked into, for their own credit sake make all whole. I am joined with no foot-land-

rakers, no long-staff sixpenny strikers, none of these mad mustachio-purple-hued malt-worms; but with nobility and tranquillity, burgomasters and great onyers such as can hold in, such as will strike sooner than speak, and speak sooner than drink, and drink sooner than pray: and yet I lie; for they pray continually to their saint, the commonwealth; or, rather, not pray to her, but prey on her, for they ride up and down on her and make her their boots.

CHAMBERLAIN. What! the commonwealth their boots? will she hold out water in foul way? 87

GADSHILL. She will, she will; justice hath liquored her. We steal as in a castle, cock-sure; we have the receipt of fern-seed, we walk invisible.

CHAMBERLAIN. Nay, by my faith, I think you are more beholding to the night than to fern-seed for your walking invisible. 93

GADSHILL. Give me thy hand: thou shalt have a share in our purchase, as I am a true man.

CHAMBERLAIN. Nay, rather let me have it, as you are a false thief. 97

GADSHILL. Go to; 'homo' is a common name to all men. Bid the ostler bring my gelding out of the stable. Farewell, you muddy knave. [Exeunt.

SCENE II.—The Road by Gadshill.

Enter the PRINCE and POINS.

POINS. Come, shelter, shelter: I have removed Falstaff's horse, and he frets like a gummed velvet.

PRINCE. Stand close.

Enter FALSTAFF.

FALSTAFF. Poins! Poins, and be hanged! Poins!

PRINCE. Peace, ye fat-kidneyed rascal! What a brawling-dost thou keep!

FALSTAFF. Where's Poins, Hal? 7

PRINCE. He is walked up to the top of the hill: I'll go seek him. [Pretends to seek POINS, and retires.

FALSTAFF. I am accursed to rob in that thief's company; the rascal hath removed my horse and tied him I know not where. If I travel but four foot by the squire further afoot I shall break my wind. Well, I doubt not but to die a fair death for all this, if I 'scape

hanging for killing that rogue. I have forsworn his company hourly any time this two-and-twenty years, and yet I am bewitched with the rogue's company. If the rascal have not given me medicines to make me love him, I'll be hanged : it could not be else : I have drunk medicines. Poin's ! Hal ! a plague upon you both ! Bardolph ! Peto ! I'll starve ere I'll rob a foot further. An 'twere not as good a deed as drink to turn true man and leave these rogues, I am the veriest varlet that ever chewed with a tooth. Eight yards of uneven ground is threescore and ten miles afoot with me, and the stony-hearted villains know it well enough. A plague upon 't when thieves cannot be true one to another ! [They whistle.] Whew ! A plague upon you all ! Give me my horse, you rogues ; give me my horse and be hanged. 30

PRINCE. [Coming forward.] Peace, ye fat-guts ! lie down : lay thine ear close to the ground, and list if thou canst hear the tread of travellers. 33

FALSTAFF. Have you any levers to lift me up again, being down ? 'Sblood ! I'll not bear mine own flesh so far afoot again for all the coin in thy father's exchequer. What a plague mean ye to colt me thus ? 37

PRINCE. Thou liest : thou art not colted ; thou art uncolted.

FALSTAFF. I prithee, good Prince Hal, help me to my horse, good king's son. 41

PRINCE. Out, you rogue ! shall I be your ostler ?

FALSTAFF. Go, hang thyself in thine own heir apparent garters ! If I be ta'en I'll peach for this. An I have not ballads made on you all, and sung to filthy tunes, let a cup of sack be my poison : when a jest is so forward, and afoot too ! I hate it. 47

Enter GADSHILL.

GADSHILL. Stand.

FALSTAFF. So I do, against my will.

POINS. O ! 'tis our setter : I know his voice.

Enter BARDOLPH and PETO.

BARDOLPH. What news ? 51

GADSHILL. Case ye, case ye ; on with your vizards : there 's money of the king's coming down the hill ; 'tis going to the king's exchequer.

FALSTAFF. You lie, you rogue ; 'tis going to the king's tavern. 56

GADSHILL. There 's enough to make us all.

FALSTAFF. To be hanged.

PRINCE. Sirs, you four shall front them in the narrow lane ; Ned Poins and I will walk lower : if they 'scape from your encounter then they light on us. 61

PETO. How many be there of them ?

GADSHILL. Some eight or ten.

FALSTAFF. 'Zounds ! will they not rob us ? 64

PRINCE. What ! a coward, Sir John Paunch ?

FALSTAFF. Indeed, I am not John of Gaunt, your grandfather ; but yet no coward, Hal.

PRINCE. Well, we leave that to the proof. 68

POINS. Sirrah Jack, thy horse stands behind the hedge : when thou needst him there thou shalt find him. Farewell, and stand fast.

FALSTAFF. Now cannot I strike him if I should be hanged. 73

PRINCE. [Aside to Poins.] Ned, where are our disguises ?

POINS. Here, hard by ; stand close. 76

[Exeunt PRINCE and POINS.]

FALSTAFF. Now my masters, happy man be his dole, say I : every man to his business.

Enter Travellers.

FIRST TRAVELLER. Come, neighbour ; the boy shall lead our horses down the hill ; we'll walk afoot awhile, and ease our legs. 81

THIEVES. Stand !

TRAVELLERS. Jesu bless us !

FALSTAFF. Strike ; down with them ; cut the villains' throats : ah ! whoreson caterpillars ! bacon-fed knaves ! they hate us youth : down with them ; fleece them.

TRAVELLERS. O ! we are undone, both we and ours for ever. 89

FALSTAFF. Hang ye, gorbellied knaves, are ye undone ? No, ye fat chuffs ; I would your store were here ! On, bacons, on ! What ! ye knaves, young men must live. You are grand-jurors are ye ? We'll jure ye, i' faith.

[Here they rob and bind them. Exeunt.]

Re-enter the PRINCE and POINS.

PRINCE. The thieves have bound the true men. Now could thou and I rob the thieves and go merrily to London, it would be argument for a week, laughter for a month, and a good jest for ever.

POINS. Stand close ; I hear them coming. 99

Re-enter Thieves.

FALSTAFF. Come, my masters ; let us share, and then to horse before day. An the Prince and Poins be not two arrant cowards, there's no equity stirring : there's no more valour in that Poins than in a wild duck. 104

PRINCE. Your money !

POINS. Villains !

[As they are sharing, the PRINCE and POINS set upon them. They all run away ; and FALSTAFF, after a blow or two, runs away too, leaving the booty behind.]

PRINCE. Got with much ease. Now merrily to horse : The thieves are scatter'd and possess'd with fear 108  
So strongly that they dare not meet each other ;  
Each takes his fellow for an officer.  
Away, good Ned. Falstaff sweats to death  
And lards the lean earth as he walks along : 112  
Were't not for laughing I should pity him.

POINS. How the rogue roar'd ! [Exeunt.

SCENE III.—Warkworth. A Room in the Castle.

Enter HOTSPUR, reading a letter.

'But for mine own part, my lord, I could be well contented to be there, in respect of the love I bear your house.' 3

He could be contented ; why is he not then ? In respect of the love he bears our house : he shows in this he loves his own barn better than he loves our house. Let me see some more. 7

'The purpose you undertake is dangerous ;—' Why, that's certain : 'tis dangerous to take a cold, to sleep, to drink ; but I tell you, my lord fool, out of this nettle, danger, we pluck this flower, safety. 11

'The purpose you undertake is dangerous ; the friends you have named uncertain ; the time itself unsorted ;

and your whole plot too light for the counterpoise of so great an opposition. 15

Say you so, say you so? I say unto you again, you are a shallow cowardly hind, and you lie. What a lack-brain is this! By the Lord, our plot is a good plot as ever was laid; our friends true and constant: a good plot, good friends, and full of expectation; an excellent plot, very good friends. What a frosty-spirited rogue is this! Why, my Lord of York commends the plot and the general course of the action. 'Zounds! an I were now by this rascal, I could brain him with his lady's fan. Is there not my father, my uncle, and myself? Lord Edmund Mortimer, my Lord of York, and Owen Glendower? Is there not besides the Douglas? Have I not all their letters to meet me in arms by the ninth of the next month, and are they not some of them set forward already? What a pagan rascal is this! an infidel! Ha! you shall see now in very sincerity of fear and cold heart, will he to the king and lay open all our proceedings. O! I could divide myself and go to buffets, for moving such a dish of skim milk with so honourable an action. Hang him! let him tell the king; we are prepared. I will set forward to-night. 37

Enter LADY PERCY.

How now, Kate! I must leave you within these two hours.

LADY PERCY. O, my good lord! why are you thus alone?

For what offence have I this fortnight been 40  
A banish'd woman from my Harry's bed?  
Tell me, sweet lord, what is't that takes from thee  
Thy stomach, pleasure, and thy golden sleep?  
Why dost thou bend thine eyes upon the earth, 44  
And start so often when thou sitt'st alone?  
Why hast thou lost the fresh blood in thy cheeks,  
And given my treasures and my rights of thee  
To thick-eyed musing and curst melancholy? 48  
In thy faint slumbers I by thee have watch'd,  
And heard thee murmur tales of iron wars,  
Speak terms of manage to thy bounding steed,  
Cry, 'Courage! to the field!' And thou hast talk'd  
Of sallies and retires, of trenches, tents, 53



Of palisadoes, frontiers, parapets,  
 Of basilisks, of cannon, culverin,  
 Of prisoners' ransom, and of soldiers slain, 56  
 And all the currents of a heady fight.  
 Thy spirit within thee hath been so at war,  
 And thus hath so bestirr'd thee in thy sleep,  
 That beads of sweat have stood upon thy brow, 60  
 Like bubbles in a late-disturbed stream ;  
 And in thy face strange motions have appear'd,  
 Such as we see when men restrain their breath  
 On some great sudden hest. O ! what portents are these ?  
 Some heavy business hath my lord in hand. 65  
 And I must know it, else he loves me not.  
 HOTSPUR. What, ho !

Enter Servant.

Is Gilliams with the packet gone ?

SERVANT. He is, my lord, an hour ago. 68

HOTSPUR. Hath Butler brought those horses from the  
 sheriff ?

SERVANT. One horse, my lord, he brought even now.

HOTSPUR. What horse ? a roan, a crop-ear, is it not ?

SERVANT. It is, my lord.

HOTSPUR. That roan shall be my throne.

Well, I will back him straight : O, Esperance ! 73

Bid Butler lead him forth into the park. [Exit Servant.]

LADY PERCY. But hear you, my lord.

HOTSPUR. What sayst thou, my lady ? 76

LADY PERCY. What is it carries you away ?

HOTSPUR. Why, my horse, my love, my horse.

LADY PERCY. Out, you mad-headed ape !

A weasel hath not such a deal of spleen 80

As you are toss'd with. In faith,

I'll know your business, Harry, that I will.

I fear my brother Mortimer doth stir

About his title, and hath sent for you 84

To line his enterprise. But if you go—

HOTSPUR. So far afoot, I shall be weary, love.

LADY PERCY. Come, come, you paraquito, answer me  
 Directly unto this question that I ask. 88

In faith, I'll break thy little finger, Harry,  
 An if thou wilt not tell me all things true.

HOTSPUR. Away.

Away, you trifler ! Love ! I love thee not,  
 I care not for thee, Kate : this is no world  
 To play with mammetts and to tilt with lips :  
 We must have bloody noses and crack'd crowns,  
 And pass them current too. God's me, my horse !  
 What sayst thou, Kate ? what wouldst thou have with me ?

LADY PERCY. Do you not love me ? do you not, indeed ?  
 Well, do not, then ; for since you love me not,  
 I will not love myself. Do you not love me ? 100  
 Nay, tell me if you speak in jest or no.

HOTSPUR. Come, wilt thou see me ride ?  
 And when I am o' horseback, I will swear  
 I love thee infinitely. But hark you, Kate ; 104  
 I must not have you henceforth question me  
 Whither I go, nor reason whereabout.  
 Whither I must, I must ; and, to conclude,  
 This evening must I leave you, gentle Kate. 108  
 I know you wise ; but yet no further wise  
 Than Harry Percy's wife : constant you are,  
 But yet a woman : and for secrecy,  
 No lady closer ; for I well believe 112  
 Thou wilt not utter what thou dost not know ;  
 And so far will I trust thee, gentle Kate.

LADY PERCY. How ! so far ?

HOTSPUR. Not an inch further. But, hark you, Kate :  
 Whither I go, thither shall you go too ; 117  
 To-day will I set forth, to-morrow you.  
 Will this content you, Kate ?

LADY PERCY. It must, of force. [Exeunt.

SCENE IV.—Eastcheap. A Room in the Boar's Head Tavern.

Enter the PRINCE and POINS.

PRINCE. Ned, prithee, come out of that fat room,  
 and lend me thy hand to laugh a little.

POINS. Where hast been, Hal ? 3

PRINCE. With three or four loggerheads amongst  
 three or four score hogsheads. I have sounded the very  
 base string of humility. Sirrah, I am sworn brother to  
 a leash of drawers, and can call them all by their christen  
 names, as Tom, Dick, and Francis. They take it  
 already upon their salvation, that though I be but  
 Prince of Wales, yet I am the king of courtesy ; and

tell me flatly I am no proud Jack, like Falstaff, but a Corinthian, a lad of mettle, a good boy,—by the Lord, so they call me,—and when I am king of England, I shall command all the good lads in Eastcheap. They call drinking deep, dyeing scarlet; and when you breathe in your watering, they cry ‘hem!’ and bid you play it off. To conclude, I am so good a proficient in one quarter of an hour, that I can drink with any tinker in his own language during my life. I tell thee, Ned, thou hast lost much honour that thou wert not with me in this action. But, sweet Ned,—to sweeten which name of Ned, I give thee this pennyworth of sugar, clapped even now into my hand by an under-skinker, one that never spake other English in his life than—‘Eight shillings and sixpence,’ and—‘You are welcome,’ with this shrill addition,—‘Anon, anon, sir! Score a pint of bastard in the Half-moon,’ or so. But, Ned, to drive away the time till Falstaff come, I prithee do thou stand in some by-room, while I question my puny drawer to what end he gave me the sugar; and do thou never leave calling ‘Francis!’ that his tale to me may be nothing but ‘Anon’. Step aside, and I’ll show thee a precedent. 33

POINS. Francis!

PRINCE. Thou art perfect.

POINS. Francis!

[Exit POINS.]

Enter FRANCIS.

FRANCIS. Anon, anon, sir. Look down into the Pom-garnet, Ralph.

PRINCE. Come hither, Francis.

FRANCIS. My lord. 40

PRINCE. How long hast thou to serve, Francis?

FRANCIS. Forsooth, five years, and as much as to—

POINS. [Within.] Francis!

FRANCIS. Anon, anon, sir. 44

PRINCE. Five years! by’r lady a long lease for the clinking of pewter. But, Francis, darest thou be so valiant as to play the coward with thy indenture and show it a fair pair of heels and run from it? 48

FRANCIS. O Lord, sir! I’ll be sworn upon all the books in England, I could find in my heart—

POINS. [Within.] Francis!

FRANCIS. Anon, sir. 52

PRINCE. How old art thou, Francis ?

FRANCIS. Let me see—about Michaelmas next I shall be—

POINS. [Within.] Francis ! 56

FRANCIS. Anon, sir. Pray you, stay a little, my lord.

PRINCE. Nay, but hark you, Francis. For the sugar thou gavest me, 'twas a pennyworth, was 't not ? 60

FRANCIS. O Lord, sir ! I would it had been two.

PRINCE. I will give thee for it a thousand pound : ask me when thou wilt and thou shalt have it.

POINS. [Within.] Francis ! 64

FRANCIS. Anon, anon.

PRINCE. Anon, Francis ? No, Francis ; but tomorrow, Francis ; or, Francis, o' Thursday ; or, indeed, Francis, when thou wilt. But, Francis ! 68

FRANCIS. My lord ?

PRINCE. Wilt thou rob this leathern-jerkin, crystal-button, knot-pated, agate-ring, puke-stock, caddis-garter, smooth-tongue, Spanish-pouch,— 72

FRANCIS. O Lord, sir, who do you mean ?

PRINCE. Why then, your brown bastard is your only drink ; for, look you, Francis, your white canvas doublet will sully. In Barbary, sir, it cannot come to so much. 77

FRANCIS. What, sir ?

POINS. [Within.] Francis !

PRINCE. Away, you rogue ! Dost thou not hear them call ?

[Here they both call him ; the Drawer stands amazed, not knowing which way to go.]

Enter VINTNER.

VINTNER. What ! standest thou still, and hearest such a calling ? Look to the guests within. [Exit FRANCIS.] My lord, old Sir John, with half a dozen more, are at the door : shall I let them in ? 85

PRINCE. Let them alone awhile, and then open the door. [Exit VINTNER.] Poins !

Re-enter POINS.

POINS. Anon, anon, sir. 88

PRINCE. Sirrah, Falstaff and the rest of the thieves are at the door : shall we be merry ?

POINS. As merry as crickets, my lad. But hark ye ;

what cunning match have you made with this jest of the drawer ? come, what 's the issue ? 93

PRINCE. I am now of all humours that have show'd themselves humours since the old days of goodman Adam to the pupil age of this present twelve o'clock at midnight. [FRANCIS crosses the stage, with wine.] What 's o'clock, Francis ? 98

FRANCIS. Anon, anon, sir. [Exit.

PRINCE. That ever this fellow should have fewer words than a parrot, and yet the son of a woman ! His industry is up-stairs and down-stairs ; his eloquence the parcel of a reckoning. I am not yet of Percy's mind, the Hotspur of the North ; he that kills me some six or seven dozen of Scots at a breakfast, washes his hands, and says to his wife, ' Fie upon this quiet life ! I want work.' ' O my sweet Harry,' says she, ' how many hast thou killed to-day ?' ' Give my roan horse a drench,' says he, and answers, ' Some fourteen,' an hour after, ' a trifle, a trifle.' I prithee call in Falstaff : I'll play Percy, and that damned brawn shall play Dame Mortimer his wife. ' Rivo !' says the drunkard. Call in ribs, call in tallow. 113

Enter FALSTAFF, GADSHILL, BARDOLPH, PETO, and FRANCIS.

POINS. Welcome, Jack ; where hast thou been ?

FALSTAFF. A plague of all cowards, I say, and a vengeance too ! marry, and amen ! Give me a cup of sack, boy. Ere I lead this life long, I'll sew nether-stocks and mend them and foot them too. A plague of all cowards ! Give me a cup of sack, rogue.—Is there no virtue extant ? [He drinks.

PRINCE. Didst thou never see Titan kiss a dish of butter—pitiful-hearted Titan, that melted at the sweet tale of the sun ? if thou didst then behold that compound. 124

FALSTAFF. You rogue, here 's lime in this sack too : there is nothing but roguery to be found in villanous man : yet a coward is worse than a cup of sack with lime in it, a villanous coward ! Go thy ways, old Jack ; die when thou wilt. If manhood, good manhood, be not forgot upon the face of the earth, then am I a shotten herring. There live not three good men unchanged in England, and one of them is fat and grows

old : God help the while ! a bad world, I say. I would I were a weaver ; I could sing psalms or anything. A plague of all cowards, I say still. 135

PRINCE. How now, wool-sack ! what mutter you ?

FALSTAFF. A king's son ! If I do not beat thee out of thy kingdom with a dagger of lath, and drive all thy subjects afore thee like a flock of wild geese, I'll never wear hair on my face more. You Prince of Wales !

PRINCE. Why, you whoreson round man ; what's the matter ?

FALSTAFF. Are you not a coward ? answer me to that ; and Poins there 144

POINS. 'Zounds ! ye fat paunch, an ye call me coward, I'll stab thee.

FALSTAFF. I call thee coward ! I'll see thee damned ere I call thee coward ; but I would give a thousand pound I could run as fast as thou canst. You are straight enough in the shoulders ; you care not who sees your back : call you that backing of your friends ? A plague upon such backing ! give me them that will face me. Give me a cup of sack : I am a rogue if I drunk to-day.

PRINCE. O villain ! thy lips are scarce wiped since thou drunkenest last. 156

FALSTAFF. All's one for that. [He drinks.] A plague of all cowards, still say I.

PRINCE. What's the matter ?

FALSTAFF. What's the matter ? there be four of us here have ta'en a thousand pound this day morning.

PRINCE. Where is it, Jack ? where is it ?

FALSTAFF. Where is it ! taken from us it is : a hundred upon poor four of us. 164

PRINCE. What, a hundred, man ?

FALSTAFF. I am a rogue, if I were not at half-sword with a dozen of them two hours together. I have 'scap'd by miracle. I am eight times thrust through the doublet, four through the hose ; my buckler cut through and through ; my sword hacked like a hand-saw : ecce signum ! I never dealt better since I was a man : all would not do. A plague of all cowards ! Let them speak : if they speak more or less than truth, they are villains and the sons of darkness.

PRINCE. Speak, sirs ; how was it ?

GADSHILL. We four set upon some dozen,— 176

FALSTAFF. Sixteen, at least, my lord.

GADSHILL. And bound them.

• PETO. No, no, they were not bound.

FALSTAFF. You rogue, they were bound, every man of them ; or I am a Jew else, an Ebrew Jew. 181

GADSHILL. As we were sharing, some six or seven fresh men set upon us,—

FALSTAFF. And unbound the rest, and then come in the other. 185

PRINCE. What, fought ye with them all ?

FALSTAFF. All ! I know not what ye call all ; but if I fought not with fifty of them, I am a bunch of radish : if there were not two or three and fifty upon poor old Jack, then am I no two-legged creature.

PRINCE. Pray God you have not murdered some of them. 192

FALSTAFF. Nay, that's past praying for : I have peppered two of them : two I am sure I have paid, two rogues in buckram suits. I tell thee what, Hal, if I tell thee a lie, spit in my face, call me horse. Thou knowest my old ward ; here I lay, and thus I bore my point. Four rogues in buckram let drive at me,—

PRINCE. What, four ? thou saidst but two even now.

FALSTAFF. Four, Hal ; I told thee four. 200

POINS. Ay, ay, he said four.

FALSTAFF. These four came all a-front, and mainly thrust at me. I made me no more ado but took all their seven points in my target, thus. 204

PRINCE. Seven ? why, there were but four even now.

FALSTAFF. In buckram.

POINS. Ay, four, in buckram suits. 207

FALSTAFF. Seven, by these hilts, or I am a villain else.

PRINCE. Prithee, let him alone ; we shall have more anon.

FALSTAFF. Dost thou hear me, Hal ?

PRINCE. Ay, and mark thee too, Jack. 212

• FALSTAFF. Do so, for it is worth the listening to. These nine in buckram that I told thee of,—

PRINCE. So, two more already.

FALSTAFF. Their points being broken,— 216

POINS. Down fell their hose.

FALSTAFF. Began to give me ground ; but I followed

me close, came in foot and hand and with a thought seven  
of the eleven I paid. 220

PRINCE. O monstrous ! eleven buckram men grown  
out of two.

FALSTAFF. But, as the devil would have it, three  
misbegotten knaves in Kendal-green came at my back  
and let drive at me ; for it was so dark, Hal, that thou  
couldst not see thy hand. 226

PRINCE. These lies are like the father that begets  
them ; gross as a mountain, open, palpable. Why, thou  
clay-brained guts, thou knotty-pated fool, thou whoreson,  
obscene, greasy tallow-ketch,—

FALSTAFF. What, art thou mad ? art thou mad ? is  
not the truth the truth ? 232

PRINCE. Why, how couldst thou know these men  
in Kendal-green, when it was so dark thou couldst not  
see thy hand ? come, tell us your reason : what sayest  
thou to this ? 236

POINS. Come, your reason, Jack, your reason.

FALSTAFF. What, upon compulsion ? 'Zounds ! an  
I were at the strappado, or all the racks in the world,  
I would not tell you on compulsion. Give you a reason  
on compulsion ! if reasons were as plenty as blackberries  
I would give no man a reason upon compulsion, I.

PRINCE. I'll be no longer guilty of this sin : this  
sanguine coward, this bed-presser, this horseback-  
breaker, this huge hill of flesh ;— 245

FALSTAFF. 'Sblood, you starveling, you elf-skin, you  
dried neat's-tongue, you bull's pizzle, you stock-fish !  
O ! for breath to utter what is like thee ; you tailor's  
yard, you sheath, you bow-case, you vile standing  
tuck ;— 250

PRINCE. Well, breathe awhile, and then to it again ;  
and when thou hast tired thyself in base comparisons,  
hear me speak but this.

POINS. Mark, Jack. 254

PRINCE. We two saw you four set on four and you  
bound them, and were masters of their wealth. Mark  
now, how a plain tale shall put you down. Then did  
we two set on you four, and, with a word, out-faced  
you from your prize, and have it ; yea, and can show it  
you here in the house. And, Falstaff, you carried your  
guts away as nimbly, with as quick dexterity, and roared



for mercy, and still ran and roared, as ever I heard bull-calf. What a slave art thou, to hack thy sword as thou hast done, and then say it was in fight! What trick, what device, what starting-hole canst thou now find out to hide thee from this open and apparent shame? 287

POINS. Come, let's hear, Jack; what trick hast thou now?

FALSTAFF. By the Lord, I knew ye as well as he that made ye. Why, hear you, my masters: was it for me to kill the heir-apparent? Should I turn upon the true prince? Why, thou knowest I am as valiant as Hercules; but beware instinct; the lion will not touch the true prince. Instinct is a great matter, I was a coward on instinct. I shall think the better of myself and thee during my life; I for a valiant lion, and thou for a true prince. But, by the Lord, lads, I am glad you have the money. Hostess, clap to the doors: watch to-night, pray to-morrow. Gallants, lads, boys, hearts of gold, all the titles of good fellowship come to you! What! shall we be merry? shall we have a play extempore? 283

PRINCE. Content; and the argument shall be thy running away.

FALSTAFF. Ah! no more of that, Hal, an thou lovest me!

Enter MISTRESS QUICKLY.

QUICKLY. O Jesu! my lord the prince! 288

PRINCE. How now, my lady the hostess! what sayest thou to me?

QUICKLY. Marry, my lord, there is a nobleman of the court at door would speak with you: he says he comes from your father.

PRINCE. Give him as much as will make him a royal man, and send him back again to my mother.

FALSTAFF. What manner of man is he? 296

QUICKLY. An old man.

FALSTAFF. What doth gravity out of his bed at midnight? Shall I give him his answer?

PRINCE. Prithee, do, Jack. 300

FALSTAFF. Faith, and I'll send him packing. [Exit.

PRINCE. Now, sirs: by'r lady, you fought fair; so did you, Peto; so did you, Bardolph: you are lions too,

you ran away upon instinct, you will not touch the true prince ; no, fie ! 305

BARDOLPH. Faith, I ran when I saw others run.

PRINCE. Faith, tell me now in earnest, how came Falstaff's sword so hacked ? 308

PETO. Why he hacked it with his dagger, and said he would swear truth out of England but he would make you believe it was done in fight, and persuaded us to do the like. 312

BARDOLPH. Yea, and to tickle our noses with spear-grass to make them bleed, and then to beslobber our garments with it and swear it was the blood of true men. I did that I did not this seven year before ; I blushed to hear his monstrous devices. 317

PRINCE. O villain ! thou stolest a cup of sack eighteen years ago, and wert taken with the manner, and ever since thou hast blushed extempore. Thou hadst fire and sword on thy side, and yet thou rankest away. What instinct hadst thou for it ?

BARDOLPH. [Pointing to his face.] My lord, do you see these meteors ? do you behold these exhalations ?

PRINCE. I do. 325

BARDOLPH. What think you they portend ?

PRINCE. Hot livers and cold purses.

BARDOLPH. Choler, my lord, if rightly taken. 328

PRINCE. No, if rightly taken, halter.—

Re-enter FALSTAFF.

Here comes lean Jack, here comes bare-bone.—How now, my sweet creature of bombast ! How long is 't ago, Jack, since thou sawest thine own knee ? 333

FALSTAFF. My own knee ! when I was about thy years, Hal, I was not an eagle's talon in the waist ; I could have crept into any alderman's thumb-ring. A plague of sighing and grief ! it blows a man up like a bladder. There's villanous news abroad : here was Sir John Bracy from your father : you must to the court in the morning. That same mad fellow of the north, Percy, and he of Wales, that gave Amaimon the bastinado and made Lucifer cuckold, and swore the devil his true liegeman upon the cross of a Welsh hook—what a plague call you him ? 344

POINS. Owen Glendower.

FALSTAFF. Owen, Owen, the same ; and his son-in-law Mortimer and old Northumberland ; and that sprightly Scot of Scots, Douglas, that runs o' horseback up a hill perpendicular. 349

PRINCE. He that rides at high speed and with his pistol kills a sparrow flying.

FALSTAFF. You have hit it. 352

PRINCE. So did he never the sparrow.

FALSTAFF. Well, that rascal hath good mettle in him ; he will not run.

PRINCE. Why, what a rascal art thou then to praise him so for running ? 357

FALSTAFF. O' horseback, ye cuckoo ! but, afoot he will not budge a foot.

PRINCE. Yes, Jack, upon instinct. 360

FALSTAFF. I grant ye, upon instinct. Well, he is there too, and one Mordake, and a thousand blue-caps more. Worcester is stolen away to-night ; thy father's beard is turned white with the news : you may buy land now as cheap as stinking mackerel. 365

PRINCE. Why then, it is like, if there come a hot June and this civil buffeting hold, we shall buy maidenheads as they buy hob-nails, by the hundreds. 368

FALSTAFF. By the mass, lad, thou sayest true ; it is like we shall have good trading that way. But tell me, Hal, art thou not horribly afeard ? thou being heir apparent, could the world pick thee out three such enemies again as that fiend Douglas, that spirit Percy, and that devil Glendower ? Art thou not horribly afraid ? doth not thy blood thrill at it ? 375

PRINCE. Not a whit, i' faith ; I lack some of thy instinct.

FALSTAFF. Well, thou wilt be horribly chid to-morrow when thou comest to thy father : if thou love me, practise an answer. 380

PRINCE. Do thou stand for my father, and examine me upon the particulars of my life.

FALSTAFF. Shall I ? content : this chair shall be my state, this dagger my sceptre, and this cushion my crown. 385

PRINCE. Thy state is taken for a joint-stool, thy golden sceptre for a leaden dagger, and thy precious rich crown for a pitiful bald crown ! 388

FALSTAFF. Well, an the fire of grace be not quite out of thee, now shalt thou be moved. Give me a cup of sack to make mine eyes look red, that it may be thought I have wept; for I must speak in passion, and I will do it in King Cambyse's vein. [Drinks.

PRINCE. Well, here is my leg. [Makes a bow.

FALSTAFF. And here is my speech. Stand aside, nobility. 396

QUICKLY. O Jesu! This is excellent sport, i' faith!

FALSTAFF. Weep not, sweet queen, for trickling tears are vain.

QUICKLY. O, the father! how he holds his countenance. 400

FALSTAFF. For God's sake, lords, convey my tristful queen,

For tears do stop the flood-gates of her eyes.

QUICKLY. O Jesu! he doth it as like one of these harlotry players as ever I see! 404

FALSTAFF. Peace, good pint-pot! peace, good tickle-brain! Harry, I do not only marvel where thou spendest thy time, but also how thou art accompanied: for though the camomile, the more it is trodden on the faster it grows, yet youth, the more it is wasted the sooner it wears. That thou art my son, I have partly thy mother's word, partly my own opinion; but chiefly, a villanous trick of thine eye and a foolish hanging of thy nether lip, that doth warrant me. If then thou be son to me, here lies the point; why, being son to me, art thou so pointed at? Shall the blessed sun of heaven prove a micher and eat blackberries? a question not to be asked. Shall the son of England prove a thief and take purses? a question to be asked. There is a thing, Harry, which thou hast often heard of, and it is known to many in our land by the name of pitch: this pitch, as ancient writers do report, doth defile; so doth the company thou keepest; for, Harry, now I do not speak to thee in drink, but in tears, not in pleasure but in passion, not in words only, but in woes also. And yet there is a virtuous man whom I have often noted in thy company, but I know not his name. 427

PRINCE. What manner of man, an it like your majesty?

FALSTAFF. A goodly portly man, i' faith, and a corpulent; of a cheerful look, a pleasing eye, and a most noble carriage; and, as I think, his age some fifty, or by'r lady, inclining to threescore; and now I remember me, his name is Falstaff: if that man should be lewdly given, he deceiveth me; for, Harry, I see virtue in his looks. If then the tree may be known by the fruit, as the fruit by the tree, then, peremptorily I speak it, there is virtue in that Falstaff: him keep with, the rest banish. And, tell me now, thou naughty varlet, tell me, where hast thou been this month? 440

PRINCE. Dost thou speak like a king? Do thou stand for me, and I'll play my father.

FALSTAFF. Depose me? if thou dost it half so gravely, so majestically, both in word and matter, hang me up by the heels for a rabbit-sucker or a poulter's hare. 446

PRINCE. Well, here I am set.

FALSTAFF. And here I stand. Judge, my masters.

PRINCE. Now, Harry! whence come you? 449

FALSTAFF. My noble lord, from Eastcheap.

PRINCE. The complaints I hear of thee are grievous.

FALSTAFF. 'Sblood, my lord, they are false: nay, I'll tickle ye for a young prince, i' faith. 453

PRINCE. Swearest thou, ungracious boy? henceforth ne'er look on me. Thou art violently carried away from grace: there is a devil haunts thee in the likeness of a fat old man; a dun of man is thy companion. Why dost thou converse with that trunk of humours, that bolting-hutch of beastliness, that swoln parcel of dropsies, that huge bombard of sack, that stuffed cloak-bag of guts, that roasted Manning-tree ox with the pudding in his belly, that reverend vice, that grey iniquity, that father ruffian, that vanity in years? Wherein is he good but to taste sack and drink it? wherein neat and cleanly but to carve a capon and eat it? wherein cunning but in craft? wherein crafty but in villany? wherein villanous but in all things? wherein worthy but in nothing? 468

FALSTAFF. I would your Grace would take me with you: whom means your Grace?

PRINCE. That villanous abominable misleader of youth, Falstaff, that old white-bearded Satan. 472

FALSTAFF. My lord, the man I know.

PRINCE. I know thou dost.

FALSTAFF. But to say I know more harm in him than in myself were to say more than I know. That he is old, the more the pity, his white hairs do witness it; but that he is, saving your reverence, a whoremaster, that I utterly deny. If sack and sugar be a fault, God help the wicked! If to be old and merry be a sin, then many an old host that I know is damned: if to be fat be to be hated, then Pharaoh's lean kine are to be loved. No, my good lord; banish Peto, banish Bardolph, banish Poins; but for sweet Jack Falstaff, kind Jack Falstaff, true Jack Falstaff, valiant Jack Falstaff, and therefore more valiant, being, as he is, old Jack Falstaff, banish not him thy Harry's company: banish not him thy Harry's company: banish plump Jack, and banish all the world. 489

PRINCE. I do, I will.

[A knocking heard.]

[Exeunt MISTRESS QUICKLY, FRANCIS, and BARDOLPH.]

Re-enter BARDOLPH, running.

BARDOLPH. O! my lord, my lord, the sheriff with a most monstrous watch is at the door.

FALSTAFF. Out, ye rogue! Play out the play: I have much to say in the behalf of that Falstaff.

Re-enter MISTRESS QUICKLY.

QUICKLY. O Jesu! my lord, my lord! 495

PRINCE. Heigh, heigh! the devil rides upon a fiddlestick: what's the matter?

QUICKLY. The sheriff and all the watch are at the door: they are come to search the house. Shall I let them in? 500

FALSTAFF. Dost thou hear, Hal? never call a true piece of gold a counterfeit: thou art essentially mad without seeming so.

PRINCE. And thou a natural coward without instinct. 505

FALSTAFF. I deny your major. If you will deny the sheriff, so; if not, let him enter: if I become not a cart as well as another man, a plague on my bringing up! I hope I shall as soon be strangled with a halter as another. 510

PRINCE. Go, hide thee behind the arras: the rest walk

up above. Now, my masters, for a true face and good conscience. 513

FALSTAFF. Both which I have had ; but their date is out, and therefore I'll hide me.

[Exeunt all but the PRINCE and PETO.]

PRINCE. Call in the sheriff. 516

Enter Sheriff and Carrier.

Now, master sheriff, what's your will with me ?

SHERIFF. First, pardon me, my lord. A hue and cry Hath follow'd certain men unto this house.

PRINCE. What men ? 520

SHERIFF. One of them is well known, my gracious lord, A gross fat man.

CARRIER. As fat as butter.

PRINCE. The man, I do assure you, is not here, For I myself at this time have employ'd him. 524

And, sheriff, I will engage my word to thee, That I will, by to-morrow dinner-time, Send him to answer thee, or any man, For anything he shall be charg'd withal : 528 And so let me entreat you leave the house.

SHERIFF. I will, my lord. There are two gentlemen Have in this robbery lost three hundred marks.

PRINCE. It may be so : if he have robb'd these men, He shall be answerable ; and so farewell. 533

SHERIFF. Good night, my noble lord.

PRINCE. I think it is good morrow, is it not ?

SHERIFF. Indeed, my lord, I think it be two o'clock.

[Exeunt Sheriff and Carrier.]

PRINCE. This oily rascal is known as well as Paul's. Go, call him forth.

PETO. Falstaff ! fast asleep behind the arras, and snorting like a horse. 540

PRINCE. Hark, how hard he fetches breath. Search his pockets. [He searcheth his pockets, and findeth certain papers.] What hast thou found ?

PETO. Nothing but papers, my lord. 544

PRINCE. Let's see what they be : read them.

PETO. Item, A capon . . . . . 2s. 2d.

Item, Sauce . . . . . 4d.

Item, Sack, two gallons . . . . . 5s. 8d.

Item, Anchovies and sack after supper 2s. 6d.

Item, Bread . . . . . ob.

PRINCE. O monstrous ! but one half-pennyworth of bread to this intolerable deal of sack ! What there is else, keep close ; we'll read it at more advantage. There let him sleep till day. I'll to the court in the morning. We must all to the wars, and thy place shall be honourable. I'll procure this fat rogue a charge of foot ; and, I know, his death will be a march of twelve-score. The money shall be paid back again with advantage. Be with me betimes in the morning ; and so good morrow, Peto.

560

PETO. Good morrow, good my lord.

[Exeunt.

## ACT III.

SCENE I.—Bangor. A Room in the Archdeacon's House.

Enter HOTSPUR, WORCESTER, MORTIMER, and GLENDOWER.

MORTIMER. These promises are fair, the parties sure,  
And our induction full of prosperous hope.

HOTSPUR. Lord Mortimer, and cousin Glendower,  
Will you sit down ?

4

And uncle Worcester : a plague upon it !  
I have forgot the map.

GLENDOWER. No, here it is.  
Sit, cousin Percy ; sit, good cousin Hotspur ;

For by that name as oft as Lancaster  
Doth speak of you, his cheek looks pale and with  
A rising sigh he wishes you in heaven.

8

HOTSPUR. And you in hell, as often as he hears  
Owen Glendower spoke of.

12

GLENDOWER. I cannot blame him : at my nativity  
The front of heaven was full of fiery shapes,  
Of burning cressets ; and at my birth  
The frame and huge foundation of the earth  
Shak'd like a coward.

16

HOTSPUR. Why, so it would have done at the same  
season, if your mother's cat had but kittened, though  
yourself had never been born.

20

GLENDOWER. I say the earth did shake when I was  
born.



**HOTSPUR.** And I say the earth was not of my mind,  
If you suppose as fearing you it shook.

**GLENDOWER.** The heavens were all on fire, the earth  
did tremble. 24

**HOTSPUR.** O ! then the earth shook to see the heavens  
on fire,

And not in fear of your nativity.

Diseased nature oftentimes breaks forth

In strange eruptions ; oft the teeming earth 28

Is with a kind of colic pinch'd and vex'd

By the imprisoning of unruly wind

Within her womb ; which, for enlargement striving,

Shakes the old beldam earth, and topples down 32

Steeple and moss-grown towers. At your birth

Our grandam earth, having this distemperature,

In passion shook.

**GLENDOWER.** Cousin, of many men

I do not bear these crossings. Give me leave 36

To tell you once again that at my birth

The front of heaven was full of fiery shapes,

The goats ran from the mountains, and the herds

Were strangely clamorous to the frightened fields. 40

These signs have mark'd me extraordinary ;

And all the courses of my life do show

I am not in the roll of common men.

Where is he living, clipp'd in with' the sea 44

That chides the banks of England, Scotland, Wales,

Which calls me pupil, or hath read to me ?

And bring him out that is but woman's son

Can trace me in the tedious ways of art 48

And hold me pace in deep experiments.

**HOTSPUR.** I think there's no man speaks better Welsh.  
I'll to dinner.

**MORTIMER.** Peace, cousin Percy ! you will make him  
mad. 52

**GLENDOWER.** I can call spirits from the vasty deep.

**HOTSPUR.** Why, so can I, or so can any man ;

But will they come when you do call for them ?

**GLENDOWER.** Why, I can teach thee, cousin, to com-  
mand 56

The devil.

**HOTSPUR.** And I can teach thee, coz, to shame the devil  
By telling truth ; tell truth and shame the devil.

If thou have power to raise him, bring him hither, 60  
And I'll be sworn I have power to shame him hence.  
O ! while you live, tell truth and shame the devil !

MORTIMER. Come, come ;

No more of this unprofitable chat

64

GLENDOWER. Three times hath Henry Bolingbroke  
made head

Against my power ; thrice from the banks of Wye

And sandy-bottom'd Severn have I sent him

Bootless home and weather-beaten back.

68

HOTSPUR. Home without boots, and in foul weather  
too !

How 'scapes he agues, in the devil's name ?

GLENDOWER. Come, here 's the map : shall we divide  
our right

According to our threefold order ta'en ?

72

MORTIMER. The archdeacon hath divided it  
Into three limits very equally.

England, from Trent and Severn hitherto,

By south and east, is to my part assign'd :

76

All westward, Wales beyond the Severn shore,

And all the fertile land within that bound,

To Owen Glendower : and, dear coz, to you

The remnant northward, lying off from Trent.

80

And our indentures tripartite are drawn,

Which being sealed interchangeably,

A business that this night may execute,

To-morrow, cousin Percy, you and I

84

And my good Lord of Worcester will set forth

To meet your father and the Scottish power,

As is appointed us, at Shrewsbury.

My father Glendower is not ready yet,

88

Nor shall we need his help these fourteen days.

[To GLENDOWER.] Within that space you may have drawn  
together

Your tenants, friends, and neighbouring gentlemen.

GLENDOWER. A shorter time shall send me to you,  
lords ;

92

And in my conduct shall your ladies come,

From whom you now must steal and take no leave ;

For there will be a world of water shed

Upon the parting of your wives and you.

96

HOTSPUR. Methinks my moiety, north from Burton here,

In quantity equals not one of yours :  
 See how this river comes me cranking in,  
 And cuts me from the best of all my land 100  
 A huge half-moon, a monstrous cantle out.  
 I'll have the current in this place damm'd up,  
 And here the smug and silver Trent shall run  
 In a new channel, fair and evenly : 104  
 It shall not wind with such a deep indent,  
 To rob me of so rich a bottom here.

GLENDOWER. Not wind ! it shall, it must ; you see it doth.

MORTIMER. Yea, but 108  
 Mark how he bears his course, and runs me up  
 With like advantage on the other side ;  
 Gelding the opposed continent as much,  
 As on the other side it takes from you. 112

WORCESTER. Yea, but a little charge will trench him here,  
 And on this north side win this cape of land ;  
 And then he runs straight and even. 115

HOTSPUR. I'll have it so ; a little charge will do it

GLENDOWER. I will not have it alter'd.

HOTSPUR. Will not you ?

GLENDOWER. No, nor you shall not.

HOTSPUR. Who shall say me nay ?

GLENDOWER. Why, that will I.

HOTSPUR. Let me not understand you then :

Speak it in Welsh. 120

GLENDOWER. I can speak English, lord, as well as you,  
 For I was train'd up in the English court ;  
 Where, being but young, I framed to the harp  
 Many an English ditty lovely well, 124  
 And gave the tongue an helpful ornament ;  
 A virtue that was never seen in you.

HOTSPUR. Marry, and I'm glad of it with all my heart.  
 I had rather be a kitten, and cry mew 128  
 Than one of these same metre ballad-mongers ;  
 I had rather hear a brazen canstick turn'd,  
 Or a dry wheel grate on the axle-tree ;  
 And that would set my teeth nothing on edge, 132  
 Nothing so much as mincing poetry :  
 'Tis like the forc'd gait of a shuffling nag.

GLENDOWER. Come, you shall have Trent turn'd.

HOTSPUR. I do not care : I'll give thrice so much  
land 136

To any well-deserving friend ;  
But in the way of bargain, mark you me,  
I'll cavil on the ninth part of a hair.  
Are the indentures drawn ? shall we be gone ? 140

GLENDOWER. The moon shines fair, you may away by  
night :

I'll haste the writer and withal  
Break with your wives of your departure hence :  
I am afraid my daughter will run mad, 144  
So much she doteth on her Mortimer. [Exit

MORTIMER. Fie, cousin Percy ! how you cross my  
father !

HOTSPUR. I cannot choose : sometimes he angers me  
With telling me of the moldwarp and the ant, 148  
Of the dreamer Merlin and his prophecies,  
And of a dragon, and a finless fish,  
A clip-wing'd griffin, and a moulten raven,  
A couching lion, and a ramping cat, 152  
And such a deal of skimble-skamble stuff  
As puts me from my faith. I'll tell thee what ;  
He held me last night at least nine hours  
In reckoning up the several devils' names 156  
That were his lackeys : I cried ' hum ! ' and ' well, go to.'  
But mark'd him not a word. O ! he's as tedious  
As a tired horse, a railing wife ;  
Worse than a smoky house. I had rather live 160  
With cheese and garlick in a windmill, far,  
Than feed on cates and have him talk to me  
In any summer-house in Christendom.

MORTIMER. In faith, he is a worthy gentleman,  
Exceedingly well read, and profited 165  
In strange concealments, valiant as a lion  
And wondrous affable, and as bountiful  
As mines of India. Shall I tell you, cousin ? 168  
He holds your temper in a high respect,  
And curbs himself even of his natural scope  
When you do cross his humour ; faith, he does.  
I warrant you, that man is not alive 172  
Might so have tempted him as you have done,  
Without the taste of danger and reproof :  
But do not use it oft, let me entreat you.

WORCESTER. In faith, my lord, you are too wilful-blame ; 176

And since your coming hither have done enough  
To put him quite beside his patience.

You must needs learn, lord, to amend this fault :  
Though sometimes it show greatness, courage, blood,— 181  
And that 's the dearest grace it renders you,—

Yet oftentimes it doth present harsh rage,  
Defect of manners, want of government,  
Pride, haughtiness, opinion, and disdain : 184

The least of which haunting a nobleman  
Loseth men's hearts and leaves behind a stain  
Upon the beauty of all parts besides,  
Beguiling them of commendation. 188

HOTSPUR. Well, I am school'd ; good manners be your  
speed !

Here come our wives, and let us take our leave.

Re-enter GLENDOWER, with the Ladies.

MORTIMER. This is the deadly spite that angers me,  
My wife can speak no English, I no Welsh. 192

GLENDOWER. My daughter weeps ; she will not part  
with you :

She'll be a soldier too : she'll to the wars.

MORTIMER. Good father, tell her that she and my  
aunt Percy,  
Shall follow in your conduct speedily. 196

[GLENDOWER speaks to LADY MORTIMER in Welsh, and she answers  
him in the same.]

GLENDOWER. She's desperate here ; a peevish self-  
will'd harlotry, one that no persuasion can do good  
upon. [She speaks to MORTIMER in Welsh.]

MORTIMER. I understand thy looks : that pretty  
Welsh 200

Which thou pour'st down from these swelling heavens  
I am too perfect in ; and, but for shame,  
In such a parley would I answer thee. [She speaks again. 204  
I understand thy kisses and thou mine,

And that 's a feeling disputation :  
But I will never be a truant, love,  
Till I have learn'd thy language ; for thy tongue  
Makes Welsh as sweet as ditties highly penn'd, 208  
Sung by a fair queen in a summer's bower,

With ravishing division, to her lute.

GLENDOWER. Nay, if you melt, then will she run mad.

[She speaks again.

MORTIMER. O! I am ignorance itself in this. 217

GLENDOWER. She bids you

Upon the wanton rushes lay you down

And rest your gentle head upon her lap,

And she will sing the song that pleaseth you, 218

And on your eyelids crown the god of sleep,

Charming your blood with pleasing heaviness,

Making such difference 'twixt wake and sleep

As is the difference between day and night 220

The hour before the heavenly-harness'd team

Begins his golden progress in the east.

MORTIMER. With all my heart I'll sit and hear her sing :

By that time will our book, I think, be drawn. 224

GLENDOWER. Do so ;

And those musicians that shall play to you

Hang in the air a thousand leagues from hence,

And straight they shall be here : sit, and attend. 228

HOTSPUR. Come, Kate, thou art perfect in lying down : come, quick, quick, that I may lay my head in thy lap.

LADY PERCY. Go, ye giddy goose. 232

[GLENDOWER speaks some Welsh words, and music is heard.

HOTSPUR. Now I perceive the devil understands Welsh ; And 'tis no marvel he is so humorous.

By'r lady, he's a good musician. 235

LADY PERCY. Then should you be nothing but

musical for you are altogether governed by humours.

Lie still, ye thief, and hear the lady sing in Welsh.

HOTSPUR. I had rather hear Lady, my brach, howl in Irish.

LADY PERCY. Wouldst thou have thy head broken ?

HOTSPUR. No. 241

LADY PERCY. Then be still.

HOTSPUR. Neither ; 'tis a woman's fault.

LADY PERCY. Now, God help thee ! 244

HOTSPUR. To the Welsh lady's bed.

LADY PERCY. What's that ?

HOTSPUR. Peace ! she sings.

[A Welsh song sung by LADY MORTIMER.

**HOTSPUR.** Come, Kate, I'll have your song too.

**LADY PERCY.** Not mine, in good sooth.

**HOTSPUR.** Not yours, 'in good sooth'! Heart! you swear like a comfit-maker's wife! Not you, 'in good sooth'; and, 'as true as I live'; and, 'as God shall mend me'; and, 'as sure as day': 253

And giv'st such sarcenet surety for thy oaths,

As if thou never walk'dst further than Finsbury.

Swear me, Kate, like a lady as thou art, 256

A good mouth-filling oath; and leave 'in sooth',

And such protest of pepper-gingerbread,

To velvet-guards and Sunday-citizens.

Come, sing. 260

**LADY PERCY.** I will not sing.

**HOTSPUR.** 'Tis the next way to turn tailor or be red-breast teacher. An the indentures be drawn, I'll away within these two hours; and so, come in when ye will. [Exit.

**GLENDOWER.** Come, come, Lord Mortimer; you are as slow

As hot Lord Percy is on fire to go.

By this our book is drawn; we will but seal, 268

And then to horse immediately.

**MORTIMER.** With all my heart. [Exeunt.

SCENE II.—London. A Room in the Palace.

Enter **KING HENRY**, the **PRINCE**, and **Lords**.

**KING HENRY.** Lords, give us leave; the Prince of Wales and I

Must have some private conference: but be near at hand, For we shall presently have need of you. [Exeunt Lords.

I know not whether God will have it so, 4

For some displeasing service I have done,

That, in his secret doom, out of my blood

He'll breed revengement and a scourge for me;

But thou dost in thy passages of life 8

Make me believe that thou art only mark'd

For the hot vengeance and the rod of heaven

To punish my mistreadings. Tell me else,

Could such inordinate and low desires, 12

Such poor, such bare, such lowd, such mean attempts,

Such barren pleasures, rude society,

SCENE II] KING HENRY THE FOURTH

As thou art match'd withal and grafted to,  
 Accompany the greatness of thy blood 16  
 And hold their level with thy princely heart?

PRINCE. So please your majesty, I would I could  
 Quit all offences with as clear excuse  
 As well as I am doubtless I can purge 20  
 Myself of many I am charg'd withal :  
 Yet such extenuation let me beg,  
 As, in reproof of many tales devis'd,  
 Which oft the ear of greatness needs must hear, 24  
 By smiling pick-thanks and base newsmongers,  
 I may, for some things true, wherein my youth  
 Hath faulty wander'd and irregular,  
 Find pardon on my true submission. 28

KING HENRY. God pardon thee ! yet let me wonder,  
 Harry,  
 At thy affections, which do hold a wing  
 Quite from the flight of all thy ancestors.  
 Thy place in council thou hast rudely lost, 32  
 Which by thy younger brother is supplied,  
 And art almost an alien to the hearts  
 Of all the court and princes of my blood.  
 The hope and expectation of thy time 36  
 Is ruin'd, and the soul of every man  
 Prophetically do forethink thy fall.  
 Had I so lavish of my presence been,  
 So common-hackney'd in the eyes of men, 40  
 So stale and cheap to vulgar company,  
 Opinion, that did help me to the crown,  
 Had still kept loyal to possession  
 And left me in reputeless banishment, 44  
 A fellow of no mark nor likelihood.  
 By being seldom seen, I could not stir,  
 But like a comet I was wonder'd at ;  
 That men would tell their children, ' This is he ; ' 48  
 Others would say, ' Where ? which is Bolingbroke ? '  
 And then I stole all courtesy from heaven,  
 And dress'd myself in such humility  
 That I did pluck allegiance from men's hearts, 52  
 Loud shouts and salutations from their mouths,  
 Even in the presence of the crowned king.  
 Thus did I keep my person fresh and new ;  
 My presence, like a robe pontifical, 56



Ne'er seen but wonder'd at : and so my state,  
 Seldom but sumptuous, showed like a feast,  
 And won by rareness such solemnity.  
 The skipping king, he ambled up and down 60  
 With shallow jesters and rash bavin wits,  
 Soon kindled and soon burnt ; carded his state,  
 Mingled his royalty with capering fools,  
 Had his great name profaned with their scorn, 64  
 And gave his countenance, against his name,  
 To laugh at gibling boys and stand the push  
 Of every beardless vain comparative ;  
 Grew a companion to the common streets, 68  
 Enfeoff'd himself to popularity ;  
 That, being daily swallow'd by men's eyes,  
 They surfeited with honey and began  
 To loathe the taste of sweetness, whereof a little 72  
 More than a little is by much too much.  
 So, when he had occasion to be seen,  
 He was but as the cuckoo is in June,  
 Heard, not regarded ; seen, but with such eyes 76  
 As, sick and blunted with community,  
 Afford no extraordinary gaze,  
 Such as is bent on sun-like majesty  
 When it shines seldom in admiring eyes ; 80  
 But rather drows'd and hung their eyelids down,  
 Slept in his face, and render'd such aspect  
 As cloudy men use to their adversaries,  
 Being with his presence glutted, gorg'd, and full. 84  
 And in that very line, Harry, stand'st thou ;  
 For thou hast lost thy princely privilege  
 With vile participation : not an eye  
 But is awearry of thy common sight, 88  
 Save mine, which hath desir'd to see thee more ;  
 Which now doth that I would not have it do,  
 Make blind itself with foolish tenderness.

PRINCE. I shall hereafter, my thrice gracious lord,  
 Be more myself.

KING HENRY. For all the world, 93  
 As thou art to this hour was Richard then  
 When I from France set foot at Ravenspurg ;  
 And even as I was then is Percy now. 96  
 Now, by my sceptre and my soul to boot,  
 He hath more worthy interest to the state

Than thou the shadow of succession ;  
 For of no right, nor colour like to right, 100  
 He doth fill fields with harness in the realm,  
 Turns head against the lion's armed jaws,  
 And, being no more in debt to years than thou,  
 Leads ancient lords and reverend bishops on 104  
 To bloody battles and to bruising arms.  
 What never-dying honour hath he got  
 Against renowned Douglas ! whose high deeds,  
 Whose hot incursions and great name in arms, 108  
 Holds from all soldiers chief majority,  
 And military title capital,  
 Through all the kingdoms that acknowledge Christ.  
 Thrice hath this Hotspur, Mars in swathing clothes,  
 This infant warrior, in his enterprises 113  
 Discomfited great Douglas ; ta'en him once,  
 Enlarged him and made a friend of him,  
 To fill the mouth of deep defiance up 116  
 And shake the peace and safety of our throne.  
 And what say you to this ? Percy, Northumberland,  
 The Archbishop's Grace of York, Douglas, Mortimer  
 Capitulate against us and are up. 120  
 But wherefore do I tell these news to thee ?  
 Why, Harry, do I tell thee of my foes,  
 Which art my near'st and dearest enemy ?  
 Thou that art like enough, through vassal fear, 124  
 Base inclination, and the start of spleen,  
 To fight against me under Percy's pay,  
 To dog his heels, and curtsy at his frowns,  
 To show how much thou art degenerate. 128

PRINCE. Do not think so ; you shall not find it so :  
 And God forgive them, that so much have sway'd  
 Your majesty's good thoughts away from me !  
 I will redeem all this on Percy's head, 132  
 And in the closing of some glorious day  
 Be bold to tell you that I am your son ;  
 When I will wear a garment all of blood  
 And stain my favours in a bloody mask, 136  
 Which, wash'd away, shall scour my shame with it :  
 And that shall be the day, whene'er it lights,  
 That this same child of honour and renown,  
 This gallant Hotspur, this all-praised knight, 140  
 And your unthought-of Harry chance to meet.

For every honour sitting on his helm,—  
 Would they were multitudes, and on my head  
 My shames redoubled !—for the time will come 144  
 That I shall make this northern youth exchange  
 His glorious deeds for my indignities.  
 Percy is but my factor, good my lord,  
 To engross up glorious deeds on my behalf ; 148  
 And I will call him to so strict account  
 That he shall render every glory up,  
 Yea, even the slightest worship of his time,  
 Or I will tear the reckoning from his heart. 152  
 This, in the name of God, I promise here :  
 The which, if he be pleas'd I shall perform,  
 I do beseech your majesty may save  
 The long-grown wounds of my intemperance : 156  
 If not, the end of life cancels all bands,  
 And I will die a hundred thousand deaths  
 Ere break the smallest parcel of this vow. 159

KING HENRY. A hundred thousand rebels die in this :  
 Thou shalt have charge and sovereign trust herein.

Enter SIR WALTER BLUNT.

How now, good Blunt ! thy looks are full of speed.

BLUNT. So hath the business that I come to speak of.  
 Lord Mortimer of Scotland hath sent word 164  
 That Douglas and the English rebels met,  
 The eleventh of this month at Shrewsbury.  
 A mighty and a fearful head they are,—  
 If promises be kept on every hand,— 168  
 As ever offer'd foul play in a state.

KING HENRY. The Earl of Westmoreland set forth  
 to-day,  
 With him my son, Lord John of Lancaster ;  
 For this advertisement is five days old. 172  
 On Wednesday next, Harry, you shall set forward ;  
 On Thursday we ourselves will march : our meeting  
 Is Bridgenorth ; and Harry, you shall march  
 Through Gloucestershire ; by which account, 176  
 Our business valued, some twelve days hence  
 Our general forces at Bridgenorth shall meet.  
 Our hands are full of business : let's away ;  
 Advantage feeds him fat while men delay. (Exeunt.)

SCENE III.—Eastcheap. A Room in the Boar's Head Tavern.

Enter FALSTAFF and BARDOLPH.

FALSTAFF. Bardolph, am I not fallen away vilely since this last action? do I not bate? do I not dwindle? Why, my skin hangs about me like an old lady's loose gown; I am withered like an old apple-john. Well, I'll repent, and that suddenly, while I am in some liking; I shall be out of heart shortly, and then I shall have no strength to repent. An I have not forgotten what the inside of a church is made of, I am a peppercorn, a brewer's horse: the inside of a church! Company, villanous company, hath been the spoil of me

BARDOLPH. Sir John, you are so fretful, you cannot live long. 12

FALSTAFF. Why, there is it: come, sing me a bawdy song; make me merry. I was as virtuously given as a gentleman need to be; virtuous enough: swore little; diced not above seven times a week; went to a bawdy-house not above once in a quarter—of an hour; paid money that I borrowed three or four times; lived well and in good compass; and now I live out of all order, out of all compass. 20

BARDOLPH. Why, you are so fat, Sir John, that you must needs be out of all compass, out of all reasonable compass, Sir John. 23

FALSTAFF. Do thou amend thy face, and I'll amend my life: thou art our admiral, thou bearest the lanthorn in the poop, but 'tis in the nose of thee: thou art the Knight of the Burning Lamp.

BARDOLPH. Why, Sir John, my face does you no harm. 29

FALSTAFF. No, I'll be sworn; I make as good use of it as many a man doth of a Death's head, or a memento mori: I never see thy face but I think upon hell-fire and Dives that lived in purple; for there he is in his robes, burning, burning. If thou wert any way given to virtue, I would swear by thy face; my oath should be, 'By this fire, that's God's angel': but thou art altogether given over, and wert indeed, but for the light in thy face, the son of utter darkness. When thou runnest up Gadshill in the night to catch my horse,

*if I did not think thou hadst been an ignis fatuus or a ball of wildfire, there's no purchase in money. O! thou art a perpetual triumph, an everlasting bonfire-light. Thou hast saved me a thousand marks in links and torches, walking with thee in the night betwixt tavern and tavern: but the sack that thou hast drunk me would have bought me lights as good cheap at the dearest chandler's in Europe. I have maintained that salamander of yours with fire any time this two-and-thirty years; God reward me for it!* 49

BARDOLPH. 'Sblood, I would my face were in your belly.

FALSTAFF. God-a-mercy! so should I be sure to be heart-burned.

Enter MISTRESS QUICKLY.

How now, Dame Partlet the hen! have you inquired yet who picked my pocket? 55

QUICKLY. Why, Sir John, what do you think, Sir John? Do you think I keep thieves in my house? I have searched, I have inquired, so has my husband, man by man, boy by boy, servant by servant: the tithe of a hair was never lost in my house before. 60

FALSTAFF. You lie, hostess: Bardolph was shaved and lost many a hair; and I'll be sworn my pocket was picked. Go to, you are a woman; go.

QUICKLY. Who, I? No; I defy thee: God's light! I was never called so in my own house before. 65

FALSTAFF. Go to, I know you well enough.

QUICKLY. No, Sir John; you do not know me, Sir John: I know you, Sir John: you owe me money, Sir John, and now you pick a quarrel to beguile me of it: I bought you a dozen of shirts to your back.

FALSTAFF. Dowlas, filthy dowlas: I have given them away to bakers' wives, and they have made bolters of them. 73

QUICKLY. Now, as I am true woman, holland of eight shillings an ell. You owe money here besides, Sir John, for your diet and by-drinkings, and money lent you, four-and-twenty pound. 77

FALSTAFF. He had his part of it; let him pay.

QUICKLY. He! alas! he is poor; he hath nothing.

FALSTAFF. How! poor? look upon his face; what call you rich? let them coin his nose, let them coin his

cheeks: I'll not pay a denier. What! will you make a younker of me? shall I not take mine ease in mine inn but I shall have my pocket picked? I have lost a seal-ring of my grandfather's worth forty mark. 85

QUICKLY. O Jesu! I have heard the prince tell him, I know not how oft, that that ring was copper.

FALSTAFF. How! the prince is a Jack, a sneak-cup; 'sblood! an he were here, I would cudgel him like a dog, if he would say so.

Enter the PRINCE and POINS, marching. FALSTAFF meets them, playing on his truncheon like a fife.

How now, lad! is the wind in that door, i' faith? must we all march? 92

BARDOLPH. Yea, two and two, Newgate fashion.

QUICKLY. My lord, I pray you, hear me.

PRINCE. What sayest thou, Mistress Quickly? How does thy husband? I love him well, he is an honest man. 97

QUICKLY. Good my lord, hear me.

FALSTAFF. Prithee, let her alone, and list to me.

PRINCE. What sayest thou, Jack? 100

FALSTAFF. The other night I fell asleep here behind the arras and had my pocket picked: this house is turned bawdy-house; they pick pockets.

PRINCE. What didst thou lose, Jack? 104

FALSTAFF. Wilt thou believe me, Hal? three or four bonds of forty pound a-piece, and a seal-ring of my grandfather's.

PRINCE. A trifle; some eight-penny matter. 108

QUICKLY. So I told him, my lord; and I said I heard your Grace say so: and, my lord, he speaks most vilely of you, like a foul-mouthed man as he is, and said he would cudgel you. 112

PRINCE. What! he did not?

QUICKLY. There's neither faith, truth, nor womanhood in me else.

FALSTAFF. There's no more faith in thee than in a stewed prune; nor no more truth in thee than in a drawn fox; and for womanhood, Maid Marian may be the deputy's wife of the ward to thee. Go, you thing, go. 120

QUICKLY. Say, what thing? what thing?

FALSTAFF. What thing ! why, a thing to thank God on. 123

QUICKLY. I am no thing to thank God on, I would thou shouldst know it ; I am an honest man's wife ; and, setting thy knighthood aside, thou art a knave to call me so. 127

FALSTAFF. Setting thy womanhood aside, thou art a beast to say otherwise.

QUICKLY. Say, what beast, thou knave thou ?

FALSTAFF. What beast ! why, an otter.

PRINCE. An otter, Sir John ! why, an otter ? 132

FALSTAFF. Why ? she's neither fish nor flesh ; a man knows not where to have her.

QUICKLY. Thou art an unjust man in saying so : thou or any man knows where to have me, thou knave thou !

PRINCE. Thou sayest true, hostess ; and he slanders thee most grossly. 139

QUICKLY. So he doth you, my lord ; and said this other day you ought him a thousand pound.

PRINCE. Sirrah ! do I owe you a thousand pound ?

FALSTAFF. A thousand pound, Hal ! a million : thy love is worth a million ; thou owest me thy love. 144

QUICKLY. Nay, my lord, he called you Jack, and said he would cudgel you.

FALSTAFF. Did I, Bardolph ?

BARDOLPH. Indeed, Sir John, you said so. 148

FALSTAFF. Yea ; if he said my ring was copper.

PRINCE. I say 'tis copper : darest thou be as good as thy word now ?

FALSTAFF. Why, Hal, thou knowest, as thou art but man, I dare ; but as thou art prince, I fear thee as I fear the roaring of the lion's whelp.

PRINCE. And why not as the lion ? 155

FALSTAFF. The king himself is to be feared as the lion : dost thou think I'll fear thee as I fear thy father ? nay, an I do, I pray God my girdle break !

PRINCE. O ! if it should, how would thy guts fall about thy knees. But, sirrah, there's no room for faith, truth, or honesty in this bosom of thine ; it is all filled up with guts and midriff. Charge an honest woman with picking thy pocket ! Why, thou whoreson, impudent, embossed rascal, if there were any thing in thy

pocket but tavern reckonings, memorandums of bawdy-houses, and one poor pennyworth of sugar-candy to make thee long-winded ; if thy pocket were enriched with any other injuries but these, I am a villain. And yet you will stand to it, you will not pocket up wrong. Art thou not ashamed ? 170

FALSTAFF. Dost thou hear, Hal ? thou knowest in the state of innocency Adam fell ; and what should poor Jack Falstaff do in the days of villany ? Thou seest I have more flesh than another man, and therefore more frailty. You confess then, you picked my pocket ?

PRINCE. It appears so by the story. 176

FALSTAFF. Hostess, I forgive thee. Go make ready breakfast ; love thy husband, look to thy servants, cherish thy guests : thou shalt find me tractable to any honest reason : thou seest I am pacified. Still ! Nay prithee, be gone. [Exit MISTRESS QUICKLY.] Now, Hal, to the news at court : for the robbery, lad, how is that answered ?

PRINCE. O ! my sweet beef, I must still be good angel to thee : the money is paid back again. 185

FALSTAFF. O ! I do not like that paying back ; 'tis a double labour.

PRINCE. I am good friends with my father and may do anything.

FALSTAFF. Rob me the exchequer the first thing thou dost, and do it with unwashed hands too.

BARDOLPH. Do, my lord. 192

PRINCE. I have procured thee, Jack, a charge of foot.

FALSTAFF. I would it had been of horse. Where shall I find one that can steal well ? O ! for a fine thief, of the age of two-and-twenty, or thereabouts ; I am heinously unprovided. Well, God be thanked for these rebels ; they offend none but the virtuous : I laud them, I praise them.

PRINCE. Bardolph ! 200

BARDOLPH. My lord ?

PRINCE. Go bear this letter to Lord John of Lancaster,

To my brother John ; this to my Lord of Westmoreland. Go, Poins, to horse, to horse ! for thou and I 204  
Have thirty miles to ride ere dinner-time.

Jack, meet me to-morrow in the Temple-hall



At two o'clock in the afternoon :

There shalt thou know thy charge, and there receive  
Money and order for their furniture. 209

The land is burning ; Percy stands on high ;  
And either we or they must lower lie.

[Exeunt the PRINCE, POINS, and BARDOLPH.]

FALSTAFF. Rare words ! brave world ! Hostess, my  
breakfast ; come ! 212

O ! I could wish this tavern were my drum. [Exit.

## ACT IV.

SCENE I.—The Rebel Camp near Shrewsbury.

Enter HOTSPUR, WORCESTER, and DOUGLAS.

HOTSPUR. Well said, my noble Scot : if speaking truth  
In this fine age were not thought flattery,  
Such attribution should the Douglas have,  
As not a soldier of this season's stamp 4  
Should go so general current through the world.

By God, I cannot flatter ; do defy  
The tongues of soothers ; but a braver place  
In my heart's love hath no man than yourself. 8  
Nay, task me to my word ; approve me, lord.

DOUGLAS. Thou art the king of honour :  
No man so potent breathes upon the ground  
But I will beard him.

HOTSPUR. Do so, and 'tis well 12

Enter a Messenger, with letters.

What letters hast thou there ? [To DOUGLAS.] I can but  
thank you.

MESSENGER. These letters come from your father.

HOTSPUR. Letters from him ! why comes he not him-  
self ?

MESSENGER. He cannot come, my lord : he's grievous  
sick. 16

HOTSPUR. 'Zounds ! how has he the leisure to be sick  
In such a justling time ? Who leads his power ?  
Under whose government come they along ?

MESSENGER. His letters bear his mind, not I, my lord.

WORCESTER. I prithee, tell me, doth he keep his bed ?

MESSINGER. He did, my lord, four days ere I set forth ;

And at the time of my departure thence

He was much fear'd by his physicians. 24

WORCESTER. I would the state of time had first been whole

Ere he by sickness had been visited :

His health was never better worth than now.

HOTSPUR. Sick now ! droop now ! this sickness doth infect 28

The very life-blood of our enterprise ;

'Tis catching hither, even to our camp.

He writes me here, that inward sickness——

And that his friends by deputation could not 32

So soon be drawn ; nor did he think it meet

To lay so dangerous and dear a trust

On any soul remov'd but on his own.

Yet doth he give us bold advertisement, 36

That with our small conjunction we should on,

To see how fortune is dispos'd to us ;

For, as he writes, there is no quailing now,

Because the king is certainly possess'd 40

Of all our purposes. What say you to it ?

WORCESTER. Your father's sickness is a maim to us.

HOTSPUR. A perilous gash, a very limb lopp'd off :

And yet, in faith, 'tis not ; his present want 44

Seems more than we shall find it. Were it good

To set the exact wealth of all our states

All at one cast ? to set so rich a main

On the nice hazard of one doubtful hour ? 48

It were not good ; for therein should we read

The very bottom and the soul of hope,

The very list, the very utmost bound

Of all our fortunes.

DOUGLAS. Faith, and so we should ; 52

Where now remains a sweet reversion :

We may boldly spend upon the hope of what

Is to come in :

A comfort of retirement lives in this. 56

HOTSPUR. A rendezvous, a home to fly unto,

If that the devil and mischance look big

Upon the maidenhead of our affairs.

WORCESTER. But yet, I would your father had been here. 60

The quality and hair of our attempt  
 Brooks no division. It will be thought  
 By some, that know not why he is away,  
 That wisdom, loyalty, and mere dislike 64  
 Of our proceedings, kept the earl from hence.  
 And think how such an apprehension  
 May turn the tide of fearful faction  
 And breed a kind of question in our cause ; 68  
 For well you know we of the offering side  
 Must keep aloof from strict arbitrement,  
 And stop all sight-holes, every loop from whence  
 The eye of reason may pry in upon us : 72  
 This absence of your father's draws a curtain,  
 That shows the ignorant a kind of fear  
 Before not dreamt of.

HOTSPUR. You strain too far.  
 I rather of his absence make this use : 76  
 It lends a lustre and more great opinion,  
 A larger dare to our great enterprise,  
 Than if the earl were here ; for men must think,  
 If we without his help can make a head 80  
 To push against the kingdom, with his help  
 We shall o'erturn it topsy-turvy down.  
 Yet all goes well, yet all our joints are whole.

DOUGLAS. As heart can think : there is not such a  
 word 84  
 Spoke of in Scotland as this term of fear.

Enter SIR RICHARD VERNON.

HOTSPUR. My cousin Vernon ! welcome, by my soul.  
 VERNON. Pray God my news be worth a welcome, lord.  
 The Earl of Westmoreland, seven thousand strong,  
 Is marching hitherwards ; with him Prince John. 89

HOTSPUR. No harm : what more ?

VERNON. And further, I have learn'd,  
 The king himself in person is set forth,  
 Or hitherwards intended speedily, 92  
 With strong and mighty preparation.

HOTSPUR. He shall be welcome too. Where is his son,  
 The nimble-footed madcap Prince of Wales,  
 And his comrades, that daff'd the world aside, 96

SCENE I.] KING HENRY THE FOURTH

And bid it pass ?

VERNON. All furnish'd, all in arms,  
All plum'd like estridges that wing the wind,  
Baited like eagles having lately bath'd,  
Glittering in golden coats, like images, 100  
As full of spirit as the month of May,  
And gorgeous as the sun at midsummer,  
Wanton as youthful goats, wild as young bulls.

I saw young Harry, with his beaver on, 104  
His cushes on his thighs, gallantly arm'd,  
Rise from the ground like feather'd Mercury,  
And vaulted with such ease into his seat,  
As if an angel dropp'd down from the clouds, 108  
To turn and wind a fiery Pegasus  
And witch the world with noble horsemanship.

HOTSPUR. No more, no more : worse than the sun in  
March 111

This praise doth nourish agues. Let them come ;  
They come like sacrifices in their trim,  
And to the fire-ey'd maid of smoky war  
All hot and bleeding will we offer them :  
The mailed Mars shall on his altar sit 116  
Up to the ears in blood. I am on fire  
To hear this rich reprisal is so nigh  
And yet not ours. Come, let me taste my horse,  
Who is to bear me like a thunderbolt 120  
Against the bosom of the Prince of Wales :  
Harry to Harry shall, hot horse to horse,  
Meet and ne'er part till one drop down a corse.  
O ! that Glendower were come.

VERNON. There is more news :  
I learn'd in Worcester, as I rode along, 125  
He cannot draw his power these fourteen days.

DOUGLAS. That 's the worst tidings that I hear of yet.

WORCESTER. Ay, by my faith, that bears a frosty  
sound. 128

HOTSPUR. What may the king's whole battle reach  
unto ?

VERNON. To thirty thousand.

HOTSPUR. Forty let it be :  
My father and Glendower being both away,  
The powers of us may serve so great a day. 132  
Come, let us take a muster speedily :

Doomsday is near ; die all, die merrily.

DOUGLAS. Talk not of dying : I am out of fear  
Of death or death's hand for this one half year. [Exeunt.

SCENE II.—A public Road near Coventry.

Enter FALSTAFF and BARDOLPH.

FALSTAFF. Bardolph, get thee before to Coventry ;  
fill me a bottle of sack : our soldiers shall march through ;  
we'll to Sutton-Co'fil' to-night.

BARDOLPH. Will you give me money, captain ? 4

FALSTAFF. Lay out, lay out.●

BARDOLPH. This bottle makes an angel.

FALSTAFF. An if it do, take it for thy labour ; and  
if it make twenty, take them all, I'll answer the coinage.  
Bid my Lieutenant Peto meet me at the town's end.

BARDOLPH. I will, captain : farewell. [Exit.

FALSTAFF. If I be not ashamed of my soldiers, I am  
a soused gurnet. I have misused the king's press  
damnably. I have got, in exchange of a hundred  
and fifty soldiers, three hundred and odd pounds.  
I press me none but good householders, yeomen's sons ;  
inquire me out contracted bachelors, such as had been  
asked twice on the banns ; such a commodity of warm  
slaves, as had as lief hear the devil as a drum ; such  
as fear the report of a caliver worse than a struck fowl  
or a hurt wild-duck. I pressed me none but such toasts-  
and-butter, with hearts in their bellies no bigger than  
pins' heads, and they have bought out their services ;  
and now my whole charge consists of ancients, corporals,  
lieutenants, gentlemen of companies, slaves as ragged  
as Lazarus in the painted cloth, where the glutton's  
dogs licked his sores ; and such as indeed were never  
soldiers, but discarded unjust serving-men, younger  
sons to younger brothers, revolted tapsters and ostlers  
trade-fallen, the cankers of a calm world and a long  
peace ; ten times more dishonourable ragged than an  
old faced ancient : and such have I, to fill up the  
rooms of them that have bought out their services,  
that you would think that I had a hundred and fifty  
tattered prodigals, lately come from swine-keeping, from  
eating draff and husks. A mad fellow met me on the  
way and told me I had unloaded all the gibbets and

pressed the dead bodies. No eye hath seen such scare-crows. I'll not march through Coventry with them, that's flat : nay, and the villains march wide betwixt the legs, as if they had gyves on ; for, indeed I had the most of them out of prison. There's but a shirt and a half in all my company ; and the half shirt is two napkins tacked together and thrown over the shoulders like a herald's coat without sleeves ; and the shirt, to say the truth, stolen from my host at Saint Alban's, or the red-nose inn-keeper of Daventry. But that's all one ; they'll find linen enough on every hedge. 47

Enter the PRINCE and WESTMORELAND.

PRINCE. How now, blown Jack ! how now, quilt !

FALSTAFF. What, Hal ! How now, mad wag ! what a devil dost thou in Warwickshire ? My good Lord of Westmoreland, I cry you mercy : I thought your honour had already been at Shrewsbury. 52

WESTMORELAND. Faith, Sir John, 'tis more than time that I were there, and you too ; but my powers are there already. The king, I can tell you, looks for us all : we must away all night. 56

FALSTAFF. Tut, never fear me : I am as vigilant as a cat to steal cream.

PRINCE. I think to steal cream indeed, for thy theft hath already made thee butter. But tell me, Jack, whose fellows are these that come after ? 61

FALSTAFF. Mine, Hal, mine.

PRINCE. I did never see such pitiful rascals.

FALSTAFF. Tut, tut ; good enough to toss ; food for powder, food for powder ; they'll fill a pit as well as better : tush, man, mortal men, mortal men.

WESTMORELAND. Ay, but, Sir John, methinks they are exceeding poor and bare ; too beggarly. 68

FALSTAFF. Faith, for their poverty, I know not where they had that ; and for their bareness, I am sure they never learned that of me.

PRINCE. No, I'll be sworn ; unless you call three fingers on the ribs bare. But sirrah, make haste : Percy is already in the field.

FALSTAFF. What, is the king encamped ?

WESTMORELAND. He is, Sir John : I fear we shall stay too long. 77

**FALSTAFF.** Well,  
To the latter end of a fray and the beginning of a feast  
Fits a dull fighter and a keen guest. [Exeunt.]

SCENE III.—The Rebel Camp near Shrewsbury.

Enter **HOTSPUR**, **WORCESTER**, **DOUGLAS**, and **VERNON**.

**HOTSPUR.** We'll fight with him to-night.

**WORCESTER.** It may not be.

**DOUGLAS.** You give him then advantage.

**VERNON.** Not a whit.

**HOTSPUR.** Why say you so ? Looks he not for supply ?

**VERNON.** So do we.

**HOTSPUR.** His is certain, ours is doubtful. 4

**WORCESTER.** Good cousin, be advis'd : stir not to-night.

**VERNON.** Do not, my lord.

**DOUGLAS.** You do not counsel well :  
You speak it out of fear and cold heart.

**VERNON.** Do me no slander, Douglas : by my life,—  
And I dare well maintain it with my life,— 9

If well-respected honour bid me on,  
I hold as little counsel with weak fear  
As you, my lord, or any Scot that this day lives : 12  
Let it be seen to-morrow in the battle  
Which of us fears.

**DOUGLAS.** Yea, or to-night.

**VERNON.** Content.

**HOTSPUR.** To-night, say I. 15

**VERNON.** Come, come, it may not be. I wonder much,  
Being men of such great leading as you are,  
That you foresee not what impediments  
Drag back our expedition : certain horse  
Of my cousin Vernon's are not yet come up : 20  
Your uncle Worcester's horse came but to-day ;  
And now their pride and mettle is asleep,  
Their courage with hard labour tame and dull,  
That not a horse is half the half of himself. 24

**HOTSPUR.** So are the horses of the enemy  
In general, journey-bated and brought low :  
The better part of ours are full of rest.

**WORCESTER.** The number of the king exceedeth ours :  
For God's sake, cousin, stay till all come in. 29

[The trumpet sounds a parley.]

Enter SIR WALTER BLUNT.

BLUNT. I come with gracious offers from the king,  
If you vouchsafe me hearing and respect.

HOTSPUR. Welcome, Sir Walter Blunt ; and would to  
God 32

You were of our determination !  
Some of us love you well ; and even those some  
Envy your great deservings and good name,  
Because you are not of our quality, 36  
But stand against us like an enemy.

BLUNT. And God defend but still I should stand so,  
So long as out of limit and true rule  
You stand against anointed majesty. 40  
But, to my charge. The king hath sent to know  
The nature of your griefs, and whereupon  
You conjure from the breast of civil peace  
Such bold hostility, teaching his duteous land 44  
Audacious cruelty. If that the king  
Have any way your good deserts forgot,—  
Which he confesseth to be manifold,—  
He bids you name your griefs ; and with all speed  
You shall have your desires with interest, 49  
And pardon absolute for yourself and these  
Herein misled by your suggestion.

HOTSPUR. The king is kind ; and well we know the  
king 52

Knows at what time to promise, when to pay.  
My father and my uncle and myself  
Did give him that same royalty he wears ;  
And when he was not six-and-twenty strong, 56  
Sick in the world's regard, wretched and low,  
A poor unminded outlaw sneaking home,  
My father gave him welcome to the shore ;  
And when he heard him swear and vow to God 60  
He came but to be Duke of Lancaster,  
To sue his livery and beg his peace,  
With tears of innocency and terms of zeal,  
My father, in kind heart and pity mov'd, 64  
Swore him assistance and perform'd it too.  
Now when the lords and barons of the realm  
Perceiv'd Northumberland did lean to him,  
The more and less came in with cap and knee ; 68



Met him in boroughs, cities, villages,  
 Attended him on bridges, stood in lanes,  
 Laid gifts before him, proffer'd him their oaths,  
 Gave him their heirs as pages, follow'd him 72  
 Even at the heels in golden multitudes.  
 He presently, as greatness knows itself,  
 Steps me a little higher than his vow  
 Made to my father, while his blood was poor, 76  
 Upon the naked shore at Ravenspurgh ;  
 And now, forsooth, takes on him to reform  
 Some certain edicts and some strait decrees  
 That lie too heavy on the commonwealth, 80  
 Cries out upon abuses, seems to weep  
 Over his country's wrongs ; and by this face,  
 This seeming brow of justice, did he win,  
 The hearts of all that he did angle for ; 84  
 Proceeded further ; cut me off the heads  
 Of all the favourites that the absent king  
 In deputation left behind him here,  
 When he was personal in the Irish war. 88

BLUNT. Tut, I came not to hear this.

HOTSPUR.

Then to the point.

In short time after, he depos'd the king ;  
 Soon after that, depriv'd him of his life ;  
 And, in the neck of that, task'd the whole state ; 92  
 To make that worse, suffer'd his kinsman March—  
 Who is, if every owner were well plac'd,  
 Indeed his king—to be engag'd in Wales,  
 There without ransom to lie forfeited ; 96  
 Disgrac'd me in my happy victories ;  
 Sought to entrap me by intelligence ;  
 Rated my uncle from the council-board ;  
 In rage dismiss'd my father from the court ; 100  
 Broke oath on oath, committed wrong on wrong ;  
 And in conclusion drove us to seek out  
 This head of safety ; and withal to pry  
 Into his title, the which we find 104  
 Too indirect for long continuance.

BLUNT. Shall I return this answer to the king ?

HOTSPUR. Not so, Sir Walter : we'll withdraw awhile.  
 Go to the king ; and let there be impawn'd 106  
 Some surety for a safe return again,  
 And in the morning early shall my uncle

Bring him our purposes ; and so farewell.

BLUNT. I would you would accept of grace and love.

HOTSPUR. And may be so we shall.

BLUNT. Pray God, you do !

[Exit.

SCENE IV.—York. A Room in the ARCHBISHOP'S Palace.

Enter the ARCHBISHOP OF YORK and SIR MICHAEL.

ARCHBISHOP. Hie, good Sir Michael ; bear this sealed brief

With winged haste to the lord marshal ;  
This to my cousin Scroop, and all the rest  
To whom they are directed. If you knew  
How much they do import, you would make haste. 4

SIR MICHAEL. My good lord,  
I guess their tenour.

ARCHBISHOP. Like enough you do.  
To-morrow, good Sir Michael, is a day 8  
Wherein the fortune of ten thousand men  
Must bide the touch ; for, sir, at Shrewsbury,  
As I am truly given to understand,  
The king with mighty and quick-raised power 12  
Meets with Lord Harry : and, I fear, Sir Michael,  
What with the sickness of Northumberland,—  
Whose power was in the first proportion,—  
And what with Owen Glendower's absence thence,  
Who with them was a rated sinew too, 17  
And comes not in, o'er-ru'd by prophecies,—  
I fear the power of Percy is too weak  
To wage an instant trial with the king. 20

SIR MICHAEL. Why, my good lord, you need not fear :  
There is the Douglas and Lord Mortimer.

ARCHBISHOP. No, Mortimer is not there.

SIR MICHAEL. But there is Mordake, Vernon, Lord  
Harry Percy, 24  
And there's my Lord of Worcester, and a head  
Of gallant warriors, noble gentlemen.

ARCHBISHOP. And so there is ; but yet the king hath  
drawn  
The special head of all the land together : 28  
The Prince of Wales, Lord John of Lancaster,  
The noble Westmoreland, and warlike Blunt ;  
And many moe corrivals and dear men

Of estimation and command in arms. 32

SIR MICHAEL. Doubt not, my lord, they shall be well oppos'd.

ARCHBISHOP. I hope no less, yet needful 'tis to fear ;  
And, to prevent the worst, Sir Michael, speed :

For if Lord Percy thrive not, ere the king 36

Dismiss his power, he means to visit us,

For he hath heard of our confederacy,

And 'tis but wisdom to make strong against him :

Therefore make haste. I must go write again 40

To other friends ; and so farewell, Sir Michael. [Exeunt.]

## ACT V.

SCENE I.—The KING's Camp near Shrewsbury.

Enter KING HENRY, the PRINCE, JOHN OF LANCASTER, SIR  
WALTER BLUNT, and SIR JOHN FALSTAFF.

KING HENRY. How bloodily the sun begins to peer  
Above yon busky hill ! the day looks pale  
At his distemperature.

PRINCE. The southern wind  
Doth play the trumpet to his purposes, 4  
And by his hollow whistling in the leaves  
Foretells a tempest and a blustering day.

KING HENRY. Then with the losers let it sympathize,  
For nothing can seem foul to those that win. 8

[Trumpet sounds.]

Enter WORCESTER and VERNON.

How now, my Lord of Worcester ! 'tis not well  
That you and I should meet upon such terms  
As now we meet. You have deceiv'd our trust,  
And made us doff our easy robes of peace, 12  
To crush our old limbs in ungentle steel :  
This is not well, my lord ; this is not well.  
What say you to it ? will you again unknit  
This churlish knot of all-aborred war, 16  
And move in that obedient orb again  
Where you did give a fair and natural light,  
And be no more an exhal'd meteor,  
A prodigy of fear and a portent 20  
Of broached mischief to the unborn times ?

WORCESTER. Hear me, my liege.  
For mine own part, I could be well content  
To entertain the lag-end of my life  
With quiet hours ; for I do protest  
I have not sought the day of this dislike.

24

KING HENRY. You have not sought it ! how comes it,  
then ?

FALSTAFF. Rebellion lay in his way, and he found it.

PRINCE. Peace, chewet, peace !

29

WORCESTER. It pleas'd your majesty to turn your  
looks

Of favour from myself and all our house ;  
And yet I must remember you, my lord,  
We were the first and dearest of your friends.

32

For you my staff of office did I break  
In Richard's time ; and posted day and night  
To meet you on the way, and kiss your hand,  
When yet you were in place and in account  
Nothing so strong and fortunate as I.

36

It was myself, my brother, and his son,  
That brought you home and boldly did outdare  
The dangers of the time. You swore to us,  
And you did swear that oath at Doncaster,  
That you did nothing purpose 'gainst the state,  
Nor claim no further than your new-fall'n right,  
The seat of Gaunt, dukedom of Lancaster.

40

44

To this we swore our aid : but, in short space  
It rain'd down fortune showering on your head,  
And such a flood of greatness fell on you,  
What with our help, what with the absent king,  
What with the injuries of a wanton time,  
The seeming sufferances that you had borne,  
And the contrarious winds that held the king

48

52

So long in his unlucky Irish wars,  
That all in England did repute him dead :  
And from this swarm of fair advantages  
You took occasion to be quickly woo'd  
To gripe the general sway into your hand ;  
Forgot your oath to us at Doncaster ;  
And being fed by us you us'd us so

56

As that ungentle gull, the cuckoo's bird,  
Useth the sparrow : did oppress our nest,  
Grew by our feeding to so great a bulk

60

That even our love durst not come near your sight  
 For fear of swallowing ; but with nimble wing 64  
 We were enforc'd, for safety's sake, to fly  
 Out of your sight and raise this present head ;  
 Whereby we stand opposed by such means  
 As you yourself have forg'd against yourself 68  
 By unkind usage, dangerous countenance,  
 And violation of all faith and troth  
 Sworn to us in your younger enterprise.

KING HENRY. These things indeed you have articulate, 72

Proclaim'd at market-crosses, read in churches,  
 To face the garment of rebellion  
 With some fine colour that may please the eye  
 Of fickle changelings and poor discontents, 76  
 Which gape and rub the elbow at the news  
 Of hurlyburly innovation :  
 And never yet did insurrection want  
 Such water-colours to impaint his cause ; 80  
 Nor moody beggars, starving for a time  
 Of pellmell havoc and confusion.

PRINCE. In both our armies there is many a soul  
 Shall pay full dearly for this encounter, 84  
 If once they join in trial. Tell your nephew,  
 The Prince of Wales doth join with all the world  
 In praise of Henry Percy : by my hopes,  
 This present enterprise set off his head, 88  
 I do not think a braver gentleman,  
 More active-valiant or more valiant-young,  
 More daring or more bold, is now alive  
 To grace this latter age with noble deeds. 92  
 For my part, I may speak it to my shame,  
 I have a truant been to chivalry ;  
 And so I hear he doth account me too ;  
 Yet this before my father's majesty— 96  
 I am content that he shall take the odds  
 Of his great name and estimation,  
 And will, to save the blood on either side,  
 Try fortune with him in a single fight. 100

KING HENRY. And, Prince of Wales, so dare we venture thee,  
 Albeit considerations infinite  
 Do make against it. No, good Worcester, no,

We love our people well ; even those we love 104  
That are misled upon your cousin's part ;  
And, will they take the offer of our grace,  
Both he and they and you, yea, every man  
Shall be my friend again, and I'll be his. 108  
So tell your cousin, and bring me word  
What he will do ; but if he will not yield,  
Rebuke and dread correction wait on us,  
And they shall do their office. So, be gone : 112  
We will not now be troubled with reply ;  
We offer fair, take it advisedly.

[Exeunt WORCESTER and VERNON.]

PRINCE. It will not be accepted, on my life.  
The Douglas and the Hotspur both together 116  
Are confident against the world in arms.

KING HENRY. Hence, therefore, every leader to his  
charge ;  
For, on their answer, will we set on them ;  
And God befriend us, as our cause is just ! 120

[Exeunt KING HENRY, BLUNT, and JOHN OF LANCASTER.]

FALSTAFF. Hal, if thou see me down in the battle, and  
bestride me, so ; 'tis a point of friendship.

PRINCE. Nothing but a colossus can do thee that  
friendship. Say thy prayers, and farewell. 124

FALSTAFF. I would it were bed-time, Hal, and all  
well.

PRINCE. Why, thou owest God a death. [Exit.]

FALSTAFF. 'Tis not dye yet : I would be loath to  
pay him before his day. What need I be so forward  
with him that calls not on me ? Well, 'tis no matter ;  
honour pricks me on. Yea, but how if honour prick  
me off when I come on ? how then ? Can honour set  
to a leg ? No. Or an arm ? No. Or take away  
the grief of a wound ? No. Honour hath no skill in  
surgery then ? No. What is honour ? a word. What  
is that word, honour ? Air. A trim reckoning ! Who  
hath it ? he that died o' Wednesday. Doth he feel it ?  
No. Doth he hear it ? No. It is insensible, then ?  
Yea, to the dead. But will it not live with the living ?  
No. Why ? Detraction will not suffer it. Therefore  
I'll none of it : honour is a mere scutcheon ; and so ends  
my catechism. [Exit.]

SCENE II.—The Rebel Camp near Shrewsbury.

Enter WORCESTER and VERNON.

WORCESTER. O, no ! my nephew must not know, Sir Richard,

The liberal kind offer of the king.

VERNON. 'Twere best he did.

WORCESTER. Then are we all undone.

It is not possible, it cannot be, 4

The king should keep his word in loving us ;

He will suspect us still, and find a time

To punish this offence in other faults :

Suspicion all our lives shall be stuck full of eyes ; 8

For treason is but trusted like the fox,

Who, ne'er so tame, so cherish'd, and lock'd up,

Will have a wild trick of his ancestors.

Look how we can, or sad or merrily, 12

Interpretation will misquote our looks,

And we shall feed like oxen at a stall,  
The better cherish'd, still the nearer death.

My nephew's trespass may be well forgot, 16

It hath the excuse of youth and heat of blood ;

And an adopted name of privilege,

A hare-brain'd Hotspur, govern'd by a spleen.

All his offences live upon my head 20

And on his father's : we did train him on ;

And, his corruption being ta'en from us,

We, as the spring of all, shall pay for all.

Therefore, good cousin, let not Harry know 24

In any case the offer of the king.

VERNON. Deliver what you will, I'll say 'tis so.  
Here comes your cousin.

Enter HOTSPUR and DOUGLAS ; Officers and Soldiers behind.

HOTSPUR. My uncle is return'd : deliver up 28  
My Lord of Westmoreland. Uncle, what news ?

WORCESTER. The king will bid you battle presently.

DOUGLAS. Defy him by the Lord of Westmoreland.

HOTSPUR. Lord Douglas, go you and tell him so.

DOUGLAS. Marry, and shall, and very willingly. [Exit.

WORCESTER. There is no seeming mercy in the king.

HOTSPUR. Did you beg any ? God forbid ! 35

WORCESTER. I told him gently of our grievances,

Of his oath-breaking ; which he mended thus,  
By now forswearing that he is forsworn :  
He calls us rebels, traitors ; and will scourge  
With laughty arms this hateful name in us. 40

Re-enter DOUGLAS.

DOUGLAS. Arm, gentlemen ! to arms ! for I have  
thrown

A brave defiance in King Henry's teeth,  
And Westmoreland, that was engag'd, did bear it ;  
Which cannot choose but bring him quickly on. 44

WORCESTER. The Prince of Wales stepp'd forth be-  
fore the king,

And, nephew, challeng'd you to single fight.

HOTSPUR. O ! would the quarrel lay upon our heads,  
And that no man might draw short breath to-day 48  
But I and Harry Monmouth. Tell me, tell me,  
How show'd his tasking ? seem'd it in contempt ?

VERNON. No, by my soul ; I never in my life  
Did hear a challenge urg'd more modestly, 52

Unless a brother should a brother dare  
To gentle exercise and proof of arms.

He gave you all the duties of a man,  
Trimm'd up your praises with a princely tongue, 56

Spoke your deservings like a chronicle,  
Making you ever better than his praise,

By still dispraising praise valu'd with you ;  
And, which became him like a prince indeed, 60

He made a blushing cital of himself,  
And chid his truant youth with such a grace

As if he master'd there a double spirit  
Of teaching and of learning instantly. 64

There did he pause. But let me tell the world,  
If he outlive the envy of this day,

England did never owe so sweet a hope,  
So much misconstru'd in his wantonness. 68

HOTSPUR. Cousin, I think thou art enamoured  
On his follies : never did I hear

Of any prince so wild a libertine.  
But be he as he will, yet once ere night 72

I will embrace him with a soldier's arm,  
That he shall shrink under my courtesy.

Arm, arm, with speed ! And, fellows, soldiers, friends,



Better consider what you have to do, 76  
 Than I, that have not well the gift of tongue,  
 Can lift your blood up with persuasion.

Enter a Messenger.

MESSENGER. My lord, here are letters for you. 80

HOTSPUR. I cannot read them now.  
 O gentlemen ! the time of life is short ;  
 To spend that shortness basely were too long,  
 If life did ride upon a dial's point,  
 Still ending at the arrival of an hour. 84  
 An if we live, we live to tread on kings ;  
 If die, brave death, when princes die with us !  
 Now, for our consciences, the arms are fair,  
 When the intent of bearing them is just. 88

Enter another Messenger.

MESSENGER. My lord, prepare ; the king comes on  
 apace.

HOTSPUR. I thank him that he cuts me from my tale,  
 For I profess not talking. Only this,—  
 Let each man do his best : and here draw I 92  
 A sword, whose temper I intend to stain  
 With the best blood that I can meet withal  
 In the adventure of this perilous day.  
 Now, Esperance ! Percy ! and set on. 96  
 Sound all the lofty instruments of war,  
 And by that music let us all embrace ;  
 For, heaven to earth, some of us never shall  
 A second time do such a courtesy. 100

[The trumpets sound. They embrace, and exeunt.]

SCENE III.—Between the Camps.

Excursions and Parties fighting. Alarum to the Battle. Then  
 enter DOUGLAS and SIR WALTER BLUNT, meeting.

BLUNT. What is thy name, that in the battle thus  
 Thou crossest me ? what honour dost thou seek  
 Upon my head ?

DOUGLAS. Know then, my name is Douglas ;  
 And I do haunt thee in the battle thus 4  
 Because some tell me that thou art a king.

BLUNT. They tell thee true.

DOUGLAS. The Lord of Stafford dear to-day hath bought

Thy likeness ; for, instead of thee, King Harry, 8  
This sword hath ended him : so shall it thee,  
Unless thou yield thee as my prisoner.

BLUNT. I was not born a yielder, thou proud Scot ;  
And thou shalt find a king that will revenge 12  
Lord Stafford's death. [They fight, and BLUNT is slain.

Enter HOTSPUR.

HOTSPUR. O, Douglas ! hadst thou fought at Holme-  
don thus,  
I never had triumph'd upon a Scot.

DOUGLAS. All 's done, all 's won : here breathless lies  
the king. 16

HOTSPUR. Where ?

DOUGLAS. Here.

HOTSPUR. This, Douglas ! no ; I know this face full  
well ;

A gallant knight he was, his name was Blunt ; 20  
Sensibly furnish'd like the king himself.

DOUGLAS. A fool go with thy soul, whither it goes !  
A borrow'd title hast thou bought too dear :  
Why didst thou tell me that thou wert a king ? 24

HOTSPUR. The king hath many marching in his coats.

DOUGLAS. Now, by my sword, I will kill all his coats ;  
I'll murder all his wardrobe, piece by piece,  
Until I meet the king.

HOTSPUR. Up, and away ! 28  
Our soldiers stand full fairly for the day. [Exeunt.

Alarums. Enter FALSTAFF.

FALSTAFF. Though I could 'scape shot-free at London,  
I fear the shot here ; here 's no scoring but upon the  
pate. Soft ! who art thou ? Sir Walter Blunt : there 's  
honour for you ! here 's no vanity ! I am as hot as  
molten lead, and as heavy too : God keep lead out of  
me ! I need no more weight than mine own bowels.  
I have led my ragamuffins where they are peppered :  
there 's not three of my hundred and fifty left alive,  
and they are for the town's end, to beg during life.  
But who comes here ?

Enter the PRINCE.

PRINCE. What ! stand'st thou idle here ? lend me  
thy sword : 40

Many a nobleman lies stark and stiff  
Under the hoofs of vaunting enemies,  
Whose deaths are unreveng'd : prithee, lend me thy  
sword. 43

FALSTAFF. O Hal ! I prithee, give me leave to  
breathe awhile. Turk Gregory never did such deeds  
in arms as I have done this day. I have paid Percy,  
I have made him sure. 47

PRINCE. He is, indeed ; and living to kill thee. I  
prithee, lend me thy sword.

FALSTAFF. Nay, before God, Hal, if Percy be alive,  
thou gett'st not my sword ; but take my pistol, if thou  
wilt. 52

PRINCE. Give it me. What ! is it in the case ?

FALSTAFF. Ay, Hal ; 'tis hot, 'tis hot : there's that  
will sack a city. [The PRINCE draws out a bottle of sack.

PRINCE. What ! is 't a time to jest and dally now ?

[Throws it at him, and exit.

FALSTAFF. Well, if Percy be alive, I'll pierce him. If  
he do come in my way, so : if he do not, if I come in  
his willingly, let him make a carbonado of me. I like  
not such grinning honour as Sir Walter hath : give me  
life ; which if I can save, so ; if not, honour comes un-  
looked for, and there's an end. [Exit.

#### SCENE IV.—Another Part of the Field.

Alarums. Excursions. Enter KING HENRY, the PRINCE, JOHN  
OF LANCASTER, and WESTMORELAND.

KING HENRY. I prithee,  
Harry, withdraw thyself ; thou bleed'st too much.  
Lord John of Lancaster, go you with him.

LANCASTER. Not I, my lord, unless I did bleed too.

PRINCE. I beseech your majesty, make up, 5  
Lest your retirement do amaze your friends.

KING HENRY. I will do so.

My Lord of Westmoreland, lead him to his tent. 8

WESTMORELAND. Come, my lord, I'll lead you to your  
tent.

PRINCE. Lead me, my lord ? I do not need your help :  
And God forbid a shallow scratch should drive  
The Prince of Wales from such a field as this, 12  
Where stain'd nobility lies trodden on,

And rebels' arms triumph in massacres!

LANCASTER. We breathe too long: come, cousin  
Westmoreland,

Our duty this way lies: for God's sake, come. 16

[Exit JOHN OF LANCASTER and WESTMORELAND.]

PRINCE. By God, thou hast deceiv'd me, Lancaster;  
I did not think thee lord of such a spirit:

Before, I lov'd thee as a brother, John;  
But now, I do respect thee as my soul. 20

KING HENRY. I saw him hold Lord Percy at the point  
With lustier maintenance than I did look for  
Of such an ungrown warrior.

PRINCE. O! this boy 23  
Lends mettle to us all. [Exit.]

Alarums. Enter DOUGLAS.

DOUGLAS. Another king! they grow like Hydra's heads:  
I am the Douglas, fatal to all those

That wear those colours on them: what art thou,  
That counterfeit'st the person of a king? 28

KING HENRY. The king himself; who, Douglas, grieves  
at heart

So many of his shadows thou hast met  
And not the very king. I have two boys  
Seek Percy and thyself about the field: 32  
But, seeing thou fall'st on me so luckily,  
I will assay thee; so defend thyself.

DOUGLAS. I fear thou art another counterfeit;  
And yet, in faith, thou bear'st thee like a king: 36  
But mine I am sure thou art, whoe'er thou be,  
And thus I win thee.

[They fight. KING HENRY being in danger, re-enter the PRINCE.]

PRINCE. Hold up thy head, vile Scot, or thou art like  
Never to hold it up again! the spirits 40  
Of valiant Shirley, Stafford, Blunt, are in my arms:  
It is the Prince of Wales that threatens thee,  
Who never promiseth but he means to pay.

[They fight: DOUGLAS flies.]

Cheerly, my lord: how fares your Grace? 44  
Sir Nicholas Gawsey hath for succour sent,  
And so hath Clifton: I'll to Clifton straight.

KING HENRY. Stay, and breathe awhile.  
Thou hast redeem'd thy lost opinion, 48

And show'd thou mak'st some tender of my life,  
In this fair rescue thou hast brought to me.

PRINCE. O God ! they did me too much injury  
That ever said I hearken'd for your death. 52

If it were so, I might have let alone  
The insulting hand of Douglas over you ;  
Which would have been as speedy in your end  
As all the poisonous potions in the world, 56  
And sav'd the treacherous labour of your son.

KING HENRY. Make up to Clifton : I'll to Sir  
Nicholas Gawsey. [Exit.

Enter HOTSPUR.

HOTSPUR. If I mistake not, thou art Harry Monmouth.

PRINCE. Thou speak'st as if I would deny my name.

HOTSPUR. My name is Harry Percy.

PRINCE. Why, then, I see

A very valiant rebel of that name.

I am the Prince of Wales ; and think not, Percy,  
To share with me in glory any more : 64

Two stars keep not their motion in one sphere ;  
Nor can one England brook a double reign,  
Of Harry Percy and the Prince of Wales.

HOTSPUR. Nor shall it, Harry ; for the hour is come  
To end the one of us ; and would to God 69  
Thy name in arms were now as great as mine !

PRINCE. I'll make it greater ere I part from thee ;  
And all the budding honours on thy crest 72  
I'll crop, to make a garland for my head.

HOTSPUR. I can no longer brook thy vanities. [They fight.

Enter FALSTAFF.

FALSTAFF. Well said, Hal ! to it, Hal ! Nay, you shall  
find no boy's play here, I can tell you. 76

Re-enter DOUGLAS ; he fights with FALSTAFF, who falls down as if he  
were dead, and exit DOUGLAS. HOTSPUR is wounded, and falls.

HOTSPUR. O, Harry ! thou hast robb'd me of my youth.  
I better brook the loss of brittle life  
Than those proud titles thou hast won of me ; 79  
They wound my thoughts worse than thy sword my flesh :  
But thought's the slave of life, and life time's fool ;  
And time, that takes survey of all the world,  
Must have a stop. O ! I could prophesy,

But that the earthy and cold hand of death  
Lies on my tongue. No, Percy, thou art dust,  
And food for—

84

PRINCE. For worms, brave Percy. Fare thee well,  
great heart!

[Dies.

Ill-weav'd ambition, how much art thou shrunk!

88

When that this body did contain a spirit,

A kingdom for it was too small a bound;

But now, two paces of the vilest earth

Is room enough: this earth, that bears thee dead,

92

Bears not alive so stout a gentleman.

If thou wert sensible of courtesy,

I should not make so dear a show of zeal:

But let my favours hide thy mangled face,

96

And, even in thy behalf, I'll thank myself

For doing these fair rites of tenderness.

Adieu, and take thy praise with thee to heaven!

Thy ignominy sleep with thee in the grave,

100

But not remember'd in thy epitaph!

[He spies FALSTAFF on the ground.

What! old acquaintance! could not all this flesh

Keep in a little life? Poor Jack, farewell!

I could have better spar'd a better man.

104

O! I should have a heavy miss of thee

If I were much in love with vanity.

Death hath not struck so fat a deer to-day,

Though many dearer, in this bloody fray.

108

Embowell'd will I see thee by and by:

Till then in blood by noble Percy lie.

[Exit.

FALSTAFF. [Rising.] Embowell'd! if thou embowel me to-day, I'll give you leave to powder me and eat me too, to-morrow. 'Sblood! 'twas time to counterfeit, or that hot termagant Scot had paid me scot and lot too. Counterfeit? I lie, I am no counterfeit: to die, is to be a counterfeit; for he is but the counterfeit of a man, who hath not the life of a man; but to counterfeit dying, when a man thereby liveth, is to be no counterfeit, but the true and perfect image of life indeed. The better part of valour is discretion; in the which better part, I have saved my life. 'Zounds! I am afraid of this gunpowder Percy though he be dead: how, if he should counterfeit too and rise? By my faith, I am afraid he would prove the better counterfeit.

Therefore I'll make him sure ; yea, and I'll swear I killed him. Why may not he rise as well as I ? Nothing confutes me but eyes, and nobody sees me : therefore, sirrah [stabbing him], with a new wound in your thigh come you along with me. [He takes HOTSPUR on his back.]

Re-enter the PRINCE and JOHN OF LANCASTER.

PRINCE. Come, brother John ; full bravely hast thou flesh'd

Thy maiden sword.

LANCASTER. But, soft ! whom have we here ?  
Did you not tell me this fat man was dead ? 132

PRINCE. I did ; I saw him dead,  
Breathless and bleeding on the ground.  
Art thou alive ? or is it fantasy  
That plays upon our eyesight ? I prithee, speak ;  
We will not trust our eyes without our ears : 137  
Thou art not what thou seem'st.

FALSTAFF. No, that's certain ; I am not a double man : but if I be not Jack Falstaff, then am I a Jack. There is Percy [throwing the body down] : if your father will do me any honour, so ; if not, let him kill the next Percy himself. I look to be either earl or duke, I can assure you. 144

PRINCE. Why, Percy I killed myself, and saw thee dead.

FALSTAFF. Didst thou ? Lord, lord ! how this world is given to lying. I grant you I was down and out of breath, and so was he ; but we rose both at an instant, and fought a long hour by Shrewsbury clock. If I may be believed, so ; if not, let them that should reward valour bear the sin upon their own heads. I'll take it upon my death, I gave him this wound in the thigh : if the man were alive and would deny it, 'zounds, I would make him eat a piece of my sword. 154

LANCASTER. This is the strangest tale that e'er I heard.

PRINCE. This is the strangest fellow, brother John.  
Come, bring your luggage nobly on your back :  
For my part, if a lie may do thee grace, 158  
I'll gild it with the happiest terms I have.

[A retreat is sounded.]

The trumpet sounds retreat ; the day is ours.  
Come, brother, let us to the highest of the field,

SCENE IV] KING HENRY THE FOURTH

251

To see what friends are living, who are dead. 102

[Exeunt the PRINCE and JOHN OF LANCASTER.

FALSTAFF. I'll follow, as they say, for reward. He that rewards me, God reward him ! If I do grow great, I'll grow less ; for I'll purge, and leave sack, and live cleanly, as a nobleman should do. [Exit.

SCENE V.—Another Part of the Field.

The trumpets sound. Enter KING HENRY, the PRINCE, JOHN OF LANCASTER, WESTMORLAND, and Others, with WORCESTER and VERNON prisoners.

KING HENRY. Thus ever did rebellion find rebuke. Ill-spirited Worcester ! did we not send grace, Pardon, and terms of love to all of you ? And wouldst thou turn our offers contrary ? 4 Misuse the tenour of thy kinsman's trust ? Three knights upon our party slain to-day, A noble earl and many a creature else Had been alive this hour, 8 If like a Christian thou hadst truly borne Betwixt our armies true intelligence.

WORCESTER. What I have done my safety urg'd me to ; And I embrace this fortune patiently, 12 Since not to be avoided it falls on me.

KING HENRY. Bear Worcester to the death and Vernon too : Other offenders we will pause upon.

[Exeunt WORCESTER and VERNON, guarded.

How goes the field ? 16

PRINCE. The noble Scot, Lord Douglas, when he saw The fortune of the day quite turn'd from him, The noble Percy slain, and all his men Upon the foot of fear, fled with the rest ; 20 And falling from a hill he was so bruised That the pursuers took him. At my tent The Douglas is, and I beseech your Grace I may dispose of him.

KING HENRY. With all my heart. 24

PRINCE. Then, brother John of Lancaster, to you This honourable bounty shall belong. Go to the Douglas, and deliver him Up to his pleasure, ransomless, and free : 28



His valour shown upon our crests to-day  
Hath taught us how to cherish such high deeds,  
Even in the bosom of our adversaries.

LANCASTER. I thank your Grace for this high courtesy,  
Which I shall give away immediately. 33

KING HENRY. Then this remains, that we divide our  
power.

You, son John, and my cousin Westmoreland  
Towards York shall bend you with your dearest speed,  
To meet Northumberland and the prelate Scroop, 37  
Who, as we hear, are busily in arms :

Myself and you, son Harry, will towards Wales,  
To fight with Glendower and the Earl of March. 40

Rebellion in this land shall lose his sway,  
Meeting the check of such another day :

And since this business so fair is done,  
Let us not leave till all our own be won.

[Exeunt.]

**THE SECOND PART OF  
KING HENRY THE FOURTH**



# THE SECOND PART OF KING HENRY THE FOURTH

## INTRODUCTION

THE quarto of this play, which had been entered in the Stationers' Register '23 Augusti [1600]', was published in the same year for Andrew Wise and William Apsley with the following title: 'The Second part of Henrie the fourth, continuing to his death, and coronation of Henrie the fift. With the humours of sir Iohn Falstaffe and swaggering Pistoll. . . . Written by William Shakespeare.' No other quarto appeared. The folio (1623) text, which adds 171 lines and omits 39, was taken from an independent source. We have seen that there is no sufficient reason for believing that the play was written, as some critics suppose, previous to the entry of the First Part in the Stationers' Register (February 25, 1597-8); but its composition probably followed with little delay. We date it 1598. An allusion to Justice Silence occurs in Ben Jonson's *Every Man out of his Humour*, v. ii ('this is a kinsman to Justice Silence'). Nothing found in our play really determines its date. The lines v. ii. 48-9,

Not Amurath an Amurath succeeds,  
But Harry Harry,

probably refer to a cruel event in Turkish history of the year 1596, but we know that the play is at least as late as 1597, and the allusion serves no purpose in fixing the chronology. The quotations of 'swaggering' Pistol only show that some of the earlier Elizabethan dramas were not yet forgotten.

The sources are those which had been used for the First Part—Holinshed's *Chronicle* and the old play *The Famous Victories of Henry the Fifth*.

In the Introduction to the First Part something has

been said of the King and the turbulent leaders of the rebellion. But Shakespeare, as has been noticed in that Introduction, in his two plays of *Henry IV* fused together a history with a comedy of incomparable spirit. From the weary and anxious ruler of England, with his cold and resolute policy, we make escape to the tavern and the road, and are in company with King Falstaff and the disreputable minions who gather around his tavern throne. Shakespeare accepted in part the tradition of Prince Henry's riotous youth. In fact Henry's follies were, as Stubbs has described them in his *Constitutional History*, 'the frolics of a high-spirited young man, indulged in the open air of the town and camp.' The most specific charges against him, writes Mr. Kingsford in *The Dictionary of National Biography*, are that 'he was in his youth' (according to Thomas Elmham) 'a diligent follower of idle practices, much given to instruments of music, and fired with the torches of Venus herself'. It was also part of the tradition that 'as soon as he was crowned suddenly he was changed into a new man, and all his intent was to live virtuously'. His insolence to Gascoigne and his committal to prison are first mentioned in Sir Thomas Elyot's *The Governor* (1531); but Shakespeare probably accepted as sufficient the tradition as handed down in *The Famous Victories* or in Hall's *Chronicle*. The story may be discredited, and, as Mr. Kingsford notices, the incident (derived from the same old play) of Henry's bidding the Chief Justice still to bear 'the balance and the sword' is contrary to fact, for 'Gascoigne naturally vacated his office on the accession of a new King'. Gascoigne was summoned to the first parliament of Henry V, but his patent had already been determined by the death of Henry IV (see 'Sir William Gascoigne' in *D.N.B.*).

Shakespeare preserves his hero from any of the grosser follies attributed to his youth. He is a stranger to Mistress Doll Tearsheet until the moment when he sees her fondled by her 'little tidy Bartholomew boar-pig', Sir John. He gets matter for infinite mirth from a highway robbery, but it is by a robbery of the robbers, and he makes restitution of their coin to the lawful owners. Shakespeare goes farther, and even imperils

the character of the Prince in our eyes through his desire to do him honour. He rejects the tradition of a sudden conversion, and represents Henry in the midst of his frolics as holding in reserve his better and wiser self. We should not like to think that the Prince had deliberately planned to conceal his great qualities under a mask of supposed licentiousness in order that on a future day he might flash forth upon the world in the character of a reformed profligate. But Shakespeare has abundantly shown us that he is swung out of his orbit by the attraction of the greatest of humorists; that he is not, like Prince John, a mere inheritor of the colder qualities of his politic father, however he may choose to assign to his own consciousness certain politic reasons for his irregular conduct; that he is essentially a generous lover of mirth and the joy of youth; that he is never really stained by the practice of vice; and that the change which he contemplates is only a transit from the unchartered freedom of his early years to the grave responsibilities of manhood. Shakespeare admits that what the historian styles 'the frolics of a high-spirited young man' were unbecoming in one of his position; the Prince suffers genuine remorse when he reflects that he has given pain to the father whom in his heart he had always honoured. But Shakespeare will not admit that the Prince had ever been really false to his better nature, and he declares that it is possible to indulge in unauthorized ways the spirit of youthful gaiety without abandoning to folly one's central being. Was there, I have ventured to ask, a young fellow from Stratford, who married rashly and took to the London stage, of whom such things were true? However this may have been, the same high temper which led Prince Henry to Eastcheap sustained him and helped to put courage into the hearts of his soldiery on the eve of the great contest at Agincourt.

If Hal's follies need an apology, that apology is provided in the person of Falstaff. And Falstaff, by virtue of his age and his huge irresponsible humour, is precisely such a person as can never be the young Prince's boon companion and hail-fellow-well-met. At the best of his wit, Prince Henry is only one of the

minnows that play about the Triton. The Prince's comrade is Poins, and Shakespeare, had he pleased, could have raised the part of Poins into that of a more dazzling Mercutio, who might have become a real misleader of youth. But the part of Poins is comparatively insignificant; he and Hal are little more in relation to Falstaff than picadors who prick to its highest efforts the humour of their great antagonist in the encounters of mirth. Falstaff is a wonder and a delight to Prince Henry; but he has not given away his heart to that monarch of the tavern, nor perhaps has he given away his heart to any man. His largeness in later days is 'universal, like as the sun', but King Henry V is a king who has no favourite.

King Henry IV, bowed down by the weight of responsibility, is for ever labouring to meet the necessity of the hour. Falstaff, burdened with years and 'a tun of man', lives in a fortunate region where responsibility is unknown and the word 'necessity' has never once been heard. His is the absolute freedom; the weary weight of all this unintelligible world has never touched him. Age cannot wither him nor custom stale his infinite variety. What is poverty for him who has all Golconda in his wit? What is defeat, when he rises unsubduable to some more dazzling victory? He is a knight who can never be baffled, and whose prowess in his proper province is as splendid as that of his lean and heroic fellow of La Mancha. All dissonances are turned to triumphant march-music by Falstaff, all incongruities are harmonized. A play in ten acts is required to contain him, and, as Sir Walter Raleigh has said, there seems no reason why he should not go on for ever.

The most genial piece of eighteenth-century Shakespearean criticism is *An Essay on the Dramatic Character of Sir John Falstaff* by Maurice Morgann. The writer was at one time under-secretary of state to the Earl of Shelburne, and, though the fact has not, I believe, been hitherto recorded in print, he seems to have contemplated an edition of Shakespeare, making notes, with such a view, in at least one volume of the plays which is now in my possession. Morgann desired to prove that Falstaff is no coward by temperament or

## INTRODUCTION TO PART II

instinct, while yet he can act a cowardly part on calculation of its advantages. His 'Essay' dismounts the great machine Falstaff, takes it to pieces as far as this can be done by genial analysis, and puts it together again—with the pulse of the machine, humour, at the centre, as we see it in action on the stage. But few critics who have felt the mighty attraction of Sir John and have been drawn into the fascination of his atmosphere, have failed to write happily of the man and his genius. 'He manures and nourishes his mind with jests,' says Hazlitt, 'as he does his body with sack and sugar. He carves out his jokes, as he would a capon or a haunch of venison, where there is *cut and come again* ; and pours out upon them the oil of gladness. His tongue drops fatness, and in the chambers of his brain "it snows of meat and drink".' And the critic goes on to speak of Falstaff's masterly presence of mind, his absolute self-possession, which nothing can disturb.

And yet at the close of the play Shakespeare inflicts a mortal wound upon the hero of the tavern in whom he has made us delight. After his joyous and triumphant hours with Justice Shallow and Master Silence, the blow comes of a sudden ; the stroke is given by the hand of Prince Hal himself, now the crowned King of England—*et tu, Brute?*—and Falstaff, however gallantly he may try to pass it off, is for the first time disconcerted. Irresponsible humour is humbled and slain by remorseless fact. 'The king hath run bad humours on the knight ; that's the even of it,' as Nym afterwards testifies, and the great knight's heart, as Pistol has it, 'is fracted and corroborate.' Falstaff has to listen to an edifying lecture—

I know thee not, old man : fall to thy prayers ;  
How ill white hairs become a fool and jester ;

and, giving no opportunity for a reply, the King with his train sweeps past. Presently enters the Chief Justice, and in presence of the cold-blooded John of Lancaster, Falstaff is disgraced and carried to the Fleet. What is it to him, who could always shift for himself, that competence of life is allowed him at a distance of ten miles from the royal presence ? What is left for him but to fumble with the sheets, and play with flowers,



and smile upon his fingers' ends, and make a finer end an it had been any christom child ?

Dr. Bradley has published an admirable lecture on 'The Rejection of Falstaff', and finds himself forced to the conclusion that Shakespeare has missed what he aimed at ; that in this scene he has overshot the mark : 'He created so extraordinary a being, and fixed him so firmly on his intellectual throne, that when he sought to dethrone him he could not. The moment comes when we are to look on Falstaff in a serious light, and the comic hero is to figure as a baffled schemer ; but we cannot make the required change, either in our attitude or in our sympathies. We wish Henry a glorious reign and much joy of his crew of hypocritical politicians, lay and clerical ; but our hearts go with Falstaff to the Fleet, or, if necessary, to Arthur's bosom or wheresomever he is.'

And yet perhaps Hazlitt is a safer guide when, declaring that he could never forgive the Prince's treatment of Falstaff, he adds the words 'though perhaps Shakespeare knew what was best, according to the history, the nature of the times, and of the man'. Perhaps Shakespeare meant that our hearts should go with Falstaff to the Fleet, and meant also that our sense of what is right and inevitable should follow Henry to a region where a Falstaff became impossible. What can Henry do but save himself from the magic of that great magician ? Banish Jack he must, and as to the Fleet no word is spoken by Henry. Why may we not charitably suppose that John of Lancaster has added a new treachery to the damnable treachery by which he has betrayed the rebel leaders, and has rounded the Chief Justice in the ear ? That Shakespeare himself never discarded from his sympathies his incomparable jester is clear enough from the tear and the smile with which he recounts the story of his death.

The stage Falstaff of Shakespeare's day is said to have been the actor Lowin, then a youth, but this is probably an error ; he certainly took the part at a later date. Betterton, in Restoration days, appeared at different times both as Hotspur and as Falstaff, and was successful in both characters. The greatest eighteenth-century Falstaff was Quin, though he seems

to have been run close by Henderson. Once—we are reminded by Mr. Frank Marshall—the part of Falstaff was incongruously assumed by a woman, Mrs. Webb, whose ample figure suited the part. The experiment at the Haymarket in 1786 was made on the occasion of her benefit night, and was not repeated.

William Kenrick, a miscellaneous writer of the eighteenth century, had the audacity to attempt a continuation of *King Henry IV*. In 1760 his *Falstaff's Wedding* was published. Six years later an abridgement of his play was given once at Drury Lane. Garrick declined to risk a second performance of the piece.

## DRAMATIS PERSONAE

**RUMOUR**, the Presenter.

**KING HENRY THE FOURTH.**

**HENRY**, Prince of Wales; afterwards

**King Henry the Fifth.**

**THOMAS**, Duke of Clarence,

**JOHN OF LANCASTER**,

**HUMPHREY OF GLOUCESTER**,

**EARL OF WARWICK**,

**EARL OF WESTMORELAND**,

**EARL OF SURREY**,

**GOWER**,

**HARCOURT**,

**BLUNT**,

**LORD CHIEF JUSTICE** of the King's Bench.

**A Servant** of the Chief Justice.

**EARL OF NORTHUMBERLAND**,

**RICHARD SCROOP**, Archbishop  
of York,

**LORD MOWBRAY**,

**LORD HASTINGS**,

**LORD BARDOLPH**,

**SIR JOHN COLEVILE**,

**TRAVERS and MORTON**, Retainers of Northumberland.

**SIR JOHN FALSTAFF**.

**His Page**.

**BARDOLPH**.

**PISTOL**.

**POINS**.

**PETO**.

**SHALLOW and SILENCE**, Country Justices.

**DAVY**, Servant to Shallow.

**MOULDY, SHADOW, WART, FEEBLE, and BULLCAMP**, Recruits.

**FANG and SNARE**, Sheriff's Officers.

**A Porter**.

**A Dancer**, Speaker of the Epilogue.

**LADY NORTHUMBERLAND**.

**LADY PERCY**.

**MISTRESS QUICKLY**, Hostess of a tavern in Eastcheap.

**DOLL TEARSHEET**.

**Lords and Attendants; Officers, Soldiers, Messenger, Drawers,  
Beadles, Grooms, &c.**

**SCENE.—England.**

# THE SECOND PART OF KING HENRY THE FOURTH

## INDUCTION.

Warkworth. Before NORTHUMBERLAND'S Castle.

Enter RUMOUR, painted full of tongues.

RUMOUR. Open your ears ; for which of you will stop  
The vent of hearing when loud Rumour speaks ?  
I, from the orient to the drooping west,  
Making the wind my post-horse, still unfold 4  
The acts commenced on this ball of earth :  
Upon my tongues continual slanders ride,  
The which in every language I pronounce,  
Stuffing the ears of men with false reports. 8  
I speak of peace, while covert enmity  
Under the smile of safety wounds the world :  
And who but Rumour, who but only I,  
Make fearful musters and prepar'd defence, 12  
Whilst the big year, swoln with some other grief.  
Is thought with child by the stern tyrant war,  
And no such matter ? Rumour is a pipe  
Blown by surmises, jealousies, conjectures, 16  
And of so easy and so plain a stop  
That the blunt monster with uncounted heads,  
The still-discordant wavering multitude,  
Can play upon it. But what need I thus 20  
My well-known body to anatomize  
Among my household ? Why is Rumour here ?  
I run before King Harry's victory ;  
Who in a bloody field by Shrewsbury 24  
Hath beaten down young Hotspur and his troops,  
Quenching the flame of bold rebellion  
Even with the rebels' blood. But what mean I  
To speak so true at first ? my office is 28  
To noise abroad that Harry Monmouth fell

Under the wrath of noble Hotspur's sword,  
 And that the king before the Douglas' rage  
 Stoop'd his anointed head as low as death. 32  
 This have I rumour'd through the peasant towns  
 Between the royal field of Shrewsbury  
 And this worm-eaten hold of ragged stone,  
 Where Hotspur's father, old Northumberland, 36  
 Lies crafty-sick. The posts come tiring on,  
 And not a man of them brings other news  
 Than they have learn'd of me : from Rumour's tongues  
 They bring smooth comforts false, worse than true  
 wrongs. [Exit.

## ACT I.

SCENE I.—Warkworth. Before NORTHUMBERLAND's Castle.

Enter LORD BARDOLPH.

LORD BARDOLPH. Who keeps the gate here ? ho !

[The Porter opens the gate.

Where is the earl ?

PORTER. What shall I say you are ?

LORD BARDOLPH.

Tell thou the earl

That the Lord Bardolph doth attend him here.

PORTER. His lordship is walk'd forth into the  
 orchard : 4

Please it your honour knock but at the gate,  
 And he himself will answer.

Enter NORTHUMBERLAND.

LORD BARDOLPH.

Here comes the earl.

[Exit Porter.

NORTHUMBERLAND. What news, Lord Bardolph ?  
 every minute now

Should be the father of some stratagem. 8

The times are wild ; contention, like a horse  
 Full of high feeding, madly hath broke loose  
 And bears down all before him.

LORD BARDOLPH.

Noble earl,

I bring you certain news from Shrewsbury. 12

NORTHUMBERLAND. Good, an God will !

LORD BARDOLPH.

As good as heart can wish.

The king is almost wounded to the death ;

And, in the fortune of my lord your son,  
 Prince Harry slain outright ; and both the Blunts 16  
 Kill'd by the hand of Douglas ; young Prince John  
 And Westmoreland and Stafford fled the field.  
 And Harry Monmouth's brawn, the hulk Sir John,  
 Is prisoner to your son : O ! such a day, 20  
 So fought, so follow'd, and so fairly won,  
 Came not till now to dignify the times  
 Since Cæsar's fortunes.

NORTHUMBERLAND. How is this deriv'd ?  
 Saw you the field ? came you from Shrewsbury ? 24  
 LORD BARDOLPH. I spake with one, my lord, that  
 came from thence ;

A gentleman well bred and of good name,  
 That freely render'd me these news for true.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Here comes my servant Travers,  
 whom I sent 28

On Tuesday last to listen after news.

LORD BARDOLPH. My lord, I over-rode him on the  
 way ;  
 And he is furnish'd with no certainties  
 More than he haply may retail from me. 32

Enter TRAVERS.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Now, Travers, what good tidings  
 come with you ?

TRAVERS. My lord, Sir John Umfreville turn'd me  
 back

With joyful tidings ; and, being better hors'd,  
 Out-rode me. After him came spurring hard 36  
 A gentleman, almost forspent with speed,  
 That stopp'd by me to breathe his bloodied horse.  
 He ask'd the way to Chester ; and of him  
 I did demand what news from Shrewsbury. 40  
 He told me that rebellion had bad luck,  
 And that young Harry Percy's spur was cold.  
 With that he gave his able horse the head,  
 And, bending forward struck his armed heels 44  
 Against the panting sides of his poor jade  
 Up to the rowel-head, and, starting so,  
 He seem'd in running to devour the way,  
 Staying no longer question.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Ha ! Again : 48

Said he young Harry Percy's spur was cold ?  
 Of Hotspur, Coldspur ? that rebellion  
 Had met ill luck ?

LORD BARDOLPH. My lord, I'll tell you what :  
 If my young lord your son have not the day, 52  
 Upon mine honour, for a silken point  
 I'll give my barony : never talk of it.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Why should the gentleman that  
 rode by Travers  
 Give then such instances of loss ?

LORD BARDOLPH. Who, he ? 56  
 He was some hilding fellow that had stolen  
 The horse he rode on, and, upon my life,  
 Spoke at a venture. Look, here comes more news.

Enter MORTON.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Yea, this man's brow, like to a  
 title-leaf, 60  
 Foretells the nature of a tragic volume :  
 So looks the strond, whereon the imperious flood  
 Hath left a witness'd usurpation.

Say, Morton, didst thou come from Shrewsbury ? 64  
 MORTON. I ran from Shrewsbury, my noble lord ;  
 Where hateful death put on his ugliest mask  
 To fright our party.

NORTHUMBERLAND. How doth my son and brother ?  
 Thou tremblest, and the whiteness in thy cheek 68  
 Is apter than thy tongue to tell thy errand.  
 Even such a man, so faint, so spiritless,  
 So dull, so dead in look, so woe-begone,  
 Drew Priam's curtain in the dead of night, 72  
 And would have told him half his Troy was burn'd ;  
 But Priam found the fire ere he his tongue,  
 And I my Percy's death ere thou report'st it. 75  
 This thou wouldst say, ' Your son did thus and thus ;  
 Your brother thus ; so fought the noble Douglas ;'  
 Stopping my greedy ear with their bold deeds :  
 But in the end, to stop mine ear indeed,  
 Thou hast a sigh to blow away this praise, 80  
 Ending with ' Brother, son, and all are dead '.

MORTON. Douglas is living, and your brother, yet ;  
 But, for my lord your son,—

NORTHUMBERLAND. Why, he is dead.—

SCENE I] KING HENRY THE FOURTH.

371

See, what a ready tongue suspicion hath ! 84  
 He that but fears the thing he would not know  
 Hath by instinct knowledge from others' eyes  
 That what he fear'd is chanced. Yet speak, Morton :  
 Tell thou thy earl his divination lies, 88  
 And I will take it as a sweet disgrace  
 And make thee rich for doing me such wrong.

MORTON. You are too great to be by me gainsaid ;  
 Your spirit is too true, your fears too cer'ain. 92

NORTHUMBERLAND. Yet, for all this, say not that  
 Percy's dead.

I see a strange confession in thine eye :  
 Thou shak'st thy head, and hold'st it fear or sin  
 To speak a truth. If he be slain, say so ; 96  
 The tongue offends not that reports his death :  
 And he doth sin that doth belie the dead,  
 Not he which says the dead is not alive.  
 Yet the first bringer of unwelcome news 100  
 Hath but a losing office, and his tongue  
 Sounds ever after as a sullen bell.  
 Remember'd knolling a departing friend.

LORD BARDOLPH. I cannot think, my lord, your son  
 is dead. 104

MORTON. I am sorry I should force you to believe  
 That which I would to God I had not seen ;  
 But these mine eyes saw him in bloody state, 107  
 Rendering faint quittance, wearied and outbreath'd,  
 To Harry Monmouth ; whose swift wrath beat down  
 The never-daunted Percy to the earth,  
 From whence with life he never more sprung up.  
 In few, his death,—whose spirit lent a fire 112  
 Even to the dullest peasant in his camp,—  
 Being bruited once, took fire and heat away  
 From the best-temper'd courage in his troops ;  
 For from his metal was his party steel'd ; 116  
 Which once in him abated, all the rest  
 Turn'd on themselves, like dull and heavy lead :  
 And as the thing that 's heavy in itself,  
 Upon enforcement flies with greatest speed, 120  
 So did our men, heavy in Hotspur's loss,  
 Lend to this weight such lightness with their fear  
 That arrows fled not swifter toward their aim  
 Than did our soldiers, aiming at their safety, 124



Fly from the field. Then was that noble Worcester  
 Too soon ta'en prisoner ; and that furious Scot,  
 The bloody Douglas, whose well-labouring sword  
 Had three times slain the appearance of the king, 128  
 'Gan vail his stomach, and did grace the shame  
 Of those that turn'd their backs ; and in his flight,  
 Stumbling in fear, was took. The sum of all  
 Is, that the king hath won, and hath sent out 132  
 A speedy power to encounter you, my lord,  
 Under the conduct of young Lancaster  
 And Westmoreland. This is the news at full.

NORTHUMBERLAND. For this I shall have time enough  
 to mourn. 136

In poison there is physic ; and these news,  
 Having been well, that would have made me sick,  
 Being sick, have in some measure made me well :  
 And as the wretch, whose fever-weaken'd joints, 140  
 Like strengthless hinges, buckle under life,  
 Impatient of his fit, breaks like a fire  
 Out of his keeper's arms, even so my limbs,  
 Weaken'd with grief, being now enrag'd with grief, 144  
 Are thrice themselves. Hence, therefore, thou nice  
 crutch !

A scaly gauntlet now, with joints of steel  
 Must glove this hand : and hence, thou sickly quoif !  
 Thou art a guard too wanton for the head 148  
 Which princes, flesh'd with conquest, aim to hit.  
 Now bind my brows with iron, and approach  
 The ragged'st hour that time and spite dare bring  
 To frown upon the enrag'd Northumberland ! 152  
 Let heaven kiss earth ! now let not nature's hand  
 Keep the wild flood confin'd ! let order die !  
 And let this world no longer be a stage  
 To feed contention in a lingering act ; 156  
 But let one spirit of the first-born Cain  
 Reign in all bosoms, that, each heart being set  
 On bloody courses, the rude scene may end,  
 And darkness be the burier of the dead ! 160

TRAVERS. This strained passion doth you wrong, my  
 lord.

LORD BARDOLPH. Sweet earl, divorce not wisdom from  
 your honour.

MORTON. The lives of all your loving complices

SCENE I.] KING HENRY THE FOURTH

Lean on your health ; the which, if you give o'er 161  
 To stormy passion must perforce decay.  
 You cast the event of war, my noble lord,  
 And summ'd the account of chance, before you said,  
 ' Let us make head.' It was your presumise 168  
 That in the dole of blows your son might drop :  
 You knew he walk'd o'er perils, on an edge,  
 More likely to fall in than to get o'er ;  
 You were advis'd his flesh was capable 172  
 Of wounds and scars, and that his forward spirit  
 Would lift him where most trade of danger rang'd :  
 Yet did you say, ' Go forth ; ' and none of this,  
 Though strongly apprehended, could restrain 176  
 The stiff-borne action : what hath then befallen,  
 Or what hath this bold enterprise brought forth,  
 More than that being which was like to be ?

LORD BARDOLPH. We all that are engaged to this loss  
 Knew that we ventur'd on such dangerous seas 181  
 That if we wrought out life 'twas ten to one ;  
 And yet we ventur'd, for the gain propos'd  
 Chok'd the respect of likely peril fear'd ; 184  
 And since we are o'erset, venture again.  
 Come, we will all put forth, body and goods.

MORTON. 'Tis more than time : and, my most noble  
 lord,  
 I hear for certain, and do speak the truth, 188  
 The gentle Archbishop of York is up,  
 With well-appointed powers : he is a man  
 Who with a double surety binds his followers.  
 My lord your son had only but the corpse', 192  
 But shadows and the shows of men to fight ;  
 For that same word, rebellion, did divide  
 The action of their bodies from their souls ;  
 And they did fight with queasiness, constrain'd, 196  
 As men drink potions, that their weapons only  
 Seem'd on our side : but, for their spirits and souls,  
 This word, rebellion, it had froze them up,  
 As fish are in a pond. But now the bishop 200  
 Turns insurrection to religion :  
 Suppos'd sincere and holy in his thoughts,  
 He's follow'd both with body and with mind,  
 And doth enlarge his rising with the blood 204  
 Of fair King Richard, scrap'd from Pomfret stones ;

Derives from heaven his quarrel and his cause ;  
 Tells them he doth bestride a bleeding land,  
 Gasping for life under great Bolingbroke ; 208  
 And more and less do flock to follow him.

NORTHUMBERLAND. I knew of this before ; but, to  
 speak truth,  
 This present grief had wip'd it from my mind.  
 Go in with me ; and counsel every man 212  
 The aptest way for safety and revenge :  
 Get posts and letters, and make friends with speed :  
 Never so few, and never yet more need. [Exeunt.

SCENE II.—London. A Street.

Enter SIR JOHN FALSTAFF, with his Page bearing his sword and buckler.

FALSTAFF. Sirrah, you giant, what says the doctor to my water ?

PAGE. He said, sir, the water itself was a good healthy water ; but, for the party that owed it, he might have more diseases than he knew for. 5

FALSTAFF. Men of all sorts take a pride to gird at me : the brain of this foolish-compounded clay, man, is not able to invent anything that tends to laughter, more than I invent or is invented on me : I am not only witty in myself, but the cause that wit is in other men. I do here walk before thee like a sow that hath overwhelmed all her litter but one. If the prince put thee into my service for any other reason than to set me off, why then I have no judgment. Thou whoreson mandrake, thou art fitter to be worn in my cap than to wait at my heels. I was never manned with an agate till now ; but I will set you neither in gold nor silver, but in vile apparel, and send you back again to your master, for a jewel ; the juvenal, the prince your master, whose chin is not yet fledged. I will sooner have a beard grow in the palm of my hand than he shall get one on his cheek ; and yet he will not stick to say, his face is a face-royal : God may finish it when he will, it is not a hair amiss yet : he may keep it still as a face-royal, for a barber shall never earn sixpence out of it ; and yet he will be crowing as if he had writ man ever since his father was a bachelor. He may keep his

own grace, but he is almost out of mine, I can assure him. What said Master Dombledon about the satin for my short cloak and my slops ? 30

PAGE. He said, sir, you should procure him better assurance than Bardolph ; he would not take his bond and yours : he liked not the security. 33

FALSTAFF. Let him be damned like the glutton ! may his tongue be hotter ! A whoreson Achitophel ! a rascally yea-forsooth knave ! to bear a gentleman in hand, and then stand upon security. The whoreson smooth-pates do now wear nothing but high shoes, and bunches of keys at their girdles ; and if a man is thorough with them in honest taking up, then they must stand upon security. I had as lief they would put ratsbane in my mouth as offer to stop it with security. I looked a' should have sent me two and twenty yards of satin, as I am a true knight, and he sends me security. Well, he may sleep in security ; for he hath the horn of abundance, and the lightness of his wife shines through it : and yet cannot he see, though he have his own lanthorn to light him. Where 's Bardolph ? 40

PAGE. He 's gone into Smithfield to buy your worship a horse.

FALSTAFF. I bought him in Paul's, and he'll buy me a horse in Smithfield : an I could get me but a wife in the stews, I were manned, horsed, and wived.

Enter the LORD CHIEF JUSTICE and Servant.

PAGE. Sir, here comes the nobleman that committed the prince for striking him about Bardolph. 56

FALSTAFF. Wait close ; I will not see him.

CHIEF JUSTICE. What 's he that goes there ?

SERVANT. Falstaff, an 't please your lordship.

CHIEF JUSTICE. He that was in question for the robbery ? 61

SERVANT. He, my lord ; but he hath since done good service at Shrewsbury, and, as I hear, is now going with some charge to the Lord John of Lancaster. 64

CHIEF JUSTICE. What, to York ? Call him back again.

SERVANT. Sir John Falstaff !

FALSTAFF. Boy, tell him I am deaf. 67

PAGE. You must speak louder, my master is deaf.

CHIEF JUSTICE. I am sure he is, to the hearing of anything good. Go, pluck him by the elbow ; I must speak with him.

SERVANT. Sir John !

72

FALSTAFF. What ! a young knave, and beg ! Is there not wars ? is there not employment ? doth not the king lack subjects ? do not the rebels want soldiers ? Though it be a shame to be on any side but one, it is worse shame to beg than to be on the worst side, were it worse than the name of rebellion can tell how to make it.

SERVANT. You mistake me, sir.

80

FALSTAFF. Why, sir, did I say you were an honest man ? setting my knighthood and my soldiership aside, I had lied in my throat if I had said so.

83

SERVANT. I pray you, sir, then set your knighthood and your soldiership aside, and give me leave to tell you you lie in your throat if you say I am any other than an honest man.

87

FALSTAFF. I give thee leave to tell me so ! I lay aside that which grows to me ! If thou gett'st any leave of me, hang me : if thou takest leave, thou wert better be hanged. You hunt counter : hence ! avaunt !

SERVANT. Sir, my lord would speak with you.

92

CHIEF JUSTICE. Sir John Falstaff, a word with you.

FALSTAFF. My good lord ! God give your lordship good time of day. I am glad to see your lordship abroad ; I heard say your lordship was sick : I hope, your lordship goes abroad by advice. Your lordship, though not clean past your youth, hath yet some smack of age in you, some relish of the saltiness of time ; and I most humbly beseech your lordship to have a reverend care of your health.

101

CHIEF JUSTICE. Sir John, I sent for you before your expedition to Shrewsbury.

FALSTAFF. An't please your lordship, I hear his majesty is returned with some discomfort from Wales.

CHIEF JUSTICE. I talk not of his majesty. You would not come when I sent for you.

107

FALSTAFF. And I hear, moreover, his highness is fallen into this same whoreson apoplexy.

CHIEF JUSTICE. Well, heaven mend him ! I pray you, let me speak with you.

111

FALSTAFF. This apoplexy is, as I take it, a kind of lethargy, an't please your lordship; a kind of sleeping in the blood, a whoreson tingling. 114

CHIEF JUSTICE. What tell you me of it? be it as it is.

FALSTAFF. It hath its original from much grief, from study and perturbation of the brain. I have read the cause of his effects in Galen: it is a kind of deafness.

CHIEF JUSTICE. I think you are fallen into the disease, for you hear not what I say to you. 120

FALSTAFF. Very well, my lord, very well: rather, an't please you, it is the disease of not listening, the malady of not marking, that I am troubled withal.

CHIEF JUSTICE. To punish you by the heels would amend the attention of your ears; and I care not if I do become your physician. 126

FALSTAFF. I am as poor as Job, my lord, but not so patient: your lordship may minister the potion of imprisonment to me in respect of poverty; but how I should be your patient to follow your prescriptions, the wise may make some dram of a scruple, or indeed a scruple itself. 132

CHIEF JUSTICE. I sent for you, when there were matters against you for your life, to come speak with me. 135

FALSTAFF. As I was then advised by my learned counsel in the laws of this land-service, I did not come.

CHIEF JUSTICE. Well, the truth is, Sir John, you live in great infamy.

FALSTAFF. He that buckles him in my belt cannot live in less. 141

CHIEF JUSTICE. Your means are very slender, and your waste is great.

FALSTAFF. I would it were otherwise: I would my means were greater and my waist slenderer. 145

CHIEF JUSTICE. You have misled the youthful prince.

FALSTAFF. The young prince hath misled me: I am the fellow with the great belly, and he my dog. 148

CHIEF JUSTICE. Well, I am loath to gall a new-healed wound: your day's service at Shrewsbury hath a little gilded over your night's exploit on Gadshill: you may thank the unquiet time for your quiet o'erposting that action. 153

FALSTAFF. My lord!

CHIEF JUSTICE. But since all is well, keep it so :  
wake not a sleeping wolf. 156

FALSTAFF. To wake a wolf is as bad as to smell a fox.

CHIEF JUSTICE. What ! you are as a candle, the  
better part burnt out. 159

FALSTAFF. A wassail candle, my lord ; all tallow :  
if I did say of wax, my growth would approve the truth.

CHIEF JUSTICE. There is not a white hair on your face  
but should have his effect of gravity.

FALSTAFF. His effect of gravy, gravy, gravy. 164

CHIEF JUSTICE. You follow the young prince up and  
down, like his ill angel.

FALSTAFF. Not so, my lord ; your ill angel is light,  
but I hope he that looks upon me will take me without  
weighing : and yet, in some respects, I grant, I cannot  
go, I cannot tell. Virtue is of so little regard in these  
costermonger times that true valour is turned bear-  
herd : pregnancy is made a tapster, and hath his quick  
wit wasted in giving reckonings : all the other gifts  
appertinent to man, as the malice of this age shapes  
them, are not worth a gooseberry. You that are old  
consider not the capacities of us that are young ; you  
measure the heat of our livers with the bitterness of  
your galls ; and we that are in the vaward of our youth,  
I must confess, are wags too. 179

CHIEF JUSTICE. Do you set down your name in the  
scroll of youth, that are written down old with all the  
characters of age ? Have you not a moist eye, a dry  
hand, a yellow cheek, a white beard, a decreasing leg,  
an increasing belly ? Is not your voice broken, your  
wind short, your chin double, your wit single, and every  
part about you blasted with antiquity, and will you yet  
call yourself young ? Fie, fie, fie, Sir John ! 187

FALSTAFF. My lord, I was born about three of the  
clock in the afternoon, with a white head, and some-  
thing a round belly. For my voice, I have lost it with  
hollaing, and singing of anthems. To approve my  
youth further, I will not : the truth is, I am only old  
in judgment and understanding ; and he that will  
caper with me for a thousand marks, let him lend me  
the money, and have at him ! For the box o' the ear  
that the prince gave you, he gave it like a rude prince,  
and you took it like a sensible lord. I have checked him

SCENE II] KING HENRY THE FOURTH

for it, and the young lion repents ; marry, not in ashes and sackcloth, but in new silk and old sack. 199

CHIEF JUSTICE. Well, God send the prince a better companion !

FALSTAFF. God send the companion a better prince ! I cannot rid my hands of him. 203

CHIEF JUSTICE. Well, the king hath severed you and Prince Harry. I hear you are going with Lord John of Lancaster against the archbishop and the Earl of Northumberland. 207

FALSTAFF. Yea ; I thank your pretty sweet wit for it. But look you pray, all you that kiss my lady Peace at home, that our armies join not in a hot day ; for, by the Lord, I take but two shirts out with me, and I mean not to sweat extraordinarily : if it be a hot day, and I brandish anything but my bottle, I would I might never spit white again. There is not a dangerous action can peep out his head but I am thrust upon it. Well, I cannot last ever. But it was always yet the trick of our English nation, if they have a good thing, to make it too common. If you will needs say I am an old man, you should give me rest. I would to God my name were not so terrible to the enemy as it is : I were better to be eaten to death with rust than to be scoured to nothing with perpetual motion.

CHIEF JUSTICE. Well, be honest, be honest ; and God bless your expedition. 224

FALSTAFF. Will your lordship lend me a thousand pound to furnish me forth ?

CHIEF JUSTICE. Not a penny ; not a penny ; you are too impatient to bear crosses. Fare you well ; commend me to my cousin Westmoreland. 229

[Exeunt CHIEF JUSTICE and Servant.]

FALSTAFF. If I do, fillip me with a three-man beetle. A man can no more separate age and covetousness than he can part young limbs and lechery ; but the gout galls the one, and the pox pinches the other ; and so both the degrees prevent my curses. Boy !

PAGE. Sir !

FALSTAFF. What money is in my purse ? 236

PAGE. Seven groats and twopence.

FALSTAFF. I can get no remedy against this consumption of the purse : borrowing only lingers and



lingers it out, but the disease is incurable. Go bear this letter to my Lord of Lancaster ; this to the prince ; this to the Earl of Westmoreland ; and this to old Mistress Ursula, whom I have weekly sworn to marry since I perceived the first white hair on my chin. About it : you know where to find me. [Exit PAGE.] A pox of this gout ! or, a gout of this pox ! for the one or the other plays the rogue with my great toe. 'Tis no matter if I do halt ; I have the wars for my colour, and my pension shall seem the more reasonable. A good wit will make use of anything ; I will turn diseases to commodity. • [Exit.

SCENE III.—York. A Room in the ARCHBISHOP'S Palace.

Enter the ARCHBISHOP OF YORK, the LORDS HASTINGS,  
MOWBRAY, and BARDOLPH.

ARCHBISHOP. Thus have you heard our cause and known our means ;

And, my most noble friends, I pray you all,  
Speak plainly your opinions of our hopes :

And first, Lord Marshal, what say you to it ? 4

MOWBRAY. I well allow the occasion of our arms ;  
But gladly would be better satisfied

How in our means we should advance ourselves  
To look with forehead bold and big enough 8  
Upon the power and puissance of the king.

HASTINGS. Our present musters grow upon the file  
To five-and-twenty thousand men of choice ;  
And our supplies live largely in the hope 12  
Of great Northumberland, whose bosom burns  
With an incensed fire of injuries.

LORD BARDOLPH. The question, then, Lord Hastings,  
standeth thus :  
Whether our present five-and-twenty thousand 16  
May hold up head without Northumberland.

HASTINGS. With him, we may.

LORD BARDOLPH. Ay, marry, there 's the point :  
But if without him we be thought too feeble,  
My judgment is, we should not step too far 20  
Till we had his assistance by the hand ;  
For in a theme so bloody-fac'd as this,  
Conjecture, expectation, and surmise  
Of aids incertain should not be admitted. 24

SCENE III] KING HENRY THE FOURTH

ARCHBISHOP. 'Tis very true, Lord Bardolph ; for, indeed

It was young Hotspur's case at Shrewsbury.

LORD BARDOLPH. It was, my lord ; who lin'd himself with hope,

Eating the air on promise of supply, 28

Flattering himself with project of a power.

Much smaller than the smallest of his thoughts ;

And so, with great imagination

Proper to madmen, led his powers to death, 32

And winking leap'd into destruction.

HASTINGS. But, by your leave, it never yet did hurt To lay down likelihoods and forms of hope.

LORD BARDOLPH. Yes, if this present quality of war ;— Indeed the instant action,—a cause on foot, 37

Lives so in hope, as in an early spring

We see the appearing buds ; which, to prove fruit,

Hope gives not so much warrant as despair 40

That frosts will bite them. When we mean to build,

We first survey the plot, then draw the model ;

And when we see the figure of the house,

Then must we rate the cost of the erection ; 44

Which if we find outweighs ability,

What do we then but draw anew the model

In fewer offices, or at last desist

To build at all ? Much more, in this great work,— 48

Which is almost to pluck a kingdom down

And set another up,—should we survey

The plot of situation and the model,

Consent upon a sure foundation, 52

Question surveyors, know our own estate,

How able such a work to undergo,

To weigh against his opposite ; or else,

We fortify in paper, and in figures, 56

Using the names of men instead of men :

Like one that draws the model of a house

Beyond his power to build it ; who, half through,

Gives o'er and leaves his part-created cost 60

A naked subject to the weeping clouds,

And waste for churlish winter's tyranny.

HASTINGS. Grant that our hopes, yet likely of fair birth,

Should be still-born, and that we now possess'd 64

The utmost man of expectation ;  
 I think we are a body strong enough,  
 Even as we are, to equal with the king.

LORD BARDOLPH. What ! is the king but five-and-  
 twenty thousand ? 68

HASTINGS. To us no more ; nay, not so much, Lord  
 Bardolph.

For his divisions, as the times do brawl,  
 Are in three heads : one power against the French,  
 And one against Glendower ; perforce, a third 72  
 Must take up us : so is the unfirm king  
 In three divided ; and his coffers sound  
 With hollow poverty and emptiness.

ARCHBISHOP. That he should draw his several strengths  
 together 76

And come against us in full puissance,  
 Need not be dreaded.

HASTINGS. If he should do so,  
 He leaves his back unarm'd, the French and Welsh  
 Baying him at the heels : never fear that. 80

LORD BARDOLPH. Who is it like should lead his forces  
 hither ?

HASTINGS. The Duke of Lancaster and Westmoreland ;  
 Against the Welsh, himself and Harry Monmouth :  
 But who is substituted 'gainst the French 84  
 I have no certain notice.

ARCHBISHOP. Let us on  
 And publish the occasion of our arms.  
 The commonwealth is sick of their own choice ;  
 Their over-greedy love hath surfeited. 88  
 A habitation giddy and unsure  
 Hath he that buildeth on the vulgar heart.  
 O thou fond many ! with what loud applause  
 Didst thou beat heaven with blessing Bolingbroke 92  
 Before he was what thou wouldst have him be :  
 And being now trimm'd in thine own desires,  
 Thou, beastly feeder, art so full of him  
 That thou provok'st thyself to cast him up. 96  
 So, so, thou common dog, didst thou disgorge  
 Thy glutton bosom of the royal Richard,  
 And now thou wouldst eat thy dead vomit up, 99  
 And howl'st to find it. What trust is in these times ?  
 They that, when Richard liv'd, would have him die,

Are now become enamour'd on his grave :  
 Thou, that threw'st dust upon his goodly head,  
 When through proud London he came sighing on  
 After the admired heels of Bolingbroke, 105  
 Cry'st now, ' O earth ! yield us that king again,  
 And take thou this ! ' O, thoughts of men accurst !  
 Past and to come seem best ; things present worst.

MOWBRAY. Shall we go draw our numbers and set on ?

HASTINGS. We are time's subjects, and time bids be  
 gone. [Exit.

## ACT II.

SCENE I.—London. A Street.

Enter MISTRESS QUICKLY : FANG, and his Boy, with her ; and  
 SNARE following.

QUICKLY. Master Fang, have you entered the exion ?  
 FANG. It is entered.

QUICKLY. Where's your yeoman ? Is it a lusty yeo-  
 man ? will a' stand to 't ? 4

FANG. Sirrah, where's Snare ?

QUICKLY. O Lord, ay ! good Master Snare.

SNARE. Here, here.

FANG. Snare, we must arrest Sir John Falstaff. 8

QUICKLY. Yea, good Master Snare ; I have entered  
 him and all.

SNARE. It may chance cost some of us our lives, for  
 he will stab. 12

QUICKLY. Alas the day ! take heed of him : he  
 stabbed me in mine own house, and that most beastly.  
 In good faith, he cares not what mischief he doth, if  
 his weapon be out : he will foine like any devil ; he will  
 spare neither man, woman, nor child. 17

FANG. If I can close with him I care not for his  
 thrust.

QUICKLY. No, nor I neither : I'll be at your elbow.

FANG. An I but fist him once ; an a' come but within  
 my vice,— 22

QUICKLY. I am undone by his going ; I warrant  
 you, he's an infinitive thing upon my score. Good  
 Master Fang, hold him sure : good Master Snare, let  
 him not 'scape. A' comes continually to Pie-corner

—saving your manhoods—to buy a saddle; and he's indited to dinner to the Lubber's Head in Lumbert Street, to Master Smooth's the silkman: I pray ye, since my exion is entered, and my case so openly known to the world, let him be brought in to his answer. A hundred mark is a long one for a poor lone woman to bear; and I have borne, and borne, and borne; and have been fubbed off, and fubbed off, and fubbed off, from this day to that day, that it is a shame to be thought on. There is no honesty in such dealing; unless a woman should be made an ass, and a beast, to bear every knave's wrong. Yonder he comes; and that arrant malmsey-nose knave, Bardolph, with him. Do your offices, do your offices, Master Fang and Master Snare; do me, do me, do me your offices. 41

Enter SIR JOHN FALSTAFF, Page, and BARDOLPH.

FALSTAFF. How now! whose mare's dead? what's the matter?

FANG. Sir John, I arrest you at the suit of Mistress Quickly. 45

FALSTAFF. Away, varlets! Draw, Bardolph: cut me off the villain's head; throw the quean in the channel. 48

QUICKLY. Throw me in the channel! I'll throw thee in the channel. Wilt thou? wilt thou? thou bastardly rogue! Murder, murder! Ah, thou honey-suckle villain! wilt thou kill God's officers and the king's? Ah, thou honey-seed rogue! thou art a honey-seed, a man-queller, and a woman-queller.

FALSTAFF. Keep them off, Bardolph.

FANG. A rescue! a rescue! 50

QUICKLY. Good people, bring a rescue or two! Thou wo't, wo't thou? thou wo't, wo't ta? do, do, thou rogue! do, thou hemp-seed!

FALSTAFF. Away, you scullion! you rampallian! you fustilarian! I'll tickle your catastrophe. 61

Enter the LORD CHIEF JUSTICE, attended.

CHIEF JUSTICE. What is the matter? keep the peace here, ho!

QUICKLY. Good my lord, be good to me! I beseech you, stand to me! 65

CHIEF JUSTICE. How now, Sir John! what! are you brawling here?

Doth this become your place, your time and business? You should have been well on your way to York. 68  
Stand from him, fellow: wherefore hang'st upon him?

QUICKLY. O, my most worshipful lord, an't please your grace, I am a poor widow of Eastcheap, and he is arrested at my suit. 72

CHIEF JUSTICE. For what sum?

QUICKLY. It is more than for some, my lord; it is for all, all I have. He hath eaten me out of house and home; he hath put all my substance into that fat belly of his: but I will have some of it out again, or I will ride thee o' nights like the mare.

FALSTAFF. I think I am as like to ride the mare if I have any vantage of ground to get up. 80

CHIEF JUSTICE. How comes this, Sir John? Fie! what man of good temper would endure this tempest of exclamation? Are you not ashamed to enforce a poor widow to so rough a course to come by her own?

FALSTAFF. What is the gross sum that I owe thee?

QUICKLY. Marry, if thou wert an honest man, thyself and the money too. Thou didst swear to me upon a parcel-gilt goblet, sitting in my Dolphin-chamber, at the round table, by a seacoal fire, upon Wednesday in Wheeson week, when the prince broke thy head for liking his father to a singing-man of Windsor, thou didst swear to me then, as I was washing thy wound, to marry me and make me my lady thy wife. Canst thou deny it? Did not goodwife Keech, the butcher's wife, come in then and call me gossip Quickly? coming in to borrow a mess of vinegar; telling us she had a good dish of prawns; whereby thou didst desire to eat some, whereby I told thee they were ill for a green wound? And didst thou not, when she was gone down stairs, desire me to be no more so familiarity with such poor people; saying that ere long they should call me madam? And didst thou not kiss me and bid me fetch thee thirty shillings? I put thee now to thy book-oath: deny it if thou canst.

FALSTAFF. My lord, this is a poor mad soul; and she says up and down the town that her eldest son is like you. She hath been in good case, and the truth is,

poverty hath distracted her. But for these foolish officers, I beseech you I may have redress against them. 109

CHIEF JUSTICE. Sir John, Sir John, I am well acquainted with your manner of wrenching the true cause the false way. It is not a confident brow, nor the throng of words that come with such more than impudent sauciness from you, can thrust me from a level consideration; you have, as it appears to me, practised upon the easy-yielding spirit of this woman, and made her serve your uses both in purse and in person.

QUICKLY. Yea, in troth, my lord. 116

CHIEF JUSTICE. Prithee, peace. Pay her the debt you owe her, and unpay the villany you have done her: the one you may do with sterling money, and the other with current repentance. 122

FALSTAFF. My lord, I will not undergo this sneap without reply. You call honourable boldness impudent sauciness: if a man will make curtsy, and say nothing, he is virtuous. No, my lord, my humble duty remembered, I will not be your suitor: I say to you, I do desire deliverance from these officers, being upon hasty employment in the king's affairs. 129

CHIEF JUSTICE. You speak as having power to do wrong: but answer in the effect of your reputation, and satisfy the poor woman. 132

FALSTAFF. Come hither, hostess. [Taking her aside.

Enter GOWER.

CHIEF JUSTICE. Now, Master Gower! what news?

GOWER. The king, my lord, and Harry Prince of Wales Are near at hand: the rest the paper tells. [Gives a letter.

FALSTAFF. As I am a gentleman. 137

QUICKLY. Nay, you said so before.

FALSTAFF. As I am a gentleman. Come, no more words of it. 140

QUICKLY. By this heavenly ground I tread on, I must be fain to pawn both my plate and the tapestry of my dining-chambers. 143

FALSTAFF. Glasses, glasses, is the only drinking: and for thy walls, a pretty slight drollery, or the story of the Prodigal, or the German hunting in water-work, is worth a thousand of these bed-hangings and these fly-bitten tapestries. Let it be ten pound if thou canst. Come, an it were not for thy humours, there is not a

better wench in England. Go, wash thy face, and draw thy action. Come, thou must not be in this honour with me; dost not know me? Come, come, I know thou wast set on to this. 153

QUICKLY. Prithee, Sir John, let it be but twenty nobles: i' faith, I am loath to pawn my plate, so God save me, la! 156

FALSTAFF. Let it alone; I'll make other shift: you'll be a fool still.

QUICKLY. Well, you shall have it, though I pawn my gown. I hope you'll come to supper. You'll pay me all together? 161

FALSTAFF. Will I live? [To BARDOLPH.] Go, with her, with her; hook on, hook on.

QUICKLY. Will you have Doll Tearsheet meet you at supper? 165

FALSTAFF. No more words; let's have her.

[Exeunt MISTRESS QUICKLY, BARDOLPH, Officers, and Page.]

CHIEF JUSTICE. I have heard better news.

FALSTAFF. What's the news, my good lord? 168

CHIEF JUSTICE. Where lay the king last night?

GOWER. At Basingstoke, my lord.

FALSTAFF. I hope, my lord, all's well: what is the news, my lord? 172

CHIEF JUSTICE. Come all his forces back?

GOWER. No; fifteen hundred foot, five hundred horse, Are march'd up to my Lord of Lancaster, Against Northumberland and the archbishop. 176

FALSTAFF. Comes the king back from Wales, my noble lord?

CHIEF JUSTICE. You shall have letters of me presently. Come, go along with me, good Master Gower.

FALSTAFF. My lord! 180

CHIEF JUSTICE. What's the matter?

FALSTAFF. Master Gower, shall I entreat you with me to dinner?

GOWER. I must wait upon my good lord here; I thank you, good Sir John. 185

CHIEF JUSTICE. Sir John, you loiter here too long, being you are to take soldiers up in counties as you go.

FALSTAFF. Will you sup with me, Master Gower?

CHIEF JUSTICE. What foolish master taught you these manners, Sir John?



**FALSTAFF.** Master Gower, if they become me not, he was a fool that taught them me. This is the right fencing grace, my lord ; tap for tap, and so part fair.

**CHIEF JUSTICE.** Now the Lord lighten thee ! thou art a great fool. [Exeunt]

SCENE II.—The Same. Another Street.

Enter the PRINCE and POINS.

**PRINCE.** Before God, I am exceeding weary.

**POINS.** Is it come to that ? I had thought weariness durst not have attached one of so high blood. 8

**PRINCE.** Faith, it does me, though it discolours the complexion of my greatness to acknowledge it. Doth it not show vilely in me to desire small beer ?

**POINS.** Why, a prince should not be so loosely studied as to remember so weak a composition. 8

**PRINCE.** Belike then my appetite was not princely got ; for, by my troth, I do now remember the poor creature, small beer. But, indeed, these humble considerations make me out of love with my greatness. What a disgrace is it to me to remember thy name, or to know thy face to-morrow ! or to take note how many pair of silk stockings thou hast ; viz. these, and those that were thy peach-coloured ones ! or to bear the inventory of thy shirts ; as, one for superfluity, and one other for use ! But that the tennis-court-keeper knows better than I, for it is a low ebb of linen with thee when thou keepest not racket there ; as thou hast not done a great while, because the rest of thy low-countries have made a shift to eat up thy holland : and God knows whether those that bawl out the ruins of thy linen shall inherit his kingdom ; but the midwives say the children are not in the fault ; whereupon the world increases, and kindreds are mightily strengthened. 27

**POINS.** How ill it follows, after you have laboured so hard, you should talk so idly ! Tell me, how many good young princes would do so, their fathers being so sick as yours at this time is ?

**PRINCE.** Shall I tell thee one thing, Poins ? 32

**POINS.** Yes, faith, and let it be an excellent good thing.

PRINCE. It shall serve among wits of no higher breeding than thine. 36

POINS. Go to; I stand the push of your one thing that you will tell.

PRINCE. Marry, I tell thee, it is not meet that I should be sad, now my father is sick: albeit I could tell to thee,—as to one it pleases me, for fault of a better, to call my friend,—I could be sad, and sad indeed too.

POINS. Very hardly upon such a subject. 44

PRINCE. By this hand, thou thinkest me as far in the devil's book as thou and Falstaff for obduracy and persistency: let the end try the man. But I tell thee my heart bleeds inwardly that my father is so sick; and keeping such vile company as thou art hath in reason taken from me all ostentation of sorrow.

POINS. The reason? 51

PRINCE. What wouldst thou think of me if I should weep?

POINS. I would think thee a most princely hypocrite. 55

PRINCE. It would be every man's thought; and thou art a blessed fellow to think as every man thinks: never a man's thought in the world keeps the road-way better than thine: every man would think me a hypocrite indeed. And what accites your most worshipful thought to think so? 61

POINS. Why, because you have been so lewd and so much engrafted to Falstaff.

PRINCE. And to thee. 64

POINS. By this light, I am well spoke on; I can hear it with mine own ears: the worst that they can say of me is that I am a second brother and that I am a proper fellow of my hands; and these two things I confess I cannot help. By the mass, here comes Bardolph.

Enter BARDOLPH and Page.

PRINCE. And the boy that I gave Falstaff: a' had him from me Christian; and look, if the fat villain have not transformed him ape. 72

BARDOLPH. God save your Grace!

PRINCE. And yours, most noble Bardolph.

BARDOLPH. [To the Page.] Come, you virtuous ass, you

bashful fool, must you be blushing? wherefore blush you now? What a maidenly man-at-arms are you become! Is it such a matter to get a pottle-pot's maidenhead? 79

PAGE. A' calls me even now, my lord, through a red lattice, and I could discern no part of his face from the window: at last, I spied his eyes, and methought he had made two holes in the ale-wife's new petticoat, and peeped through. 84

PRINCE. Hath not the boy profited?

BARDOLPH. Away, you whoreson upright rabbit, away! 87

PAGE. Away, you rascally Althea's dream, away

PRINCE. Instruct us, boy; what dream, boy?

PAGE. Marry, my lord, Althea dreamed she was delivered of a firebrand; and therefore I call him her dream. 92

PRINCE. A crown's worth of good interpretation. There it is, boy. [Gives him money.

POINS. O! that this good blossom could be kept from cankers. Well, there is sixpence to preserve thee.

BARDOLPH. An you do not make him be hanged among you, the gallows shall have wrong. 98

PRINCE. And how doth thy master, Bardolph?

BARDOLPH. Well, my lord. He heard of your Grace's coming to town: there's a letter for you.

POINS. Delivered with good respect. And how doth the martlemas, your master?

BARDOLPH. In bodily health, sir. 104

POINS. Marry, the immortal part needs a physician; but that moves not him: though that be sick, it dies not.

PRINCE. I do allow this wen to be as familiar with me as my dog; and he holds his place, for look you how he writes. 110

POINS. 'John Falstaff, knight,'—every man must know that, as oft as he has occasion to name himself: even like those that are akin to the king, for they never prick their finger but they say, 'There is some of the king's blood spilt.' 'How comes that?' says he that takes upon him not to conceive. The answer is as ready as a borrower's cap, 'I am the king's poor cousin, sir.'

PRINCE. Nay, they will be kin to us, or they will fetch it from Japhet. But to the letter : 120

POINS. 'Sir John Falstaff, knight, to the son of the king nearest his father, Harry Prince of Wales, greeting.' Why, this is a certificate.

PRINCE. Peace ! 124

POINS. 'I will imitate the honourable Romans in brevity : ' sure he means brevity in breath, short-winded.—'I commend me to thee, I commend thee, and I leave thee. Be not too familiar with Poins ; for he misuses thy favours so much that he swears thou art to marry his sister Nell. Repent at idle times as thou mayest, and so farewell. 131

Thine, by yea and no,—which is as much as to say, as thou usest him, JACK FALSTAFF, with my familiars ; JOHN, with my brothers and sisters, and SIR JOHN with all Europe.'

My lord, I'll steep this letter in sack and make him eat it. 137

PRINCE. That's to make him eat twenty of his words. But do you use me thus, Ned ? must I marry your sister ? 140

POINS. God send the wench no worse fortune ! but I never said so.

PRINCE. Well, thus we play the fools with the time, and the spirits of the wise sit in the clouds and mock us. Is your master here in London ? 145

BARDOLPH. Yes, my lord.

PRINCE. Where sups he ? doth the old boar feed in the old frank ? 148

BARDOLPH. At the old place, my lord, in Eastcheap.

PRINCE. What company ?

PAGE. Ephesians, my lord, of the old church.

PRINCE. Sup any women with him ? 152

PAGE. None, my lord, but old Mistress Quickly and Mistress Doll Tearsheet.

PRINCE. What pagan may that be ?

PAGE. A proper gentlewoman, sir, and a kinswoman of my master's. 157

PRINCE. Even such kin as the parish heifers are to the town bull. Shall we steal upon them, Ned, at supper ? 160

POINS. I am your shadow, my lord ; I'll follow you.

PRINCE. Sirrah, you boy, and Bardolph ; no word to your master that I am yet come to town : there's for your silence. [Gives money. 165]

BARDOLPH. I have no tongue, sir. 165

PAGE. And for mine, sir, I will govern it.

PRINCE. Fare ye well ; go. [Exeunt BARDOLPH and PAGE.]  
This Doll Tearsheet should be some road. 168

POINS. I warrant you, as common as the way between Saint Alban's and London.

PRINCE. How might we see Falstaff bestow himself to-night in his true colours, and not ourselves be seen ?

POINS. Put on two leathern jerkins and aprons, and wait upon him at his table as drawers. 174

PRINCE. From a god to a bull ! a heavy descension ! it was Jove's case. From a prince to a prentice ! a low transformation ! that shall be mine ; for in every thing the purpose must weigh with the folly. Follow me, Ned. [Exeunt. 174]

SCENE III.—Warkworth. Before NORTHUMBERLAND'S Castle.

Enter NORTHUMBERLAND, LADY NORTHUMBERLAND, and LADY PERCY.

NORTHUMBERLAND. I pray thee, loving wife, and gentle daughter,  
Give even way unto my rough affairs :  
Put not you on the visage of the times,  
And be like them to Percy troublesome. 4

LADY NORTHUMBERLAND. I have given over, I will speak no more :  
Do what you will ; your wisdom be your guide.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Alas ! sweet wife, my honour is at pawn ;

And, but my going, nothing can redeem it. 8

LADY PERCY. O ! yet for God's sake, go not to these wars.

The time was, father, that you broke your word  
When you were more endear'd to it than now ;  
When your own Percy, when my heart's dear Harry,  
Threw many a northward look to see his father 13  
Bring up his powers ; but he did long in vain.  
Who then persuaded you to stay at home ?  
There were two honours lost, yours and your son's :

For yours, the God of heaven brighten it! 17  
 For his, it stuck upon him as the sun  
 In the grey vault of heaven; and by his light  
 Did all the chivalry of England move 20  
 To do brave acts: he was indeed the glass  
 Wherein the noble youth did dress themselves:  
 He had no legs that practis'd not his gait;  
 And speaking thick, which nature made his blemish,  
 Became the accents of the valiant; 25  
 For those that could speak low and tardily,  
 Would turn their own perfection to abuse,  
 To seem like him: so that, in speech, in gait, 28  
 In diet, in affections of delight,  
 In military rules, humours of blood,  
 He was the mark and glass, copy and book,  
 That fashion'd others. And him, O wondrous him!  
 O miracle of men! him did you leave,— 33  
 Second to none, unseconded by you,—  
 To look upon the hideous god of war  
 In disadvantage; to abide a field 36  
 Where nothing but the sound of Hotspur's name  
 Did seem defensible: so you left him.  
 Never, O! never, do his ghost the wrong  
 To hold your honour more precise and nice 40  
 With others than with him: let them alone.  
 The marshal and the archbishop are strong:  
 Had my sweet Harry had but half their numbers,  
 To-day might I, hanging on Hotspur's neck, 44  
 Have talk'd of Monmouth's grave.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Beshrew your heart,  
 Fair daughter! you do draw my spirits from me  
 With new lamenting ancient oversights.  
 But I must go and meet with danger there, 48  
 Or it will seek me in another place,  
 And find me worse provided.

LADY NORTHUMBERLAND. O! fly to Scotland,  
 Till that the nobles and the armed commons  
 Have of their puissance made a little taste. 52

LADY PERCY. If they get ground and vantage of the  
 king,  
 Then join you with them, like a rib of steel,  
 To make strength stronger; but, for all our loves,  
 First let them try themselves. So did your son; 56

He was so suffer'd : so came I a widow ;  
 And never shall have length of life enough  
 To rain upon remembrance with mine eyes,  
 That it may grow and sprout as high as heaven, 60  
 For recordation to my noble husband.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Come, come, go in with me.

'Tis with my mind  
 As with the tide swell'd up unto its height,  
 That makes a still-stand, running neither way : 64  
 Fain would I go to meet the archbishop,  
 But many thousand reasons hold me back.  
 I will resolve for Scotland : there am I, 67  
 Till time and vantage crave my company. [Exit.

SCENE IV.—London. A Room in the Boar's Head Tavern, in Eastcheap.

Enter two Drawers.

FIRST DRAWER. What the devil hast thou brought there ? apple-johns ? thou knowest Sir John cannot endure an apple-john. 3

SECOND DRAWER. Mass, thou sayst true. The prince once set a dish of apple-johns before him, and told him there were five more Sir Johns ; and, putting off his hat, said, ' I will now take my leave of these six dry, round, old withered knights.' It angered him to the heart ; but he hath forgot that. 9

FIRST DRAWER. Why then, cover, and set them down : and see if thou canst find out Sneak's noise ; Mistress Tearsheet would fain hear some music. Dispatch : the room where they supped is too hot ; they'll come in straight. 14

SECOND DRAWER. Sirrah, here will be the prince and Master Poin's anon ; and they will put on two of our jerkins and aprons ; and Sir John must not know of it : Bardolph hath brought word.

FIRST DRAWER. By the mass, here will be old utis : it will be an excellent stratagem. 20

SECOND DRAWER. I'll see if I can find out Sneak. [Exit.

Enter MISTRESS QUICKLY and DOLL TEARSHEET.

QUICKLY. I' faith, sweetheart, methinks now you are in an excellent good temperality : your pulsidge beats as extraordinarily as heart would desire ; and

your colour, I warrant you, is as red as any rose ; in good truth, la ! But, i' faith, you have drunk too much canaries, and that's a marvellous searching wine, and it perfumes the blood ere one can say, What's this ? How do you now ? 29

DOLL. Better than I was : hem !

QUICKLY. Why, that's well said ; a good heart's worth gold. Lo ! here comes Sir John. 32

Enter FALSTAFF, singing.

FALSTAFF. 'When Arthur first in court'—Empty the jordan. [Exit First Drawer.]—'And was a worthy king.' How now, Mistress Doll !

QUICKLY. Sick of a calm : yea, good sooth. 36

FALSTAFF. So is all her sect ; an they be once in a calm they are sick.

DOLL. You muddy rascal, is that all the comfort you give me ? 40

FALSTAFF. You make fat rascals, Mistress Doll.

DOLL. I make them ! gluttony and diseases make them ; I make them not.

FALSTAFF. If the cook help to make the gluttony, you help to make the diseases, Doll : we catch of you, Doll, we catch of you ; grant that, my poor virtue, grant that. 47

DOLL. Ay, marry ; our chains and our jewels.

FALSTAFF. 'Your brooches, pearls, and owches : '—for to serve bravely is to come halting off, you know : to come off the breach with his pike bent bravely, and to surgery bravely ; to venture upon the charged chambers bravely,— 53

DOLL. Hang yourself, you muddy conger, hang yourself !

QUICKLY. By my troth, this is the old fashion ; you two never meet but you fall to some discord : you are both, in good troth, as rheumatic as two dry toasts ; you cannot one bear with another's confirmities. What the good-year ! one must bear, and that must be you : you are the weaker vessel, as they say, the emptier vessel. 62

DOLL. Can a weak empty vessel bear such a huge full hogshead ? there's a whole merchant's venture of Bourdeaux stuff in him : you have not seen a hulk



better stuffed in the hold. Come, I'll be friends with thee, Jack : thou art going to the wars ; and whether I shall ever see thee again or no, there is nobody cares.

Re-enter First Drawer.

FIRST DRAWER. Sir, Ancient Pistol's below, and would speak with you. 70

DOLL. Hang him, swaggering rascal ! let him not come hither : it is the foul-mouthedest rogue in England. 73

QUICKLY. If he swagger, let him not come here : no, by my faith ; I must live amongst my neighbours ; I'll no swaggerers : I am in good name and fame with the very best. Shut the door ; there comes no swaggerers here : I have not lived all this while to have swaggering now : shut the door, I pray you.

FALSTAFF. Dost thou hear, hostess ? 80

QUICKLY. Pray you, pacify yourself, Sir John : there comes no swaggerers here.

FALSTAFF. Dost thou hear ? it is mine ancient.

QUICKLY. Tilly-fally, Sir John, never tell me : your ancient swaggerer comes not in my doors. I was before Master Tisick, the deputy, t'other day ; and, as he said to me,—'twas no longer ago than Wednesday last,—'Neighbour Quickly,' says he ;—Master Dumbe, our minister, was by then ;—'Neighbour Quickly,' says he, 'receive those that are civil, for,' said he, 'you are in an ill name ;' now, a' said so, I can tell whereupon : 'for,' says he, 'you are an honest woman, and well thought on ; therefore take heed what guests you receive : receive,' says he, 'no swaggering companions.' There comes none here :—you would bless you to hear what he said. No, I'll no swaggerers.

FALSTAFF. He's no swaggerer, hostess ; a tame cheater, i' faith ; you may stroke him as gently as a puppy greyhound : he will not swagger with a Barbary hen if her feathers turn back in any show of resistance. Call him up, drawer.

[Exit First Drawer.]

QUICKLY. Cheater, call you him ? I will bar no honest man my house, nor no cheater ; but I do not love swaggering, by my troth ; I am the worse, when one says swagger. Feel, masters, how I shake ; look you, I warrant you. 106

SCENE IV] KING HENRY THE FOURTH

DOLL. So you do, hostess.

QUICKLY. Do I? yea, in very truth, do I, an 'twere  
an aspen leaf: I cannot abide swaggerers. 109

Enter PISTOL, BARDOLPH, and Page.

PISTOL. God save you, Sir John!

FALSTAFF. Welcome, Ancient Pistol. Here, Pistol,  
I charge you with a cup of sack: do you discharge upon  
mine hostess. 113

PISTOL. I will discharge upon her, Sir John, with two  
bullets.

FALSTAFF. She is pistol-proof, sir; you shall hardly  
offend her. 117

QUICKLY. Come, I'll drink no proofs nor no bullets:  
I'll drink no more than will do me good, for no man's  
pleasure, I. 120

PISTOL. Then to you, Mistress Dorothy; I will charge  
you.

DOLL. Charge me! I scorn you, scurvy companion.  
What! you poor, base, rascally, cheating, lack-linen  
mate! Away, you mouldy rogue, away! I am meat  
for your master.

PISTOL. I know you, Mistress Dorothy. 127

DOLL. Away, you cut-purse rascal! you filthy  
bung, away! By this wine, I'll thrust my knife in  
your mouldy chaps an you play the saucy cuttle with  
me. Away, you bottle-ale rascal! you basket-hilt  
stale juggler, you! Since when, I pray you, sir?  
God's light! with two points on your shoulder?  
much!

PISTOL. God let me not live. I will murder your  
ruff for this! 136

FALSTAFF. No more, Pistol: I would not have you  
go off here. Discharge yourself of our company,  
Pistol.

QUICKLY. No, good captain Pistol; not here, sweet  
captain. 141

DOLL. Captain! thou abominable damned cheater,  
art thou not ashamed to be called captain? An cap-  
tains were of my mind, they would truncheon you  
out for taking their names upon you before you have  
earned them. You a captain, you slave! for what?  
for tearing a poor whore's ruff in a bawdy-house?

He a captain! Hang him, rogue! He lives upon mouldy stewed prunes and dried cakes. A captain! God's light, these villains will make the word captain as odious as the word 'occupy', which was an excellent good word before it was ill sorted: therefore captains had need look to it. 153

BARDOLPH. Pray thee, go down, good ancient.

FALSTAFF. Hark thee hither, Mistress Doll.

PISTOL. Not I; I tell thee what, Corporal Bardolph; I could tear her. I'll be revenged of her. 157

PAGE. Pray thee, go down.

PISTOL. I'll see her damned first; to Pluto's damned lake, by this hand, to the infernal deep, with Erebus and tortures vile also. Hold hook and line, say I. Down, down, dogs! down fates! Have we not Hiren here? 163

QUICKLY. Good Captain Peesel, be quiet; it is very late, i' faith. I beseech you now, aggravate your choler.

PISTOL. These be good humours, indeed! Shall pack-horses,  
And hollow pamper'd jades of Asia, 168  
Which cannot go but thirty miles a day,  
Compare with Cæsars, and with Cannibals,  
And Trojan Greeks? nay, rather damn them with  
King Cerberus; and let the welkin roar. 172  
Shall we fall foul for toys?

QUICKLY. By my troth, captain, these are very bitter words.

BARDOLPH. Be gone, good ancient: this will grow to a brawl anon. 177

PISTOL. Die men like dogs! give crowns like pins! Have we not Hiren here?

QUICKLY. O' my word, captain, there's none such here. What the good-year! do you think I would deny her? for God's sake! be quiet.

PISTOL. Then feed, and be fat, my fair Calipolis. Come, give's some sack. 184  
'Si fortuna me tormento, sperato me contento.'

Fear we broadsides? no, let the fiend give fire:  
Give me some sack; and, sweetheart, lie thou there.

[Laying down his sword.]

Come we to full points here, and are et ceteras nothing?

FALSTAFF. Pistol, I would be quiet. 189

PISTOL. Sweet knight, I kiss thy neif. What! we have seen the seven stars.

DOLL. For God's sake, thrust him down stairs! I cannot endure such a fustian rascal. 193

PISTOL. 'Thrust him down stairs!' know we not Galloway nags?

FALSTAFF. Quoit him down, Bardolph, like a shove-groat shilling: nay, an a' do nothing but speak nothing, a' shall be nothing here.

BARDOLPH. Come, get you down stairs. 199

PISTOL. What! shall we have incision? Shall we imbrue? [Snatching up his sword.

Then death rock me asleep, abridge my doleful days!

Why then, let grievous, ghastly, gaping wounds

Untwine the Sisters Three! Come, Atropos, I say!

QUICKLY. Here's goodly stuff toward! 204

FALSTAFF. Give me my rapier, boy.

DOLL. I pray thee, Jack, I pray thee, do not draw.

FALSTAFF. Get you down stairs. [Drawing.

QUICKLY. Here's a goodly tumult! I'll forswear keeping house, afore I'll be in these tirrits and frights. So; murder, I warrant now. Alas, alas! put up your naked weapons; put up your naked weapons. 211

[Exeunt BARDOLPH and PISTOL.

DOLL. I pray thee, Jack, be quiet; the rascal's gone. Ah! you whoreson little valiant villain, you!

QUICKLY. Are you not hurt i' the groin? methought a' made a shrewd thrust at your belly. 215

Re-enter BARDOLPH.

FALSTAFF. Have you turned him out o' doors?

BARDOLPH. Yes, sir: the rascal's drunk. You have hurt him, sir, i' the shoulder.

FALSTAFF. A rascal, to brave me! 219

DOLL. Ah, you sweet little rogue, you! Alas, poor ape, how thou sweatest! Come, let me wipe thy face; come on, you whoreson chops. Ah, rogue! i' faith, I love thee. Thou art as valorous as Hector of Troy, worth five of Agamemnon, and ten times better than the Nine Worthies. Ah, villain! 225

FALSTAFF. A rascally slave! I will toss the rogue in a blanket.

DOLL. Do, an thou darest for thy heart : an thou dost, I'll canvass thee between a pair of sheets. 229

Enter Music.

PAGE. The music is come, sir.

FALSTAFF. Let them play. Play, sirs. Sit on my knee, Doll. A rascal bragging slave ! the rogue fled from me like quicksilver. 233

DOLL. I' faith, and thou followedst him like a church. Thou whoreson little tidy Bartholomew boar-pig, when wilt thou leave fighting o' days, and foining o' nights, and begin to patch up thine old body for heaven ?

Enter, behind, the PRINCE and POINS, disguised like Drawers.

FALSTAFF. Peace, good Doll ! do not speak like a death's head : do not bid me remember mine end.

DOLL. Sirrah, what humour is the prince of ? 241

FALSTAFF. A good shallow young fellow : a' would have made a good pantler, a' would have chipped bread well. 244

DOLL. They say, Poins has a good wit.

FALSTAFF. He a good wit ! hang him, baboon ! his wit is as thick as Tewksbury mustard : there is no more conceit in him than is in a mallet. 248

DOLL. Why does the prince love him so, then ?

FALSTAFF. Because their legs are both of a bigness, and he plays at quoits well, and eats conger and fennel, and drinks off candles' ends for flap-dragons, and rides the wild mare with the boys, and jumps upon joint-stools, and swears with a good grace, and wears his boots very smooth, like unto the sign of the leg, and breeds no bate with telling of discreet stories ; and such other gambol faculties a' has, that show a weak mind and an able body, for the which the prince admits him : for the prince himself is such another ; the weight of a hair will turn the scales between their avoirdupois. 261

PRINCE. Would not this nave of a wheel have his ears cut off ?

POINS. Let's beat him before his whore. 264

PRINCE. Look, whether the withered elder hath not his poll clawed like a parrot.

POINS. Is it not strange that desire should so many years outlive performance ? 268

SCENE IV.] KING HENRY THE FOURTH

FALSTAFF. Kiss me, Doll.

PRINCE. Saturn and Venus this year in conjunction !  
what says the almanack to that ? 271

POINS. And, look, whether the fiery Trigon, his man,  
be not lisping to his master's old tables, his note-book,  
his counsel-keeper.

FALSTAFF. Thou dost give me flattering busses.

DOLL. By my troth, I kiss thee with a most constant  
heart. 277

FALSTAFF. I am old, I am old.

DOLL. I love thee better than I love e'er a scurvy  
young boy of them all. 280

FALSTAFF. What stuff wilt have a kirtle of ? I  
shall receive money o' Thursday ; thou shalt have  
a cap to-morrow. A merry song ! come : it grows  
late ; we'll to bed. Thou'lt forget me when I am  
gone. 285

DOLL. By my troth, thou'lt set me a-weeping an thou  
sayst so : prove that ever I dress myself handsome till  
thy return. Well, hearken at the end. 288

FALSTAFF. Some sack, Francis !

PRINCE. }  
POINS. } [Coming forward.] Anon, anon, sir.

FALSTAFF. Ha ! a bastard son of the king's ? And  
art not thou Poins his brother ? 292

PRINCE. Why, thou globe of sinful continents, what  
a life dost thou lead !

FALSTAFF. A better than thou : I am a gentleman ;  
thou art a drawer. 296

PRINCE. Very true, sir ; and I come to draw you out  
by the ears.

QUICKLY. O ! the Lord preserve thy good Grace ;  
by my troth, welcome to London. Now, the Lord bless  
that sweet face of thine ! O Jesu ! are you come from  
Wales ? 302

FALSTAFF. Thou whoreson mad compound of majesty,  
by this light flesh and corrupt blood [Pointing to DOLL], thou  
art welcome. 305

DOLL. How, you fat fool ! I scorn you.

POINS. My lord, he will drive you out of your  
revenge and turn all to a merriment, if you take not the  
heat. 309

PRINCE. You whoreson candle-mine, you, how vilely

did you speak of me even now before this honest, virtuous, civil gentlewoman ! 312

QUICKLY. Blessing on your good heart ! and so she is, by my troth.

FALSTAFF. Didst thou hear me ? 315

PRINCE. Yea ; and you knew me, as you did when you ran away by Gadshill : you knew I was at your back, and spoke it on purpose to try my patience.

FALSTAFF. No, no, no ; not so ; I did not think thou wast within hearing. 321

PRINCE. I shall drive you then to confess the wilful abuse ; and then I know how to handle you.

FALSTAFF. No abuse, Hal, o' mine honour ; no abuse.

PRINCE. Not to dispraise me, and call me pantler and bread-chipper and I know not what ?

FALSTAFF. No abuse, Hal.

POINS. No abuse ! 328

FALSTAFF. No abuse, Ned, in the world ; honest Ned, none. I dispraised him before the wicked, that the wicked might not fall in love with him ; in which doing I have done the part of a careful friend and a true subject, and thy father is to give me thanks for it. No abuse, Hal ; none, Ned, none : no, faith, boys, none. 335

PRINCE. See now, whether pure fear and entire cowardice doth not make thee wrong this virtuous gentlewoman to close with us. Is she of the wicked ? Is thine hostess here of the wicked ? Or is thy boy of the wicked ? Or honest Bardolph, whose zeal burns in his nose, of the wicked ? 341

POINS. Answer, thou dead elm, answer.

FALSTAFF. The fiend hath pricked down Bardolph irrecoverable ; and his face is Lucifer's privy-kitchen, where he doth nothing but roast malt-worms. For the boy, there is a good angel about him ; but the devil outbids him too.

PRINCE. For the women ? 348

FALSTAFF. For one of them, she is in hell already, and burns poor souls. For the other, I owe her money ; and whether she be damned for that, I know not.

QUICKLY. No, I warrant you. 352

FALSTAFF. No, I think thou art not ; I think thou

art quit for that. Marry, there is another indictment upon thee, for suffering flesh to be eaten in thy house, contrary to the law ; for the which I think thou wilt howl. 357

QUICKLY. All victuallers do so : what's a joint of mutton or two in a whole Lent ?

PRINCE. You, gentlewoman,— 360

DOLL. What says your Grace ?

FALSTAFF. His grace says that which his flesh rebels against. [Knocking within. 365

QUICKLY. Who knocks so loud at door ? Look to the door there, Francis. 365

Enter PETO.

PRINCE. Peto, how now ! what news ?

PETO. The king your father is at Westminster ; And there are twenty weak and wearied posts 368 Come from the north : and as I came along, I met and overtook a dozen captains, Bare-headed, sweating, knocking at the taverns, And asking every one for Sir John Falstaff. 372

PRINCE. By heaven, Poins, I feel me much to blame, So idly to profane the precious time, When tempest of commotion, like the south, Borne with black vapour, doth begin to melt 376 And drop upon our bare unarmed heads. Give me my sword and cloak. Falstaff, good night.

[Exeunt the PRINCE, POINS, PETO, and BARDOLPH.

FALSTAFF. Now comes in the sweetest morsel of the night, and we must hence and leave it unpicked. [Knocking within.] More knocking at the door ! 381

Re-enter BARDOLPH.

How now ! what's the matter ?

BARDOLPH. You must away to court, sir, presently ; A dozen captains stay at door for you. 384

FALSTAFF. [To the Page.] Pay the musicians, sirrah. Farewell, hostess ; farewell, Doll. You see, my good wenches, how men of merit are sought after : the undeserver may sleep when the man of action is called on. Farewell, good wenches. If I be not sent away post, I will see you again ere I go.

DOLL. I cannot speak ; if my heart be not ready to burst,—well, sweet Jack, have a care of thyself. . 392



FALSTAFF. Farewell, farewell.

[Exeunt FALSTAFF and BARDOLPH.]

QUICKLY. Well, fare thee well : I have known thee these twenty-nine years, come peascod-time ; but an honestest, and truer-hearted man—well, fare thee well.

BARDOLPH. [Within.] Mistress Tearsheet ! 397

QUICKLY. What's the matter ?

BARDOLPH. [Within.] Bid Mistress Tearsheet come to my master. 400

QUICKLY. O ! run, Doll, run ; run, good Doll. [Exeunt.]

### ACT III.

SCENE I.—Westminster. A Room in the Palace.

Enter KING HENRY in his nightgown, with a Page.

KING HENRY. Go, call the Earls of Surrey and of Warwick ;

But, ere they come, bid them o'er-read these letters,  
And well consider of them. Make good speed. [Exit Page.]

How many thousand of my poorest subjects 4

Are at this hour asleep ! O sleep ! O gentle sleep !

Nature's soft nurse, how have I frighted thee,

That thou no more wilt weigh my eyelids down

And steep my senses in forgetfulness ? 8

Why rather, sleep, liest thou in smoky cribs,

Upon uneasy pallets stretching thee,

And hush'd with buzzing night-flies to thy slumber,

Than in the perfum'd chambers of the great, 12

Under the canopies of costly state,

And lull'd with sound of sweetest melody ?

O thou dull god ! why liest thou with the vile

In loathsome beds, and leav'st the kingly couch 16

A watch-case or a common 'larum bell ?

Wilt thou upon the high and giddy mast

Seel up the ship-boy's eyes, and rock his brains

In cradle of the rude imperious surge, 20

And in the visitation of the winds,

Who take the ruffian billows by the top,

Ourling their monstrous heads, and hanging them

With deaf'ning clamour in the slippery clouds, 24

That with the hurly death itself awakes ?

**ACT III, SC. I.] KING HENRY THE FOURTH**

Canst thou, O partial sleep ! give thy repose  
To the wet sea-boy in an hour so rude,  
And in the calmest and most stillest night, 28  
With all appliances and means to boot,  
Deny it to a king ? Then, happy low, lie down !  
Uneasy lies the head that wears a crown.

Enter WARWICK and SURREY.

WARWICK. Many good morrows to your majesty !

KING HENRY. Is it good morrow, lords ? 33

WARWICK. 'Tis one o'clock, and past.

KING HENRY. Why then, good morrow to you all, my lords.

Have you read o'er the letters that I sent you ? 36

WARWICK. We have, my liege.

KING HENRY. Then you perceive the body of our kingdom,

How foul it is ; what rank diseases grow,  
And with what danger, near the heart of it. 40

WARWICK. It is but as a body, yet, distemper'd,  
Which to his former strength may be restor'd  
With good advice and little medicine :

My Lord Northumberland will soon be cool'd. 44

KING HENRY. O God ! that one might read the book  
of fate,

And see the revolution of the times  
Make mountains level, and the continent,—  
Weary of solid firmness,—melt itself 48  
Into the sea ! and, other times, to see  
The beachy girdle of the ocean

Too wide for Neptune's hips ; how chances mock,  
And changes fill the cup of alteration 52

With divers liquors ! O ! if this were seen,  
The happiest youth, viewing his progress through,  
What perils past, what crosses to ensue,  
Would shut the book, and sit him down and die. 56

'Tis not ten years gone

Since Richard and Northumberland, great friends,  
Did feast together, and in two years after

Were they at wars : it is but eight years since 60

This Percy was the man nearest my soul,  
Who like a brother toil'd in my affairs  
And laid his love and life under my foot ;

Yea, for my sake, even to the eyes of Richard 64  
 Gave him defiance. But which of you was by,—  
 [To WARWICK.] You, cousin Nevil, as I may remember,—  
 When Richard, with his eye brimful of tears,  
 Then check'd and rated by Northumberland, 68  
 Did speak these words, now prov'd a prophecy ?  
 ' Northumberland, thou ladder, by the which  
 My cousin Bolingbroke ascends my throne ;'  
 Though then, God knows, I had no such intent, 72  
 But that necessity so bow'd the state  
 That I and greatness were compelled to kiss :  
 ' The time shall come,' thus did he follow it,  
 ' The time will come, that foul sin, gathering head,  
 Shall break into corruption : '—so went on, 77  
 Foretelling this same time's condition  
 And the division of our amity.

WARWICK. There is a history in all men's lives,  
 Figuring the nature of the times deceas'd ; 81  
 The which observ'd, a man may prophesy,  
 With a near aim, of the main chance of things  
 As yet not come to life, which in their seeds 84  
 And weak beginnings lie intreasured.  
 Such things become the hatch and brood of time ;  
 And by the necessary form of this  
 King Richard might create a perfect guess 88  
 That great Northumberland, then false to him,  
 Would of that seed grow to a greater falseness,  
 Which should not find a ground to root upon,  
 Unless on you.

KING HENRY. Are these things then necessities ?  
 Then let us meet them like necessities ; 93  
 And that same word even now cries out on us.  
 They say the bishop and Northumberland  
 Are fifty thousand strong.

WARWICK. It cannot be, my lord ! 96  
 Rumour doth double, like the voice and echo,  
 The numbers of the fear'd. Please it your Grace  
 To go to bed : upon my soul, my lord,  
 The powers that you already have sent forth 100  
 Shall bring this prize in very easily.  
 To comfort you the more, I have receiv'd  
 A certain instance that Glendower is dead.  
 Your majesty hath been this fortnight ill, 104

And these unseason'd hours perforce must add  
Unto your sickness.

KING HENRY. I will take your counsel :  
And were these inward wars once out of hand,  
We would, dear lords, unto the Holy Land.

107

[Exeunt.]

SCENE II.—Court before JUSTICE SHALLOW's House in  
Gloucestershire.

Enter SHALLOW and SILENCE, meeting; MOULDY, SHADOW,  
WART, FEEBLE, BULLCALEF, and Servants, behind.

SHALLOW. Come on, come on, come on, sir; give  
me your hand, sir, give me your hand, sir; an early  
stirrer, by the rood! And how doth my good cousin  
Silence?

4

SILENCE. Good morrow, good cousin Shallow.

SHALLOW. And how doth my cousin, your bed-  
fellow? and your fairest daughter and mine, my god-  
daughter Ellen?

8

SILENCE. Alas! a black ousel, cousin Shallow!

SHALLOW. By yea and nay, sir, I dare say my cousin  
William is become a good scholar. He is at Oxford still,  
is he not?

12

SILENCE. Indeed, sir, to my cost.

SHALLOW. A' must, then, to the inns o' court shortly.  
I was once of Clement's Inn; where I think they will  
talk of mad Shallow yet.

16

SILENCE. You were called 'lusty Shallow' then,  
cousin.

SHALLOW. By the mass, I was called any thing; and  
I would have done any thing indeed too, and roundly  
too. There was I, and Little John Doit of Staffordshire,  
and black George Barnes, and Francis Pickbone, and  
Will Squele, a Cotswold man; you had not four such  
swinge-bucklers in all the inns of court again: and,  
I may say to you, we knew where the bona-robas were,  
and had the best of them all at commandment. Then  
was Jack Falstaff, now Sir John, a boy, and page to  
Thomas Mowbray, Duke of Norfolk.

28

SILENCE. This Sir John, cousin, that comes hither  
anon about soldiers?

SHALLOW. The same Sir John, the very same.  
I saw him break Skogan's head at the court-gate, when

a' was a crack not thus high : and the very same day did I fight with one Sampson Stockfish, a fruiterer, behind Gray's Inn. Jesu ! Jesu ! the mad days that I have spent ; and to see how many of mine old acquaintance are dead ! 37

SILENCE. We shall all follow, cousin.

SHALLOW. Certain, 'tis certain ; very sure, very sure : death, as the Psalmist saith, is certain to all ; all shall die. How a good yoke of bullocks at Stamford fair ? 42

SILENCE. Truly, cousin, I was not there.

SHALLOW. Death is certain. Is old Double of your town living yet ? 45

SILENCE. Dead, sir.

SHALLOW. Jesu ! Jesu ! dead ! a' drew a good bow ; and dead ! a' shot a fine shoot : John a Gaunt loved him well, and betted much money on his head. Dead ! a' would have clapped i' the clout at twelve score ; and carried you a forehand shaft a fourteen and fourteen and a half, that it would have done a man's heart good to see. How a score of ewes now ? 53

SILENCE. Thereafter as they be : a score of good ewes may be worth ten pounds.

SHALLOW. And is old Double dead ? 56

SILENCE. Here come two of Sir John Falstaff's men, as I think.

Enter BARDOLPH, and one with him.

BARDOLPH. Good morrow, honest gentlemen : I beseech you, which is Justice Shallow ? 60

SHALLOW. I am Robert Shallow, sir ; a poor esquire of this county, and one of the king's justices of the peace : what is your good pleasure with me ? 63

BARDOLPH. My captain, sir, commends him to you ; my captain, Sir John Falstaff : a tall gentleman, by heaven, and a most gallant leader.

SHALLOW. He greets me well, sir. I knew him a good backword man. How doth the good knight ? may I ask how my lady his wife doth ? 69

BARDOLPH. Sir, pardon ; a soldier is better accommodated than with a wife.

SHALLOW. It is well said, in faith, sir ; and it is well said indeed too. ' Better accommodated ! ' it is good ; yea indeed, is it : good phrases are surely and ever were,

very commendable. Accommodated ! it comes of 'accommodo' : very good ; a good phrase. 76

BARDOLPH. Pardon me, sir ; I have heard the word. 'Phrase,' call you it ? By this good day, I know not the phrase ; but I will maintain the word with my sword to be a soldier-like word, and a word of exceeding good command, by heaven. Accommodated ; that is, when a man is, as they say, accommodated ; or, when a man is, being, whereby a' may be thought to be accommodated, which is an excellent thing. 84

Enter FALSTAFF.

SHALLOW. It is very just. Look, here comes good Sir John. Give me your good hand, give me your worship's good hand. By my troth, you look well and bear your years very well : welcome, good Sir John. 89

FALSTAFF. I am glad to see you well, good Master Robert Shallow. Master Surecard, as I think.

SHALLOW. No, Sir John ; it is my cousin, Silence, in commission with me. 93

FALSTAFF. Good Master Silence, it well befits you should be of the peace.

SILENCE. Your good worship is welcome. 96

FALSTAFF. Fie ! this is hot weather, gentlemen. Have you provided me here half a dozen sufficient men ?

SHALLOW. Marry, have we, sir. Will you sit ?

FALSTAFF. Let me see them, I beseech you. 100

SHALLOW. Where's the roll ? where's the roll ? where's the roll ? Let me see, let me see, let me see. So, so, so, so, so, so, so, so : yea, marry, sir : Ralph Mouldy ! let them appear as I call ; let them do so, let them do so. Let me see ; where is Mouldy ? 105

MOULDY. Here, an't please you.

SHALLOW. What think you, Sir John ? a good-limbed fellow ; young, strong, and of good friends.

FALSTAFF. Is thy name Mouldy ?

MOULDY. Yea, an't please you. 110

FALSTAFF. 'Tis the more time thou wert used.

SHALLOW. Ha, ha, ha ! most excellent, i' faith ! things that are mouldy lack use : very singular good. In faith, well said, Sir John ; very well said.

FALSTAFF. Prick him. 115

MOULDY. I was pricked well enough before, an you could have let me alone : my old dame will be undone now for one to do her husbandry and her drudgery : you need not to have pricked me ; there are other men fitter to go out than I. 120

FALSTAFF. Go to : peace, Mouldy ! you shall go. Mouldy, it is time you were spent.

MOULDY. Spent ! 123

SHALLOW. Peace, fellow, peace ! stand aside : know you where you are ? For the other, Sir John : let me see. Simon Shadow !

FALSTAFF. Yea, marry, let me have him to sit under : he 's like to be a cold soldier. 128

SHALLOW. Where 's Shadow ?

SHADOW. Here, sir.

FALSTAFF. Shadow, whose son art thou ?

SHADOW. My mother's son, sir. 132

FALSTAFF. Thy mother's son ! like enough, and thy father's shadow : so the son of the female is the shadow of the male : it is often so, indeed ; but not of the father's substance. 136

SHALLOW. Do you like him, Sir John ?

FALSTAFF. Shadow will serve for summer ; prick him, for we have a number of shadows to fill up the muster-book. 140

SHALLOW. Thomas Wart !

FALSTAFF. Where 's he ?

WART. Here, sir. 141

FALSTAFF. Is thy name Wart ? 144

WART. Yea, sir.

FALSTAFF. Thou art a very ragged wart.

SHALLOW. Shall I prick him, Sir John ? 147

FALSTAFF. It were superfluous ; for his apparel is built upon his back, and the whole frame stands upon pins : prick him no more.

SHALLOW. Ha, ha, ha ! you can do it, sir ; you can do it : I commend you well. Francis Feeble ! 152

FEEBLE. Here, sir.

FALSTAFF. What trade art thou, Feeble ?

FEEBLE. A woman's tailor, sir.

SHALLOW. Shall I prick him, sir ? 156

FALSTAFF. You may ; but if he had been a man's tailor he'd have pricked you. Wilt thou make as many

holes in an enemy's battle as thou hast done in a woman's petticoat ? 160

FEEBLE. I will do my good will, sir : you can have no more.

FALSTAFF. Well said, good woman's tailor ! well said, courageous Feeble ! Thou wilt be as valiant as the wrathful dove or most magnanimous mouse. Prick the woman's tailor ; well, Master Shallow ; deep, Master Shallow. 167

FEEBLE. I would Wart might have gone, sir.

FALSTAFF. I would thou wert a man's tailor, that thou mightst mend him, and make him fit to go. I cannot put him to a private soldier that is the leader of so many thousands : let that suffice, most forcible Feeble.

FEEBLE. It shall suffice, sir.

FALSTAFF. I am bound to thee, reverend Feeble. Who is next ? 176

SHALLOW. Peter Bullcalf o' the green !

FALSTAFF. Yea, marry, let's see Bullcalf.

BULLCALF. Here, sir.

FALSTAFF. 'Fore God, a likely fellow ! Come, prick me Bullcalf till he roar again. 181

BULLCALF. O Lord ! good my lord captain,—

FALSTAFF. What ! dost thou roar before thou art pricked ? 184

BULLCALF. O Lord, sir ! I am a diseased man.

FALSTAFF. What disease hast thou ?

BULLCALF. A whoreson cold, sir ; a cough, sir, which I caught with ringing in the king's affairs upon his coronation day, sir. 189

FALSTAFF. Come, thou shalt go to the wars in a gown ; we will have away thy cold ; and I will take such order that thy friends shall ring for thee. Is here all ? 193

SHALLOW. Here is two more called than your number ; you must have but four here, sir : and so, I pray you, go in with me to dinner. 196

FALSTAFF. Come, I will go drink with you, but I cannot tarry dinner. I am glad to see you, by my troth, Master Shallow. 199

SHALLOW. O, Sir John, do you remember since we lay all night in the windmill in Saint George's fields ?



FALSTAFF. No more of that, good Master Shallow, no more of that.

SHALLOW. Ha ! it was a merry night. And is Jane Nightwork alive ? 205

FALSTAFF. She lives, Master Shallow.

SHALLOW. She never could away with me.

FALSTAFF. Never, never ; she would always say she could not abide Master Shallow. 209

SHALLOW. By the mass, I could anger her to the heart. She was then a bona-roba. Doth she hold her own well ? 212

FALSTAFF. Old, old, Master Shallow.

SHALLOW. Nay, she must be old ; she cannot choose but be old ; certain she 's old ; and had Robin Nightwork by old Nightwork before I came to Clement's Inn.

SILENCE. That 's fifty-five year ago. 217

SHALLOW. Ha ! cousin Silence, that thou hadst seen that that this knight and I have seen. Ha ! Sir John, said I well ? 220

FALSTAFF. We have heard the chimes at midnight, Master Shallow.

SHALLOW. That we have, that we have, that we have ; in faith, Sir John, we have. Our watchword was, ' Hem, boys ! ' Come, let 's to dinner ; come, let 's to dinner. Jesus, the days that we have seen ! Come, come.

[Exeunt FALSTAFF, SHALLOW, and SILENCE.]

BULLCalf. Good Master Corporate Bardolph, stand my friend, and here 's four Harry ten shillings in French crowns for you. In very truth, sir, I had as lief be hanged, sir, as go : and yet, for mine own part, sir, I do not care ; but rather, because I am unwilling, and, for mine own part, have a desire to stay with my friends : else, sir, I did not care, for mine own part, so much.

BARDOLPH. Go to ; stand aside. 236

MOULDY. And, good Master corporal captain, for my old dame's sake, stand my friend : she has nobody to do any thing about her, when I am gone ; and she is old, and cannot help herself. You shall have forty, sir. 241

BARDOLPH. Go to ; stand aside.

FEEBLE. By my troth, I care not ; a man can die but once ; we owe God a death. I'll ne'er bear a base

mind : an't be my destiny, so ; an't be not, so. No man's too good to serve's prince ; and let it go which way it will, he that dies this year is quit for the next.

BARDOLPH. Well said ; thou'rt a good fellow. 248

FEEBLE. Faith, I'll bear no base mind.

Re-enter FALSTAFF and the Justices.

FALSTAFF. Come, sir, which men shall I have ?

SHALLOW. Four, of which you please.

BARDOLPH. [To FALSTAFF.] Sir, a word with you. I have three pound to free Mouldy and Bullcalf. 253

FALSTAFF. [Aside to BARDOLPH.] Go to ; well.

SHALLOW. Come, Sir John, which four will you have ? 256

FALSTAFF. Do you choose for me.

SHALLOW. Marry, then, Mouldy, Bullcalf, Feeble, and Shadow. 259

FALSTAFF. Mouldy, and Bullcalf : for you, Mouldy, stay at home till you are past service : and for your part, Bullcalf, grow till you come unto it : I will none of you. 263

SHALLOW. Sir John, Sir John, do not yourself wrong : they are your likeliest men, and I would have you served with the best. 266

FALSTAFF. Will you tell me, Master Shallow, how to choose a man ? Care I for the limb, the thewes, the stature, bulk, and big assemblance of a man ! Give me the spirit, Master Shallow. Here's Wart ; you see what a ragged appearance it is : a' shall charge you and discharge you with the motion of a pewterer's hammer, come off and on swifter than he that gibbets on the brewer's bucket. And this same half-faced fellow, Shadow, give me this man : he presents no mark to the enemy ; the foeman may with as great aim level at the edge of a penknife. And, for a retreat ; how swiftly will this Feeble the woman's tailor run off ! O ! give me the spare men, and spare me the great ones. Put me a caliver into Wart's hand, Bardolph. 280

BARDOLPH. Hold, Wart, traverse ; thus, thus, thus.

FALSTAFF. Come, manage me your caliver. So : very well : go to : very good : exceeding good. O, give me always a little, lean, old, chopp'd, bald shot. Well said, i' faith, Wart ; thou'rt a good scab : hold, there's a tester for thee. 286

SHALLOW. He is not his craft's master, he doth not do it right. I remember at Mile-end Green, when I lay at Clement's Inn,—I was then Sir Dagonet in Arthur's show,—there was a little quiver fellow, and a' would manage you his piece thus : and a' would about and about, and come you in, and come you in ; 'rah, tah, tah,' would a' say ; 'bounce,' would a' say ; and away again would a' go, and again would a' come : I shall never see such a fellow. 295

FALSTAFF. These fellows will do well, Master Shallow. God keep you, Master Silence : I will not use many words with you. Fare you well, gentlemen both : I thank you : I must a dozen mile to-night. Bardolph, give the soldiers coats. 300

SHALLOW. Sir John, the Lord bless you ! and prosper your affairs ! God send us peace ! At your return visit our house ; let our old acquaintance be renewed : peradventure I will with ye to the court. 304

FALSTAFF. 'Fore God, I would you would, Master Shallow.

SHALLOW. Go to ; I have spoke at a word. God keep you. 308

FALSTAFF. Fare you well, gentle gentlemen. [Exeunt SHALLOW and SILENCE.] On, Bardolph ; lead the men away. [Exeunt BARDOLPH, Recruits, &c.] As I return, I will fetch off these justices : I do see the bottom of Justice Shallow. Lord, Lord ! how subject we old men are to this vice of lying. This same starved justice hath done nothing but prate to me of the wildness of his youth and the feats he hath done about Turnbull Street ; and every third word a lie, duer paid to the hearer than the Turk's tribute. I do remember him at Clement's Inn like a man made after supper of a cheese-paring : when a' was naked he was for all the world like a forked radish, with a head fantastically carved upon it with a knife : a' was so forlorn that his dimensions to any thick sight were invincible : a' was the very genius of famine ; yet lecherous as a monkey, and the whores called him mandrake : a' came ever in the rearward of the fashion and sung those tunes to the over-scutched huswives that he heard the carmen whistle, and sware they were his fancies or his good-nights. And now is this Vice's dagger become a squire, and talks as

familiarly of John a Gaunt as if he had been sworn brother to him ; and I'll be sworn a' never saw him but once in the Tilt-yard, and then he burst his head for crowding among the marshal's men. I saw it and told John a Gaunt he beat his own name ; for you might have thrust him and all his apparel into an eel-skin ; the case of a treble hautboy was a mansion for him, a court ; and now has he land and beefs. Well, I will be acquainted with him, if I return ; and it shall go hard but I will make him a philosopher's two stones to me. If the young dace be a bait for the old pike, I see no reason in the law of nature but I may snap at him. Let time shape, and there an end. [Exit.

## ACT IV.

SCENE I.—A Forest in Yorkshire.

Enter the ARCHBISHOP OF YORK, MOWBRAY, HASTINGS, and Others.

ARCHBISHOP. What is this forest call'd ?

HASTINGS. 'Tis Gaultree Forest, an 't shall please your Grace.

ARCHBISHOP. Here stand, my lords, and send discoverers forth,

To know the numbers of our enemies. 4

HASTINGS. We have sent forth already.

ARCHBISHOP. 'Tis well done.

My friends and brethren in these great affairs,

I must acquaint you that I have receiv'd

New-dated letters from Northumberland ; 8

Their cold intent, tenour and substance, thus :

Here doth he wish his person, with such powers

As might hold sortance with his quality ;

The which he could not levy ; whereupon 12

He is retir'd, to ripe his growing fortunes,

To Scotland ; and concludes in hearty prayers

That your attempts may overlive the hazard

And fearful meeting of their opposite. 16

MOWBRAY. Thus do the hopes we have in him touch ground

And dash themselves to pieces.

Enter a Messenger.

HASTINGS.

Now, what news ?

MESSANGER. West of this forest, scarcely off a mile,  
In goodly form comes on the enemy ;  
And, by the ground they hide, I judge their number  
Upon or near the rate of thirty thousand. 20

MOWBRAY. The just proportion that we gave them out.  
Let us sway on and face them in the field. 24

Enter WESTMORELAND.

ARCHBISHOP. What well-appointed leader fronts us  
here ?

MOWBRAY. I think it is my Lord of Westmoreland.

WESTMORELAND. Health and fair greeting from our  
general,  
The Prince, Lord John and Duke of Lancaster. 28

ARCHBISHOP. Say on, my Lord of Westmoreland, in  
peace,  
What doth concern your coming.

WESTMORELAND. Then, my lord,  
Unto your Grace do I in chief address  
The substance of my speech. If that rebellion 32  
Came like itself, in base and abject routs,  
Led on by bloody youth, guarded with rags,  
And countenanc'd by boys and beggary ;  
I say, if damn'd commotion so appear'd, 36  
In his true, native, and most proper shape,  
You, reverend father, and these noble lords  
Had not been here, to dress the ugly form  
Of base and bloody insurrection 40  
With your fair honours. You, lord archbishop,  
Whose see is by a civil peace maintain'd,  
Whose beard the silver hand of peace hath touch'd,  
Whose learning and good letters peace hath tutor'd,  
Whose white investments figure innocence, 45  
The dove and very blessed spirit of peace,  
Wherefore do you so ill translate yourself  
Out of the speech of peace that bears such grace 48  
Into the harsh and boisterous tongue of war ;  
Turning your books to greaves, your ink to blood,  
Your pens to lances, and your tongue divine  
To a loud trumpet and a point of war ? 52

ARCHBISHOP. Wherefore do I this? so the question stands.

Briefly to this end : we are all diseas'd ;  
 And, with our surfeiting and wanton hours  
 Have brought ourselves into a burning fever, 56  
 And we must bleed for it : of which disease  
 Our late king, Richard, being infected, died.  
 But, my most noble Lord of Westmoreland,  
 I take not on me here as a physician, 60  
 Nor do I as an enemy to peace  
 Troop in the throngs of military men ;  
 But rather show a while like fearful war,  
 To diet rank minds sick of happiness 64  
 And purge the obstructions which begin to stop  
 Our very veins of life. Hear me more plainly :  
 I have in equal balance justly weigh'd  
 What wrongs our arms may do, what wrongs we suffer,  
 And find our griefs heavier than our offences. 68  
 We see which way the stream of time doth run  
 And are enforc'd from our most quiet sphere  
 By the rough torrent of occasion ; 72  
 And have the summary of all our griefs,  
 When time shall serve, to show in articles,  
 Which long ere this we offer'd to the king,  
 And might by no suit gain our audience. 76  
 When we are wrong'd and would unfold our griefs,  
 We are denied access unto his person  
 Even by those men that most have done us wrong.  
 The dangers of the days but newly gone,— 80  
 Whose memory is written on the earth  
 With yet appearing blood,—and the examples  
 Of every minute's instance, present now,  
 Have put us in these ill-beseeming arms ; 84  
 Not to break peace, or any branch of it,  
 But to establish here a peace indeed,  
 Concurring both in name and quality.

WESTMORELAND. When ever yet was your appeal denied ? 88

Wherein have you been galled by the king ?  
 What peer hath been suborn'd to grate on you,  
 That you should seal this lawless bloody book  
 Of forg'd rebellion with a seal divine, 92  
 And consecrate commotion's bitter edge ?

ARCHBISHOP. My brother general, the commonwealth,  
To brother born an household cruelty,  
I make my quarrel in particular. 96

WESTMORELAND. There is no need of any such redress ;  
Or if there were, it not belongs to you.

MOWBRAY. Why not to him in part, and to us all  
That feel the bruises of the days before, 100  
And suffer the condition of these times  
To lay a heavy and unequal hand  
Upon our honours ?

WESTMORELAND. O ! my good Lord Mowbray,  
Construe the times to their necessities, 104  
And you shall say indeed, it is the time,  
And not the king, that doth you injuries.  
Yet, for your part, it not appears to me  
Either from the king or in the present time 108  
That you should have an inch of any ground  
To build a grief on : were you not restor'd  
To all the Duke of Norfolk's signories,  
Your noble and right well-remember'd father's ? 112

MOWBRAY. What thing, in honour, had my father lost,  
That need to be reviv'd and breath'd in me ?  
The king that lov'd him as the state stood then,  
Was force perforce compell'd to banish him : 116  
And then that Harry Bolingbroke and he,  
Being mounted and both roused in their seats,  
Their neighing coursers daring of the spur, 119  
Their armed staves in charge, their beavers down,  
Their eyes of fire sparkling through sights of steel,  
And the loud trumpet blowing them together,  
Then, then, when there was nothing could have stay'd  
My father from the breast of Bolingbroke, 124  
O ! when the king did throw his warder down,  
His own life hung upon the staff he threw ;  
Then threw he down himself and all their lives  
That by indictment and by dint of sword 128  
Have since miscarried under Bolingbroke.

WESTMORELAND. You speak, Lord Mowbray, now you  
know not what.  
The Earl of Hereford was reputed then  
In England the most valiant gentleman : 132  
Who knows on whom Fortune would then have smil'd ?  
But if your father had been victor there,

He ne'er had borne it out of Coventry ;  
For all the country in a general voice 136  
Cried hate upon him ; and all their prayers and love  
Were set on Hereford, whom they doted on  
And bless'd and grac'd indeed, more than the king.  
But this is mere digression from my purpose. 140

Here come I from our princely general  
To know your griefs ; to tell you from his Grace  
That he will give you audience ; and wherein 144  
It shall appear that your demands are just,  
You shall enjoy them ; every thing set off  
That might so much as think you enemies.

MOWBRAY. But he hath forc'd us to compel this offer,  
And it proceeds from policy, not love. 148

WESTMORELAND. Mowbray, you overween to take it so.  
This offer comes from mercy, not from fear :

For, lo ! within a ken our army lies  
Upon mine honour, all too confident 152  
To give admittance to a thought of fear.

Our battle is more full of names than yours,  
Our men more perfect in the use of arms,  
Our armour all as strong, our cause the best ; 156  
Then reason will our hearts should be as good :  
Say you not then our offer is compell'd.

MOWBRAY. Well, by my will we shall admit no parley.

WESTMORELAND. That argues but the shame of your  
offence : 160

A rotten case abides no handling.

HASTINGS. Hath the Prince John a full commission,  
In very ample virtue of his father,  
To hear and absolutely to determine 164  
Of what conditions we shall stand upon ?

WESTMORELAND. That is intended in the general's  
name.

I muse you make so slight a question.

ARCHBISHOP. Then take, my Lord of Westmoreland,  
this schedule, 168

For this contains our general grievances :  
Each several article herein redress'd ;  
All members of our cause, both here and hence,  
That are insinew'd to this action, 172  
Acquitted by a true substantial form  
And present execution of our wills



To us and to our purposes consign'd;  
 We come within our awful banks again 176  
 And knit our powers to the arm of peace.

WESTMORELAND. This will I show the general, Please  
 you, lords,  
 In sight of both our battles we may meet!  
 And either end in peace, which God so frame! 180  
 Or to the place of difference call the swords  
 Which must decide it

ARCHBISHOP. My lord, we will do so.

[Exit WESTMORELAND.]

MOWBRAY. There is a thing within my bosom tells me  
 That no conditions of our peace can stand. 184

\*HASTINGS. Fear you not that: if we can make our  
 peace

Upon such large terms, and so absolute  
 As our conditions shall consist upon, 187  
 Our peace shall stand as firm as rocky mountains.

MOWBRAY. Yea, but our valuation shall be such  
 That every slight and false-derived cause,  
 Yea, every idle, nice, and wanton reason  
 Shall to the king taste of this action; 192  
 That, were our royal faiths martyrs in love,  
 We shall be winnow'd with so rough a wind  
 That even our corn shall seem as light as chaff  
 And good from bad find no partition. 196

ARCHBISHOP. No, no, my lord. Note this; the king  
 is weary  
 Of dainty and such picking grievances:  
 For he hath found to end one doubt by death  
 Revives two greater in the heirs of life; 200  
 And therefore will he wipe his tables clean,  
 And keep no tell-tale to his memory  
 That may repeat and history his loss  
 To new remembrance; for full well he knows 204  
 He cannot so precisely weed this land  
 As his misdoubts present occasion:  
 His foes are so enrooted with his friends  
 That, plucking to unfix an enemy, 208  
 He doth unfasten so and shake a friend.  
 So that this land, like an offensive wife,  
 That hath enrag'd him on to offer strokes,  
 As he is striking, holds his infant up 212

And hangs resolv'd correction in the arm  
That was uprear'd to execution.

HASTINGS. Besides, the king hath wasted all his rods  
On late offenders, that he now doth lack 216  
The very instruments of chastisement ;  
So that his power, like to a fangless lion,  
May offer, but not hold.

ARCHBISHOP. 'Tis very true :  
And therefore be assur'd, my good lord marshal, 220  
If we do now make our atonement well,  
Our peace will, like a broken limb united,  
Grow stronger for the breaking.

MOWBRAY. Be it so.  
Here is return'd my Lord of Westmoreland. 224

Re-enter WESTMORELAND.

WESTMORELAND. The prince is here at hand : pleaseth  
your lordship,  
To meet his Grace just distance 'tween our armies ?

MOWBRAY. Your Grace of York, in God's name then,  
set forward.

ARCHBISHOP. Before, and greet his Grace : my lord,  
we come. [Exeunt.

SCENE II.—Another Part of the Forest.

Enter, from one side, MOWBRAY, the ARCHBISHOP, HASTINGS, and  
Others : from the other side, JOHN OF LANCASTER, WESTMORE-  
LAND, Officers, and Attendants.

LANCASTER. You are well encounter'd here, my cousin  
Mowbray :

Good day to you, gentle lord archbishop ;  
And so to you, Lord Hastings, and to all.  
My Lord of York, it better show'd with you, 4  
When that your flock, assembled by the bell,  
Encircled you to hear with reverence  
Your exposition on the holy text  
Than now to see you here an iron man, 8  
Cheering a rout of rebels with your drum,  
Turning the word to sword and life to death.  
That man that sits within a monarch's heart  
And ripens in the sunshine of his favour, 12  
Would he abuse the countenance of the king,  
Alack ! what mischief might he set abroad  
In shadow of such greatness. With you, lord bishop,

It is even so. Who hath not heard it spoken 15  
 How deep you were within the books of God ?  
 To us, the speaker in his parliament ;  
 To us the imagin'd voice of God himself ;  
 The very opener and intelligencer 20  
 Between the grace, the sanctities of heaven,  
 And our dull workings. O ! who shall believe  
 But you misuse the reverence of your place,  
 Employ the countenance and grace of heaven, 24  
 As a false favourite doth his prince's name,  
 In deeds dishonourable ? You have taken up,  
 Under the counterfeited zeal of God,  
 The subjects of his substitute, my father ; 28  
 And both against the peace of heaven and him  
 Have here upswarm'd them.

ARCHBISHOP. Good my Lord of Lancaster,  
 I am not here against your father's peace ;  
 But, as I told my Lord of Westmoreland, 32  
 The time disorder'd doth, in common sense,  
 Crowd us and crush us to this monstrous form,  
 To hold our safety up. I sent your Grace  
 The parcels and particulars of our grief,— 36  
 The which hath been with scorn shov'd from the court,—  
 Whereon this Hydra son of war is born ;  
 Whose dangerous eyes may well be charm'd asleep  
 With grant of our most just and right desires, 40  
 And true obedience, of this madness cur'd,  
 Stoop tamely to the foot of majesty.

MOWBRAY. If not, we ready are to try our fortunes  
 To the last man.

HASTINGS. And though we here fall down, 44  
 We have supplies to second our attempt :  
 If they miscarry, theirs shall second them :  
 And so success of mischief shall be born,  
 And heir from heir shall hold this quarrel up 48  
 Whiles England shall have generation.

LANCASTER. You are too shallow, Hastings, much too  
 shallow,  
 To sound the bottom of the after-times.

WESTMORELAND. Pleaseth your Grace to answer them  
 directly 52  
 How far forth you do like their articles.

LANCASTER. I like them all, and do allow them well ;

And swear here, by the honour of my blood,  
 My father's purposes have been mistook, 56  
 And some about him have too lavishly  
 Wrosted his meaning and authority.  
 My lord, these griefs shall be with speed redress'd ;  
 Upon my soul, they shall. If this may please you,  
 Discharge your powers unto their several counties,  
 As we will ours : and here between the armies 62  
 Let's drink together friendly and embrace,  
 That all their eyes may bear those tokens home  
 Of our restored love and amity. 65

ARCHBISHOP. I take your princely word for these  
 redresses.

LANCASTER. I give it you, and will maintain my word :  
 And thereupon I drink unto your Grace. 68

HASTINGS. [To an Officer.] Go, captain, and deliver to  
 the army

This news of peace : let them have pay, and part :  
 I know it will well please them : hie thee, captain.

[Exit Officer.]

ARCHBISHOP. To you, my noble Lord of Westmoreland.

WESTMORELAND. I pledge your Grace : and, if you  
 knev what pains 73

I have bestow'd to breed this present peace,  
 You would drink freely ; but my love to you  
 Shall show itself more openly hereafter. 76

ARCHBISHOP. I do not doubt you.

WESTMORELAND. I am glad of it.  
 Health to my lord and gentle cousin, Mowbray.

MOWBRAY. You wish me health in very happy season ;  
 For I am, on the sudden, something ill. 80

ARCHBISHOP. Against ill chances men are ever merry,  
 But heaviness foreruns the good event.

WESTMORELAND. Therefore be merry, coz ; since  
 sudden sorrow  
 Serves to say thus, Some good thing comes to morrow.

ARCHBISHOP. Believe me, I am passing light in spirit.

MOWBRAY. So much the worse if your own rule be true.

[Shouts within.]

LANCASTER. The word of peace is render'd : hark,  
 how they shout ! 87

MOWBRAY. This had been cheerful, after victory

ARCHBISHOP. A peace is of the nature of a conquest ;

For then both parties nobly are subdu'd,  
And neither party loser.

LANCASTER. Go, my lord,  
And let our army be discharged too. [Exit WESTMORELAND.  
And, good my lord, so please you, let our trains 93  
March by us, that we may peruse the men  
We should have cop'd withal.

ARCHBISHOP. Go, good Lord Hastings,  
And, ere they be dismiss'd, let them march by. 96

[Exit HASTINGS.

LANCASTER. I trust, lords, we shall lie to-night together.

Re-enter WESTMORELAND.

Now, cousin, wherefore stands our army still ?

WESTMORELAND. The leaders, having charge from you  
to stand,

Will not go off until they hear you speak. 100

LANCASTER. They know their duties.

Re-enter HASTINGS.

HASTINGS. My lord, our army is dispers'd already :  
Like youthful steers unyok'd, they take their courses  
East, west, north, south ; or, like a school broke up,  
Each hurries toward his home and sporting-place. 105

WESTMORELAND. Good tidings, my Lord Hastings ;  
for the which

I do arrest thee, traitor, of high treason :

And you, lord archbishop, and you, Lord Mowbray,  
Of capital treason I attach you both. 109

MOWBRAY. Is this proceeding just and honourable ?

WESTMORELAND. Is your assembly so ?

ARCHBISHOP. Will you thus break your faith ?

LANCASTER. I pawn'd thee none.  
I promis'd you redress of these same grievances 113

Whereof you did complain ; which, by mine honour,  
I will perform with a most Christian care.

But for you, rebels, look to taste the due 116

Meet for rebellion and such acts as yours.

Most shallowly did you these arms commence,  
Fondly brought here and foolishly sent hence.

Strike up our drums ! pursue the scatter'd stray : 120  
God, and not we, hath safely fought to-day.

Some guard these traitors to the block of death ;

Treason's true bed, and yielder up of breath. [Exeunt.

## SCENE III.—Another Part of the Forest.

Alarums. Excursions. Enter FALSTAFF and COLEVILE, meeting.

FALSTAFF. What's your name, sir? of what condition are you, and of what place, I pray?

COLEVILE. I am a knight, sir; and my name is Colevile of the dale. 4

FALSTAFF. Well then, Colevile is your name, a knight is your degree, and your place the dale: Colevile shall still be your name, a traitor your degree, and the dungeon your place, a place deep enough; so shall you be still Colevile of the dale. 9

COLEVILE. Are not you Sir John Falstaff?

FALSTAFF. As good a man as he, sir, whoe'er I am. Do ye yield, sir, or shall I sweat for you? If I do sweat, they are the drops of thy lovers, and they weep for thy death: therefore rouse up fear and trembling, and do observance to my mercy.

COLEVILE. I think you are Sir John Falstaff, and in that thought yield me. 17

FALSTAFF. I have a whole school of tongues in this belly of mine, and not a tongue of them all speaks any other word but my name. An I had but a belly of any indifferency, I were simply the most active fellow in Europe: my womb, my womb, my womb undoes me. Here comes our general.

Enter JOHN OF LANCASTER, WESTMORELAND, BLUNT, and Others.

LANCASTER. The heat is past, follow no further now. Call in the powers, good cousin Westmoreland. 25

[Exit WESTMORELAND.]

Now, Falstaff, where have you been all this while?

When everything is ended, then you come:

These tardy tricks of yours will, on my life, 28  
One time or other break some gallows' back.

FALSTAFF. I would be sorry, my lord, but it should be thus: I never knew yet but rebuke and check was the reward of valour. Do you think me a swallow, an arrow, or a bullet? have I, in my poor and old motion, the expedition of thought? I have speeded hither with the very extremest inch of possibility; I have foundered nine score and odd posts; and here, travel-tainted as I am, have, in my pure and immaculate valour, taken

Sir John Coleville of the dale, a most furious knight and valorous enemy. But what of that? he saw me, and yielded; that I may justly say with the hook-nosed fellow of Rome, 'I came, saw, and overcame.' 41

LANCASTER. It was more of his courtesy than your deserving.

FALSTAFF. I know not: here he is, and here I yield him; and I beseech your Grace, let it be booked with the rest of this day's deeds; or, by the Lord, I will have it in a particular ballad else, with mine own picture on the top on't, Coleville kissing my foot. To the which course if I be enforced, if you do not all show like guilt twopences to me, and I in the clear sky of fame o'ershine you as much as the full moon doth the cinders of the element, which show like pins' heads to her, believe not the word of the noble. Therefore let me have right, and let desert mount.

LANCASTER. Thine's too heavy to mount.

FALSTAFF. Let it shine then. 56

LANCASTER. Thine's too thick to shine.

FALSTAFF. Let it do something, my good lord, that may do me good, and call it what you will.

LANCASTER. Is thy name Coleville? 60

COLEVILLE. It is, my lord.

LANCASTER. A famous rebel art thou, Coleville.

FALSTAFF. And a famous true subject took him.

COLEVILLE. I am, my lord, but as my betters are  
That led me hither: had they been rul'd by me 65  
You should have won them dearer than you have.

FALSTAFF. I know not how they sold themselves: but thou, like a kind fellow, gavest thyself away gratis, and I thank thee for thee. 69

Re-enter WESTMORELAND.

LANCASTER. Have you left pursuit?

WESTMORELAND. Retreat is made and execution stay'd.

LANCASTER. Send Coleville with his confederates  
To York, to present execution. 73  
Blunt, lead him hence, and see you guard him sure.

[Exit BLUNT and Others with COLEVILLE, guarded.]

And now dispatch we toward the court, my lords:  
I hear, the king my father is sore sick: 76

Our news shall go before us to his majesty,  
Which, cousin [addressing WESTMORELAND], you shall bear, to  
comfort him ;

And we with sober speed will follow you. 79

FALSTAFF. My lord, I beseech you, give me leave to go  
Through Gloucestershire, and when you come to court  
Stand my good lord, pray, in your good report.

LANCASTER. Fare you well, Falstaff : I, in my con-  
dition,  
Shall better speak of you than you deserve. 84

[Exeunt all but FALSTAFF.]

FALSTAFF. I would you had but the wit : 'twere  
better than your dukedom. Good faith, this same  
young sober-blooded boy doth not love me ; nor a  
man cannot make him laugh ; but that's no marvel,  
he drinks no wine. There's never none of these demure  
boys come to any proof ; for thin drink doth so over-  
cool their blood, and making many fish-meals, that they  
fall into a kind of male green-sickness ; and then,  
when they marry, they get wenches. They are  
generally fools and cowards, which some of us should  
be too but for inflammation. A good sherris-sack hath  
a two-fold operation in it. It ascends me into the  
brain ; dries me there all the foolish and dull and crudy  
vapours which environ it ; makes it apprehensive,  
quick, forgetive, full of nimble fiery and delectable  
shapes ; which, deliver'd o'er to the voice, the tongue,  
which is the birth, becomes excellent wit. The  
second property of your excellent sherris is, the warm-  
ing of the blood ; which, before cold and settled, left  
the liver white and pale, which is the badge of pusil-  
lanimity and cowardice : but the sherris warms it and  
makes it course from the inwards to the parts extreme.  
It illumineth the face, which, as a beacon, gives warning  
to all the rest of this little kingdom, man, to arm ; and  
then the vital commoners and inland petty spirits  
muster me all to their captain, the heart, who, great and  
puffed up with this retinue, doth any deed of courage ;  
and this valour comes of sherris. So that skill in the  
weapon is nothing without sack, for that sets it a-work ;  
and learning, a mere hoard of gold kept by a devil till  
sack commences it and sets it in act and use. Hereof  
comes it that Prince Harry is valiant ; for the cold



blood he did naturally inherit of his father, he hath, like lean, sterile, and bare land, manured, husbanded, and tilled, with excellent endeavour of drinking good and good store of fertile sherris, that he is become very hot and valiant. If I had a thousand sons, the first human principle I would teach them should be, to forswear thin potations and to addict themselves to sack.

Enter BARDOLPH.

How now, Bardolph ?

125

BARDOLPH. The army is discharged all and gone.

FALSTAFF. Let them go. I'll through Gloucestershire ; and there will I visit Master Robert Shallow, esquire : I have him already tempering between my finger and my thumb, and shortly will I seal with him. Come away.

[Exeunt.

SCENE IV.—Westminster. The Jerusalem Chamber.

Enter KING HENRY, CLARENCE, GLOUCESTER, WARWICK, and Others.

KING HENRY. Now, lords, if God doth give successful end

To this debate that bleedeth at our doors,  
We will our youth lead on to higher fields  
And draw no swords but what are sanctified. 4  
Our navy is address'd, our power collected,  
Our substitutes in absence well invested,  
And everything lies level to our wish :  
Only, we want a little personal strength ; 8  
And pause us, till these rebels, now afoot,  
Come underneath the yoke of government.

WARWICK. Both which we doubt not but your majesty  
Shall soon enjoy.

KING HENRY. Humphrey, my son of Gloucester,  
Where is the prince your brother ? 13

GLOUCESTER. I think he's gone to hunt, my lord, at Windsor.

KING HENRY. And how accompanied ?

GLOUCESTER. I do not know, my lord.

KING HENRY. Is not his brother Thomas of Clarence with him ? 16

GLOUCESTER. No, my good lord ; he is in presence here.

CLARENCE. What would my lord and father ? 18

KING HENRY. Nothing but well to thee, Thomas of Clarence.

How chance thou art not with the prince thy brother ?  
He loves thee, and thou dost neglect him, Thomas ;  
Thou hast a better place in his affection  
Than all thy brothers : cherish it, my boy,  
And noble offices thou mayst effect 24  
Of mediation, after I am dead,  
Between his greatness and thy other brethren :  
Therefore omit him not ; blunt not his love,  
Nor lose the good advantage of his grace 28  
By seeming cold or careless of his will ;  
For he is gracious, if he be observ'd :  
He hath a tear for pity and a hand  
Open as day for melting charity ; 32  
Yet, notwithstanding, being incens'd, he's flint ;  
As humorous as winter, and as sudden  
As flaws congealed in the spring of day.  
His temper therefore must be well observ'd : 36  
Chide him for faults, and do it reverently,  
When you perceive his blood inclin'd to mirth ;  
But, being moody, give him line and scope,  
Till that his passions, like a whale on ground, 40  
Confound themselves with working. Learn this, Thomas,  
And thou shalt prove a shelter to thy friends,  
A hoop of gold to bind thy brothers in,  
That the united vessel of their blood, 44  
Mingled with venom of suggestion—  
As, force perforce, the age will pour it in—  
Shall never leak, though it do work as strong  
As aconitum or rash gunpowder. 48

CLARENCE. I shall observe him with all care and love.

KING HENRY. Why art thou not at Windsor with him,  
Thomas ?

CLARENCE. He is not there to-day ; he dines in  
London.

KING HENRY. And how accompanied ? canst thou  
tell that ? 52

CLARENCE. With Poins and other his continual  
followers.

**KING HENRY.** Most subject is the fattest soil to weeds ;  
 And he, the noble image of my youth,  
 Is overspread with them : therefore my grief 56  
 Stretches itself beyond the hour of death :  
 The blood weeps from my heart when I do shape  
 In forms imaginary the unguided days  
 And rotten times that you shall look upon 60  
 When I am sleeping with my ancestors.  
 For when his headstrong riot hath no curb,  
 When rage and hot blood are his counsellors,  
 When means and lavish manners meet together, 64  
 O ! with what wings shall his affections fly  
 Towards fronting peril and oppos'd decay.

**WARWICK.** My gracious lord, you look beyond him  
 quite :  
 The prince but studies his companions 68  
 Like a strange tongue, wherein, to gain the language,  
 'Tis needful that the most immodest word  
 Be look'd upon, and learn'd ; which once attain'd,  
 Your highness knows, comes to no further use 72  
 But to be known and hated. So, like gross terms,  
 The prince will in the perfectness of time  
 Cast off his followers ; and their memory  
 Shall as a pattern or a measure live, 76  
 By which his Grace must mete the lives of others,  
 Turning past evils to advantages.

**KING HENRY.** 'Tis seldom when the bee doth leave her  
 comb  
 In the dead carrion.

Enter **WESTMORELAND.**

Who's here ? Westmoreland ! 80  
**WESTMORELAND.** Health to my sovereign, and new  
 happiness  
 Added to that that I am to deliver !  
 Prince John your son doth kiss your Grace's hand :  
 Mowbray, the Bishop Scroop, Hastings and all 84  
 Are brought to the correction of your law.  
 There is not now a rebel's sword unsheath'd,  
 But Peace puts forth her olive everywhere.  
 The manner how this action hath been borne 88  
 Here at more leisure may your highness read,  
 With every course in his particular.

KING HENRY. O Westmoreland ! thou art a summer  
bird,  
Which ever in the haunch of winter sings 92  
The lifting up of day.

Enter HARCOURT.

Look ! here 's more news.

HARCOURT. From enemies heaven keep your majesty ;  
And, when they stand against you, may they fall  
As those that I am come to tell you of ! 96  
The Earl Northumberland, and the Lord Bardolph,  
With a great power of English and of Scots,  
Are by the sheriff of Yorkshire overthrown.  
The manner and true order of the fight 100  
This packet, please it you, contains at large.

KING HENRY. And wherefore should these good news  
make me sick ?  
Will Fortune never come with both hands full  
But write her fair words still in foulest letters ? 104  
She either gives a stomach and no food ;  
Such are the poor, in health ; or else a feast  
And takes away the stomach ; such are the rich,  
That have abundance and enjoy it not. 108  
I should rejoice now at this happy news,  
And now my sight fails, and my brain is giddy.  
O me ! come near me, now I am much ill, 111

GLOUCESTER. Comfort, your majesty !

CLARENCE. O my royal father !

WESTMORELAND. My sovereign lord, cheer up your-  
self : look up !

WARWICK. Be patient, princes : you do know these fits  
Are with his highness very ordinary :  
Stand from him, give him air ; he'll straight be well. 116

CLARENCE. No, no ; he cannot long hold out these  
pangs :

The incessant care and labour of his mind  
Hath wrought the mure that should confine it in  
So thin, that life looks through and will break out. 120

GLOUCESTER. The people fear me ; for they do ob-  
serve

Unfather'd heirs and loathly births of nature :  
The seasons change their manners, as the year 123  
Had found some months asleep and leap'd them over.

CLARENCE. The river hath thrice flow'd, no ebb  
 between ;  
 And the old folk, time's doting chronicles,  
 Say it did so a little time before 127  
 That our great-grandsire, Edward, sick'd and died.  
 WARWICK. Speak lower, princes, for the king recovers.  
 GLOUCESTER. This apoplexy will certain be his end.  
 KING HENRY. I pray you take me up, and bear me hence  
 Into some other chamber : softly, pray. 132

## SCENE V.—Another Chamber.

KING HENRY lying on a bed : CLARENCE, GLOUCESTER, WARWICK,  
 and Others in attendance.

KING HENRY. Let there be no noise made, my gentle  
 friends ;  
 Unless some dull and favourable hand  
 Will whisper music to my weary spirit. 3  
 WARWICK. Call for the music in the other room.  
 KING HENRY. Set me the crown upon my pillow here.  
 CLARENCE. His eye is hollow, and he changes much.  
 WARWICK. Less noise, less noise !

Enter the PRINCE.

PRINCE. Who saw the Duke of Clarence ?  
 CLARENCE. I am here, brother, full of heaviness. 8  
 PRINCE. How now ! rain within doors, and none abroad !  
 How doth the king ?  
 GLOUCESTER. Exceeding ill.  
 PRINCE. Heard he the good news yet ?  
 Tell it him. 11  
 GLOUCESTER. He alter'd much upon the hearing it.  
 PRINCE. If he be sick with joy, he will recover without  
 physic.  
 WARWICK. Not so much noise, my lords. Sweet prince,  
 speak low ;  
 The king your father is dispos'd to sleep. 16  
 CLARENCE. Let us withdraw into the other room.  
 WARWICK. Will 't please your Grace to go along with  
 us ?  
 PRINCE. No ; I will sit and watch here by the king.

[Exeunt all but the PRINCE.]

Why doth the crown lie there upon his pillow,  
 Being so troublesome a bedfellow ? 20

O polish'd perturbation ! golden care !  
 That keep'st the ports of slumber open wide  
 To many a watchful night ! Sleep with it now ! 24  
 Yet not so sound, and half so deeply sweet  
 As he whose brow with homely biggin bound  
 Snores out the watch of night. O majesty !  
 When thou dost pinch thy bearer, thou dost sit 28  
 Like a rich armour worn in heat of day,  
 That scalds with safety. By his gates of breath  
 There lies a downy feather which stirs not :  
 Did he suspire, that light and weightless down 32  
 Perforce must move. My gracious lord ! my father !  
 This sleep is sound indeed ; this is a sleep  
 That from this golden rigol hath divorc'd  
 So many English kings. Thy due from me 36  
 Is tears and heavy sorrows of the blood,  
 Which nature, love, and filial tenderness  
 Shall, O dear father ! pay thee plenteously :  
 My due from thee is this imperial crown, 40  
 Which, as immediate from thy place and blood,  
 Derives itself to me. Lo ! here it sits, [Putting it on his head.  
 Which heaven shall guard ; and put the world's whole  
 strength  
 Into one giant arm, it shall not force 44  
 This lineal honour from me. This from thee  
 Will I to mine leave, as 'tis left to me. [Exit.

KING HENRY. [Waking.] Warwick ! Gloucester ! Clarence !

Re-enter WARWICK, GLOUCESTER, CLARENCE, and the rest.

CLARENCE. Doth the king call ?

WARWICK. What would your majesty ? How fares  
 your Grace ? 48

KING HENRY. Why did you leave me here alone, my  
 lords ?

CLARENCE. We left the prince my brother here, my  
 liege,

Who undertook to sit and watch by you.

KING HENRY. The Prince of Wales ! Where is he ?  
 let me see him : 52

He is not here.

WARWICK. This door is open ; he is gone this way.

GLOUCESTER. He came not through the chamber  
 where we stay'd.

KING HENRY. Where is the crown ? who took it from  
my pillow ? 56

WARWICK. When we withdrew, my liege, we left it here.

KING HENRY. The prince hath ta'en it hence : go,  
seek him out.

Is he so hasty that he doth suppose

My sleep my death ? 60

Find him, my Lord of Warwick ; chide him hither.

[Exit WARWICK.]

This part of his conjoins with my disease,  
And helps to end me. See, sons, what things you are !  
How quickly nature falls into revolt 64  
When gold becomes her object !

For this the foolish over-careful fathers  
Have broke their sleeps with thoughts,  
Their brains with care, their bones with industry ;  
For this they have engrossed and pil'd up 69

The canker'd heaps of strange-achieved gold ;  
For this they have been thoughtful to invest  
Their sons with arts and martial exercises : 72  
When, like the bee, culling from every flower

The virtuous sweets,  
Our thighs pack'd with wax, our mouths with honey,  
We bring it to the hive, and like the bees, 76  
Are murder'd for our pains. This bitter taste  
Yield his engrossments to the ending father.

Re-enter WARWICK.

Now, where is he that will not stay so long  
Till his friend sickness hath determin'd me ? 80

WARWICK. My lord, I found the prince in the next  
room,

Washing with kindly tears his gentle cheeks,  
With such a deep demeanour in great sorrow  
That tyranny, which never quaff'd but blood, 84  
Would, by beholding him, have wash'd his knife  
With gentle eye-drops. He is coming hither.

KING HENRY. But wherefore did he take away the  
crown ?

Re-enter the PRINCE.

Lo, where he comes. Come hither to me, Harry.

Depart the chamber, leave us here alone. 89

[Exeunt WARWICK, and the rest.]

PRINCE. I never thought to hear you speak again.

KING HENRY. Thy wish was father, Harry, to that thought :

I stay too long by thee, I weary thee. 92

Dost thou so hunger for my empty chair

That thou wilt needs invest thee with mine honours

Before thy hour be ripe ? O foolish youth ! 95

Thou seek'st the greatness that will overwhelm thee.

Stay but a little ; for my cloud of dignity

Is held from falling with so weak a wind

That it will quickly drop : my day is dim.

Thou hast stol'n that which after some few hours 100

Were thine without offence ; and at my death

Thou hast seal'd up my expectation :

Thy life did manifest thou lov'dst me not,

And thou wilt have me die assur'd of it. 104

Thou hid'st a thousand daggers in thy thoughts,

Which thou hast whetted on thy stony heart,

To stab at half an hour of my life.

What ! canst thou not forbear me half an hour ?

Then get thee gone and dig my grave thyself, 109

And bid the merry bells ring to thine ear

That thou art crowned, not that I am dead.

Let all the tears that should bedew my hearse 112

Be drops of balm to sanctify thy head :

Only compound me with forgotten dust ;

Give that which gave thee life unto the worms.

Pluck down my officers, break my decrees ; 116

For now a time is come to mock at form.

Harry the Fifth is crown'd ! Up, vanity !

Down, royal state ! all you sage counsellors, hence !

And to the English court assemble now, 120

From every region, apes of idleness !

Now, neighbour confines, purge you of your scum :

Have you a ruffian that will swear, drink, dance,

Revel the night, rob, murder, and commit 124

The oldest sins the newest kind of ways ?

Be happy, he will trouble you no more :

England shall double gild his treble guilt.

England shall give him office, honour, might ; 128

For the fifth Harry from curb'd licence plucks

The muzzle of restraint, and the wild dog

Shall flesh his tooth in every innocent.

O my poor kingdom ! sick with civil blows. 132



When that my care could not withhold thy riots,  
What wilt thou do when riot is thy care ?

O ! thou wilt be a wilderness again,

Peopled with wolves, thy old inhabitants. 136

PRINCE. O ! pardon me, my liege ; but for my tears,

The moist impediments unto my speech,

I had forestall'd this dear and deep rebuke

Ere you with grief had spoke and I had heard 140

The course of it so far. There is your crown ;

And he that wears the crown immortally

Long guard it yours ! If I affect it more

Than as your honour and as your renown, 144

Let me no more from this obedience rise,—

Which my most true and inward duteous spirit

Teacheth,—this prostrate and exterior bending.

God witness with me, when I here came in, 148

And found no course of breath within your majesty,

How cold it struck my heart ! if I do feign,

O ! let me in my present wildness die

And never live to show the incredulous world 152

The noble change that I have purposed.

Coming to look on you, thinking you dead,

And dead almost, my liege, to think you were,

I spake unto the crown as having sense, 156

And thus upbraided it : ‘ The care on thee depending

Hath fed upon the body of my father ;

Therefore, thou best of gold art worst of gold : ‘ 160

Other, less fine in carat, is more precious,

Preserving life in medicine potable :

But thou most fine, most honour'd, most renown'd,

Hast eat thy bearer up.’ Thus, my most royal liege,

Accusing it, I put it on my head, 164

To try with it, as with an enemy

That had before my face murder'd my father,

The quarrel of a true inheritor.

But if it did infect my blood with joy, 168

Or swell my thoughts to any strain of pride ;

If any rebel or vain spirit of mine

Did with the least affection of a welcome

Give entertainment to the might of it, 172

Let God for ever keep it from my head,

And make me as the poorest vassal is

That doth with awe and terror kneel to it !

KING HENRY. O my son  
God put it in thy mind to take it hence,  
That thou mightst win the more thy father's love,  
Pleading so wisely in excuse of it.  
Come hither, Harry : sit thou by my bed ; 180  
And hear, I think, the very latest counsel  
That ever I shall breathe. God knows, my son,  
By what by-paths and indirect crook'd ways  
I met this crown ; and I myself know well 184  
How troublesome it sat upon my head :  
To thee it shall descend with better quiet,  
Better opinion, better confirmation ;  
For all the soil of the achievement goes 188  
With me into the earth. It seem'd in me  
But as an honour snatch'd with boisterous hand,  
And I had many living to upbraid  
My gain of it by their assistances ; 192  
Which daily grew to quarrel and to bloodshed,  
Wounding supposed peace. All these bold fears  
Thou seest with peril I have answered ;  
For all my reign hath been but as a scene 196  
Acting that argument ; and now my death  
Changes the mode : for what in me was purchas'd,  
Falls upon thee in a more fairer sort ;  
So thou the garment wear'st successively. 200  
Yet, though thou stand'st more sure than I could do,  
Thou art not firm enough, since griefs are green ;  
And all my friends, which thou must make thy friends,  
Have but their stings and teeth newly ta'en out ; 204  
By whose fell working I was first advanc'd,  
And by whose power I well might lodge a fear  
To be again displac'd : which to avoid,  
I cut them off ; and had a purpose now 208  
To lead out many to the Holy Land,  
Lest rest and lying still might make them look  
Too near unto my state. Therefore, my Harry,  
Be it thy course to busy giddy minds 212  
With foreign quarrels ; that action, hence borne out,  
May waste the memory of the former days.  
More would I, but my lungs are wasted so  
That strength of speech is utterly denied me. 216  
How I came by the crown, O God, forgive !  
And grant it may with thee in true peace live.

PRINCE. My gracious liege,  
 You won it, wore it, kept it, gave it me ; 220  
 Then plain and right must my possession be :  
 Which I with more than with a common pain  
 'Gainst all the world will rightfully maintain.

Enter JOHN OF LANCASTER.

KING HENRY. Look, look, here comes my John of  
 Lancaster. 224

LANCASTER. Health, peace, and happiness to my royal  
 father !

KING HENRY. Thou bring'st me happiness and peace,  
 son John ;  
 But health, alack, with youthful wings is flown  
 From this bare wither'd trunk : 'upon thy sight  
 My worldly business makes a period. 229  
 Where is my Lord of Warwick ?

PRINCE. My Lord of Warwick !

Re-enter WARWICK and Others.

KING HENRY. Doth any name particular belong  
 Unto the lodging where I first did swoond ? 232

WARWICK. 'Tis call'd Jerusalem, my noble lord.

KING HENRY. Laud be to God ! even there my life  
 must end.

It hath been prophesied to me many years  
 I should not die but in Jerusalem, 236  
 Which vainly I suppos'd the Holy Land.  
 But bear me to that chamber ; there I'll lie :  
 In that Jerusalem shall Harry die. [Exeunt.

## ACT V.

SCENE I.—Gloucestershire. A Hall in SHALLOW's House.

• Enter SHALLOW, FALSTAFF, BARDOLPH, and Page.

SHALLOW. By cock and pie, sir, you shall not away  
 to-night. What ! Davy, I say.

FALSTAFF. You must excuse me, Master Robert  
 Shallow 4

SHALLOW. I will not excuse you ; you shall not be  
 excused ; excuses shall not be admitted ; there is no  
 excuse shall serve ; you shall not be excused. Why,  
 Davy ! 8

Enter DAVY.

DAVY. Here, sir.

SHALLOW. Davy, Davy, Davy, Davy, let me see, Davy ; let me see : yea, marry, William cook, bid him come hither. Sir John, you shall not be excused. 12

DAVY. Marry, sir, thus ; those precepts cannot be served : and again, sir, shall we sow the headland with wheat ?

SHALLOW. With red wheat, Davy. But for William cook : are there no young pigeons ? 17

DAVY. Yes, sir. Here is now the smith's note for shoeing and plough-irons.

SHALLOW. Let it be cast and paid. Sir John, you shall not be excused. 21

DAVY. Now, sir, a new link to the bucket must needs be had : and, sir, do you mean to stop any of William's wages, about the sack he lost the other day at Hinckley fair ? 25

SHALLOW. A' shall answer it. Some pigeons, Davy, a couple of short-legged hens, a joint of mutton, and any pretty little tiny kickshaws, tell William cook.

DAVY. Doth the man of war stay all night, sir ? 29

SHALLOW. Yea, Davy. I will use him well. A friend i' the court is better than a penny in purse. Use his men well, Davy, for they are arrant knaves, and will backbite. 33

DAVY. No worse than they are back-bitten, sir ; for they have marvellous foul linen.

SHALLOW. Well conceited, Davy : about thy business, Davy. 37

DAVY. I beseech you, sir, to countenance William Visor of Wincot against Clement Perkes of the hill. 40

SHALLOW. There are many complaints, Davy, against that Visor : that Visor is an arrant knave, on my knowledge.

DAVY. I grant your worship that he is a knave, sir ; but yet, God forbid, sir, but a knave should have some countenance at his friend's request. An honest man, sir, is able to speak for himself, when a knave is not. I have served your worship truly, sir, this eight years ; and if I cannot once or twice in a quarter bear

out a knave against an honest man, I have but a very little credit with your worship. The knave is mine honest friend, sir; therefore, I beseech your worship, let him be countenanced. 53

SHALLOW. Go to; I say he shall have no wrong. Look about, Davy. [Exit DAVY.] Where are you, Sir John? Come, come, come; off with your boots. Give me your hand, Master Bardolph. 57

BARDOLPH. I am glad to see your worship.

SHALLOW. I thank thee with all my heart, kind Master Bardolph:—[To the Page.] and welcome, my tall fellow. Come, Sir John. 61

FALSTAFF. I'll follow you, good Master Robert Shallow. [Exit SHALLOW.] Bardolph, look to our horses. [Exeunt BARDOLPH and Page.] If I were sawed into quantities, I should make four dozen of such bearded hermit's staves as Master Shallow. It is a wonderful thing to see the semblable coherence of his men's spirits and his: they, by observing him, do bear themselves like foolish justices; he, by conversing with them, is turned into a justice-like serving-man. Their spirits are so married in conjunction with the participation of society that they flock together in consent, like so many wild-geese. If I had a suit to Master Shallow, I would humour his men with the imputation of being near their master: if to his men, I would curry with Master Shallow that no man could better command his servants. It is certain that either wise bearing or ignorant carriage is caught, as men take diseases, one of another: therefore let men take heed of their company. I will devise matter enough out of this Shallow to keep Prince Harry in continual laughter the wearing out of six fashions,—which is four terms, or two actions,—and a' shall laugh without intervallums. O! it is much that a lie with a slight oath and a jest with a sad brow will do with a fellow that never had the ache in his shoulders. O! you shall see him laugh till his face be like a wet cloak ill laid up! 87

SHALLOW. [Within.] Sir John!

FALSTAFF. I come, Master Shallow: I come, Master Shallow. [Exit.

SCENE II.—Westmintser. An Apartment in the Palace

Enter WARWICK and the LORD CHIEF JUSTICE.

WARWICK. How now, my Lord Chief Justice! whither away?

CHIEF JUSTICE. How doth the king?

WARWICK. Exceeding well: his cares are now all ended.

CHIEF JUSTICE. I hope not dead.

WARWICK. He's walk'd the way of nature;  
And to our purposes he lives no more 5

CHIEF JUSTICE. I would his majesty had call'd me  
with him:

The service that I truly did his life  
Hath left me open to all injuries. 8

WARWICK. Indeed I think the young king loves you not.

CHIEF JUSTICE. I know he doth not, and do arm  
myself,

To welcome the condition of the time;  
Which cannot look more hideously upon me 12  
Than I have drawn it in my fantasy.

Enter LANCASTER, CLARENCE, GLOUCESTER, WESTMORELAND,  
and Others.

WARWICK. Here come the heavy issue of dead Harry:  
O! that the living Harry had the temper  
Of him, the worst of these three gentlemen. 16  
How many nobles then should hold their places,  
That must strike sail to spirits of vile sort!

CHIEF JUSTICE. O God! I fear all will be overturn'd.

LANCASTER. Good morrow, cousin Warwick, good  
morrow. 20

GLOUCESTER. } Good morrow, cousin.

CLARENCE. }

LANCASTER. We meet like men that had forgot to  
speak.

WARWICK. We do remember; but our argument  
Is all too heavy to admit much talk. 24

LANCASTER. Well, peace be with him that hath made  
us heavy!

CHIEF JUSTICE. Peace be with us, lest we be heavier!

GLOUCESTER. O! good my lord, you have lost a  
friend indeed;  
And I dare swear you borrow not that face 28

Of seeming sorrow ; it is sure your own.

LANCASTER. Though no man be assur'd what grace  
to find,

You stand in coldest expectation.

I am the sorrier ; would 'twere otherwise. 32

CLARENCE. Well, you must now speak Sir John Fal-  
staff fair,

Which swims against your stream of quality.

CHIEF JUSTICE. Sweet princes, what I did, I did in  
honour,

Led by the impartial conduct of my soul ; 36

And never shall you see that I will beg

A ragged and forestall'd remission.

If truth and upright innocency fail me,

I'll to the king my master that is dead, 40

And tell him who hath sent me after him.

WARWICK. Here comes the prince.

Enter KING HENRY THE FIFTH, attended.

CHIEF JUSTICE. Good morrow, and God save your  
majesty !

KING HENRY V. This new and gorgeous garment,  
majesty, 44

Sits not so easy on me as you think.

Brothers, you mix your sadness with some fear :

This is the English, not the Turkish court ;

Not Amurath an Amurath succeeds, 48

But Harry Harry. Yet be sad, good brothers,

For, to speak truth, it very well becomes you :

Sorrow so royally in you appears

That I will deeply put the fashion on 52

And wear it in my heart. Why then, be sad ;

But entertain no more of it, good brothers,

Than a joint burden laid upon us all.

For me, by heaven, I bid you be assur'd, 56

I'll be your father and your brother too ;

Let me but bear your love, I'll bear your cares :

Yet weep that Harry's dead, and so will I ;

But Harry lives that shall convert those tears 60

By number into hours of happiness.

LANCASTER, &C. We hope no other from your majesty.

KING HENRY V. You all look strangely on me : [To the

CHIEF JUSTICE.] and you most ;

You are, I think, assur'd I love you not. 64

CHIEF JUSTICE. I am assur'd, if I be measur'd rightly.  
Your majesty hath no just cause to hate me.

KING HENRY V. No !

How might a prince of my great hopes forget 68

So great indignities you laid upon me ?

What ! rate, rebuke, and roughly send to prison

The immediate heir of England ! Was this easy ?

May this be wash'd in Lethe, and forgotten ? 72

CHIEF JUSTICE. I then did use the person of your  
father ;

The image of his power lay then in me :

And, in the administration of his law,

Whiles I was busy for the commonwealth, 76

Your highness pleased to forget my place,

The majesty and power of law and justice,

The image of the king whom I presented,

And struck me in my very seat of judgment ; 80

Whereon, as an offender to your father,

I gave bold way to my authority,

And did commit you. If the deed were ill,

Be you contented, wearing now the garland, 84

To have a son set your decrees at nought,

To pluck down justice from your awful bench,

To trip the course of law, and blunt the sword

That guards the peace and safety of your person :

Nay, more, to spurn at your most royal image 88

And mock your workings in a second body.

Question your royal thoughts, make the case yours ;

Be now the father and propose a son, 92

Hear your own dignity so much profan'd,

See your most dreadful laws so loosely slighted,

Behold yourself so by a son disdain'd ;

And then imagine me taking your part, 96

And in your power soft silencing your son :

After this cold considerance, sentence me ;

And, as you are a king, speak in your state

What I have done that misbecame my place, 100

My person, or my liege's sovereignty.

KING HENRY V. You are right, justice ; and you weigh  
this well ;

Therefore still bear the balance and the sword :

And I do wish your honours may increase 104



Till you do live to see a son of mine  
 Offend you and obey you, as I did.  
 So shall I live to speak my father's words :  
 ' Happy am I, that have a man so bold 108  
 That dares do justice on my proper son ;  
 And not less happy, having such a son,  
 That would deliver up his greatness so  
 Into the hands of justice.' You did commit me : 112  
 For which, I do commit into your hand  
 The unstained sword that you have us'd to bear ;  
 With this remembrance, that you use the same  
 With the like bold, just, and impartial spirit 116  
 As you have done 'gainst me. There is my hand :  
 You shall be as a father to my youth ;  
 My voice shall sound as you do prompt mine ear,  
 And I will stoop and humble my intents 120  
 To your well-practis'd wise directions.  
 And, princes all, believe me, I beseech you ;  
 My father is gone wild into his grave,  
 For in his tomb lie my affections ; 124  
 And with his spirit sadly I survive,  
 To mock the expectation of the world,  
 To frustrate prophecies, and to raze out  
 Rotten opinion, who hath writ me down 128  
 After my seeming. The tide of blood in me  
 Hath proudly flow'd in vanity till now :  
 Now doth it turn and ebb back to the sea,  
 Where it shall mingle with the state of floods 132  
 And flow henceforth in formal majesty.  
 Now call we our high court of parliament ;  
 And let us choose such limbs of noble counsel,  
 That the great body of our state may go 136  
 In equal rank with the best govern'd nation ;  
 That war or peace, or both at once, may be  
 As things acquainted and familiar to us ;  
 In which you, father, shall have foremost hand. 140  
 Our coronation done, we will accite,  
 As I before remember'd, all our state :  
 And, God consigning to my good intents,  
 No prince nor peer shall have just cause to say, 144  
 God shorten Harry's happy life one day. [Exeunt.

SCENE III.—Gloucestershire. The Garden of SHALLOW's House.

Enter FALSTAFF, SHALLOW, SILENCE, BARDOLPH, the Page, and DAVY.

SHALLOW. Nay, you shall see mine orchard, where, in an arbour, we will eat a last year's pippin of my own graffing, with a dish of caraways, and so forth ; come, cousin Silence ; and then to bed. 4

FALSTAFF. 'Fore God, you have here a goodly dwelling, and a rich.

SHALLOW. Barren, barren, barren ; beggars all, beggars all, Sir John : marry, good air. Spread, Davy ; spread, Davy : well said, Davy. 9

FALSTAFF. This Davy serves you for good uses ; he is your serving-man and your husband.

SHALLOW. A good varlet, a good varlet, a very good varlet, Sir John : by the mass, I have drunk too much sack at supper : a good varlet. Now sit down, now sit down. Come, cousin.

SILENCE. Ah, sirrah ! quoth a', we shall 16

Do nothing but eat, and make good cheer,

And praise God for the merry year ;

When flesh is cheap and females dear,

And lusty lads roam here and there, 20

So merrily,

And ever among so merrily,

FALSTAFF. There's a merry heart ! Good Master Silence, I'll give you a heaith for that anon. 24

SHALLOW. Give Master Bardolph some wine, Davy.

DAVY. Sweet sir, sit ; I'll be with you anon : most sweet sir, sit. Master page, good master page, sit. Proface ! What you want in meat we'll have in drink : but you must bear : the heart's all. [Exit. 30

SHALLOW. Be merry, Master Bardolph ; and my little soldier there, be merry.

SILENCE. Be merry, be merry, my wife has all ; 32

For women are shrews, both short and tall :

'Tis merry in hall when beards wag all,

And welcome merry Shrove-tide.

Be merry, be merry. 36

FALSTAFF. I did not think Master Silence had been a man of this mettle.

SILENCE. Who, I ? I have been merry twice and once ere now. 40

Re-enter DAVY.

DAVY. There 's a dish of leather-coats for you.

[Setting them before BARDOLPH.

SHALLOW. Davy !

DAVY. Your worship ! I'll be with you straight.  
A cup of wine, sir ? 44

SILENCE. A cup of wine that 's brisk and fine,  
And drink unto the leman mine ;  
And a merry heart lives long-a.

FALSTAFF. Well said, Master Silence. 48

SILENCE. And we shall be merry, now comes in the sweet o' the night.

FALSTAFF. Health and long life to you, Master Silence.

SILENCE. Fill the cup, and let it come ; 53  
I'll pledge you a mile to the bottom.

SHALLOW. Honest Bardolph, welcome : if thou wantest anything and wilt not call, beshrew thy heart. [To the Page.] Welcome, my little tiny thief ; and welcome indeed too. I'll drink to Master Bardolph and to all the cava-leiрос about London.

DAVY. I hope to see London once ere I die. 60

BARDOLPH. An I might see you there, Davy,—

SHALLOW. By the mass, you'll crack a quart together :  
ha ! will you not, Master Bardolph ?

BARDOLPH. Yea, sir, in a pottle-pot. 64

SHALLOW. By God's liggens, I thank thee. The knave will stick by thee, I can assure thee that : a' will not out ; he is true bred.

BARDOLPH. And I'll stick by him, sir. 68

SHALLOW. Why, there spoke a king. Lack nothing : be merry. [Knocking within.] Look who 's at door there.  
Ho ! who knocks ? [Exit DAVY.]

FALSTAFF. [To SILENCE, who drinks a bumper.] Why, now you have done me right. 73

SILENCE. Do me right,  
And dub me knight :  
Samingo.

76

Is 't not so ?

FALSTAFF. 'Tis so.

SILENCE. Is 't so? Why, then, say an old man can do somewhat. 80

Re-enter DAVY.

DAVY. An't please your worship, there's one Pistol come from the court with news.

FALSTAFF. From the court! let him come in.

Enter PISTOL.

How now, Pistol! 84

PISTOL. Sir John, God save you, sir!

FALSTAFF. What wind blew you hither, Pistol?

PISTOL. Not the ill wind which blows no man to good. Sweet knight, thou art now one of the greatest men in this realm.

SILENCE. By'r lady, I think a' be, but goodman Puff of Barson.

PISTOL. Puff! 92

Puff in thy teeth, most recreant coward base!

Sir John, I am thy Pistol and thy friend,

And helter-skelter have I rode to thee,

And tidings do I bring and lucky joys 96

And golden times and happy news of price.

FALSTAFF. I prithee now, deliver them like a man of this world.

PISTOL. A foutra for the world and worldlings base! I speak of Africa and golden joys. 100

FALSTAFF. O base Assyrian knight, what is thy news? Let King Cophetua know the truth thereof.

SILENCE. 'And Robin Hood, Scarlet, and John.'

PISTOL. Shall dunghill curs confront the Helicons? And shall good news be baffled? 105

Then, Pistol, lay thy head in Furies' lap.

SHALLOW. Honest gentleman, I know not your breeding. 108

PISTOL. Why then, lament therefore.

SHALLOW. Give me pardon, sir: if, sir, you come with news from the court, I take it there is but two ways: either to utter them, or to conceal them. I am, sir, under the king, in some authority. 113

PISTOL. Under which king, Bezonian? speak, or die.

SHALLOW. Under King Harry.

PISTOL. Harry the Fourth ? or Fifth ?

SHALLOW. Harry the Fourth.

PISTOL. A foutra for thine office !

Sir John, thy tender lambkin now is king ;

Harry the Fifth 's the man. I speak the truth :

When Pistol lies, do this ; and fig me, like 120

The bragging Spaniard.

FALSTAFF. What ! is the old king dead ?

PISTOL. As nail in door : the things I speak are just.

FALSTAFF. Away, Bardolph ! saddle my horse. Master Robert Shallow, choose what office thou wilt in the land, 'tis thine. Pistol, I will double-charge thee with dignities.

BARDOLPH. O joyful day ! 128

I would not take a knighthood for my fortune.

PISTOL. What ! I do bring good news.

FALSTAFF. Carry Master Silence to bed. Master Shallow, my Lord Shallow, be what thou wilt, I am Fortune's steward. Get on thy boots : we'll ride all night. O sweet Pistol ! Away, Bardolph ! [Exit BARDOLPH.] Come, Pistol, utter more to me ; and withal devise something to do thyself good. Boot, boot, Master Shallow : I know the young king is sick for me. Let us take any man's horses ; the laws of England are at my commandment. Happy are they which have been my friends, and woe unto my lord chief justice ! 140

PISTOL. Let vultures vile seize on his lungs also !  
'Where is the life that late I led ?' say they :  
Why, here it is : welcome these pleasant days ! [Exeunt.

#### SCENE IV.—London. A Street.

Enter BEADLES, dragging in MISTRESS QUICKLY and DOLL  
TEARSHEET.

QUICKLY. No, thou arrant knave : I would to God I might die that I might have thee hanged ; thou hast drawn my shoulder out of joint.

FIRST BEADLE. The constables have delivered her over to me, and she shall have whipping-cheer enough, I warrant her : there hath been a man or two lately killed about her. 7

DOLL. Nut-hook, nut-hook, you lie. Come on ; I'll tell thee what, thou damned tripe-visaged rascal,

an the child I now go with do miscarry, thou hadst better thou hadst struck thy mother, thou paper-faced villain. 12

QUICKLY. O the Lord ! that Sir John were come ; he would make this a bloody day to somebody. But I pray God the fruit of her womb miscarry !

FIRST BEADLE. If it do, you shall have a dozen of cushions again ; you have but eleven now. Come, I charge you both go with me ; for the man is dead that you and Pistol beat among you. 19

DOLL. I'll tell thee what, thou thin man in a censer, I will have you as soundly swung for this, you blue-bottle rogue ! you filthy famished correctioner ! if you be not swung, I'll forswear half-kirtles.

FIRST BEADLE. Come, come, you she knight-errant, come. 24

QUICKLY. O, that right should thus overcome might ! Well, of sufferance comes ease.

DOLL. Come, you rogue, come : bring me to a justice.

QUICKLY. Ay ; come, you starved blood-hound.

DOLL. Goodman death ! goodman bones ! 29

QUICKLY. Thou atomy, thou !

DOLL. Come, you thin thing ; come, you rascal !

FIRST BEADLE. Very well. [Exeunt. 8

SCENE V.—A Public Place near Westminster Abbey.

Enter two Grooms, strewing rushes.

FIRST GROOM. More rushes, more rushes.

SECOND GROOM. The trumpets have sounded twice.

FIRST GROOM. It will be two o'clock ere they come from the coronation. Dispatch, dispatch. [Exeunt.

Enter FALSTAFF, SHALLOW, PISTOL, BARDOLPH, and the Page.

FALSTAFF. Stand here by me, Master Robert Shallow ; I will make the king do you grace. I will leer upon him, as a' comes by ; and do but mark the countenance that he will give me. 8

PISTOL. God bless thy lungs, good knight.

FALSTAFF. Come here, Pistol ; stand behind me. O ! if I had had time to have made new liveries, I would have bestowed the thousand pound I borrowed of you. But 'tis no matter ; this poor show doth better : this doth infer the zeal I had to see him.

SHALLOW. It doth so. 15

FALSTAFF. It shows my earnestness of affection.

SHALLOW. It doth so.

FALSTAFF. My devotion.

SHALLOW. It doth, it doth, it doth.

FALSTAFF. As it were, to ride day and night ; and not to deliberate, not to remember, not to have patience to shift me.

SHALLOW. It is most certain. . . 23

FALSTAFF. But to stand stained with travel, and sweating with desire to see him ; thinking of nothing else ; putting all affairs else in oblivion, as if there were nothing else to be done but to see him.

PISTOL. 'Tis 'semper idem', for 'absque hoc nihil est' : 'Tis all in every part. 29

SHALLOW. 'Tis so, indeed.

PISTOL. My knight, I will inflame thy noble liver, And make thee rage. 32

Thy Doll, and Helen of thy noble thoughts,

Is in base durance and contagious prison ;

Hal'd thither

By most mechanical and dirty hand : 36

Rouse up revenge from ebon den with fell Alecto's snake, For Doll is in : Pistol speaks nought but truth.

FALSTAFF. I will deliver her. [Shouts within and trumpets sound.

PISTOL. There roar'd the sea, and trumpet-clangor sounds. 40

Enter KING HENRY THE FIFTH and his Train, the LORD CHIEF JUSTICE among them.

FALSTAFF. God save thy grace, King Hal ! my royal Hal !

PISTOL. The heavens thee guard and keep, most royal imp of fame ! 44

FALSTAFF. God save thee, my sweet boy !

KING HENRY V. My lord chief justice, speak to that vain man.

CHIEF JUSTICE. Have you your wits ? know you what 'tis you speak ?

FALSTAFF. My king ! my Jove ! I speak to thee, my heart ! 48

KING HENRY V. I know thee not, old man : fall to thy prayers ;  
How ill white hairs become a fool and jester !

I have long dream'd of such a kind of man,  
So surfeit-swell'd, so old, and so profane ; 52  
But, being awak'd, I do despise my dream.  
Make less thy body hence, and more thy grace ;  
Leave gormandizing ; know the grave doth gape  
For thee thrice wider than for other men. 56  
Reply not to me with a fool-born jest :  
Presume not that I am the thing I was ;  
For God doth know, so shall the world perceive,  
That I have turn'd away my former self ; 60  
So will I those that kept me company.  
When thou dost hear I am as I have been,  
Approach me, and thou shalt be as thou wast,  
The tutor and the feeder of my riots : 64  
Till then, I banish thee, on pain of death,  
As I have done the rest of my misleaders,  
Not to come near our person by ten mile.  
For competence of life I will allow you, 68  
That lack of means enforce you not to evil :  
And, as we hear you do reform yourselves,  
We will, according to your strength and qualities,  
Give you advancement. Be it your charge, my lord,  
To see perform'd the tenour of our word.

Set on.

[Exeunt KING HENRY V and his Train.

FALSTAFF. Master Shallow, I owe you a thousand pound.

SHALLOW. Ay, marry, Sir John ; which I beseech you  
to let me have home with me. 77

FALSTAFF. That can hardly be, Master Shallow. Do  
not you grieve at this : I shall be sent for in private to  
him. Look you, he must seem thus to the world. Fear  
not your advancements ; I will be the man yet that shall  
make you great.

SHALLOW. I cannot perceive how, unless you should  
give me your doublet and stuff me out with straw. I  
beseech you, good Sir John, let me have five hundred of  
my thousand.

FALSTAFF. Sir, I will be as good as my word : this  
that you heard was but a colour. 88

SHALLOW. A colour that I fear you will die in, Sir  
John.

FALSTAFF. Fear no colours : go with me to dinner.  
Come, Lieutenant Pistol ; come, Bardolph : I shall be  
sent for soon at night. 93



Re-enter JOHN OF LANCASTER, the LORD CHIEF JUSTICE;  
Officers with them.

CHIEF JUSTICE. Go, carry Sir John Falstaff to the  
Fleet;

Take all his company along with him.

FALSTAFF. My lord, my lord! 96

CHIEF JUSTICE. I cannot now speak: I will hear you  
soon.

Take them away.

PISTOL. 'Si fortuna me tormenta, spero contenta.'

[Exeunt FALSTAFF, SHALLOW, PISTOL, BARDOLPH, Page, and Officers.

LANCASTER. I like this fair proceeding of the king's.  
He hath intent his wonted followers 101

Shall all be very well provided for;

But all are banish'd till their conversations

Appear more wise and modest to the world. 104

CHIEF JUSTICE. And so they are.

LANCASTER. The king hath call'd his parliament, my  
lord.

CHIEF JUSTICE. He hath.

LANCASTER. I will lay odds, that, ere this year expire,  
We bear our civil swords and native fire 109

As far as France. I heard a bird so sing,

Whose music, to my thinking, pleas'd the king.

Come, will you hence?

[Exeunt.]

## EPILOGUE.

Spoken by a Dancer.

First, my fear; then, my curtsy; last my speech.  
My fear is, your displeasure, my curtsy, my duty, and  
my speech, to beg your pardon. If you look for a  
good speech now, you undo me; for what I have to  
say is of mine own making; and what indeed I should  
say will, I doubt, prove mine own marring. But to  
the purpose, and so to the venture. Be it known to  
you,—as it is very well,—I was lately here in the end  
of a displeasing play, to pray your patience for it and to  
promise you a better. I did mean indeed to pay you  
with this; which, if like an ill venture it come un-  
luckily home, I break, and you, my gentle creditors,

lose. Here I promised you I would be; and here I commit my body to your mercies; bate me some and I will pay you some; and, as most debtors do, promise you infinitely. 16

If my tongue cannot entreat you to acquit me, will you command me to use my legs? and yet that were but light payment, to dance out of your debt. But a good conscience will make any possible satisfaction, and so will I. All the gentlewomen here have forgiven me: if the gentlemen will not, then the gentlemen do not agree with the gentlewomen, which was never seen before in such an assembly. 24

One word more, I beseech you. If you be not too much cloyed with fat meat, our humble author will continue the story, with Sir John in it, and make you merry with fair Katharine of France: where, for anything I know, Falstaff shall die of a sweat, unless already a' be killed with your hard opinions; for Oldcastle died a martyr, and this is not the man. My tongue is weary; when my legs are too, I will bid you good night: and so kneel down before you; but, indeed, to pray for the queen. 34



**THE LIFE OF  
KING HENRY THE FIFTH**

# THE LIFE OF KING HENRY THE FIFTH

## INTRODUCTION

IN the Epilogue to the Second Part of *King Henry IV* Shakespeare promised the spectators of his play a continuation which should deal with the ensuing reign, and should, like *Henry IV*, make history mirthful with comedy: 'If you be not too much cloyed with fat meat, our humble author will continue the story, with Sir John in it, and make you merry with fair Katharine of France: where, for anything I know, Falstaff shall die of a sweat, unless already a' be killed with your hard opinions.' According to tradition, Queen Elizabeth required that Falstaff should be presented as a lover, and *The Merry Wives of Windsor* was hastily written. Some critics, and not without reasons of weight, believe that the *Merry Wives* followed *Henry V* in the chronological order of Shakespeare's plays. Such may be the fact. But the absence of Falstaff from the present play—except as he appears indirectly in the narration of his death—seems to be most easily explained if we suppose that *The Merry Wives* was slipped in by royal command between *Henry IV* and *Henry V*, and that Shakespeare now really believing that he might 'cloy' his spectators with 'fat meat', resolved to dismiss his great jester from earth to 'Arthur's bosom'.

The date of *Henry V* can be determined with unusual accuracy. It is not mentioned by Meres in his *Palladis Tamia* of 1598. The Earl of Essex, accompanied by Shakespeare's early patron the Earl of Southampton, set forth on his expedition to Ireland on March 27, 1599; towards the close of September of that year he returned. The chorus to the fifth Act of the present

play was obviously pronounced after the former and before the latter of these dates :—

Were now the general of our gracious empress,—  
As in good time he may,—from Ireland coming,  
Bringing rebellion broached on his sword,  
How many would the peaceful city quit  
To welcome him !

As is well known, Essex returned, not ' bringing rebellion broached on his sword ', but himself to perish before long on the charge of rebellion. The poet's unfulfilled prophecy remains, and is decisive as to the date of the production of the play. We need not raise a question as to whether ' this wooden O ' of the opening chorus can refer to the Globe Theatre or not, with evidence so precise as this.

An entry in the Stationers' Register of August 4, 1600, names ' Henry the fift, a booke ', as ' to be staied '. Shakespeare and the other members of his dramatic company may have been unwilling that a play which drew audiences to their theatre should be accessible in a printed form. Perhaps the ' stay ' came too late. It is certain that in 1600—but in what month of that year we cannot say—the first quarto was published : *The Cronicle History of Henry the fift, with his battell fought at Agin Court in France. Together with Auntient Pistoll*. A second quarto appeared two years later ; a third is dated 1608, but the date is suspected, and may possibly have been in fact 1619. The text as we read it in the present edition is substantially that of the folio of 1623.

What is the relation of the quarto text to the folio ? It was argued long since that the quarto represents Shakespeare's first sketch or earlier draft of the play. The argument and its conclusion may with confidence be dismissed to the wide Shakespearean limbo of vanities. Mr. Daniel and other scholars have shown conclusively that portions of the folio text omitted from the quarto are yet there referred to in passages retained, or are required to make fully intelligible certain lines and phrasings of the quarto. The number of lines in the quarto is less than half of those which make up the folio text ; the prologues, the epilogue, and three entire scenes are absent ; several of the

dramatis personae are wanting. There can be no reasonable doubt that the quarto text was obtained surreptitiously from a version of the play which had been shortened for some special occasion or occasions, possibly at the court.

The sources from which Shakespeare drew materials or suggestions for his play were two—Holinshed's *Chronicle*, and the old play, which had been of some service to him in writing *Henry IV—The Famous Victories of Henry the fifth: containing the Honourable Battell of Agin-court* (see Introduction to *I Henry IV*). The *Chronicle* supplied a large body of substantial matter, which was animated and developed by Shakespeare's imagination. From *The Famous Victories* only hints were derived to be freely worked out or varied at will. Thus the suggestion for Henry's wooing of Katharine comes not from Holinshed but from *The Famous Victories*. The reader who has not the old play at hand may be glad to compare Shakespeare's treatment of the courtship, where his chief obligation lies, with that of his predecessor:—

*Hen. 5.* How now faire Ladie, Katheren of France,  
What newes ?

*Kathren.* And it please your Majestie,  
My father sent me to know if you will debate any of these  
Unreasonable demands which you require :

*Hen. 5.* Now trust me Kate,  
I commend thy fathers wit greatly in this,  
For none in the world could sooner have made me debate it  
If it were possible :  
But tell me sweete Kate, canst thou tell how to love ?

*Kate.* I cannot hate my good Lord,  
Therefore far unfit were it for me to love.

*Hen. 5.* Tush Kate, but tell me in plaine termes,  
Canst thou love the King of England ?  
I cannot do as these Countries [Counties ?] do,  
That spend half their time in woiing :  
Tush wench, I am none such,  
But wilt thou go over to England ?

*Kate.* I would to God, I had your Majestie,  
As fast in love, as you have my father in warres,  
I would not vouchsafe so much as one looke,  
Until you had related [rebated ?] all these unreasonable demands.

*Hen. 5.* Tush Kate, I know thou wouldst not use me so  
Hardly : But tell me, canst thou love the king of England ?

*Kate.* How should I love him, that hath dealt so hardly  
With my father.

*Hen. 5.* But ile deale as easily with thee,

As thy heart can imagine, or tongue can require,  
How saist thou, what will it be ?

Kate. If I were of my owne direction,  
I could give you answers :  
But seeing I stand at my fathers direction,  
I must first know his will.

Hen. 5. But shal I have thy good wil in the mean season ?

Kate. Whereas I can put your grace in no assurance,  
I would be loth to put you in any dispaire.

Hen. 5. Now before God, it is a sweete wench.

*She goes aside, and speakes as followeth.*

Kat. I may thinke myself the happiest in the world,  
That is beloved of the mightie King of England.

Hen. 5. Well Kate, are you at hoast with me ?

Sweet Kate, tel thy father from me.

That none in the world could sooner have persuaded me to  
It then thou, and so tel thy father from me.

Kat. God keepe your Majestie in good health.

*Exit Kat.*

It has been often said that the play is epical rather than dramatic, and that the epic passion finds an overflow in the choruses. 'We cannot,' wrote Furnivall, 'help noting the weakness of this play as a drama : a siege and a battle, with one bit of light love-making, cannot form a drama, whatever amount of rhetorical patriotic speeches and comic relief is introduced.' The drama, it is true, is rather one presenting great actions than one occupied with the development or study of character. Shakespeare himself evidently felt that the resources of the Elizabethan theatre were inadequate for the exhibition of the great historical events, and he calls upon the spectators to supply with a generous imagination the defects of what was inadequately shown to their eyes. We seem to feel throughout many parts of the play a certain sense of strain and effort which attempts to overcome the limitations of the stage by outbreaks of a passionate rhetoric. Henry is essentially a man of action ; but the grandeur of the action is dwarfed by the conditions of the theatre, and the imagination must be stimulated and inflamed by the ardour of gallant words. Among his kings of England Henry V is undoubtedly Shakespeare's ideal king ; he is neither a traitor like John, a hectic sentimentalist like Richard II, a pseudo-saint like Henry VI, nor a strong, crafty, anxious usurper like his own father. He is more kingly than any of these, but his natural temper and his early life of youthful freedom and quick



enjoyment have filled him with popular sympathies, which make him a comrade of his humblest fellow soldiers on the night before his triumph at Agincourt. He would have every part of his life soundly based; his claims on France must first be justified before he takes a step; traitors must be swiftly and terribly cast forth from his band of brave adventurers—and so Cambridge, Scroop, and Grey go to their doom; his popularity must be won not by such formal courtesies as gained his father a temporary success, but by true fellowship with his subjects; his wedded happiness must rest upon a plain, soldier's wooing; and under all else he must feel that God supports his cause. The criticism is too superfine or too shallow which styles Richard II a 'vessel of porcelain' and Henry V a 'vessel of clay'. The stuff which makes a Henry is rarer than that which makes a self-indulgent 'mockery king'. But it is true that Henry interests Shakespeare only or chiefly as a great man of action. He has none of Hamlet's spiritual trouble, none of Hamlet's mystery of soul, none of Prospero's lofty spiritual wisdom and old experience. Shakespeare would have us take him for what he is—man's helper, God's soldier; and that is much. With full consciousness of his own power he remains modest. Like his father, Henry can be politic, but his policy moves upon a higher plane. In his wrath he can be terrible—'being incens'd, he's flint,' and sometimes he is carried away by passion into acts of violence or injustice. But, when free from the passing dangers of policy or passion, he is abundant in his humanity:—

A largess universal, like the sun  
His liberal eye doth give to every one.

If he does not yield himself to the full joys of friendship or love, he has no unworthy favourites like Richard II, no dishonourable loves like Edward IV. Shakespeare could see beyond and above his Henry, but assuredly he honoured and even loved his patriot king.

The group of 'irregular humorists' in *Henry V* seems poor and shrunken after the corresponding group in *Henry IV*. Falstaff, as we learn from that admirable humorous and pathetic scene which tells of his death, is gone from among them, and how impoverished they

appear! They are, as Hazlitt expressed it, satellites without a sun. Pistol, whose name is mentioned on the title-page of the Quarto, with his theatrical braggardism, entertained Elizabethan audiences; but has not a good deal of the Pistol caricature grown obsolete? The best character of the play, after King Henry himself, is surely the honest Welshman, Fluellen. His native valour is most pleasantly overlaid with what Shakespeare elsewhere styles the 'bookish theoric', and Macedon is as familiar to him as Monmouth. The Scotsman and the Irish captain seem to be introduced with no such political intention as Simpson imagined, but rather to throw out the figure of Henry's fellow countryman of Wales, for this was a play in which the leek must needs be honoured.

The part assigned to women in the play is small; but it is the only one of the historical plays in which we do not hear the outcries and wailings of princesses or queens or noble ladies. Katharine and Queen Isabel have reason to be pleased at the close, for a wedding is in prospect. We cannot flatter ourselves that the hostess was inconsolable while relating with all due particularity the departure of Falstaff. The little actor who played the boy had, for a young performer, a proud part assigned him; he is a parlous knave who sometimes assumes almost the part of a chorus, and has a shrewd insight into the military prowess of the three swashers, Bardolph, Pistol, and Nym. We cannot but fear that he perished when the French at Agincourt killed 'the poys and the luggage'—which, as Mr. Craig has said in a note of naïve tenderness, 'is a pity.'

The stage history of *Henry V* is not of peculiar interest. Aaron Hill's version of 1723—which introduces a former mistress of the king in male attire, Harriet, niece to Lord Scroop, who discovers her uncle's conspiracy—is deservedly forgotten. Edmund Kean played the part of Henry in 1830, when his powers had failed and his memory was defective. The later revivals of the play have been more remarkable for spectacular display than for the performances of the actors. In truth, for effectiveness in the theatre *King Henry V* does not take rank among Shakespeare's best pieces.

## DRAMATIS PERSONAE

KING HENRY THE FIFTH.

DUKE OF GLOUCESTER, } Brothers to the King.  
DUKE OF BEDFORD, }

DUKE OF EXETER, Uncle to the King.

DUKE OF YORK, Cousin to the King.

EARLS OF SALISBURY, WESTMORELAND, and WARWICK.

ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY.

BISHOP OF ELY.

EARL OF CAMBRIDGE.

LORD SCROOP.

SIR THOMAS GREY.

SIR THOMAS ERPINGHAM, GOWER, FLUELLEN, MACMORRIS, JAMY,  
Officers in King Henry's Army.

BATES, COURT, WILLIAMS, Soldiers in the Same.

PISTOL, NYM, BARDOLPH.

Boy.

A Herald.

CHARLES THE SIXTH, King of France.

LEWIS, the Dauphin.

DUKES OF BURGUNDY, ORLEANS, and BOURBON.

THE CONSTABLE OF FRANCE.

RAMBURES and GRANDPRÉ, French Lords.

MONTJOY, a French Herald.

Governor of Harfleur.

Ambassadors to the King of England.

ISABEL, Queen of France.

KATHARINE, Daughter to Charles and Isabel.

ALICE, a Lady attending on the Princess Katharine.

Hostess of the Boar's Head Tavern, formerly Mistress Quickly, and  
now married to Pistol.

Lords, Ladies, Officers, French and English Soldiers, Citizens, Messen-  
gers, and Attendants.

Chorus.

SCENE.—England; afterwards France.

# THE LIFE OF KING HENRY THE FIFTH

Enter Chorus.

CHORUS. O ! for a Muse of fire, that would ascend  
The brightest heaven of invention ;  
A kingdom for a stage, princes to act  
And monarchs to behold the swelling scene. 4  
Then should the warlike Harry, like himself,  
Assume the port of Mars ; and at his heels,  
Leash'd in like hounds, should famine, sword, and fire  
Crouch for employment. But pardon, gentles all, 8  
The flat unraised spirits that hath dar'd  
On this unworthy scaffold to bring forth  
So great an object : can this cockpit hold  
The vasty fields of France ? or may we cram 12  
Within this wooden O the very casques  
That did affright the air at Agincourt ?  
O, pardon ! since a crooked figure may  
Attest in little place a million ; 16  
And let us, ciphers to this great accompt,  
On your imaginary forces work.  
Suppose within the girdle of these walls  
Are now confin'd two mighty monarchies, 20  
Whose high upreared and abutting fronts  
The perilous narrow ocean parts asunder :  
Piece out our imperfections with your thoughts :  
Into a thousand parts divide one man, 24  
And make imaginary puissance ;  
Think when we talk of horses that you see them  
Printing their proud hoofs i' the receiving earth ;  
For 'tis your thoughts that now must deck our kings,  
Carry them here and there, jumping o'er times, 29  
Turning the accomplishment of many years  
Into an hour-glass : for the which supply,  
Admit me Chorus to this history ; 32  
Who prologue-like your humble patience pray,  
Gently to hear, kindly to judge, our play. [Exit.

## ACT I.

SCENE I.—London. An Antechamber in the KING's Palace.

Enter the ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY and the BISHOP OF ELY.

CANTERBURY. My lord, I'll tell you ; that self bill is urg'd,

Which in the eleventh year of the last king's reign

Was like, and had indeed against us pass'd,

But that the scrambling and unquiet time

4

Did push it out of further question.

ELY. But how, my lord, shall we resist it now ?

CANTERBURY. It must be thought on. If it pass against us,

We lose the better half of our possession ;

8

For all the temporal lands which men devout

By testament have given to the church

Would they strip from us ; being valued thus :

As much as would maintain, to the king's honour,

Full fifteen earls and fifteen hundred knights,

13

Six thousand and two hundred good esquires ;

And, to relief of lazars and weak age,

Of indigent faint souls past corporal toil,

16

A hundred almshouses right well supplied ;

And to the coffers of the king beside,

A thousand pounds by the year. Thus runs the bill.

ELY. This would drink deep.

CANTERBURY. 'Twould drink the cup and all.

ELY. But what prevention ?

21

CANTERBURY. The king is full of grace and fair regard.

ELY. And a true lover of the holy church.

CANTERBURY. The courses of his youth promis'd it not.

24

The breath no sooner left his father's body

But that his wildness, mortified in him,

Seem'd to die too ; yea, at that very moment,

Consideration like an angel came,

28

And whipp'd the offending Adam out of him,

Leaving his body as a paradise,

To envelop and contain celestial spirits.

Never was such a sudden scholar made ;

32

Never came reformation in a flood,

With such a heady currance, scouring faults ;

Nor never Hydra-headed wilfulness  
So soon did lose his seat and all at once 36  
As in this king.

ELY. We are blessed in the change.

CANTERBURY. Hear him but reason in divinity,  
And, all-admiring, with an inward wish  
You would desire the king were made a prelate : 40  
Hear him debate of commonwealth affairs,  
You would say it hath been all in all his study :  
List his discourse of war, and you shall hear  
A fearful battle render'd you in music : 44  
Turn him to any cause of policy,  
The Gordian knot of it he will unloose,  
Familiar as his garter ; that, when he speaks,  
The air, a charter'd libertine, is still, 48  
And the mute wonder lurketh in men's ears,  
To steal his sweet and honey'd sentences ;  
So that the art and practic part of life  
Must be the mistress to this theoric : 52  
Which is a wonder how his Grace should glean it,  
Since his addiction was to courses vain ;  
His companies unletter'd, rude, and shallow ;  
His hours fill'd up with riots, banquets, sports ; 56  
And never noted in him any study,  
Any retirement, any sequestration  
From open haunts and popularity.

ELY. The strawberry grows underneath the nettle,  
And wholesome berries thrive and ripen best 61  
Neighbour'd by fruit of baser quality :  
And so the prince obscur'd his contemplation  
Under the veil of wildness ; which, no doubt, 64  
Grew like the summer grass, fastest by night,  
Unseen, yet crescive in his faculty.

CANTERBURY. It must be so ; for miracles are ceas'd ;  
And therefore we must needs admit the means 68  
How things are perfected.

ELY. But, my good lord,  
How now for mitigation of this bill  
Urg'd by the commons ? Doth his majesty  
Incline to it, or no ?

CANTERBURY. He seems indifferent, 72  
Or rather swaying more upon our part  
Than cherishing the exhibitors against us ;

For I have made an offer to his majesty,  
 Upon our spiritual convocation, 76  
 And in regard of causes now in hand,  
 Which I have open'd to his Grace at large,  
 As touching France, to give a greater sum  
 Than ever at one time the clergy yet 80  
 Did to his predecessors part withal.

ELY. How did this offer seem receiv'd, my lord ?

CANTERBURY. With good acceptance of his majesty ;  
 Save that there was not time enough to hear,— 84  
 As I perceiv'd his Grace would fain have done,—  
 The severals and unhidden passages  
 Of his true titles to some certain dukedoms,  
 And generally to the crown and seat of France, 88  
 Deriv'd from Edward, his great-grandfather.

ELY. What was the impediment that broke this off ?

CANTERBURY. The French ambassador upon that  
 instant  
 Crav'd audience ; and the hour I think is come 92  
 To give him hearing : is it four o'clock ?

ELY. It is.

CANTERBURY. Then go we in to know his embassy ;  
 Which I could with a ready guess declare 96  
 Before the Frenchman speak a word of it.

ELY. I'll wait upon you, and I long to hear it. [Exeunt.

SCENE II.—The Same. The Presence Chamber.

Enter KING HENRY, GLOUCESTER, BEDFORD, EXETER,  
 WARWICK, WESTMORELAND, and Attendants.

KING HENRY. Where is my gracious lord of Canterbury ?  
 EXETER. Not here in presence.

KING HENRY. Send for him, good uncle.

WESTMORELAND. Shall we call in the ambassador, my  
 liege ?

KING HENRY. Not yet, my cousin : we would be re-  
 solv'd, 4

Before we hear him, of some things of weight  
 That task our thoughts, concerning us and France.

Enter the ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY and the BISHOP OF ELY.

CANTERBURY. God and his angels guard your sacred  
 throne, 7  
 And make you long become it !

KING HENRY.

Sure, we thank you.

My learned lord, we pray you to proceed,  
And justly and religiously unfold  
Why the law Salique that they have in France  
Or should, or should not, bar us in our claim. 12  
And God forbid, my dear and faithful lord,  
That you should fashion, wrest, or bow your reading,  
Or nicely charge your understanding soul  
With opening titles miscreate, whose right 16  
Suits not in native colours with the truth ;  
For God doth know how many now in health  
Shall drop their blood in approbation  
Of what your reverence shall incite us to. 20  
Therefore take heed how you impawn our person,  
How you awake the sleeping sword of war :  
We charge you in the name of God, take heed ;  
For never two such kingdoms did contend 24  
Without much fall of blood ; whose guiltless drops  
Are every one a woe, a sore complaint,  
'Gainst him whose wrongs give edge unto the swords  
That make such waste in brief mortality. 28  
Under this conjuration speak, my lord,  
And we will hear, note, and believe in heart,  
That what you speak is in your conscience wash'd  
As pure as sin with baptism. 32

CANTERBURY. Then hear me, gracious sovereign, and  
you peers,

That owe yourselves, your lives, and services  
To this imperial throne. There is no bar  
To make against your highness' claim to France 36  
But this, which they produce from Pharamond,  
'In terram Salicam mulieres ne succedant,'  
'No woman shall succeed in Salique land' :  
Which Salique land the French unjustly gloze 40  
To be the realm of France, and Pharamond  
The founder of this law and female bar.  
Yet their own authors faithfully affirm  
That the land Salique is in Germany, 44  
Between the floods of Sala and of Elbe ;  
Where Charles the Great, having subdu'd the Saxons,  
There left behind and settled certain French ;  
Who, holding in disdain the German women 48  
For some dishonest manners of their life,



Establish'd then this law ; to wit, no female  
 Should be inheritrix in Salique land :  
 Which Salique, as I said, 'twixt Elbe and Sala, 52  
 Is at this day in Germany call'd Meisen.  
 Then doth it well appear the Salique law  
 Was not devised for the realm of France ;  
 Nor did the French possess the Salique land 56  
 Until four hundred one-and-twenty years  
 After defunction of King Pharamond,  
 Idly suppos'd the founder of this law ;  
 Who died within the year of our redemption 60  
 Four hundred twenty-six ; and Charles the Great  
 Subdu'd the Saxons, and did seat the French  
 Beyond the river Sala, in the year  
 Eight hundred five. Besides, their writers say, 64  
 King Pepin, which deposed Childeric,  
 Did, as heir general, being descended  
 Of Blithild, which was daughter to King Clothair,  
 Make claim and title to the crown of France. 68  
 Hugh Capet also, who usurp'd the crown  
 Of Charles the Duke of Lorraine, sole heir male  
 Of the true line and stock of Charles the Great,  
 To find his title with some shows of truth,— 72  
 Though in pure truth, it was corrupt and nought,—  
 Convey'd himself as heir to the Lady Lingare,  
 Daughter to Charlemain, who was the son  
 To Lewis the emperor, and Lewis the son 76  
 Of Charles the Great. Also King Lewis the Tenth,  
 Who was sole heir to the usurper Capet,  
 Could not keep quiet in his conscience,  
 Wearing the crown of France, till satisfied 80  
 That fair Queen Isabel, his grandmother,  
 Was lineal of the Lady Ermengare,  
 Daughter to Charles the aforesaid Duke of Lorraine :  
 By the which marriage the line of Charles the Great  
 Was re-united to the crown of France. 85  
 So that, as clear as is the summer's sun,  
 King Pepin's title, and Hugh Capet's claim,  
 King Lewis his satisfaction, all appear 88  
 To hold in right and title of the female :  
 So do the kings of France unto this day ;  
 Howbeit they would hold up this Salique law  
 To bar your highness claiming from the female ; 92

And rather choose to hide them in a net  
Than amply to imbar their crooked titles  
Usurp'd from you and your progenitors.

KING HENRY. May I with right and conscience make  
this claim ? 96

CANTERBURY. The sin upon my head, dread  
sovereign !

For in the book of Numbers is it writ :  
' When the son dies, let the inheritance  
Descend unto the daughter.' Gracious lord, 100  
Stand for your own ; unwind your bloody flag ;  
Look back into your mighty ancestors :  
Go, my dread lord, to your great-grandsire's tomb,  
From whom you claim ; invoke his warlike spirit, 104  
And your great-uncle's, Edward the Black Prince,  
Who on the French ground play'd a tragedy,  
Making defeat on the full power of France ;  
Whiles his most mighty father on a hill 108  
Stood smiling to behold his lion's whelp  
Forage in blood of French nobility.  
O noble English ! that could entertain  
With half their forces the full pride of France, 112  
And let another half stand laughing by,  
All out of work, and cold for action.

ELY. Awake remembrance of these valiant dead,  
And with your puissant arm renew their feats : 116  
You are their heir, you sit upon their throne,  
The blood and courage that renowned them  
Runs in your veins ; and my thrice-puissant liege  
Is in the very May-morn of his youth, 120  
Ripe for exploits and mighty enterprises.

EXETER. Your brother kings and monarchs of the  
earth  
Do all expect that you should rouse yourself,  
As did the former lions of your blood. 124

WESTMORELAND. They know your Grace hath cause  
and means and might ;  
So hath your highness ; never King of England  
Had nobles richer, and more loyal subjects,  
Whose hearts have left their bodies here in England  
And lie pavilion'd in the fields of France. 129

CANTERBURY. O ! let their bodies follow, my dear  
liege,

With blood and sword and fire to win your right ;  
 In aid whereof we of the spirituality 132  
 Will raise your highness such a mighty sum  
 As never did the clergy at one time  
 Bring in to any of your ancestors.

KING HENRY. We must not only arm to invade the  
 French, 136

But lay down our proportions to defend  
 Against the Scot, who will make road upon us  
 With all advantages.

CANTERBURY. They of those marches, gracious  
 sovereign, 140  
 Shall be a wall sufficient to defend  
 Our inland from the pilfering borderers.

KING HENRY. We do not mean the coursing snatchers  
 only,  
 But fear the main intendment of the Scot, 144  
 Who hath been still a giddy neighbour to us ;  
 For you shall read that my great-grandfather  
 Never went with his forces into France  
 But that the Scot on his unfurnish'd kingdom 148  
 Came pouring, like the tide into a breach,  
 With ample and brim fulness of his force,  
 Galling the gleaned land with hot essays,  
 Girding with grievous siege castles and towns ; 152  
 That England, being empty of defence,  
 Hath shook and trembled at the ill neighbourhood.

CANTERBURY. She hath been then more fear'd than  
 harm'd, my liege ;  
 For hear her but exempl'd by herself : 156  
 When all her chivalry hath been in France  
 And she a mourning widow of her nobles,  
 She hath herself not only well defended,  
 But taken and impounded as a stray 160  
 The King of Scots ; whom she did send to France,  
 To fill King Edward's fame with prisoner kings,  
 And make your chronicle as rich with praise  
 As is the owse and bottom of the sea 164  
 With sunken wrack and sumless treasures.

WESTMORELAND. But there's a saying very old and  
 true ;

If that you will France win,  
 Then with Scotland first begin : 168

For once the eagle England being in prey,  
To her unguarded nest the weasel Scot  
Comes sneaking and so sucks her princely eggs,  
Playing the mouse in absence of the cat, 172  
To tear and havoc more than she can eat.

EXETER. It follows then the cat must stay at home :  
Yet that is but a crush'd necessity ;  
Since we have locks to safeguard necessities 176  
And pretty traps to catch the petty thieves.  
While that the armed hand doth fight abroad  
The advised head defends itself at home :  
For government, though high and low and lower, 180  
Put into parts, doth keep in one consent,  
Congreeing in a full and natural close,  
Like music.

CANTERBURY. Therefore doth heaven divide  
The state of man in divers functions, 184  
Setting endeavour in continual motion ;  
To which is fixed, as an aim or butt,  
Obedience : for so work the honey-bees,  
Creatures that by a rule in nature teach 188  
The act of order to a peopled kingdom.  
They have a king and officers of sorts ;  
Where some, like magistrates, correct at home,  
Others, like merchants, venture trade abroad, 192  
Others, like soldiers, armed in their stings,  
Make boot upon the summer's velvet buds ;  
Which pillage they with merry march bring home  
To the tent-royal of their emperor : 196  
Who, busied in his majesty, surveys  
The singing masons building roofs of gold,  
The civil citizens kneading up the honey,  
The poor mechanic porters crowding in 200  
Their heavy burdens at his narrow gate,  
The sad-ey'd justice, with his surly hum,  
Delivering o'er to executors pale  
The lazy yawning drone. I this infer, 204  
That many things, having full reference  
To one consent, may work contrariously ;  
As many arrows, loosed several ways,  
Fly to one mark ; as many ways meet in one town ;  
As many fresh streams meet in one salt sea ; 208  
As many lines close in the dial's centre ;

So may a thousand actions, once afoot,  
End in one purpose, and be all well borne 212  
Without defeat. Therefore to France, my liege.

Divide your happy England into four ;  
Whereof take you one quarter into France,  
And you withal shall make all Gallia shake. 216

If we, with thrice such powers left at home,  
Cannot defend our own doors from the dog,  
Let us be worried and our nation lose  
The name of hardiness and policy. 220

KING HENRY. Call in the messengers sent from the  
Dauphin. [Exit an Attendant.

Now are we well resolv'd ; and by God's help,  
And yours, the noble sinews of our power,  
France being ours, we'll bend it to our awe 224

Or break it all to pieces : or there we'll sit,  
Ruling in large and ample empery

O'er France and all her almost kingly dukedoms,  
Or lay these bones in an unworthy urn, 228

Tombless, with no remembrance over them :  
Either our history shall with full mouth  
Speak freely of our acts, or else our grave,  
Like Turkish mute, shall have a tongueless mouth,  
Not worshipp'd with a waxen epitaph. 233

Enter Ambassadors of France.

Now are we well prepar'd to know the pleasure  
Of our fair cousin Dauphin ; for we hear  
Your greeting is from him, not from the king. 236

FIRST AMBASSADOR. May 't please your majesty to  
give us leave

Freely to render what we have in charge ;  
Or shall we sparingly show you far off  
The Dauphin's meaning and our embassy ? 240

KING HENRY. We are no tyrant, but a Christian king ;  
Unto whose grace our passion is as subject  
As are our wretches fetter'd in our prisons : 243

Therefore with frank and with uncurbed plainness  
Tell us the Dauphin's mind.

FIRST AMBASSADOR. Thus then, in few.  
Your highness, lately sending into France,  
Did claim some certain dukedoms, in the right 247  
Of your great predecessor, King Edward the Third.

In answer of which claim, the prince our master  
Says that you savour too much of your youth,  
And bids you be advis'd there's nought in France  
That can be with a nimble galliard won ; 252  
You cannot revel into dukedoms there.

He therefore sends you, meeter for your spirit,  
This tun of treasure ; and, in lieu of this,  
Desires you let the dukedoms that you claim 256  
Hear no more of you. This the Dauphin speaks.

KING HENRY. What treasure, uncle ?

EXETER. Tennis-balls, my liege.

KING HENRY. We are glad the Dauphin is so pleasant  
with us :

His present and your pains we thank you for : 260  
When we have match'd our rackets to these balls,  
We will in France, by God's grace, play a set  
Shall strike his father's crown into the hazard.

Tell him he hath made a match with such a wrangler  
That all the courts of France will be disturb'd 265  
With chaces. And we understand him well,

How he comes o'er us with our wilder days,  
Not measuring what use we made of them. 268  
We never valued this poor seat of England ;

And therefore, living hence, did give ourself  
To barbarous licence ; as 'tis ever common  
That men are merriest when they are from home.  
But tell the Dauphin I will keep my state, 273

Be like a king and show my sail of greatness  
When I do rouse me in my throne of France :

For that I have laid by my majesty 276

And plodded like a man for working-days,  
But I will rise there with so full a glory  
That I will dazzle all the eyes of France,  
Yea, strike the Dauphin blind to look on us. 280

And tell the pleasant prince this mock of his  
Hath turn'd his balls to gun-stones ; and his soul  
Shall stand sore-charged for the wasteful vengeance  
That shall fly with them : for many a thousand widows  
Shall this his mock mock out of their dear husbands ;  
Mock mothers from their sons, mock castles down ;  
And some are yet ungotten and unborn 287

That shall have cause to curse the Dauphin's scorn.  
But this lies all within the will of God,

To whom I do appeal ; and in whose name  
 Tell you the Dauphin I am coming on,  
 To venge me as I may and to put forth 292  
 My rightful hand in a well-hallow'd cause.  
 So get you hence in peace ; and tell the Dauphin  
 His jest will savour but of shallow wit 295  
 When thousands weep more than did laugh at it.  
 Convey them with safe conduct. Fare you well.

[Exeunt Ambassadors.]

EXETER. This was a merry message.

KING HENRY. We hope to make the sender blush at it.  
 Therefore, my lords, omit no happy hour 300  
 That may give furtherance to our expedition ;  
 For we have now no thought in us but France,  
 Save those to God, that run before our business.  
 Therefore let our proportions for these wars 304  
 Be soon collected, and all things thought upon  
 That may with reasonable swiftness add  
 More feathers to our wings ; for, God before,  
 We'll chide this Dauphin at his father's door. 308  
 Therefore let every man now task his thought,  
 That this fair action may on foot be brought.

[Exeunt. Flourish.]

## ACT II.

Enter Chorus.

CHORUS. Now all the youth of England are on fire,  
 And silken dalliance in the wardrobe lies ;  
 Now thrive the armourers, and honour's thought  
 Reigns solely in the breast of every man : 4  
 They sell the pasture now to buy the horse,  
 Following the mirror of all Christian kings  
 With winged heels, as English Mercuries.  
 For now sits Expectation in the air 8  
 And hides a sword from hilts unto the point  
 With crowns imperial, crowns and coronets,  
 Promis'd to Harry and his followers.  
 The French, advis'd by good intelligence 12  
 Of this most dreadful preparation,  
 Shake in their fear, and with pale policy  
 Seek to divert the English purposes.  
 O England ! model to thy inward greatness, 16

Like little body with a mighty heart,  
 What mightst thou do, that honour would thee do,  
 Were all thy children kind and natural ! 19  
 But see thy fault ! France hath in thee found out  
 A nest of hollow bosoms, which he fills  
 With treacherous crowns ; and three corrupted men,  
 One, Richard Earl of Cambridge, and the second,  
 Henry Lord Scroop of Masham, and the third, 24  
 Sir Thomas Grey, knight, of Northumberland,  
 Have, for the gilt of France,—O guilt, indeed !—  
 Confirm'd conspiracy with fearful France ;  
 And by their hands this grace of kings must die,—  
 If hell and treason hold their promises,— 29  
 Ere he take ship for France, and in Southampton.  
 Linger your patience on ; and well digest  
 The abuse of distance while we force a play. 32  
 The sum is paid ; the traitors are agreed ;  
 The king is set from London ; and the scene  
 Is now transported, gentles, to Southampton :  
 There is the playhouse now, there must you sit : 36  
 And thence to France shall we convey you safe,  
 And bring you back, charming the narrow seas  
 To give you gentle pass ; for, if we may,  
 We'll not offend one stomach with our play. 40  
 But, till the king come forth and not till then,  
 Unto Southampton do we shift our scene. [Exit.

SCENE I.—London. Eastcheap.

Enter NYM and BARDOLPH.

BARDOLPH. Well met, Corporal Nym.

NYM. Good morrow, Lieutenant Bardolph.

BARDOLPH. What, are Ancient Pistol and you friends yet ? 4

NYM. For my part, I care not : I say little ; but when time shall serve, there shall be smiles ; but that shall be as it may. I dare not fight ; but I will wink and hold out mine iron. It is a simple one ; but what though ? it will toast cheese, and it will endure cold as another man's sword will : and there's an end.

BARDOLPH. I will bestow a breakfast to make you friends, and we'll be all three sworn brothers to France : let it be so, good Corporal Nym. 13



NYM. Faith, I will live so long as I may, that's the certain of it; and when I cannot live any longer, I will do as I may: that is my rest, that is the rendezvous of it. 17

BARDOLPH. It is certain, corporal, that he is married to Nell Quickly; and, certainly she did you wrong, for you were troth-plight to her. 20

NYM. I cannot tell; things must be as they may: men may sleep, and they may have their throats about them at that time; and, some say, knives have edges. It must be as it may: though patience be a tired mare, yet she will plod. There must be conclusions. Well, I cannot tell. 26

Enter PISTOL and Hostess.

BARDOLPH. Here comes Ancient Pistol and his wife. Good corporal, be patient here. How now, mine host Pistol!

PISTOL. Base tike, call'st thou me host? Now, by this hand, I swear, I scorn the term; Nor shall my Nell keep lodgers. 32

HOSTESS. No, by my troth, not long; for we cannot lodge and board a dozen or fourteen gentlewomen that live honestly by the prick of their needles, but it will be thought we keep a bawdy-house straight. [NYM and PISTOL draw.] O well-a-day, Lady! if he be not drawn now: we shall see wilful adultery and murder committed.

BARDOLPH. Good lieutenant! good corporal! offer nothing here. 41

NYM. Pish!

PISTOL. Pish for thee, Iceland dog! thou prick-eared cur of Iceland! 44

HOSTESS. Good Corporal Nym, show thy valour and put up your sword.

NYM. Will you shog off? I would have you solus.

[Sheathing his sword.]

PISTOL. 'Solus,' egregious dog? O viper vile! The 'solus' in thy most mervailous face; 49 The 'solus' in thy teeth, and in thy throat, And in thy hateful lungs, yea, in thy maw, perdy; And, which is worse, within thy nasty mouth! 52 I do retort the 'solus' in thy bowels;

For I can take, and Pistol's cock is up,  
And flashing fire will follow.

55

NYM. I am not Barbason ; you cannot conjure me. I have an humour to knock you indifferently well. If you grow foul with me, Pistol, I will scour you with my rapier, as I may, in fair terms : if you would walk off, I would prick your guts a little, in good terms, as I may ; and that 's the humour of it.

61

PISTOL. O braggart vile and damned furious wight !  
The grave doth gape, and doting death is near ;  
Therefore exhale.

64

BARDOLPH. Hear me, hear me what I say : he that strikes the first stroke, I'll run him up to the hilts, as I am a soldier.

[Draws

PISTOL. An oath of mickle might, and fury shall abate.

Give me thy fist, thy fore-foot to me give ;  
Thy spirits are most tall.

69

NYM. I will cut thy throat, one time or other, in fair terms ; that is the humour of it.

72

PISTOL. 'Coupe le gorge !'

That is the word. I thee defy again.

O hound of Crete, think'st thou my spouse to get ?

No ; to the spital go,

76

And from the powdering-tub of infamy

Fetch forth the lazar kite of Cressid's kind,

Doll Tearsheet she by name, and her espouse :

I have, and I will hold, the quondam Quickly

80

For the only she ; and—pauca, there 's enough.

Go to.

Enter the Boy.

BOY. Mine host Pistol, you must come to my master, and you, hostess : he is very sick, and would to bed. Good Bardolph, put thy face between his sheets and do the office of a warming-pan. Faith, he 's very ill.

86

BARDOLPH. Away, you rogue !

HOSTESS. By my troth, he'll yield the crow a pudding one of these days. The king has killed his heart. Good husband, come home presently.

[Exeunt HOSTESS and BOY.

BARDOLPH. Come, shall I make you two friends ? We must to France together. Why the devil should we keep knives to cut one another's throats ?

93

PISTOL. Let floods o'erswell, and fiends for food howl on !

NYM. You'll pay me the eight shillings I won of you at betting ? 96

PISTOL. Base is the slave that pays.

NYM. That now I will have ; that's the humour of it.

PISTOL. As manhood shall compound : push home.

[They draw.

BARDOLPH. By this sword, he that makes the first thrust, I'll kill him ; by this sword, I will. 102

PISTOL. Sword is an oath, and oaths must have their course.

BARDOLPH. Corporal Nym, an thou wilt be friends, be friends : an thou wilt not, why then, be enemies with me too. Prithee, put up.

NYM. I shall have my eight shillings I won of you at betting ? 108

PISTOL. A noble shalt thou have, and present pay ;  
And liquor likewise will I give to thee,  
And friendship shall combine, and brotherhood :  
I'll live by Nym, and Nym shall live by me. 112  
Is not this just ? for I shall sutler be  
Unto the camp, and profits will accrue.  
Give me thy hand.

NYM. I shall have my noble ? 116

PISTOL. In cash most justly paid. [Paying him.

NYM. Well then, that's the humour of it.

Re-enter Hostess.

HOSTESS. As ever you came of women, come in quickly to Sir John. Ah, poor heart ! he is so-shaked of a burning quotidian tertian, that it is most lamentable to behold. Sweet men, come to him. 122

NYM. The king hath run bad humours on the knight : that's the even of it.

PISTOL. Nym, thou hast spoke the right ;  
His heart is fractured and corroborate.

NYM. The king is a good king : but it must be as it may ; he passes some humours and careers. 128

PISTOL. Let us condole the knight ; for, lambkins,  
we will live. [Exeunt.

SCENE II.—Southampton. A Council-chamber.

Enter EXETER, BEDFORD, and WESTMORELAND.

BEDFORD. 'Fore God, his Grace is bold to trust these traitors.

EXETER. They shall be apprehended by and by.

WESTMORELAND. How smooth and even they do bear themselves !

As if allegiance in their bosoms sat, 4  
Crowned with faith and constant loyalty.

BEDFORD. The king hath note of all that they intend,  
By interception which they dream not of.

EXETER. Nay, but the man that was his bedfellow,  
Whom he hath dull'd and cloy'd with gracious favours,  
That he should, for a foreign purse, so sell  
His sovereign's life to death and treachery !

Trumpets sound. Enter KING HENRY, SCROOP, CAMBRIDGE,  
GREY, Lords, and Attendants.

KING HENRY. Now sits the wind fair, and we will  
aboard. 12

My Lord of Cambridge, and my kind Lord of Masham,  
And you, my gentle knight, give me your thoughts :  
Think you not that the powers we bear with us  
Will cut their passage through the force of France,  
Doing the execution and the act 17  
For which we have in head assembled them ?

SCROOP. No doubt, my liege, if each man do his best.

KING HENRY. I doubt not that ; since we are well  
persuaded 20

We carry not a heart with us from hence  
That grows not in a fair consent with ours ;  
Nor leave not one behind that doth not wish  
Success and conquest to attend on us. 24

CAMBRIDGE. Never was monarch better fear'd and  
lov'd

Than is your majesty : there's not, I think, a subject  
That sits in heart-grief and uneasiness  
Under the sweet shade of your government. 28

GREY. True : those that were your father's enemies  
Have steep'd their galls in honey, and do serve you  
With hearts create of duty and of zeal.

KING HENRY. We therefore have great cause of thankfulness, 32

And shall forget the office of our hand,  
Sooner than quittance of desert and merit  
According to the weight and worthiness.

SCROOP. So service shall with steeled sinews toil,  
And labour shall refresh itself with hope, 37  
To do your Grace incessant services.

KING HENRY. We judge no less. Uncle of Exeter,  
Enlarge the man committed yesterday  
That rail'd against our person : we consider 41  
It was excess of wine that set him on ;  
And on his more advice we pardon him.

SCROOP. That 's mercy, but too much security : 44  
Let him be punish'd, sovereign, lest example  
Breed, by his sufferance, more of such a kind.

KING HENRY. O ! let us yet be merciful.

CAMBRIDGE. So may your highness, and yet punish too. 48

GREY. Sir,  
You show great mercy, if you give him life  
After the taste of much correction.

KING HENRY. Alas ! your too much love and care of me 52

Are heavy orisons 'gainst this poor wretch.  
If little faults, proceeding on distemper,  
Shall not be wink'd at, how shall we stretch our eye  
When capital crimes, chew'd, swallow'd, and digested,  
Appear before us ? We'll yet enlarge that man, 57  
Though Cambridge, Scroop, and Grey, in their dear care,  
And tender preservation of our person,  
Would have him punish'd. And now to our French  
causes : 60

Who are the late commissioners ?

CAMBRIDGE. I one, my lord :  
Your highness bade me ask for it to-day.

SCROOP. So did you me, my liege. 64

GREY. And I, my royal sovereign.

KING HENRY. Then, Richard, Earl of Cambridge, there is yours ;

There yours, Lord Scroop of Masham ; and, sir knight,  
Grey of Northumberland, this same is yours : 68  
Read them ; and know, I know your worthiness.

My Lord of Westmoreland, and uncle Exeter,  
 We will aboard to-night. Why, how now, gentlemen  
 What see you in those papers that you lose  
 So much complexion? Look ye, how they change!  
 Their cheeks are paper. Why, what read you there,  
 That hath so cowarded and chas'd your blood  
 Out of appearance?

CAMBRIDGE. I do confess my fault, 76  
 And do submit me to your highness' mercy.

GREY. }  
 SCROOP. } To which we all appeal.

KING HENRY. The mercy that was quick in us but late  
 By your own counsel is suppress'd and kill'd : 80  
 You must not dare, for shame, to talk of mercy ;  
 For your own reasons turn into your bosoms,  
 As dogs upon their masters, worrying you.  
 See you, my princes and my noble peers, 84  
 These English monsters ! My Lord of Cambridge here,  
 You know how apt our love was to accord  
 To furnish him with all appertinents  
 Belonging to his honour ; and this man 88  
 Hath, for a few light crowns, lightly conspir'd,  
 And sworn unto the practices of France,  
 To kill us here in Hampton : to the which  
 This knight, no less for bounty bound to us 92  
 Than Cambridge is, hath likewise sworn. But O !  
 What shall I say to thee, Lord Scroop ? thou cruel,  
 Ingrateful, savage and inhuman creature !  
 Thou that didst bear the key of all my counsels, 96  
 That knew'st the very bottom of my soul,  
 That almost mightst have coin'd me into gold  
 Wouldst thou have practis'd on me for thy use !  
 May it be possible that foreign hire 100  
 Could out of thee extract one spark of evil  
 That might annoy my finger ? 'tis so strange  
 That, though the truth of it stands off as gross  
 As black from white, my eye will scarcely see it. 104  
 Treason and murder ever kept together,  
 As two yoke-devils sworn to either's purpose,  
 Working so grossly in a natural cause  
 That admiration did not whoop at them : 108  
 But thou, 'gainst all proportion, didst bring in  
 Wonder to wait on treason and on murder :

And whatsoever cunning fiend it was  
 That wrought upon thee so preposterously 112  
 Hath got the voice in hell for excellence :  
 And other devils that suggest by treasons  
 Do botch and bungle up damnation  
 With patches, colours, and with forms, being fetch'd  
 From glistening semblances of piety ; 117  
 But he that temper'd thee bade thee stand up,  
 Gave thee no instance why thou shouldst do treason,  
 Unless to dub thee with the name of traitor. 120  
 If that same demon that hath gull'd thee thus  
 Should with his lion gait walk the whole world,  
 He might return to vasty Tartar back,  
 And tell the legions, ' I can never win 124  
 A soul so easy as that Englishman's.'  
 O ! how hast thou with jealousy infected  
 The sweetness of affiance. Show men dutiful ? 127  
 Why, so didst thou seem they grave and learned ?  
 Why, so didst thou come they of noble family ?  
 Why, so didst thou seem they religious ?  
 Why, so didst thou or are they spare in diet,  
 Free from gross passion or of mirth or anger, 132  
 Constant in spirit, not swerving with the blood,  
 Garnish'd and deck'd in modest complement,  
 Not working with the eye without the ear,  
 And but in purged judgment trusting neither ? 136  
 Such and so finely bolted didst thou seem :  
 And thus thy fall hath left a kind of blot,  
 To mark the full-fraught man and best indued  
 With some suspicion. I will weep for thee ; 140  
 For this revolt of thine, methinks, is like  
 Another fall of man. Their faults are open :  
 Arrest them to the answer of the law ;  
 And God acquit them of their practices ! 144  
 EXETER. I arrest thee of high treason, by the name  
 of Richard Earl of Cambridge.  
 I arrest thee of high treason, by the name of Henry  
 Lord Scroop of Masham. 148  
 I arrest thee of high treason, by the name of Thomas  
 Grey, knight, of Northumberland.  
 SCROOP. Our purposes God justly hath discover'd,  
 And I repent my fault more than my death ; 152  
 Which I beseech your highness to forgive,

Although my body pay the price of it.

CAMBRIDGE. For me, the gold of France did not  
seduce,

Although I did admit it as a motive 156

The sooner to effect what I intended :

But God be thanked for prevention ;

Which I in sufferance heartily will rejoice,

Beseeching God and you to pardon me. 160

GREY. Never did faithful subject more rejoice

At the discovery of most dangerous treason

Than I do at this hour joy o'er myself,

Prevented from a damned enterprise. 164

My fault, but not my body, pardon, sovereign.

KING HENRY. God quit you in his mercy ! Hear your  
sentence.

You have conspir'd against our royal person,

Join'd with an enemy proclaim'd, and from his coffers

Receiv'd the golden earnest of our death ; 169

Wherein you would have sold your king to slaughter,

His princes and his peers to servitude,

His subjects to oppression and contempt, 172

And his whole kingdom into desolation.

Touching our person seek we no revenge ;

But we our kingdom's safety must so tender,

Whose ruin you have sought, that to her laws 176

We do deliver you. Get you therefore hence,

Poor miserable wretches, to your death ;

The taste whereof, God of his mercy give you

Patience to endure, and true repentance 180

Of all your dear offences ! Bear them hence.

[Exeunt CAMBRIDGE, SCROOP, and GREY, guarded.]

Now, lords, for France ! the enterprise whereof

Shall be to you, as us, like glorious.

We doubt not of a fair and lucky war, 184

Since God so graciously hath brought to light

This dangerous treason lurking in our way

To hinder our beginnings. We doubt not now

But every rub is smoothened on our way. 188

Then forth, dear countrymen : let us deliver

Our puissance into the hand of God,

Putting it straight in expedition.

Cheerly to sea ! the signs of war advance : 192

No king of England, if not king of France.

[Exeunt.]



SCENE III.—London. Before a Tavern in Eastcheap.

Enter PISTOL, Hostess, NYM, BARDOLPH, and Boy.

HOSTESS. Prithee, honey-sweet husband, let me bring thee to Staines.

PISTOL. No ; for my manly heart doth yearn. 3  
Bardolph, be blithe ; Nym, rouse thy vaunting veins ;  
Boy, bristle thy courage up ; for Falstaff he is dead,  
And we must yearn therefore.

BARDOLPH. Would I were with him, wheresome'er he is, either in heaven or in hell ! 8

HOSTESS. Nay, sure, he's not in hell : he's in Arthur's bosom, if ever man went to Arthur's bosom. A' made a finer end and went away an it had been any christom child ; a' parted even just between twelve and one, even at the turning o' the tide : for after I saw him fumble with the sheets and play with flowers and smile upon his fingers' ends, I knew there was but one way ; for his nose was as sharp as a pen, and a' babbled of green fields. 'How now, Sir John !' quoth I : 'what man ! be of good cheer.' So a' cried out 'God, God, God !' three or four times : now I, to comfort him, bid him a' should not think of God, I hoped there was no need to trouble himself with any such thoughts yet. So a' bade me lay more clothes on his feet : I put my hand into the bed and felt them, and they were as cold as any stone ; then I felt to his knees, and so upward, and upward, and all was as cold as any stone.

NYM. They say he cried out of sack.

HOSTESS. Ay, that a' did. 28

BARDOLPH. And of women.

HOSTESS. Nay, that a' did not.

BOY. Yes, that a' did ; and said they were devils incarnate. 32

HOSTESS. A' could never abide carnation ; 'twas a colour he never liked.

BOY. A' said once, the devil would have him about women. 36

HOSTESS. A' did in some sort, indeed, handle women ; but then he was rheumatic, and talked of the whore of Babylon. 39

BOY. Do you not remember a' saw a flea stick upon

Bardolph's nose, and a' said it was a black soul burning in hell-fire ?

BARDOLPH. Well, the fuel is gone that maintained that fire : that 's all the riches I got in his service. 44

NYM. Shall we shog ? the king will be gone from Southampton.

PISTOL. Come, let 's away. My love, give me thy lips. Look to my chattels and my moveables : 48

Let senses rule, the word is ' Pitch and pay ' ;

Trust none ;

For oaths are straws, men's faiths are wafer-cakes, And hold-fast is the only dog, my duck : 52

Therefore, caveto be thy counsellor.

Go, clear thy crystals. Yoke-fellows in arms,

Let us to France ; like horse-leeches, my boys,

To suck, to suck, the very blood to suck ! 56

BOY. And that 's but unwholesome food, they say.

PISTOL. Touch her soft mouth, and march.

BARDOLPH. Farewell, hostess. [Kissing her.

NYM. I cannot kiss, that is the humour of it ; but, adieu. 61

PISTOL. Let housewifery appear : keep close, I thee command.

HOSTESS. Farewell ; adieu. [Exeunt.

SCENE IV.—France. An Apartment in the FRENCH KING's Palace.

Flourish. Enter the FRENCH KING, attended ; the DAUPHIN, the DUKES OF BERRI and BRITAINE, the CONSTABLE, and Others.

FRENCH KING. Thus come the English with full power upon us ;

And more than carefully it us concerns

To answer royally in our defences.

Therefore the Dukes of Berri and Britaine, 4

Of Brabant and of Orleans, shall make forth,

And you, Prince Dauphin, with all swift dispatch,

To line and new repair our towns of war

With men of courage and with means defendant : 8

For England his approaches makes as fierce

As waters to the sucking of a gulf.

It fits us then to be as provident

As fear may teach us, out of late examples 12

Left by the fatal and neglected English

Upon our fields.

DAUPHIN. My most redoubted father,  
 It is most meet we arm us 'gainst the foe ;  
 For peace itself should not so dull a kingdom,— 16  
 Though war nor no known quarrel were in question,—  
 But that defences, musters, preparations,  
 Should be maintain'd, assembled, and collected,  
 As were a war in expectation. 20  
 Therefore, I say 'tis meet we all go forth  
 To view the sick and feeble parts of France :  
 And let us do it with no show of fear ;  
 No, with no more than if we heard that England  
 Were busied with a Whitsun morris-dance : 25  
 For, my good liege, she is so idly king'd,  
 Her sceptre so fantastically borne  
 By a vain, giddy, shallow, humorous youth, 28  
 That fear attends her not.

CONSTABLE. O peace, Prince Dauphin !  
 You are too much mistaken in this king.  
 Question your Grace the late ambassadors,  
 With what great state he heard their embassy, 32  
 How well supplied with noble counsellors,  
 How modest in exception, and, withal  
 How terrible in constant resolution,  
 And you shall find his vanities forespent 36  
 Were but the outside of the Roman Brutus,  
 Covering discretion with a coat of folly ;  
 As gardeners do with ordure hide those roots  
 That shall first spring and be most delicate. 40

DAUPHIN. Well, 'tis not so, my lord high constable ;  
 But though we think it so, it is no matter :  
 In cases of defence 'tis best to weigh  
 The enemy more mighty than he seems : 44  
 So the proportions of defence are fill'd ;  
 Which of a weak and niggardly projection  
 Doth like a miser spoil his coat with scanting 47  
 A little cloth.

FRENCH KING. Think we King Harry strong ;  
 And, princes, look you strongly arm to meet him.  
 The kindred of him hath been flesh'd upon us,  
 And he is bred out of that bloody strain  
 That haunted us in our familiar paths : 52  
 Witness our too much memorable shame

When Cressy battle fatally was struck  
And all our princes captiv'd by the hand 55  
Of that black name, Edward, Black Prince of Wales;  
Whiles that his mounting sire, on mountain standing,  
Up in the air, crown'd with the golden sun,  
Saw his heroical seed, and smil'd to see him  
Mangle the work of nature, and deface 60  
The patterns that by God and by French fathers  
Had twenty years been made. This is a stem  
Of that victorious stock; and let us fear  
The native mightiness and fate of him. 64

Enter a Messenger.

MESSENGER. Ambassadors from Harry King of Eng-  
land

Do crave admittance to your majesty.

FRENCH KING. We'll give them present audience.

Go, and bring them. [Exeunt Messenger and certain Lords.

You see this chase is hotly follow'd, friends. 68

DAUPHIN. Turn head, and stop pursuit; for coward  
dogs

Most spend their mouths when what they seem to  
threaten

Runs far before them. Good my sovereign,  
Take up the English short, and let them know 72  
Of what a monarchy you are the head:  
Self-love, my liege, is not so vile a sin  
As self-neglecting.

Re-enter Lords, with EXETER and Train.

FRENCH KING. From our brother England?

EXETER. From him; and thus he greets your majesty.  
He wills you, in the name of God Almighty, 77  
That you divest yourself, and lay apart  
The borrow'd glories that by gift of heaven,  
By law of nature and of nations, 'long 80  
To him and to his heirs; namely, the crown  
And all wide-stretched honours that pertain  
By custom and the ordinance of times 83  
Unto the crown of France. That you may know  
'Tis no sinister nor no awkward claim,  
Pick'd from the worm-holes of long-vanish'd days,  
Nor from the dust of old oblivion rak'd, 87

He sends you this most memorable line, [Gives a pedigree.  
 In every branch truly demonstrative ;  
 Willing you overlook this pedigree ;  
 And when you find him evenly deriv'd  
 From his most fam'd of famous ancestors, 92  
 Edward the Third he bids you then resign  
 Your crown and kingdom, indirectly held  
 From him the native and true challenger.

FRENCH KING. Or else what follows ? 96

EXETER. Bloody constraint ; for if you hide the crown  
 Even in your hearts, there will he rake for it :  
 Therefore in fierce tempest is he coming,  
 In thunder and in earthquake like a Jove, 100  
 That, if requiring fail, he will compel ;  
 And bids you, in the bowels of the Lord,  
 Deliver up the crown, and to take mercy  
 On the poor souls for whom this hungry war 104  
 Opens his vasty jaws ; and on your head  
 Turning the widows' tears, the orphans' cries,  
 The dead men's blood, the pining maidens' groans,  
 For husbands, fathers, and betrothed lovers, 108  
 That shall be swallow'd in this controversy.  
 This is his claim, his threatening, and my message ;  
 Unless the Dauphin be in presence here,  
 To whom expressly I bring greeting too. 112

FRENCH KING. For us, we will consider of this further :  
 To-morrow shall you bear our full intent  
 Back to our brother England.

DAUPHIN. For the Dauphin,  
 I stand here for him : what to him from England ?

EXETER. Scorn and defiance, slight regard, contempt,  
 And anything that may not misbecome 118  
 The mighty sender, doth he prize you at.  
 Thus says my king : an if your father's highness  
 Do not, in grant of all demands at large, 121  
 Sweeten the bitter mock you sent his majesty,  
 He'll call you to so hot an answer of it,  
 That caves and womby vaultages of France 124  
 Shall chide your trespass and return your mock  
 In second accent of his ordinance.

DAUPHIN. Say, if my father render fair return,  
 It is against my will ; for I desire 128  
 Nothing but odds with England : to that end,

As matching to his youth and vanity,  
I did present him with the Paris balls. 1

EXETER. He'll make your Paris Louyre shake for it,  
Were it the mistress-court of mighty Europe :  
And, be assur'd, you'll find a difference—

As we his subjects have in wonder found—  
Between the promise of his greener days 136

And these he masters now. Now he weighs time

Even to the utmost grain ; that you shall read

In your own losses, if he stay in Franco.

FRENCH KING. To-morrow shall you know our mind  
at full. 140

EXETER. Dispatch us with all speed, lest that our king  
Come here himself to question our delay ;  
For he is footed in this land already.

FRENCH KING. You shall be soon dispatch'd with fair  
conditions : 144

A night is but small breath and little pause

To answer matters of this consequence. [Flourish. Exeunt.

### ACT III.

Enter Chorus.

CHORUS. Thus with imagin'd wing our swift scene flies  
In motion of no less celerity

Than that of thought. Suppose that you have seen 4

The well-appointed king at Hampton pier

Embark his royalty ; and his brave fleet

With silken streamers the young Phoebus fanning :

Play with your fancies and in them behold

Upon the hempen tackle ship-boys climbing ; 8

Hear the shrill whistle which doth order give

To sounds confus'd ; behold the threaden sails,

Borne with the invisible and creeping wind, 11

Draw the huge bottoms through the furrow'd sea,

Breasting the lofty surge. O ! do but think

You stand upon the rivage and behold

A city on the inconstant billows dancing ;

For so appears this fleet majestical, 16

Holding due course to Harfleur. Follow, follow !

Grapple your minds to sternage of this navy,

And leave your England, as dead midnight still,  
 Guarded with grandsires, babies, and old women,  
 Either past or not arriv'd to pith and puissance :  
 For who is he, whose chin is but enrich'd 22  
 With one appearing hair, that will not follow  
 Those cull'd and choice-drawn cavaliers to France ?  
 Work, work your thoughts, and therein see a siege ;  
 Behold the ordnance on their carriages, 26  
 With fatal mouths gaping on girded Harfleur.  
 Suppose the ambassador from the French comes back ;  
 Tells Harry that the king doth offer him 29  
 Katharine his daughter ; and with her, to dowry,  
 Some petty and unprofitable dukedoms :  
 The offer likes not : and the nimble gunner 32  
 With linstock now the devilish cannon touches,  
 [Alarum, and chambers go off.  
 And down goes all before them. Still be kind,  
 And eke out our performance with your mind. [Exit.

## SCENE I.—France. Before Harfleur.

Alarums. Enter KING HENRY, EXETER, BEDFORD, GLOUCESTER, and  
 Soldiers, with scaling ladders.

KING HENRY. Once more unto the breach, dear  
 friends, once more ;  
 Or close the wall up with our English dead !  
 In peace there 's nothing so becomes a man  
 As modest stillness and humility : 4  
 But when the blast of war blows in our ears,  
 Then imitate the action of the tiger ;  
 Stiffen the sinews, summon up the blood,  
 Disguise fair nature with hard-favour'd rage ; 8  
 Then lend the eye a terrible aspect ;  
 Let it pry through the portage of the head  
 Like the brass cannon ; let the brow o'erwhelm it  
 As fearfully as doth a galled rock 12  
 O'erhang and jutty his confounded base,  
 Swill'd with the wild and wasteful ocean.  
 Now set the teeth and stretch the nostril wide,  
 Hold hard the breath, and bend up every spirit 16  
 To his full height ! On, on, you noblest English !  
 Whose blood is fet from fathers of war-proof ;  
 Fathers that, like so many Alexanders,

Have in these parts from morn till even fought, 20  
And sheath'd their swords for lack of argument.  
Dishonour not your mothers ; now attest  
That those whom you call'd fathers did beget you.  
Be copy now to men of grosser blood, 24  
And teach them how to war. / And you, good yeomen,  
Whose limbs were made in England, show us here  
The mettle of your pasture ; let us swear  
That you are worth your breeding ; which I doubt not ;  
For there is none of you so mean and base 29  
That hath not noble lustre in your eyes.  
I see you stand like greyhounds in the slips,  
Straining upon the start. The game's afoot : 32  
Follow your spirit ; and, upon this charge  
Cry ' God for Harry ! England and Saint George ! '

[Exeunt. Alarum, and chambers go off.

SCENE II.—The Same.

Enter NYM, BARDOLPH, PISTOL, and Boy.

BARDOLPH. On, on, on, on, on ! to the breach, to the breach !

NYM. Pray thee, corporal, stay : the knocks are too hot ; and for mine own part, I have not a case of lives : the humour of it is too hot, that is the very plain-song of it.

PISTOL. The plain-song is most just, for humours do abound : 8

Knocks go and come : God's vassals drop and die ;  
And sword and shield  
In bloody field  
Doth win immortal fame. 12

BOY. Would I were in an alehouse in London ! I would give all my fame for a pot of ale, and safety.

PISTOL. And I :

If wishes would prevail with me, 16  
My purpose should not fail with me,  
But thither would I hie.

BOY. As duly,  
But not as truly, 20  
As bird doth sing on bough.



Enter FLUELLEN.

FLUELLEN. Up to the breach, you dogs ! avaunt, you cullions !

[Driving them forward.]

PISTOL. Be merciful, great duke, to men of mould !

Abate thy rage, abate thy manly rage ! 24

Abate thy rage, great duke !

Good bawcock, bate thy rage ; use lenity, sweet chuck !

NYM. These be good humours ! your honour wins bad humours. [Exeunt NYM, PISTOL, and BARDOLPH, followed by FLUELLEN.]

BOY. As young as I am, I have observed these three swashers. I am boy to them all three, but all they three, though they would serve me, could not be man to me ; for, indeed three such antiques do not amount to a man. For Bardolph, he is white-livered and red-faced ; by the means whereof, a' faces it out, but fights not. For Pistol, he hath a killing tongue and a quiet sword ; by the means whereof a' breaks words, and keeps whole weapons. For Nym, he hath heard that men of few words are the best men ; and therefore he scorns to say his prayers, lest a' should be thought a coward : but his few bad words are match'd with as few good deeds ; for a' never broke any man's head but his own, and that was against a post when he was drunk. They will steal any thing and call it purchase. Bardolph stole a lute-case, bore it twelve leagues, and sold it for three half-pence. Nym and Bardolph are sworn brothers in filching, and in Calais they stole a fire-shovel ;—I knew by that piece of service the men would carry coals,—they would have me as familiar with men's pockets as their gloves or their handkerchers : which makes much against my manhood if I should take from another's pocket to put into mine ; for it is plain pocketing up of wrongs. I must leave them and seek some better service : their villany goes against my weak stomach, and therefore I must cast it up. [Exit.]

Re-enter FLUELLEN, GOWER following.

GOWER. Captain Fluellen, you must come presently to the mines : the Duke of Gloucester would speak with you. 57

FLUELLEN. To the mines ! tell you the duke it is not so good to come to the mines. For look you, the

mines is not according to the disciplines of the war ; the concavities of it is not sufficient ; for, look you, th' athversary—you may discuss unto the duke, look you—is digt himself four yards under the countermines ; by Cheshu, I think, a' will plow up all if there is not better directions. 65

GOWER. The Duke of Gloucester, to whom the order of the siege is given, is altogether directed by an Irishman, a very valiant gentleman, i' faith. 68

FLUELLEN. It is Captain Macmorris, is it not ?

GOWER. I think it be.

FLUELLEN. By Cheshu, he is an ass, as in the world : I will verify as much in his peard : he has no more directions in the true disciplines of the wars, look you, of the Roman disciplines, than is a puppy-dog.

Enter MACMORRIS and JAMY, at a distance.

GOWER. Here a' comes ; and the Scots captain, Captain Jamy, with him. 76

FLUELLEN. Captain Jamy is a marvellous falorous gentleman, that is certain ; and of great expedition and knowledge in th' aunchient wars, upon my particular knowledge of his directions : by Cheshu, he will maintain his argument as well as any military man in the world, in the disciplines of the pristine wars of the Romans.

JAMY. I say gud day, Captain Fluellen. 84

FLUELLEN. God-den to your worship, good Captain James.

GOWER. How now, Captain Macmorris ! have you quit the mines ? have the pioners given o'er ? 88

MACMORRIS. By Chrish, la ! tish ill done : the work ish give over, the trumpet sound the retreat. By my hand, I swear, and my father's soul, the work ish ill done ; it ish give over : I would have blowed up the town, so Chrish save me, la ! in an hour : O ! tish ill done, tish ill done ; by my hand, tish ill done ! 94

FLUELLEN. Captain Macmorris, I beseech you now, will you voutsafe me, look you, a few disputations with you, as partly touching or concerning the disciplines of the war, the Roman wars, in the way of argument, look you, and friendly communication ; partly to satisfy my opinion, and partly for the satisfaction, look you,

of my mind, as touching the direction of the military discipline : that is the point.

JAMY. It sall be vary gud, gud feith, gud captains bath : [Aside.] and I sall quit you with gud leve, as I may pick occasion ; that sall I, marry. 105

MACMORRIS. It is no time to discourse, so Chrish save me : the day is hot, and the weather, and the wars, and the king, and the dukes : it is no time to discourse. The town is beseeched, and the trumpet calls us to the breach ; and we talk, and be Chrish, do nothing : 'tis shame for us all ; so God sa' me, 'tis shame to stand still ; it is shame, by my hand ; and there is throats to be cut, and works to be done ; and there ish nothing done, so Chrish sa' me, la ! 111

JAMY. By the mess, ere theise eyes of mine take themselves to slumber, aile do gud service, or aile lig i' the grund for it ; ay, or go to death ; and aile pay it as valorously as I may, that sal I suerly do, that is the breff and the long. Marry, I wad full fain heard some question 'tween you tway. 120

FLUELLEN. Captain Macmorris, I think, look you, under your correction, there is not many of your nation—

MACMORRIS. Of my nation ! What ish my nation ? ish a villain, and a bastard, and a knave, and a rascal ? What ish my nation ? Who talks of my nation ? 126

FLUELLEN. Look you, if you take the matter otherwise than is meant, Captain Macmorris, peradventure I shall think you do not use me with that affability as in discretion you ought to use me, look you ; being as good a man as yourself, both in the disciplines of wars, and in the derivation of my birth, and in other particularities. 133

MACMORRIS. I do not know you so good a man as myself : so Chrish save me, I will cut off your head.

GOWER. Gentlemen both, you will mistake each other.

JAMY. A ! that 's a foul fault. [A parley sounded. 139

GOWER. The town sounds a parley. 139

FLUELLEN. Captain Macmorris, when there is more better opportunity to be required, look you, I will be so bold as to tell you I know the disciplines of wars ; and there is an end. [Exeunt. 140

SCENE III.—The Same. Before the Gates of Harfleur.

The Governor and some Citizens on the walls; the English forces below. Enter KING HENRY and his Train.

KING HENRY. How yet resolves the governor of the town?  
This is the latest parle we will admit :  
Therefore to our best mercy give yourselves ;  
Or like to men proud of destruction 4  
Defy us to our worst : for, as I am a soldier,—  
A name that in my thoughts, becomes me best,—  
If I begin the battery once again,  
I will not leave the half-achieved Harfleur 8  
Till in her ashes she lie buried.  
The gates of mercy shall be all shut up,  
And the flesh'd soldier, rough and hard of heart,  
In liberty of bloody hand shall range 12  
With conscience wide as hell, mowing like grass  
Your fresh-fair virgins and your flowering infants.  
What is it then to me, if impious war,  
Array'd in flames like to the prince of fiends, 16  
Do, with his smirch'd complexion, all fell feats  
Enlink'd to waste and desolation ?  
What is 't to me, when you yourselves are cause,  
If your pure maidens fall into the hand 20  
Of hot and forcing violation ?  
What rein can hold licentious wickedness  
When down the hill he holds his fierce career ?  
We may as bootless spend our vain command 24  
Upon the enraged soldiers in their spoil  
As send precepts to the leviathan  
To come ashore. Therefore, you men of Harfleur,  
Take pity of your town and of your people, 28  
Whiles yet my soldiers are in my command ;  
Whiles yet the cool and temperate wind of grace  
O'erblows the filthy and contagious clouds  
Of heady murder, spoil, and villany. 32  
If not, why, in a moment, look to see  
The blind and bloody soldier with foul hand  
Defile the locks of your shrill-shrieking daughters ;  
Your fathers taken by the silver beards, 36  
And their most reverend heads dash'd to the walls ;  
Your naked infants spitted upon pikes,  
Whiles the mad mothers with their howls confus'd

Do break the clouds, as did the wives of Jewry  
 At Herod's bloody-hunting slaughtermen. 41  
 What say you ? will you yield, and this avoid ?  
 Or, guilty in defence, be thus destroy'd ?

GOVERNOR. Our expectation hath this day an end.  
 The Dauphin, whom of succour we entreated, 45  
 Returns us that his powers are yet not ready  
 To raise so great a siege. Therefore, great king,  
 We yield our town and lives to thy soft mercy. 48  
 Enter our gates ; dispose of us and ours ;  
 For we no longer are defensible.

KING HENRY. Open your gates ! Come, uncle Exeter,  
 Go you and enter Harfleur ; there remain, 52  
 And fortify it strongly 'gainst the French :  
 Use mercy to them all. For us, dear uncle,  
 The winter coming on and sickness growing  
 Upon our soldiers, we will retire to Calais. 56  
 To-night in Harfleur will we be your guest ;  
 To-morrow for the march are we address.

[Flourish. KING HENRY and his Train enter the town.]

SCENE IV.—Rouen. A Room in the Palace.

Enter KATHARINE and ALICE.

KATHARINE. Alice, tu as esté en Angleterre, et tu  
 parles bien le langage.

ALICE. Un peu, madame. 3

KATHARINE. Je te prie, m'enseignez ; il faut que  
 j'apprenne à parler. Comment appelez vous la main en  
 Anglois ?

ALICE. La main ? elle est appelée, de hand.

KATHARINE. De hand. Et les doigts ? 8

ALICE. Les doigts ? ma foy, j'oublie les doigts ;  
 mais je me souviendray. Les doigts ? je pense qu'ils  
 sont appelés de fingres ; ouy, de fingres.

KATHARINE. La main, de hand ; les doigts, de  
 fingres. Je pense que je suis le bon escolier. J'ai gagné  
 deux mots d'Anglois vistement. Comment appelez vous  
 les ongles ? 15

ALICE. Les ongles ? nous les appellons, de nails.

KATHARINE. De nails. Escoutez ; dites moy, si je  
 parle bien : de hands, de fingres, et de nails.

ALICE. C'est bien dict, madame ; il est fort bon  
 Anglois. 20

KATHARINE. Dites moy l'Anglois pour le bras.

ALICE. De arm, madame.

KATHARINE. Et le coude ?

ALICE. De elbow.

24

KATHARINE. De elbow. Je m'en fais la répétition de tous les mots que vous m'avez appris dès à présent.

ALICE. Il est trop difficile, madame, comme je pense.

KATHARINE. Excusez moy, Alice ; escoutez : de hand, de fingres, de nails, de arma, de bilbow.

29

ALICE. De elbow, madame.

KATHARINE. O Seigneur Dieu ! je m'en oublie ; de elbow. Comment appelez vous le col ?

32

ALICE. De nick, madame.

KATHARINE. De nick. Et le menton ?

ALICE. De chin.

KATHARINE. De sin. Le col, de nick : le menton, de sin.

37

ALICE. Ouy. Sauf vostre honneur, en vérité vous prononcez les mots aussi droict que les natifs d'Angleterre.

40

KATHARINE. Je ne doute point d'apprendre par la grace de Dieu, et en peu de temps.

ALICE. N'avez vous déjà oublié ce que je vous ay enseignée ?

44

KATHARINE. Non, je reciteray à vous promptement. De hand, de fingre, de mails,—

ALICE. De nails, madame.

KATHARINE. De nails, de arme, de ilbow.

48

ALICE. Sauf vostre honneur, d'elbow.

KATHARINE. Ainsi dis je ; d'elbow, de nick, et de sin. Comment appelez vous le pied et la robe ?

ALICE. De foot, madame ; et le coun.

52

KATHARINE. De foot, et le coun ? O Seigneur Dieu ! ces sont mots de son mauvais, corruptible, gros, et impudique, et non pour les dames d'honneur d'user. Je ne voudrois prononcer ces mots devant les seigneurs de France, pour tout le monde. Foh ! le foot, et le coun. Néanmoins je reciterai une autre fois ma leçon ensemble : de hand, de fingre, de nails, d'arm, d'elbow, de nick, de sin, de foot, le coun.

60

ALICE. Excellent, madame !

KATHARINE. C'est assez pour une fois : allons nous à diner.

(Exeunt.)

SCENE V.—The Same. Another Room in the Palace.

Enter the FRENCH KING, the DAUPHIN, DUKE OF BOURBON,  
the CONSTABLE OF FRANCE, and Others.

FRENCH KING. 'Tis certain, he hath pass'd the river  
Somme.

CONSTABLE. And if he be not fought withal, my lord,  
Let us not live in France ; let us quit all,  
And give our vineyards to a barbarous people. 4

DAUPHIN. O Dieu vivant ! shall a few sprays of us,  
The emptying of our fathers' luxury,  
Our scions, put in wild and savage stock,  
Spirt up so suddenly into the clouds, 8  
And overlook their grafters ?

BOURBON. Normans, but bastard Normans, Norman  
bastards !

Mort de ma vie ! if they march along  
Unfought withal, but I will sell my dukedom, 12  
To buy a slobbery and a dirty farm  
In that nook-shotten isle of Albion.

CONSTABLE. Dieu de batailles ! where have they this  
mettle ?

Is not their climate foggy, raw, and dull, 16  
On whom, as in despite, the sun looks pale,  
Killing their fruit with frowns ? Can sodden water,  
A drench for sur-rein'd jades, their barley-broth,  
Decoct their cold blood to such valiant heat ? 20  
And shall our quick blood, spirited with wine,  
Seem frosty ? O ! for honour of our land,

\* Let us not hang like roping icicles  
Upon our houses' thatch, whiles a more frosty people  
Sweat drops of gallant youth in our rich fields ; 25  
Poor we may call them in their native lords.

DAUPHIN. By faith and honour,  
Our madams mock at us, and plainly say 28  
Our mettle is bred out ; and they will give  
Their bodies to the lust of English youth  
To new-store France with bastard warriors.

BOURBON. They bid us to the English dancing-schools,  
And teach lavoltas high and swift corantos ; 33  
Saying our grace is only in our heels,  
And that we are most lofty runaways.

FRENCH KING. Where is Montjoy the herald ? speed  
him hence : 36

Let him greet England with our sharp defiance.  
 Up, princes ! and, with spirit of honour edg'd  
 More sharper than your swords, hie to the field :  
 Charles Delabreth, High Constable of France ; 40  
 You Dukes of Orleans, Bourbon, and Berri,  
 Alençon, Brabant, Bar, and Burgundy ;  
 Jaques Chatillon, Rambures, Vaudemont,  
 Beaumont, Grandpré, Roussi, and Fauconberg,  
 Foix, Lestrale, Bouciqualt, and Charolois ; 45  
 High dukes, great princes, barons, lords, and knights,  
 For your great seats now quit you of great shames.  
 Bar Harry England, that sweeps through our land  
 With pennons painted in the blood of Harfleur :  
 Rush on his host, as doth the melted snow 50  
 Upon the valleys, whose low vassal seat  
 The Alps doth spit and void his rheum upon :  
 Go down upon him, you have power enough, 53  
 And in a captive chariot into Roan  
 Bring him our prisoner.

CONSTABLE.

This becomes the great.

Sorry am I his numbers are so few, 56  
 His soldiers sick and famish'd in their march,  
 For I am sure when he shall see our army  
 He'll drop his heart into the sink of fear,  
 And for achievement offer us his ransom. 60

FRENCH KING. Therefore, lord constable, haste on  
 Montjoy,

And let him say to England that we send  
 To know what willing ransom he will give. 63  
 Prince Dauphin, you shall stay with us in Roan.

DAUPHIN. Not so, I do beseech your majesty.

FRENCH KING. Be patient, for you shall remain with us.  
 Now forth, lord constable and princes all,  
 And quickly bring us word of England's fall. [Exeunt.

SCENE VI.—The English Camp in Picardy.

Enter GOWER and FLUELLEN.

GOWER. How now, Captain Fluellen ! come you from  
 the bridge ?

FLUELLEN. I assure you, there is very excellent ser-  
 vices committed at the pridge. 4

GOWER. Is the Duke of Exeter safe ?



FLUELLEN. The Duke of Exeter is as magnanimous as Agamemnon; and a man that I love and honour with my soul, and my heart, and my duty, and my life, and my living, and my uttermost power: he is not—God be praised and plessed!—any hurt in the world; but keeps the pridge most valiantly, with excellent discipline. There is an aunchient lieutenant there at the pridge, I think, in my very conscience, he is as valiant a man as Mark Antony; and he is a man of no estimation in the world; but I did see him do as gallant service. 16

GOWER. What do you call him?

FLUELLEN. He is called Aunchient Pistol.

GOWER. I know him not.

Enter PISTOL.

FLUELLEN. Here is the man. 20

PISTOL. Captain, I thee beseech to do me favours: The Duke of Exeter doth love thee well.

FLUELLEN. Ay, I praise God; and I have merited some love at his hands. 24

PISTOL. Bardolph, a soldier firm and sound of heart,  
And of buxom valour, hath, by cruel fate  
And giddy Fortune's furious fickle wheel,  
That goddess blind, 28  
That stands upon the rolling restless stone,—

FLUELLEN. By your patience, Aunchient Pistol. Fortune is painted plind, with a muffler afore her eyes, to signify to you that Fortune is plind: and she is painted also with a wheel, to signify to you, which is the moral of it, that she is turning, and inconstant, and mutability, and variation: and her foot, look you, is fixed upon a spherical stone, which rolls, and rolls, and rolls: in good truth, the poet makes a most excellent description of it: Fortune is an excellent moral. 39

PISTOL. Fortune is Bardolph's foe, and frowns on him; For he hath stol'n a pax, and hang'd must a' be,  
A damned death!

Let gallows gape for dog, let man go free  
And let not hemp his wind-pipe suffocate. 44  
But Exeter hath given the doom of death  
For pax of little price.

Therefore, go speak ; the duke will hear thy voice ;  
And let not Bardolph's vital thread be cut 48  
With edge of penny cord and vile reproach :  
Speak, captain, for his life, and I will thee requite.

FLUELLEN. Aunchient Pistol, I do partly understand  
your meaning. 52

PISTOL. Why then, rejoice therefore.

FLUELLEN. Certainly, aunchient, it is not a thing to  
rejoice at ; for, if, look you, he were my brother, I would  
desire the duke to use his good pleasure and put him to  
execution ; for discipline ought to be used. 57

PISTOL. Die and be damn'd ; and figo for thy friend-  
ship !

FLUELLEN. It is well.

PISTOL. The fig of Spain ! [Exit. 61

FLUELLEN. Very good. 61

GOWER. Why, this is an arrant counterfeit rascal :  
I remember him now ; a bawd, a cutpurse.

FLUELLEN. I'll assure you a' utter'd as prave words  
at the pridge as you shall see in a summer's day. But  
it is very well ; what he has spoke to me, that is well,  
I warrant you, when time is serve. 67

GOWER. Why, 'tis a gull, a fool, a rogue, that now  
and then goes to the wars to grace himself at his return  
into London under the form of a soldier. And such  
fellows are perfect in the great commanders' names, and  
they will learn you by rote where services were done ;  
at such and such a sconce, at such a breach, at such  
a convoy ; who came off bravely, who was shot, who  
disgraced, what terms the enemy stood on ; and this  
they con perfectly in the phrase of war, which they  
trick up with new-tuned oaths : and what a beard  
of the general's cut and a horrid suit of the camp will  
do among foaming bottles and ale-washed wits, is won-  
derful to be thought on. But you must learn to know  
such slanders of the age, or else you may be marvellously  
mistook. 82

FLUELLEN. I tell you what, Captain Gower ; I do  
perceive, he is not the man that he would gladly make  
show to the world he is : if I find a hole in his coat I will  
tell him my mind. [Drum heard.] Hark you, the king is  
coming ; and I must speak with him from the pridge.

Enter KING HENRY, GLOUCESTER, and Soldiers.

God pless your majesty !

88

KING HENRY. How now, Fluellen ! cam'st thou from the bridge ?

FLUELLEN. Ay, so please your majesty. The Duke of Exeter hath very gallantly maintained the pridge : the French is gone off, look you, and there is gallant and most prave passages. Marry, th' athversary was have possession of the pridge, but he is enforced to retire, and the Duke of Exeter is master of the pridge. I can tell your majesty the duke is a prave man.

96

KING HENRY. What men have you lost, Fluellen ?

FLUELLEN. The perdition of th' athversary hath been very great, reasonable great : marry, for my part, I think the duke hath lost never a man but one that is like to be executed for robbing a church ; one Bardolph, if your majesty know the man : his face is all bubukles, and welks, and knobs, and flames o' fire ; and his lips blows at his nose, and it is like a coal of fire, sometimes plue and sometimes red ; but his nose is executed, and his fire's out.

106

KING HENRY. We would have all such offenders so cut off : and we give express charge that in our marches through the country there be nothing compelled from the villages, nothing taken but paid for, none of the French upbraided or abused in disdainful language ; for when lenity and cruelty play for a kingdom, the gentler gamester is the soonest winner.

113

Tucket. Enter MONTJOY.

MONTJOY. You know me by my habit.

KING HENRY. Well then I know thee ; what shall I know of thee ?

MONTJOY. My master's mind.

116

KING HENRY. Unfold it.

MONTJOY. Thus says my king : Say thou to Harry of England : Though we seemed dead, we did but sleep : advantage is a better soldier than rashness. Tell him, we could have rebuked him at Harfleur, but that we thought not good to bruise an injury till it were full ripe ; now we speak upon our cue, and our voice is imperial : England shall repent his folly, see

his weakness, and admire our sufferance. Bid him therefore consider of his ransom ; which must proportion the losses we have borne, the subjects we have lost, the disgrace we have digested ; which, in weight to re-answer, his pettiness would bow under. For our losses, his exchequer is too poor ; for the effusion of our blood, the muster of his kingdom too faint a number ; and for our disgrace, his own person, kneeling at our feet, but a weak and worthless satisfaction. To this add defiance : and tell him, for conclusion, he hath betrayed his followers, whose condemnation is pronounced. So far my king and master, so much my office. 137

KING HENRY. What is thy name ? I know thy quality.

MONTJOY. Montjoy.

KING HENRY. Thou dost thy office fairly. Turn thee back, 140

And tell thy king I do not seek him now,  
But could be willing to march on to Calais  
Without impeachment ; for, to say the sooth,—  
Though 'tis no wisdom to confess so much 144  
Unto an enemy of craft and vantage,—  
My people are with sickness much enfeebled,  
My numbers lessen'd, and those few I have  
Almost no better than so many French : 148  
Who, when they were in health, I tell thee, herald,  
I thought upon one pair of English legs  
Did march three Frenchmen. Yet, forgive me, God,  
That I do brag thus ! this your air of France 152  
Hath blown that vice in me ; I must repent.  
Go therefore, tell thy master here I am :  
My ransom is this frail and worthless trunk,  
My army but a weak and sickly guard ; 156  
Yet, God before, tell him we will come on,  
Though France himself and such another neighbour  
Stand in our way. There's for thy labour, Montjoy.  
Go, bid thy master well advise himself : 160  
If we may pass, we will ; if we be hinder'd,  
We shall your tawny ground with your red blood  
Discolour : and so, Montjoy, fare you well.  
The sum of all our answer is but this : 164  
We would not seek a battle as we are ;

Nor, as we are, we say we will not shun it :  
So tell your master.

MONTJOY. I shall deliver so. Thanks to your high-  
ness. [Exit.

GLOUCESTER. I hope they will not come upon us now.

KING HENRY. We are in God's hand, brother, not in  
theirs.

March to the bridge ; it now draws toward night :

Beyond the river we'll encamp ourselves, 172

And on to-morrow bid them march away. [Exeunt.

SCENE VII.—The French Camp, near Agincourt.

Enter the CONSTABLE OF FRANCE, the LORD RAMBURES, the DUKE  
OF ORLEANS, the DAUPHIN, and Others.

CONSTABLE. Tut ! I have the best armour of the  
world. Would it were day !

ORLEANS. You have an excellent armour ; but let my  
horse have his due. 4

CONSTABLE. It is the best horse of Europe.

ORLEANS. Will it never be morning ?

DAUPHIN. My Lord of Orleans, and my lord high  
constable, you talk of horse and armour— 8

ORLEANS. You are as well provided of both as any  
prince in the world.

DAUPHIN. What a long night is this ! I will not  
change my horse with any that treads but on four  
pasterns. Ca, ha ! He bounds from the earth as if his  
entrails were hairs : le cheval volant, the Pegasus, qui  
a les narines de feu ! When I bestride him, I soar, I am  
a hawk : he trots the air ; the earth sings when he  
touches it ; the basest horn of his hoof is more musical  
than the pipe of Hermes. 18

ORLEANS. He's of the colour of the nutmeg.

DAUPHIN. And of the heat of the ginger. It is a  
beast for Perseus : he is pure air and fire ; and the  
dull elements of earth and water never appear in him  
but only in patient stillness while his rider mounts him :  
he is indeed a horse ; and all other jades you may call  
beasts. 25

CONSTABLE. Indeed, my lord, it is a most absolute  
and excellent horse.

DAUPHIN. It is the prince of palfreys ; his neigh is

like the bidding of a monarch and his countenance enforces homage.

ORLEANS. No more, cousin.

DAUPHIN. Nay, the man hath no wit that cannot, from the rising of the lark to the lodging of the lamb, vary deserved praise on my palfrey : it is a theme as fluent as the sea ; turn the sands into eloquent tongues, and my horse is argument for them all. 'Tis a subject for a sovereign to reason on, and for a sovereign's sovereign to ride on ; and for the world—familiar to us, and unknown—to lay apart their particular functions and wonder at him. I once writ a sonnet in his praise and began thus : ' Wonder of nature ! '—

ORLEANS. I have heard a sonnet begin so to one's mistress.

DAUPHIN. Then did they imitate that which I composed to my courser ; for my horse is my mistress.

ORLEANS. Your mistress bears well.

DAUPHIN. Me well ; which is the prescript praise and perfection of a good and particular mistress.

CONSTABLE. Ma foi, methought yesterday your mistress shrewdly shook your back.

DAUPHIN. So perhaps did yours.

CONSTABLE. Mine was not bridled.

DAUPHIN. O ! then belike she was old and gentle ; and you rode, like a kern of Ireland, your French hose off and in your straight strossers.

CONSTABLE. You have good judgment in horsemanship.

DAUPHIN. Be warned by me, then : they that ride so, and ride not warily, fall into foul bogs. I had rather have my horse to my mistress.

CONSTABLE. I had as lief have my mistress a jade.

DAUPHIN. I tell thee, constable, my mistress wears his own hair.

CONSTABLE. I could make as true a boast as that if I had a sow to my mistress.

DAUPHIN. Le chien est retourné à son propre vomissement, et la truie lavée au boubier : thou makest use of any thing.

CONSTABLE. Yet do I not use my horse for my mistress : or any such proverb so little kin to the purpose.

RAMBURES. My lord constable, the armour that I

saw in your tent to-night, are those stars or suns upon it ? 73

CONSTABLE. Stars, my lord.

DAUPHIN. Some of them will fall to-morrow, I hope.

CONSTABLE. And yet my sky shall not want. 76

DAUPHIN. That may be, for you bear a many superfluously, and 'twere more honour some were away.

CONSTABLE. Even as your horse bears your praises ; who would trot as well were some of your brags dismounted. 81

DAUPHIN. Would I were able to load him with his desert ! Will it never be day ? I will trot to-morrow a mile, and my way shall be paved with English faces.

CONSTABLE. I will not say so for fear I should be faced out of my way. But I would it were morning, for I would fain be about the ears of the English.

RAMBURES. Who will go to hazard with me for twenty prisoners ? 89

CONSTABLE. You must first go yourself to hazard, ere you have them.

DAUPHIN. 'Tis midnight : I'll go arm myself. [Exit. 93

ORLEANS. The Dauphin longs for morning.

RAMBURES. He longs to eat the English.

CONSTABLE. I think he will eat all he kills.

ORLEANS. By the white hand of my lady, he's a gallant prince. 97

CONSTABLE. Swear by her foot, that she may tread out the oath.

ORLEANS. He is simply the most active gentleman of France. 101

CONSTABLE. Doing is activity, and he will still be doing.

ORLEANS. He never did harm, that I heard of.

CONSTABLE. Nor will do none to-morrow : he will keep that good name still. 106

ORLEANS. I know him to be valiant.

CONSTABLE. I was told that by one that knows him better than you. 109

ORLEANS. What's he ?

CONSTABLE. Marry, he told me so himself ; and he said he cared not who knew it. 112

ORLEANS. He needs not ; it is no hidden virtue in him.

CONSTABLE. By my faith, sir, but it is ; never any

body saw it but his lackey: 'tis a hooded valour; and when it appears, it will bate. 110

ORLEANS. 'Ill will never said well.'

CONSTABLE. I will cap that proverb with 'There is flattery in friendship'.

ORLEANS. And I will take up that with 'Give the devil his due'. 121

CONSTABLE. Well placed: there stands your friend for the devil: have at the very eye of that proverb, with 'A pox of the devil'. 124

ORLEANS. You are the better at proverbs, by how much 'A fool's bolt is soon shot'.

CONSTABLE. You have shot over. 127

ORLEANS. 'Tis not the first time you were overshot.

Enter a Messenger.

MESSENGER. My lord high constable, the English lie within fifteen hundred paces of your tents.

CONSTABLE. Who hath measured the ground?

MESSENGER. The Lord Grandpré. 132

CONSTABLE. A valiant and most expert gentleman. Would it were day! Alas! poor Harry of England, he longs not for the dawning as we do. 135

ORLEANS. What a wretched and peevish fellow is this King of England, to mope with his fat-brained followers so far out of his knowledge!

CONSTABLE. If the English had any apprehension they would run away. 140

ORLEANS. That they lack; for if their heads had any intellectual armour they could never wear such heavy head-pieces. 143

RAMBURES. That island of England breeds very valiant creatures: their mastiffs are of unmatchable courage.

ORLEANS. Foolish curs! that run winking into the mouth of a Russian bear and have their heads crushed like rotten apples. You may as well say that 's a valiant flea that dare eat his breakfast on the lip of a lion.

CONSTABLE. Just, just; and the men do sympathize with the mastiffs in robustious and rough coming on, leaving their wits with their wives: and then give them great meals of beef and iron and steel, they will eat like wolves and fight like devils. 155



ORLEANS. Ay, but these English are shrewdly out of beef.

CONSTABLE. Then shall we find to-morrow they have only stomachs to eat and none to fight. Now is it time to arm ; come, shall we about it ? 160

ORLEANS. It is now two o'clock : but, let me see, by ten  
We shall have each a hundred Englishmen. [Exeunt.]

### ACT IV.

Enter Chorus.

Now entertain conjecture of a time  
•When creeping murmur and the poring dark  
Fills the wide vessel of the universe. 3  
From camp to camp, through the foul womb of night,  
The hum of either army stilly sounds,  
That the fix'd sentinels almost receive  
The secret whispers of each other's watch :  
Fire answers fire, and through their paly flames 8  
Each battle sees the other's umber'd face :  
Steed threatens steed, in high and boastful neighs  
Piercing the night's dull ear ; and from the tents  
The armourers, accomplishing the knights, 12  
With busy hammers closing rivets up,  
Give dreadful note of preparation.  
The country cocks do crow, the clocks do toll,  
And the third hour of drowsy morning name. 16  
Proud of their numbers, and secure in soul,  
The confident and over-lusty French  
Do the low-rated English play at dice ;  
And chide the cripple tardy-gaited night 20  
Who, like a foul and ugly witch, doth limp  
So tediously away. The poor condemned English,  
Like sacrifices, by their watchful fires  
Sit patiently, and inly ruminate 24  
The morning's danger, and their gesture sad  
Investing lank-lean cheeks and war-worn coats  
Presenteth them unto the gazing moon 27  
So many horrid ghosts. O ! now, who will behold

The royal captain of the sun'd band  
 Walking from watch to watch, from tent to tent,  
 Let him cry ' Praise and glory on his head ! '  
 For forth he goes and visits all his host, 32  
 Bids them good morrow with a modest smile,  
 And calls them brothers, friends, and countrymen.  
 Upon his royal face there is no note  
 How dread an army hath enrounded him ; 36  
 Nor doth he dedicate one jot of colour  
 Unto the weary and all-watched night :  
 But freshly looks and overbears attaint  
 With cheerful semblance and sweet majesty ; 40  
 That every wretch, pining and pale before,  
 Beholding him, plucks comfort from his looks.  
 A largess universal, like the sun  
 His liberal eye doth give to every one, 44  
 Thawing cold fear. Then mean and gentle all,  
 Behold, as may unworthiness define,  
 A little touch of Harry in the night.  
 And so our scene must to the battle fly ; 48  
 Where,—O for pity,—we shall much disgrace,  
 With four or five most vile and ragged foils,  
 Right ill dispos'd in brawl ridiculous,  
 The name of Agincourt. Yet sit and see ; 52  
 Minding true things by what their mockeries be. [Exit.

SCENE I.—The English Camp at Agincourt.

Enter KING HENRY, BEDFORD, and GLOUCESTER.

KING HENRY. Gloucester, 'tis true that we are in great  
 danger ;  
 The greater therefore should our courage be.  
 Good morrow, brother Bedford. God Almighty !  
 There is some soul of goodness in things evil, 4  
 Would men observingly distil it out ;  
 For our bad neighbour makes us early stirrers,  
 Which is both healthful, and good husbandry :  
 Besides they are our outward consciences, 8  
 And preachers to us all ; admonishing  
 That we should dress us fairly for our end.  
 Thus may we gather honey from the weed,  
 And make a moral of the devil himself. 12

Enter ERPINGHAM.

Good morrow, old Sir Thomas Erpingham :  
A good soft pillow for that good white head  
Were better than a churlish turf of France.

ERPINGHAM. Not so, my liege : this lodging likes me  
better, 16

Since I may say, ' Now lie I like a king.'

KING HENRY. 'Tis good for men to love their present  
pains

Upon example ; so the spirit is eas'd :  
And when the mind is quicken'd, out of doubt, 20  
The organs, though defunct and dead before,  
Break up their drowsy grave, and newly move  
With casted slough and fresh legerity.

Lend me thy cloak, Sir Thomas. Brothers both,  
Commend me to the princes in our camp ; 25  
Do my good morrow to them ; and anon  
Desire them all to my pavilion.

GLOUCESTER. We shall, my liege. 28

[Exit GLOUCESTER and BEDFORD.]

ERPINGHAM. Shall I attend your Grace ?

KING HENRY. No, my good knight ;

Go with my brothers to my lords of England :

I and my bosom must debate awhile,  
And then I would no other company. 32

ERPINGHAM. The Lord in heaven bless thee, noble  
Harry ! [Exit.

KING HENRY. God-a-mercy, old heart ! thou speak'st  
cheerfully.

Enter PISTOL.

PISTOL. Qui va là ?

KING HENRY. A friend. 36

PISTOL. Discuss unto me ; art thou officer ?  
Or art thou base, common, and popular ?

KING HENRY. I am a gentleman of a company.

PISTOL. Trail'st thou the puissant pike ? 40

KING HENRY. Even so. What are you ?

PISTOL. As good a gentleman as the emperor.

KING HENRY. Then you are a better than the king.

PISTOL. The king's a bawcock, and a heart of gold,  
A lad of life, an imp of fame : 45  
Of parents good, of fist most valiant :

I kiss his dirty shoe, and from my heart-string  
I love the lovely bully. What's thy name?

48

KING HENRY. Harry le Roy.

PISTOL. Le Roy! a Cornish name: art thou of  
Cornish crew?

KING HENRY. No, I am a Welshman.

PISTOL. Know'st thou Fluellen?

52

KING HENRY. Yes.

PISTOL. Tell him, I'll knock his leek about his pate  
Upon Saint Davy's day.

KING HENRY. Do not you wear your dagger in your  
cap that day, lest he knock that about yours.

57

PISTOL. Art thou his friend?

KING HENRY. And his kinsman too.

PISTOL. The figo for thee then!

60

KING HENRY. I thank you. God be with you!

PISTOL. My name is Pistol called.

[Exit.

KING HENRY. It sorts well with your fierceness.

[Retires.

Enter FLUELLEN and GOWER, severally.

GOWER. Captain Fluellen!

64

FLUELLEN. So! in the name of Cheshu Christ, speak  
lower. It is the greatest admiration in the universal  
world, when the true and auncient prerogatives and  
laws of the wars is not kept. If you would take the  
pains but to examine the wars of Pompey the Great, you  
shall find, I warrant you, that there is no tiddle-taddle  
nor pibble-pabble in Pompey's camp; I warrant you,  
you shall find the ceremonies of the wars, and the cares  
of it, and the forms of it, and the sobriety of it, and the  
modesty of it, to be otherwise.

GOWER. Why, the enemy is loud; you heard him all  
night.

76

FLUELLEN. If the enemy is an ass and a fool and  
a prating coxcomb, is it meet, think you, that we should  
also, look you, be an ass and a fool and a prating cox-  
comb, in your own conscience now?

80

GOWER. I will speak lower.

FLUELLEN. I pray you and peseech you that you  
will.

[Exeunt GOWER and FLUELLEN.

KING HENRY. Though it appear a little out of  
fashion,

84

There is much care and valour in this Welshman.

Enter JOHN BATES, ALEXANDER COURT, and MICHAEL WILLIAMS.

COURT. Brother John Bates, is not that the morning which breaks yonder ?

BATES. I think it be ; but we have no great cause to desire the approach of day. 89

WILLIAMS. We see yonder the beginning of the day, but I think we shall never see the end of it. Who goes there ? 92

KING HENRY. A friend.

WILLIAMS. Under what captain serve you ?

KING HENRY. Under Sir Thomas Erpingham.

WILLIAMS. A good old commander and a most kind gentleman : I pray you, what thinks he of our estate ?

KING HENRY. Even as men wracked upon a sand, that look to be washed off the next tide. 100

BATES. He hath not told his thought to the king ?

KING HENRY. No ; nor it is not meet he should. For, though I speak it to you, I think the king is but a man, as I am : the violet smells to him as it doth to me ; the element shows to him as it doth to me ; all his senses have but human conditions : his ceremonies laid by, in his nakedness he appears but a man ; and though his affections are higher mounted than ours, yet when they stoop, they stoop with the like wing. Therefore when he sees reason of fears, as we do, his fears, out of doubt, be of the same relish as ours are : yet, in reason, no man should possess him with any appearance of fear, lest he, by showing it, should dishearten his army. 114

BATES. He may show what outward courage he will, but I believe, as cold a night as 'tis, he could wish himself in Thames up to the neck, and so I would he were, and I by him, at all adventures, so we were quit here. 119

KING HENRY. By my troth, I will speak my conscience of the king : I think he would not wish himself any where but where he is.

BATES. Then I would he were here alone ; so should he be sure to be ransomed, and a many poor men's lives saved. 125

KING HENRY. I dare say you love him not so ill to wish him here alone, howsoever you speak this to feel

other men's minds. Methinks I could not die any where so contented as in the king's company, his cause being just and his quarrel honourable.

WILLIAMS. That's more than we know. 131

BATES. Ay, or more than we should seek after; for we know enough if we know we are the king's subjects. If his cause be wrong, our obedience to the king wipes the crime of it out of us. 135

WILLIAMS. But if the cause be not good, the king himself hath a heavy reckoning to make; when all those legs and arms and heads, chopped off in a battle, shall join together at the latter day, and cry all, 'We died at such a place;' some swearing, some crying for a surgeon, some upon their wives left poor behind them, some upon the debts they owe, some upon their children rawly left. I am afraid there are few die well that die in a battle; for how can they charitably dispose of any thing when blood is their argument? Now, if these men do not die well, it will be a black matter for the king that led them to it, whom to disobey were against all proportion of subjection. 148

KING HENRY. So, if a son that is by his father sent about merchandise do sinfully miscarry upon the sea, the imputation of his wickedness, by your rule, should be imposed upon his father that sent him: or if a servant, under his master's command transporting a sum of money, be assailed by robbers and die in many irreconciled iniquities, you may call the business of the master the author of the servant's damnation. But this is not so: the king is not bound to answer the particular endings of his soldiers, the father of his son, nor the master of his servant; for they purpose not their death when they purpose their services. Besides, there is no king, be his cause never so spotless, if it come to the arbitrement of swords, can try it out with all unspotted soldiers. Some, peradventure, have on them the guilt of premeditated and contrived murder; some, of beguiling virgins with the broken seals of perjury; some, making the wars their bulwark, that have before gored the gentle bosom of peace with pillage and robbery. Now, if these men have defeated the law and outrun native punishment, though they can outstrip men, they have no wings to fly from God:

war is his baffle, war is his vengeance ; so that here men are punished for before-breach of the king's laws in now the king's quarrel : where they feared the death they have borne life away, and where they would be safe they perish. Then, if they die unprovided, no more is the king guilty of their damnation than he was before guilty of those impieties for the which they are now visited. Every subject's duty is the king's ; but every subject's soul is his own. Therefore should every soldier in the wars do as every sick man in his bed, wash every mote out of his conscience ; and dying so, death is to him advantage ; or not dying, the time was blessedly lost wherein such preparation was gained : and in him that escapes, it were not sin to think that, making God so free an offer, he let him outlive that day to see his greatness, and to teach others how they should prepare.

WILLIAMS. 'Tis certain, every man that dies ill, the ill upon his own head : the king is not to answer it. 189

BATES. I do not desire he should answer for me ; and yet I determine to fight lustily for him.

KING HENRY. I myself heard the king say he would not be ransomed. 193

WILLIAMS. Ay, he said so, to make us fight cheerfully ; but when our throats are cut he may be ransomed, and we ne'er the wiser. 196

KING HENRY. If I live to see it, I will never trust his word after.

WILLIAMS. You pay him then. That's a perilous shot out of an elder-gun, that a poor and a private displeasure can do against a monarch. You may as well go about to turn the sun to ice with fanning in his face with a peacock's feather. You'll never trust his word after ! come, 'tis a foolish saying. 204

KING HENRY. Your reproof is something too round : I should be angry with you if the time were convenient.

WILLIAMS. Let it be a quarrel between us, if you live. 208

KING HENRY. I embrace it.

WILLIAMS. How shall I know thee again ?

KING HENRY. Give me any gage of thine, and I will wear it in my bonnet : then, if ever thou darest acknowledge it, I will make it my quarrel. 213

WILLIAMS. Here's my glove : give me another of thine.

KING HENRY. There.

216

WILLIAMS. This will I also wear in my cap : if ever thou come to me and say after to-morrow, 'This is my glove,' by this hand I will take thee a box on the ear.

220

KING HENRY. If ever I live to see it, I will challenge it.

WILLIAMS. Thou dar'est as well be hanged.

KING HENRY. Well, I will do it, though I take thee in the king's company.

225

WILLIAMS. Keep thy word : fare thee well.

BATES. Be friends, you English fools, be friends ; we have French quarrels enow, if you could tell how to reckon.

229

KING HENRY. Indeed, the French may lay twenty French crowns to one, they will beat us ; for they bear them on their shoulders : but it is no English treason to cut French crowns, and to-morrow the king himself will be a clipper.

[Exeunt Soldiers.]

Upon the king ! let us our lives, our souls,

Our debts, our careful wives,

236

Our children, and our sins lay on the king !

We must bear all. O hard condition !

Twin-born with greatness, subject to the breath

Of every fool, whose sense no more can feel

240

But his own wringing. What infinite heart's ease

Must kings neglect that private men enjoy !

And what have kings that privates have not too,

Save ceremony, save general ceremony ?

244

And what art thou, thou idle ceremony ?

What kind of god art thou, that suffer'st more

Of mortal griefs than do thy worshippers ?

What are thy rents ? what are thy comings in ?

O ceremony ! show me but thy worth :

249

What is thy soul of adoration ?

Art thou aught else but place, degree, and form,

Creating awe and fear in other men ?

252

Wherein thou art less happy, being fear'd,

Than they in fearing.

What drink'st thou oft, instead of homage sweet,

But poison'd flattery ? O ! be sick, great greatness,



And bid thy ceremony give thee cure. 257  
 Think'st thou the fiery fever will go out  
 With titles blown from adulation ?  
 Will it give place to flexure and low-bending ? 260  
 Canst thou, when thou command'st the beggar's knee,  
 Command the health of it ? No, thou proud dream,  
 That play'st so subtly with a king's repose ;  
 I am a king that find thee ; and I know 264  
 'Tis not the balm, the sceptre and the ball,  
 The sword, the mace, the crown imperial,  
 The intertissued robe of gold and pearl,  
 The farced title running 'fore the king, 268  
 The throne he sits on, nor the tide of pomp  
 That beats upon the high shore of this world,  
 No, not all these, thrice-gorgeous ceremony,  
 Not all these, laid in bed majestical, 272  
 Can sleep so soundly-as the wretched slave,  
 Who with a body fill'd and vacant mind  
 Gets him to rest, cramm'd with distressful bread ;  
 Never sees horrid night, the child of hell, 276  
 But, like a lackey, from the rise to set  
 Sweats in the eye of Phœbus, and all night  
 Sleeps in Elysium ; next day after dawn,  
 Doth rise and help Hyperion to his horse, 280  
 And follows so the ever-running year  
 With profitable labour to his grave :  
 And, but for ceremony, such a wretch,  
 Winding up days with toil and nights with sleep,  
 Had the fore-hand and vantage of a king. 285  
 The slave, a member of the country's peace,  
 Enjoys it ; but in gross brain little wots  
 What watch the king keeps to maintain the peace,  
 Whose hours the peasant best advantages. 289

Re-enter ERPINGHAM.

ERPINGHAM. My lord, your nobles, jealous of your  
 absence,  
 Seek through your camp to find you.  
 KING HENRY. Good old knight,  
 Collect them all together at my tent :  
 I'll be before thee.

ERPINGHAM. I shall do 't, my lord. [Exit.]

KING HENRY. O God of battles ! steel my soldiers'  
 hearts ;

Possess them not with fear ; take from them now  
 The sense of reckoning, if the opposed numbers 29  
 Pluck their hearts from them. Not to-day, O Lord!  
 O ! not to-day, think not upon the fault  
 My father made in compassing the crown.  
 I Richard's body have interr'd anew, 300  
 And on it have bestow'd more contrite tears  
 Than from it issu'd forced drops of blood.  
 Five hundred poor I have in yearly pay,  
 Who twice a day their wither'd hands hold up 304  
 Toward heaven, to pardon blood ; and I have built  
 Two chantries, where the sad and solemn priests  
 Sing still for Richard's soul. More will I do ;  
 Though all that I can do is nothing worth, 308  
 Since that my penitence comes after all,  
 Imploring pardon.

Re-enter GLOUCESTER.

GLOUCESTER. My liege !

KING HENRY. My brother Gloucester's voice ! Ay ;  
 I know thy errand, I will go with thee : 313  
 The day, my friends, and all things stay for me. [Exeunt.

SCENE II.—The French Camp.

Enter the DAUPHIN, ORLEANS, RAMBURES, and Others.

ORLEANS. The sun doth gild our armour : up, my lords !

DAUPHIN. Montez à cheval ! My horse ! varlet !  
 lacquais ! ha !

ORLEANS. O brave spirit !

DAUPHIN. Via ! les eaux et la terre ! 4

ORLEANS. Rien puis ? l'air et le feu.

DAUPHIN. Ciel ! cousin Orleans.

Enter CONSTABLE.

Now, my lord constable !

CONSTABLE. Hark how our steeds for present service  
 neigh ! 8

DAUPHIN. Mount them, and make incision in their  
 hides,

That their hot blood may spin in English eyes,  
 And dout them with superfluous courage : ha !

**RAMBURES.** What! will you have them weep our  
horses' blood? 12  
How shall we then behold their natural tears?

Enter a Messenger.

**MESSENGER.** The English are embattail'd, you French  
peers.

**CONSTABLE.** To horse, you gallant princes! straight  
to horse!

Do but behold yon poor and starved band, 16  
And your fair show shall suck away their souls,  
Leaving them but the shales and husks of men.  
There is not work enough for all our hands;  
Scarce blood enough in all their sickly veins 20  
To give each naked curtal-axe a stain,  
That our French gallants shall to-day draw out,  
And sheathe for lack of sport: let us but blow on them,  
The vapour of our valour will o'erturn them. 24  
'Tis positive 'gainst all exceptions, lords,  
That our superfluous lackeys and our peasants,  
Who in unnecessary action swarm  
About our squares of battle, were enow 28  
To purge this field of such a hilding foe,  
Though we upon this mountain's basis by  
Took stand for idle speculation:  
But that our honours must not. What's to say?  
A very little little let us do, 33  
And all is done. Then let the trumpets sound  
The tucket sonance and the note to mount:  
For our approach shall so much dare the field, 36  
That England shall couch down in fear and yield.

Enter GRANDPRÉ.

**GRANDPRÉ.** Why do you stay so long, my lords of  
France?  
Yon island carrions desperate of their bones,  
Ill-favour'dly become the morning field: 40  
Their ragged curtains poorly are let loose,  
And our air shakes them passing scornfully:  
Big Mars seems bankrupt in their beggar'd host,  
And faintly through a rusty beaver peeps: 44  
The horsemen sit like fixed candlesticks,  
With torch-staves in their hand; and their poor jades  
Lob down their heads, dropping the hides and hips,

The gum down-roping from their pale-dead eyes,  
And in their pale dull mouths the gimmal bit 49  
Lies foul with chew'd grass, still and motionless ;  
And their executors, the knavish crows,  
Fly o'er them, all impatient for their hour. 52  
Description cannot suit itself in words  
To demonstrate the life of such a battle  
In life so lifeless as it shows itself.

CONSTABLE. They have said their prayers, and they  
stay for death. 56

DAUPHIN. Shall we go send them dinners and fresh  
suits,  
And give their fasting horses provender,  
And after fight with them ?

CONSTABLE. I stay but for my guard : on, to the field !  
I will the banner from a trumpet take, 61  
And use it for my haste. Come, come, away !  
The sun is high, and we outwear the day. [Exeunt.

## SCENE III.—The English Camp.

Enter the English host ; GLOUCESTER, BEDFORD, EXETER,  
SALISBURY, and WESTMORELAND.

GLOUCESTER. Where is the king ?

BEDFORD. The king himself is rode to view their  
battle.

WESTMORELAND. Of fighting men they have full three-  
score thousand.

EXETER. There's five to one ; besides, they all are  
fresh. 4

SALISBURY. God's arm strike with us ! 'tis a fearful  
odds.

God be wi' you, princes all ; I'll to my charge :  
If we no more meet till we meet in heaven,  
Then, joyfully, my noble Lord of Bedford, 8  
My dear Lord Gloucester, and my good Lord Exeter,  
And my kind kinsman, warriors all, adieu !

BEDFORD. Farewell, good Salisbury ; and good luck  
go with thee !

EXETER. Farewell, kind lord. Fight valiantly to-day :  
And yet I do thee wrong to mind thee of it, 13  
For thou art fram'd of the firm truth of valour.

[Exit SALISBURY.

BEDFORD. He is as full of valour as of kindness ;  
Princely in both.

Enter KING HENRY.

WESTMORELAND. O ! that we now had here 16  
But one ten thousand of those men in England  
That do no work to-day.

KING HENRY. What's he that wishes so ?  
My cousin Westmoreland ? No, my fair cousin :  
If we are mark'd to die, we are enow 20  
To do our country loss ; and if to live,  
The fewer men, the greater share of honour.  
God's will ! I pray thee, wish not one man more.  
By Jove, I am not covetous for gold, 24  
Nor care I who doth feed upon my cost ;  
It yearns me not if men my garments wear ;  
Such outward things dwell not in my desires :  
But if it be a sin to covet honour, 28  
I am the most offending soul alive.

No, faith, my coz, wish not a man from England :  
God's peace ! I would not lose so great an honour  
As one man more, methinks, would share from me,  
For the best hope I have. O ! do not wish one more :  
Rather proclaim it, Westmoreland, through my host,  
That he which hath no stomach to this fight,  
Let him depart ; his passport shall be made, 36  
And crowns for convoy put into his purse :  
We would not die in that man's company  
That fears his fellowship to die with us.  
This day is call'd the feast of Crispian : 40  
He that outlives this day, and comes safe home,  
Will stand a tip-toe when this day is nam'd,  
And rouse him at the name of Crispian.  
He that shall live this day, and see old age, 44  
Will yearly on the vigil feast his neighbours,  
And say, ' To-morrow is Saint Crispian ' :  
Then will he strip his sleeve and show his scars,  
And say, ' These wounds I had on Crispin's day.'  
Old men forget : yet all shall be forgot, 48  
But he'll remember with advantages  
What feats he did that day. Then shall our names,  
Familiar in his mouth as household words, 52  
Harry the king, Bedford and Exeter,  
Warwick and Talbot, Salisbury and Gloucester,

Be in their flowing cups freshly remember'd.  
This story shall the good man teach his son ; 56  
And Crispin Crispian shall ne'er go by,  
From this day to the ending of the world,  
But we in it shall be remember'd ;  
We few, we happy few, we band of brothers ; 60  
For he to-day that sheds his blood with me  
Shall be my brother ; be he ne'er so vile  
This day shall gentle his condition :  
And gentlemen in England now a-bed 64  
Shall think themselves accurs'd they were not here,  
And hold their manhoods cheap whiles any speaks  
That fought with us upon Saint Crispin's day.

Re-enter SALISBURY.

SALISBURY. My sovereign lord, bestow yourself with speed : 68

The French are bravely in their battles set,  
And will with all expedience charge on us.

KING HENRY. All things are ready, if our minds be so.

WESTMORELAND. Perish the man whose mind is backward now ! 72

KING HENRY. Thou dost not wish more help from England, coz ?

WESTMORELAND. God's will ! my liege, would you and I alone,

Without more help, could fight this royal battle !

KING HENRY. Why, now thou hast unwish'd five thousand men ; 76

Which likes me better than to wish us one.

You know your places : God be with you all !

Tucket. Enter MONTJOY.

MONTJOY. Once more I come to know of thee, King Harry,

If for thy ransom thou wilt now compound, 80  
Before thy most assured overthrow :

For certainly thou art so near the gulf

Thou needs must be englutted. Besides, in mercy,

The constable desires thee thou wilt mind 84

Thy followers of repentance ; that their souls

May make a peaceful and a sweet retire

From off these fields, where, wretches, their poor bodies

Must lie and fester.

KING HENRY. Who hath sent thee now ? 88

MONTJOY. The Constable of France.

KING HENRY. I pray thee, bear my former answer back :  
Bid them achieve me and then sell my bones.

Good God ! why should they mock poor fellows thus ?

The man that once did sell the lion's skin 93

While the beast liv'd, was kill'd with hunting him.

A many of our bodies shall no doubt

Find native graves ; upon the which, I trust, 96

Shall witness live in brass of this day's work ;

And those that leave their valiant bones in France,

Dying like men, though buried in your dunghills,

They shall be fam'd ; for there the sun shall greet them,

And draw their honours reeking up to heaven, 101

Leaving their earthly parts to choke your clime,

The smell whereof shall breed a plague in France.

Mark then abounding valour in our English, 104

That being dead, like to the bullet's grazing,

Break out into a second course of mischief,

Killing in relapse of mortality.

Let me speak proudly : tell the constable, 108

We are but warriors for the working-day ;

Our gayness and our guilt are all besmirch'd

With rainy marching in the painful field ;

There's not a piece of feather in our host— 112

Good argument, I hope, we will not fly—

And time hath worn us into slovenry :

But, by the mass, our hearts are in the trim ;

And my poor soldiers tell me, yet ere night 116

They'll be in fresher robes, or they will pluck

The gay new coats o'er the French soldiers' heads,

And turn them out of service. If they do this,—

As, if God please, they shall,—my ransom then 120

Will soon be levied. Herald, save thou thy labour ;

Come thou no more for ransom, gentle herald :

They shall have none, I swear, but these my joints ;

Which if they have as I will leave 'em them, 124

Shall yield them little, tell the constable.

MONTJOY. I shall, King Harry. And so, fare thee well :  
Thou never shalt hear herald any more. [Exit.

KING HENRY. I fear thou'lt once more come again for  
ransom. 128

Enter YORK.

YORK. My lord, most humbly on my knee I beg  
The leading of the vaward.

KING HENRY. Take it, brave York. Now, soldiers,  
march away :

And how thou pleasest, God, dispose the day ! [Exeunt.

SCENE IV.—The Field of Battle.

Alarums. Excursions. Enter French Soldier, PISTOL, and Boy.

PISTOL. Yield, cur !

FRENCH SOLDIER. Je pense que vous estes le gentil-  
homme de bonne qualité.

PISTOL. Quality ? Calen O custure me ! Art thou a  
gentleman ? 4

What is thy name ? discuss.

FRENCH SOLDIER. O Seigneur Dieu !

PISTOL. O Signieur Dew should be a gentleman :—  
Perpend my words, O Signieur Dew, and mark : 8

O Signieur Dew, thou diest on point of fox

Except, O signieur, thou do give to me

Egregious ransom.

FRENCH SOLDIER. O, prenez miséricorde ! ayez pitié  
de moy ! 13

PISTOL. Moy shall not serve ; I will have forty moys ;  
Or I will fetch thy rim out at thy throat  
In drops of crimson blood. 16

FRENCH SOLDIER. Est-il impossible d'eschapper la  
force de ton bras ?

PISTOL. Brass, cur !

Thou damned and luxurious mountain goat, 20  
Offer'st me brass ?

FRENCH SOLDIER. O pardonnez moy !

PISTOL. Sayst thou me so ? is that a ton of moys ?  
Come hither, boy : ask me this slave in French 24  
What is his name.

BOY. Escoutez : comment estes vous appellé ?

FRENCH SOLDIER. Monsieur le Fer.

BOY. He says his name is Master Fer. 28

PISTOL. Master Fer ! I'll fer him, and firke him, and  
ferret him. Discuss the same in French unto him.

BOY. I do not know the French for fer, and ferret,  
and firke. 32



PISTOL. Bid him prepare, for I will cut his throat.

FRENCH SOLDIER. Que dit-il, monsieur ?

BOY. Il me commande à vous dire que vous faites vous prest ; car ce soldat icy est disposé tout à cette heure de couper vostre gorge. 37

PISTOL. Ouy, cuppele gorge, permafoy, Peasant, unless thou give me crowns, brave crowns ; Or mangled shalt thou be by this my sword. 40

FRENCH SOLDIER. O ! je vous supplie pour l'amour de Dieu, me pardonner ! Je suis le gentilhomme de bonne maison : gardez ma vie, et je vous donneray deux cents escus. 44

PISTOL. What are his words ?

BOY. He prays you to save his life : he is a gentleman of a good house ; and, for his ransom he will give you two hundred crowns. 48

PISTOL. Tell him, my fury shall abate, and I The crowns will take.

FRENCH SOLDIER. Petit monsieur, que dit-il ?

BOY. Encore qu'il est contre son jurement de pardonner aucun prisonnier ; néantmoins, pour les escus que vous l'avez promis, il est content de vous donner la liberté, le franchisement. 55

FRENCH SOLDIER. Sur mes genoux, je vous donne mille remerciemens ; et je m'estime heureux que je suis tombé entre les mains d'un chevalier, je pense, le plus brave, valiant, et très distingué seigneur d'Angleterre. 60

PISTOL. Expound unto me, boy.

BOY. He gives you, upon his knees, a thousand thanks ; and he esteems himself happy that he hath fallen into the hands of one—as he thinks—the most brave, valorous, and thrice-worthy signieur of England. 65

PISTOL. As I suck blood, I will some mercy show.— Follow me !

[Exeunt Pistol and French Soldier.]

BOY. Suivez vous le grand capitaine. I did never know so full a voice issue from so empty a heart : but the saying is true, ' The empty vessel makes the greatest sound.' Bardolph and Nym had ten times more valour than this roaring devil i' the old play, that every one may pare his nails with a wooden dagger ; and they are both hanged ; and so would this be if he durst steal anything adventurously. I must stay with the lackeys, with the

luggage of our camp : the French might have a good prey of us, if he knew of it ; for there is none to guard it but boys. [Exit.

## SCENE V.—Another Part of the Field.

Alarums. Enter DAUPHIN, ORLEANS, BOURBON, CONSTABLE, RAMBURES, and Others.

CONSTABLE. O diable !

ORLEANS. O seigneur ! le jour est perdu ! tout est perdu !

DAUPHIN. Mort de ma vie ! all is confounded, all !

Reproach and everlasting shame 4

Sit mocking in our plumes. O meschante fortune !

Do not run away. [A short alarum.

CONSTABLE. Why, all our ranks are broke.

DAUPHIN. O perdurable shame ! let 's stab ourselves. Be these the wretches that we play'd at dice for ?

ORLEANS. Is this the king we sent to for his ransom ?

BOURBON. Shame, and eternal shame, nothing but shame !

Let 's die in honour ! once more back again ;

And he that will not follow Bourbon now, 12

Let him go hence, and with his cap in hand,

Like a base pander, hold the chamber-door

Whilst by a slave, no gentler than my dog,

His fairest daughter is contaminated. 16

CONSTABLE. Disorder, that hath spoil'd us, friend us now !

Let us on heaps go offer up our lives.

ORLEANS. We are enough yet living in the field

To smother up the English in our throngs, 20

If any order might be thought upon.

BOURBON. The devil take order now ! I'll to the throng :

Let life be short, else shame will be too long. [Exeunt.

## SCENE VI.—Another Part of the Field.

Alarums. Enter KING HENRY and Forces ; EXETER, and Others.

KING HENRY. Well have we done, thrice-valiant countrymen :

But all 's not done ; yet keep the French the field.

EXETER. The Duke of York commends him to your majesty.

KING HENRY. Lives he, good uncle ? thrice within this hour 4

I saw him down ; thrice up again, and fighting ;  
From helmet to the spur all blood he was.

EXETER. In which array, brave soldier, doth he lie,  
Larding the plain ; and by his bloody side,— 8  
Yoke-fellow to his honour-owing wounds,—  
The noble Earl of Suffolk also lies.  
Suffolk first died : and York, all haggled over,  
Comes to him, where in gore he lay insteep'd, 12  
And takes him by the beard, kisses the gashes  
That bloodily did yawn upon his face ;  
And cries aloud, ' Tarry, dear cousin Suffolk !  
My soul shall thine keep company to heaven ; 16  
Tarry, sweet soul, for mine, then fly abreast,  
As in this glorious and well-foughten field,  
We kept together in our chivalry !'  
Upon these words I came and cheer'd him up : 20  
He smil'd me in the face, raught me his hand,  
And with a feeble gripe says, ' Dear my lord,  
Commend my service to my sovereign.'  
So did he turn, and over Suffolk's neck 24  
He threw his wounded arm, and kiss'd his lips ;  
And so espous'd to death, with blood he seal'd  
A testament of noble-ending love.  
The pretty and sweet manner of it forc'd 28  
Those waters from me which I would have stopp'd ;  
But I had not so much of man in me,  
And all my mother came into mine eyes  
And gave me up to tears.

KING HENRY. I blame you not ; 32  
For, hearing this, I must perforce compound  
With mistful eyes, or they will issue too. [Alarum.  
But hark ! what new alarum is this same ?  
The French have reinforc'd their scatter'd men ; 36  
Then every soldier kill his prisoners !  
Give the word through. [Exeunt.

SCENE VII.—Another Part of the Field.

Alarums. Enter FLUELLEN and GOWER.

FLUELLEN. Kill the poys and the luggage ! 'tis expressly  
against the law of arms : 'tis as arrant a piece of knavery,  
mark you now, as can be offer't : in your conscience now,  
is it not ? 4

GOWER. 'Tis certain, there's not a boy left alive; and the cowardly rascals that ran from the battle have done this slaughter: besides, they have burned and carried away all that was in the king's tent; wherefore the king most worthily hath caused every soldier to cut his prisoner's throat. O! 'tis a gallant king.

FLUELLEN. Ay, he was born at Monmouth, Captain Gower. What call you the town's name where Alexander the Pig was born? 13

GOWER. Alexander the Great.

FLUELLEN. Why, I pray you, is not pig great? The pig, or the great, or the mighty, or the huge, or the magnanimous, are all one reckonings, save the phrase is a little variations.

GOWER. I think Alexander the Great was born in Macedon: his father was called Philip of Macedon, as I take it. 21

FLUELLEN. I think it is in Macedon where Alexander is born. I tell you, captain, if you look in the maps of the world, I warrant you shall find, in the comparisons between Macedon and Monmouth, that the situations, look you, is both alike. There is a river in Macedon, and there is also moreover a river at Monmouth: it is called Wye at Monmouth; but it is out of my prains what is the name of the other river; but 'tis all one, 'tis alike as my fingers is to my fingers, and there is salmons in both. If you mark Alexander's life well, Harry of Monmouth's life is come after it indifferent well; for there is figures in all things. Alexander,—God knows, and you know,—in his rages, and his furies, and his wraths, and his cholers, and his moods, and his displeasures, and his indignations, and also being a little intoxicates in his prains, did, in his ales and his angers, look you, kill his pest friend, Cleitus.

GOWER. Our king is not like him in that: he never killed any of his friends. 40

FLUELLEN. It is not well done, mark you now, to take the tales out of my mouth, ere it is made and finished. I speak but in the figures and comparisons of it: as Alexander killed his friend Cleitus, being in his ales and his cups, so also Harry Monmouth, being in his right wits and his good judgments, turned away the fat knight with the great belly-doublet: he was full of jests,

and gipes, and knaveries, and mocks ; I have forgot his name.

GOWER. Sir John Falstaff.

FLUELLEN. That is he. I'll tell you, there is goot men porn at Monmouth. 52

GOWER. Here comes his majesty.

Alarum. Enter KING HENRY, with a part of the English Forces ;  
WARWICK, GLOUCESTER, EXETER, and Others.

KING HENRY. I was not angry since I came to France  
Until this instant. Take a trumpet, herald ;  
Ride thou unto the horsemen on yon hill : 56  
If they will fight with us, bid them come down,  
Or void the field ; they do offend our sight.  
If they'll do neither, we will come to them,  
And make them skirr away, as swift as stones 60  
Enforced from the old Assyrian slings.  
Besides, we'll cut the throats of those we have,  
And not a man of them that we shall take  
Shall taste our mercy. Go and tell them so. 64

Enter MONTJOY.

EXETER. Here comes the herald of the French, my liege.

GLOUCESTER. His eyes are humbler than they us'd to be.

KING HENRY. How now ! what means this, herald ?  
know'st thou not 67  
That I have fin'd these bones of mine for ransom ?  
Com'st thou again for ransom ?

MONTJOY. No, great king.  
I come to thee for charitable licence,  
That we may wander o'er this bloody field  
To book our dead, and then to bury them ; 72  
To sort our nobles from our common men ;  
For many of our princes—woe the while !—  
Lie drown'd and soak'd in mercenary blood ;  
So do our vulgar drench their peasant limbs 76  
In blood of princes ; and their wounded steeds  
Fret fetlock-deep in gore, and with wild rage  
Yerk out their armed heels at their dead masters,  
Killing them twice. O ! give us leave, great king,  
To view the field in safety and dispose 81

Of their dead bodies.

KING HENRY. I tell thee truly, herald,  
I know not if the day be ours or no ;  
For yet a many of your horsemen peer  
And gallop o'er the field.

84

MONTJOY. The day is yours.

KING HENRY. Praised be God, and not our strength,  
for it !

What is this castle call'd that stands hard by ?

MONTJOY. They call it Agincourt. 88

KING HENRY. Then call we this the field of Agincourt,  
Fought on the day of Crispin Crispianus.

FLUELLEN. Your grandfather of famous memory, an't  
please your majesty, and your great-uncle Edward the  
Plack Prince of Wales, as I have read in the chronicles,  
fought a most prave pattle here in France.

KING HENRY. They did, Fluellen. 95

FLUELLEN. Your majesty says very true. If your  
majesties is remembered of it, the Welshmen did good  
service in a garden where leeks did grow, wearing leeks  
in their Monimouth caps : which, your majesty know, to  
this hour is an honourable badge of the service ; and I  
do believe, your majesty takes no scorn to wear the leek  
upon Saint Tavy's day.

KING HENRY. I wear it for a memorable honour ;  
For I am Welsh, you know, good countryman. 104

FLUELLEN. All the water in Wye cannot wash your  
majesty's Welsh plood out of your pody, I can tell you  
that : Got pless it and preserve it, as long as it pleases  
his grace, and his majesty too ! 108

KING HENRY. Thanks, good my countryman.

FLUELLEN. By Jeshu, I am your majesty's country-  
man, I care not who know it ; I will confess it to all the  
'orld : I need not be ashamed of your majesty, praised  
be God, so long as your majesty is an honest man.

KING HENRY. God keep me so ! Our heralds go with  
him :

Bring me just notice of the numbers dead  
On both our parts. Call yonder fellow hither. 116

[Points to WILLIAMS. Exeunt MONTJOY and others.]

EXETER. Soldier, you must come to the king.

KING HENRY. Soldier, why wear'st thou that glove in  
thy cap ?

WILLIAMS. An't please your majesty, 'tis the gage of one that I should fight withal, if he be alive. 121

KING HENRY. An Englishman ?

WILLIAMS. An't please your majesty, a rascal that swaggered with me last night ; who, if a' live and ever dare to challenge this glove, I have sworn to take him a box o' the ear : or, if I can see my glove in his cap,—which he swore as he was a soldier he would wear if alive,—I will strike it out soundly. 128

KING HENRY. What think you, Captain Fluellen ? is it fit this soldier keep his oath ?

FLUELLEN. He is a craven and a villain else, an't please your majesty, in my conscience. 132

KING HENRY. It may be his enemy is a gentleman of great sort, quite from the answer of his degree.

FLUELLEN. Though he be as good a gentleman as the devil is, as Lucifer and Belzebub himself, it is necessary, look your Grace, that he keep his vow and his oath. If he be perjured, see you now, his reputation is as arrant a villain and a Jack-sauce as ever his black shoe trod upon God's ground and his earth, in my conscience, la ! 141

KING HENRY. Then keep thy vow, sirrah, when thou meetest the fellow

WILLIAMS. So I will, my liege, as I live. 144

KING HENRY. Who servest thou under ?

WILLIAMS. Under Captain Gower, my liege.

FLUELLEN. Gower is a goot captain, and is good knowledge and literated in the wars. 148

KING HENRY. Call him hither to me, soldier.

WILLIAMS. I will, my liege. [Exit. 150

KING HENRY. Here, Fluellen ; wear thou this favour for me and stick it in thy cap. When Alençon and myself were down together I plucked this glove from his helm : if any man challenge this, he is a friend to Alençon, and an enemy to our person ; if thou encounter any such, apprehend him, an thou dost me love.

FLUELLEN. Your Grace does me as great honours as can be desired in the hearts of his subjects : I would fain see the man that has but two legs that shall find himself aggrieved at this glove, that is all ; but I would fain see it once, and please God of his grace that I might see.

KING HENRY. Knowest thou Gower ? 163

FLUELLEN. He is my dear friend, an't please you.

KING HENRY. Pray thee, go seek him, and bring him to my tent.

FLUELLEN. I will fetch him. [Exit. 168

KING HENRY. My Lord of Warwick, and my brother Gloucester,

Follow Fluellen closely at the heels.

The glove which I have given him for a favour

May haply purchase him a box o' the ear ;

It is the soldier's ; I by bargain should 172

Wear it myself. Follow, good cousin Warwick :

If that the soldier strike him,—as, I judge

By his blunt bearing he will keep his word,—

Some sudden mischief may arise of it ; 176

For I do know Fluellen valiant,

And touch'd with choler, hot as gunpowder,

And quickly will return an injury : 179

Follow and see there be no harm between them.

Go you with me, uncle of Exeter. [Exeunt.

SCENE VIII.—Before KING HENRY's Pavilion.

Enter GOWER and WILLIAMS.

WILLIAMS. I warrant it is to knight you, captain.

Enter FLUELLEN.

FLUELLEN. God's will and his pleasure, captain, I peseech you now come apace to the king : there is more good toward you peradventure than is in your knowledge to dream of. 5

WILLIAMS. Sir, know you this glove ?

FLUELLEN. Know the glove ! I know the glove is a glove.

WILLIAMS. I know this ; and thus I challenge it.

[Strikes him.

FLUELLEN. 'Sblood ! an arrant traitor as any's in the universal 'orld, or in France, or in England.

GOWER. How now, sir ! you villain ! 11

WILLIAMS. Do you think I'll be forsworn ?

FLUELLEN. Stand away, Captain Gower ; I will give treason his payment into plows, I warrant you.

WILLIAMS. I am no traitor. 15

FLUELLEN. That's a lie in thy throat. I charge you



in his majesty's name, apprehend him : he is a friend of the Duke Alençon's.

Enter WARWICK and GLOUCESTER.

WARWICK. How now, how now ! what's the matter ? 20

FLUELLEN. My Lord of Warwick, here is,—praised be God for it !—a most contagious treason come to light, look you, as you shall desire in a summer's day. Here is his majesty.

Enter KING HENRY and EXETER.

KING HENRY. How now ! what's the matter ?

FLUELLEN. My liege, here is a villain and a traitor, that, look your Grace, has struck the glove which your majesty is take out of the helmet of Alençon. 28

WILLIAMS. My liege, this was my glove ; here is the fellow of it ; and he that I gave it to in change promised to wear it in his cap ; I promised to strike him, if he did : I met this man with my glove in his cap, and I have been as good as my word. 33

FLUELLEN. Your majesty hear now,—saving your majesty's manhood,—what an arrant, rascally, beggarly, lousy knave it is. I hope your majesty is pear me testimony and witness, and avouchments, that this is the glove of Alençon that your majesty is give me ; in your conscience now.

KING HENRY. Give me thy glove, soldier : look, here is the fellow of it. 41

'Twas I, indeed, thou promisedst to strike ;  
And thou hast given me most bitter terms.

FLUELLEN. An't please your majesty, let his neck answer for it, if there is any martial law in the 'orld.

KING HENRY. How canst thou make me satisfaction ? 48

WILLIAMS. All offences, my lord, come from the heart : never came any from mine that might offend your majesty.

KING HENRY. It was ourself thou didst abuse.

WILLIAMS. Your majesty came not like yourself : you appeared to me but as a common man ; witness the night, your garments, your lowliness ; and what

your highness suffered under that shape, I beseech you, take it for your own fault and not mine : for had you been as I took you for I made no offence ; therefore, I beseech your highness, pardon me. 59

KING HENRY. Here, uncle Exeter, fill this glove with crowns,

And give it to this fellow. Keep it, fellow ;

And wear it for an honour in thy cap

Till I do challenge it. Give him the crowns : 63

And, captain, you must needs be friends with him.

FLUELLEN. By this day and this light, the fellow has mettle enough in his belly. Hold, there is twelve pence for you, and I pray you to serve God, and keep you out of prawls, and prabbles, and quarrels, and dissensions, and, I warrant you, it is the better for you.

WILLIAMS. I will none of your money. 70

FLUELLEN. It is with a good will ; I can tell you it will serve you to mend your shoes : come, wherefore should you be so pashful ? your shoes is not so good : 'tis a good shilling, I warrant you, or I will change it. 75

Enter an English Herald.

KING HENRY. Now, herald, are the dead number'd ?

HERALD. Here is the number of the slaughter'd French. [Delivers a paper.

KING HENRY. What prisoners of good sort are taken, uncle ?

EXETER. Charles Duke of Orleans, nephew to the king ; John Duke of Bourbon, and Lord Bouciqualt : 80  
Of other lords and barons, knights and squires,  
Full fifteen hundred, besides common men.

KING HENRY. This note doth tell me of ten thousand French

That in the field lie slain : of princes, in this number,  
And nobles bearing banners, there lie dead 85  
One hundred twenty-six : added to these,  
Of knights, esquires, and gallant gentlemen,  
Eight thousand and four hundred ; of the which  
Five hundred were but yesterday dubb'd knights :  
So that, in these ten thousand they have lost, 90  
There are but sixteen hundred mercenaries ;  
The rest are princes, barons, lords, knights, squires,  
And gentlemen of blood and quality.

The names of those their nobles that lie dead :  
 Charles Delabreth, High Constable of France ;  
 Jaques of Chatillon, Admiral of France ; 96  
 The master of the cross-bows, Lord Rambures ;  
 Great-master of France, the brave Sir Guischard Dauphin ;  
 John Duke of Alençon ; Anthony Duke of Brabant,  
 The brother to the Duke of Burgundy, 100  
 And Edward Duke of Bar : of lusty earls,  
 Grandpré and Roussi, Fauconberg and Foix,  
 Beaumont and Marle, Vaudemont and Lestrale.  
 Here was a royal fellowship of death ! 104  
 Where is the number of our English dead ?

[Herald presents another paper.]

Edward the Duke of York, the Earl of Suffolk,  
 Sir Richard Ketly, Davy Gam, esquire :  
 None else of name : and of all other men 108  
 But five and twenty. O God ! thy arm was here ;  
 And not to us, but to thy arm alone,  
 Ascribe we all. When, without stratagem,  
 But in plain shock and even play of battle, 112  
 Was ever known so great and little loss  
 On one part and on the other ? Take it, God,  
 For it is none but thine !

EXETER.

'Tis wonderful !

KING HENRY. Come, go we in procession to the  
 village : 116

And be it death proclaimed through our host  
 To boast of this or take the praise from God  
 Which is his only.

FLUELLEN. Is it not lawful, an please your majesty,  
 to tell how many is killed ? 121

KING HENRY. Yes, captain ; but with this acknow-  
 ledgment,  
 That God fought for us.

FLUELLEN. Yes, my conscience, he did us great good.

KING HENRY. Do we all holy rites : 125  
 Let there be sung Non nobis and Te Deum ;  
 The dead with charity enclos'd in clay.  
 We'll then to Calais ; and to England then, 128  
 Where ne'er from France arriv'd more happy men. [Exeunt.]

## ACT V.

Enter Chorus.

CHORUS. Vouchsafe to those that have not read the story,

That I may prompt them : and of such as have,  
 I humbly pray them to admit the excuse  
 Of time, of numbers, and due course of things, 4  
 Which cannot, in their huge and proper life  
 Be here presented. Now we bear the king  
 Toward Calais : grant him there ; there seen,  
 Heave him away upon your winged thoughts 8  
 Athwart the sea. Behold, the English beach  
 Pales in the flood with men, with wives, and boys,  
 Whose shouts and claps out-voice the deep-mouth'd sea,  
 Which, like a mighty whiffler 'fore the king, 12  
 Seems to prepare his way : so let him land  
 And solemnly see him set on to London.  
 So swift a pace hath thought that even now  
 You may imagine him upon Blackheath ; 16  
 Where that his lords desire him to have borne  
 His bruised helmet and his bended sword  
 Before him through the city : he forbids it,  
 Being free from vainness and self-glorious pride ; 20  
 Giving full trophy, signal and ostent,  
 Quite from himself, to God. But now behold,  
 In the quick forge and working-house of thought,  
 How London doth pour out her citizens. 24  
 The mayor and all his brethren in best sort,  
 Like to the senators of the antique Rome,  
 With the plebeians swarming at their heels,  
 Go forth and fetch their conquering Cæsar in : 28  
 As, by a lower but loving likelihood,  
 Were now the general of our gracious empress,—  
 As in good time he may,—from Ireland coming,  
 Bringing rebellion broached on his sword, 32  
 How many would the peaceful city quit  
 To welcome him ! much more, and much more cause,  
 Did they this Harry. Now in London place him ;  
 As yet the lamentation of the French 36  
 Invites the King of England's stay at home,—  
 The emperor's coming in behalf of France,

To order peace between them ;—and omit  
 All the occurrences, whatever chanc'd; 40  
 Till Harry's back-return again to France :  
 There must we bring him ; and myself have play'd  
 The interim, by remembering you 'tis past.  
 Then brook abridgment, and your eyes advance,  
 After your thoughts, straight back again to France. [Exit.

SCENE I.—France. An English Court of Guard.

Enter FLUELLEN and GOWER.

GOWER. Nay, that 's right ; but why wear you your  
 leek to-day ? Saint Davy's day is past.

FLUELLEN. There is occasions and causes why and  
 wherefore in all things : I will tell you, asse my friend,  
 Captain Gower. The rascally, scald, beggarly, lousy,  
 pragging knave, Pistol,—which you and yourself and all  
 the 'orld know to be no petter than a fellow,—look you  
 now, of no merits, he is come to me and prings me  
 pread and salt yesterday, look you, and pid me eat my  
 leek. It was in a place where I could not preed no con-  
 tention with him ; but I will be so pold as to wear it in  
 my cap till I see him once again, and then I will tell him  
 a little piece of my desires.

GOWER. Why, here he comes, swelling like a turkey-  
 cock. 15

Enter PISTOL.

FLUELLEN. 'Tis no matter for his swellings nor his  
 turkey-cocks. God pless you, Aunchient Pistol ! you  
 scurvy, lousy knave, God pless you !

PISTOL. Ha ! art thou bedlam ? dost thou thirst, base  
 Trojan,  
 To have me fold up Parca's fatal web ? 20  
 Hence ! I am qualmish at the smell of leek.

FLUELLEN. I peseech you heartily, scurvy lousy  
 knave, at my desires and my requests and my petitions  
 to eat, look you, this leek ; pecause, look you, you do  
 not love it, nor your affections and your appetites and  
 your digestions does not agree with it, I would desire you  
 to eat it. 27

PISTOL. Not for Cadwallader and all his goats.

FLUELLEN. [Strikes him.] There is one goat for you.  
 Will you be so good, scald knave, as eat it ?

PISTOL. Base Troyan, thou shalt die. 31

FLUELLEN. You say very true, scald knave, when God's will is. I will desire you to live in the mean time and eat your victuals; come, there is sauce for it. [Strikes him again.] You called me yesterday mountain-squire, but I will make you to-day a squire of low degree. I pray you, fall to: if you can mock a leek you can eat a leek. 38

GOWER. Enough, captain: you have astonished him.

FLUELLEN. I say, I will make him eat some part of my leek, or I will peat his pate four days. Bite, I pray you; it is good for your green wound and your bloody coxcomb.

PISTOL. Must I bite? 44

FLUELLEN. Yes, certainly, and out of doubt and out of question too and ambiguities.

PISTOL. By this leek, I will most horribly revenge. I eat and eat, I swear— 48

FLUELLEN. Eat, I pray you: will you have some more sauce to your leek? there is not enough leek to swear by. 51

PISTOL. Quiet thy cudgel: thou dost see I eat.

FLUELLEN. Much good do you, scald knave, heartily. Nay, pray you, throw none away; the skin is good for your broken coxcomb. When you take occasions to see leeks hereafter, I pray you, mock at 'em; that is all. 57

PISTOL. Good.

FLUELLEN. Ay, leeks is good. Hold you, there is a groat to heal your pate. 60

PISTOL. Me a groat!

FLUELLEN. Yes, verily and in truth, you shall take it; or I have another leek in my pocket, which you shall eat. 64

PISTOL. I take thy groat in earnest of revenge.

FLUELLEN. If I owe you anything I will pay you in cudgels: you shall be a woodmonger, and buy nothing of me but cudgels. God be wi' you, and keep you, and heal your pate. [Exit. 68

PISTOL. All hell shall stir for this.

GOWER. Go, go; you are a counterfeit cowardly knave. Will you mock at an ancient tradition, begun upon an honourable respect, and worn as a memorable

trophy of predeceased valour, and dare not avouch in your deeds any of your words? I have seen you gleeing and galling at this gentleman twice or thrice. You thought, because he could not speak English in the native garb, he could not therefore handle an English cudgel: you find it otherwise; and henceforth let a Welsh correction teach you a good English condition. Fare ye well. [Exit.]

PISTOL. Doth Fortune play the huswife with me now? News have I that my Nell is dead i' the spital Of malady of France: 84  
 And there my rendezvous is quite cut off.  
 Old I do wax, and from my weary limbs Honour is cudgelled. Well, bawd I'll turn,  
 And something lean to cutpurse of quick hand. 88  
 To England will I steal, and there I'll steal;  
 And patches will I get unto these cudgell'd scars,  
 And swear I got them in the Gallia wars. [Exit.]

SCENE II.—Troyes in Champagne. An Apartment in the FRENCH KING'S Palace.

Enter, from one side, KING HENRY, BEDFORD, GLOUCESTER, EXETER, WARWICK, WESTMORELAND, and other Lords; from the other side, the FRENCH KING, QUEEN ISABEL, the PRINCESS KATHARINE, ALICE and other Ladies; the DUKE OF BURGUNDY, and his Train.

KING HENRY. Peace to this meeting, wherefore we are met!

Unto our brother France, and to our sister,  
 Health and fair time of day; joy and good wishes  
 To our most fair and princely cousin Katharine; 4  
 And, as a branch and member of this royalty,  
 By whom this great assembly is contriv'd,  
 We do salute you, Duke of Burgundy; 7  
 And, princes French, and peers, health to you all!

FRENCH KING. Right joyous are we to behold your face,  
 Most worthy brother England; fairly met:  
 So are you, princes English, every one.

QUEEN ISABEL. So happy be the issue, brother  
 England, 12  
 Of this good day and of this gracious meeting,  
 As we are now glad to behold your eyes;  
 Your eyes, which hitherto have borne in them

Against the French, that met them in their bent,  
The fatal balls of murdering basilisks : 17  
The venom of such looks, we fairly hope,  
Have lost their quality, and that this day  
Shall change all griefs and quarrels into love. 20

KING HENRY. To cry amen to that, thus we appear.

QUEEN ISABEL. You English princes all, I do salute you.

BURGUNDY. My duty to you both, on equal love,  
Great Kings of France and England ! That I have  
labour'd 21

With all my wits, my pains, and strong endeavours,  
To bring your most imperial majesties  
Unto this bar and royal interview,  
Your mightiness on both parts best can witness. 28  
Since then my office hath so far prevail'd  
That face to face, and royal eye to eye,  
You have congregated, let it not disgrace me  
If I demand before this royal view, 32  
What rub or what impediment there is,  
Why that the naked, poor, and mangled Peace,  
Dear nurse of arts, plenties, and joyful births,  
Should not in this best garden of the world, 36  
Our fertile France, put up her lovely visage ?  
Alas ! she hath from France too long been chas'd,  
And all her husbandry doth lie on heaps,  
Corrupting in its own fertility. 40  
Her vine, the merry cheerer of the heart,  
Unpruned dies ; her hedges even-pleach'd,  
Like prisoners wildly overgrown with hair,  
Put forth disorder'd twigs ; her fallow leas 44  
The darnel, hemlock and rank fumitory  
Doth root upon, while that the coulter rusts  
That should deracinate such savagery ;  
The even mead, that erst brought sweetly forth 48  
The freckled cowslip, burnet, and green clover,  
Wanting the scythe, all uncorrected, rank,  
Conceives by idleness, and nothing teems  
But hateful docks, rough thistles, kecksies, burs, 52  
Losing both beauty and utility ;  
And as our vineyards, fallows, meads, and hedges,  
Defective in their natures, grow to wildness ;  
Even so our houses and ourselves and children 56  
Have lost, or do not learn for want of time,



The sciences that should become our country,  
 But grow like savages,—as soldiers will,  
 That nothing do but meditate on blood,— 60  
 To swearing and stern looks, diffus'd attire,  
 And every thing that seems unnatural.

Which to reduce into our former favour  
 You are assembled ; and my speech entreats 64  
 That I may know the let why gentle Peace  
 Should not expel these inconveniences,  
 And bless us with her former qualities.

KING HENRY. If, Duke of Burgundy, you would the  
 peace, 68

Whose want gives growth to the imperfections  
 Which you have cited, you must buy that peace  
 With full accord to all our just demands ;  
 Whose tenours and particular effects 72  
 You have, enschedul'd briefly, in your hands.

BURGUNDY. The king hath heard them ; to the which  
 as yet,

There is no answer made.

KING HENRY. Well then the peace,  
 Which you before so urg'd, lies in his answer. 76

FRENCH KING. I have but a cursorary eye  
 O'erglanc'd the articles : pleaseth your Grace  
 To appoint some of your council presently  
 To sit with us once more, with better heed 80  
 To re-survey them, we will suddenly  
 Pass our accept and peremptory answer.

KING HENRY. Brother, we shall. Go, uncle Exeter,  
 And brother Clarence, and you, brother Gloucester,  
 Warwick and Huntingdon, go with the king ; 85  
 And take with you free power to ratify,  
 Augment, or alter, as your wisdoms best  
 Shall see advantageable for our dignity, 88  
 Anything in or out of our demands,  
 And we'll consign thereto. Will you, fair sister,  
 Go with the princes, or stay here with us ?

QUEEN ISABEL. Our gracious brother, I will go with  
 them. 92

Haply a woman's voice may do some good  
 When articles too nicely urg'd be stood on.

KING HENRY. Yet leave our cousin Katharine here  
 with us :

She is our capital demand, compris'd  
Within the fore-rank of our articles. 96

QUEEN ISABEL. She hath good leave.

[Exit all except KING HENRY, KATHARINE, and ALICE.]

KING HENRY. Fair Katharine, and most fair !  
Will you vouchsafe to teach a soldier terms,  
Such as will enter at a lady's ear, 100  
And plead his love-suit to her gentle heart ?

KATHARINE. Your majesty shall mock at me : I cannot speak your England.

KING HENRY. O fair Katharine ! if you will love me soundly with your French heart, I will be glad to hear you confess it brokenly with your English tongue. Do you like me, Kate ?

KATHARINE. Pardonnez moy, I cannot tell vat is 'like me'. 109

KING HENRY. An angel is like you, Kate ; and you are like an angel.

KATHARINE. Que dit-il ? que je suis semblable à les anges ? 113

ALICE. Ouy, vrayment, sauf vostre grace, ainsi dit-il.

KING HENRY. I said so, dear Katharine ; and I must not blush to affirm it. 117

KATHARINE. O bon Dieu ! les langues des hommes sont pleines des tromperies.

KING HENRY. What says she, fair one ? that the tongues of men are full of deceits ? 121

ALICE. Ouy, dat de tongues of de mans is be full of deceits : dat is de princess.

KING HENRY. The princess is the better English-woman. I' faith, Kate, my wooing is fit for thy understanding : I am glad thou canst speak no better English ; for, if thou couldst, thou wouldst find me such a plain king that thou wouldst think I had sold my farm to buy my crown. I know no ways to mince it in love, but directly to say 'I love you : ' then, if you urge me further than to say 'Do you in faith ? ' I wear out my suit. Give me your answer ; i' faith, do : and so clap hands and a bargain. How say you, lady ? 133

KATHARINE. Sauf vostre honneur, me understand vell.

KING HENRY. Marry, if you would put me to verses,

or to dance for your sake, Kate, why you undid me : for the one, I have neither words nor measure, and for the other, I have no strength in measure, yet a reasonable measure in strength. If I could win a lady at leap-frog, or by vaulting into my saddle with my armour on my back, under the correction of bragging be it spoken, I should quickly leap into a wife. Or if I might buffet for my love, or bound my horse for her favours, I could lay on like a butcher and sit like a jack-an-apes, never off. But before God, Kate, I cannot look greenly nor gasp out my eloquence, nor I have no cunning in protestation ; only downright oaths, which I never use till urged, nor never break for urging. If thou canst love a fellow of this temper, Kate, whose face is not worth sun-burning, that never looks in his glass for love of anything he sees there, let thine eye be thy cook. I speak to thee plain soldier : if thou canst love me for this, take me ; if not, to say to thee that I shall die, is true ; but for thy love, by the Lord, no ; yet I love thee too. And while thou livest, dear Kate, take a fellow of plain and uncoined constancy, for he perforce must do thee right, because he hath not the gift to woo in other places ; for these fellows of infinite tongue, that can rime themselves into ladies' favours, they do always reason themselves out again. What ! a speaker is but a prater ; a rime is but a ballad. A good leg will fall, a straight back will stoop, a black beard will turn white, a curled pate will grow bald, a fair face will wither, a full eye will wax hollow, but a good heart, Kate, is the sun and the moon ; or, rather, the sun, and not the moon ; for it shines bright and never changes, but keeps his course truly. If thou would have such a one, take me ; and take me, take a soldier ; take a soldier, take a king. And what sayest thou then to my love ? speak, my fair, and fairly, I pray thee.

172

KATHARINE. Is it possible dat I sould love de enemy of France ?

KING HENRY. No ; it is not possible you should love the enemy of France, Kate ; but, in loving me, you should love the friend of France ; for I love France so well, that I will not part with a village of it ; I will have it all mine : and, Kate, when France is

mine and I am yours, then yours is France and you are mine. 181

KATHARINE. I cannot tell vat is dat.

KING HENRY. No, Kate? I will tell thee in French, which I am sure will hang upon my tongue like a new-married wife about her husband's neck, hardly to be shook off. Je quand sur le possession de France, et quand vous avez le possession de moy,—let me see, what then? Saint Denis be my speed!—donc vostre est France, et vous estes mienne. It is as easy for me, Kate, to conquer the kingdom, as to speak so much more French: I shall never move thee in French, unless it be to laugh at me. 192

KATHARINE. Sauf vostre honneur, le François que vous parlez est meilleure que l'Anglois lequel je parle.

KING HENRY. No, faith, is 't not, Kate; but thy speaking of my tongue, and I thine, most truly falsely, must needs be granted to be much at one. But, Kate, dost thou understand thus much English, Canst thou love me? 200

KATHARINE. I cannot tell.

KING HENRY. Can any of your neighbours tell, Kate? I'll ask them. Come, I know thou lovest me; and at night when you come into your closet you'll question this gentlewoman about me; and I know, Kate, you will to her dispraise those parts in me that you love with your heart: but, good Kate, mock me mercifully; the rather, gentle princess, because I love thee cruelly. If ever thou be'st mine, Kate,—as I have a saving faith within me tells me thou shalt,—I get thee with scrambling, and thou must therefore needs prove a good soldier-breeder. Shall not thou and I, between Saint Denis and Saint George, compound a boy, half French, half English, that shall go to Constantinople and take the Turk by the beard? shall we not? what sayest thou, my fair flower-de-luce? 216

KATHARINE. I do not know dat.

KING HENRY. No; 'tis hereafter to know, but now to promise: do but now promise, Kate, you will endeavour for your French part of such a boy, and for my English moiety take the word of a king and a bachelor. How answer you, la plus belle Katharine du monde, mon très cher et divine déesse?

KATHARINE. Your majesté ave fausse French enough to deceive de most sage demoiselle dat is en France. 225

KING HENRY. Now, fie upon my false French ! By mine honour, in true English I love thee, Kate : by which honour I dare not swear thou lovest me ; yet my blood begins to flatter me that thou dost, notwithstanding the poor and untempering effect of my visage. Now beshrew my father's ambition ! he was thinking of civil wars when he got me : therefore was I created with a stubborn outside, with an aspect of iron, that, when I come to woo ladies I fright them. But, in faith, Kate, the elder I wax the better I shall appear : my comfort is, that old age, that ill layer-up of beauty, can do no more spoil upon my face : thou hast me, if thou hast me, at the worst ; and thou shalt wear me, if thou wear me, better and better. And therefore tell me, most fair Katharine, will you have me ? Put off your maiden blushes ; avouch the thoughts of your heart with the looks of an empress ; take me by the hand, and say ' Harry of England, I am thine ' : which word thou shalt no sooner bless mine ear withal, but I will tell thee aloud—' England is thine, Ireland is thine, France is thine, and Henry Plantagenet is thine ; ' who, though I speak it before his face, if he be not fellow with the best king, thou shalt find the best king of good fellows. Come, your answer in broken music ; for thy voice is music, and thy English broken ; therefore, queen of all, Katharine, break thy mind to me in broken English : wilt thou have me ? 252

KATHARINE. Dat is as it sall please de roy mon père.

KING HENRY. Nay, it will please him well, Kate ; it shall please him, Kate. 256

KATHARINE. Den it sall also content me.

KING HENRY. Upon that I kiss your hand, and I call you my queen. 259

KATHARINE. Laissez, mon seigneur, laissez, laissez ! Ma foy, je ne veux point que vous abaissez vostre grandeur, en baisant la main d'une vostre indigne serviteure : excusez moy, je vous supplie, mon très puissant seigneur. 264

KING HENRY. Then I will kiss your lips, Kate.

KATHARINE. Les dames, et demoiselles, pour estre baisées devant leur nocés, il n'est pas la coutume de France. 268

KING HENRY. Madam my interpreter, what says she ?

ALICE. Dat it is not be de fashion pour les ladies of France,—I cannot tell what is baiser in English.

KING HENRY. To kiss. 273

ALICE. Your majesty entendre better que moy.

KING HENRY. It is not a fashion for the maids in France to kiss before they are married, would she say ? 277

ALICE. Ouy, vrayment.

KING HENRY. O Kate ! nice customs curtsy to great kings. Dear Kate, you and I cannot be confined within the weak list of a country's fashion : we are the makers of manners, Kate ; and the liberty that follows our places stops the mouths of all find-faults, as I will do yours, for upholding the nice fashion of your country in denying me a kiss : therefore, patiently, and yielding. [Kissing her.] You have witchcraft in your lips, Kate : there is more eloquence in a sugar touch of them, than in the tongues of the French council ; and they should sooner persuade Harry of England than a general petition of monarchs. Here comes your father.

Re-enter the KING and QUEEN, BURGUNDY, BEDFORD, GLOUCESTER, EXETER, WARWICK, WESTMORELAND, and other French and English Lords.

BURGUNDY. God save your majesty ! My royal cousin, teach you our princess English ? 292

KING HENRY. I would have her learn, my fair cousin, how perfectly I love her ; and that is good English.

BURGUNDY. Is she not apt ? 296

KING HENRY. Our tongue is rough, coz, and my condition is not smooth ; so that, having neither the voice nor the heart of flattery about me, I cannot so conjure up the spirit of love in her, that he will appear in his true likeness. 301

BURGUNDY. Pardon the frankness of my mirth if I answer you for that. If you would conjure in her you must make a circle ; if conjure up Love in her in his true likeness, he must appear naked and blind.

Can you blame her then, being a maid yet rosed over with the virgin crimson of modesty, if she deny the appearance of a naked blind boy in her naked seeing self? It were, my lord, a hard condition for a maid to consign to.

KING HENRY. Yet they do wink and yield, as love is blind and enforces. 312

BURGUNDY. They are then excused, my lord, when they see not what they do.

KING HENRY. Then, good my lord, teach your cousin to consent winking. 316

BURGUNDY. I will wink on her to consent, my lord, if you will teach her to know my meaning: for maids, well summered and warm kept, are like flies at Bartholomew-tide, blind, though they have their eyes; and then they will endure handling, which before would not abide looking on. 322

KING HENRY. This moral ties me over to time and a hot summer; and so I shall catch the fly, your cousin, in the latter end, and she must be blind too.

BURGUNDY. As love is, my lord, before it loves.

KING HENRY. It is so: and you may, some of you, thank love for my blindness, who cannot see many a fair French city for one fair French maid that stands in my way. 331

FRENCH KING. Yes, my lord, you see them perspectively, the cities turned into a maid; for they are all girdled with maiden walls that war hath never entered.

KING HENRY. Shall Kate be my wife? 336

FRENCH KING. So please you.

KING HENRY. I am content; so the maiden cities you talk of may wait on her: so the maid that stood in the way for my wish shall show me the way to my will. 341

FRENCH KING. We have consented to all terms of reason.

KING HENRY. Is 't so, my lords of England?

WESTMORELAND. The king hath granted every article: His daughter first, and then in sequel all, According to their firm proposed natures. 347

EXETER. Only he hath not yet subscribed this:

Where your majesty demands, that the King of France, having any occasion to write for matter of grant, shall name your highness in this form, and with this addition, in French, Notre très cher filz Henry roy d'Angleterre, Héretier de France; and thus in Latin, Præclarissimus filius noster Henricus, Rex Angliæ, et Hæres Franciæ. 355

FRENCH KING. Nor this I have not, brother, so denied, But your request shall make me let it pass.

KING HENRY. I pray you then, in love and dear alliance, Let that one article rank with the rest; And thereupon give me your daughter. 360

FRENCH KING. Take her, fair son; and from her blood raise up

Issue to me; that the contending kingdoms Of France and England, whose very shores look pale With envy of each other's happiness, 364 May cease their hatred, and this dear conjunction Plant neighbourhood and Christian-like accord In their sweet bosoms, that never war advance His bleeding sword 'twixt England and fair France.

ALL. Amen! 369

KING HENRY. Now, welcome, Kate: and bear me witness all, That here I kiss her as my sovereign queen. [Flourish.

QUEEN ISABEL. God, the best maker of all marriages; Combine your hearts in one, your realms in one!

As man and wife, being two, are one in love, So be there 'twixt your kingdoms such a spousal That never may ill office, or fell jealousy, 370

Which troubles oft the bed of blessed marriage, Thrust in between the paction of these kingdoms, To make divorce of their incorporate league; That English may as French, French Englishmen, Receive each other! God speak this Amen! 381

ALL. Amen!

KING HENRY. Prepare we for our marriage: on which day,

My Lord of Burgundy, we'll take your oath, 384 And all the peers', for surety of our leagues.

Then shall I swear to Kate, and you to me; And may our oaths well kept and prosperous be!

[Sennet. Exeunt.



Enter Chorus.

Thus far, with rough and all-unable pen,  
Our bending author hath pursu'd the story ;  
In little room confining mighty men, 390  
Mangling by starts the full course of their glory.  
Small time, but in that small most greatly liv'd  
This star of England : Fortune made his sword,  
By which the world's best garden he achiev'd, 394  
And of it left his son imperial lord.  
Henry the Sixth, in infant bands crown'd King  
Of France and England, did this king succeed ;  
Whose state so many had the managing, 398  
That they lost France and made his England bleed :  
Which oft our stage hath shown ; and, for their sake,  
In your fair minds let this acceptance take. [Exit.

THE FIRST PART OF  
KING HENRY THE SIXTH

## THE FIRST PART OF KING HENRY THE SIXTH

‘I NOW come,’ writes Courtenay in his *Commentaries*, ‘to the worst of the historical plays, the three parts of Henry the Sixth.’ There will be little difference of opinion as to the writer’s estimate of these plays; there can be no difference of opinion in placing the First Part of *King Henry VI* on a much lower level than we place the two later parts. It is some satisfaction to reflect that the most perplexing questions of Shakespearean scholarship are connected not with the great dramas but with ‘the worst of the historical plays’. The three parts do not stand with respect to these scholarly questions upon the same footing. The second and third parts are closely connected with two old plays, of which we possess early quartos; the first is known to us only through the folio of 1623. The problem here is, accordingly, a simpler one; we have no questions of revision of an earlier drama known to us, and how and by whom that revision was made, though we may imagine, if we please, that Part I existed in some earlier form than that which we possess. Here our chief questions are: Did Shakespeare write the whole of this play? and, if not the whole, did he write any parts of it?

The style of the greater part of the play indicates that, whoever may be the author, it is of early date. In Henslowe’s *Diary* mention is made, March 3, 1591 [1592], of a ‘harey the VI’, and the letters ‘Ne’, meaning ‘New’, are prefixed to the entry. Whether the play was that which we possess, and whether it was then wholly new, or had been made in part new by additions, we cannot say. It was evidently popular, for it reappears in the *Diary* on many occasions during some ten or eleven months. Nashe in his *Pierce Pennilesse* (1592) seems to allude to the play which

we find in the folio : ' How would it have joyed brave Talbot (the terror of the French) to thinke that after he had lyen two hundred yeare in his Toomb, he should triumphe againe on the stage, and have his bones new embalmed with the teares of ten thousand spectators at least (at severall times) who, in the Tragedian that represents his person, imagine they behold him fresh bleeding.' Talbot, in our play (Act I, Scene iv, l. 42), is styled, in a phrase caught from the chronicler Hall, ' the terror of the French.' In the Epilogue to *King Henry V* Shakespeare (if the Epilogue be from his hand) refers to *King Henry VI* and his state of which so many had the managing :—

That they lost France and made his England bleed :  
Which oft our stage hath shown.

Meres, in 1598, does not name *Henry VI* among Shakespeare's plays, but his list does not profess to be complete. The inclusion of *Henry VI* in the first folio raises a strong presumption that Shakespeare was not unconnected with the trilogy of that name, and perhaps with each part of the trilogy.

There have been critics—among others Charles Knight and Hudson—who maintain that the First Part of *Henry VI* is rightly ascribed to Shakespeare, and to Shakespeare alone. It is, of course, very difficult to decide such a matter by the evidence of style, inasmuch as we have no standard of comparison, or anything like a test, of his work in historical drama as early as 1591, or perhaps as early as 1589–90. The fact, however, is remarkable that from the time of Theobald to the present day scholars have doubted that Shakespeare did more than (in Theobald's words) 'add some finishing beauties' to the piece. Malone was of a decided opinion that the play could not be the work of Shakespeare. He held that the versification is unlike that of the second and third parts, and 'exactly corresponds with that of the tragedies written by others before and about the time of Shakespeare's commencing author', a remark which falls in with Coleridge's comment upon the opening lines : 'Read aloud any two or three passages in blank verse even from Shakespeare's earliest dramas . . . and then read

in the same way this speech . . . and if you do not feel the impossibility of the latter having been written by Shakespeare, all I dare suggest is that you may have ears—for so has another animal—but an ear you cannot have, *me judice*.'

Against Shakespeare's authorship Malone argued on the ground that in this play there are 'more allusions to mythology, to classical authors, and to ancient and modern history' than can be found in any one piece by Shakespeare written upon an English story, and that these allusions are introduced very much in the manner of his immediate predecessors or early contemporaries. He notices that the writer of the play represents Henry as remembering words of his father, whereas in both the second and the third part it is stated by Henry that he was crowned at nine months old. Cambridge is said in the play (Act II, Scene v) to have levied an army against his sovereign; but in *Henry V* Cambridge is condemned at Southampton for conspiring to assassinate the king, and no army had been levied. The name 'Hecate' is in this play a trisyllable; but in *Macbeth* Shakespeare always makes 'Hecate' a disyllable. It may be added that historical events are jumbled and transposed here with an audacity to which, in his unquestioned plays, Shakespeare rarely, if ever, attains. We should be glad to think that a blind patriotic passion could not have operated so strongly on Shakespeare as to produce the gross conception seen here of the character of Joan of Arc; the writer of the play was partly under the guidance of the chroniclers, but he labours the theme with a zeal that is his own.

It is well to put on record here the opinions of three scholars who have devoted special attention to this play. R. Grant White's 'Essay on the Authorship of *King Henry VI*' (given in the seventh volume of his edition of *Shakespeare's Works*) is mainly concerned with the second and third parts; but he does not neglect the first. He thought it not improbable that Marlowe, Greene, Peele, and Shakespeare, were all engaged upon it. That Shakespeare wrote at least a part of it he regarded as certain, and he believed that as we have the play in the folio it had been throughout revised by him. The greater part of *Henry VI*, Part I, he

held, was originally written by Greene, 'whose style of thought and versification may be detected throughout the play beneath the thin embellishment with which it was disguised by Shakespeare, and especially in the first and second scenes of the first Act.' Traces of Marlowe's 'furious pen' he found in the second and third scenes of Act II. He would attribute to Peele the couplets of the fifth, sixth, and seventh scenes of Act IV, and conjectured that these scenes had been retouched by Shakespeare, who may have altered such lines (characteristic of Peele) as happened to make an accented syllable rhyme with one that is unaccented. Shakespeare having, in his opinion, revised the whole, he admits that all attempts to parcel out the authorship must be 'sheer conjecture'.

Mr. Fleay in his *Chronicle History of the Life and Work of Shakespeare* (1886) is less troubled by doubts or hesitancy. The play, according to him, is the work of Marlowe, Greene or Kyd, Peele, Lodge, and Shakespeare. The portions assigned to each dramatist were in part at least determined by considerations of historical chronology. The time-limits of Marlowe's scenes are the years from 1422 to 1426; his work is found in Act I, Scenes i and iii, Act II, Scene v, and Act III, Scene i. Greene, or Kyd, dealt with events between 1427 and 1430 in Act I, Scenes ii, iv to vi, Act II, Scenes i to iii, Act III, Scene iv, and Act IV, Scene i: 'there can be no doubt,' Mr. Fleay writes, 'that these scenes are all by one author,' and an author very far inferior to Marlowe. To Peele are somewhat doubtfully assigned Act III, Scenes ii and iii. Without hesitation Mr. Fleay gives the story of Joan of Arc, 1430-31, and the Margaret match of 1443, to Lodge; that is to say, Act v, Scenes ii to v. Finally he attributes to Shakespeare, as an insertion in the original play, Act IV, Scenes ii to vii. 'The scene ii, iv,' he adds, 'has long been recognized as so far superior to the rest of the play as to be probably due to the hand of Shakespeare, at a later date [for such a date is indicated by the versification] c. 1597-8.' This scene of the plucking of the white and red roses does assuredly make us all cry out the name of Shakespeare; but it is right to warn the reader that Mr. Fleay's confidence in his own

conjectures is not always proportioned to the evidence by which they are supported.

The most recent investigator of the problem of authorship was the editor of the play in 'The Arden Shakespeare', the late Mr. H. C. Hart. He relied perhaps overmuch on evidence derived from the vocabulary of the several supposed authors. It is a little difficult to disentangle his conclusions from a mass of interesting writing, but the following is, I believe, not far from expressing his results: Act I, Scene i, Greene (rewritten by Shakespeare); ii, chiefly Greene (aided by Nashe?); iii, chiefly Greene; iv, Shakespeare (aided by Nashe?); v, Greene; vi, Greene (aided by Marlowe?); Act II, Scenes i to iii, Greene, but in ii, iii, retouched by Shakespeare; iv and v, Shakespeare. Act III, Scene i, Greene (revised by Shakespeare?); ii, Shakespeare; iii and iv, Greene. Act IV, Scene i to Scene v, Shakespeare; vi and vii, Greene, rewritten by Shakespeare, so that these scenes become substantially Shakespeare's down to vii, l. 50 (Enter Sir W. Lucy and French Herald); the rest of vii probably Greene. Act v, Scene i, Greene; ii, 'no room or substance for an opinion,' but probably not Shakespeare; iii, Greene, 'polished and smoothed and finished by Shakespeare'; iv, Shakespeare, influenced by Marlowe. 'At the end of Act v Peele may have helped. But Shakespeare wrote the last two scenes (iv and v), and seems to have made Margaret his own property.'

These conclusions are the results of laborious study, but for my own part I must admit that many of them seem to me, as Grant White put it, 'sheer conjecture.' I feel that the ascription of this or that scene to a particular author must be taken as no more than a guess, which may be far from the truth. And yet that Shakespeare wrote parts of the play I regard as certain; that he revised the whole seems to me highly questionable. I am content to adopt as my own the cautious statement of the late Mr. W. J. Craig: 'It is a play which the poet's "prentice-hand" had altered from an older one, grafting on that earlier stock a few passages only: the Talbot scenes (Act iv, Scenes ii and vii), that vigorous one in the Temple Garden, when

the fateful roses are plucked (Act II, Scene iv), and that touching one describing the deathbed interview in the Tower of London between the hapless Mortimer and his aspiring nephew, Richard Duke of York (Act II, Scene v).’ This statement may not include all the work of Shakespeare; if so, it errs on the safer side, that of caution. And it may be that the scene in the Temple Garden is a later addition than the rest, one which can hardly be described as coming from Shakespeare’s ‘prentice-hand’; but substantially the statement may be regarded, in my opinion, as trustworthy. Perhaps when revising the old plays on which the Second and Third Parts of *Henry VI* are founded, Shakespeare rehandled in some degree the Margaret and Suffolk scenes of the present play, which carry on the story without interruption from the First to the Second Part. I venture to agree with those critics who believe that Greene was, in part at least, the original author. I fail to attain any real assurance of the presence here of Marlowe, Lodge, Nashe, or Peele.

For the story of the Countess of Auvergne’s attempt to entrap Talbot—Act II, Scene iii—no historical source is known. Mr. Hart believed that the scene bears evidence throughout of Shakespeare’s hand, retouching Greene; it is ascribed to Greene or Kyd by Mr. Fleay.



## DRAMATIS PERSONAE

KING HENRY THE SIXTH.

DUKE OF GLOUCESTER, Uncle to the King, and Protector.

DUKE OF BEDFORD, Uncle to the King, Regent of France.

THOMAS BEAUFORT, Duke of Exeter, Great-uncle to the King.

HENRY BEAUFORT, Great-uncle to the King; Bishop of Winchester,  
and afterwards Cardinal.

JOHN BEAUFORT, Earl, afterwards Duke, of Somerset.

RICHARD PLANTAGENET, Son of Richard, late Earl of Cambridge;  
afterwards Duke of York.

EARL OF WARWICK.

EARL OF SALISBURY.

EARL OF SUFFOLK.

LORD TALBOT, afterwards Earl of Shrewsbury.

JOHN TALBOT, his Son.

EDMUND MORTIMER, Earl of March.

SIR JOHN FASTOLFE.

SIR WILLIAM LUCY.

SIR WILLIAM GLANSDALE.

SIR THOMAS GARGRAVE.

WOODVILLE, Lieutenant of the Tower.

Mayor of London. Mortimer's Keepers. A Lawyer.

VERNON, of the White-Rose, or York Faction.

BASSET, of the Red-Rose, or Lancaster Faction.

CHARLES, Dauphin, and afterwards King of France.

REIGNIER, Duke of Anjou, and titular King of Naples.

DUKE OF BURGUNDY.

DUKE OF ALENÇON.

BASTARD OF ORLEANS.

Governor of Paris.

Master-Gunner of Orleans, and his Son.

General of the French Forces in Bourdeaux.

A French Sergeant.

A Porter.

An old Shepherd, Father to Joan la Pucelle.

MARGARET, Daughter to Reignier; afterwards married to King  
Henry.

COUNTESS OF AUVERGNE.

JOAN LA PUCELLE, commonly called Joan of Arc.

Lords, Warders of the Tower, Heralds, Officers, Soldiers, Messengers,  
and Attendants.

Fiends appearing to La Pucelle.

SCENE.—Partly in England, and partly in France.

# THE FIRST PART OF KING HENRY THE SIXTH

## ACT I

SCENE I.—Westminster Abbey.

Dead March. Enter the Funeral of KING HENRY THE FIFTH attended on by the DUKES OF BEDFORD, GLOUCESTER, and EXETER; the EARL OF WARWICK, the BISHOP OF WINCHESTER, Heralds, &c.

BEDFORD. Hung be the heavens with black, yield day to night!

Comets, importing change of times and states,  
Brandish your crystal tresses in the sky,  
And with them scourge the bad revolting stars, 4  
That have consented unto Henry's death!  
King Henry the Fifth, too famous to live long!  
England ne'er lost a king of so much worth.

GLOUCESTER. England ne'er had a king until his time.  
Virtue he had, deserving to command: 9  
His brandish'd sword did blind men with his beams;  
His arms spread wider than a dragon's wings;  
His sparkling eyes, replete with wrathful fire, 12  
More dazzled and drove back his enemies  
Than mid-day sun fierce bent against their faces.  
What should I say? his deeds exceed all speech:  
He ne'er lift up his hand but conquered. 16

EXETER. We mourn in black: why mourn we not in blood?

Henry is dead and never shall revive.  
Upon a wooden coffin we attend,  
And death's dishonourable victory 20  
We with our stately presence glorify,  
Like captives bound to a triumphant car.  
What! shall we curse the planets of mishap  
That plotted thus our glory's overthrow? 24  
Or shall we think the subtle-witted French  
Conjurers and sorcerers, that, afraid of him,  
By magic verses have contriv'd his end?

WINCHESTER. He was a king bless'd of the King of  
kings. 28

Unto the French the dreadful judgment-day  
So dreadful will not be as was his sight.

The battles of the Lord of hosts he fought :  
The church's prayers made him so prosperous. 32

GLOUCESTER. The church ! where is it ? Had not  
churchmen pray'd,

His thread of life had not so soon decay'd :  
None do you like but an effeminate prince,  
Whom like a school-boy you may over-awe. 36

WINCHESTER. Gloucester, whate'er we like thou art  
protector,

And lookest to command the prince and realm.  
Thy wife is proud ; she holdeth thee in awe,  
More than God or religious churchmen may. 40

GLOUCESTER. Name not religion, for thou lov'st the  
flesh,

And ne'er throughout the year to church thou go'st,  
Except it be to pray against thy foes.

BEDFORD. Cease, cease these jars and rest your minds  
in peace ! 44

Let's to the altar : heralds, wait on us :  
Instead of gold we'll offer up our arms,  
Since arms avail not, now that Henry's dead.  
Posterity, await for wretched years, 48

When at their mothers' moist eyes babes shall suck,  
Our isle be made a marish of salt tears,  
And none but women left to wail the dead.

Henry the Fifth ! thy ghost I invoke : 52  
Prosper this realm, keep it from civil broils !  
Combat with adverse planets in the heavens !

A far more glorious star thy soul will make,  
Than Julius Cæsar, or bright— 56

Enter a Messenger.

MESSENGER. My honourable lords, health to you all !  
Sad tidings bring I to you out of France,  
Of loss, of slaughter, and discomfiture :  
Guienne, Champagne, Rheims, Orleans, 60  
Paris, Guysors, Poitiers, are all quite lost.

BEDFORD. What sayst thou, man, before dead  
Henry's corse ?

Speak softly ; or the loss of those great towns 63  
Will make him burst his lead and rise from death.

GLOUCESTER. Is Paris lost ? is Roan yielded up ?  
If Henry were recall'd to life again

These news would cause him once more yie'd the ghost.

EXETER. How were they lost ? what treachery was  
us'd ? 68

MESSINGER. No treachery ; but want of men and  
money.

Among the soldiers this is muttered,  
That here you maintain several factions ;  
And, whilst a field should be dispatch'd and fought,  
You are disputing of your generals.  
One would have lingering wars with little cost ;  
Another would fly swift, but wanteth wings ;  
A third thinks, without expense at all, 76  
By guileful fair words peace may be obtain'd.  
Awake, awake, English nobility !

Let not sloth dim your honours new-begot :  
Cropp'd are the flower-de-luces in your arms ; 80  
Of England's coat one half is cut away.

EXETER. Were our tears wanting to this funeral  
These tidings would call forth their flowing tides.

BEDFORD. Me they concern ; Regent I am of France.  
Give me my steeled coat : I'll fight for France. 85  
Away with these disgraceful wailing robes !  
Wounds will I lend the French instead of eyes,  
To weep their intermissive miseries. 88

Enter another Messenger.

SECOND MESSENGER. Lords, view these letters, full of  
bad mischance.  
France is revolted from the English quite,  
Except some petty towns of no import : 91  
The Dauphin Charles is crowned king in Rheims ;  
The Bastard of Orleans with him is join'd ;  
Reignier, Duke of Anjou, doth take his part ;  
The Duke of Alençon flieth to his side.

EXETER. The Dauphin crowned king ! all fly to him !  
O ! whither shall we fly from this reproach ? 97

GLOUCESTER. We will not fly, but to our enemies'  
throats.  
Bedford, if thou be slack, I'll fight it out.

BEDFORD. Gloucester, why doubt'st thou of my forwardness ? 100

An army have I muster'd in my thoughts,  
Wherewith already France is overrun.

Enter a third Messenger.

THIRD MESSENGER. My gracious lords, to add to your laments,

Wherewith you now bedew King Henry's hearse,  
I must inform you of a dismal fight 105  
Betwixt the stout Lord Talbot and the French.

WINCHESTER. What! wherein Talbot overcame? is't so?

THIRD MESSENGER. O, no! wherein Lord Talbot was o'erthrown : 108

The circumstance I'll tell you more at large.  
The tenth of August last this dreadful lord,  
Retiring from the siege of Orleans,  
Having full scarce six thousand in his troop, 112  
By three-and-twenty thousand of the French  
Was round encompassed and set upon.  
No leisure had he to enrank his men ;  
He wanted pikes to set before his archers ; 116  
Instead whereof sharp stakes pluck'd out of hedges  
They pitched in the ground confusedly,  
To keep the horsemen off from breaking in.  
More than three hours the fight continued ; 120  
Where valiant Talbot above human thought  
Enacted wonders with his sword and lance.  
Hundreds he sent to hell, and none durst stand him ;  
Here, there, and every where, enrag'd he flew : 124  
The French exclaim'd the devil was in arms ;  
All the whole army stood agaz'd on him.  
His soldiers, spying his undaunted spirit,  
A Talbot ! A Talbot ! cried out amain, 128  
And rush'd into the bowels of the battle.  
Here had the conquest fully been seal'd up,  
If Sir John Fastolfe had not play'd the coward.  
He, being in the vaward,—plac'd behind, 132  
With purpose to relieve and follow them,—  
Cowardly fled, not having struck one stroke.  
Hence grew the general wrack and massacre ;  
Enclosed were they with their enemies. 136  
A base Walloon, to win the Dauphin's grace,

Thrust Talbot with a spear into the back ;  
Whom all France, with their chief assembled strength,  
Durst not presume to look once in the face. 140

BEDFORD. Is Talbot slain ? then I will slay myself,  
For living idly here in pomp and ease  
Whilst such a worthy leader, wanting aid,  
Unto his dastard foemen is betray'd. 144

THIRD MESSENGER. O no ! he lives ; but is took  
prisoner,  
And Lord Scales with him, and Lord Hungerford ;  
Most of the rest slaughter'd or took likewise.

BEDFORD. His ransom there is none but I shall pay :  
I'll hale the Dauphin headlong from his throne ; 149  
His crown shall be the ransom of my friend ;  
Four of their lords I'll change for one of ours.  
Farewell, my masters ; to my task will I ; 152  
Bonfires in France forthwith I am to make,  
To keep our great Saint George's feast withal :  
Ten thousand soldiers with me I will take, 155  
Whose bloody deeds shall make all Europe quake.

THIRD MESSENGER. So you had need ; for Orleans is  
besieg'd ;  
The English army is grown weak and faint ;  
The Earl of Salisbury craveth supply,  
And hardly keeps his men from mutiny, 160  
Since they, so few, watch such a multitude.

EXETER. Remember, lords, your oaths to Henry sworn,  
Either to quell the Dauphin utterly,  
Or bring him in obedience to your yoke. 164

BEDFORD. I do remember it ; and here take my leave,  
To go about my preparation. [Exit.

GLOUCESTER. I'll to the Tower with all the haste I can,  
To view the artillery and munition ; 168  
And then I will proclaim young Henry king. [Exit.

EXETER. To Eltham will I, where the young king is,  
Being ordain'd his special governor ;  
And for his safety there I'll best devise. [Exit.

WINCHESTER. Each hath his place and function to  
attend : 173

I am left out ; for me nothing remains.  
But long I will not be Jack-out-of-office.  
The king from Eltham I intend to steal, 176  
And sit at chiefest stern of public weal. [Exit.

## SCENE II.—France. Before Orleans.

Flourish. Enter Charles, with his Forces : ALENÇON, REIGNIER, and Others.

CHARLES. Mars his true moving, even as in the heavens  
So in the earth, to this day is not known.  
Late did he shine upon the English side ;  
Now we are victors ; upon us he smiles. 4  
What towns of any moment but we have ?  
At pleasure here we lie near Orleans ;  
Otherwhiles the famish'd English, like pale ghosts,  
Faintly besiege us one hour in a month. 8

ALENÇON. They-want their porridge and their fat bull-beeves :

Either they must be dieted like mules  
And have their provender tied to their mouths,  
Or piteous they will look, like drowned mice. 12

REIGNIER. Let's raise the siege : why live we idly here ?

Talbot is taken, whom we wont to fear :  
Remaineth none but mad-brain'd Salisbury,  
And he may well in fretting spend his gall ; 16  
Nor men nor money hath he to make war.

CHARLES. Sound, sound alarum ! we will rush on them.

Now for the honour of the forlorn French !  
Him I forgive my death that killeth me 20  
When he sees me go back one foot or fly. [Exeunt.

Alarums ; Excursions ; afterwards a retreat. Re-enter CHARLES, ALENÇON, REIGNIER, and Others.

CHARLES. Who ever saw the like ? what men have I !  
Dogs ! cowards ! dastards ! I would ne'er have fled  
But that they left me 'midst my enemies. 24

REIGNIER. Salisbury is a desperate homicide ;  
He fighteth as one weary of his life :  
The other lords, like lions wanting food,  
Do rush upon us as their hungry prey. 28

ALENÇON. Froissart, a countryman of ours, records,  
England all Olivers and Rowlands bred  
During the time Edward the Third did reign.  
More truly now may this be verified ; 32  
For none but Samsons and Goliases,

It sendeth forth to skirmish. One to ten!  
 Lean raw-bon'd rascals! who would e'er suppose  
 They had such courage and audacity? 36

CHARLES. Let's leave this town for they are hare-  
 brain'd slaves,

And hunger will enforce them to be more eager:  
 Of old I know them; rather with their teeth 39  
 The walls they'll tear down than forsake the siege.

REIGNIER. I think, by some odd gimmals or device,  
 Their arms are set like clocks, still to strike on;  
 Else ne'er could they hold out so as they do.  
 By my consent, we'll e'en let them alone. 44

ALENÇON. Be it so.

Enter the BASTARD OF ORLEANS.

THE BASTARD. Where's the prince Dauphin? I have  
 news for him.

CHARLES. Bastard of Orleans, thrice welcome to us.

THE BASTARD. Methinks your looks are sad, your cheer  
 appall'd: 48

Hath the late overthrow wrought this offence?  
 Be not dismay'd, for succour is at hand:  
 A holy maid hither with me I bring,  
 Which by a vision sent to her from heaven 52  
 Ordained is to raise this tedious siege,  
 And drive the English forth the bounds of France.  
 The spirit of deep prophecy she hath,  
 Exceeding the nine sibyls of old Rome; 56  
 What's past and what's to come she can descry.  
 Speak, shall I call her in? Believe my words,  
 For they are certain and unfallible.

CHARLES. Go, call her in. [Exit BASTARD.] But first, to  
 try her skill, 60

Reignier, stand thou as Dauphin in my place:  
 Question her proudly; let thy looks be stern:  
 By this means shall we sound what skill she hath. [Retires.

Re-enter the BASTARD OF ORLEANS, with JOAN LA PUCELLE and  
 Others.

REIGNIER. Fair maid, is't thou wilt do these won-  
 drous feats? 64

JOAN. Reignier, is't thou that thinkest to beguile me?  
 Where is the Dauphin? Come, come from behind;  
 I know thee well, though never seen before.



Be not amaz'd, there 's nothing hid from me : 66

In private will I talk with thee apart.

Stand back, you lords, and give us leave a while.

REIGNIER. She takes upon her bravely at first dash.

JOAN. Dauphin, I am by birth a shepherd's daughter,  
My wit untrain'd in any kind of art. 73

Heaven and our Lady gracious hath it pleas'd

To shine on my contemptible estate :

Lo ! whilst I waited on my tender lambs, 76

And to sun's parching heat display'd my cheeks,

God's mother deigned to appear to me,

And in a vision full of majesty

Will'd me to leave my base vocation 80

And free my country from calamity :

Her aid she promis'd and assur'd success ;

In complete glory she reveal'd herself ;

And, whereas I was black and swart before, 84

With those clear rays which she infus'd on me,

That beauty am I bless'd with which you see.

Ask me what question thou canst possible

And I will answer unpremeditated : 88

My courage try by combat, if thou dar'st,

And thou shalt find that I exceed my sex.

Resolve on this, thou shalt be fortunate

If thou receive me for thy warlike mate. 92

CHARLES. Thou hast astonish'd me with thy high terms.

Only this proof I'll of thy valour make,

In single combat thou shalt buckle with me,

And if thou vanquishest, thy words are true ; 96

Otherwise I renounce all confidence.

JOAN. I am prepar'd : here is my keen-edg'd sword,

Deck'd with five flower-de-luces on each side ;

The which at Touraine, in Saint Katharine's churchyard,

Out of a great deal of old iron I chose forth. 101

CHARLES. Then come, o' God's name ; I fear no  
woman.

JOAN. And, while I live, I'll ne'er fly from a man.

[They fight, and JOAN LA PUCELLE overcomes.

CHARLES. Stay, stay thy hands ! thou art an Amazon,

And fightest with the sword of Deborah. 105

JOAN. Christ's mother helps me, else I were too weak.

CHARLES. Whoe'er helps thee, 'tis thou that must  
help me :

Impatiently I burn with thy desire ; 106

My heart and hands thou hast at once subdu'd.

Excellent Pucelle, if thy name be so,

Let me thy servant and not sovereign be ;

'Tis the French Dauphin sueth to thee thus. 112

JOAN. I must not yield to any rites of love

For my profession's sacred from above :

When I have chased all thy foes from hence,

Then will I think upon a recompense. 116

CHARLES. Meantime look gracious on thy prostrate thrall.

REIGNIER. My lord, methinks, is very long in talk.

ALENÇON. Doubtless he shrives this woman to her smock ;

Else ne'er could he so long protract his speech. 120

REIGNIER. Shall we disturb him, since he keeps no mean ?

ALENÇON. He may mean more than we poor men do know :

These women are shrewd tempters with their tongues.

REIGNIER. My lord, where are you ? what devise you on ? 124

Shall we give over Orleans, or no ?

JOAN. Why, no, I say, distrustful recreants !

Fight till the last gasp ; I will be your guard.

CHARLES. What she says, I'll confirm : we'll fight it out. 128

JOAN. Assign'd am I to be the English scourge.

This night the siege assuredly I'll raise :

Expect Saint Martin's summer, halcyon days,

Since I have entered into these wars. 132

Glory is like a circle in the water,

Which never ceaseth to enlarge itself,

Till by broad spreading it disperse to nought.

With Henry's death the English circle ends ; 136

Dispersed are the glories it included.

Now am I like that proud insulting ship

Which Cæsar and his fortune bare at once. 139

CHARLES. Was Mahomet inspired with a dove ?

Thou with an eagle art inspired then.

Helen, the mother of great Constantine,

Nor yet Saint Philip's daughters were like thee.

Bright star of Venus, fall'n down on the earth, 144

How may I reverently worship thee enough ?

ALENÇON. Leave off delays and let us raise the siege.

REIGNIER. Woman, do what thou canst to save our honours ;

Drive them from Orleans and be immortaliz'd. 148

CHARLES. Presently we'll try. Come; let's away about it :

No prophet will I trust if she prove false. [Exeunt.

SCENE III.—London. Before the Tower.

Enter at the Gates the DUKE OF GLOUCESTER, with his Serving-men, in blue coats.

GLOUCESTER. I am come to survey the Tower this day ; Since Henry's death, I fear, there is conveyance.

Where be these warders that they wait not here ?

Open the gates ! 'Tis Gloucester that calls. [Servants knock.

FIRST WARDER. [Within.] Who's there that knocks so imperiously ? 5

FIRST SERVING-MAN. It is the noble Duke of Gloucester.

SECOND WARDER. [Within.] Whoe'er he be, you may not be let in.

FIRST SERVING-MAN. Villains, answer you so the Lord Protector ? 8

FIRST WARDER. [Within.] The Lord protect him ! so we answer him :

We do not otherwise than we are will'd.

GLOUCESTER. Who willed you ? or whose will stands but mine ?

There's none protector of the realm but I. 12

Break up the gates, I'll be your warrantize :

Shall I be flouted thus by dunghill grooms ?

[GLOUCESTER's Men rush at the Tower gates, and

WOODVILLE the Lieutenant speaks within.

WOODVILLE. What noise is this ? what traitors have we here ?

GLOUCESTER. Lieutenant, is it you whose voice I hear ? Open the gates ! here's Gloucester that would enter.

WOODVILLE. [Within.] Have patience, noble Duke ; I may not open ;

The Cardinal of Winchester forbids :

From him I have express commandment

That thou nor none of thine shall be let in. 20

GLOUCESTER. Faint-hearted Woodville, prizest him  
'fore me ?

Arrogant Winchester, that haughty prelate,  
Whom Henry, our late sovereign, ne'er could brook ?  
Thou art no friend to God or to the king : 25  
Open the gates, or I'll shut thee out shortly.

FIRST SERVING-MAN. Open the gates unto the Lord  
Protector ;  
Or we'll burst them open, if that you come not quickly.

Enter WINCHESTER, attended by Serving-men in tawny coats.

WINCHESTER. How now, ambitious Humphrey ! what  
means this ? 29

GLOUCESTER. Peel'd priest, dost thou command me  
to be shut out ?

WINCHESTER. I do, thou most usurping proditor,  
And not protector, of the king or realm. 32

GLOUCESTER. Stand back, thou manifest conspirator,  
Thou that contriv'dst to murder our dead lord ;  
Thou that giv'st whores indulgences to sin :  
I'll canvass thee in thy broad cardinal's hat, 36  
If thou proceed in this thy insolence.

WINCHESTER. Nay, stand thou back ; I will not  
budge a foot :

This be Damascus, be thou cursed Cain,  
To slay thy brother Abel, if thou wilt. 40

GLOUCESTER. I will not slay thee, but I'll drive thee  
back :

Thy scarlet robes as a child's bearing-cloth  
I'll use to carry thee out of this place.

WINCHESTER. Do what thou dar'st ; I'll beard thee  
to thy face. 44

GLOUCESTER. What ! am I dar'd and bearded to my  
face ?—

Draw, men, for all this privileged place ;  
Blue coats to tawny-coats. Priest, beware your beard ;

[GLOUCESTER and his men attack the CARDINAL.

I mean to tug it and to cuff you soundly. 48

Under my feet I stamp thy cardinal's hat,

In spite of pope or dignities of church,

Here by the cheeks I'll drag thee up and down.

WINCHESTER. Gloucester, thou'lt answer this before  
the pope. 52

**GLOUCESTER.** Winchester goose ! I cry a rope ! a rope !

Now beat them hence ; why do you let them stay ?

Thou I'll chase hence, thou wolf in sheep's array.

Out, tawny coats ! out, scarlet hypocrite ! 56

Here **GLOUCESTER's** Men beat out the Cardinal's Men, and enter in the hurly-burly the Mayor of London and his Officers.

**MAYOR.** Fie, lords ! that you, being supreme magistrates,

Thus contumeliously should break the peace !

**GLOUCESTER.** Peace, mayor ! thou know'st little of my wrongs :

Here's Beaufort, that regards nor God nor King,

Hath here distrain'd the Tower to his use. 61

**WINCHESTER.** Here's Gloucester, a foe to citizens ;

One that still motions war and never peace,

O'ercharging your free purses with large fines, 64

That seeks to overthrow religion

Because he is protector of the realm,

And would have armour here out of the Tower,

To crown himself king and suppress the prince. 68

**GLOUCESTER.** I will not answer thee with words, but blows.

[Here they skirmish again,

**MAYOR.** Nought rests for me, in this tumultuous strife

But to make open proclamation.

Come, officer : as loud as e'er thou canst ; 72

Cry.

**OFFICER.** All manner of men, assembled here in arms this day, against God's peace and the king's, we charge and command you, in his highness' name, to repair to your several dwelling-places ; and not to wear, handle, or use, any sword, weapon, or dagger, henceforward, upon pain of death.

**GLOUCESTER.** Cardinal, I'll be no breaker of the law ; But we shall meet and break our minds at large. 81

**WINCHESTER.** Gloucester, we will meet ; to thy cost, be sure :

Thy heart-blood I will have for this day's work.

**MAYOR.** I'll call for clubs if you will not away.

This cardinal's more haughty than the devil. 85

**GLOUCESTER.** Mayor, farewell : thou dost but what thou mayst.

WINCHESTER. Abominable Gloucester! guard thy head;  
For I intend to have it ere long. 86

[Exeunt, severally, GLOUCESTER and WINCHESTER,  
with their Serving-men.

MAYOR. See the coast clear'd, and then we will depart.  
Good God! these nobles should such stomachs bear;  
I myself fight not once in forty year. [Exeunt.

SCENE IV.—France Before Orleans.

Enter, on the walls, the Master-Gunner and his Boy.

MASTER-GUNNER. Sirrah, thou know'st how Orleans  
is besieg'd,

And how the English have the suburbs won.

SON. Father, I know; and oft have shot at them,  
Howe'er unfortunate I miss'd my aim. 4

MASTER-GUNNER. But now thou shalt not. Be thou  
rul'd by me:

Chief master-gunner am I of this town;  
Something I must do to procure me grace.

The prince's espials have informed me 8

How the English, in the suburbs close entrench'd,

Wont through a secret gate of iron bars

In yonder tower to overpeer the city,

And thence discover how with most advantage 12

They may vex us with shot or with assault.

To intercept this inconvenience,

A piece of ordnance 'gainst it I have plac'd; 15

And fully even these three days have I watch'd

If I could see them. Now, boy, do thou watch,

For I can stay no longer.

If thou spy'st any, run and bring me word;

And thou shalt find me at the Governor's. [Exit.

SON. Father, I warrant you; take you no care;

I'll never trouble you if I may spy them. [Exit.

Enter, on the turrets, the LORDS SALISBURY and TALBOT; SIR  
WILLIAM GLANSDALE, SIR THOMAS GARGRAVE, and Others.

SALISBURY. Talbot, my life, my joy! again return'd!

How wert thou handled being prisoner? 24

Or by what means got'st thou to be releas'd,

Discourse, I prithee, on this turret's top.

TALBOT. The Duke of Bedford had a prisoner

Called the brave Lord Ponton de Santrailles ; 28  
For him I was exchang'd and ransomed.

But with a baser man at arms by far  
Once in contempt they would have barter'd me :  
Which I disdain'd scorn'd, and craved death 32  
Rather than I would be so vile-esteem'd.

In fine, redeem'd I was as I desir'd.  
But, O ! the treacherous Fastolfe wounds my heart :  
Whom with my bare fists I would execute 36  
If I now had him brought into my power.

SALISBURY. Yet tell'st thou not how thou wert entertain'd.

TALBOT. With scoffs and scorns and contumelious taunts.

In open market-place produc'd they me, 40  
To be a public spectacle to all :

Here, said they, is the terror of the French,  
The scarecrow that affrights our children so.  
Then broke I from the officers that led me, 44

And with my nails digg'd stones out of the ground  
To hurl at the beholders of my shame.

My grisly countenance made others fly.  
None durst come near for fear of sudden death. 48

In iron walls they deem'd me not secure ;  
So great fear of my name 'mongst them was spread  
That they suppos'd I could rend bars of steel  
And spurn in pieces posts of adamant : 52

Wherefore a guard of chosen shot I had,  
That walk'd about me every minute-while ;  
And if I did but stir out of my bed  
Ready they were to shoot me to the heart. 56

Enter the Boy with a linstock.

SALISBURY. I grieve to hear what torments you endure'd ;

But we will be reveng'd sufficiently.

Now it is supper-time in Orleans :

Here, through this grate, I count each one, 60  
And view the Frenchmen how they fortify :

Let us look in ; the sight will much delight thee.

Sir Thomas Gargrave, and Sir William Glansdale,  
Let me have your express opinions 64

Where is best place to make our battery next.

GARGRAVE. I think at the North gate ; for there stand lords.

GLANSDALE. And I, here, at the bulwark of the bridge.

TALBOT. For aught I see, this city must be famish'd,  
Or with light skirmishes enfeebled. 69

[Here they shoot. SALISBURY and SIR THOMAS GARGRAVE fall.

SALISBURY. O Lord ! have mercy on us, wretched sinners.

GARGRAVE. O Lord ! have mercy on me, woeful man.

TALBOT. What chance is this that suddenly hath  
cross'd us ? 72

Speak, Salisbury ; at least, if thou canst speak :

How far'st thou, mirror of all martial men ?

One of thy eyes and thy cheek's side struck off !

Accursed tower ! accursed fatal hand 76

That hath contriv'd this woeful tragedy !

In thirteen battles Salisbury o'ercame ;

Henry the Fifth he first train'd to the wars ; 79

Whilst any trump did sound or drum struck up,

His sword did ne'er leave striking in the field.

Yet liv'st thou, Salisbury ? though thy speech doth fail,

One eye thou hast to look to heaven for grace :

The sun with one eye vieweth all the world. 84

Heaven, be thou gracious to none alive,

If Salisbury wants mercy at thy hands !

Bear hence his body ; I will help to bury it.

Sir Thomas Gargrave, hast thou any life ? 88

Speak unto Talbot ; nay, look up to him.

Salisbury, cheer thy spirit with this comfort ;

Thou shalt not die, whiles—

He beckons with his hand and smiles on me, 92

As who should say, ' When I am dead and gone,

Remember to avenge me on the French.'

Plantagenet, I will ; and like thee, Nero,

Play on the lute, beholding the towns burn : 96

Wretched shall France be only in my name.

[It thunders and lightens. An alarum.

What stir is this ? What tumult's in the heavens ?

Whence cometh this alarum and the noise ?

Enter a Messenger.

MESSENGER. My lord, my lord ! the French have  
gather'd head : 100



**The Dauphin**, with one **Joan la Pucelle** join'd,  
A holy prophetess new risen up  
Is come with a great power to raise the siege.

[Here **SALISBURY** lifteth himself up and groans.

**TALBOT**. Hear, hear how dying **Salisbury** doth groan !  
It irks his heart he cannot be reveng'd. 105

**Frenchmen**, I'll be a **Salisbury** to you :  
**Pucelle** or puzzel, dolphin or dogfish,  
Your hearts I'll stamp out with my horse's heels  
And make a quagmire of your mingled brains. 109  
Convey me **Salisbury** into his tent,  
And then we'll try what these dastard **Frenchmen** dare.

[Exeunt, bearing out the bodies.

SCENE V.—The Same. Before one of the Gates.

*Alarum. Skirmishings. Enter TALBOT, pursuing the DAUPHIN ; drives him in, and exit : then enter JOAN LA PUCELLE, driving Englishmen before her, and exit after them. Then re-enter TALBOT.*

**TALBOT**. Where is my strength, my valour, and my  
force ?  
Our English troops retire, I cannot stay them ;  
A woman clad in armour chaseth them.

*Re-enter JOAN LA PUCELLE.*

Here, here she comes. I'll have a bout with thee :  
Devil, or devil's dam, I'll conjure thee : 5  
Blood will I draw on thee, thou art a witch,  
And straightway give thy soul to him thou serv'st.

**JOAN**. Come, come ; 'tis only I that must disgrace  
thee. [They fight.

**TALBOT**. Heavens, can you suffer hell so to prevail ?  
My breast I'll burst with straining of my courage,  
And from my shoulders crack my arms asunder,  
But I will chastise this high-minded strumpet. 12

[They fight again.

**JOAN**. Talbot, farewell ; thy hour is not yet come :  
I must go victual Orleans forthwith.

[A short alarum ; then **LA PUCELLE** enters the town with Soldiers.

O'ertake me if thou canst ; I scorn thy strength.  
Go, go, cheer up thy hunger-starved men ; 16  
Help **Salisbury** to make his testament :  
This day is ours, as many more shall be. [Exit.

TALBOT. My thoughts are whirled like a potter's wheel ;

I know not where I am, nor what I do : 20

A witch, by fear, not force, like Hannibal,

Drives back our troops and conquers as she lists : 21

So bees with smoke, and doves with noisome stench,

Are from their hives and houses driven away. 24

They call'd us for our fierceness English dogs ;

Now, like to whelps, we crying run away. [A short alarm.

Hark, countrymen ! either renew the fight,

Or tear the lions out of England's coat ; 28

Renounce your soil, give sheep in lions' stead :

Sheep run not half so treacherous from the wolf,

Or horse or oxen from the leopard,

As you fly from your oft-subdued slaves. 32

[Alarm. Another skirmish.

It will not be : retire into your trenches :

You all consented unto Salisbury's death,

For none would strike a stroke in his revenge.

Pucelle is entered into Orleans 36

In spite of us or aught that we could do.

O ! would I were to die with Salisbury.

The shame hereof will make me hide my head.

[Alarm. Retreat. Exeunt TALBOT and his Forces, &c.

# SCENE VI.—The Same.

Flourish. Enter, on the walls, JOAN LA PUCELLE, CHARLES, REIGNIER, ALENÇON, and Soldiers.

JOAN. Advance our waving colours on the walls ;

Rescu'd is Orleans from the English :

Thus Joan la Pucelle hath perform'd her word.

CHARLES. Divinest creature, Astræa's daughter,

How shall I honour thee for this success ? 5

Thy promises are like Adonis' gardens,

That one day bloom'd and fruitful were the next.

France, triumph in thy glorious prophetess ! 8

Recover'd is the town of Orleans :

More blessed hap did ne'er befall our state.

REIGNIER. Why ring not out the bells throughout the town ?

Dauphin, command the citizens make bonfires 12

And feast and banquet in the open streets,

**FIRST PART OF** [ACT I, SC. VI]

To celebrate the joy that God hath given us. 14

ALENÇON. All France will be replete with mirth and joy,

When they shall hear how we have play'd the men.

CHARLES. 'Tis Joan, not we, by whom the day is won ;  
For which I will divide my crown with her ;  
And all the priests and friars in my realm  
Shall in procession sing her endless praise. 20

A statelier pyramis to her I'll rear  
Than Rhodope's or Memphis ever was :  
In memory of her when she is dead,

Her ashes, in an urn more precious 24  
Than the rich-jewell'd coffer of Darius,  
Transported shall be at high festivals  
Before the kings and queens of France.

No longer on Saint Denis will we cry, 28  
But Joan la Pucelle shall be France's saint.

Come in, and let us banquet royally,  
After this golden day of victory. [Flourish. Exeunt.

ACT II.

SCENE I.—Before Orleans.

Enter to the Gates, a French Sergeant, and two Sentinels.

SERGEANT. Sirs, take your places and be vigilant.  
If any noise or soldier you perceive  
Near to the walls, by some apparent sign  
Let us have knowledge at the court of guard. 4

FIRST SENTINEL. Sergeant, you shall. [Exit Sergeant.  
Thus are poor servitors—

When others sleep upon their quiet beds—  
Constrain'd to watch in darkness, rain, and cold.

Enter TALBOT, BEDFORD, BURGUNDY, and Forces with scaling-ladders ; their drums beating a dead march.

TALBOT. Lord Regent, and redoubted Burgundy,  
By whose approach the regions of Artois, 9  
Walloon, and Picardy, are friends to us,  
This happy night the Frenchmen are secure,  
Having all day carous'd and banqueted : 12  
Embrace we then this opportunity,

As fitting best to ~~quittance their deceit~~  
Contriv'd by art and baleful sorcery.

BEDFORD. Coward of France ! how much he wrongs  
his fame, 16

Despairing of his own arm's fortitude,  
To join with witches and the help of hell !

BURGUNDY. Traitors have never other company.

But what's that Pucelle whom they term so pure ?

TALBOT. A maid, they say.

BEDFORD. A maid, and be so martial !

BURGUNDY. Pray God she prove not masculine ere  
long ;

If underneath the standard of the French

She carry armour, as she hath begun. 24

TALBOT. Well, let them practise and converse with  
spirits ;

God is our fortress, in whose conquering name

Let us resolve to scale their flinty bulwarks. 27

BEDFORD. Ascend, brave Talbot ; we will follow thee.

TALBOT. Not all together : better far, I guess,

That we do make our entrance several ways,

That if it chance the one of us do fail,

The other yet may rise against their force. 32

BEDFORD. Agreed : I'll to yond corner.

BURGUNDY. And I to this.

TALBOT. And here will Talbot mount, or make his  
grave.

Now, Salisbury, for thee, and for the right

Of English Henry, shall this night appear 36

How much in duty I am bound to both.

[The English scale the walls, crying, 'Saint George !'

'A Talbot !' and all enter the town.

FIRST SENTINEL. Arm, arm ! the enemy doth make  
assault !

The French leap over the Walls in their shirts. Enter, several ways,  
the BASTARD OF ORLEANS, ALENÇON, and REIGNIER, half ready,  
and half unready.

ALENÇON. How now, my lords ! what ! all unready  
so ?

THE BASTARD. Unready ! ay, and glad we 'scap'd so  
well. 40

REIGNIER. 'Twas time, I trow, to wake and leave our  
beds,

Hearing alarums at our chamber-doors.

ALENÇON. Of all exploits since first I follow'd arms,  
Ne'er heard I of a warlike enterprise 44  
More venturous or desperate than this.

THE BASTARD. I think this Talbot be a fiend of hell.

REIGNIER. If not of hell, the heavens, sure, favour  
him.

ALENÇON. Here cometh Charles : I marvel how he  
sped. 48

THE BASTARD. Tut ! holy Joan was his defensive  
guard.

Enter CHARLES and JOAN LA PUCELLE.

CHARLES. Is this thy cunning, thou deceitful dame ?  
Didst thou at first, to flatter us withal,  
Make us partakers of a little gain, 52  
That now our loss might be ten times so much ?

JOAN. Wherefore is Charles impatient with his friend ?  
At all times will you have my power alike ?  
Sleeping or waking must I still prevail, 56  
Or will you blame and lay the fault on me ?  
Improvident soldiers ! had your watch been good,  
This sudden mischief never could have fall'n.

CHARLES. Duke of Alençon, this was your default,  
That, being captain of the watch to-night, 61  
Did look no better to that weighty charge.

ALENÇON. Had all your quarters been so safely kept  
As that whereof I had the government, 64  
We had not been thus shamefully surpris'd.

THE BASTARD. Mine was secure.

REIGNIER. And so was mine, my lord.

CHARLES. And for myself, most part of all this night,  
Within her quarter and mine own precinct 68  
I was employ'd in passing to and fro,  
About relieving of the sentinels :

Then how or which way should they first break in ?

JOAN. Question, my lords, no further of the case,  
How or which way : 'tis sure they found some place  
But weakly guarded, where the breach was made.  
And now there rests no other shift but this ; 75  
To gather our soldiers, scatter'd and dispers'd,  
And lay new platforms to endamage them.

Alarum. Enter an English Soldier, crying, 'A Talbot! a Talbot!'  
They fly, leaving their clothes behind.

SOLDIER. I'll be so bold to take what they have left.  
The cry of Talbot serves me for a sword;  
For I have loaden me with many spoils, 80  
Using no other weapon but his name. [Exit.

## SCENE II.—Orleans. Within the Town.

Enter TALBOT, BEDFORD, BURGUNDY, a Captain, and Others.

BEDFORD. The day begins to break, and night is fled,  
Whose pitchy mantle over-veil'd the earth.  
Here sound retreat, and cease our hot pursuit.

[Retreat sounded.

TALBOT. Bring forth the body of old Salisbury,  
And here advance it in the market-place, 5  
The middle centre of this cursed town.  
Now have I paid my vow unto his soul;  
For every drop of blood was drawn from him 8  
There hath at least five Frenchmen died to-night.  
And that hereafter ages may behold  
What ruin happen'd in revenge of him,  
Within their chiefest temple I'll erect 12  
A tomb wherein his corse shall be interr'd:  
Upon the which, that every one may read,  
Shall be engrav'd the sack of Orleans,  
The treacherous manner of his mournful death, 16  
And what a terror he had been to France.  
But, lords, in all our bloody massacre,  
I muse we met not with the Dauphin's grace,  
His new-come champion, virtuous Joan of Arc, 20  
Nor any of his false confederates.

BEDFORD. 'Tis thought, Lord Talbot, when the fight  
began,  
Rous'd on the sudden from their drowsy beds,  
They did amongst the troops of armed men 24  
Leap o'er the walls for refuge in the field.

BURGUNDY. Myself—as far as I could well discern  
For smoke and dusky vapours of the night—  
Am sure I scar'd the Dauphin and his trull, 28  
When arm in arm they both came swiftly running,  
Like to a pair of loving turtle-doves  
That could not live asunder day or night.

After that things are set in order here, 22  
We'll follow them with all the power we have.

Enter a Messenger.

MESSENGER. All hail, my lords! Which of this princely train

Call ye the warlike Talbot, for his acts 35  
So much applauded through the realm of France?

TALBOT. Here is the Talbot: who would speak with him?

MESSENGER. The virtuous lady, Countess of Auvergne,  
With modesty admiring thy renown,  
By me entreats, great lord, thou wouldst vouchsafe  
To visit her poor castle where she lies, 41  
That she may boast she hath beheld the man  
Whose glory fills the world with loud report.

BURGUNDY. Is it even so? Nay, then, I see our wars  
Will turn into a peaceful comic sport, 45  
When ladies crave to be encounter'd with.  
You may not, my lord, despise her gentle suit.

TALBOT. Ne'er trust me then; for when a world of men 48

Could not prevail with all their oratory,  
Yet hath a woman's kindness over-ru'd:  
And therefore tell her I return great thanks,  
And in submission will attend on her. 52  
Will not your honours bear me company?

BEDFORD. No, truly; it is more than manners will;  
And I have heard it said, unbidden guests  
Are often welcomest when they are gone. 56

TALBOT. Well then, alone,—since there's no remedy,—  
I mean to prove this lady's courtesies.

Come hither, captain. [Whispers.] You perceive my mind.

CAPTAIN. I do, my lord, and mean accordingly. [Exeunt.]

SCENE III.—Auvergne. Court of the Castle.

Enter the COUNTESS and her Porter.

COUNTESS. Porter, remember what I gave in charge;  
And when you have done so, bring the keys to me.

PORTER. Madam, I will. [Exit.]

COUNTESS. The plot is laid: if all things fall out right,  
I shall as famous be by this exploit 6

SCENE III] KING HENRY THE SIXTH

As Scythian Tomyris by Cyrus' death.  
Great is the rumour of this dreadful knight,  
And his achievements of no less account : 8  
Fain would mine eyes be witness with mine ears,  
To give their censure of these rare reports.

Enter Messenger and TALBOT.

MESSENGER. Madam,  
According as your ladyship desir'd, 12  
By message crav'd, so is Lord Talbot come.

COUNTESS. And he is welcome. What ! is this the  
man ?

MESSENGER. Madam, it is.

COUNTESS. Is this the scourge of France ?  
Is this the Talbot, so much fear'd abroad, 16  
That with his name the mothers still their babes ?  
I see report is fabulous and false :

I thought I should have seen some Hercules,  
A second Hector, for his grim aspect, 20  
And large proportion of his strong-knit limbs.  
Alas ! this is a child, a silly dwarf :  
It cannot be this weak and writhled shrimp  
Should strike such terror to his enemies. 24

TALBOT. Madam, I have been bold to trouble you ;  
But since your ladyship is not at leisure,  
I'll sort some other time to visit you.

COUNTESS. What means he now ? Go ask him whither  
he goes. 28

MESSENGER. Stay, my Lord Talbot, for my lady craves  
To know the cause of your abrupt departure.

TALBOT. Marry, for that she's in a wrong belief,  
I go to certify her Talbot's here. 32

Re-enter Porter, with keys.

COUNTESS. If thou be he, then art thou prisoner.

TALBOT. Prisoner ! to whom ?

COUNTESS. To me, blood-thirsty lord ;  
And for that cause I train'd thee to my house.  
Long time thy shadow hath been thrall to me, 36  
For in my gallery thy picture hangs :  
But now the substance shall endure the like,  
And I will chain these legs and arms of thine,  
That hast by tyranny, these many years 40



Wasted our country, slain our citizens,  
And sent our sons and husbands captivate.

TALBOT. Ha, ha, ha !

COUNTESS. Laughest thou, wretch ? thy mirth shall  
turn to moan. 44

TALBOT. I laugh to see your ladyship so fond  
To think that you have aught but Talbot's shadow,  
Whereon to practise your severity.

COUNTESS. Why, art not thou the man ?

TALBOT. I am, indeed.

COUNTESS. Then have I substance too.

TALBOT. No, no, I am but shadow of myself :

You are deceiv'd, my substance is not here ;  
For what you see is but the smallest part 52  
And least proportion of humanity.

I tell you, madam, were the whole frame here,  
It is of such a spacious lofty pitch,  
Your roof were not sufficient to contain it. 56

COUNTESS. This is a riddling merchant for the nonce ;  
He will be here, and yet he is not here :  
How can these contrarieties agree ?

TALBOT. That will I show you presently. 60

He winds a horn. Drums strike up ; a peal of ordnance. The Gates  
being forced, enter Soldiers.

How say you, madam ? are you now persuaded  
That Talbot is but shadow of himself ?  
These are his substance, sinews, arms, and strength,  
With which he yoketh your rebellious necks, 64  
Razeth your cities, and subverts your towns,  
And in a moment makes them desolate.

COUNTESS. Victorious Talbot ! pardon my abuse :  
I find thou art no less than fame hath bruited, 68  
And more than may be gather'd by thy shape.  
Let my presumption not provoke thy wrath ;  
For I am sorry that with reverence  
I did not entertain thee as thou art. 72

TALBOT. Be not dismay'd, fair lady ; nor misconster  
The mind of Talbot as you did mistake  
The outward composition of his body.  
What you have done hath not offended me ; 76  
Nor other satisfaction do I crave,  
But only, with your patience, that we may

Taste of your wine and see what cates you have ;  
For soldiers' stomachs always serve them well. 80  
COUNTESS. With all my heart, and think me honour'd  
To feast so great a warrior in my house. [Exeunt.

## SCENE IV.—London. The Temple Garden.

Enter the EARLS of SOMERSET, SUFFOLK, and WARWICK ; RICHARD  
PLANTAGENET, VERNON, and a Lawyer.

PLANTAGENET. Great lords, and gentlemen, what  
means this silence ?

Dare no man answer in a case of truth ?

SUFFOLK. Within the Temple hall we were too loud ;  
The garden here is more convenient. 4

PLANTAGENET. Then say at once if I maintained the  
truth,

Or else was wrangling Somerset in the error ?

SUFFOLK. Faith, I have been a truant in the law,  
And never yet could frame my will to it ; 8  
And therefore frame the law unto my will.

SOMERSET. Judge you, my Lord of Warwick, then,  
between us.

WARWICK. Between two hawks, which flies the higher  
pitch ; 11

Between two dogs, which hath the deeper mouth ;  
Between two blades, which bears the better temper ;  
Between two horses, which doth bear him best ;  
Between two girls, which hath the merriest eye ;  
I have, perhaps, some shallow spirit of judgment ;  
But in these nice sharp quillets of the law, 17  
Good faith, I am no wiser than a daw.

PLANTAGENET. Tut, tut ! here is a mannerly forbear-  
ance :

The truth appears so naked on my side, 20  
That any purblind eye may find it out.

SOMERSET. And on my side it is so well apparell'd,  
So clear, so shining, and so evident, 23  
That it will glimmer through a blind man's eye.

PLANTAGENET. Since you are tongue-tied, and so loath  
to speak,

In dumb significants proclaim your thoughts :  
Let him that is a true-born gentleman,  
And stands upon the honour of his birth, 28

If he suppose that I have pleaded truth,  
From off this brier pluck a white rose with me.

SOMERSET. Let him that is no coward nor no flatterer,  
But dare maintain the party of the truth,  
Pluck a red rose from off this thorn with me.

WICK. I love no colours, and without all colour  
Of base insinuating flattery  
I pluck this white rose with Plantagenet. 36

SUFFOLK. I pluck this red rose with young Somerset;  
And say withal I think he held the right.

VERNON. Stay, lords and gentlemen, and pluck no  
more,

Till you conclude that he, upon whose side 40  
The fewest roses are cropp'd from the tree,  
Shall yield the other in the right opinion.

SOMERSET. Good Master Vernon, it is well objected:  
If I have fewest I subscribe in silence. 44

PLANTAGENET. And I.

VERNON. Then for the truth and plainness of the case,  
I pluck this pale and maiden blossom here,  
Giving my verdict on the white rose side. 48

SOMERSET. Prick not your finger as you pluck it off,  
Lest bleeding you do paint the white rose red,  
And fall on my side so, against your will.

VERNON. If I, my lord, for my opinion bleed,  
Opinion shall be surgeon to my hurt, 53  
And keep me on the side where still I am.

SOMERSET. Well, well, come on: who else?

LAWYER. [To Somerset.] Unless my study and my books  
be false, 56

The argument you held was wrong in you,  
In sign whereof I pluck a white rose too.

PLANTAGENET. Now, Somerset, where is your argu-  
ment?

SOMERSET. Here, in my scabbard; meditating that  
Shall dye your white rose in a bloody red. 61

PLANTAGENET. Meantime, your cheeks do counterfeit  
our roses;

For pale they look with fear, as witnessing  
The truth on our side.

SOMERSET. No, Plantagenet, 64  
'Tis not for fear but anger that thy cheeks  
Blush for pure shame to counterfeit our roses,

And yet thy tongue will not confess thy error.

PLANTAGENET. Hath not thy rose a canker, Somerset?

SOMERSET. Hath not thy rose a thorn, Plantagenet?

PLANTAGENET. Ay, sharp and piercing, to maintain his truth;

Whiles thy consuming canker eats his falsehood.

SOMERSET. Well, I'll find friends to wear my bleeding roses, 72

That shall maintain what I have said is true,

Where false Plantagenet dare not be seen.

PLANTAGENET. Now, by this maiden blossom in my hand,

I scorn thee and thy faction, peevish boy. 76

SUFFOLK. Turn not thy scorns this way, Plantagenet.

PLANTAGENET. Proud Pole, I will, and scorn both him and thee.

SUFFOLK. I'll turn my part thereof into thy throat.

SOMERSET. Away, away! good William de la Pole:

We grace the yeoman by conversing with him.

WARWICK. Now, by God's will, thou wrong'st him, Somerset: 82

His grandfather was Lionel, Duke of Clarence,  
Third son to the third Edward, King of England.

Spring crestless yeomen from so deep a root?

PLANTAGENET. He bears him on the place's privilege,  
Or durst not, for his craven heart, say thus.

SOMERSET. By him that made me, I'll maintain my words 88

On any plot of ground in Christendom.

Was not thy father, Richard Earl of Cambridge,

For treason executed in our late king's days?

And, by his treason stand'st not thou attainted,  
'Corrupted, and exempt from ancient gentry? 93

His trespass yet lives guilty in thy blood;

And, till thou be restor'd, thou art a yeoman.

PLANTAGENET. My father was attached, not attainted;  
Condemn'd to die for treason, but no traitor; 97

And that I'll prove on better men than Somerset,

Were growing time once ripen'd to my will.

For your partaker Pole and you yourself, 100

I'll note you in my book of memory,

To scourge you for this apprehension:

Look to it well and say you are well warn'd.

SOMERSET. Ah, thou shalt find us ready for thee still,  
And know us by these colours for thy foes ; 105  
For these my friends in spite of thee shall wear.

PLANTAGENET. And, by my soul, this pale and angry  
rose,  
As cognizance of my blood-drinking hate, 108  
Will I for ever and my faction wear,  
Until it wither with me to my grave  
Or flourish to the height of my degree.

SUFFOLK. Go forward, and be chok'd with thy am-  
bition : 112  
And so farewell until I meet thee next. [Exit

SOMERSET. Have with thee, Pole. Farewell, am-  
bitious Richard. [Exit.

PLANTAGENET. How I am brav'd and must perforce  
endure it !

WARWICK. This blot that they object against your house  
Shall be wip'd out in the next parliament, 117  
Call'd for the truce of Winchester and Gloucester ;  
And if thou be not then created York,  
I will not live to be accounted Warwick. 120  
Meantime in signal of my love to thee,  
Against proud Somerset and William Pole,  
Will I upon thy party wear this rose.  
And here I prophesy : this brawl to-day, 124  
Grown to this faction in the Temple garden,  
Shall send between the red rose and the white  
A thousand souls to death and deadly night.

PLANTAGENET. Good Master Vernon, I am bound to  
you, 128  
That you on my behalf would pluck a flower.

VERNON. In your behalf still would I wear the same.

LAWYER. And so will I.

PLANTAGENET. Thanks, gentle sir. 132  
Come, let us four to dinner : I dare say  
This quarrel will drink blood another day. [Exeunt.

SCENE V.—London. A Room in the Tower.

Enter MORTIMER, brought in a chair by two Gaolers.

MORTIMER. Kind keepers of my weak decaying age,  
Let dying Mortimer here rest himself.  
Even like a man new haled from the rack,

So fare my limbs with long imprisonment ; 4  
And these grey locks, the pursuivants of death,  
Nestor-like aged, in an age of care,  
Argue the end of Edmund Mortimer. 7  
These eyes, like lamps whose wasting oil is spent,  
Wax dim, as drawing to their exigent ;  
Weak shoulders, overborne with burdening grief,  
And pithless arms, like to a wither'd vine 11  
That droops his sapless branches to the ground :  
Yet are these feet, whose strengthless stay is numb,  
Unable to support this lump of clay,  
Swift-winged with desire to get a grave,  
As witting I no other comfort have. 16  
But tell me, keeper, will my nephew come ?

FIRST KEEPER. Richard Plantagenet, my lord, will come :

We sent unto the Temple, unto his chamber.  
And answer was return'd that he will come. 20

MORTIMER. Enough : my soul shall then be satisfied.  
Poor gentleman ! his wrong doth equal mine.  
Since Henry Monmouth first began to reign,  
Before whose glory I was great in arms, 24  
This loathsome sequestration have I had ;  
And even since then hath Richard been obscur'd,  
Depriv'd of honour and inheritance.  
But now the arbitrator of despairs, 28  
Just death, kind umpire of men's miseries,  
With sweet enlargement doth dismiss me hence :  
I would his troubles likewise were expir'd,  
That so he might recover what was lost. 32

Enter RICHARD PLANTAGENET.

FIRST KEEPER. My lord, your loving nephew now is come.

MORTIMER. Richard Plantagenet, my friend, is he come ?

PLANTAGENET. Ay, noble uncle, thus ignobly us'd,  
Your nephew, late despised Richard, comes. 36

MORTIMER. Direct mine arms I may embrace his neck,  
And in his bosom spend my latter gasp :  
O ! tell me when my lips do touch his cheeks,  
That I may kindly give one fainting kiss. 40  
And now declare, sweet stem from York's great stock,

Why didst thou say of late thou wert despis'd ?

PLANTAGENET. First, lean thine aged back against mine arm ;

And in that ease, I'll tell thee my disease. 44

This day, in argument upon a case,

Some words there grew 'twixt Somerset and me ;

Among which terms he us'd a lavish tongue

And did upbraid me with my father's death : 48

Which obloquy set bars before my tongue,

Else with the like I had requited him.

Therefore, good uncle, for my father's sake,

In honour of a true Plantagenet, 52

And for alliance sake, declare the cause

My father, Earl of Cambridge, lost his head.

MORTIMER. That cause, fair nephew, that imprison'd me,

And hath detain'd me all my flowering youth 56

Within a loathsome dungeon, there to pine,

Was curs'd instrument of his decease.

PLANTAGENET. Discover more at large what cause that was,

For I am ignorant and cannot guess. 60

MORTIMER. I will, if that my fading breath permit,

And death approach not ere my tale be done.

Henry the Fourth, grandfather to this king,

Depos'd his nephew Richard, Edward's son, 64

The first-begotten, and the lawful heir

Of Edward king, the third of that descent :

During whose reign the Percies of the North, 68

Finding his usurpation most unjust,

Endeavour'd my advancement to the throne.

The reason mov'd these warlike lords to this

Was, for that—young King Richard thus remov'd, 72

Leaving no heir begotten of his body—

I was the next by birth and parentage ;

For by my mother I derived am

From Lionel Duke of Clarence, the third son

To King Edward the Third ; whereas he 76

From John of Gaunt doth bring his pedigree,

Being but fourth of that heroic line.

But mark : as, in this haughty great attempt

They laboured to plant the rightful heir, 80

I lost my liberty, and they their lives.

Long after this, when Henry the Fifth  
Succeeding his father Bolingbroke, did reign,  
Thy father, Earl of Cambridge, then deriv'd 84  
From famous Edmund Langley, Duke of York,  
Marrying my sister that thy mother was,  
Again in pity of my hard distress  
Levied an army, weening to redeem 88  
And have install'd me in the diadem ;  
But, as the rest, so fell that noble earl,  
And was beheaded. Thus the Mortimers,  
In whom the title rested, were suppress'd. 92  
PLANTAGENET. Of which, my lord, your honour is the  
last.

MORTIMER. True ; and thou seest that I no issue have,  
And that my fainting words do warrant death :  
Thou art my heir ; the rest I wish thee gather : 96  
But yet be wary in thy studious care.

PLANTAGENET. Thy grave admonishments prevail  
with me.

But yet methinks my father's execution  
Was nothing less than bloody tyranny 100

MORTIMER. With silence, nephew, be thou politic :  
Strong-fixed is the house of Lancaster,  
And like a mountain, not to be remov'd.  
But now thy uncle is removing hence, 104  
As princes do their courts, when they are cloy'd  
With long continuance in a settled place.

PLANTAGENET. O uncle ! would some part of my  
young years  
Might but redeem the passage of your age. 108

MORTIMER. 'Thou dost then wrong me,—as the  
slaughterer doth,

Which giveth many wounds when one will kill.—  
Mourn not, except thou sorrow for my good ;  
Only give order for my funeral : 112

And so farewell ; and fair be all thy hopes,  
And prosperous be thy life in peace and war ! [Dies.

PLANTAGENET. And peace, no war, befall thy parting  
soul !

In prison hast thou spent a pilgrimage, 116  
And like a hermit overpass'd thy days.  
Well, I will lock his counsel in my breast ;  
And what I do imagine let that rest.



Keepers, convey him hence ; and I myself 120  
Will see his burial better than his life.

[Exeunt Keepers, bearing out the body of MORTIMER.]

Here dies the dusky torch of Mortimer,  
Chok'd with ambition of the meaner sort :  
And, for those wrongs, those bitter injuries, 124  
Which Somerset hath offer'd to my house,  
I doubt not but with honour to redress ;  
And therefore haste I to the parliament,  
Either to be restored to my blood, 128  
Or make my ill the advantage of my good. [Exit.]

### ACT III.

SCENE I.—London. The Parliament House.

Flourish. Enter KING HENRY, EXETER, GLOUCESTER, WARWICK,  
SOMERSET, and SUFFOLK ; the BISHOP OF WINCHESTER, RICHARD  
PLANTAGENET, and Others. GLOUCESTER offers to put up a bill ;  
WINCHESTER snatches it, and tears it.

WINCHESTER. Com'st thou with deep premeditated  
lines,

With written pamphlets studiously devis'd,  
Humphrey of Gloucester ? If thou canst accuse,  
Or aught intend'st to lay unto my charge, 4  
Do it without invention, suddenly ;  
As I, with sudden and extemporal speech  
Purpose to answer what thou canst object.

GLOUCESTER. Presumptuous priest ! this place com-  
mands my patience 8

Or thou shouldst find thou hast dishonour'd me.  
Think not, although in writing I prefer'd  
The manner of thy vile outrageous crimes,  
That therefore I have forg'd, or am not able 12  
Verbatim to rehearse the method of my pen :  
No, prelate ; such is thy audacious wickedness,  
Thy lewd, pestiferous, and dissentious pranks,  
As very infants prattle of thy pride. 16  
Thou art a most pernicious usurer,  
Froward by nature, enemy to peace ;  
Lascivious, wanton, more than well beseems  
A man of thy profession and degree ; 20

And for thy treachery, what's more manifest ?  
 In that thou laid'st a trap to take my life  
 As well at London Bridge as at the Tower.  
 Beside, I fear me, if thy thoughts were sifted, 24  
 The king, thy sovereign, is not quite exempt  
 From envious malice of thy swelling heart.

WINCHESTER. Gloucester, I do defy thee. Lords,  
 vouchsafe

To give me hearing what I shall reply. 28  
 If I were covetous, ambitious, or perverse,  
 As he will have me, how am I so poor ?  
 Or how haps it I seek not to advance  
 Or raise myself, but keep my wonted calling ? 32  
 And for dissension, who preferreth peace  
 More than I do, except I be provok'd ?  
 No, my good lords, it is not that offends ;  
 It is not that that hath incens'd the duke : 36  
 It is, because no one should sway but he ;  
 No one but he should be about the king ;  
 And that engenders thunder in his breast,  
 And makes him roar these accusations forth. 40  
 But he shall know I am as good—

GLOUCESTER. As good !

Thou bastard of my grandfather !

WINCHESTER. Ay, lordly sir ; for what are you, I pray,  
 But one imperious in another's throne ? 44

GLOUCESTER. Am I not protector, saucy priest ?

WINCHESTER. And am not I a prelate of the church ?

GLOUCESTER. Yes, as an outlaw in a castle keeps,  
 And useth it to patronage his theft. 48

WINCHESTER. Unreverent Gloucester !

GLOUCESTER. Thou art reverent,  
 Touching thy spiritual function, not thy life.

WINCHESTER. Rome shall remedy this.

WARWICK. Roam thither then.

SOMERSET. My lord, it were your duty to forbear.

WARWICK. Ay, see the bishop be not overborne.

SOMERSET. Methinks my lord should be religious,  
 And know the office that belongs to such. 55

WARWICK. Methinks his lordship should be humbler ;  
 It fitteth not a prelate so to plead.

SOMERSET. Yes, when his holy state is touch'd so  
 near.

WARWICK. State holy, or unhallow'd, what of that ?  
Is not his Grace protector to the king ? 60

PLANTAGENET. [Aside.] Plantagenet, I see, must hold  
his tongue,

Lest it be said, 'Speak, sirrah, when you should ;  
Must your bold verdict enter talk with lords ?'

Else would I have a fling at Winchester. 64

KING HENRY. Uncles of Gloucester and of Winchester,  
The special watchmen of our English weal,  
I would prevail, if prayers might prevail,  
To join your hearts in love and amity. 68

O ! what a scandal is it to our crown,  
That two such noble peers as ye should jar.  
Believe me, lords, my tender years can tell  
Civil dissension is a viperous worm, 72  
That gnaws the bowels of the commonwealth.

[A noise within ; 'Down with the tawny coats !'  
What tumult 's this ?

WARWICK. An uproar, I dare warrant,  
Begun through malice of the bishop's men.

[A noise again within ; 'Stones ! Stones !'

Enter the Mayor of London, attended.

MAYOR. O, my good lords, and virtuous Henry,  
Pity the city of London, pity us ! 77

The bishop and the Duke of Gloucester's men,  
Forbidden late to carry any weapon,  
Have fill'd their pockets full of pebble stones, 80  
And banding themselves in contrary parts

Do pelt so fast at one another's pate,  
That many have their giddy brains knock'd out :  
Our windows are broke down in every street, 84  
And we for fear compell'd to shut our shops.

Enter, skirmishing, the Serving-men of GLOUCESTER and WINCHESTER,  
with bloody pates.

KING HENRY. We charge you, on allegiance to ourself,  
To hold your slaught'ring hands, and keep the peace.—  
Pray, uncle Gloucester, mitigate this strife. 88

FIRST SERVING-MAN. Nay, if we be forbidden stones,  
we'll fall to it with our teeth.

SECOND SERVING-MAN. Do what ye dare, we are as  
resolute. [Skirmish again.]

GLOUCESTER. You of my household, leave this peevish  
broil, 92  
And set this unaccustom'd fight aside.

THIRD SERVING-MAN. My lord, we know your Grace  
to be a man  
Just and upright, and, for your royal birth,  
Inferior to none but to his majesty ; 96  
And ere that we will suffer such a prince,  
So kind a father of the commonweal,  
To be disgraced by an inkhorn mate,  
We and our wives and children all will fight, 100  
And have our bodies slaughter'd by thy foes.

FIRST SERVING-MAN. Ay, and the very parings of our  
nails  
Shall pitch a field when we are dead. [Skirmish again.

GLOUCESTER. Stay, stay, I say !  
And, if you love me, as you say you do, 104  
Let me persuade you to forbear a while.

KING HENRY. O ! how this discord doth afflict my soul !  
Can you, my Lord of Winchester, behold  
My sighs and tears and will not once relent ? 108  
Who should be pitiful if you be not ?  
Or who should study to prefer a peace  
If holy churchmen take delight in broils ?

WARWICK. Yield, my Lord Protector ; yield, Win-  
chester ; 112  
Except you mean with obstinate repulse  
To slay your sovereign and destroy the realm.  
You see what mischief and what murder too  
Hath been enacted through your enmity : 116  
Then be at peace, except ye thirst for blood.

WINCHESTER. He shall submit, or I will never yield.

GLOUCESTER. Compassion on the king commands me  
stoop ;  
Or I would see his heart out ere the priest 120  
Should ever get that privilege of me.

WARWICK. Behold, my Lord of Winchester, the duke  
Hath banish'd moody discontented fury,  
As by his smoothed brows it doth appear : 124  
Why look you still so stern and tragical ?

GLOUCESTER. Here, Winchester, I offer thee my hand.

KING HENRY. Fie, uncle Beaufort ! I have heard you  
preach,

That malice was a great and grievous sin ; 128  
 And will not you maintain the thing you teach,  
 But prove a chief offender in the same ?

WARWICK. Sweet king ! the bishop hath a kindly gird.  
 For shame, my Lord of Winchester, relent ! 132  
 What ! shall a child instruct you what to do ?

WINCHESTER. Well, Duke of Gloucester, I will yield  
 to thee ;

Love for thy love and hand for hand I give.

GLOUCESTER. [Aside.] Ay ; but I fear me, with a  
 hollow heart. 136

See here, my friends and loving countrymen,  
 This token serveth for a flag of truce,  
 Betwixt ourselves and all our followers.

So help me God, as I dissemble not ! 140

WINCHESTER. [Aside.] So help me God, as I intend it not !

KING HENRY. O loving uncle, kind Duke of Gloucester,  
 How joyful am I made by this contract !

Away, my masters ! trouble us no more ; 144

But join in friendship, as your lords have done.

FIRST SERVING-MAN. Content : I'll to the surgeon's.

SECOND SERVING-MAN. And so will I.

THIRD SERVING-MAN. And I will see what physic the  
 tavern affords. [Exeunt Mayor, Serving-men, &c.]

WARWICK. Accept this scroll, most gracious sovereign,  
 Which in the right of Richard Plantagenet 149  
 We do exhibit to your majesty.

GLOUCESTER. Well urg'd, my Lord of Warwick : for,  
 sweet prince,

An if your Grace mark every circumstance, 152

You have great reason to do Richard right ;

Especially for those occasions

At Eltham-place I told your majesty.

KING HENRY. And those occasions, uncle, were of  
 force : 156

Therefore, my loving lords, our pleasure is

That Richard be restored to his blood.

WARWICK. Let Richard be restored to his blood ;  
 So shall his father's wrongs be recompens'd. 160

WINCHESTER. As will the rest, so willeth Winchester.

KING HENRY. If Richard will be true, not that alone,  
 But all the whole inheritance I give  
 That doth belong unto the house of York, 164

From whence you spring by lineal descent.

PLANTAGENET. Thy humble servant vows obedience,  
And humble service till the point of death.

KING HENRY. Stoop then and set your knee against  
my foot ; 168

And, in requerdon of that duty done,  
I girt thee with the valiant sword of York :

Rise, Richard, like a true Plantagenet,  
And rise created princely Duke of York. 172

PLANTAGENET. And so thrive Richard as thy foes  
may fall !

And as my duty springs, so perish they  
That grudge one thought against your majesty !

ALL. Welcome, high prince, the mighty Duke of York !

SOMERSET. [Aside.] Perish, base prince, ignoble Duke  
of York ! 177

GLOUCESTER. Now, will it best avail your majesty  
To cross the seas and to be crown'd in France.

The presence of a king engenders love 180  
Amongst his subjects and his loyal friends,  
As it disanimates his enemies.

KING HENRY. When Gloucester says the word, King  
Henry goes ;  
For friendly counsel cuts off many foes. 184

GLOUCESTER. Your ships already are in readiness.

[Flourish. Exit all except EXETER.]

EXETER. Ay, we may march in England or in France,  
Not seeing what is likely to ensue.

This late dissension grown betwixt the peers 188

Burns under feigned ashes of forg'd love,

And will at last break out into a flame :

As fester'd members rot but by degree,

Till bones and flesh and sinews fall away, 192

So will this base and envious discord breed.

And now I fear that fatal prophecy

Which in the time of Henry, nam'd the Fifth,

Was in the mouth of every sucking babe ; 196

That Henry born at Monmouth should win all ;

And Henry born at Windsor should lose all :

Which is so plain that Exeter doth wish

His days may finish ere that hapless time. [Exit.

## SCENE II.—France. Before Roan.

Enter JOAN LA PUCELLE, disguised, and Soldiers dressed like countrymen, with sacks upon their backs.

JOAN. These are the city gates, the gates of Roan,  
Through which our policy must make a breach :  
Take heed, be wary how you place your words ;  
Talk like the vulgar sort of market-men 4  
That come to gather money for their corn.  
If we have entrance,—as I hope we shall,—  
And that we find the slothful watch but weak,  
I'll by a sign give notice to our friends, 8  
That Charles the Dauphin may encounter them.

FIRST SOLDIER. Our sacks shall be a mean to sack the  
city,  
And we be lords and rulers over Roan ;  
Therefore we'll knock. [Knocks. 13

GUARD. [Within.] Qui est là ? 13

JOAN. Paysans, pauvres gens de France :  
Poor market-folks that come to sell their corn.

GUARD. [Opening the gates.] Enter, go in ; the market-bell  
is rung. 16

JOAN. Now, Roan, I'll shake thy bulwarks to the  
ground. [JOAN LA PUCELLE, &c., enter the city.

Enter CHARLES, the BASTARD OF ORLEANS, ALENÇON, and Forces.

CHARLES. Saint Denis bless this happy stratagem !  
And once again we'll sleep secure in Roan.

THE BASTARD. Here enter'd Pucelle and her prac-  
tisans ; 20

Now she is there how will she specify  
Where is the best and safest passage in ?

ALENÇON. By thrusting out a torch from yonder tower ;  
Which, once discern'd, shows that her meaning is,  
No way to that, for weakness, which she enter'd.

Enter JOAN LA PUCELLE on a battlement, holding out a torch burning.

JOAN. Behold ! this is the happy wedding torch  
That joineth Roan unto her countrymen, 27  
But burning fatal to the Talbotites ! [Exit.

THE BASTARD. See, noble Charles, the beacon of our  
friend,  
The burning torch in yonder turret stands.

CHARLES. Now shine it like a comet of revenge,  
A prophet to the fall of all our foes ! 32

ALENÇON. Defer no time, delays have dangerous ends.  
Enter and cry 'The Dauphin !' presently,  
And then do execution on the watch. [They enter the town.

Alarum. Enter TALBOT in an Excursion.

TALBOT. France, thou shalt rue this treason with thy  
tears, 36

If Talbot but survive thy treachery.  
Pucelle, that witch, that damned sorceress,  
Hath wrought this hellish mischief unawares,  
That hardly we escap'd the pride of France. [Exit.

Alarum : Excursions. Enter from the town, BEDFORD, brought in  
sick in a chair. Enter TALBOT and BURGUNDY, and the English  
Forces. Then, enter on the walls, JOAN LA PUCELLE, CHARLES,  
the BASTARD OF ORLEANS, ALENÇON, and Others.

JOAN. Good morrow, gallants ! Want ye corn for  
bread ?

I think the Duke of Burgundy will fast  
Before he'll buy again at such a rate.  
'Twas full of darnel ; do you like the taste ? 44

BURGUNDY. Scoff on, vile fiend and shameless cour-  
tezan !

I trust ere long to choke thee with thine own,  
And make thee curse the harvest of that corn.

CHARLES. Your Grace may starve perhaps before that  
time. 48

BEDFORD. O ! let no words, but deeds, revenge this  
treason !

JOAN. What will you do, good grey-beard ? break a  
lance,

And run a tilt at death within a chair ?

TALBOT. Foul fiend of France, and hag of all despite,  
Encompass'd with thy lustful paramours ! 53

Becomes it thee to taunt his valiant age  
And twit with cowardice a man half dead ?

Damsel, I'll have a bout with you again, 56  
Or else let Talbot perish with this shame.

JOAN. Are you so hot, sir ? Yet, Pucelle, hold thy  
peace ;

If Talbot do but thunder, rain will follow. 59

[TALBOT and the rest consult together.



God speed the parliament ! who shall be the speaker ?

TALBOT. Dare ye come forth and meet us in the field ?

JOAN. Belike your lordship takes us then for fools,  
To try if that our own be ours or no.

TALBOT. I speak not to that railing Hecate, 64  
But unto thee, Alençon, and the rest ;  
Will ye, like soldiers, come and fight it out ?

ALENÇON. Signior, no.

TALBOT. Signior, hang ! base muleters of France !  
Like peasant foot-boys do they keep the walls, 69  
And dare not take up arms like gentlemen.

JOAN. Away, captains ! let's get us from the walls ;  
For Talbot means no goodness, by his looks. 72  
God be wi' you, my lord ! we came but to tell you  
That we are here. [Exeunt JOAN LA PUCELLE, &c., from the Walls.

TALBOT. And there will we be too, ere it be long,  
Or else reproach be Talbot's greatest fame ! 76  
Vow, Burgundy, by honour of thy house,—  
Prick'd on by public wrongs sustain'd in France,—  
Either to get the town again, or die ;  
And I, as sure as English Henry lives, 80  
And as his father here was conqueror,  
As sure as in this late-betrayed town  
Great Cœur-de-Lion's heart was buried,  
So sure I swear to get the town or die. 84

BURGUNDY. My vows are equal partners with thy  
VOWS.

TALBOT. But, ere we go, regard this dying prince,  
The valiant Duke of Bedford. Come, my lord,  
We will bestow you in some better place, 88  
Fitter for sickness and for crazy age.

BEDFORD. Lord Talbot, do not so dishonour me :  
Here will I sit before the walls of Roan,  
And will be partner of your weal or woe. 92

BURGUNDY. Courageous Bedford, let us now persuade  
you.

BEDFORD. Not to be gone from hence ; for once I read  
That stout Pendragon in his litter, sick,  
Came to the field and vanquished his foes : 96  
Methinks I should revive the soldiers' hearts,  
Because I ever found them as myself.

TALBOT. Undaunted spirit in a dying breast !  
Then be it so : heavens keep old Bedford safe ! 100

And now no more ado, brave Burgundy,  
But gather we our forces out of hand,  
And set upon our boasting enemy.

[Exeunt all but BEDFORD and Attendants.

Alarum: Excursions; in one of which, enter SIR JOHN FASTOLFE  
and a Captain.

CAPTAIN. Whither away, Sir John Fastolfe, in such  
haste? 104

FASTOLFE. Whither away! to save myself by flight:  
We are like to have the overthrow again.

CAPTAIN. What! will you fly, and leave Lord Talbot?

FASTOLFE. Ay,

All the Talbots in the world, to save my life. [Exit.

CAPTAIN. Cowardly knight! ill fortune follow thee!

[Exit.

Retreat: Excursions. Re-enter, from the town, JOAN LA PUCELLE,  
ALENÇON, CHARLES, &c., and exeunt, flying.

BEDFORD. Now, quiet soul, depart when Heaven  
please,

For I have seen our enemies' overthrow.

What is the trust or strength of foolish man? 112

They, that of late were daring with their scoffs

Are glad and fain by flight to save themselves.

[Dies, and is carried off in his chair.

Alarum. Re-enter TALBOT, BURGUNDY, and Others.

TALBOT. Lost, and recover'd in a day again!  
This is a double honour, Burgundy: 116

Yet heavens have glory for this victory!

BURGUNDY. Warlike and martial Talbot, Burgundy  
Enshrines thee in his heart, and there erects

Thy noble deeds as valour's monument. 120

TALBOT. Thanks, gentle duke. But where is Pucelle  
now?

I think her old familiar is asleep.

Now where's the Bastard's braves, and Charles his gleeks?

What! all amot? Roan hangs her head for grief,

That such a valiant company are fled. 125

Now will we take some order in the town,

Placing therein some expert officers,

And then depart to Paris to the king; 128

For there young Henry with his nobles lie.

BURGUNDY. What wills Lord Talbot pleaseth Burgundy.

TALBOT. But yet, before we go, let's not forget  
 The noble Duke of Bedford late deceas'd, 132  
 But see his exequies fulfill'd in Roan :  
 A braver soldier never couched lance,  
 A gentler heart did never sway in court ;  
 But kings and mightiest potentates must die, 136  
 For that's the end of human misery. [Exeunt.]

## SCENE III.—The Plains near Roan.

Enter CHARLES, the BASTARD OF ORLEANS, ALENÇON, JOAN LA  
 PUCELLE, and Forces.

JOAN. Dismay not, princes, at this accident,  
 Nor grieve that Roan is so recovered :  
 Care is no cure, but rather corrosive,  
 For things that are not to be remedied. 4  
 Let frantic Talbot triumph for a while,  
 And like a peacock sweep along his tail ;  
 We'll pull his plumes and take away his train,  
 If Dauphin and the rest will be but rul'd 8

CHARLES. We have been guided by thee hitherto,  
 And of thy cunning had no diffidence :  
 One sudden foil shall never breed distrust. 11

THE BASTARD. Search out thy wit for secret policies,  
 And we will make thee famous through the world.

ALENÇON. We'll set thy statue in some holy place  
 And have thee reverenc'd like a blessed saint :  
 Employ thee, then, sweet virgin, for our good. 16

JOAN. Then thus it must be ; this doth Joan devise :  
 By fair persuasions, mix'd with sugar'd words,  
 We will entice the Duke of Burgundy  
 To leave the Talbot and to follow us. 20

CHARLES. Ay, marry, sweeting, if we could do that,  
 France were no place for Henry's warriors ;  
 Nor should that nation boast it so with us,  
 But be extirp'd from our provinces. 24

ALENÇON. For ever should they be expuls'd from  
 France,  
 And not have title of an earldom here.

JOAN. Your honours shall perceive how I will work  
 To bring this matter to the wished end. [Drums heard afar off.  
 Hark ! by the sound of drum you may perceive  
 Their powers are marching unto Paris-ward.]

Here sound an English march. Enter, and pass over, TALBOT and his Forces.

There goes the Talbot, with his colours spread,  
And all the troops of English after him.

A French march. Enter the DUKE OF BURGUNDY and his Forces.  
Now in the rearward comes the duke and his :  
Fortune in favour makes him lag behind.

Summon a parley ; we will talk with him. [A parley.

CHARLES. A parley with the Duke of Burgundy !

BURGUNDY. Who craves a parley with the Burgundy ?

JOAN. The princely Charles of France, thy country-  
man. 38

BURGUNDY. What sayst thou, Charles ? for I am  
marching hence.

CHARLES. Speak, Pucelle, and enchant him with thy  
words. 40

JOAN. Brave Burgundy, undoubted hope of France !  
Stay, let thy humble handmaid speak to thee.

BURGUNDY. Speak on ; but be not over-tedious.

JOAN. Look on thy country, look on fertile France,  
And see the cities and the towns defac'd 45  
By wasting ruin of the cruel foe.

As looks the mother on her lowly babe  
When death doth close his tender dying eyes, 48

See, see the pining malady of France ;  
Behold the wounds, the most unnatural wounds,  
Which thou thyself hast given her woeful breast.

O ! turn thy edged sword another way ; 52  
Strike those that hurt, and hurt not those that help.

One drop of blood drawn from thy country's bosom,  
Should grieve thee more than streams of foreign gore :  
Return thee therefore, with a flood of tears, 56  
And wash away thy country's stained spots.

BURGUNDY. Either she hath bewitch'd me with her  
words,

Or nature makes me suddenly relent.

JOAN. Besides, all French and France exclaims on thee,  
Doubting thy birth and lawful progeny. 61

Who join'st thou with but with a lordly nation  
That will not trust thee but for profit's sake ?

When Talbot hath set footing once in France, 64  
And fashion'd thee that instrument of ill,

Who then but English Henry will be lord,  
 And thou be thrust out like a fugitive ?  
 Call we to mind, and mark but this for proof, 68  
 Was not the Duke of Orleans thy foe,  
 And was he not in England prisoner ?  
 But when they heard he was thine enemy,  
 They set him free, without his ransom paid, 72  
 In spite of Burgundy and all his friends.  
 See then, thou fight'st against thy countrymen !  
 And join'st with them will be thy slaughtermen.  
 Come, come, return ; return, thou wand'ring lord ;  
 Charles and the rest will take thee in their arms.

BURGUNDY. I am vanquished ; these haughty words  
 of hers 78

Have batter'd me like roaring cannon-shot,  
 And made me almost yield upon my knees.  
 Forgive me, country, and sweet countrymen ! 81  
 And, lords, accept this hearty kind embrace :  
 My forces and my power of men are yours.  
 So, farewell, Talbot ; I'll no longer trust thee. 84

JOAN. Done like a Frenchman : turn, and turn again !

CHARLES. Welcome, brave duke ! thy friendship  
 makes us fresh.

THE BASTARD. And doth beget new courage in our  
 breasts.

ALENÇON. Pucelle hath bravely play'd her part in this,  
 And doth deserve a coronet of gold. 89

CHARLES. Now let us on, my lords, and join our  
 powers :

And seek how we may prejudice the foe. [Exeunt.

SCENE IV.—Paris. A Room in the Palace.

Enter KING HENRY, GLOUCESTER, BISHOP OF WINCHESTER, YORK,  
 SUFFOLK, SOMERSET, WARWICK, EXETER ; VERNON, BASSET,  
 and Others. To them with his Soldiers, TALBOT.

TALBOT. My gracious prince, and honourable peers,  
 Hearing of your arrival in this realm,  
 I have a while given truce unto my wars,  
 To do my duty to my sovereign : 4  
 In sign whereof, this arm,—that hath reclaim'd  
 To your obedience fifty fortresses,  
 Twelve cities, and seven walled towns of strength,

Beside five hundred prisoners of esteem,—  
Lets fall his sword before your highness' feet, [Kneels. 8

And with submissive loyalty of heart,  
Ascribes the glory of his conquest got,  
First to my God, and next unto your Grace. 12

KING HENRY. Is this the Lord Talbot, uncle Gloucester,  
That hath so long been resident in France?

GLOUCESTER. Yes, if it please your majesty, my liege.

KING HENRY. Welcome, brave captain and victorious  
lord! 16

When I was young,—as yet I am not old,—  
I do remember how my father said,  
A stouter champion never handled sword.  
Long since we were resolved of your truth, 20  
Your faithful service and your toil in war;  
Yet never have you tasted our reward,  
Or been reguerdon'd with so much as thanks,  
Because till now we never saw your face: 24  
Therefore, stand up; and for these good deserts,  
We here create you Earl of Shrewsbury;  
And in our coronation take your place

[Flourish. Exeunt all but VERNON and BASSET.

VERNON. Now, sir, to you, that were so hot at sea,  
Disgracing of these colours that I wear 29  
In honour of my noble Lord of York,  
Dar'st thou maintain the former words thou spak'st?

BASSET. Yes, sir: as well as you dare patronage  
The envious barking of your saucy tongue  
Against my lord the Duke of Somerset.

VERNON. Sirrah, thy lord I honour as he is. 35

BASSET. Why, what is he? as good a man as York.

VERNON. Hark ye; not so: in witness, take ye that.

[Strikes him.

BASSET. Villain, thou know'st the law of arms is such  
That whoso draws a sword, 'tis present death,  
Or else this blow should broach thy dearest blood.  
But I'll unto his majesty, and crave  
I may have liberty to venge this wrong;  
When thou shalt see I'll meet thee to thy cost. 43

VERNON. Well, miscreant, I'll be there as soon as you;  
And, after, meet you sooner than you would. [Exeunt.

## ACT IV.

SCENE I.—Paris. A Room of State.

Enter KING HENRY, GLOUCESTER, EXETER, YORK, SUFFOLK, SOMERSET, the BISHOP OF WINCHESTER, WARWICK, TALBOT, the Governor of Paris, and Others.

GLOUCESTER. Lord bishop, set the crown upon his head.

WINCHESTER. God save King Henry, of that name the sixth.

GLOUCESTER. Now, Governor of Paris, take your oath,—

[Governor kneels.

That you elect no other king but him, 4  
Esteem none friends but such as are his friends,  
And none your foes but such as shall pretend  
Malicious practices against his state :  
This shall ye do, so help you righteous God ! 8

[Exeunt Governor and his Train.

Enter SIR JOHN FASTOLFE.

FASTOLFE. My gracious sovereign, as I rode from Calais,

To haste unto your coronation,  
A letter was deliver'd to my hands,  
Writ to your Grace from the Duke of Burgundy. 12

TALBOT. Shame to the Duke of Burgundy and thee !  
I vow'd, base knight, when I did meet thee next,  
To tear the garter from thy craven's leg ; [Plucking it off.  
Which I have done, because unworthily 16  
Thou wast installed in that high degree.

Pardon me, princely Henry, and the rest :  
This dastard, at the battle of Patay,  
When but in all I was six thousand strong, 20

And that the French were almost ten to one,  
Before we met or that a stroke was given,  
Like to a trusty squire did run away :

In which assault we lost twelve hundred men ; 24  
Myself, and divers gentlemen beside,  
Were there surpris'd and taken prisoners.

Then judge, great lords, if I have done amiss ;  
Or whether that such cowards ought to wear 28  
This ornament of knighthood, yea, or no ?

GLOUCESTER. To say the truth, this fact was infamous,  
And ill beseeeming any common man,  
Much more a knight, a captain and a leader. 32

TALBOT. When first this order was ordain'd, my lords,  
Knights of the garter were of noble birth,  
Valiant and virtuous, full of haughty courage,  
Such as were grown to credit by the wars; 36  
Not fearing death, nor shrinking for distress,  
But always resolute in most extremes.

He then that is not furnish'd in this sort  
Doth but usurp the sacred name of knight, 40  
Profaning this most honourable order;  
And should—if I were worthy to be judge—  
Be quite degraded, like a hedge-born swain  
That doth presume to boast of gentle blood. 44

KING HENRY. Stain to thy countrymen! thou hear'st  
thy doom.

Be packing therefore, thou that wast a knight;  
Henceforth we banish thee on pain of death. [Exit FASTOLFE.  
And now, my Lord Protector, view the letter 48  
Sent from our uncle Duke of Burgundy.

GLOUCESTER. [Viewing superscription.] What means his  
Grace, that he hath chang'd his style?  
No more but, plain and bluntly, 'To the King!'  
Hath he forgot he is his sovereign? 52  
Or doth this churlish superscription  
Pretend some alteration in good will?  
What's here? 'I have, upon especial cause,  
Mov'd with compassion of my country's wrack, 56  
Together with the pitiful complaints  
Of such as your oppression feeds upon,  
Forsaken your pernicious faction,  
And join'd with Charles, the rightful King of France.'  
O monstrous treachery! Can this be so, 61  
That in alliance, amity, and oaths,  
There should be found such false dissembling guile?

KING HENRY. What! doth my uncle Burgundy revolt?

GLOUCESTER. He doth, my lord, and is become your  
foe. 65

KING HENRY. Is that the worst this letter doth con-  
tain?

GLOUCESTER. It is the worst, and all, my lord, he  
writes.



**KING HENRY.** Why then, Lord Talbot there shall talk  
with him, 68

And give him chastisement for this abuse.

How say you, my lord ? are you not content ?

**TALBOT.** Content, my liege ! Yes : but that I am  
prevented, 71

I should have begg'd I might have been employ'd.

**KING HENRY.** Then gather strength, and march unto  
him straight :

Let him perceive how ill we brook his treason,

And what offence it is to flout his friends. 75

**TALBOT.** I go, my lord ; in heart desiring still  
You may behold confusion of your foes. [Exit. 76

Enter **VERNON** and **BASSET**.

**VERNON.** Grant me the combat, gracious sovereign !

**BASSET.** And me, my lord ; grant me the combat too !

**YORK.** This is my servant : hear him, noble prince !

**SOMERSET.** And this is mine : sweet Henry, favour him !

**KING HENRY.** Be patient, lords ; and give them leave  
to speak. 82

Say, gentlemen, what makes you thus exclaim ?

And wherefore crave you combat ? or with whom ?

**VERNON.** With him, my lord ; for he hath done me  
wrong. 85

**BASSET.** And I with him ; for he hath done me wrong.

**KING HENRY.** What is that wrong whereof you both  
complain ?

First let me know, and then I'll answer you. 88

**BASSET.** Crossing the sea from England into France,

This fellow here, with envious carping tongue,

Upbraided me about the rose I wear ;

Saying, the sanguine colour of the leaves 92

Did represent my master's blushing cheeks,

When stubbornly he did repugn the truth

About a certain question in the law

Argu'd betwixt the Duke of York and him ; 96

With other vile and ignominious terms :

In confutation of which rude reproach,

And in defence of my lord's worthiness,

I crave the benefit of law of arms. 100

**VERNON.** And that is my petition, noble lord :

For though he seem with forged quaint conceit,

To set a gloss upon his bold intent,  
Yet know, my lord, I was provok'd by him ; 104  
And he first took exceptions at this badge,  
Pronouncing that the paleness of this flower  
Bewray'd the faintness of my master's heart. 107

YORK. Will not this malice, Somerset, be left ?

SOMERSET. Your private grudge, my Lord of York,  
will out,

Though ne'er so cunningly you smother it.

KING HENRY. Good Lord ! what madness rules in  
brainsick men,

When, for so slight and frivolous a cause, 112  
Such factious emulations shall arise !

Good cousins both, of York and Somerset,  
Quiet yourselves, I pray, and be at peace. 115

YORK. Let this dissension first be tried by fight,  
And then your highness shall command a peace.

SOMERSET. The quarrel toucheth none but us alone ;  
Betwixt ourselves let us decide it, then. 119

YORK. There is my pledge : accept it, Somerset.

VERNON. Nay, let it rest where it began at first.

BASSET. Confirm it so, mine honourable lord.

GLOUCESTER. Confirm it so ! Confounded be your strife !  
And perish ye, with your audacious prate ! 124

Presumptuous vassals ! are you not asham'd,

With this immodest clamorous outrage

To trouble and disturb the king and us ?—

And you, my lords, methinks you do not well 128

To bear with their perverse objections ;

Much less to take occasion from their mouths

To raise a mutiny betwixt yourselves :

Let me persuade you take a better course. 132

EXETER. It grieves his highness : good my lords, be  
friends.

KING HENRY. Come hither, you that would be com-  
batants.

Henceforth I charge you, as you love our favour,  
Quite to forget this quarrel and the cause. 136

And you, my lords, remember where we are ;

In France, amongst a fickle wavering nation.

If they perceive dissension in our looks,

And that within ourselves we disagree, 140

How will their grudging stomachs be provok'd

To wilful disobedience, and rebel !  
 Beside, what infamy will there arise,  
 When foreign princes shall be certified 144  
 That for a toy, a thing of no regard,  
 King Henry's peers and chief nobility  
 Destroy'd themselves, and lost the realm of France !  
 O ! think upon the conquest of my father, 148  
 My tender years, and let us not forego  
 That for a trifle that was bought with blood !  
 Let me be umpire in this doubtful strife.

I see no reason, if I wear this rose, [Putting on a red rose.  
 That any one should therefore be suspicious 153

I more incline to Somerset than York :

Both are my kinsmen, and I love them both.

As well they may upbraid me with my crown, 156

Because, forsooth, the King of Scots is crown'd.

But your discretions better can persuade

Than I am able to instruct or teach :

And therefore, as we hither came in peace, 160

So let us still continue peace and love.

Cousin of York, we institute your Grace

To be our regent in these parts of France :

And, good my Lord of Somerset, unite 164

Your troops of horsemen with his bands of foot ;

And like true subjects, sons of your progenitors,

Go cheerfully together and digest

Your angry choler on your enemies. 168

Ourself, my Lord Protector, and the rest,

After some respite will return to Calais ;

From thence to England ; where I hope ere long

To be presented, by your victories, 172

With Charles, Alençon, and that traitorous rout.

[Flourish. Exeunt all but YORK, WARWICK, EXETER, and VERNON.

WARWICK. My Lord of York, I promise you, the king  
 Prettily, methought, did play the orator.

YORK. And so he did ; but yet I like it not, 176  
 In that he wears the badge of Somerset.

WARWICK. Tush ! that was but his fancy, blame him  
 not ;

I dare presume, sweet prince, he thought no harm.

YORK. An if I wist he did,—But let it rest ; 180

Other affairs must now be managed.

[Exeunt YORK, WARWICK, and VERNON.

EXETER Well didst thou, Richard, to suppress thy voice;

For had the passions of thy heart burst out,  
 I fear we should have seen decipher'd there 104  
 More rancorous spite, more furious raging broils,  
 Than yet can be imagin'd or suppos'd.  
 But howsoe'er, no simple man that sees  
 This jarring discord of nobility, 188  
 This shouldering of each other in the court,  
 This factious bandying of their favourites,  
 But that it doth presage some ill event. 191  
 'Tis much when scepires are in children's hands ;  
 But more, when envy breeds unkind division :  
 There comes the ruin, there begins confusion. [Exit.

SCENE II.—Before Bourdeaux.

Enter TALBOT, with his Forces.

TALBOT. Go to the gates of Bourdeaux, trumpeter ;  
 Summon their general unto the wall.

Trumpet sounds a parley. Enter, on the Wall, the General of the French Forces, and Others.

English John Talbot, captains, calls you forth,  
 Servant in arms to Harry King of England ; 4  
 And thus he would : Open your city gates,  
 Be humble to us, call my sovereign yours,  
 And do him homage as obedient subjects,  
 And I'll withdraw me and my bloody power ; 8  
 But, if you frown upon this proffer'd peace,  
 You tempt the fury of my three attendants,  
 Lean famine, quartering steel, and climbing fire ;  
 Who in a moment even with the earth 12  
 Shall lay your stately and air-braving towers,  
 If you forsake the offer of their love.

GENERAL. Thou ominous and fearful owl of death,  
 Our nation's terror and their bloody scourge ! 16  
 The period of thy tyranny approacheth.  
 On us thou canst not enter but by death ;  
 For, I protest, we are well fortified,  
 And strong enough to issue out and fight : 20  
 If thou retire, the Dauphin, well appointed,  
 Stands with the snares of war to tangle thee :  
 On either hand thee there are squadrons pitch'd,

To wall thee from the liberty of flight ; 24  
 And no way canst thou turn thee for redress  
 But death doth front thee with apparent spoil,  
 And pale destruction meets thee in the face.  
 Ten thousand French have ta'en the sacrament, 28  
 To rive their dangerous artillery  
 Upon no Christian soul but English Talbot.  
 Lo ! there thou stand'st, a breathing valiant man,  
 Of an invincible unconquer'd spirit : 32  
 This is the latest glory of thy praise,  
 That I, thy enemy, 'due thee withal ;  
 For ere the glass, that now begins to run,  
 Finish the process of his sandy hour, 36  
 These eyes, that see thee now well coloured,  
 Shall see thee wither'd, bloody, pale, and dead.

[Drum afar off.

Hark ! hark ! the Dauphin's drum, a warning bell,  
 Sings heavy music to thy timorous soul ; 40  
 And mine shall ring thy dire departure out.

[Exeunt General, &amp;c., from the Walls.

TALBOT. He fables not ; I hear the enemy :  
 Out, some light horsemen, and peruse their wings.  
 O ! negligent and heedless discipline ; 44  
 How are we park'd and bounded in a pale,  
 A little herd of England's timorous deer,  
 Maz'd with a yelping kennel of French curs !  
 If we be English deer, be then in blood ; 48  
 Not rascal-like, to fall down with a pinch,  
 But rather moody-mad and desperate stags,  
 Turn on the bloody hounds with heads of steel,  
 And make the cowards stand aloof at bay : 52  
 Sell every man his life as dear as mine,  
 And they shall find dear deer of us, my friends.  
 God and Saint George, Talbot and England's right,  
 Prosper our colours in this dangerous fight ! [Exeunt.

## SCENE III.—Plains in Gascony.

Enter YORK, with Forces ; to him a Messenger.

YORK. Are not the speedy scouts return'd again,  
 That dogg'd the mighty army of the Dauphin ?

MESSENGER. They are return'd, my lord ; and give  
 it out

That he is march'd to Bourdeaux with his power,  
To fight with Talbot. As he march'd along, 5  
By your espials were discovered  
Two mightier troops than that the Dauphin led,  
Which join'd with him and made their march for Bour-  
deaux. 8

YORK. A plague upon that villain Somerset,  
That thus delays my promised supply  
Of horsemen that were levied for this siege !  
Renowned Talbot doth expect my aid, 12  
And I am louted by a traitor villain,  
And cannot help the noble chevalier.  
God comfort him in this necessity !  
If he miscarry, farewell wars in France. 16

Enter SIR WILLIAM LUCY.

LUCY. Thou princely leader of our English strength,  
Never so needful on the earth of France,  
Spur to the rescue of the noble Talbot,  
Who now is girdled with a waist of iron 20  
And hemm'd about with grim destruction.  
To Bourdeaux, warlike duke ! To Bourdeaux, York !  
Else, farewell Talbot, France, and England's honour.

YORK. O God ! that Somerset, who in proud heart  
Doth stop my cornets, were in Talbot's place ; 25  
So should we save a valiant gentleman  
By forfeiting a traitor and a coward.  
Mad ire and wrathful fury, make me weep 28  
That thus we die, while remiss traitors sleep.

LUCY. O ! send some succour to the distress'd lord.

YORK. He dies, we lose ; I break my warlike word ;  
We mourn, France smiles ; we lose, they daily get ;  
All 'long of this vile traitor Somerset. 33

LUCY. Then God take mercy on brave Talbot's soul ;  
And on his son young John, whom two hours since  
I met in travel toward his warlike father. 36  
This seven years did not Talbot see his son ;  
And now they meet where both their lives are done.

YORK. Alas ! what joy shall noble Talbot have  
To bid his young son welcome to his grave ? 40  
Away ! vexation almost stops my breath  
That sunder'd friends greet in the hour of death.  
Lucy, farewell : no more my fortune can,

But curse the cause I cannot aid the man. 44

Maine, Blois, Poitiers, and Tours, are won away,

'Long all of Somerset and his delay. [Exit, with his Soldiers.

LUCY. Thus, while the vulture of sedition  
Feeds in the bosom of such great commanders, 48

Sleeping neglectation doth betray to loss

The conquest of our scarce cold conqueror,

That ever living man of memory,

Henry the Fifth : Whiles they each other cross, 52

Lives, honours, lands, and all hurry to loss. [Exit.

SCENE IV.—Other Plains in Gascony.

Enter SOMERSET, with his Army ; a Captain of TALBOT'S with him.

SOMERSET. It is too late ; I cannot send them now :  
This expedition was by York and Talbot  
Too rashly plotted : all our general force  
Might with a sally of the very town 4

Be buckled with : the over-daring Talbot

Hath sullied all his gloss of former honour

By this unheedful, desperate, wild adventure :

York set him on to fight and die in shame, 8

That, Talbot dead, great York might bear the name.

CAPTAIN. Here is Sir William Lucy, who with me  
Set from our o'ermatch'd forces forth for aid.

Enter SIR WILLIAM LUCY.

SOMERSET. How now, Sir William ! whither were you  
sent ? 12

LUCY. Whither, my lord ? from bought and sold  
Lord Talbot ;

Who, ring'd about with bold adversity,

Cries out for noble York and Somerset,

To beat assailing death from his weak legions : 16

And whiles the honourable captain there

Drops bloody sweat from his war-wearied limbs,

And, in advantage lingering, looks for rescue, 19

You, his false hopes, the trust of England's honour,

Keep off aloof with worthless emulation.

Let not your private discord keep away

The levied succours that should lend him aid,

While he, renowned noble gentleman, 24

Yields up his life unto a world of odds :

Orleans the Bastard, Charles, Burgundy,  
Alençon, Reignier, compass him about,  
And Talbot perisheth by your default. 28

SOMERSET. York set him on ; York should have sent  
him aid.

LUCY. And York as fast upon your Grace exclaims ;  
Swearing that you withhold his levied host  
Collected for this expedition. 32

SOMERSET. York lies ; he might have sent and had  
the horse :

I owe him little duty, and less love ;  
And take foul scorn to fawn on him by sending.

LUCY. The fraud of England, not the force of France,  
Hath now entrapp'd the noble-minded Talbot. 37  
Never to England shall he bear his life,  
But dies, betray'd to fortune by your strife.

SOMERSET. Come, go ; I will dispatch the horsemen  
straight : 40

Within six hours they will be at his aid.

LUCY. Too late comes rescue : he is ta'en or slain,  
For fly he could not if he would have fled ;  
And fly would Talbot never, though he might. 44

SOMERSET. If he be dead, brave Talbot, then adieu !

LUCY. His fame lives in the world, his shame in you.

[Exeunt.

SCENE V.—The English Camp near Bourdeaux.

Enter TALBOT and JOHN his Son.

TALBOT. O young John Talbot ! I did send for thee  
To tutor thee in stratagems of war,  
That Talbot's name might be in thee reviv'd  
When sapless age, and weak unable limbs 4  
Should bring thy father to his drooping chair.  
But,—O malignant and ill-boding stars !

Now thou art come unto a feast of death,  
A terrible and unavoided danger : 8  
Therefore, dear boy, mount on my swiftest horse,  
And I'll direct thee how thou shalt escape  
By sudden flight : come, dally not, be gone.

JOHN. Is my name Talbot ? and am I your son ?  
And shall I fly ? O ! if you love my mother, 13  
Dishonour not her honourable name,  
To make a bastard and a slave of me :



The world will say he is not Talbot's blood 16  
That basely fled when noble Talbot stood.

TALBOT. Fly, to revenge my death, if I be slain.

JOHN. He that flies so will ne'er return again.

TALBOT. If we both stay, we both are sure to die. 20

JOHN. Then let me stay ; and, father, do you fly :

Your loss is great, so your regard should be ;

My worth unknown, no loss is known in me.

Upon my death the French can little boast ; 24

In yours they will, in you all hopes are lost.

Flight cannot stain the honour you have won ;

But mine it will that no exploit have done :

You fled for vantage everyone will swear ; 28

But if I bow, they'll say it was for fear.

There is no hope that ever I will stay

If the first hour I shrink and run away.

Here, on my knee, I beg mortality, 32

Rather than life preserv'd with infamy.

TALBOT. Shall all thy mother's hopes lie in one tomb?

JOHN. Ay, rather than I'll shame my mother's womb.

TALBOT. Upon my blessing I command thee go.

JOHN. To fight I will, but not to fly the foe. 37

TALBOT. Part of thy father may be sav'd in thee.

JOHN. No part of him but will be shame in me.

TALBOT. Thou never hadst renown, nor canst not  
lose it. 40

JOHN. Yes, your renowned name: shall flight abuse it?

TALBOT. Thy father's charge shall clear thee from that  
stain.

JOHN. You cannot witness for me, being slain.

If death be so apparent, then both fly. 41

TALBOT. And leave my followers here to fight and die?

My age was never tainted with such shame.

JOHN. And shall my youth be guilty of such blame?

No more can I be sever'd from your side 48

Than can yourself yourself in twain divide.

Stay, go, do what you will, the like do I :

For live I will not if my father die.

TALBOT. Then here I take my leave of thee, fair son,  
Born to eclipse thy life this afternoon. 53

Come, side by side together live and die,

And soul with soul from France to heaven fly. [Exeunt.]

## SCENE VI.—A Field of Battle.

Alarum : Excursions, wherein TALBOT's Son is hemmed about, and  
TALBOT rescues him.

TALBOT. Saint George and victory ! fight, soldiers,  
fight !

The regent hath with Talbot broke his word,  
And left us to the rage of France his sword.  
Where is John Talbot ? Pause, and take thy breath :  
I gave thee life and rescued thee from death. 5

JOHN. O ! twice my father, twice am I thy son :  
The life thou gav'st me first was lost and done,  
Till with thy warlike sword, despite of fate, 8  
To my determin'd time thou gavest new date.

TALBOT. When from the Dauphin's crest thy sword  
struck fire,

It warm'd thy father's heart with proud desire  
Of bold-fac'd victory. Then leaden age, 12  
Quicken'd with youthful spleen and warlike rage,

Beat down Alençon, Orleans, Burgundy,  
And from the pride of Gallia rescued thee.  
The ireful bastard Orleans,—that drew blood 16  
From thee, my boy, and had the maidenhood

Of thy first fight,—I soon encountered  
And, interchanging blows, I quickly shed  
Some of his bastard blood ; and, in disgrace, 20  
Bespoke him thus, ' Contaminated, base,

And misbegotten blood I spill of thine,  
Mean and right poor, for that pure blood of mine  
Which thou didst force from Talbot, my brave boy' :  
Here, purposing the Bastard to destroy, 25  
Came in strong rescue. Speak, thy father's care,

Art thou not weary, John ? How dost thou fare ?  
Wilt thou yet leave the battle, boy, and fly, 28  
Now thou art seal'd the son of chivalry ?

Fly, to revenge my death when I am dead ;  
The help of one stands me in little stead.  
O ! too much folly is it, well I wot, 32  
To hazard all our lives in one small boat.

If I to-day die not with Frenchmen's rage,  
To-morrow I shall die with mickle age :  
By me they nothing gain an if I stay ; 36  
'Tis but the shortening of my life one day.

In thee thy mother dies, our household's name,  
 My death's revenge, thy youth, and England's fame.  
 All these and more we hazard by thy stay ; 40  
 All these are sav'd if thou wilt fly away.

JOHN. The sword of Orleans hath not made me smart ;  
 These words of yours draw life-blood from my heart.  
 On that advantage, bought with such a shame, 44  
 To save a paltry life and slay bright fame,  
 Before young Talbot from old Talbot fly,  
 The coward horse that bears me fall and die  
 And like me to the peasant boys of France, 48  
 To be shame's scorn and subject of mischance !  
 Surely, by all the glory you have won,  
 An if I fly, I am not Talbot's son :  
 Then talk no more of flight, it is no boot ; 52  
 If son to Talbot, die at Talbot's foot.

TALBOT. Then follow thou thy desperate sire of Crete,  
 Thou Icarus. Thy life to me is sweet :  
 If thou wilt fight, fight by thy father's side, 56  
 And, commendable prov'd, let's die in pride. [Exeunt.

SCENE VII.—Another Part of the Field.

Alarum : Excursions. Enter Old TALBOT, wounded, led by a  
 Servant.

TALBOT. Where is my other life ?—mine own is  
 gone ;—  
 O ! where's young Talbot ? where is valiant John ?  
 Triumphant death, smear'd with captivity,  
 Young Talbot's valour makes me smile at thee. 4  
 When he perceiv'd me shrink and on my knee,  
 His bloody sword he brandish'd over me,  
 And like a hungry lion did commence 8  
 Rough deeds of rage and stern impatience ;  
 But when my angry guardant stood alone,  
 Tendering my ruin and assail'd of none,  
 Dizzy-ey'd fury and great rage of heart  
 Suddenly made him from my side to start 12  
 Into the clustering battle of the French ;  
 And in that sea of blood my boy did drench  
 His overmounting spirit ; and there died  
 My Icarus, my blossom, in his pride. 16

• Enter Soldiers, bearing the body of Young TALBOT.

SERVANT. O, my dear lord ! lo, where your son is borne !

TALBOT. Thou antick, death, which laugh'st us here to scorn,

Anon, from thy insulting tryanny,

Coupled in bonds of perpetuity,

20

Two Talbots, winged through the lither sky,

In thy despite shall 'scape mortality.

O ! thou, whose wounds become hard-favour'd death,

Speak to thy father ere thou yield thy breath ;

24

Brave death by speaking whether he will or no ;

Imagine him a Frenchman and thy foe.

Poor boy ! he smiles, methinks, as who should say,

Had death been French, then death had died to-day.

Come, come, and lay him in his father's arms :

29

My spirit can no longer bear these harms.

Soldiers, adieu ! I have what I would have,

Now my old arms are young John Talbot's grave. [Dies.

Alarums. Exeunt Soldiers and Servant, leaving the two bodies.

Enter CHARLES, ALENÇON, BURGUNDY, the BASTARD OF ORLEANS,  
JOAN LA PUCELLE, and Forces.

CHARLES. Had York and Somerset brought rescue in  
We should have found a bloody day of this.

THE BASTARD. How the young whelp of Talbot's,  
raging-wood,

Did flesh his puny sword in Frenchmen's blood !

36

JOAN. Once I encounter'd him, and thus I said :

'Thou maiden youth, be vanquish'd by a maid' :

But with a proud majestical high scorn,

He answer'd thus : 'Young Talbot was not born

To be the pillage of a giglot wench.'

41

So, rushing in the bowels of the French,

He left me proudly, as unworthy fight.

BURGUNDY. Doubtless he would have made a noble  
knight ;

44

See, where he lies inhearsed in the arms

Of the most bloody nurser of his harms.

THE BASTARD. Hew them to pieces, hack their bones  
asunder,

47

Whose life was England's glory, Gallia's wonder.

CHARLES. O, no ! forbear ; for that which we have fled  
During the life, let us not wrong it dead.

Enter SIR WILLIAM LUCY, attended : a French Herald proceeding.

LUCY. Herald, conduct me to the Dauphin's tent,  
To know who hath obtain'd the glory of the day.

CHARLES. On what submissive message art thou sent?

LUCY. Submission, Dauphin ! 'tis a mere French word ;  
We English warriors wot not what it means. 55  
I come to know what prisoners thou hast ta'en,  
And to survey the bodies of the dead.

CHARLES. For prisoners ask'st thou ? hell our prison is.  
But tell me whom thou seek'st. 59

LUCY. Where is the great Alcides of the field,  
Valiant Lord Talbot, Earl of Shrewsbury ?  
Created, for his rare success in arms,  
Great Earl of Washford, Waterford, and Valence ;  
Lord Talbot of Goodrig and Urchinfeld, 64  
Lord Strange of Blackmere, Lord Verdun of Alton,  
Lord Cromwell of Wingfield, Lord Furnival of Sheffield,  
The thrice-victorious Lord of Falconbridge ;  
Knight of the noble order of Saint George, 68  
Worthy Saint Michael and the Golden Fleece ;  
Great mareschal to Henry the Sixth  
Of all his wars within the realm of France ?

JOAN. Here is a silly stately style indeed ! 72  
The Turk, that two-and-fifty kingdoms hath,  
Writes not so tedious a style as this.  
Him that thou magnifiest with all these titles,  
Stinking and fly-blown lies here at our feet. 76

LUCY. Is Talbot slain, the Frenchmen's only scourge,  
Your kingdom's terror and black Nemesis ?  
O ! were mine eye-balls into bullets turn'd,  
That I in rage might shoot them at your faces ! 80  
O ! that I could but call these dead to life !  
It were enough to fright the realm of France.  
Were but his picture left among you here  
It would amaze the proudest of you all. 84  
Give me their bodies, that I may bear them hence,  
And give them burial as beseems their worth.

JOAN. I think this upstart is old Talbot's ghost,  
He speaks with such a proud commanding spirit.  
For God's sake, let him have 'em ; to keep them here  
They would but stink and putrefy the air. 90

CHARLES. Go, take their bodies hence.

LUCY.

I'll bear them hence :

SCENE VII] KING HENRY THE SIXTH

317

But from their ashes shall be rear'd  
A phoenix that shall make all France afear'd.

92

CHARLES. So we be rid of them, do with 'em what  
thou wilt.

And now to Paris, in this conquering vein :  
All will be ours now bloody Talbot's slain. [Exeunt.

ACT V.

SCENE I.—London. A Room in the Palace.

Enter KING HENRY, GLOUCESTER, and EXETER.

KING HENRY. Have you perus'd the letters from the  
pope,  
The emperor, and the Earl of Armagnac ?

GLOUCESTER. I have, my lord ; and their intent is this :  
They humbly sue unto your excellence  
To have a godly peace concluded of  
Between the realms of England and of France.

4

KING HENRY. How doth your Grace affect their motion ?

GLOUCESTER. Well, my good lord ; and as the only  
means

8

To stop effusion of our Christian blood,  
And stablish quietness on every side.

KING HENRY. Ay, marry, uncle ; for I always thought  
It was both impious and unnatural  
That such immanity and bloody strife  
Should reign among professors of one faith.

12

GLOUCESTER. Beside, my lord, the sooner to effect  
And surer bind this knot of amity,  
The Earl of Armagnac, near knit to Charles,  
A man of great authority in France,  
Proffers his only daughter to your Grace  
In marriage, with a large and sumptuous dowry.

16

20

KING HENRY. Marriage, uncle ! alas ! my years are  
young,

And fitter is my study and my books  
Than wanton dalliance with a paramour.  
Yet call the ambassadors ; and, as you please,  
So let them have their answers every one :  
I shall be well content with any choice  
Tends to God's glory and my country's weal.

24

Enter a Legate, and two Ambassadors, with WINCHESTER, now  
CARDINAL BEAUFORT, and habited accordingly.

EXETER. [Aside.] What! is my Lord of Winchester  
install'd, 28

And call'd unto a cardinal's degree?

Then, I perceive that will be verified

Henry the Fifth did sometime prophesy,—

'If once he come to be a cardinal, 32

He'll make his cap co-equal with the crown.'

KING HENRY. My lords ambassadors, your several suits  
Have been consider'd, and debated on.

Your purpose is both good and reasonable; 36

And therefore are we certainly resolv'd

To draw conditions of a friendly peace;

Which by my Lord of Winchester we mean

Shall be transported presently to France. 40

GLOUCESTER. And for the proffer of my lord your  
master,

I have inform'd his highness so at large,

As,—liking of the lady's virtuous gifts,

Her beauty, and the value of her dower,— 44

He doth intend she shall be England's queen.

KING HENRY. [To the Ambassador.] In argument and proof  
of which contract,

Bear her this jewel, pledge of my affection.

And so, my lord protector, see them guarded, 48

And safely brought to Dover; where inshipp'd

Commit them to the fortune of the sea.

[Exeunt KING HENRY and Train; GLOUCESTER,

EXETER, and Ambassadors.

CARDINAL. Stay, my lord legate: you shall first receive  
The sum of money which I promised 52

Should be deliver'd to his holiness

For clothing me in these grave ornaments.

LEGATE. I will attend upon your lordship's leisure.

CARDINAL. [Aside.] Now Winchester will not submit,  
I trow, 56

Or be inferior to the proudest peer.

Humphrey of Gloucester, thou shalt well perceive

That neither in birth or for authority

The bishop will be overborne by thee: 60

I'll either make thee stoop and bend thy knee,

Or sack this country with a mutiny. [Exeunt.]

SCENE II.—France. Plains in Anjou.

Enter CHARLES, BURGUNDY, ALENÇON, JOAN LA PUCELLE, and Forces,  
marching.CHARLES. These news, my lord, may cheer our drooping  
spirits ;'Tis said the stout Parisians do revolt,  
And turn again unto the warlike French.ALENÇON. Then, march to Paris, royal Charles of  
France, 4

And keep not back your powers in dalliance.

JOAN. Peace be amongst them if they turn to us ;  
Else, ruin combat with their palaces !

Enter a Scout.

SCOUT. Success unto our valiant general, 8  
And happiness to his accomplices !CHARLES. What tidings send our scouts ? I prithee  
speak.SCOUT. The English army, that divided was  
Into two parties, is now conjoin'd in one, 12  
And means to give you battle presently.CHARLES. Somewhat too sudden, sirs, the warning is :  
But we will presently provide for them.BURGUNDY. I trust the ghost of Talbot is not there :  
Now he is gone, my lord, you need not fear. 17JOAN. Of all base passions, fear is most accurs'd.  
Command the conquest, Charles, it shall be thine ;  
Let Henry fret and all the world repine. 20CHARLES. Then on, my lords ; and France be for-  
tunate ! [Exeunt.

SCENE III.—France. Before Angiers.

Alarum : Excursions. Enter JOAN LA PUCELLE.

JOAN. The regent conquers and the Frenchmen fly.  
Now help, ye charming spells and periapts ;  
And ye choice spirits that admonish me  
And give me signs of future accidents : [Thunder.  
You speedy helpers, that are substitutes 5  
Under the lordly monarch of the north,  
Appear, and aid me in this enterprise !



Enter Fiends.

This speedy and quick appearance argues proof 8  
Of your accustom'd diligence to me.  
Now, ye familiar spirits, that are cull'd  
Out of the powerful regions under earth, 11  
Help me this once, that France may get the field.

[They walk, and speak not.

O ! hold me not with silence over-long.  
Where I was wont to feed you with my blood,  
I'll lop a member off and give it you,  
In earnest of a further benefit, 16  
So you do condescend to help me now. [They hang their heads.  
No hope to have redress ? My body shall  
Pay recompense, if you will grant my suit.

[They shake their heads.

Cannot my body nor blood-sacrifice 20  
Entreat you to your wonted furtherance ?  
Then take my soul ; my body, soul, and all,  
Before that England give the French the foil. [They depart.  
See ! they forsake me. Now the time is come, 24  
That France must vail her lofty-plumed crest,  
And let her head fall into England's lap.  
My ancient incantations are too weak,  
And hell too strong for me to buckle with : 28  
Now, France, thy glory droopeth to the dust. [Exit.

Alarum. Enter French and English fighting : JOAN LA PUCELLE  
and YORK fight hand to hand : JOAN LA PUCELLE is taken.  
The French fly.

YORK. Damsel of France, I think I have you fast :  
Unchain your spirits now with spelling charms,  
And try if they can gain your liberty. 32  
A goodly prize, fit for the devil's grace !  
See how the ugly witch doth bend her brows,  
As if with Circe she would change my shape.

JOAN. Chang'd to a worser shape thou canst not be.

YORK. O ! Charles the Dauphin is a proper man ;  
No shape but his can please your dainty eye.

JOAN. A plaguing mischief light on Charles and thee !  
And may ye both be suddenly surpris'd 40  
By bloody hands, in sleeping on your beds !

YORK. Fell banning hag, enchantress, hold thy tongue !

JOAN. I prithee, give me leave to curse a while.

YORK. Curse, miscreant, when thou comest to the stake.

[Exeunt.

Alarum. Enter SUFFOLK, with MARGARET in his hand.

SUFFOLK. Be what thou wilt, thou art my prisoner.

[Gazes on her.

O fairest beauty ! do not fear nor fly,  
For I will touch thee but with reverent hands.  
I kiss these fingers for eternal peace, 48  
And lay them gently on thy tender side.  
What art thou ? say, that I may honour thee.

MARGARET. Margaret my name, and daughter to a king,

The King of Naples, whosoe'er thou art. 52

SUFFOLK. An earl I am, and Suffolk am I call'd.

Be not offended, nature's miracle,  
Thou art allotted to be ta'en by me :  
So doth the swan her downy cygnets save, 56  
Keeping them prisoners underneath her wings.  
Yet if this servile usage once offend,  
Go and be free again, as Suffolk's friend.

[She turns away as going.

O stay ! I have no power to let her pass ; 60

My hand would free her, but my heart says no.

As plays the sun upon the glassy streams,  
Twinkling another counterfeited beam,  
So seems this gorgeous beauty to mine eyes. 64

Fain would I woo her, yet I dare not speak :

I'll call for pen and ink and write my mind.

Fie, De la Pole ! disable not thyself ;

Hast not a tongue ? is she not here thy prisoner ?

Wilt thou be daunted at a woman's sight ? 69

Ay ; beauty's princely majesty is such

Confounds the tongue and makes the senses rough.

MARGARET. Say, Earl of Suffolk,—if thy name be so,—

What ransom must I pay before I pass ? 73

For I perceive I am thy prisoner.

SUFFOLK. [Aside.] How canst thou tell she will deny thy suit,

Before thou make a trial of her love ? 76

MARGARET. Why speak'st thou not ? what ransom must I pay ?

SUFFOLK. [Aside.] She's beautiful and therefore to be woo'd,

She is a woman, therefore to be won.

MARGARET. Wilt thou accept of ransom, yea or no?

SUFFOLK. [Aside.] Fond man! remember that thou hast a wife; 81

Then how can Margaret be thy paramour?

MARGARET. I were best to leave him, for he will not hear.

SUFFOLK. [Aside.] There all is marr'd; there lies a cooling card. 81

MARGARET. He talks at random; sure, the man is mad.

SUFFOLK. [Aside.] And yet a dispensation may be had.

MARGARET. And yet I would that you would answer me.

SUFFOLK. [Aside.] I'll win this Lady Margaret. For whom? 88

Why, for my king: tush! that's a wooden thing.

MARGARET. [Overhearing him.] He talks of wood: it is some carpenter.

SUFFOLK. [Aside.] Yet so my fancy may be satisfied, And peace established between these realms. 92

But there remains a scruple in that too;

For though her father be the King of Naples,

Duke of Anjou and Maine, yet is he poor,

And our nobility will scorn the match. 96

MARGARET. Hear ye, captain? Are you not at leisure?

SUFFOLK. [Aside.] It shall be so, disdain they ne'er so much:

Henry is youthful and will quickly yield.

Madam, I have a secret to reveal. 100

MARGARET. [Aside.] What though I be enthrall'd? he seems a knight,

And will not any way dishonour me.

SUFFOLK. Lady, vouchsafe to listen what I say.

MARGARET. [Aside.] Perhaps I shall be rescu'd by the French; 104

And then I need not crave his courtesy.

SUFFOLK. Sweet madam, give me hearing in a cause—

MARGARET. Tush, women have been captivate ere now.

SUFFOLK. Lady, wherefore talk you so ? 108

MARGARET. I cry you mercy, 'tis but quid for quo.

SUFFOLK. Say, gentle princess, would you not suppose  
Your bondage happy to be made a queen ?

MARGARET. To be a queen in bondage is more vile  
Than is a slave in base servility ; 113  
For princes should be free.

SUFFOLK. And so shall you,  
If happy England's royal king be free.

MARGARET. Why, what concerns his freedom unto me ?

SUFFOLK. I'll undertake to make thee Henry's queen,  
To put a golden sceptre in thy hand 118  
And set a precious crown upon thy head,  
If thou wilt condescend to be my—

MARGARET. What ?

SUFFOLK. His love.

MARGARET. I am unworthy to be Henry's wife. 121

SUFFOLK. No, gentle madam ; I unworthy am  
To woo so fair a dame to be his wife  
And have no portion in the choice myself. 124  
How say you, madam, are you so content ?

MARGARET. An if my father please, I am content.

SUFFOLK. Then call our captains and our colours forth !  
And, madam, at your father's castle walls 128  
We'll crave a parley, to confer with him. [Troops come forward.

A Parley sounded. Enter REIGNIER on the Walls.

SUFFOLK. See, Reignier, see thy daughter prisoner !

REIGNIER. To whom ?

SUFFOLK. To me.

REIGNIER. Suffolk, what remedy ?  
I am a soldier, and unapt to weep, 132  
Or to exclaim on Fortune's fickleness.

SUFFOLK. Yes, there is remedy enough, my lord :  
Consent, and for thy honour, give consent,  
Thy daughter shall be wedded to my king, 136  
Whom I with pain have woo'd and won thereto ;  
And this her easy-held imprisonment  
Hath gain'd thy daughter princely liberty. 139

REIGNIER. Speaks Suffolk as he thinks ?

SUFFOLK. Fair Margaret knows  
That Suffolk doth not flatter, face, or feign.

REIGNIER. Upon thy princely warrant, I descend

To give thee answer of thy just demand. [Exit from the walls.  
**SUFFOLK.** And here I will expect thy coming.

Trumpets sound. Enter REIGNIER, below.

**REIGNIER.** Welcome, brave earl, into our territories :  
 Command in Anjou what your honour pleases.

**SUFFOLK.** Thanks, Reignier, happy for so sweet a  
 child,

Fit to be made companion with a king. 148

What answer makes your Grace unto my suit ?

**REIGNIER.** Since thou dost deign to woo her little  
 worth

To be the princely bride of such a lord,  
 Upon condition I may quietly 152

Enjoy mine own, the county Maine and Anjou,  
 Free from oppression or the stroke of war,  
 My daughter shall be Henry's if he please.

**SUFFOLK.** That is her ransom ; I deliver her ;  
 And those two counties I will undertake 157  
 Your Grace shall well and quietly enjoy.

**REIGNIER.** And I again, in Henry's royal name,  
 As deputy unto that gracious king, 160  
 Give thee her hand for sign of plighted faith.

**SUFFOLK.** Reignier of France, I give thee kingly  
 thanks,  
 Because this is in traffic of a king :

[Aside.] And yet, methinks, I could be well content  
 To be mine own attorney in this case. 165

I'll over then, to England with this news,  
 And make this marriage to be solemniz'd.

So farewell, Reignier : set this diamond safe, 168  
 In golden palaces, as it becomes.

**REIGNIER.** I do embrace thee, as I would embrace  
 The Christian prince, King Henry, were he here.

**MARGARET.** Farewell, my lord. Good wishes, praise,  
 and prayers 172

Shall Suffolk ever have of Margaret. [Going.

**SUFFOLK.** Farewell, sweet madam ! but hark you,  
 Margaret ;

No princely commendations to my king ?

**MARGARET.** Such commendations as become a maid,  
 A virgin, and his servant, say to him. 177

**SUFFOLK.** Words sweetly plac'd and modestly directed.

But madam, I must trouble you again,  
No loving token to his majesty ?

180

MARGARET. Yes, my good lord ; a pure unspotted  
heart,

Never yet taint with love, I send the king.

SUFFOLK. And this withal.

[Kisses her.

MARGARET. That for thyself : I will not so presume,  
To send such peevish tokens to a king.

185

[Exeunt REIGNIER and MARGARET.

SUFFOLK. O ! wert thou for myself ! But Suffolk,  
stay ;

Thou mayst not wander in that labyrinth ;

There Minotaurs and ugly treasons lurk.

188

Solicit Henry with her wondrous praise :

Bethink thee on her virtues that surmount

And natural graces that extinguish art ;

Repeat their semblance often on the seas,

192

That, when thou com'st to kneel at Henry's feet,

Thou mayst bereave him of his wits with wonder. [Exit.

SCENE IV.—Camp of the DUKE OF YORK, in Anjou.

Enter YORK, WARWICK, and Others.

YORK. Bring forth that sorceress, condemn'd to burn.

Enter JOAN LA PUCELLE, guarded ; and a Shepherd.

SHEPHERD. Ah, Joan ; this kills thy father's heart  
outright.

Have I sought every country far and near,

And, now it is my chance to find thee out,

4

Must I behold thy timeless cruel death ?

Ah, Joan ! sweet daughter Joan, I'll die with thee.

JOAN. Decrepit miser ! base ignoble wretch !

I am descended of a gentler blood :

8

Thou art no father nor no friend of mine.

SHEPHERD. Out, out ! My lords, an please you, 'tis  
not so ;

I did beget her, all the parish knows :

Her mother liveth yet, can testify

12

She was the first fruit of my bachelorship.

WARWICK. Graceless ! wilt thou deny thy parentage ?

YORK. This argues what her kind of life hath been :  
Wicked and vile ; and so her death concludes,

16

**SHEPHERD.** Fie, Joan, that thou wilt be so obstacle !  
 God knows, thou art a collop of my flesh ;  
 And for thy sake have I shed many a tear :

Deny me not, I prithee, gentle Joan. 20

**JOAN.** Peasant, avaunt ! You have suborn'd this man,  
 Of purpose to obscure my noble birth.

**SHEPHERD.** 'Tis true, I gave a noble to the priest,  
 The morn that I was wedded to her mother. 24

Kneel down and take my blessing, good my girl.

Wilt thou not stoop ? Now cursed be the time

Of thy nativity ! I would the milk

Thy mother gave thee, when thou suck'dst her breast,

Had been a little ratsbane for thy sake ! 29

Or else, when thou didst keep my lambs a-field

I wish some ravenous wolf had eaten thee !

Dost thou deny thy father, cursed drab ? 32

O ! burn her, burn her ! hanging is too good. [Exit.

**YORK.** Take her away ; for she hath liv'd too long,  
 To fill the world with vicious qualities.

**JOAN.** First, let me tell you whom you have con-  
 demn'd : 36

Not me begotten of a shepherd swain,

But issu'd from the progeny of kings ;

Virtuous and holy ; chosen from above,

By inspiration of celestial grace, 40

To work exceeding miracles on earth.

I never had to do with wicked spirits :

But you,—that are polluted with your lusts,

Stain'd with the guiltless blood of innocents, 44

Corrupt and tainted with a thousand vices,—

Because you want the grace that others have,

You judge it straight a thing impossible

To compass wonders but by help of devils. 48

No misconceived ! Joan of Arc hath been

A virgin from her tender infancy,

Chaste and immaculate in very thought ;

Whose maiden blood, thus rigorously effus'd, 52

Will cry for vengeance at the gates of heaven.

**YORK.** Ay, ay : away with her to execution !

**WARWICK.** And hark ye, sirs ; because she is a maid,  
 Spare for no faggots, let there be enow : 56

Place barrels of pitch upon the fatal stake,

That so her torture may be shortened.

JOAN. Will nothing turn your unrelenting hearts ?  
Then, Joan, discover thine infirmity ; 60  
That warranteth by law to be thy privilege.  
I am with child, ye bloody homicides :  
Murder not then the fruit within my womb,  
Although ye hale me to a violent death. 64

YORK. Now, heaven forefend ! the holy maid with  
child !

WARWICK. The greatest miracle that e'er ye wrought !  
Is all your strict preciseness come to this ?

YORK. She and the Dauphin have been juggling :  
I did imagine what would be her refuge. 69

WARWICK. Well, go to ; we will have no bastards live ;  
Especially since Charles must father it.

JOAN. You are deceiv'd ; my child is none of his :  
It was Alençon that enjoy'd my love. 73

YORK. Alençon ! that notorious Machiavel !  
It dies an if it had a thousand lives.

JOAN. O ! give me leave, I have deluded you :  
'Twas neither Charles, nor yet the duke I nam'd,  
But Reignier, King of Naples, that prevail'd.

WARWICK. A married man : that's most intolerable.

YORK. Why, here's a girl ! I think she knows not  
well, 80

There were so many, whom she may accuse.

WARWICK. It's sign she hath been liberal and free.

YORK. And yet, forsooth, she is a virgin pure.  
Strumpet, thy words condemn thy brat and thee :  
Use no entreaty, for it is in vain. 85

JOAN. Then lead me hence ; with whom I leave my  
curse :

May never glorious sun reflex his beams  
Upon the country where you make abode ; 88  
But darkness and the gloomy shade of death  
Environ you, till mischief and despair  
Drive you to break your necks or hang yourselves !

[Exit, guarded.

YORK. Break thou in pieces and consume to ashes,  
Thou foul accursed minister of hell ! 93

Enter CARDINAL BEAUFORT, attended.

CARDINAL. Lord regent, I do greet your excellence  
With letters of commission from the king.



For know, my lords, the states of Christendom, 96  
 Mov'd with remorse of these outrageous broils,  
 Have earnestly implor'd a general peace  
 Betwixt our nation and the aspiring French ;  
 And here at hand the Dauphin, and his train, 100  
 Approacheth to confer about some matter.

YORK. Is all our travail turn'd to this effect ?  
 After the slaughter of so many peers,  
 So many captains, gentlemen, and soldiers, 104  
 That in this quarrel have been overthrown,  
 And sold their bodies for their country's benefit,  
 Shall we at last conclude effeminate peace ?  
 Have we not lost most part of all the towns, 108  
 By treason, falsehood, and by treachery,  
 Our great progenitors had conquered ?  
 O ! Warwick, Warwick ! I foresee with grief  
 The utter loss of all the realm of France. 112

WARWICK. Be patient, York : if we conclude a peace,  
 It shall be with such strict and severe covenants  
 As little shall the Frenchmen gain thereby.

Enter CHARLES, attended ; ALENÇON, the BASTARD OF ORLEANS,  
 REIGNIER, and Others.

CHARLES. Since, lords of England, it is thus agreed,  
 That peaceful truce shall be proclaim'd in France,  
 We come to be informed by yourselves  
 What the conditions of that league must be. 119

YORK. Speak, Winchester ; for boiling choler chokes  
 The hollow passage of my poison'd voice,  
 By sight of these our baleful enemies.

CARDINAL. Charles, and the rest, it is enacted thus :  
 That, in regard King Henry gives consent, 124  
 Of mere compassion and of lenity,  
 To ease your country of distressful war,  
 And suffer you to breathe in fruitful peace,  
 You shall become true liegemen to his crown : 128  
 And, Charles, upon condition thou wilt swear  
 To pay him tribute, and submit thyself,  
 Thou shalt be plac'd as viceroy under him,  
 And still enjoy the regal dignity. 132

ALENÇON. Must he be then as shadow of himself ?  
 Adorn his temples with a coronet,  
 And yet, in substance and authority,

Retain but privilege of a private man ? 136  
This proffer is absurd and reasonless.

CHARLES. 'Tis known already that I am possess'd  
With more than half the Gallian territories,  
And therein reverenc'd for their lawful king : 140  
Shall I, for lucre of the rest unvanquish'd,  
Detract so much from that prerogative  
As to be call'd but viceroy of the whole ?  
No, lord ambassador ; I'll rather keep 144  
That which I have than, coveting for more,  
Be cast from possibility of all.

YORK. Insulting Charles ! hast thou by secret means  
Us'd intercession to obtain a league, 148  
And now the matter grows to compromise,  
Stand'st thou aloof upon comparison ?  
Either accept the title thou usurp'st,  
Of benefit proceeding from our king 152  
And not of any challenge of desert,  
Or we will plague thee with incessant wars.

REIGNIER. My lord, you do not well in obstinacy  
To cavil in the course of this contract : 156  
If once it be neglected, ten to one,  
We shall not find like opportunity.

ALENÇON. [Aside to CHARLES.] To say the truth, it is your  
policy  
To save your subjects from such massacre 160  
And ruthless slaughters as are daily seen  
By our proceeding in hostility ;  
And therefore take this compact of a truce, 163  
Although you break it when your pleasure serves.

WARWICK. How sayst thou, Charles ? shall our con-  
dition stand ?

CHARLES. It shall ;  
Only reserv'd, you claim no interest  
In any of our towns of garrison. 168

YORK. Then swear allegiance to his majesty ;  
As thou art knight, never to disobey  
Nor be rebellious to the crown of England, 171  
Thou, nor thy nobles, to the crown of England.

[CHARLES, &c., give tokens of fealty.

So, now dismiss your army when ye please ;  
Hang up your ensigns, let your drums be still,  
For here we entertain a solemn peace. [Exeunt.

SCENE V.—London. A Room in the Palace.

Enter KING HENRY, in conference with SUFFOLK; GLOUCESTER and EXETER following.

KING HENRY. Your wondrous rare description, noble earl,

Of beauteous Margaret hath astonish'd me :  
Her virtues, graced with external gifts  
Do breed love's settled passions in my heart : 4  
And like as rigour of tempestuous gusts  
Provokes the mightiest hulk against the tide,  
So am I driven by breath of her renown  
Either to suffer shipwrack, or arrive 8  
Where I may have fruition of her love.

SUFFOLK. Tush ! my good lord, this superficial tale  
Is but a preface of her worthy praise :  
The chief perfections of that lovely dame— 12  
Had I sufficient skill to utter them—  
Would make a volume of enticing lines,  
Able to ravish any dull conceit :  
And, which is more, she is not so divine, 16  
So full replete with choice of all delights,  
But with as humble lowliness of mind  
She is content to be at your command ;  
Command, I mean, of virtuous chaste intents, . 20  
To love and honour Henry as her lord.

KING HENRY. And otherwise will Henry ne'er presume.  
Therefore, my Lord Protector, give consent  
That Margaret may be England's royal queen. 24

GLOUCESTER. So should I give consent to flatter sin.  
You know, my lord, your highness is betroth'd  
Unto another lady of esteem ;  
How shall we then dispense with that contract, 28  
And not deface your honour with reproach ?

SUFFOLK. As doth a ruler with unlawful oaths ;  
Or one that, at a triumph having vow'd  
To try his strength, forsaketh yet the lists 32  
By reason of his adversary's odds.  
A poor earl's daughter is unequal odds,  
And therefore may be broke without offence.

GLOUCESTER. Why, what, I pray, is Margaret more  
than that ? 36  
Her father is no better than an earl,

Although in glorious titles he excel.

SUFFOLK. Yes, my good lord, her father is a king,  
The King of Naples and Jerusalem ; 40  
And of such great authority in France  
As his alliance will confirm our peace,  
And keep the Frenchmen in allegiance.

GLOUCESTER. And so the Earl of Armagnac may do,  
Because he is near kinsman unto Charles. 45

EXETER. Beside, his wealth doth warrant liberal  
dower,  
Where Reignier sooner will receive than give.

SUFFOLK. A dower, my lords ! disgrace not so your  
king, 48

That he should be so abject, base, and poor,  
To choose for wealth and not for perfect love.  
Henry is able to enrich his queen,

And not to seek a queen to make him rich : 52

So worthless peasants bargain for their wives,

As market-men for oxen, sheep, or horse.

Marriage is a matter of more worth.

Than to be dealt in by attorneyship : 56

Not whom we will, but whom his Grace affects,

Must be companion of his nuptial bed ;

And therefore, lords, since he affects her most,

It most of all these reasons bindeth us, 60

In our opinions she should be preferr'd.

For what is wedlock forced, but a hell,

An age of discord and continual strife ?

Whereas the contrary 'bringeth bliss, 64

And is a pattern of celestial peace.

Whom should we match with Henry, being a king,

But Margaret, that is daughter to a king ?

Her peerless feature, joined with her birth, 68

Approves her fit for none but for a king :

Her valiant courage and undaunted spirit—

More than in women commonly is seen—

Will answer our hope in issue of a king ; 72

For Henry, son unto a conqueror,

Is likely to beget more conquerors,

If with a lady of so high resolve

As is fair Margaret he be link'd in love. 76

Then yield, my lords ; and here conclude with me

That Margaret shall be queen, and none but she.

KING HENRY. Whether it be through force of your report,

My noble lord of Suffolk, or for that 80

My tender youth was never yet attain't

With any passion of inflaming love,

I cannot tell ; but this I am assur'd,

I feel such sharp dissension in my breast, 84

Such fierce alarums both of hope and fear,

As I am sick with working of my thoughts.

Take, therefore, shipping ; post, my lord, to France ;

Agree to any covenants, and procure 88

That Lady Margaret do vouchsafe to come

To cross the seas to England and be crown'd

King Henry's faithful and anointed queen :

For your expenses and sufficient charge, 92

Among the people gather up a tenth.

Be gone, I say ; for till you do return

I rest perplexed with a thousand cares.

And you, good uncle, banish all offence : 96

If you do censure me by what you were,

Not what you are, I know it will excuse

This sudden execution of my will.

And so, conduct me, where, from company 100

I may revolve and ruminatè my grief. [Exit.

GLOUCESTER. Ay, grief, I fear me, both at first and last.

[Exeunt GLOUCESTER and EXETER.

SUFFOLK. Thus Suffolk hath prevail'd ; and thus he goes,

As did the youthful Paris once to Greece ; 104

With hope to find the like event in love,

But prosper better than the Trojan did.

Margaret shall now be queen, and rule the king ;

But I will rule both her, the king, and realm. [Exit.

THE SECOND PART OF  
KING HENRY THE SIXTH

# THE SECOND PART OF KING HENRY THE SIXTH

## INTRODUCTION

THE Second and Third Parts of *King Henry VI* involve what have been justly described as the most difficult, if not the most important, problems in Shakespearean criticism. To indicate in a few pages the nature of a discussion which has extended to what would form a considerable volume is all that can here be attempted.

On March 12, 1593, was entered in the Stationers' Register, with the name of the publisher, Thomas Millington, a book entitled *The First part of the Contention betwixt the two famous Houses of Yorke and Lancaster* (the title is here abbreviated). In the course of the next year (1594) this appeared in quarto form. Again, a year later, in 1595, Millington published *The True Tragedie of Richard Duke of Yorke and the death of good King Henrie the sixt*. It is not necessary at this point to notice any later editions of these plays. The Second and Third Parts of *King Henry VI* were, as far as we know, first printed in the folio of 1623.

The two old plays and the two plays of the folio are closely connected. But how? Are the old plays surreptitious and imperfect presentations of the plays which we read as Shakespeare's in the folio text? Or are these plays of Shakespeare recasts of the old plays? Who wrote *The First Part of the Contention*? Who wrote *The True Tragedie*? Had Shakespeare any hand in them? Was he their sole author? If the folio plays be recasts or revisions, who revised the original material? Was Shakespeare alone the reviser? Or had he the aid of some early contemporary, such as Marlowe? These are the questions which have perplexed scholars, and about which no agreement has been arrived at.

I may at once express my own unhesitating conviction that the old quartos are not imperfect renderings of the folio plays. The latter are undoubtedly, in my opinion, recasts of the earlier dramas; and this view is taken not by all but by the great majority of competent students. The matter seems to me to have been settled long since by the arguments of Malone, which will be found in volume xviii of the Variorum edition of 1821. To his remarkable Dissertation, which later studies have somewhat unduly obscured, the reader may be referred.

Nor do I believe it is open to reasonable question that the hand of Shakespeare appears in the plays which are given in the folio and are here reprinted. So far, I think, we are on firm ground. Beyond this, it seems to me, we enter into a region of doubt. I incline to think that Shakespeare was to some extent concerned with *The First Part of the Contention* and *The True Tragedie*, but I am not sure. I am more strongly disposed to believe that he was the sole reviser; but such Marlowesque lines as those which open Act IV of the Second Part of *King Henry VI*:

The gaudy, blabbing, and remorseful day  
Is crept into the bosom of the sea,

with others that follow, suggest a doubt.

It has been estimated that in the Second Part 1,715 lines of the folio text are wholly new; 840 lines are more or less altered from those of the old play; some 520 lines are taken over without alteration. The revision of the Third Part involved less change; 1,010 lines of the old play remain unchanged; about 871 are altered; some 1,021 are new. Such an estimate may not be quite exact, but it is approximately right. In any case the debt to the old plays is large. Are we to suppose that Shakespeare was only reclaiming work of his own? Or was he an 'upstart crow', exhibiting himself in borrowed plumage? Plagiarism is hardly a word to apply to his work even if the writing of others reappeared in his revision. It was customary to make additions to plays with a view to attracting a fresh audience to the theatre; the play belonged to the company; the reviser in general received a slender



reward. And yet, as we shall see, Shakespeare did not escape the charge of being a plagiarist.

Robert Greene the dramatist died in poverty in 1592; his last pamphlet, *Greene's Groatsworth of Wit bought with a Million of Repentance*, was written on his death-bed, and was published after Greene's death by Henry Chettle. He warns three of his fellows, who can be identified as Marlowe, Peele, and Nash (or possibly Lodge) against the players: 'Yes, trust them not; for there is an upstart Crow, beautified with our feathers, that, with his tiger's heart wrapt in a player's hide, supposes he is as well able to bumbast out a blank verse as the best of you; and, being an absolute Johannes factotum, is in his own conceit the only Shake-scene in a country.' This is the earliest allusion to Shakespeare in print that has been discovered. The words refer to the player as an author; 'bumbast out a blank verse' means, not to mouth upon the stage—such a use of 'bombast' seems to be modern,—but to swell or stuff out a blank verse with high-sounding epithets. A sting is put into the attack on Shakespeare as poet and plagiarist by the parody of a line—perhaps Shakespeare's—which appears in both *The True Tragedie and Henry VI*, Part III (I. iv. 137). It looks as if Greene resented Shakespeare's appropriation of work of his own as well as certain original work of the actor-poet, who was robbing the university men of their legitimate profits. We are gratified to know that Chettle before long made his apology for letting these words appear in print, and confessed Shakespeare's 'uprightness of dealing, which argues his honesty' as well as his excellence in his profession. Possibly the shaft was pointed by Greene so that Marlowe, whom he addresses, might be touched. The supreme master of dramatic blank verse was Marlowe; and it may be that the line parodied was a verse of Marlowe's own. To suggest to Marlowe that he had cause to be indignant against 'Shake-scene' may have been Greene's design. A certain 'R. B. gent.' in 1594, reasserts that the men who eclipsed Greene's fame had been guilty of purloining his plumes.

Clearly a presumption arises that Greene, or Marlowe, or both dramatists, had some connexion as authors with

*The Contention* and *The True Tragedie*, for the two plays, whoever may have been the writer or writers, cannot be separated from one another. The fact that they were, by and by, published by Millington does not tend to support the theory that they were of Shakespeare's sole authorship. Millington dealt in dishonest or doubtful Shakespearean wares. He did not, however, put the name of Shakespeare upon the title-pages, nor was Shakespeare's name associated with the old plays in this way until, after his death, Pavier, another publisher of dubious reputation, issued in 1619 a fraudulent undated quarto, comprising both of these under the title of *The Whole Contention . . . Divided into two Parts*. Again, the fact that *The True Tragedie*, and probably both dramas, were originally acted by Lord Pembroke's players tells rather against the notion that they were written wholly by Shakespeare. We may add the circumstance that Shakespeare's primary source in his undoubted histories was the *Chronicle* of Holinshed, while here the primary source is that of Hall.

Setting aside as now untenable the opinion of Charles Knight, however ably maintained, that Shakespeare was the sole author of both the old quarto plays and the Second and Third Parts of *Henry VI*, as found in the folio, I will set down briefly the conclusions arrived at by those scholars who have made this difficult subject a special field of study.

Malone was more concerned to disprove Shakespeare's authorship of the old plays than to determine who the writers actually were. He achieved his purpose as respects Shakespeare's sole authorship in the Dissertation which Porson described as 'one of the most convincing pieces of criticism he had ever met with'. In this Dissertation he assumed rather than argued in detail that the old plays were the work of Greene or Peele, or both of them, and that they had been remodelled into the Second and Third Parts of *King Henry VI* by Shakespeare. At a later date, when writing his study of the Chronological Order of Shakespeare's plays, while maintaining his opinion that Shakespeare was the sole reviser, Malone inclined to the belief that Marlowe was the author of *The True Tragedie*,

and perhaps also of the other old drama, *The First Part of the Contention*. He at first supposed that Shakespeare's revision was made in the year 1591; afterwards he doubtfully suggested the date 1593-4; and some memoranda left by him seem to indicate that at one time he considered the year 1600 as possibly not too late. This last date is surely erroneous, nor does it appear that Malone ever ventured seriously to advocate so impossible a theory. The First Part of *Henry VI* he ascribed to some writer who was neither Shakespeare nor the author or authors of the plays on which the Second and Third Parts are founded.

Utilizing for his own purposes some points of Malone's argument, but extending the scope of his inquiry so as to include what is styled aesthetic criticism, R. Grant White, in his 'Essay on the Authorship of *King Henry VI*', came to conclusions opposed to those of Malone. He held that 'Greene, Marlowe, Shakespeare, and, perhaps, Peele wrote *The First Part of the Contention* and *The True Tragedy* together for the Earl of Pembroke's company, and that Shakespeare afterwards made these plays into the Second and Third Parts of *King Henry VI* for the company with which he became exclusively connected, by rewriting and rejecting the parts contributed by his former co-labourers, and retaining his own contributions, with only such addition and amendment as might be expected from any writer upon the revision of a work produced in his earlier years of authorship'. He considered that the inclusion by Heminge and Condell of *King Henry VI* in the first folio is testimony of weight respecting their authorship, and that the transference of nearly 3,500 lines, entire or modified, from the old plays would be a 'conveyance' without parallel if none of these lines were by Shakespeare. In the passages common to the old plays and the folio he found work of a different kind from anything discoverable in the work of Marlowe or Greene or Peele, thought, diction, and rhythm here springing up together, in the Shakespearean manner, 'to flow in a consentaneous stream.' The humour of the Jack Cade scenes alike in the old plays and the folio he could ascribe only to Shakespeare. In passages rejected by the folio he saw writing inferior to that

of Shakespeare's earliest plays and unlike it. In the frequent use of 'for to' with an infinitive in some of these passages he recognized a trick of Greene's style. He repeated what had been previously noticed, that the Macedonian pirate Abradas, spoken of in *The First Part of the Contention*, is heard of nowhere except in Greene's pamphlet, *Penelope's Web*. He observed a homogeneity between the passages retained from the quartos and the added passages of the folio. And he dwelt on the unity of characterization between the elder and the later versions of these plays, especially in the instances of Warwick, Margaret of Anjou, Clifford, and Gloucester (York's son); while Gloucester is essentially one and the same with the Richard III of Shakespeare's drama of that name.

It is impossible to present here even in a summary the evidence and arguments by which Miss Jane Lee, an admirable scholar, was led to conclusions differing wholly from those of Grant White. Her learned and laborious study will be found in the 'Transactions of the New Shakspeare Society, 1875-6'. She held that the old quarto plays are the work of Greene and Marlowe, with possibly some aid from Peele. The revision which transformed these into the Second and Third Parts of *King Henry VI* was accomplished, in her opinion, by Shakespeare in collaboration with Marlowe. She pursued her investigation so far as to attempt to determine scene by scene the author or authors of each, and scene by scene the reviser or revisers. This—as she admits—was perhaps to carry too far the refinement of conjecture. Speaking broadly, she ascribed, in *The Contention* and *The True Tragedie*, to Marlowe the characters of King Henry VI, Cardinal Beaufort, York, Suffolk, the two Cliffords, and Richard; to Greene, the characters of Duke Humphrey (at least in part), the Duchess Eleanor, Clarence, Edward IV, Elizabeth, Sir John Hume, and Jack Cade. In the task of revision she held that Shakespeare's share was larger than that of Marlowe.

Taking as extreme a position on the one side as did Charles Knight upon the other, Mr. Fleay, in a paper contributed (November, 1875) to *Macmillan's Magazine*, maintained that Marlowe and Peele wrote *Henry VI*,

Parts II and III, of which *The Contention* and *True Tragedie* are pirated and imperfect versions. Eleven years later, in his *Life and Work of Shakespeare*, he modified his view; he attributed *The Contention* to Greene, Peele, perhaps Kyd, Lodge, and Marlowe; *The True Tragedie* he attributed to Marlowe—regarding it as an abridgement of the original play, and the work of the author himself. *The Contention*, he held, was to some extent revised by Shakespeare—the Lodge part at the end is absolutely rewritten in the St. Alban's battle, and the very names of the actors are changed in the Cade insurrection. Who could have done this but Shakespeare? Here and here only can we find an explanation of the inclusion of these plays in the folio edition of his works in 1623.' Some corrections in the Third Part of *Henry VI*, he allows, are from Shakespeare's hand. It is right to state the conclusions of so laborious a student, but, it must be admitted, they are insufficiently supported by argument.

Last, the problem was once more attacked in his editions of the three Parts of *Henry VI* in 'The Arden Shakespeare', by Mr. H. C. Hart. I cannot follow into his details that learned and ingenious scholar. But he has summed up his general view in a short passage which may be quoted: 'The whole series of *Henry VI* may have been evolved as follows. Greene, Peele, and Marlowe selected, or were allotted, the *Henry VI* period to dramatize. They divided it roughly . . . into three parts. Greene was in command of the wars of France, and the death of that brave Talbot, the terror of the French, together with the exploits of Joan the Pucelle, and the loss of the towns [i.e. Part I] . . . Peele was chief of *The First Part of the Contention*, and with the others completed it. In doing so he received much help from the rising dramatist, Shakespeare. Marlowe had charge of *The True Tragedy*. Shakespeare's success in the assistance he gave Peele, but especially in the completion of *I Henry VI*, acquired for him a yet larger share in this play. Meanwhile Greene had failed in his share. . . . Shakespeare, having given satisfaction in his aid to *The First Contention*, was entrusted with the sketch in an altogether chaotic and unfinished state, for completion. And his work

was so well approved and of such high promise, that it justified the expansion into the full-sized play of *I Henry VI*. And as a natural sequence, owing to its immediate and triumphant success, the others were handed over to him for expansion into Parts II and III.'

Such, reduced to the smallest possible proportions, is an outline of a controversy which may not even now have reached its termination. In the introduction to the Third Part I shall speak briefly of the literary quality and character-drawing in these two plays.

## DRAMATIS PERSONAE

**KING HENRY THE SIXTH.**

**HUMPHREY**, Duke of Gloucester, his Uncle.

**CARDINAL BEAUFORT**, Bishop of Winchester, Great-Uncle to the King.

**RICHARD PLANTAGENET**, Duke of York.

**EDWARD** and **RICHARD**, his Sons.

**DUKE OF SOMERSET**,

**DUKE OF SUFFOLK**,

**DUKE OF BUCKINGHAM**,

**LORD CLIFFORD**,

**YOUNG CLIFFORD**, his Son,

} Of the King's Party.

**EARL OF SALISBURY**,

**EARL OF WARWICK**,

} of the York Faction.

**LORD SCALES**, Governor of the Tower.

**SIR HUMPHREY STAFFORD**, and **WILLIAM STAFFORD**, his Brother.

**LORD SAY**.

A Sea-captain, Master, and Master's Mate.

**WALTER WHITMORE**.

**SIR JOHN STANLEY**.

Two Gentlemen, prisoners with Suffolk.

**VAUX**.

**MATTHEW GOFFE**.

**JOHN HUME** and **JOHN SOUTHWELL**, Priests.

**BOLINGBROKE**, a Conjuror.

A Spirit raised by him.

**THOMAS HORNER**, an Armourer.

**PETER**, his Man.

Clerk of Chatham.

Mayor of St. Alban's.

**SIMPCOX**, an Impostor.

Two Murderers.

**JACK CADE**, a Rebel.

**GEORGE BEVIS**, **JOHN HOLLAND**, **DICK the Butcher**, **SMITH the Weaver**, **MICHAEL**, &c., Followers of Cade.

**ALEXANDER IDEN**, a Kentish Gentleman.

**MARGARET**, Queen to King Henry.

**ELEANOR**, Duchess of Gloucester.

**MARGERIE JOURDAIN**, a Witch.

Wife to Simpcox.

Lords, Ladies, and Attendants; Herald, Petitioners, Aldermen, a Beadle, Sheriff, and Officers; Citizens, Prentices, Falconers, Guards, Soldiers, Messengers, &c.

SCENE.—In various parts of England.

# THE SECOND PART OF KING HENRY THE SIXTH

## ACT I.

SCENE I.—London. A Room of State in the Palace.

Flourish of Trumpets : then hautboys. Enter, on one side, KING HENRY, DUKE OF GLOUCESTER, SALISBURY, WARWICK, and CARDINAL BEAUFORT ; on the other, QUEEN MARGARET, led in by SUFFOLK ; YORK, SOMERSET, BUCKINGHAM, and Others, following.

SUFFOLK. As by your high imperial majesty  
I had in charge at my depart for France,  
As procurator to your excellence,  
To marry Princess Margaret for your Grace ; 4  
So, in the famous ancient city, Tours,  
In presence of the Kings of France and Sicil,  
The Dukes of Orleans, Calaber, Britaine, and Alençon,  
Seven earls, twelve barons, and twenty reverend bishops,  
I have perform'd my task, and was espous'd : 9  
And humbly now upon my bended knee,  
In sight of England and her lordly peers,  
Deliver up my title in the queen 12  
To your most gracious hands, that are the substance  
Of that great shadow I did represent ;  
The happiest gift that ever marquess gave,  
The fairest queen that ever king receiv'd. 16

KING HENRY. Suffolk, arise. Welcome, Queen Margaret :

I can express no kinder sign of love  
Than this kind kiss. O Lord ! that lends me life,  
Lend me a heart replete with thankfulness ; 20  
For thou hast given me in this beauteous face  
A world of earthly blessings to my soul,  
If sympathy of love unite our thoughts.

QUEEN MARGARET. Great King of England and my  
gracious lord, 24  
The mutual conference that my mind hath had



By day, by night, waking, and in my dreams,  
 In courtly company, or at my beads,  
 With you, mine alderliest sovereign, 28  
 Makes me the bolder to salute my king  
 With ruder terms, such as my wit affords,  
 And over-joy of heart doth minister.

KING HENRY. Her sight did ravish, but her grace in  
 speech, 32

Her words y-clad with wisdom's majesty,  
 Makes me from wondering fall to weeping joys ;  
 Such is the fulness of my heart's content. 35  
 Lords, with one cheerful voice welcome my love.

ALL. Long live Queen Margaret, England's happiness !

QUEEN MARGARET. We thank you all. [Flourish.

SUFFOLK. My Lord Protector, so it please your Grace,  
 Here are the articles of contracted peace 40  
 Between our sovereign and the French King Charles,  
 For eighteen months concluded by consent.

GLOUCESTER. 'Imprimis, It is agreed between the  
 French king, Charles, and William De la Pole, Marquess  
 of Suffolk, ambassador for Henry King of England, that  
 the said Henry shall espouse the Lady Margaret,  
 daughter unto Reignier King of Naples, Sicilia, and  
 Jerusalem, and crown her Queen of England ere the  
 thirtieth of May next ensuing. Item, That the duchy  
 of Anjou and the county of Maine shall be released and  
 delivered to the king her father.'— [Lets the paper fall.

KING HENRY. Uncle, how now !

GLOUCESTER. Pardon me, gracious lord ;  
 Some sudden qualm hath struck me at the heart  
 And dimm'd mine eyes, that I can read no further.

KING HENRY. Uncle of Winchester, I pray, read on.

CARDINAL. 'Item, It is further agreed between them,  
 that the duchies of Anjou and Maine shall be released  
 and delivered over to the king her father ; and she sent  
 over of the King of England's own proper cost and  
 charges, without having any dowry.' 60

KING HENRY. They please us well. Lord marquess,  
 kneel down :

We here create thee the first Duke of Suffolk,  
 And girt thee with the sword. Cousin of York,  
 We here discharge your Grace from being regent 64  
 I' the parts of France, till term of eighteen months

Be full expir'd. Thanks, uncle Winchester,  
 Gloucester, York, Buckingham, Somerset,  
 Salisbury, and Warwick ;  
 We thank you all for this great favour done,  
 In entertainment to my princely queen.  
 Come, let us in, and with all speed provide  
 To see her coronation be perform'd.

98

72

[Exit KING, QUEEN, and SUFFOLK.]

GLOUCESTER. Brave peers of England, pillars of the  
 state,  
 To you Duke Humphrey must unload his grief,  
 Your grief, the common grief of all the land.  
 What ! did my brother Henry spend his youth,  
 His valour, coin, and people, in the wars ?  
 Did he so often lodge in open field,  
 In winter's cold, and summer's parching heat,  
 To conquer France, his true inheritance ?  
 And did my brother Bedford toil his wits,  
 To keep by policy what Henry got ?  
 Have you yourselves, Somerset, Buckingham,  
 Brave York, Salisbury, and victorious Warwick,  
 Receiv'd deep scars in France and Normandy ?  
 Or hath mine uncle Beaufort and myself,  
 With all the learned council of the realm,  
 Studied so long, sat in the council-house  
 Early and late, debating to and fro  
 How France and Frenchmen might be kept in awe ?  
 And hath his highness in his infancy  
 Been crown'd in Paris, in despite of foes ?  
 And shall these labours and these honours die ?  
 Shall Henry's conquest, Bedford's vigilance,  
 Your deeds of war and all our counsel die ?  
 O peers of England ! shameful is this league,  
 Fatal this marriage, cancelling your fame,  
 Blotting your names from books of memory,  
 Razing the characters of your renown,  
 Defacing monuments of conquer'd France,  
 Undoing all, as all had never been.

76

80

84

88

92

96

100

CARDINAL. Nephew, what means this passionate dis-  
 course,  
 This peroration with such circumstance ?  
 For France, 'tis ours ; and we will keep it still.

104

GLOUCESTER. Ay, uncle ; we will keep it, if we can ;

But now it is impossible we should.

Suffolk, the new-made duke that rules the roast,  
Hath given the duchies of Anjou and Maine 108  
Unto the poor King Reignier, whose large style  
Agrees not with the leanness of his purse.

SALISBURY. Now, by the death of him who died for all,  
These counties were the keys of Normandy. 112  
But wherefore weeps Warwick, my valiant son ?

WARWICK. For grief that they are past recovery :  
For, were there hope to conquer them again,  
My sword should shed hot blood, mine eyes no tears.  
Anjou and Maine ! myself did win them both ; 117  
Those provinces these arms of mine did conquer :  
And are the cities, that I got with wounds,  
Deliver'd up again with peaceful words ? 120  
Mort Dieu !

YORK. For Suffolk's duke, may he be suffocate,  
That dims the honour of this warlike isle ! 123  
France should have torn and rent my very heart  
Before I would have yielded to this league.  
I never read but England's kings have had  
Large sums of gold and dowries with their wives ;  
And our King Henry gives away his own, 128  
To match with her that brings no vantages.

GLOUCESTER. A proper jest, and never heard before,  
That Suffolk should demand a whole fifteenth  
For costs and charges in transporting her ! 132  
She should have stay'd in France, and starv'd in France,  
Before—

CARDINAL. My Lord of Gloucester, now you grow too  
hot :  
It was the pleasure of my lord the king. 136

GLOUCESTER. My Lord of Winchester, I know your  
mind :

'Tis not my speeches that you do mislike,  
But 'tis my presence that doth trouble ye.  
Rancour will out : proud prelate, in thy face 140  
I see thy fury. If I longer stay  
We shall begin our ancient bickerings.  
Lordings, farewell ; and say, when I am gone,  
I prophesied France will be lost ere long. [Exit.

CARDINAL. So, there goes our protector in a rage.  
'Tis known to you he is mine enemy,

Nay, more, an enemy unto you all,  
And no great friend, I fear me, to the king. 148  
Consider, lords, he is the next of blood,  
And heir apparent to the English crown :  
Had Henry got an empire by his marriage,  
And all the wealthy kingdoms of the west, 152  
There 's reason he should be displeas'd at it.  
Look to it, lords ; let not his smoothing words  
Bewitch your hearts ; be wise and circumspect.  
What though the common people favour him, 156  
Calling him, ' Humphrey, the good Duke of Gloucester ' ;  
Clapping their hands, and crying with loud voice,  
' Jesu maintain your royal excellence ! ' 159  
With ' God preserve the good Duke Humphrey ! '  
I fear me, lords, for all this flattering gloss,  
He will be found a dangerous protector.

BUCKINGHAM. Why should he then protect our sove-  
reign,  
He being of age to govern of himself ? 164  
Cousin of Somerset, join you with me,  
And all together, with the Duke of Suffolk,  
We'll quickly hoise Duke Humphrey from his seat.

CARDINAL. This weighty business will not brook  
delay ; 168  
I'll to the Duke of Suffolk presently. [Exit.

SOMERSET. Cousin of Buckingham, though Hum-  
phrey's pride  
And greatness of his place be grief to us,  
Yet let us watch the haughty cardinal : 172  
His insolence is more intolerable  
Than all the princes in the land beside :  
If Gloucester be displac'd, he'll be protector.

BUCKINGHAM. Or thou, or I, Somerset, will be pro-  
tector, 176  
Despite Duke Humphrey or the cardinal.

[Exit BUCKINGHAM and SOMERSET.]

SALISBURY. Pride went before, ambition follows him.  
While these do labour for their own preferment,  
Behoves it us to labour for the realm. 180  
I never saw but Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester,  
Did bear him like a noble gentleman.  
Oft have I seen the haughty cardinal  
More like a soldier than a man o' the church, 184

As stout and proud as he were lord of all,  
 Swear like a ruffian and demean himself  
 Unlike the ruler of a commonweal.  
 Warwick, my son, the comfort of my age, 188  
 Thy deeds, thy plainness, and thy house-keeping,  
 Have won the greatest favour of the commons,  
 Excepting none but good Duke Humphrey :  
 And, brother York, thy acts in Ireland, 192  
 In bringing them to civil discipline,  
 Thy late exploits done in the heart of France,  
 When thou wert regent for our sovereign, 195  
 Have made thee fear'd and honour'd of the people.  
 Join we together for the public good,  
 In what we can to bridle and suppress  
 The pride of Suffolk and the cardinal,  
 With Somerset's and Buckingham's ambition ; 200  
 And, as we may, cherish Duke Humphrey's deeds,  
 While they do tend the profit of the land.

WARWICK. So God help Warwick, as he loves the land,  
 And common profit of his country ! 204

YORK. [Aside.] And so says York, for he hath greatest  
 cause.

SALISBURY. Then let's make haste away, and look  
 unto the main.

WARWICK. Unto the main ! O father, Maine is lost !  
 That Maine which by main force Warwick did win,  
 And would have kept so long as breath did last : 209  
 Main chance, father, you meant ; but I meant Maine,  
 Which I will win from France, or else be slain.

[Exeunt WARWICK and SALISBURY.]

YORK. Anjou and Maine are given to the French ;  
 Paris is lost ; the state of Normandy 213  
 Stands on a tickle point now they are gone.  
 Suffolk concluded on the articles,  
 The peers agreed, and Henry was well pleas'd 216  
 To change two dukedoms for a duke's fair daughter.  
 I cannot blame them all : what is 't to them ?  
 'Tis thine they give away, and not their own.  
 Pirates may make cheap pennyworths of their pillage,  
 And purchase friends, and give to courtezans, 221  
 Still revelling like lords till all be gone ;  
 While as the silly owner of the goods 223  
 Weeps over them, and wrings his hapless hands,

And shakes his head, and trembling stands aloof,  
While all is shar'd and all is borne away,  
Ready to starve and dare not touch his own :  
So York must sit and fret and bite his tongue 228  
While his own lands are bargain'd for and sold.  
Methinks the realms of England, France, and Ireland  
Bear that proportion to my flesh and blood  
As did the fatal brand Althæa burn'd 232  
Unto the prince's heart of Calydon.  
Anjou and Maine both given unto the French !  
Cold news for me, for I had hope of France,  
Even as I have of fertile England's soil. 236  
A day will come when York shall claim his own ;  
And therefore I will take the Nevils' parts  
And make a show of love to proud Duke Humphrey,  
And, when I spy advantage, claim the crown, 240  
For that's the golden mark I seek to hit.  
Nor shall proud Lancaster usurp my right,  
Nor hold the sceptre in his childish fist,  
Nor wear the diadem upon his head, 244  
Whose church-like humours fit not for a crown.  
Then, York, be still awhile, till time do serve :  
Watch thou and wake when others be asleep,  
To pry into the secrets of the state ; 248  
Till Henry, surfeiting in joys of love,  
With his new bride and England's dear-bought queen,  
And Humphrey with the peers be fall'n at jars :  
Then will I raise aloft the milk-white rose, 252  
With whose sweet smell the air shall be perfum'd,  
And in my standard bear the arms of York,  
To grapple with the house of Lancaster ;  
And, force perforce, I'll make him yield the crown,  
Whose bookish rule hath pull'd fair England down. (Exit.)

SCENE II.—The Same. A Room in the DUKE OF GLOUCESTER'S House.

Enter GLOUCESTER and his DUCHESS.

DUCHESS. Why droops my lord, like over-ripen'd corn  
Hanging the head at Ceres' plenteous load ?  
Why doth the great Duke Humphrey knit his brows,  
As frowning at the favours of the world ? 4  
Why are thine eyes fix'd to the sullen earth,

Gazing on that which seems to dim thy sight ?  
 What seest thou there ? King Henry's diadem  
 Enchas'd with all the honours of the world ? 8

If so, gaze on, and grovel on thy face,  
 Until thy head be circled with the same.  
 Put forth thy hand, reach at the glorious gold : 11  
 What ! is 't too short ? I'll lengthen it with mine ;  
 And having both together heav'd it up,  
 We'll both together lift our heads to heaven,  
 And never more abase our sight so low  
 As to vouchsafe one glance unto the ground. 16

GLOUCESTER. O Nell, sweet Nell, if thou dost love  
 thy lord,

Banish the canker of ambitious thoughts :  
 And may that thought, when I imagine ill  
 Against my king and nephew, virtuous Henry, 20  
 Be my last breathing in this mortal world !  
 My troublous dream this night doth make me sad.

DUCHESS. What dream'd my lord ? tell me, and I'll  
 requite it

With sweet rehearsal of my morning's dream. 24

GLOUCESTER. Methought this staff, mine office-badge  
 in court,

Was broke in twain ; by whom I have forgot,  
 But, as I think, it was by the cardinal ;  
 And on the pieces of the broken wand 28  
 Were plac'd the heads of Edmund Duke of Somerset,  
 And William De la Pole, first Duke of Suffolk.  
 This was my dream : what it doth bode, God knows.

DUCHESS. Tut ! this was nothing but an argument  
 That he that breaks a stick of Gloucester's grove  
 Shall lose his head for his presumption. 34

But list to me, my Humphrey, my sweet duke :  
 Methought I sat in seat of majesty 36

In the cathedral church of Westminster,  
 And in that chair where kings and queens are crown'd ;  
 Where Henry and Dame Margaret kneel'd to me,  
 And on my head did set the diadem. 40

GLOUCESTER. Nay, Eleanor, then must I chide out-  
 right :

Presumptuous dame ! ill-natur'd Eleanor !  
 Art thou not second woman in the realm,  
 And the protector's wife, belov'd of him ? 44

Hast thou not worldly pleasure at command,  
 Above the reach or compass of thy thought ?  
 And wilt thou still be hammering treachery,  
 To tumble down thy husband and thyself 48  
 From top of honour to disgrace's feet ?  
 Away from me, and let me hear no more.

DUCHESS. What, what, my lord ! are you so choleric  
 With Eleanor, for telling but her dream ? 52  
 Next time I'll keep my dreams unto myself,  
 And not be check'd.

GLOUCESTER. Nay, be not angry ; I am pleas'd again.

Enter a Messenger.

MESSANGER. My Lord Protector, 'tis his highness' 56  
 pleasure

You do prepare to ride unto Saint Alban's,  
 Whereas the king and queen do mean to hawk.

GLOUCESTER. I go. Come, Nell, thou wilt ride with us ?

DUCHESS. Yes, my good lord, I'll follow presently.

[Exeunt GLOUCESTER and Messenger.

Follow I must ; I cannot go before, 61  
 While Gloucester bears this base and humble mind.  
 Were I a man, a duke, and next of blood,  
 I would remove these tedious stumbling-blocks 64  
 And smooth my way upon their headless necks ;  
 And, being a woman, I will not be slack  
 To play my part in Fortune's pageant. 67  
 Where are you there ? Sir John ! nay, fear not, man,  
 We are alone ; here 's none but thee and I.

Enter HUME.

HUME. Jesus preserve your royal majesty !

DUCHESS. What sayst thou ? majesty ! I am but Grace.

HUME. But, by the grace of God, and Hume's advice,  
 Your Grace's title shall be multiplied. 73

DUCHESS. What sayst thou, man ? hast thou as yet  
 conferr'd

With Margery Jourdain, the cunning witch,  
 With Roger Bolingbroke, the conjurer ? 76  
 And will they undertake to do me good ?

HUME. This they have promised, to show your high-  
 ness  
 A spirit rais'd from depth of under-ground,



That shall make answer to such questions 80  
As by your Grace shall be propounded him.

DUCHESS. It is enough : I'll think upon the questions.  
When from Saint Alban's we do make return  
We'll see these things effected to the full. 84

Here, Hume, take this reward ; make merry, man,  
With thy confederates in this weighty cause. [Exit.

HUME. Hume must make merry with the duchess'  
gold ;

Marry and shall. But how now, Sir John Hume !  
Seal up your lips, and give no words but mum : 89  
The business asketh silent secrecy.

Dame Eleanor gives gold to bring the witch :  
Gold cannot come amiss, were she a devil. 92

Yet have I gold flies from another coast :  
I dare not say from the rich cardinal  
And from the great and new-made Duke of Suffolk ;  
Yet I do find it so : for, to be plain, 96

They, knowing Dame Eleanor's aspiring humour,  
Have hired me to undermine the duchess  
And buzz these conjurations in her brain.

They say, ' A crafty knave does need no broker ; '  
Yet am I Suffolk and the cardinal's broker. 101

Hume, if you take not heed, you shall go near  
To call them both a pair of crafty knaves.

Well, so it stands ; and thus, I fear, at last 104  
Hume's knavery will be the duchess' wrack,

And her attainure will be Humphrey's fall.  
Sort how it will I shall have gold for all. [Exit.

SCENE III.—The Same. A Room in the Palace.

Enter three or four Petitioners, PETER, the Armourer's man, being one.

FIRST PETITIONER. My masters, let's stand close :  
my Lord Protector will come this way by and by, and  
then we may deliver our supplications in the quill.

SECOND PETITIONER. Marry, the Lord protect him,  
for he's a good man ! Jesu bless him ! 5

Enter SUFFOLK and QUEEN MARGARET.

FIRST PETITIONER. Here a' comes, methinks, and the  
queen with him. I'll be the first, sure.

SECOND PETITIONER. Come back, fool! this is the Duke of Suffolk and not my Lord Protector. 9

SUFFOLK. How now, fellow! wouldst anything with me?

FIRST PETITIONER. I pray, my lord, pardon me: I took ye for my Lord Protector. 13

QUEEN MARGARET. [Glancing at the superscriptions.] 'To my Lord Protector!' are your supplications to his lordship? Let me see them: what is thine? 16

FIRST PETITIONER. Mine is, an't please your Grace, against John Goodman, my Lord Cardinal's man, for keeping my house, and lands, my wife and all, from me.

SUFFOLK. Thy wife too! that is some wrong indeed. What's yours? What's here? 'Against the Duke of Suffolk, for enclosing the commons of Melford!' How now, sir knave!

SECOND PETITIONER. Alas! sir, I am but a poor petitioner of our whole township. 25

PETER. [Presenting his petition.] Against my master, Thomas Horner, for saying that the Duke of York was rightful heir to the crown. 28

QUEEN MARGARET. What sayst thou? Did the Duke of York say he was rightful heir to the crown?

PETER. That my master was? No, forsooth: my master said that he was; and that the king was an usurper. 33

SUFFOLK. Who is there?

Enter Servants.

Take this fellow in, and send for his master with a pursuivant presently. We'll hear more of your matter before the king. [Exeunt Servants with PETER.]

QUEEN MARGARET. And as for you, that love to be protected

Under the wings of our protector's grace, 39

Begin your suits anew and sue to him. [Tears the petitions.]

Away, base cullions! Suffolk, let them go.

ALL. Come, let's be gone. [Exeunt Petitioners.]

QUEEN MARGARET. My Lord of Suffolk, say, is this the guise,

Is this the fashion of the court of England? 44

Is this the government of Britain's isle,

And this the royalty of Albion's king?

What ! shall King Henry be a pupil still  
Under the surly Gloucester's governance ? 48

Am I a queen in title and in style,  
And must be made a subject to a duke ?  
I tell thee, Pole, when in the city Tours  
Thou ran'st a tilt in honour of my love, 52  
And stol'st away the ladies' hearts of France,  
I thought King Henry had resembled thee

In courage, courtship, and proportion :  
But all his mind is bent to holiness, 56

To number Ave-Maries on his beads ;  
His champions are the prophets and apostles ;  
His weapons holy saws of sacred writ ;  
His study is his tilt-yard, and his loves 60  
Are brazen images of canoniz'd saints.

I would the college of the cardinals  
Would choose him pope, and carry him to Rome,  
And set the triple crown upon his head : 64  
That were a state fit for his holiness.

SUFFOLK. Madam, be patient ; as I was cause  
Your highness came to England, so will I  
In England work your Grace's full content. 68

QUEEN MARGARET. Beside the haught protector, have  
we Beaufort

The imperious churchman, Somerset, Buckingham,  
And grumbling York ; and not the least of these  
But can do more in England than the king. 72

SUFFOLK. And he of these that can do most of all  
Cannot do more in England than the Nevils :  
Salisbury and Warwick are no simple peers.

QUEEN MARGARET. Not all these lords do vex me half  
so much 76

As that proud dame, the Lord Protector's wife :  
She sweeps it through the court with troops of ladies,  
More like an empress than Duke Humphrey's wife.  
Strangers in court do take her for the queen : 80

She bears a duke's revenues on her back,  
And in her heart she scorns our poverty.  
Shall I not live to be aveng'd on her ?

Contemptuous base-born callot as she is, 84  
She vaunted 'mongst her minions t' other day  
The very train of her worst wearing gown  
Was better worth than all my father's lands,

Till Suffolk gave two dukedoms for his daughter. 86

SUFFOLK. Madam, myself have lim'd a bush for her,  
And plac'd a quire of such entieing birds  
That she will light to listen to the lays,  
And never mount to trouble you again. 92

So, let her rest : and, madam, list to me ;

For I am bold to counsel you in this.

Although we fancy not the cardinal,

Yet must we join with him and with the lords 96

Till we have brought Duke Humphrey in disgrace.

As for the Duke of York, this late complaint

Will make but little for his benefit :

So, one by one, we'll weed them all at last. 100

And you yourself shall steer the happy helm.

Sound a sennet. Enter KING HENRY, YORK, and SOMERSET, DUKE  
and DUCHESS OF GLOUCESTER, CARDINAL BEAUFORT, BUCKING-  
HAM, SALISBURY, and WARWICK.

KING HENRY. For my part, noble lords, I care not  
which ;

Or Somerset or York, all 's one to me.

YORK. If York have ill demean'd himself in France,  
Then let him be denay'd the regentship. 105

SOMERSET. If Somerset be unworthy of the place,  
Let York be regent ; I will yield to him.

WARWICK. Whether your Grace be worthy, yea or no,  
Dispute not that : York is the worthier. 109

CARDINAL. Ambitious Warwick, let thy betters speak.

WARWICK. The cardinal 's not my better in the field.

BUCKINGHAM. All in this presence are thy betters,  
Warwick. 112

WARWICK. Warwick may live to be the best of all.

SALISBURY. Peace, son ! and show some reason,  
Buckingham,

Why Somerset should be preferr'd in this.

QUEEN MARGARET. Because the king, forsooth, will  
have it so. 116

GLOUCESTER. Madam, the king is old enough himself  
To give his censure : these are no women's matters.

QUEEN MARGARET. If he be old enough, what needs  
your Grace

To be protector of his excellence ? 120

GLOUCESTER. Madam, I am protector of the realm ;

And at his pleasure will resign my place.

SUFFOLK. Resign it then and leave thine insolence.  
 Since thou wert king,—as who is king but thou ?—  
 The commonwealth hath daily run to wrack ; 125  
 The Dauphin hath prevail'd beyond the seas ;  
 And all the peers and nobles of the realm  
 Have been as bondmen to thy sovereignty. 128

CARDINAL. The commons hast thou rack'd ; the  
 clergy's bags  
 Are lank and lean with thy extortions.

SOMERSET. Thy sumptuous buildings and thy wife's  
 attire  
 Have cost a mass of public treasury. 132

BUCKINGHAM. Thy cruelty in execution  
 Upon offenders hath exceeded law,  
 And left thee to the mercy of the law.

QUEEN MARGARET. Thy sale of offices and towns in  
 France, 136

If they were known, as the suspect is great,  
 Would make thee quickly hop without thy head.

[Exit GLOUCESTER. The QUEEN drops her fan.  
 Give me my fan : what, minion ! can ye not ?

[Giving the DUCHESS a box on the ear.  
 I cry you mercy, madam, was it you ? 140

DUCHESS. Was't I ? yea, I it was, proud French-  
 woman :

Could I come near your beauty with my nails  
 I'd set my ten commandments in your face.

KING HENRY. Sweet aunt, be quiet ; 'twas against  
 her will. 144

DUCHESS. Against her will ! Good king, look to't in  
 time ;

She'll hamper thee and dandle thee like a baby :  
 Though in this place most master wear no breeches,  
 She shall not strike Dame Eleanor unreveng'd. [Exit.

BUCKINGHAM. Lord Cardinal, I will follow Eleanor,  
 And listen after Humphrey, how he proceeds :  
 She's tickled now ; her fume can need no spurs,  
 She'll gallop far enough to her destruction. 152

[Exit BUCKINGHAM.

Re-enter GLOUCESTER.

GLOUCESTER. Now, lords, my choler being over-blown  
 With walking once about the quadrangle,

I come to talk of commonwealth affairs.  
As for your spiteful false objections, 156  
Prove them, and I lie open to the law :  
But God in mercy so deal with my soul  
As I in duty love my king and country !  
But to the matter that we have in hand. 160  
I say, my sovereign, York is meetest man  
To be your regent in the realm of France.

SUFFOLK. Before we make election, give me leave  
To show some reason, of no little force, 164  
That York is most unmeet of any man.

YORK. I'll tell thee, Suffolk, why I am unmeet :  
First, for I cannot flatter thee in pride ;  
Next, if I be appointed for the place, 168  
My Lord of Somerset will keep me here,  
Without discharge, money, or furniture,  
Till France be won into the Dauphin's hands.  
Last time I danc'd attendance on his will 172  
Till Paris was besieg'd, famish'd, and lost.

WARWICK. That can I witness ; and a fouler fact  
Did never traitor in the land commit.

SUFFOLK. Peace, headstrong Warwick ! 176

WARWICK. Image of pride, why should I hold my  
peace ?

Enter Servants of SUFFOLK, bringing in HORNER and PETER.

SUFFOLK. Because here is a man accus'd of treason :  
Pray God the Duke of York excuse himself ! 179

YORK. Doth any one accuse York for a traitor ?

KING HENRY. What mean'st thou, Suffolk ? tell me,  
what are these ?

SUFFOLK. Please it your majesty, this is the man  
That doth accuse his master of high treason.  
His words were these : that Richard, Duke of York,  
Was rightful heir unto the English crown, 185  
And that your majesty was an usurper.

KING HENRY. Say, man, were these thy words ?

HORNER. An't shall please your majesty, I never  
said nor thought any such matter : God is my witness,  
I am falsely accused by the villain.

PETER. By these ten bones, my lords, he did speak  
them to me in the garret one night, as we were scouring  
my Lord of York's armour. 193

YORK. Base dunghill villain, and mechanical,  
 I'll have thy head for this thy traitor's speech.  
 I do beseech your royal majesty 196  
 Let him have all the rigour of the law.

HORNER. Alas ! my lord, hang me if ever I spake the  
 words. My accuser is my prentice ; and when I did  
 correct him for his fault the other day, he did vow upon  
 his knees he would be even with me : I have good  
 witness of this : therefore I beseech your majesty, do not  
 cast away an honest man for a villain's accusation.

KING HENRY. Uncle, what shall we say to this in law ?

GLOUCESTER. This doom, my lord, if I may judge.  
 Let Somerset be regent o'er the French, 206  
 Because in York this breeds suspicion ;  
 And let these have a day appointed them  
 For single combat in convenient place ;  
 For he hath witness of his servant's malice. 210  
 This is the law, and this Duke Humphrey's doom.

KING HENRY. Then be it so. My Lord of Somerset,  
 We make your Grace Lord Regent o'er the French.

SOMERSET. I humbly thank your royal majesty.

HORNER. And I accept the combat willingly.

PETER. Alas ! my lord, I cannot fight : for God's  
 sake, pity my case ! the spite of man prevaileth against  
 me. O Lord, have mercy upon me ! I shall never be  
 able to fight a blow. O Lord, my heart !

GLOUCESTER. Sirrah, or you must fight, or else be  
 hang'd. 220

KING HENRY. Away with them to prison ; and the day  
 Of combat shall be the last of the next month.

Come, Somerset, we'll see thee sent away. [Exeunt.

SCENE IV.—The Same. The DUKE OF GLOUCESTER'S Garden.

Enter MARGERY JOURDAIN, HUME, SOUTHWELL, and BOLINGBROKE.

HUME. Come, my masters ; the duchess, I tell you,  
 expects performance of your promises.

BOLINGBROKE. Master Hume, we are therefore pro-  
 vided. Will her ladyship behold and hear our exor-  
 cisms ? 5

HUME. Ay ; what else ? fear you not her courage.

BOLINGBROKE. I have heard her reported to be a  
 woman of invincible spirit : but it shall be convenient,

Master Hume, that you be by her aloft while we be busy below ; and so, I pray you, go in God's name, and leave us. [Exit HUME.] Mother Jourdain, be you prostrate, and grovel on the earth ; John Southwell, read you ; and let us to our work. 13

Enter DUCHESS aloft, HUME following.

DUCHESS. Well said, my masters, and welcome all. To this gear the sooner the better.

BOLINGBROKE. Patience, good lady ; wizards know their times : 16

Deep night, dark night, the silent of the night,  
The time of night when Troy was set on fire ;  
The time when screech-owls cry, and ban-dogs howl,  
And spirits walk, and ghosts break up their graves,  
That time best fits the work we have in hand. 21  
Madam, sit you, and fear not : whom we raise  
We will make fast within a hallow'd verge.

[Here they perform the ceremonies belonging, and make the circle ;  
BOLINGBROKE or SOUTHWELL reads, 'Conjuro te,' &c. It  
thunders and lightens terribly ; then the Spirit riseth.

SPIRIT. Adsum. 24

MARGERY JOURDAIN. Asmath !

By the eternal God, whose name and power  
Thou tremblest at, answer that I shall ask ; 27  
For till thou speak, thou shalt not pass from hence.

SPIRIT. Ask what thou wilt. That I had said and done !

BOLINGBROKE. First, of the king : what shall of him  
become ?

SPIRIT. The duke yet lives that Henry shall depose ;  
But him outlive, and die a violent death. 32

[As the Spirit speaks, SOUTHWELL writes the answers.

BOLINGBROKE. What fate awaits the Duke of Suffolk ?

SPIRIT. By water shall he die and take his end.

BOLINGBROKE. What shall befall the Duke of Somerset ?

SPIRIT. Let him shun castles : 36

Safer shall he be upon the sandy plains  
Than where castles mounted stand.

Have done, for more I hardly can endure.

BOLINGBROKE. Descend to darkness and the burning  
lake ! 40

False fiend, avoid ! [Thunder and lightning. Spirit descends.



Enter YORK and BUCKINGHAM, hastily, with their Guards, and Others.

YORK. Lay hands upon these traitors and their trash.  
Beldam, I think we watch'd you at an inch.

What ! madam, are you there ? the king and common-  
weal 44

Are deeply indebted for this piece of pains :

My Lord Protector will, I doubt it not,

See you well guerdon'd for these good deserts.

DUCHESS. Not half so bad as thine to England's king,  
Injurious duke, that threat'st where is no cause. 49

BUCKINGHAM. True, madam, none at all. What call  
you this ? [Showing her the papers.

Away with them ! let them be clapp'd up close

And kept asunder. You, madam, shall with us :

Stafford, take her to thee.—

[Exeunt above, DUCHESS and HUME guarded.

We'll see your trinkets here all forthcoming.

All, away ! [Exeunt SOUTHWELL, BOLINGBROKE, &c., guarded.

YORK. Lord Buckingham, methinks you watch'd her  
well : 56

A pretty plot, well chosen to build upon !

Now, pray, my lord, let 's see the devil's writ.

What have we here ?

'The duke yet lives that Henry shall depose ; 60

But him outlive, and die a violent death.'

Why, this is just

'Aio te, Æacida, Romanos vincere posse.'

Well, to the rest : 64

'Tell me what fate awaits the Duke of Suffolk ?

By water shall he die and take his end.

What shall betide the Duke of Somerset ?

Let him shun castles : 68

Safer shall he be upon the sandy plains

Than where castles mounted stand.'

Come, come, my lords ; these oracles

Are hardly attain'd, and hardly understood. 72

The king is now in progress towards Saint Alban's ;

With him, the husband of this lovely lady :

Thither go these news as fast as horse can carry them,

A sorry breakfast for my Lord Protector. 76

BUCKINGHAM. Your Grace shall give me leave, my  
Lord of York,

To be the post, in hope of his reward.

YORK. At your pleasure, my good lord. Who's within there, ho !

Enter a Serving-man.

Invite my Lords of Salisbury and Warwick 80  
To sup with me to-morrow night. Away !

(Flourish. Exeunt.

## ACT II.

SCENE I.—St. Alban's.

Enter KING HENRY, QUEEN MARGARET, GLOUCESTER, CARDINAL BEAUFORT, and SUFFOLK, with Falconers, hollaing.

QUEEN MARGARET. Believe me, lords, for flying at the brook,

I saw not better sport these seven years' day :

Yet, by your leave, the wind was very high,

And, ten to one, old Joan had not gone out. 4

KING HENRY. But what a point, my lord, your falcon made,

And what a pitch she flew above the rest !

To see how God in all his creatures works !

Yea, man and birds are fain of climbing high. 8

SUFFOLK. No marvel, an it like your majesty,

My Lord Protector's hawks do tower so well ;

They know their master loves to be aloft,

And bears his thoughts above his falcon's pitch. 12

GLOUCESTER. My lord, 'tis but a base ignoble mind That mounts no higher than a bird can soar.

CARDINAL. I thought as much ; he'd be above the clouds.

GLOUCESTER. Ay, my Lord Cardinal ; how think you by that ? 16

Were it not good your Grace could fly to heaven ?

KING HENRY. The treasury of everlasting joy.

CARDINAL. Thy heaven is on earth ; thine eyes and thoughts

Beat on a crown, the treasure of thy heart ; 20

Pernicious protector, dangerous peer,

That smooth'st it so with king and commonweal !

GLOUCESTER. What! cardinal, is your priesthood  
grown peremptory?

Tantæne animis cœlestibus iræ? 24

Churchmen so hot? good uncle, hide such malice;

With such holiness can you do it?

SUFFOLK. No malice, sir; no more than well becomes  
So good a quarrel and so bad a peer. 28

GLOUCESTER. As who, my lord?

SUFFOLK. Why, as you, my lord,  
An't like your lordly lord-protectorship.

GLOUCESTER. Why, Suffolk, England knows thine  
insolence. 31

QUEEN MARGARET. And thy ambition, Gloucester.

KING HENRY. I prithee, peace,  
Good queen, and whet not on these furious peers;  
For blessed are the peacemakers on earth.

CARDINAL. Let me be blessed for the peace I make  
Against this proud protector with my sword! 36

GLOUCESTER. [Aside to the CARDINAL.] Faith, holy uncle,  
would 'twere come to that!

CARDINAL. [Aside to GLOUCESTER.] Marry, when thou darest.

GLOUCESTER. [Aside to the CARDINAL.] Make up no factious  
numbers for the matter;  
In thine own person answer thy abuse. 40

CARDINAL. [Aside to GLOUCESTER.] Ay, where thou darest  
not peep: an if thou darest,  
This evening on the east side of the grove.

KING HENRY. How now, my lords!

CARDINAL. Believe me, cousin Gloucester,  
Had not your man put up the fowl so suddenly, 44  
We had had more sport. [Aside to GLOUCESTER.] Come with  
thy two-hand sword.

GLOUCESTER. True, uncle.

CARDINAL. Are you advis'd? [Aside to GLOUCESTER.] the  
east side of the grove.

GLOUCESTER. [Aside to the CARDINAL.] Cardinal, I am with  
you. 48

KING HENRY. Why, how now, uncle Gloucester!

GLOUCESTER. Talking of hawking; nothing else, my  
lord.—

[Aside to the CARDINAL.] Now, by God's mother, priest, I'll  
shave your crown

For this, or all my fence shall fail. 52

CARDINAL. [Aside to GLOUCESTER.] Medice teipsum ;  
Protector, see to 't well, protect yourself.

KING HENRY. The winds grow high ; so do your  
stomachs, lords.

How irksome is this music to my heart ! 56

When such strings jar, what hope of harmony ?

I pray, my lords, let me compound this strife.

Enter One crying 'A Miracle.'

GLOUCESTER. What means this noise ?  
Fellow, what miracle dost thou proclaim ? 60

ONE. A miracle ! a miracle !

SUFFOLK. Come to the king, and tell him what miracle.

ONE. Forsooth, a blind man at Saint Alban's shrine,  
Within this half hour hath receiv'd his sight ; 64  
A man that ne'er saw in his life before.

KING HENRY. Now, God be prais'd, that to believing  
souls  
Gives light in darkness, comfort in despair !

Enter the Mayor of Saint Alban's, and his Brethren, and SIMPCOX,  
borne between two persons in a chair ; his Wife and a great  
multitude following.

CARDINAL. Here comes the townsmen on procession,  
To present your highness with the man. 69

KING HENRY. Great is his comfort in this earthly vale,  
Although by his sight his sin be multiplied.

GLOUCESTER. Stand by, my masters ; bring him near  
the king : 72

His highness' pleasure is to talk with him.

KING HENRY. Good fellow, tell us here the circum-  
stance,

That we for thee may glorify the Lord.

What ! hast thou been long blind, and now restor'd ?

SIMPCOX. Born blind, an 't please your Grace. 77

WIFE. Ay, indeed, was he.

SUFFOLK. What woman is this ?

WIFE. His wife, an 't like your worship. 80

GLOUCESTER. Hadst thou been his mother, thou  
couldst have better told.

KING HENRY. Where wert thou born ?

SIMPCOX. At Berwick in the north, an 't like your  
Grace.

KING HENRY. Poor soul ! God's goodness hath been  
great to thee : 84

Let never day nor night unhallow'd pass,  
But still remember what the Lord hath done.

QUEEN MARGARET. Tell me, good fellow, cam'st thou  
here by chance,

Or of devotion, to this holy shrine ? 88

SIMPCOX. God knows, of pure devotion ; being call'd  
A hundred times and oftener in my sleep,  
By good Saint Alban ; who said, ' Simpcox, come ;  
Come, offer at my shrine, and I will help thee.' 92

WIFE. Most true, forsooth ; and many time and oft  
Myself have heard a voice to call him so.

CARDINAL. What ! art thou lame ?

SIMPCOX. Ay, God Almighty help me !

SUFFOLK. How cam'st thou so ?

SIMPCOX. A fall off of a tree.

WIFE. A plum-tree, master.

GLOUCESTER. How long hast thou been blind ?

SIMPCOX. O ! born so, master.

GLOUCESTER. What ! and wouldst climb a tree ?

SIMPCOX. But that in all my life, when I was a youth.

WIFE. Too true ; and bought his climbing very dear.

GLOUCESTER. Mass, thou lov'dst plums well, that  
wouldst venture so. 101

SIMPCOX. Alas ! master, my wife desir'd some dam-  
sons,

And made me climb with danger of my life.

GLOUCESTER. A subtle knave ! but yet it shall not  
serve. 104

Let me see thine eyes : wink now : now open them :

In my opinion yet thou seest not well.

SIMPCOX. Yes, master, clear as day ; I thank God and  
Saint Alban.

GLOUCESTER. Sayst thou me so ? What colour is this  
cloak of ? 106

SIMPCOX. Red, master ; red as blood.

GLOUCESTER. Why, that's well said. What colour is  
my gown of ?

SIMPCOX. Black, forsooth ; coal-black as jet.

KING HENRY. Why then, thou know'st what colour  
jet is of ? 112

SUFFOLK. And yet, I think, jet did he never see.

GLOUCESTER. But cloaks and gowns before this day a many.

WIFE. Never, before this day, in all his life.

GLOUCESTER. Tell me, sirrah, what's my name?

SIMPCOX. Alas! master, I know not. 117

GLOUCESTER. What's his name?

SIMPCOX. I know not.

GLOUCESTER. Nor his?

SIMPCOX. No, indeed, master. 121

GLOUCESTER. What's thine own name?

SIMPCOX. Saunder Simpcox, an if it please you, master.

GLOUCESTER. Then, Saunder, sit there, the lyingest knave in Christendom. If thou hadst been born blind, thou mightst as well have known all our names as thus to name the several colours we do wear. Sight may distinguish of colours, but suddenly to nominate them all, it is impossible. My lords, Saint Alban here hath done a miracle; and would ye not think that cunning to be great, that could restore this cripple to his legs again? 132

SIMPCOX. O, master, that you could!

GLOUCESTER. My masters of Saint Alban's, have you not beadles in your town, and things called whips?

MAYOR. Yes, my lord, if it please your Grace. 136

GLOUCESTER. Then send for one presently.

MAYOR. Sirrah, go fetch the beadle hither straight.

[Exit an Attendant.]

GLOUCESTER. Now fetch me a stool hither by and by. [A stool brought out.] Now, sirrah, if you mean to save yourself from whipping, leap me over this stool and run away.

SIMPCOX. Alas! master, I am not able to stand alone: You go about to torture me in vain. 144

Re-enter Attendant, and a Beadle with a whip.

GLOUCESTER. Well, sir, we must have you find your legs. Sirrah beadle, whip him till he leap over that same stool.

BEADLE. I will, my lord. Come on, sirrah; off with your doublet quickly. 149

SIMPCOX. Alas! master, what shall I do? I am not able to stand.

[After the Beadle hath hit him once, he leaps over the stool, and runs away : and the people follow and cry, ' A miracle ! ']

KING HENRY. O God ! seest thou this, and bearest so long ? 152

QUEEN MARGARET. It made me laugh to see the villain run.

GLOUCESTER. Follow the knave ; and take this drab away.

WIFE. Alas ! sir, we did it for pure need.

GLOUCESTER. Let them be whipp'd through every market town 156

Till they come to Berwick, from whence they came.

[Exeunt Mayor, Beadle, Wife, &c.]

CARDINAL. Duke Humphrey has done a miracle to-day.

SUFFOLK. True ; made the lame to leap and fly away.

GLOUCESTER. But you have done more miracles than I ; You made in a day, my lord, whole towns to fly. 161

Enter BUCKINGHAM.

KING HENRY. What tidings with our cousin Buckingham ?

BUCKINGHAM. Such as my heart doth tremble to unfold.  
A sort of naughty persons, lewdly bent, 164  
Under the countenance and confederacy  
Of Lady Eleanor, the protector's wife,  
The ringleader and head of all this rout,  
Have practis'd dangerously against your state, 163  
Dealing with witches and with conjurers :  
Whom we have apprehended in the fact ;  
Raising up wicked spirits from under-ground,  
Demanding of King Henry's life and death, 172  
And other of your highness' privy council,  
As more at large your Grace shall understand.

CARDINAL. And so, my Lord Protector, by this means  
Your lady is forthcoming yet at London. 176  
This news, I think, hath turn'd your weapon's edge ;  
'Tis like, my lord, you will not keep your hour.

GLOUCESTER. Ambitious churchman, leave to afflict  
my heart :  
Sorrow and grief have vanquish'd all my powers ;  
And, vanquish'd as I am, I yield to thee, 181  
Or to the meanest groom.

KING HENRY. O God! what mischiefs work the  
wicked ones,  
Heaping confusion on their own heads thereby. 184

QUEEN MARGARET. Gloucester, see here the tainture  
of thy nest;  
And look thyself be faultless, thou wert best.

GLOUCESTER. Madam, form myself, to heaven I do appeal,  
How I have lov'd my king and commonweal; 188  
And, for my wife, I know not how it stands.

Sorry I am to hear what I have heard:  
Noble she is, but if she have forgot  
Honour and virtue, and convers'd with such 192  
As, like to pitch, defile nobility,

I banish her my bed and company,  
And give her, as a prey, to law and shame, 195  
That hath dishonour'd Gloucester's honest name.

KING HENRY. Well, for this night we will repose us  
here:

To-morrow toward London back again,  
To look into this business thoroughly,  
And call these foul offenders to their answers; 200  
And poise the cause in justice' equal scales,  
Whose beam stands sure, whose rightful cause prevails.  
[Flourish. Exeunt.

SCENE II.—London. The DUKE OF YORK'S Garden.

Enter YORK, SALISBURY, and WARWICK.

YORK. Now, my good Lords of Salisbury and War-  
wick,  
Our simple supper ended, give me leave  
In this close walk to satisfy myself,  
In craving your opinion of my title, 4  
Which is infallible to England's crown.

SALISBURY. My lord, I long to hear it at full.

WARWICK. Sweet York, begin; and if thy claim be  
The Nevils are thy subjects to command. 8

YORK. Then thus:  
Edward the Third, my lords, had seven sons:  
The first, Edward the Black Prince, Prince of Wales;  
The second, William of Hatfield; and the third, 12  
Lionel, Duke of Clarence; next to whom



Was John of Gaunt, the Duke of Lancaster ;  
The fifth was Edmund Langley, Duke of York ;  
The sixth was Thomas of Woodstock, Duke of Gloucester ;  
William of Windsor was the seventh and last. 17

Edward the Black Prince died before his father,  
And left behind him Richard, his only son,  
Who after Edward the Third's death, reign'd as king ;  
Till Henry Bolingbroke, Duke of Lancaster, 21  
The eldest son and heir of John of Gaunt,  
Crown'd by the name of Henry the Fourth,  
Seiz'd on the realm, depos'd the rightful king, 24  
Sent his poor queen to France, from whence she came,  
And him to Pomfret ; where as all you know,  
Harmless Richard was murder'd traitorously. 27

WARWICK. Father, the duke hath told the truth ;  
Thus got the house of Lancaster the crown.

YORK. Which now they hold by force and not by  
right ;

For Richard, the first son's heir, being dead,  
The issue of the next son should have reign'd. 32

SALISBURY. But William of Hatfield died without an  
heir.

YORK. The third son, Duke of Clarence, from whose  
line

I claim the crown, had issue, Philippe a daughter,  
Who married Edmund Mortimer, Earl of March :  
Edmund had issue Roger, Earl of March : 37  
Roger had issue Edmund, Anne, and Eleanor.

SALISBURY. This Edmund, in the reign of Bolingbroke,  
As I have read, laid claim unto the crown ; 40  
And but for Owen Glendower, had been king,  
Who kept him in captivity till he died.  
But to the rest.

YORK. His eldest sister, Anne,  
My mother, being heir unto the crown, 44  
Married Richard, Earl of Cambridge, who was son  
To Edmund Langley, Edward the Third's fifth son.  
By her I claim the kingdom : she was heir  
To Roger, Earl of March ; who was the son 48  
Of Edmund Mortimer ; who married Philippe,  
Sole daughter unto Lionel, Duke of Clarence :  
So, if the issue of the eldest son  
Succeed before the younger, I am king. 52

WARWICK. What plain proceeding is more plain than this ?

Henry doth claim the crown from John of Gaunt,  
The fourth son ; York claims it from the third.  
Till Lionel's issue fails, his should not reign : 56  
It fails not yet, but flourishes in thee,  
And in thy sons, fair slips of such a stock.  
Then, father Salisbury, kneel we together,  
And in this private plot be we the first 60  
That shall salute our rightful sovereign  
With honour of his birthright to the crown.

BOTH. Long live our sovereign Richard, England's king !

YORK. We thank you, lords ! But I am not your king  
Till I be crown'd and that my sword be stain'd 65  
With heart-blood of the house of Lancaster ;  
And that 's not suddenly to be perform'd,  
But with advice and silent secrecy. 68  
Do you as I do in these dangerous days,  
Wink at the Duke of Suffolk's insolence,  
At Beaufort's pride, at Somerset's ambition,  
At Buckingham and all the crew of them, 72  
Till they have snar'd the shepherd of the flock,  
That virtuous prince, the good Duke Humphrey :  
'Tis that they seek ; and they, in seeking that  
Shall find their deaths, if York can prophesy. 76

SALISBURY. My lord, break we off ; we know your  
mind at full.

WARWICK. My heart assures me that the Earl of  
Warwick  
Shall one day make the Duke of York a king.

YORK. And, Nevil, this I do assure myself, 80  
Richard shall live to make the Earl of Warwick  
The greatest man in England but the king. [Exeunt.

SCENE III.—The Same. A Hall of Justice.

Trumpets sounded. Enter KING HENRY, QUEEN MARGARET, GLOUCESTER, YORK, SUFFOLK, and SALISBURY ; the DUCHESS OF GLOUCESTER, MARGERY JOURDAIN, SOUTHWELL, HUME, and BOLINGBROKE, under guard.

KING HENRY. Stand forth, Dame Eleanor Cobham,  
Gloucester's wife.  
In sight of God and us, your guilt is great :

Receive the sentence of the law for sins  
 Such as by God's book are adjudg'd to death. 4  
 You four, from hence to prison back again ;  
 From thence, unto the place of execution :  
 The witch in Smithfield shall be burn'd to ashes,  
 And you three shall be strangled on the gallows. 8  
 You, madam, for you are more nobly born,  
 Despoiled of your honour in your life,  
 Shall, after three days' open penance done,  
 Live in your country here, in banishment, 12  
 With Sir John Stanley, in the Isle of Man.

DUCHESS. Welcome is banishment ; welcome were my death.

GLOUCESTER. Eleanor, the law, thou seest, hath judged thee :

I cannot justify whom the law condemns.— 16

[Exeunt the DUCHESS, and the other Prisoners, guarded.

Mine eyes are full of tears, my heart of grief.  
 Ah, Humphrey ! this dishonour in thine age  
 Will bring thy head with sorrow to the ground.  
 I beseech your majesty, give me leave to go ; 20  
 Sorrow would solace and mine age would ease.

KING HENRY. Stay, Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester : ere thou go,

Give up thy staff : Henry will to himself  
 Protector be ; and God shall be my hope, 24  
 My stay, my guide, and lantern to my feet. \*  
 And go in peace, Humphrey ; no less belov'd  
 Than when thou wert protector to thy king.

QUEEN MARGARET. I see no reason why a king of years  
 Should be to be protected like a child. 29

God and King Henry govern England's helm !  
 Give up your staff, sir, and the king his realm.

GLOUCESTER. My staff ! here, noble Henry, is my staff : 32

As willingly do I the same resign  
 As e'er thy father Henry made it mine ;  
 And even as willingly at thy feet I leave it  
 As others would ambitiously receive it. 36  
 Farewell, good king ! when I am dead and gone,  
 May honourable peace attend thy throne. [Exit.

QUEEN MARGARET. Why, now is Henry king, and Margaret queen ;

And Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester, scarce himself,  
That bears so shrewd a maim : two pulls at once ;  
His lady banish'd, and a limb lopp'd off ;  
This staff of honour raught : there let it stand,  
Where it best fits to be, in Henry's hand. 44

SUFFOLK. Thus droops this lofty pine and hangs his  
sprays ;

Thus Eleanor's pride dies in her youngest days.

YORK. Lords, let him go. Please it your majesty,  
This is the day appointed for the combat : 48  
And ready are the appellant and defendant,  
The armourer and his man, to enter the lists,  
So please your highness to behold the fight.

QUEEN MARGARET. Ay, good my lord ; for purposely  
therefore 52  
Left I the court, to see this quarrel tried.

KING HENRY. O' God's name, see the lists and all  
things fit :  
Here let them end it ; and God defend the right !

YORK. I never saw a fellow worse bested, 56  
Or more afraid to fight, than is the appellant,  
The servant of this armourer, my lords.

Enter, on one side, HORNER, and his Neighbours drinking to him so  
much that he is drunk ; and he enters bearing his staff with a  
sand-bag fastened to it ; a drum before him : on the other side,  
PETER, with a drum and a sand-bag ; and Prentices drinking  
to him.

FIRST NEIGHBOUR. Here, neighbour Horner, I drink  
to you in a cup of sack : and fear not, neighbour, you  
shall do well enough. 61

SECOND NEIGHBOUR. And here, neighbour, here's a  
cup of charneco.

THIRD NEIGHBOUR. And here's a pot of good double  
beer, neighbour : drink, and fear not your man. 65

HORNER. Let it come, i' faith, and I'll pledge you all ;  
and a fig for Peter !

FIRST PRENTICE. Here, Peter, I drink to thee ; and  
be not afraid. 69

SECOND PRENTICE. Be merry, Peter, and fear not thy  
master : fight for credit of the prentices.

PETER. I thank you all : drink, and pray for me,  
I pray you ; for, I think, I have taken my last draught  
in this world. Here, Robin, an if I die, I give thee my

apron : and, Will, thou shalt have my hammer : and here, Tom, take all the money that I have. O Lord bless me ! I pray God, for I am never able to deal with my master, he hath learnt so much fence already.

SALISBURY. Come, leave your drinking and fall to blows. Sirrah, what's thy name ? 80

PETER. Peter, forsooth.

SALISBURY. Peter ! what more ?

PETER. Thump.

SALISBURY. Thump ! then see thou thump thy master well. 85

HORNER. Masters, I am come hither, as it were, upon my man's instigation, to prove him a knave, and myself an honest man : and touching the Duke of York, I will take my death I never meant him any ill, nor the king, nor the queen ; and therefore, Peter, have at thee with a downright blow !

YORK. Dispatch : this knave's tongue begins to double. 92

Sound, trumpets, alarum to the combatants.

[Alarum. They fight, and PETER strikes down his Master.

HORNER. Hold, Peter, hold ! I confess, I confess treason. [Dies. 97

YORK. Take away his weapon. Fellow, thank God, and the good wine in thy master's way. 97

PETER. O God ! have I overcome mine enemies in this presence ? O Peter ! thou hast prevailed in right ! 100

KING HENRY. Go, take hence that traitor from our sight ;

For by his death we do perceive his guilt :

And God in justice hath reveal'd to us

The truth and innocence of this poor fellow, 104

Which he had thought to have murder'd wrongfully.

Come, fellow, follow us for thy reward.

[Sound a flourish. Exeunt.

#### SCENE IV.—The Same. A Street.

Enter GLOUCESTER and Serving-men, in mourning cloaks.

GLOUCESTER. Thus sometimes hath the brightest day  
a cloud ;

And after summer evermore succeeds

Barren winter, with his wrathful nipping cold :  
So cares and joys abound, as seasons fleet. 4  
Sirs, what 's o'clock ?

SERVING-MAN. Ten, my lord.

GLOUCESTER. Ten is the hour that was appointed me  
To watch the coming of my punish'd duchess :  
Uneath may she endure the flinty streets, 8  
To tread them with her tender-feeling feet.  
Sweet Nell, ill can thy noble mind abrook  
The abject people, gazing on thy face  
With envious looks still laughing at thy shame, 12  
That erst did follow thy proud chariot wheels  
When thou didst ride in triumph through the streets.  
But, soft ! I think she comes ; and I'll prepare  
My tear-stain'd eyes to see her miseries. 16

Enter the DUCHESS OF GLOUCESTER, with papers pinned upon her back, in a white sheet, her feet bare, and a taper burning in her hand ; SIR JOHN STANLEY, a Sheriff, and Officers.

SERVING-MAN. So please your Grace, we'll take her  
from the sheriff.

GLOUCESTER. No, stir not, for your lives ; let her  
pass by.

DUCHESS. Come you, my lord, to see my open shame ?  
Now thou dost penance too. Look ! how they gaze.  
See ! how the giddy multitude do point, 21  
And nod their heads, and throw their eyes on thee.  
Ah, Gloucester, hide thee from their hateful looks,  
And, in thy closet pent up, rue my shame, 24  
And ban thine enemies, both mine and thine !

GLOUCESTER. Be patient, gentle Nell ; forget this  
grief.

DUCHESS. Ay, Gloucester, teach me to forget myself ;  
For whilst I think I am thy wedded wife, 28  
And thou a prince, protector of this land,  
Methinks I should not thus be led along,  
Mail'd up in shame, with papers on my back,  
And follow'd with a rabble that rejoice 32  
To see my tears and hear my deep-fet groans.  
The ruthless flint doth cut my tender feet,  
And when I start, the envious people laugh,  
And bid me be advised how I tread. 36  
Ah, Humphrey ! can I bear this shameful yoke ?

Trow'st thou that e'er I'll look upon the world,  
 Or count them happy that enjoy the sun ?  
 No ; dark shall be my light, and night my day ; 40  
 To think upon my pomp shall be my hell.  
 Sometime I'll say, I am Duke Humphrey's wife ;  
 And he a prince and ruler of the land :  
 Yet so he rul'd and such a prince he was 44  
 As he stood by whilst I, his forlorn duchess,  
 Was made a wonder and a pointing-stock  
 To every idle rascal follower.  
 But be thou mild and blush not at my shame ; 48  
 Nor stir at nothing till the axe of death  
 Hang over thee, as, sure, it shortly will ;  
 For Suffolk, he that can do all in all  
 With her that hateth thee, and hates us all, 52  
 And York, and impious Beaufort, that false priest,  
 Have all lim'd bushes to betray thy wings ;  
 And, fly thou how thou canst, they'll tangle thee :  
 But fear not thou, until thy foot be snar'd, 56  
 Nor never seek prevention of thy foes.

GLOUCESTER. Ah, Nell ! forbear : thou aimest all  
 awry ;  
 I must offend before I be attainted ;  
 And had I twenty times so many foes, 60  
 And each of them had twenty times their power,  
 All these could not procure me any scath,  
 So long as I am loyal, true, and crimeless. 63  
 Wouldst have me rescue thee from this reproach ?  
 Why, yet thy scandal were not wip'd away,  
 But I in danger for the breach of law.  
 Thy greatest help is quiet, gentle Nell :  
 I pray thee, sort thy heart to patience ; 68  
 These few days' wonder will be quickly worn.

Enter a Herald.

HERALD. I summon your Grace to his majesty's  
 parliament, holden at Bury the first of this next  
 month. 72

GLOUCESTER. And my consent ne'er ask'd herein  
 before !  
 This is close dealing. Well, I will be there. [Exit Herald.  
 My Nell, I take my leave : and, master sheriff, 75  
 Let not her penance exceed the king's commission.

SHERIFF. An't please your Grace, here my commission stays ;  
And Sir John Stanley is appointed now  
To take her with him to the Isle of Man.

GLOUCESTER. Must you, Sir John, protect my lady here ? 80

STANLEY. So am I given in charge, may 't please your Grace.

GLOUCESTER. Entreat her not the worse in that I pray -  
You use her well. The world may laugh again ;  
And I may live to do you kindness if 84  
You do it her : and so, Sir John, farewell.

DUCHESS. What ! gone, my lord, and bid me not farewell !

GLOUCESTER. Witness my tears, I cannot stay to speak.

[Exeunt GLOUCESTER and Serving-men.]

DUCHESS. Art thou gone too ? All comfort go with thee ! 88

For none abides with me : my joy is death ;  
Death, at whose name I oft have been afraid,  
Because I wish'd this world's eternity.  
Stanley, I prithee, go, and take me hence ; 92  
I care not whither, for I beg no favour,  
Only convey me where thou art commanded.

STANLEY. Why, madam, that is to the Isle of Man ;  
There to be us'd according to your state. 96

DUCHESS. That 's bad enough, for I am but reproach :  
And shall I then be us'd reproachfully ?

STANLEY. Like to a duchess, and Duke Humphrey's lady :  
According to that state you shall be us'd. 100

DUCHESS. Sheriff, farewell, and better than I fare,  
Although thou hast been conduct of my shame.

SHERIFF. It is my office ; and, madam, pardon me.

DUCHESS. Ay, ay, farewell ; thy office is discharg'd.  
Come, Stanley, shall we go ? 105

STANLEY. Madam, your penance done, throw off this sheet,  
And go we to attire you for our journey.

DUCHESS. My shame will not be shifted with my sheet :  
No ; it will hang upon my richest robes, 109  
And show itself, attire me how I can.

Go, lead the way ; I long to see my prison. [Exeunt.]



## ACT III.

SCENE I.—The Abbey at Bury St. Edmund's.

Sound a sennet. Enter to the Parliament, KING HENRY, QUEEN MARGARET, CARDINAL BEAUFORT, SUFFOLK, YORK, BUCKINGHAM, and Others.

KING HENRY. I muse my Lord of Gloucester is not come :

'Tis not his wont to be the hindmost man,  
Whate'er occasion keeps him from us now.

QUEEN MARGARET. Can you not see ? or will ye not observe

The strangeness of his alter'd countenance ?

With what a majesty he bears himself,

How insolent of late he is become,

How proud, how peremptory, and unlike himself ?

We know the time since he was mild and affable,

An if we did but glance a far-off look,

Immediately he was upon his knee,

That all the court admir'd him for submission :

But meet him now, and, be it in the morn,

When everyone will give the time of day,

He knits his brow and shows an angry eye,

And passeth by with stiff unbowed knee,

Disdaining duty that to us belongs.

Small curs are not regarded when they grin,

But great men tremble when the lion roars ;

And Humphrey is no little man in England.

First note that he is near you in descent,

And should you fall, he is the next will mount.

Me seemeth then it is no policy,

Respecting what a rancorous mind he bears,

And his advantage following your decease,

That he should come about your royal person

Or be admitted to your highness' council.

By flattery hath he won the commons' hearts,

And when he please to make commotion,

'Tis to be fear'd they all will follow him.

Now 'tis the spring, and weeds are shallow-rooted ;

Suffer them now and they'll o'ergrow the garden,

And choke the herbs for want of husbandry.

The reverent care I bear unto my lord

Made me collect these dangers in the duke.  
If it be fond, call it a woman's fear ; 36  
Which fear if better reasons can supplant,  
I will subscribe and say I wrong'd the duke.  
My Lord of Suffolk, Buckingham, and York,  
Reprove my allegation if you can 40  
Or else conclude my words effectual.

SUFFOLK. Well hath your highness seen into this duke ;  
And had I first been put to speak my mind,  
I think I should have told your Grace's tale. 44  
The duchess, by his subornation,  
Upon my life, began her devilish practices :  
Or if he were not privy to those faults,  
Yet, by reputing of his high descent, 48  
As, next the king he was successive heir,  
And such high vaunts of his nobility,  
Did instigate the bedlam brain-sick duchess,  
By wicked means to frame our sovereign's fall. 52  
Smooth runs the water where the brook is deep,  
And in his simple show he harbours treason.  
The fox barks not when he would steal the lamb :  
No, no, my sovereign ; Gloucester is a man 56  
Unsounded yet, and full of deep deceit.

CARDINAL. Did he not, contrary to form of law,  
Devise strange deaths for small offences done ?

YORK. And did he not, in his protectorship, 60  
Levy great sums of money through the realm  
For soldiers' pay in France, and never sent it ?  
By means whereof the towns each day revolted.

BUCKINGHAM. Tut ! these are petty faults to faults  
unknown, 64

Which time will bring to light in smooth Duke Humphrey.

KING HENRY. My lords, at once : the care you have  
of us,

To mow down thorns that would annoy our foot,  
Is worthy praise ; but shall I speak my conscience,  
Our kinsman Gloucester is as innocent 69  
From meaning treason to our royal person,  
As is the sucking lamb or harmless dove.  
The duke is virtuous, mild, and too well given 72  
To dream on evil, or to work my downfall.

QUEEN MARGARET. Ah ! what's more dangerous than  
this fond affiance !

Seems he a dove ? his feathers are but borrow'd,  
 For he's disposed as the hateful raven : 76  
 Is he a lamb ? his skin is surely lent him,  
 For he's inclin'd as is the ravenous wolf.  
 Who cannot steal a shape that means deceit ?  
 Take heed, my lord ; the welfare of us all 80  
 Hangs on the cutting short that fraudulent man.

Enter SOMERSET.

SOMERSET. All health unto my gracious sovereign !  
 KING HENRY. Welcome, Lord Somerset. What news  
 from France ?

SOMERSET. That all your interest in those territories  
 Is utterly bereft you ; all is lost. 85

KING HENRY. Cold news, Lord Somerset : but God's  
 will be done !

YORK. [Aside.] Cold news for me ; for I had hope of  
 France,

As firmly as I hope for fertile England. 88  
 Thus are my blossoms blasted in the bud,  
 And caterpillars eat my leaves away ;  
 But I will remedy this gear ere long,  
 Or sell my title for a glorious grave. 92

Enter GLOUCESTER.

GLOUCESTER. All happiness unto my lord the king !  
 Pardon, my liege, that I have stay'd so long.

SUFFOLK. Nay, Gloucester, know that thou art come  
 too soon,  
 Unless thou wert more loyal than thou art : 96  
 I do arrest thee of high treason here.

GLOUCESTER. Well, Suffolk's duke, thou shalt not see  
 me blush,  
 Nor change my countenance for this arrest :  
 A heart unspotted is not easily daunted. 100

The purest spring is not so free from mud  
 As I am clear from treason to my sovereign.  
 Who can accuse me ? wherein am I guilty ?

YORK. 'Tis thought, my lord, that you took bribes  
 of France, 104

And, being protector, stay'd the soldiers' pay ;  
 By means whereof his highness hath lost France.

GLOUCESTER. Is it but thought so ? What are they  
 that think it ?

I never robb'd the soldiers of their pay, 108  
Nor ever had one penny bribe from France.  
So help me God, as I have watch'd the night,  
Ay, night by night, in studying good for England,  
That do it that e'er I wrested from the king, 112  
Or any groat I hoarded to my use,  
Be brought against me at my trial-day !  
No ; many a pound of mine own proper store,  
Because I would not tax the needy commons, 116  
Have I disbursed to the garrisons,  
And never ask'd for restitution.

CARDINAL. It serves you well, my lord, to say so much.

GLOUCESTER. I say no more than truth, so help me God ! 120

YORK. In your protectorship you did devise  
Strange tortures for offenders, never heard of,  
That England was defam'd by tyranny.

GLOUCESTER. Why, 'tis well known that, whiles I was protector, 124

Pity was all the fault that was in me ;  
For I should melt at an offender's tears,  
And lowly words were ransom for their fault.  
Unless it were a bloody murderer, 128  
Or foul felonious thief that fleec'd poor passengers,  
I never gave them condign punishment :  
Murder, indeed, that bloody sin, I tortur'd  
Above the felon or what trespass else. 132

SUFFOLK. My lord, these faults are easy, quickly answer'd :

But mightier crimes are laid unto your charge,  
Whereof you cannot easily purge yourself.  
I do arrest you in his highness' name ; 136  
And here commit you to my Lord Cardinal  
To keep until your further time of trial.

KING HENRY. My Lord of Gloucester, 'tis my special hope

That you will clear yourself from all suspect : 140  
My conscience tells me you are innocent.

GLOUCESTER. Ah ! gracious lord, these days are dangerous.

Virtue is chok'd with foul ambition,  
And charity chas'd hence by rancour's hand ; 144

Foul subornation is predominant,  
 And equity exil'd your highness' land.  
 I know their complot is to have my life ;  
 And if my death might make this island happy, 148  
 And prove the period of their tyranny,  
 I would expend it with all willingness ;  
 But mine is made the prologue to their play ;  
 For thousands more, that yet suspect no peril, 152  
 Will not conclude their plotted tragedy.  
 Beaufort's red sparkling eyes blab his heart's malice,  
 And Suffolk's cloudy brow his stormy hate ;  
 Sharp Buckingham unburdens with his tongue 156  
 The envious load that lies upon his heart ;  
 And dogged York, that reaches at the moon,  
 Whose overweening arm I have pluck'd back,  
 By false accuse doth level at my life : 160  
 And you, my sovereign lady, with the rest,  
 Causeless have laid disgraces on my head,  
 And with your best endeavour have stirr'd up  
 My liefest liege to be mine enemy. 164  
 Ay, all of you have laid your heads together ;  
 Myself had notice of your conventicles ;  
 And all to make away my guiltless life.  
 I shall not want false witness to condemn me, 168  
 Nor store of treasons to augment my guilt ;  
 The ancient proverb will be well effected :  
 ' A staff is quickly found to beat a dog.'

CARDINAL. My liege, his railing is intolerable.  
 If those that care to keep your royal person 173  
 From treason's secret knife and traitor's rage  
 Be thus upbraided, chid, and rated at,  
 And the offender granted scope of speech, 176  
 'Twill make them cool in zeal unto your Grace.

SUFFOLK. Hath he not twit our sovereign lady here  
 With ignominious words, though clerkly couch'd,  
 As if she had suborned some to swear 180  
 False allegations to o'erthrow his state ?

QUEEN MARGARET. But I can give the loser leave to  
 chide.

GLOUCESTER. Far truer spoke than meant : I lose,  
 indeed ;  
 Beshrew the winners, for they play'd me false ! 184  
 And well such losers may have leave to speak.

BUCKINGHAM. He'll wrest the sense and hold us here  
all day.

Lord Cardinal, he is your prisoner.

CARDINAL. Sirs, take away the duke, and guard him  
sure. 188

GLOUCESTER. Ah ! thus King Henry throws away his  
crutch

Before his legs be firm to bear his body :  
Thus is the shepherd beaten from thy side, 191  
And wolves are gnarling who shall gnaw thee first.  
Ah ! that my fear were false, ah ! that it were ;  
For, good King Henry, thy decay I fear.

[Exeunt Attendants with GLOUCESTER.

KING HENRY. My lords, what to your wisdoms seemeth  
best

Do or undo, as if ourself were here. 196

QUEEN MARGARET. What ! will your highness leave  
the parliament ?

KING HENRY. Ay, Margaret ; my heart is drown'd  
with grief,

Whose flood begins to flow within mine eyes,  
My body round engirt with misery, 200  
For what's more miserable than discontent ?

Ah ! uncle Humphrey, in thy face I see  
The map of honour, truth, and loyalty ;  
And yet, good Humphrey, is the hour to come 204  
That e'er I prov'd thee false, or fear'd thy faith.

What lowering star now envies thy estate,  
That these great lords, and Margaret our queen,  
Do seek subversion of thy harmless life ? 208

Thou never didst them wrong, nor no man wrong ;  
And as the butcher takes away the calf,  
And binds the wretch, and beats it when it strays,  
Bearing it to the bloody slaughter-house, 212

Even so, remorseless, have they borne him hence ;  
And as the dam runs lowing up and down,  
Looking the way her harmless young one went,  
And can do nought but wail her darling's loss ; 216

Even so myself bewails good Gloucester's case,  
With sad unhelpful tears, and with dimm'd eyes  
Look after him, and cannot do him good ;  
So mighty are his vowed enemies. 220

His fortunes I will weep ; and, 'twixt each groan,

By staying there so long till all were lost.  
 Show me one scar character'd on thy skin : 300  
 Men's flesh preserv'd so whole do seldom win.

QUEEN MARGARET. Nay then, this spark will prove  
 a raging fire,

If wind and fuel be brought to feed it with. 303

No more, good York ; sweet Somerset, be still :

Thy fortune, York, hadst thou been regent there,

Might happily have prov'd far worse than his.

YORK. What ! worse than nought ? nay, then a  
 shame take all.

SOMERSET. And in the number thee, that wishest  
 shame. 308

CARDINAL. My Lord of York, try what your fortune is.

The uncivil kerns of Ireland are in arms

And temper clay with blood of Englishmen :

To Ireland will you lead a band of men, 312

Collected choicely, from each county some,

And try your hap against the Irishmen ?

YORK. I will, my lord, so please his majesty.

SUFFOLK. Why, our authority is his consent, 316  
 And what we do establish he confirms :

Then, noble York, take thou this task in hand.

YORK. I am content : provide me soldiers, lords,  
 Whiles I take order for mine own affairs. 320

SUFFOLK. A charge, Lord York, that I will see per-  
 form'd.

But now return we to the false Duke Humphrey.

CARDINAL. No more of him : for I will deal with him  
 That henceforth he shall trouble us no more. 324

And so break off ; the day is almost spent.

Lord Suffolk, you and I must talk of that event.

YORK. My Lord of Suffolk, within fourteen days  
 At Bristol I expect my soldiers ; 328

For there I'll ship them all for Ireland.

SUFFOLK. I'll see it truly done, my Lord of York.

[Exeunt all except YORK.]

YORK. Now, York, or never, steel thy fearful thoughts,  
 And change misdoubt to resolution : 332

Be that thou hopest to be, or what thou art

Resign to death ; it is not worth the enjoying.

Let pale-fac'd fear keep with the mean-born man,

And find no harbour in a royal heart. 336

Faster than spring-time showers comes thought on  
thought,

And not a thought but thinks on dignity.

My brain, more busy than the labouring spider,  
Weaves tedious snares to trap mine enemies. 340

Well, nobles, well ; 'tis politicly done,

To send me packing with a host of men :

I fear me you but warm the starved snake, 343

Who, cherish'd in your breasts, will sting your hearts.

'Twas men I lack'd, and you will give them me :

I take it kindly ; yet be well assur'd

You put sharp weapons in a madman's hands.

Whiles I in Ireland nourish a mighty band, 348

I will stir up in England some black storm

Shall blow ten thousand souls to heaven or hell ;

And this fell tempest shall not cease to rage

Until the golden circuit on my head, 352

Like to the glorious sun's transparent beams,

Do calm the fury of this mad-bred flaw.

And, for a minister of my intent,

I have seduc'd a headstrong Kentishman, 356  
John Cade of Ashford,

To make commotion, as full well he can,

Under the title of John Mortimer.

In Ireland have I seen this stubborn Cade 360

Oppose himself against a troop of kerns,

And fought so long, till that his thighs with darts

Were almost like a sharp-quill'd porpentine :

And, in the end being rescu'd, I have seen 364

Him caper upright like a wild Morisco,

Shaking the bloody darts as he his bells.

Full often, like a shag-hair'd crafty kern,

Hath he conversed with the enemy, 368

And undiscover'd come to me again,

And given me notice of their villanies.

This devil here shall be my substitute ;

For that John Mortimer, which now is dead, 372

In face, in gait, in speech, he doth resemble ;

By this I shall perceive the commons' mind,

How they affect the house and claim of York.

Say he be taken, rack'd, and tortured, 376

I know no pain they can inflict upon him

Will make him say I mov'd him to those arms.



Say that he thrive,—as 'tis great like he will,—  
 Why, then from Ireland come I with my strength,  
 And reap the harvest which that rascal sow'd ; 381  
 For, Humphrey being dead, as he shall be,  
 And Henry put apart, the next for me. [Exit.

SCENE II.—Bury St. Edmund's. A Room in the Palace.

Enter certain Murderers, hastily.

FIRST MURDERER. Run to my Lord of Suffolk ; let  
 him know  
 We have dispatch'd the duke, as he commanded.  
 SECOND MURDERER. O ! that it were to do. What  
 have we done ?  
 Didst ever hear a man so penitent ? 4

Enter SUFFOLK.

FIRST MURDERER. Here comes my lord.  
 SUFFOLK. Now, sirs, have you dispatch'd this thing ?  
 FIRST MURDERER. Ay, my good lord, he 's dead.  
 SUFFOLK. Why, that 's well said. Go, get you to my  
 house ; 8  
 I will reward you for this venturous deed.  
 The king and all the peers are here at hand.  
 Have you laid fair the bed ? is all things well,  
 According as I gave directions ? 12  
 FIRST MURDERER. 'Tis, my good lord.  
 SUFFOLK. Away ! be gone. [Exeunt Murderers.

Sound trumpets. Enter KING HENRY, QUEEN MARGARET, CARDINAL  
 BEAUFORT, SOMERSET, Lords, and Others.

KING HENRY. Go, call our uncle to our presence  
 straight ;  
 Say, we intend to try his Grace to-day, 16  
 If he be guilty, as 'tis published.

SUFFOLK. I'll call him presently, my noble lord. [Exit.

KING HENRY. Lords, take your places ; and, I pray  
 you all,  
 Proceed no straiter 'gainst our uncle Gloucester 20  
 Than from true evidence, of good esteem,  
 He be approv'd in practice culpable.

QUEEN MARGARET. God forbid any malice should prevail  
 That faultless may condemn a nobleman ! 24

Pray God, he may acquit him of suspicion !

KING HENRY. I thank thee, Meg ; these words content me much. 26

Re-enter SUFFOLK.

How now ! why look'st thou pale ? why tremblest thou ? Where is our uncle ? what's the matter, Suffolk ?

SUFFOLK. Dead in his bed, my lord ; Gloucester is dead.

QUEEN MARGARET. Marry, God forbend !

CARDINAL. God's secret judgment : I did dream to-night

The duke was dumb, and could not speak a word. 32

[The KING swoons.

QUEEN MARGARET. How fares my lord ? Help, lords ! the king is dead.

SOMERSET. Rear up his body ; wring him by the nose.

QUEEN MARGARET. Run, go, help, help ! O Henry, ope thine eyes !

SUFFOLK. He doth revive again. Madam, be patient.

KING HENRY. O heavenly God !

QUEEN MARGARET. How fares my gracious lord ?

SUFFOLK. Comfort, my sovereign ! gracious Henry, comfort !

KING HENRY. What ! doth my Lord of Suffolk comfort me ?

Came he right now to sing a raven's note, 40

Whose dismal tune bereft my vital powers,

And thinks he that the chirping of a wren,

By crying comfort from a hollow breast,

Can chase away the first-conceived sound ? 44

Hide not thy poison with such sugar'd words :

Lay not thy hands on me ; forbear, I say :

Their touch affrights me as a serpent's sting.

Thou baleful messenger, out of my sight ! 48

Upon thy eyeballs murderous tyranny

Sits in grim majesty to fright the world.

Look not upon me, for thine eyes are wounding :

Yet do not go away ; come, basilisk, 52

And kill the innocent gazer with thy sight ;

For in the shade of death I shall find joy,

In life but double death, now Gloucester's dead.

QUEEN MARGARET. Why do you rate my Lord of Suffolk thus ? 56

Although the duke was enemy to him,  
 Yet he, most Christian-like, laments his death :  
 And for myself, foe as he was to me,  
 Might liquid tears or heart-offending groans 60  
 Or blood-consuming sighs recall his life,  
 I would be blind with weeping, sick with groans,  
 Look pale as primrose with blood-drinking sighs,  
 And all to have the noble duke alive. 64  
 What know I how the world may deem of me ?  
 For it is known we were but hollow friends :  
 It may be judg'd I made the duke away :  
 So shall my name with slander's tongue be wounded,  
 And princes' courts be fill'd with my reproach. 69  
 This get I by his death. Ay me, unhappy !  
 To be a queen, and crown'd with infamy !

KING HENRY. Ah ! woe is me for Gloucester, wretched  
 man. 72

QUEEN MARGARET. Be woe for me, more wretched  
 than he is.

What ! dost thou turn away and hide thy face ?  
 I am no loathsome leper ; look on me.  
 What ! art thou, like the adder, waxen deaf ? 76  
 Be poisonous too and kill thy forlorn queen,  
 Is all thy comfort shut in Gloucester's tomb ?  
 Why, then, Dame Margaret was ne'er thy joy :  
 Erect his statua and worship it, 80  
 And make my image but an alehouse sign.  
 Was I for this nigh wrack'd upon the sea,  
 And twice by awkward wind from England's bank  
 Drove back again unto my native clime ? 84  
 What boded this, but well forewarning wind  
 Did seem to say, ' Seek not a scorpion's nest,  
 Nor set no footing on this unkind shore ' ?  
 What did I then, but curs'd the gentle gusts 88  
 And he that loos'd them forth their brazen caves ;  
 And bid them blow towards England's blessed shore,  
 Or turn our stern upon a dreadful rock ?  
 Yet Æolus would not be a murderer,  
 But left that hateful office unto thee :  
 The pretty vaulting sea refus'd to drown me, 94  
 Knowing that thou wouldst have me drown'd on shore  
 With tears as salt as sea through thy unkindness :  
 The splitting rocks cower'd in the sinking sands,

And would not dash me with their ragged sides,  
Because thy flinty heart, more hard than they,  
Might in thy palace perish Margaret. 100  
As far as I could ken thy chalky cliffs,  
When from thy shore the tempest beat us back,  
I stood upon the hatches in the storm,  
And when the dusky sky began to rob 104  
My earnest-gaping sight of thy land's view,  
I took a costly jewel from my neck,  
A heart it was, bound in with diamonds, 107  
And threw it towards thy land : the sea receiv'd it,  
And so I wish'd thy body might my heart :  
And even with this I lost fair England's view,  
And bid mine eyes be packing with my heart,  
And call'd them blind and dusky spectacles 112  
For losing ken of Albion's wished coast.  
How often have I tempted Suffolk's tongue—  
The agent of thy foul inconstancy—  
To sit and witch me, as Ascanius did 116  
When he to madding Dido would unfold  
His father's acts, commenc'd in burning Troy !  
Am I not witch'd like her ? or thou not false like him ?  
Ay me ! I can no more. Die, Margaret ! 120  
For Henry weeps that thou dost live so long.

Noise within. Enter WARWICK and SALISBURY.

The Commons press to the door.

WARWICK. It is reported, mighty sovereign,  
That good Duke Humphrey traitorously is murder'd  
By Suffolk and the Cardinal Beaufort's means. 124  
The commons, like an angry hive of bees  
That want their leader, scatter up and down,  
And care not who they sting in his revenge.  
Myself have calm'd their spleenful mutiny, 128  
Until they hear the order of his death.

KING HENRY. That he is dead, good Warwick, 'tis  
too true ;

But how he died God knows, not Henry.  
Enter his chamber, view his breathless corpse, 132  
And comment then upon his sudden death.

WARWICK. That shall I do, my liege. Stay, Salisbury,  
With the rude multitude till I return.

[WARWICK goes into an inner chamber. SALISBURY retires.

KING HENRY. O ! Thou that judgest all things, stay  
 my thoughts, 136  
 My thoughts that labour to persuade my soul  
 Some violent hands were laid on Humphrey's life.  
 If my suspect be false, forgive me, God,  
 For judgment only doth belong to thee. 140  
 Fain would I go to chafe his paly lips  
 With twenty thousand kisses, and to drain  
 Upon his face an ocean of salt tears,  
 To tell my love unto his deaf dumb trunk, 144  
 And with my fingers feel his hand unfeeling :  
 But all in vain are these mean obsequies,  
 And to survey his dead and earthly image  
 What were it but to make my sorrow greater ? 148

Re-enter WARWICK and Others, bearing GLOUCESTER's body on a bed.

WARWICK. Come hither, gracious sovereign, view this  
 body.

KING HENRY. That is to see how deep my grave is  
 made ;  
 For with his soul fled all my worldly solace,  
 For seeing him I see my life in death. 152  
 WARWICK. As surely as my soul intends to live  
 With that dread King that took our state upon him  
 To free us from his Father's wrathful curse,  
 I do believe that violent hands were laid 156  
 Upon the life of this thrice-famed duke.

SUFFOLK. A dreadful oath, sworn with a solemn  
 tongue !  
 What instance gives Lord Warwick for his vow ?  
 WARWICK. See how the blood is settled in his face.  
 Oft have I seen a timely-parted ghost, 161  
 Of ashy semblance, meagre, pale, and bloodless,  
 Being all descended to the labouring heart ;  
 Who, in the conflict that it holds with death, 164  
 Attracts the same for aidance 'gainst the enemy ;  
 Which with the heart there cools, and ne'er returneth  
 To blush and beautify the cheek again.  
 But see, his face is black and full of blood, 168  
 His eyeballs further out than when he liv'd,  
 Staring full ghastly like a strangled man ;  
 His hair uprear'd, his nostrils stretch'd with struggling :  
 His hands abroad display'd, as one that grasp'd

And tugg'd for life, and was by strength subdu'd.  
Look on the sheets, his hair, you see, is sticking ;  
His well-proportion'd beard made rough and rugged,  
Like to the summer's corn by tempest lodg'd. 176  
It cannot be but he was murder'd here ;  
The least of all these signs were probable.

SUFFOLK. Why, Warwick, who should do the duke to death ?

Myself and Beaufort had him in protection ; 180  
And we, I hope, sir, are no murderers.

WARWICK. But both of you were vow'd Duke Humphrey's foes,  
And you, forsooth, had the good duke to keep :  
'Tis like you would not feast him like a friend, 184  
And 'tis well seen he found an enemy.

QUEEN MARGARET. Then you, belike, suspect these noblemen  
As guilty of Duke Humphrey's timeless death.

WARWICK. Who finds the heifer dead, and bleeding fresh, 188  
And sees fast by a butcher with an axe,  
But will suspect 'twas he that made the slaughter ?  
Who finds the partridge in the puttock's nest,  
But may imagine how the bird was dead, 192  
Although the kite soar with unbloodied beak ?  
Even so suspicious is this tragedy.

QUEEN MARGARET. Are you the butcher, Suffolk ?  
where's your knife ?  
Is Beaufort term'd a kite ? where are his talons ?

SUFFOLK. I wear no knife to slaughter sleeping men ;  
But here's a vengeful sword, rusted with ease,  
That shall be scoured in his rancorous heart 199  
That slanders me with murder's crimson badge.  
Say, if thou dar'st, proud Lord of Warwickshire,  
That I am faulty in Duke Humphrey's death.

[Exeunt CARDINAL BEAUFORT, SOMERSET, and Others.]

WARWICK. What dares not Warwick, if false Suffolk dare him ?

QUEEN MARGARET. He dares not calm his contumelious spirit, 204  
Nor cease to be an arrogant controller,  
Though Suffolk dare him twenty thousand times.

WARWICK. Madam, be still, with reverence may I say ;

For every word you speak in his behalf 208  
Is slander to your royal dignity.

SUFFOLK. Blunt-witted lord, ignoble in demeanour !  
If ever lady wrong'd her lord so much,  
Thy mother took into her blameful bed 212  
Some stern untutor'd churl, and noble stock  
Was graft with crab-tree slip ; whose fruit thou art,  
And never of the Nevils' noble race.

WARWICK. But that the guilt of murder bucklers thee,  
And I should rob the deathsman of his fee, 217  
Quitting thee thereby of ten thousand shames,  
And that my sovereign's presence makes me mild,  
I would, false murderous coward, on thy knee 220  
Make thee beg pardon for thy passed speech,  
And say it was thy mother that thou meant'st ;  
That thou thyself wast born in bastardy :  
And after all this fearful homage done, 224  
Give thee thy hire, and send thy soul to hell,  
Pernicious blood-sucker of sleeping men.

SUFFOLK. Thou shalt be waking while I shed thy  
blood,  
If from this presence thou dar'st go with me. 228

WARWICK. Away even now, or I will drag thee hence :  
Unworthy though thou art, I'll cope with thee,  
And do some service to Duke Humphrey's ghost.

[Exeunt SUFFOLK and WARWICK.]

KING HENRY. What stronger breastplate than a heart  
untainted ! 232  
Thrice is he arm'd that hath his quarrel just,  
And he but naked, though lock'd up in steel,  
Whose conscience with injustice is corrupted.

[A noise within.]  
QUEEN MARGARET. What noise is this ? 236

Re-enter SUFFOLK and WARWICK, with their weapons drawn.

KING HENRY. Why, how now, lords ! your wrathful  
weapons drawn

Here in our presence ! dare you be so bold ?  
Why, what tumultuous clamour have we here ?

SUFFOLK. The traitorous Warwick, with the men of  
Bury, 240  
Set all upon me, mighty sovereign.

Noise of a crowd within. Re-enter SALISBURY.

SALISBURY. [Speaking to those within.] Sirs, stand apart ;  
the king shall know your mind. .

Dread lord, the commons send you word by me,  
Unless false Suffolk straight be done to death,  
Or banished fair England's territories, 245  
They will by violence tear him from your palace  
And torture him with grievous lingering death.  
They say, by him the good Duke Humphrey died ;  
They say, in him they fear your highness' death ;  
And mere instinct of love and loyalty,  
Free from a stubborn opposite intent,  
As being thought to contradict your liking, 252  
Makes them thus forward in his banishment.  
They say, in care of your most royal person,  
That if your highness should intend to sleep,  
And charge that no man should disturb your rest  
In pain of your dislike or pain of death, 257  
Yet, notwithstanding such a strait edict.  
Were there a serpent seen, with forked tongue,  
That slyly glided towards your majesty, 260  
It were but necessary you were wak'd,  
Lest, being suffer'd in that harmful slumber,  
The mortal worm might make the sleep eternal :  
And therefore do they cry, though you forbid, 264  
That they will guard you, whe'r you will or no,  
From such fell serpents as false Suffolk is ;  
With whose envenomed and fatal sting,  
Your loving uncle, twenty times his worth, 268  
They say, is shamefully bereft of life.

COMMONS. [Within.] An answer from the king, my Lord  
of Salisbury !

SUFFOLK. 'Tis like the commons, rude unpolish'd  
hinds,  
Could send such message to their sovereign ; 272  
But you, my lord, were glad to be employ'd,  
To show how quaint an orator you are :  
But all the honour Salisbury hath won  
Is that he was the lord ambassador 276  
Sent from a sort of tinkers to the king.

COMMONS. [Within.] An answer from the king, or we  
will all break in !



KING HENRY. Go, Salisbury, and tell them all from me,  
 I thank them for their tender loving care ; 280  
 And had I not been cited so by them,  
 Yet did I purpose as they do entreat ;  
 For, sure, my thoughts do hourly prophesy  
 Mischance unto my state by Suffolk's means : 284  
 And therefore, by his majesty I swear,  
 Whose far unworthy deputy I am,  
 He shall not breathe infection in this air .  
 But three days longer, on the pain of death. 288

[Exit SALISBURY.]

QUEEN MARGARET. O Henry ! let me plead for gentle  
 Suffolk.

KING HENRY. Ungentle queen, to call him gentle  
 Suffolk !

No more, I say ; if thou dost plead for him  
 Thou wilt but add increase unto my wrath. 292  
 Had I but said, I would have kept my word,  
 But when I swear, it is irrevocable.

[To SUFFOLK.] If after three days' space thou here be'st  
 found

On any ground that I am ruler of, 296  
 The world shall not be ransom for thy life.  
 Come, Warwick, come, good Warwick, go with me ;  
 I have great matters to impart to thee.

[Exeunt KING HENRY, WARWICK, Lords, &c.]

QUEEN MARGARET. Mischance and sorrow go along  
 with you ! 300

Heart's discontent and sour affliction  
 Be playfellows to keep you company !  
 There's two of you ; the devil make a third, 303  
 And threefold vengeance tend upon your steps !

SUFFOLK. Cease, gentle queen, these execrations,  
 And let thy Suffolk take his heavy leave.

QUEEN MARGARET. Fie, coward woman and soft-  
 hearted wretch !

Hast thou not spirit to curse thine enemy ? 308

SUFFOLK. A plague upon them ! Wherefore should I  
 curse them ?

Would curses kill, as doth the mandrake's groan,  
 I would invent as bitter-searching terms,  
 As curst, as harsh and horrible to hear, 312  
 Deliver'd strongly through my fixed teeth,

With full as many signs of deadly hate,  
As lean-fac'd Envy in her loathsome cave. 315  
My tongue should stumble in mine earnest words ;  
Mine eyes should sparkle like the beaten flint ;  
My hair be fix'd on end, as one distract ; 318  
Ay, every joint should seem to curse and ban :  
And even now my burden'd heart would break,  
Should I not curse them. Poison be their drink !  
Gall, worse than gall, the daintiest that they taste !  
Their sweetest shade a grove of cypress trees !  
Their chiefest prospect murdering basilisks ! 324  
Their softest touch as smart as lizard's stings !  
Their music frightful as the serpent's hiss,  
And boding screech-owls make the concert full !  
All the foul terrors in dark-seated hell— 328

QUEEN MARGARET. Enough, sweet Suffolk ; thou torment'st thyself ;

And these dread curses, like the sun 'gainst glass,  
Or like an over-charged gun, recoil,  
And turn the force of them upon thyself. 332

SUFFOLK. You bade me ban, and will you bid me leave ?

Now, by the ground that I am banish'd from,  
Well could I curse away a winter's night,  
Though standing naked on a mountain top, 336  
Where biting cold would never let grass grow,  
And think it but a minute spent in sport.

QUEEN MARGARET. O ! let me entreat thee, cease !

Give me thy hand,

That I may dew it with my mournful tears ; 340  
Nor let the rain of heaven wet this place,  
To wash away my woeful monuments.

O ! could this kiss be printed in thy hand, [Kisses his hand.  
That thou mightst think upon these by the seal, 344  
Through whom a thousand sighs are breath'd for thee.

So, get thee gone, that I may know my grief ;  
'Tis but surmis'd whiles thou art standing by, 348  
As one that surfeits thinking on a want.

I will repeal thee, or, be well assur'd,  
Adventure to be banished myself ;  
And banished I am, if but from thee.

Go ; speak not to me ; even now be gone. 352

O ! go not yet. Even thus two friends condemn'd

Embrace and kiss, and take ten thousand leaves,  
 Loather a hundred times to part than die.  
 Yet now farewell ; and farewell life with thee ! 356  
 SUFFOLK. Thus is poor Suffolk ten times banished,  
 Once by the king, and three times thrice by thee.  
 'Tis not the land I care for, wert thou thence ;  
 A wilderness is populous enough, 360  
 So Suffolk had thy heavenly company :  
 For where thou art, there is the world itself,  
 With every several pleasure in the world,  
 And where thou art not, desolation. 364  
 I can no more : live thou to joy thy life ;  
 Myself to joy in nought but that thou livest.

Enter VAUX.

QUEEN MARGARET. Whither goes Vaux so fast ? what  
 news, I prithee ?

VAUX. To signify unto his majesty 368  
 That Cardinal Beaufort is at point of death ;  
 For suddenly a grievous sickness took him,  
 That makes him gasp and stare, and catch the air,  
 Blaspheming God, and cursing men on earth. 372  
 Sometime he talks as if Duke Humphrey's ghost  
 Were by his side ; sometime he calls the king,  
 And whispers to his pillow, as to him,  
 The secrets of his overcharged soul : 376  
 And I am sent to tell his majesty  
 That even now he cries aloud for him.

QUEEN MARGARET. Go tell this heavy message to the  
 king. [Exit VAUX.]

Ay me ! what is this world ! what news are these !  
 But wherefore grieve I at an hour's poor loss, 381  
 Omitting Suffolk's exile, my soul's treasure ?  
 Why only, Suffolk, mourn I not for thee,  
 And with the southern clouds contend in tears, 384  
 Theirs for the earth's increase, mine for my sorrows ?  
 Now get thee hence : the king, thou know'st, is coming ;  
 If thou be found by me thou art but dead.

SUFFOLK. If I depart from thee I cannot live ;  
 And in thy sight to die, what were it else 389  
 But like a pleasant slumber in thy lap ?  
 Here could I breathe my soul into the air,  
 As mild and gentle as the cradle-babe, 392

Dying with mother's ~~lug~~ <sup>lug</sup> between its lips ;  
 Where, from thy sight, I should be raging mad,  
 And cry out for thee to close up mine eyes,  
 To have thee with thy lips to stop my mouth : 396  
 So shouldst thou either turn my flying soul,  
 Or I should breathe it so into thy body,  
 And then it liv'd in sweet Elysium.  
 To die by thee, were but to die in jest ; 400  
 From thee to die were torture more than death.  
 O ! let me stay, befall what may befall !

QUEEN MARGARET. Away ! though parting be a fretful  
 corsive,

It is applied to a deathful wound. 404  
 To France, sweet Suffolk : let me hear from thee ;  
 For wheresoe'er thou art in this world's globe,  
 I'll have an Iris that shall find thee out. 407

SUFFOLK. I go.

QUEEN MARGARET. And take my heart with thee.

SUFFOLK. A jewel, lock'd into the woeful'st cask  
 That ever did contain a thing of worth.  
 Even as a splitted bark, so sunder we :  
 This way fall I to death.

QUEEN MARGARET. This way for me. 412

[Exeunt severally.]

SCENE III.—London. CARDINAL BEAUFORT'S Bedchamber.

Enter KING HENRY, SALISBURY, WARWICK, and Others. The  
 CARDINAL in bed ; Attendants with him.

KING HENRY. How fares my lord ? speak, Beaufort,  
 to thy sovereign.

CARDINAL. If thou be'st death, I'll give thee Eng-  
 land's treasure,

Enough to purchase such another island,  
 So thou wilt let me live, and feel no pain. 4

KING HENRY. Ah ! what a sign it is of evil life  
 Where death's approach is seen so terrible.

WARWICK. Beaufort, it is thy sovereign speaks to thee.

CARDINAL. Bring me unto my trial when you will.

Died he not in his bed ? where should he die ?

Can I make men live whe'r they will or no ?

O ! torture me no more, I will confess.

Alive again ? then show me where he is : 12

I'll give a thousand pound to look upon him.  
 He hath no eyes, the dust hath blinded them.  
 Comb down his hair ; look ! look ! it stands upright,  
 Like lime-twigs set to catch my winged soul. 16  
 Give me some drink ; and bid the apothecary  
 Bring the strong poison that I bought of him.

KING HENRY. O thou eternal Mover of the heavens !  
 Look with a gentle eye upon this wretch ; 20  
 O ! beat away the busy meddling fiend  
 That lays strong siege unto this wretch's soul,  
 And from his bosom purge this black despair.

WARWICK. See how the pangs of death do make him  
 grin ! 24

SALISBURY. Disturb him not ! let him pass peaceably.

KING HENRY. Peace to his soul, if God's good pleasure  
 be !

Lord Cardinal, if thou think'st on heaven's bliss,  
 Hold up thy hand, make signal of thy hope. 28  
 He dies, and makes no sign. O God, forgive him !

WARWICK. So bad a death argues a monstrous life.

KING HENRY. Forbear to judge, for we are sinners all.  
 Close up his eyes, and draw the curtain close ; 32  
 And let us all to meditation. [Exeunt.]

## ACT IV.

SCENE I.—Kent. The Seashore near Dover.

Firing heard at Sea. Then enter from a boat, a Captain, a Master,  
 a Master's-Mate, WALTER WHITMORE, and Others ; with them  
 SUFFOLK disguised, and other Gentlemen, prisoners.

CAPTAIN. The gaudy, blabbing, and remorseful day  
 Is crept into the bosom of the sea,  
 And now loud-howling wolves arouse the jades  
 That drag the tragic melancholy night ; 4  
 Who with their drowsy, slow, and flagging wings  
 Clip dead men's graves, and from their misty jaws  
 Breathe foul contagious darkness in the air.  
 Therefore bring forth the soldiers of our prize, 8  
 For, whilst our pinnace anchors in the Downs  
 Here shall they make their ransom on the sand,  
 Or with their blood stain this discolour'd shore.

Master, this prisoner freely give I thee : 12  
And thou that art his mate make boot of this ;  
The other [Pointing to SUFFOLK], Walter Whitmore, is thy share.

FIRST GENTLEMAN. What is my ransom, master ? let me know.

MASTER. A thousand crowns, or else lay down your head. 16

MATE. And so much shall you give, or off goes yours.

CAPTAIN. What ! think you much to pay two thousand crowns,

And bear the name and port of gentlemen ?  
Cut both the villains' throats ! for die you shall :  
The lives of those which we have lost in fight 21  
Cannot be counterpois'd with such a petty sum !

FIRST GENTLEMAN. I'll give it, sir ; and therefore spare my life.

SECOND GENTLEMAN. And so will I, and write home for it straight. 24

WHITMORE. I lost mine eye in laying the prize aboard,  
[To SUFFOLK.] And therefore to revenge it shalt thou die ;  
And so should these if I might have my will.

CAPTAIN. Be not so rash : take ransom ; let him live.

SUFFOLK. Look on my George ; I am a gentleman :  
Rate me at what thou wilt, thou shalt be paid.

WHITMORE. And so am I ; my name is Walter Whitmore.

How now ! why start'st thou ? what ! doth death affright ? 32

SUFFOLK. Thy name affrights me, in whose sound is death.

A cunning man did calculate my birth,  
And told me that by Water I should die :  
Yet let not this make thee be bloody-minded ; 36  
Thy name is—Gaultier, being rightly sounded.

WHITMORE. Gaultier, or Walter, which it is I care not ;

Never yet did base dishonour blur our name  
But with our sword we wip'd away the blot : 40  
Therefore, when merchant-like I sell revenge,  
Broke be my sword, my arms torn and defac'd,  
And I proclaim'd a coward through the world !

[Lays hold on SUFFOLK.]

SUFFOLK. Stay, Whitmore ; for thy prisoner is a prince, 44

The Duke of Suffolk, William de la Pole.

WHITMORE. The Duke of Suffolk muffled up in rags !

SUFFOLK. Ay, but these rags are no part of the duke :  
Jove sometimes went disguis'd, and why not I ? 48

CAPTAIN. But Jove was never slain, as thou shalt be.

SUFFOLK. Obscure and lowly swain, King Henry's blood,

The honourable blood of Lancaster,

Must not be shed by such a jaded groom. 52

Hast thou not kiss'd thy hand and held my stirrup ?

Bare-headed plodded by my foot-cloth mule,

And thought thee happy when I shook my head ?

How often hast thou waited at my cup, 56

Fed from my trencher, kneel'd down at the board,

When I have feasted with Queen Margaret ?

Remember it and let it make thee crest-fall'n ;

Ay, and allay this thy abortive pride. 60

How in our voiding lobby hast thou stood

And duly waited for my coming forth ?

This hand of mine hath writ in thy behalf,

And therefore shall it charm thy riotous tongue. 64

WHITMORE. Speak, captain, shall I stab the forlorn swain ?

CAPTAIN. First let my words stab him, as he hath me.

SUFFOLK. Base slave, thy words are blunt, and so art thou.

CAPTAIN. Convey him hence, and on our longboat's side 68

Strike off his head.

SUFFOLK. Thou dar'st not for thy own.

CAPTAIN. Yes, Pole.

SUFFOLK. Pole !

CAPTAIN. Pool ! Sir Pool ! lord !

Ay, kennel, puddle, sink ; whose filth and dirt

Troubles the silver spring where England drinks.

Now will I dam up this thy yawning mouth 73

For swallowing the treasure of the realm :

Thy lips, that kiss'd the queen, shall sweep the ground ;

And thou, that smil'dst at good Duke Humphrey's death,

Against the senseless winds shall grin in vain, 77

Who in contempt shall hiss at thee again :

And wedded be thou to the hags of hell,  
 For daring to affy a mighty lord 80  
 Unto the daughter of a worthless king,  
 Having neither subject, wealth, nor diadem.  
 By devilish policy art thou grown great,  
 And, like ambitious Sylla, overgorg'd 84  
 With gobbets of thy mother's bleeding heart.  
 By thee Anjou and Maine were sold to France,  
 The false revolting Normans thorough thee  
 Disdain to call us lord, and Picardy 88  
 Hath slain their governors, surpris'd our forts,  
 And sent the ragged soldiers wounded home.  
 The princely Warwick, and the Nevils all,  
 Whose dreadful swords were never drawn in vain,  
 As hating thee, are rising up in arms : 93  
 And now the house of York, thrust from the crown  
 By shameful murder of a guiltless king,  
 And lofty proud encroaching tyranny, 96  
 Burns with revenging fire ; whose hopeful colours  
 Advance our half-fac'd sun, striving to shine,  
 Under the which is writ ' Invitis nubibus '.  
 The commons here in Kent are up in arms ; 100  
 And to conclude, reproach and beggary  
 Is crept into the palace of our king,  
 And all by thee. Away ! convey him hence.

SUFFOLK. O ! that I were a god, to shoot forth thunder  
 Upon these paltry, servile, abject drudges. 105  
 Small things make base men proud : this villain here,  
 Being captain of a pinnace, threatens more  
 Than Bargulus the strong Illyrian pirate. 108  
 Drones suck not eagles' blood, but rob beehives.  
 It is impossible that I should die  
 By such a lowly vassal as thyself.  
 Thy words move rage, and not remorse in me : 112  
 I go of message from the queen to France ;  
 I charge thee, waft me safely cross the Channel.

CAPTAIN. Walter !

WHITMORE. Come, Suffolk, I must waft thee to thy  
 death. 116

SUFFOLK. Gelidus timor occupat artus : 'tis thee I  
 fear.

WHITMORE. Thou shalt have cause to fear before I  
 leave thee.



What ! are ye daunted now ? now will ye stoop ?

FIRST GENTLEMAN. My gracious lord, entreat him,  
speak him fair. 120

SUFFOLK. Suffolk's imperial tongue is stern and rough,  
Us'd to command, untaught to plead for favour.

Far be it we should honour such as these  
With humble suit : no, rather let my head 124

Stoop to the block than these knees bow to any  
Save to the God of heaven, and to my king ;

And sooner dance upon a bloody pole  
Than stand uncover'd to the vulgar groom. 128

True nobility is exempt from fear :  
More can I bear than you dare execute.

CAPTAIN. Hale him away, and let him talk no more.

SUFFOLK. Come, soldiers, show what cruelty ye can,  
That this my death may never be forgot. 133

Great men oft die by vile bezonians.  
A Roman sworder and banditto slave

Murder'd sweet Tully ; Brutus' bastard hand 136

Stabb'd Julius Cæsar ; savage islanders  
Pompey the Great ; and Suffolk dies by pirates.

[Exit with SUFFOLK, WHITMORE and Others.

CAPTAIN. And as for these whose ransom we have set,  
It is our pleasure one of them depart : 140

Therefore come you with us and let him go.

[Exeunt all but First Gentleman.

Re-enter WHITMORE, with SUFFOLK's body.

WHITMORE. There let his head and lifeless body lie,  
Until the queen his mistress bury it. [Exit. 145

FIRST GENTLEMAN. O barbarous and bloody spectacle !  
His body will I bear unto the king : 145

If he revenge it not, yet will his friends ;  
So will the queen, that living held him dear.

[Exit with the body.

## SCENE II.—Blackheath.

Enter GEORGE BEVIS and JOHN HOLLAND.

GEORGE. Come, and get thee a sword, though made  
of a lath : they have been up these two days.

JOHN. They have the more need to sleep now then.

GEORGE. I tell thee, Jack Cade the clothier means

to dress the commonwealth, and turn it, and set a new nap upon it. 6

JOHN. So he had need, for 'tis threadbare. Well, I say it was never merry world in England since gentlemen came up. 9

GEORGE. O miserable age ! Virtue is not regarded in handicrafts-men.

JOHN. The nobility, think scorn to go in leather aprons. 13

GEORGE. Nay, more ; the king's council are no good workmen.

JOHN. True ; and yet it is said, ' Labour in thy vocation ' : which is as much to say as, let the magistrates be labouring men ; and therefore should we be magistrates.

GEORGE. Thou hast hit it ; for there 's no better sign of a brave mind than a hard hand. 21

JOHN. I see them ! I see them ! There 's Best's son, the tanner of Wingham,—

GEORGE. He shall have the skins of our enemies to make dog's-leather of. 25

JOHN. And Dick the butcher,—

GEORGE. Then is sin struck down like an ox, and iniquity's throat cut like a calf. 28

JOHN. And Smith the weaver,—

GEORGE. Argo, their thread of life is spun.

JOHN. Come, come, let 's fall in with them.

Drum. Enter CADE, DICK the Butcher, SMITH the Weaver, and a Sawyer, with infinite numbers.

CADE. We John Cade, so termed of our supposed father,— 33

DICK. [Aside.] Or rather, of stealing a cade of herrings.

CADE. For our enemies shall fall before us, inspired with the spirit of putting down kings and princes,—  
Command silence.

DICK. Silence !

CADE. My father was a Mortimer.— 40

DICK. [Aside.] He was an honest man, and a good bricklayer.

CADE. My mother a Plantagenet,—

DICK. [Aside.] I knew her well ; she was a midwife.

CADE. My wife descended of the Lacies,— 45

DICK. [Aside.] She was, indeed, a pedlar's daughter, and sold many laces.

SMITH. [Aside.] But now of late, not able to travel with her furred pack, she washes bucks here at home.

CADE. Therefore am I of an honourable house.

DICK. [Aside.] Ay, by my faith, the field is honourable ; and there was he born, under a hedge ; for his father had never a house but the cage. 53

CADE. Valiant I am.

SMITH. [Aside.] A' must needs, for beggary is valiant.

CADE. I am able to endure much.

DICK. [Aside.] No question of that, for I have seen him whipped three market-days together.

CADE. I fear neither sword nor fire.

SMITH. [Aside.] He need not fear the sword, for his coat is of proof. 61

DICK. [Aside.] But methinks he should stand in fear of fire, being burnt i' the hand for stealing of sheep.

CADE. Be brave, then ; for your captain is brave, and vows reformation. There shall be in England seven halfpenny loaves sold for a penny ; the three-hooped pot shall have ten hoops ; and I will make it felony to drink small beer. All the realm shall be in common, and in Cheapside shall my palfrey go to grass. And when I am king,—as king I will be,—

ALL. God save your majesty ! 71

CADE. I thank you, good people : there shall be no money ; all shall eat and drink on my score ; and I will apparel them all in one livery, that they may agree like brothers, and worship me their lord. 75

DICK. The first thing we do, let's kill all the lawyers.

CADE. Nay, that I mean to do. Is not this a lamentable thing, that of the skin of an innocent lamb should be made parchment ? that parchment, being scribbled o'er, should undo a man ? Some say the bee stings ; but I say, 'tis the bee's wax, for I did but seal once to a thing, and I was never mine own man since. How now ! who's there ? 83

Enter some, bringing in the Clerk of Chatham.

SMITH. The Clerk of Chatham : he can write and read and cast accompt

CADE. O monstrous !

SMITH. We took him setting of boys' copies.

CADE. Here 's a villain !

88

SMITH. Has a book in his pocket with red letters in 't.

CADE. Nay, then he is a conjurer.

DICK. Nay, he can make obligations, and write court-hand.

93

CADE. I am sorry for 't : the man is a proper man, of mine honour ; unless I find him guilty, he shall not die. Come hither, sirrah, I must examine thee. What is thy name ?

CLERK. Emmanuel.

DICK. They use to write it on the top of letters. 'Twill go hard with you.

100

CADE. Let me alone. Dost thou use to write thy name, or hast thou a mark to thyself, like an honest plain-dealing man ?

CLERK. Sir, I thank God, I have been so well brought up, that I can write my name.

105

ALL. He hath confessed : away with him ! he 's a villain and a traitor.

CADE. Away with him ! I say : hang him with his pen and ink-horn about his neck. [Exeunt some with the Clerk.]

Enter MICHAEL.

MICHAEL. Where 's our general ?

CADE. Here I am, thou particular fellow.

MICHAEL. Fly, fly, fly ! Sir Humphrey Stafford and his brother are hard by, with the king's forces.

113

CADE. Stand, villain, stand, or I'll fell thee down. He shall be encountered with a man as good as himself : he is but a knight, is a' ?

116

MICHAEL. No.

CADE. To equal him, I will make myself a knight presently. [Kneels.] Rise up Sir John Mortimer. [Rises.] Now have at him.

120

Enter SIR HUMPHREY STAFFORD and WILLIAM his Brother, with drum and Forces.

STAFFORD. Rebellious hinds, the filth and scum of Kent,  
Mark'd for the gallows, lay your weapons down ;

Home to your cottages, forsake this groom :

The king is merciful, if you revolt. 124

WILLIAM STAFFORD. But angry, wrathful, and inclin'd  
to blood,

If you go forward : therefore yield, or die.

CADE. As for these silken-coated slaves, I pass not :

It is to you, good people, that I speak, 128

O'er whom, in time to come I hope to reign ;

For I am rightful heir unto the crown.

STAFFORD. Villain ! thy father was a plasterer ;

And thou thyself a shearman, art thou not ? 132

CADE. And Adam was a gardener.

WILLIAM STAFFORD. And what of that ?

CADE. Marry, this : Edmund Mortimer, Earl of March,  
Married the Duke of Clarence' daughter, did he not ?

STAFFORD. Ay, sir. 137

CADE. By her he had two children at one birth.

WILLIAM STAFFORD. That 's false.

CADE. Ay, there 's the question ; but I say, 'tis true :  
The elder of them, being put to nurse, 141

Was by a beggar-woman stolen away ;

And, ignorant of his birth and parentage,

Became a bricklayer when he came to age : 144

His son am I ; deny it if you can.

DICK. Nay, 'tis too true ; therefore he shall be king.

SMITH. Sir, he made a chimney in my father's house,  
and the bricks are alive at this day to testify it ; there-  
fore deny it not. 149

STAFFORD. And will you credit this base drudge's words,  
That speaks he knows not what ?

ALL. Ay, marry, will we ; therefore get ye gone.

WILLIAM STAFFORD. Jack Cade, the Duke of York  
hath taught you this. 153

CADE. [Aside.] He lies, for I invented it myself. Go  
to, sirrah ; tell the king from me, that, for his father's  
sake, Henry the Fifth, in whose time boys went to span-  
counter for French crowns, I am content he shall reign ;  
but I'll be protector over him.

DICK. And furthermore, we'll have the Lord Say's  
head for selling the dukedom of Maine. 160

CADE. And good reason ; for thereby is England  
mained, and fain to go with a staff, but that my puis-  
sance holds it up. Fellow kings, I tell you that that

Lord Say hath gelded the commonwealth, and made ~~a~~ a eunuch; and more than that, he can speak French; and therefore he is a traitor. 166

STAFFORD. O gross and miserable ignorance!

CADE. Nay, answer, if you can: the Frenchmen are our enemies; go to then, I ask but this, can he that speaks with the tongue of an enemy be a good counsellor, or no? 171

ALL. No, no; and therefore we'll have his head.

WILLIAM STAFFORD. Well, seeing gentle words will not prevail,

Assail them with the army of the king.

STAFFORD. Herald, away; and throughout every town Proclaim them traitors that are up with Cade; 176

That those which fly before the battle ends May, even in their wives' and children's sight, Be hang'd up for example at their doors:

And you, that be the king's friends, follow me. 180

[Exeunt the two STAFFORDS and Forces.]

CADE. And you, that love the commons, follow me.

Now show yourselves men; 'tis for liberty.

We will not leave one lord, one gentleman:

Spare none but such as go in clouted shoon, 184

For they are thrifty honest men, and such

As would, but that they dare not, take our parts.

DICK. They are all in order, and march toward us.

CADE. But then are we in order when we are most out of order. Come, march! forward! [Exeunt. 188

### SCENE III.—Another Part of Blackheath.

Alarums. The two parties enter and fight, and both the STAFFORDS are slain.

CADE. Where's Dick, the butcher of Ashford?

DICK. Here, sir.

CADE. They fell before thee like sheep and oxen, and thou behavedst thyself as if thou hadst been in thine own slaughter-house: therefore thus will I reward thee, the Lent shall be as long again as it is; and thou shalt have a licence to kill for a hundred lacking one.

DICK. I desire no more.

CADE. And, to speak truth, thou deservest no less. This monument of the victory will I bear; [Puts on Sir

HUMPHREY STAFFORD'S armour.] and the bodies shall be dragged at my horse' heels, till I do come to London, where we will have the Mayor's sword borne before us.

DICK. If we mean to thrive and do good, break open the gaols and let out the prisoners. 16

CADE. Fear not that, I warrant thee. Come; let's march towards London. [Exeunt. 17

SCENE IV.—London. A Room in the Palace.

Enter KING HENRY, reading a supplication; the DUKE OF BUCKINGHAM and LORD SAY with him: at a distance, QUEEN MARGARET, mourning over SUFFOLK's head.

QUEEN MARGARET. Oft have I heard that grief softens the mind,

And makes it fearful and degenerate;  
Think therefore on revenge, and cease to weep.  
But who can cease to weep and look on this? 4  
Here may his head lie on my throbbing breast;  
But where's the body that I should embrace?

BUCKINGHAM. What answer makes your Grace to the rebels' supplication? 8

KING HENRY. I'll send some holy bishop to entreat;  
For God forbid so many simple souls  
Should perish by the sword! And I myself,  
Rather than bloody war shall cut them short, 12  
Will parley with Jack Cade their general.  
But stay, I'll read it over once again.

QUEEN MARGARET. Ah, barbarous villains! hath this lovely face

Rul'd like a wandering planet over me, 16  
And could it not enforce them to relent,  
That were unworthy to behold the same?

KING HENRY. Lord Say, Jack Cade hath sworn to have thy head.

SAY. Ay, but I hope your highness shall have his.

KING HENRY. How now, madam! 21  
Still lamenting and mourning for Suffolk's death?  
I fear me, love, if that I had been dead,  
Thou wouldest not have mourn'd so much for me.

QUEEN MARGARET. No, my love; I should not mourn, but die for thee.

Enter a Messenger.

KING HENRY. How now ! what news ? why com'st thou in such haste ?

MESSENGER The rebels are in Southwark ; fly, my lord  
Jack Cade proclaims himself Lord Mortimer, 28  
Descended from the Duke of Clarence' house,  
And calls your Grace usurper openly,  
And vows to crown himself in Westminster.  
His army is a ragged multitude 32  
Of hinds and peasants, rude and merciless :  
Sir Humphrey Stafford and his brother's death  
Hath given them heart and courage to proceed.  
All scholars, lawyers, courtiers, gentlemen, 36  
They call false caterpillars, and intend their death.

KING HENRY. O graceless men ! they know not what they do.

BUCKINGHAM. My gracious lord, retire to Killingworth,  
Until a power be rais'd to put them down. 40

QUEEN MARGARET. Ah ! were the Duke of Suffolk  
now alive,  
These Kentish rebels would be soon appeas'd.

KING HENRY. Lord Say, the traitors hate thee,  
Therefore away with us to Killingworth. 44

SAY. So might your Grace's person be in danger.  
The sight of me is odious in their eyes ;  
And therefore in this city will I stay,  
And live alone as secret as I may. 48

Enter a second Messenger.

SECOND MESSENGER. Jack Cade hath gotten London  
bridge ;  
The citizens fly and forsake their houses ;  
The rascal people, thirsting after prey,  
Join with the traitor ; and they jointly swear 52  
To spoil the city and your royal court.

BUCKINGHAM. Then linger not, my lord ; away ! take horse.

KING HENRY. Come, Margaret ; God, our hope, will  
succour us.

QUEEN MARGARET. My hope is gone, now Suffolk is  
deceas'd. 56

KING HENRY. [To LORD SAY.] Farewell, my lord : trust  
not the Kentish rebels.



BUCKINGHAM. Trust nobody, for fear you be betray'd.  
 SAY. The trust I have is in mine innocence,  
 And therefore am I bold and resolute. [Exeunt.

SCENE V.—The Same. The Tower.

Enter LORD SCALES and Others, on the Walls. Then enter certain Citizens, below.

SCALES. How now ! is Jack Cade slain ?

FIRST CITIZEN. No, my lord, nor likely to ~~be~~ slain ;  
 for they have won the bridge, killing all those that  
 withstand them. The Lord Mayor craves aid of your  
 honour from the Tower, to defend the city from the  
 rebels. 6

SCALES. Such aid as I can spare you shall command ;  
 But I am troubled here with them myself ;  
 The rebels have assay'd to win the Tower.  
 But get you to Smithfield and gather head, 10  
 And thither I will send you Matthew Goffe :  
 Fight for your king, your country, and your lives ;  
 And so, farewell, for I must hence again. [Exeunt.

SCENE VI. London. Cannon Street.

Enter JACK CADE and his Followers. He strikes his staff on  
 London-stone.

CADE. Now is Mortimer lord of this city. And here,  
 sitting upon London-stone, I charge and command that,  
 of the city's cost, the pissing-conduit run nothing but  
 claret wine this first year of our reign. And now, hence-  
 forward, it shall be treason for any that calls me other  
 than Lord Mortimer 6

Enter a Soldier, running.

SOLDIER. Jack Cade ! Jack Cade !

CADE. Knock him down there. [They kill him.

SMITH. If this fellow be wise, he'll never call you  
 Jack Cade more ; I think he hath a very fair warning.

DICK. My lord, there 's an army gathered together in  
 Smithfield. 12

CADE. Come then, let 's go fight with them. But first,  
 go and set London bridge on fire, and, if you can, burn  
 down the Tower too. Come, let 's away. [Exeunt.

## SCENE VII.—The Same. Smithfield.

Alarums. Enter, on one side, CADE and his company; on the other, Citizens, and the KING's Forces, headed by MATTHEW GOFFE. They fight; the Citizens are routed, and MATTHEW GOFFE is slain.

CADE. So, sirs :—Now go some and pull down the Savoy; others to the inns of court: down with them all.

DICK. I have a suit unto your lordship.

CADE. Be it a lordship, thou shalt have it for that word. 5

DICK. Only that the laws of England may come out of your mouth.

JOHN. [Aside.] Mass, 'twill be sore law then; for he was thrust in the mouth with a spear, and 'tis not whole yet.

SMITH. [Aside.] Nay, John, it will be stinking law; for his breath stinks with eating toasted cheese. 12

CADE. I have thought upon it; it shall be so. Away! burn all the records of the realm: my mouth shall be the parliament of England.

JOHN. [Aside.] Then we are like to have biting statutes, unless his teeth be pulled out. 17

CADE. And henceforward all things shall be in common.

Enter a Messenger.

MESSENGER. My lord, a prize, a prize! here's the Lord Say, which sold the towns in France; he that made us pay one-and-twenty fifteens, and one shilling to the pound, the last subsidy. 23

Enter GEORGE BEVIS, with the LORD SAY.

CADE. Well, he shall be beheaded for it ten times. Ah! thou say, thou serge, nay, thou buckram lord; now art thou within point-blank of our jurisdiction regal. What canst thou answer to my majesty for giving up of Normandy unto Monsieur Basimecu, the Dauphin of France? Be it known unto thee by these presence, even the presence of Lord Mortimer, that I am the besom that must sweep the court clean of such filth as thou art. Thou hast most traitorously corrupted the youth of the realm in erecting a grammar-school; and whereas, before, our forefathers had no other books

but the score and the tally, thou hast caused printing to be used ; and, contrary to the king, his crown, and dignity, thou hast built a paper-mill. It will be proved to thy face that thou hast men about thee that usually talk of a noun and a verb, and such abominable words as no Christian ear can endure to hear. Thou hast appointed justices of peace, to call poor men before them about matters they were not able to answer. Moreover, thou hast put them in prison ; and because they could not read, thou hast hanged them ; when indeed only for that cause they have been most worthy to live. Thou dost ride on a foot-cloth, dost thou not ?

SAY. What of that ? . 47

CADE. Marry, thou oughtest not to let thy horse wear a cloak, when honest men than thou go in their hose and doublets.

DICK. And work in their shirt too ; as myself, for example, that am a butcher. 52

SAY. You men of Kent,—

DICK. What say you of Kent ?

SAY. Nothing but this : 'tis bona terra, mala gens.

CADE. Away with him ! away with him ! he speaks Latin. 57

SAY. Hear me but speak, and bear me where you will.  
 Kent, in the Commentaries Caesar writ,  
 Is term'd the civil'st place of all this isle : 60  
 Sweet is the country, because full of riches ;  
 The people liberal, valiant, active, wealthy ;  
 Which makes me hope you are not void of pity.  
 I sold not Maine, I lost not Normandy ; 64  
 Yet, to recover them, would lose my life.  
 Justice with favour have I always done ;  
 Prayers and tears have moved me, gifts could never.  
 When have I aught exacted at your hands, 68  
 But to maintain the king, the realm, and you ?  
 Large gifts have I bestow'd on learned clerks,  
 Because my book preferr'd me to the king,  
 And seeing ignorance is the curse of God, 72  
 Knowledge the wing wherewith we fly to heaven,  
 Unless you be possess'd with devilish spirits,  
 You cannot but forbear to murder me :  
 This tongue hath parley'd unto foreign kings 76  
 For your behoof,—

CADE. Tut ! when struck'st thou one blow in the field ?

SAY. Great men have reaching hands : oft have I struck

Those that I never saw, and struck them dead. 80

GEORGE. O monstrous coward ! what, to come behind folks !

SAY. These cheeks are pale for watching for your good.

CADE. Give him a box o' the ear, and that will make 'em red again. 85

SAY. Long sitting, to determine poor men's causes, Hath made me full of sickness and diseases.

CADE. Ye shall have a hempen caudle then, and the help of hatchet. 89

DICK. Why dost thou quiver, man ?

SAY. The palsy, and not fear, provokes me.

CADE. Nay, he nods at us ; as who should say, I'll be even with you : I'll see if his head will stand steadier on a pole, or no. Take him away and behead him.

SAY. Tell me wherein have I offended most ?

Have I affected wealth, or honour ? speak. 96

Are my chests fill'd up with extorted gold ?

Is my apparel sumptuous to behold ?

Whom have I injur'd, that ye seek my death ? 99

These hands are free from guiltless blood-shedding,

This breast from harbouring foul deceitful thoughts.

O ! let me live. 102

CADE. [Aside.] I feel remorse in myself with his words ; but I'll bridle it : he shall die, an it be but for pleading so well for his life. Away with him ! he has a familiar under his tongue ; he speaks not o' God's name. Go, take him away, I say, and strike off his head presently ; and then break into his son-in-law's house, Sir James Cromer, and strike off his head, and bring them both upon two poles hither. 110

ALL. It shall be done.

SAY. Ah, countrymen ! if when you make your prayers,

God should be so obdurate as yourselves, .

How would it fare with your departed souls ? 114

And therefore yet relent, and save my life.

CADE. Away with him ! and do as I command ye.

[Exeunt some, with LORD SAY.] The proudest peer in the realm shall not wear a head on his shoulders, unless he pay

me tribute; there shall not a maid be married, but she shall pay to me her maidenhead, ere they have it; men shall hold of me in capite; and we charge and command that their wives be as free as heart can wish or tongue can tell.

DICK. My lord, when shall we go to Cheapside, and take up commodities upon our bills? 125

CADE. Marry, presently.

ALL. O! brave!

Re-enter Rebels, with the heads of LORD SAY and his Son-in-law.

CADE. But is not this braver? Let them kiss one another, for they loved well when they were alive. Now part them again, lest they consult about the giving up of some more towns in France. Soldiers, defer the spoil of the city until night: for with these borne before us, instead of maces, will we ride through the streets; and at every corner have them kiss. Away! [Exeunt.

SCENE VIII.—The Same. Southwark.

Alarum. Enter CADE and all his Rabblement.

CADE. Up Fish Street! down St. Magnus' Corner! kill and knock down! throw them into Thames! [A parley sounded, then a retreat.] What noise is this I hear? Dare any be so bold to sound retreat or parley, when I command them kill? 5

Enter BUCKINGHAM, and Old CLIFFORD, with Forces.

BUCKINGHAM. Ay, here they be that dare and will disturb thee.

Know, Cade, we come ambassadors from the king  
Unto the commons whom thou hast misled; 8  
And here pronounce free pardon to them all  
That will forsake thee and go home in peace.

CLIFFORD. What say ye, countrymen? will ye relent,  
And yield to mercy, whilst 'tis offer'd you, 12  
Or let a rebel lead you to your deaths?

Who loves the king, and will embrace his pardon,  
Fling up his cap, and say 'God save his majesty!'  
Who hateth him, and honours not his father, 16  
Henry the Fifth, that made all France to quake,  
Shake he his weapon at us, and pass by.

ALL. God save the king! God save the king!

CADE. What ! Buckingham and Clifford, are ye so brave ? And you, base peasants, do ye believe him ? will you needs be hanged with your pardons about your necks ? Hath my sword therefore broke through London Gates, that you should leave me at the White Hart in Southwark ? I thought ye would never have given out these arms till you had recovered your ancient freedom ; but you are all recreants and dastards, and delight to live in slavery to the nobility. Let them break your backs with burdens, take your houses over your heads, ravish your wives and daughters before your faces : for me, I will make shift for one, and so, God's curse light upon you all ! 32

ALL. We'll follow Cade, we'll follow Cade !

CLIFFORD. Is Cade the son of Henry the Fifth,  
That thus you do exclaim you'll go with him ? 35  
Will he conduct you through the heart of France,  
And make the meanest of you earls and dukes ?  
Alas ! he hath no home, no place to fly to ;  
Nor knows he how to live but by the spoil,  
Unless by robbing of your friends and us. 40  
Were't not a shame, that whilst you live at far,  
The fearful French, whom you late vanquished,  
Should make a start o'er seas and vanquish you ?  
Methinks already in this civil broil 44  
I see them lording it in London streets,  
Crying Villiago ! unto all they meet.  
Better ten thousand base-born Cades miscarry, 47  
Than you should stoop unto a Frenchman's mercy.  
To France, to France ! and get what you have lost ;  
Spare England, for it is your native coast.  
Henry hath money, you are strong and manly ;  
God on our side, doubt not of victory. 52

ALL. A Clifford ! a Clifford ! we'll follow the king and Clifford.

CADE. [Aside.] Was ever feather so lightly blown to and fro as this multitude ? The name of Henry the Fifth hales them to a hundred mischiefs, and makes them leave me desolate. I see them lay their heads together to surprise me. My sword make way for me, for here is no staying. In despite of the devils and hell, have through the very middest of you ! and heavens and honour be witness, that no want of resolution in me, but only my

followers' base and ignominious treasons, makes me be-  
take me to my heels. [Exit.

BUCKINGHAM. What, is he fled ? go some, and follow  
him ; 65

And he that brings his head unto the king  
Shall have a thousand crowns for his reward.

[Exeunt some of them.

Follow me, soldiers : we'll devise a mean 68  
To reconcile you all unto the king. [Exeunt.

SCENE IX.—Kenilworth Castle.

Trumpets sounded. Enter KING HENRY, QUEEN MARGARET, and  
SOMERSET, on the terrace.

KING HENRY. Was ever king that joy'd an earthly  
throne,  
And could command no more content than I ?  
No sooner was I crept out of my cradle  
But I was made a king at nine months old : 4  
Was never subject long'd to be a king  
As I do long and wish to be a subject.

Enter BUCKINGHAM and Old CLIFFORD.

BUCKINGHAM. Health, and glad tidings, to your  
majesty !

KING HENRY. Why, Buckingham, is the traitor Cade  
surpris'd ? 8

Or is he but retir'd to make him strong ?

Enter, below, a number of CADE's followers, with halters about  
their necks.

CLIFFORD. He's fled, my lord, and all his powers do  
yield ;  
And humbly thus, with halters on their necks,  
Expect your highness' doom, of life, or death. 12

KING HENRY. Then, heaven, set ope thy everlasting  
gates,  
To entertain my vows of thanks and praise !  
Soldiers, this day have you redeem'd your lives,  
And show'd how well you love your prince and country :  
Continue still in this so good a mind, 17  
And Henry, though he be unfortunate,  
Assure yourselves, will never be unkind :

And so, with thanks and pardon to you all, 20  
I do dismiss you to your several countries.

ALL. God save the king ! God save the king !

Enter a Messenger.

MESSENGER. Please it your Grace to be advertised,  
The Duke of York is newly come from Ireland ; 24  
And with a puissant and a mighty power  
Of gallowglasses, and stout kerns,  
Is marching hitherward in proud array ;  
And still proclaimeth, as he comes along, 28  
His arms are only to remove from thee  
The Duke of Somerset, whom he terms a traitor.

KING HENRY. Thus stands my state, 'twixt Cade and  
York distress'd ;  
Like to a ship that, having scap'd a tempest, 32  
Is straightway calm'd, and boarded with a pirate.  
But now is Cade driven back, his men dispers'd ;  
And now is York in arms to second him.  
I pray thee, Buckingham, go and meet him, 36  
And ask him what 's the reason of these arms.  
Tell him I'll send Duke Edmund to the Tower ;  
And, Somerset, we will commit thee thither,  
Until his army be dismissed from him. 40

SOMERSET. My lord,  
I'll yield myself to prison willingly,  
Or unto death, to do my country good.

KING HENRY. In any case, be not too rough in terms ;  
For he is fierce and cannot brook hard language. 45

BUCKINGHAM. I will, my lord ; and doubt not so to deal  
As all things shall redound unto your good.

KING HENRY. Come, wife, let's in, and learn to  
govern better ; 48  
For yet may England curse my wretched reign. [Exeunt.

SCENE X.—Kent. Iden's Garden.

Enter CADE.

CADE. Fie on ambition ! fie on myself, that have  
a sword, and yet am ready to famish ! These five days  
have I hid me in these woods and durst not peep out,  
for all the country is laid for me ; but now I am so  
hungry, that if I might have a lease of my life for a



thousand years I could stay no longer. Wherefore, on a brick wall have I climbed into this garden, to see if I can eat grass, or pick a sallet another while, which is not amiss to cool a man's stomach this hot weather. And I think this word 'sallet' was born to do me good : for many a time, but for a sallet, my brain-pan had been cleft with a brown bill ; and many a time, when I have been dry, and bravely marching, it hath served me instead of a quart-pot to drink in ; and now the word 'sallet' must serve me to feed on.

15

Enter IDEN with Servants behind.

IDEN. Lord ! who would live turmoiled in the court,  
And may enjoy such quiet walks as these ?  
This small inheritance my father left me  
Contenteth me, and worth a monarchy.  
I seek not to wax great by others' waning, 20  
Or gather wealth I care not with what envy :  
Sufficeth that I have maintains my state,  
And sends the poor well pleased from my gate.

CADE. [Aside.] Here's the lord of the soil come to seize me for a stray, for entering his fee-simple without leave. Ah, villain ! thou wilt betray me, and get a thousand crowns of the king by carrying my head to him ; but I'll make thee eat iron like an ostrich, and swallow my sword like a great pin, ere thou and I part. 29

IDEN. Why, rude companion, whatsoe'er thou be,  
I know thee not ; why then should I betray thee ?  
Is't not enough to break into my garden, 32  
And like a thief to come to rob my grounds,  
Climbing my walls in spite of me the owner,  
But thou wilt brave me with these saucy terms ?

CADE. Brave thee ! ay, by the best blood that ever was broached, and beard thee too. Look on me well : I have eat no meat these five days ; yet, come thou and thy five men, and if I do not leave you all as dead as a door-nail, I pray God I may never eat grass more. 41

IDEN. Nay, it shall ne'er be said, while England stands,  
That Alexander Iden, an esquire of Kent,  
Took odds to combat a poor famish'd man. 44  
Oppose thy steadfast-gazing eyes to mine,  
See if thou canst outface me with thy looks :

Set limb to limb, and thou art far the lesser ;  
Thy hand is but a finger to my fist ;  
Thy leg a stick compared with this truncheon ;  
My foot shall fight with all the strength thou hast :  
And if mine arm be heaved in the air  
Thy grave is digg'd already in the earth. 52  
As for more words, whose greatness answers words,  
Let this my sword report what speech forbears.

CADE. By my valour, the most complete champion  
that ever I heard ! Steel, if thou turn the edge, or cut  
not out the burly-boned clown in chins of beef ere thou  
sleep in thy sheath, I beseech Jove on my knees, thou  
mayst be turned to hobnails. [They fight ; CADE falls.] O,  
I am slain ! Famine and no other hath slain me : let  
ten thousand devils come against me, and give me but  
the ten meals I have lost, and I'll defy them all. Wither,  
garden ; and be henceforth a burying-place to all that  
do dwell in this house, because the unconquered soul of  
Cade is fled. 65

IDEN. Is't Cade that I have slain, that monstrous  
traitor ?  
Sword, I will hallow thee for this thy deed,  
And hang thee o'er my tomb when I am dead : 68  
Ne'er shall this blood be wiped from thy point,  
But thou shalt wear it as a herald's coat,  
To emblaze the honour that thy master got. 71

CADE. Iden, farewell ; and be proud of thy victory.  
Tell Kent from me, she hath lost her best man, and  
exhort all the world to be cowards ; for I, that never  
feared any, am vanquished by famine, not by valour.

IDEN. How much thou wrong'st me, heaven be my  
judge. 76

Die, damned wretch, the curse of her that bare thee !  
And as I thrust thy body in with my sword,  
So wish I, I might thrust thy soul to hell.  
Hence will I drag thee headlong by the heels 80  
Unto a dunghill which shall be thy grave,  
And there cut off thy most ungracious head ;  
Which I will bear in triumph to the king,  
Leaving thy trunk for crows to feed upon. 84

[Exit, with Servants, dragging out the body.]

## ACT V.

SCENE I.—Kent. Fields between Dartford and Blackheath.

The KING's camp on one side. On the other, enter York, and his army of Irish, with drum and colours.

YORK. From Ireland thus comes York to claim his right,

And pluck the crown from feeble Henry's head :  
Ring, bells, aloud ; burn, bonfires, clear and bright,  
To entertain great England's lawful king. 4

Ah sancta majestas, who would not buy thee dear ?  
Let them obey that know not how to rule ;

This hand was made to handle nought but gold :  
I cannot give due action to my words, 8

Except a sword or sceptre balance it.

A sceptre shall it have, have I a soul,  
On which I'll toss the flower-de-luce of France. 11

Enter BUCKINGHAM.

Whom have we here ? Buckingham, to disturb me ?  
The king hath sent him, sure : I must dissemble.

BUCKINGHAM. York, if thou meanest well, I greet thee well.

YORK. Humphrey of Buckingham, I accept thy greeting.

Art thou a messenger, or come of pleasure ? 16

BUCKINGHAM. A messenger from Henry, our dread liege,

To know the reason of these arms in peace ;  
Or why thou,—being a subject as I am,—  
Against thy oath and true allegiance sworn, 20

Shouldst raise so great a power without his leave,  
Or dare to bring thy force so near the court.

YORK. [Aside.] Scarce can I speak, my choler is so great :

O ! I could hew up rocks and fight with flint, 24  
I am so angry at these abject terms ;

And now, like Ajax Telamonius,  
On sheep or oxen could I spend my fury.  
I am far better born than is the king, 28

More like a king, more kingly in my thoughts ;  
But I must make fair weather yet awhile,

Till Henry be more weak, and I more strong.

[Aloud.] Buckingham, I prithee, pardon me,  
That I have given no answer all this while ;  
My mind was troubled with deep melancholy.  
The cause why I have brought this army hither  
Is to remove proud Somerset from the king, 36  
Seditious to his Grace and to the state.

BUCKINGHAM. That is too much presumption on thy  
• part :

But if thy arms be to no other end,  
The king hath yielded unto thy demand : 40  
The Duke of Somerset is in the Tower.

YORK. Upon thine honour, is he a prisoner ?

BUCKINGHAM. Upon mine honour, he is a prisoner.

YORK. Then, Buckingham, I do dismiss my powers.  
Soldiers, I thank you all ; disperse yourselves ; 45

Meet me to-morrow in Saint George's field,  
You shall have pay, and everything you wish,  
And let my sovereign, virtuous Henry, 48

Command my eldest son, nay, all my sons,  
As pledges of my fealty and love ;  
I'll send them all as willing as I live :

Lands, goods, horse, armour, anything I have 52  
Is his to use, so Somerset may die.

BUCKINGHAM. York, I commend this kind submission :  
We twain will go into his highness' tent.

Enter KING HENRY, attended.

KING HENRY. Buckingham, doth York intend no  
harm to us, 56

That thus he marcheth with thee arm in arm ?

YORK. In all submission and humility  
York doth present himself unto your highness.

KING HENRY. Then what intend these forces thou dost  
bring ? 60

YORK. To heave the traitor Somerset from hence,  
And fight against that monstrous rebel, Cade,  
Who since I heard to be discomfited.

Enter IDEN, with CADE's head.

IDEN. If one so rude and of so mean condition 64  
May pass into the presence of a king,  
Lo ! I present your Grace a traitor's head,

The head of Cade, whom I in combat slew.

KING HENRY. The head of Cade! Great God, how  
just art thou! 68

O! let me view his visage, being dead,  
That living wrought me such exceeding trouble.

Tell me, my friend, art thou the man that slew him?

IDEN. I was, an't like your majesty. 72

KING HENRY. How art thou call'd, and what is thy  
degree?

IDEN. Alexander Iden, that's my name;  
A poor esquire of Kent, that loves his king.

BUCKINGHAM. So please it you, my lord, 'twere not  
amiss 76

He were created knight for his good service

KING HENRY. Iden, kneel down. [He kneels.] Rise up a  
knight.

We give thee for reward a thousand marks;  
And will that thou henceforth attend on us. 80

IDEN. May Iden live to merit such a bounty,  
And never live but true unto his liege!

KING HENRY. See! Buckingham! Somerset comes  
with the queen:

Go, bid her hide him quickly from the duke. 84

Enter QUEEN MARGARET and SOMERSET.

QUEEN MARGARET. For thousand Yorks he shall not  
hide his head,  
But boldly stand and front him to his face.

YORK. How now! is Somerset at liberty? 87

Then, York, unloose thy long-imprison'd thoughts  
And let thy tongue be equal with thy heart.

Shall I endure the sight of Somerset?

False king! why hast thou broken faith with me,  
Knowing how hardly I can brook abuse? 92

King did I call thee? no, thou art not king;

Not fit to govern and rule multitudes,

Which darest not, no, nor canst not rule a traitor.

That head of thine doth not become a crown; 96

Thy hand is made to grasp a palmer's staff,

And not to grace an awful princely sceptre.

That gold must round engirt these brows of mine,

Whose smile and frown, like to Achilles' spear, 100

Is able with the change to kill and cure.

Here is a hand to hold a sceptre up,  
And with the same to act controlling laws.  
Give place : by heaven, thou shalt rule no more 104  
O'er him whom heaven created for thy ruler.

SOMERSET. O monstrous traitor :—I arrest thee, York,  
Of capital treason 'gainst the king and crown.  
Obey, audacious traitor ; kneel for grace. 108

YORK. Wouldst have me kneel ? first let me ask of  
these

If they can brook I bow a knee to man.  
Sirrah, call in my sons to be my bail : [Exit an Attendant.  
I know ere they will have me go to ward, 112  
They'll pawn their swords for my enfranchisement.

QUEEN MARGARET. Call hither Clifford ; bid him come  
amain,  
To say if that the bastard boys of York  
Shall be the surety for their traitor father. 116

[Exit BUCKINGHAM.]

YORK. O blood-bespotted Neapolitan,  
Outcast of Naples, England's bloody scourge !  
The sons of York, thy betters in their birth,  
Shall be their father's bail ; and bane to those 120  
That for my surety will refuse the boys !

Enter EDWARD and RICHARD PLANTAGENET, with Forces at one side ; at the other, with Forces also, Old CLIFFORD and his Son.

See where they come : I'll warrant they'll make it good.  
QUEEN MARGARET. And here comes Clifford, to deny  
their bail.

CLIFFORD. [Kneeling.] Health and all happiness to my  
lord the king ! 124

YORK. I thank thee, Clifford : say, what news with  
thee ?

Nay, do not fright us with an angry look :  
We are thy sovereign, Clifford, kneel again ;  
For thy mistaking so, we pardon thee. 128

CLIFFORD. This is my king, York, I do not mistake ;  
But thou mistakest me much to think I do.  
To Bedlam with him ! is the man grown mad ?

KING HENRY. Ay, Clifford ; a bedlam and ambitious  
humour 132  
Makes him oppose himself against his king.

CLIFFORD. He is a traitor ; let him to the Tower,

And chop away that factious pate of his.

QUEEN MARGARET. He is arrested, but will not obey :  
His sons, he says, shall give their words for him. 137

YORK. Will you not, sons ?

EDWARD. Ay, noble father, if our words will serve.

RICHARD. And if words will not, then our weapons  
shall. 140

CLIFFORD. Why, what a brood of traitors have we  
here !

YORK. Look in a glass, and call thy image so :  
I am thy king, and thou a false-heart traitor.  
Call hither to the stake my two brave bears, 144  
That with the very shaking of their chains  
They may astonish these fell-lurking curs :  
Bid Salisbury and Warwick come to me.

Drums. Enter WARWICK and SALISBURY, with Forces

CLIFFORD. Are these thy bears ? we'll bait thy bears  
to death, 148

And manacle the bear-ward in their chains,  
If thou darest bring them to the baiting-place.

RICHARD. Oft have I seen a hot o'erweening cur  
Run back and bite, because he was withheld ; 152  
Who, being suffer'd with the bear's fell paw,  
Hath clapp'd his tail between his legs, and cried :  
And such a piece of service will you do, 155  
If you oppose yourselves to match Lord Warwick.

CLIFFORD. Hence, heap of wrath, foul indigested lump,  
As crooked in thy manners as thy shape !

YORK. Nay, we shall heat you thoroughly anon.

CLIFFORD. Take heed, lest by your heat you burn  
yourselves. 160

KING HENRY. Why, Warwick, hath thy knee forgot to  
bow ?

Old Salisbury, shame to thy silver hair,  
Thou mad misleader of thy brain-sick son !  
What ! wilt thou on thy death-bed play the ruffian,  
And seek for sorrow with thy spectacles ? 165  
O, where is faith ? O, where is loyalty ?  
If it be banish'd from the frosty head,  
Where shall it find a harbour in the earth ? 168  
Wilt thou go dig a grave to find out war,  
And shame thine honourable age with blood ?

Why art thou old, and want'st experience ?  
Or wherefore dost abuse it, if thou hast it ? 172  
For shame ! in duty bend thy knee to me,  
That bows unto the grave with mickle age.

SALISBURY. My lord, I have consider'd with myself  
The title of this most renowned duke ; 176  
And in my conscience do repute his Grace  
The rightful heir to England's royal seat.

KING HENRY. Hast thou not sworn allegiance unto me ?

SALISBURY. I have. 180

KING HENRY. Canst thou dispense with heaven for  
such an oath ?

SALISBURY. It is great sin to swear unto a sin,  
But greater sin to keep a sinful oath.  
Who can be bound by any solemn vow 184  
To do a murderous deed, to rob a man,  
To force a spotless virgin's chastity,  
To reave the orphan of his patrimony,  
To wring the widow from her custom'd right, 188  
And have no other reason for this wrong  
But that he was bound by a solemn oath ?

QUEEN MARGARET. A subtle traitor needs no sophister.

KING HENRY. Call Buckingham, and bid him arm  
himself. 192

YORK. Call Buckingham, and all the friends thou hast,  
I am resolv'd for death, or dignity.

CLIFFORD. The first I warrant thee, if dreams prove  
true.

WARWICK. You were best to go to bed and dream  
again, 196

To keep thee from the tempest of the field.

CLIFFORD. I am resolv'd to bear a greater storm  
Than any thou canst conjure up to-day ;  
And that I'll write upon thy burgonet, 200  
Might I but know thee by thy household badge.

WARWICK. Now, by my father's badge, old Nevil's  
crest,

The rampant bear chain'd to the ragged staff,  
This day I'll wear aloft my burgonet,— 204  
As on a mountain-top the cedar shows,  
That keeps his leaves in spite of any storm,—  
Even to affright thee with the view thereof.

CLIFFORD. And from thy burgonet I'll rend thy bear,



And tread it underfoot with all contempt, 209  
 Despite the bear-ward that protects the bear.

YOUNG CLIFFORD. And so to arms, victorious father,  
 To quell the rebels and their complices. 212

RICHARD. Fie! charity! for shame! speak not in spite,  
 For you shall sup with Jesu Christ to-night.

YOUNG CLIFFORD. Foul stigmatic, that's more than  
 thou canst tell. 215

RICHARD. If not in heaven, you'll surely sup in hell.  
 [Exeunt severally.]

SCENE II.—Saint Alban's.

Alarums: Excursions. Enter WARWICK.

WARWICK. Clifford of Cumberland, 'tis Warwick calls :  
 And if thou dost not hide thee from the bear,  
 Now, when the angry trumpet sounds alarm,  
 And dead men's cries do fill the empty air, 4  
 Clifford, I say, come forth, and fight with me !  
 Proud northern lord, Clifford of Cumberland,  
 Warwick is hoarse with calling thee to arms.

Enter YORK.

How now, my noble lord ! what ! all afoot ? 8  
 YORK. The deadly-handed Clifford slew my steed ;  
 But match to match I have encounter'd him,  
 And made a prey for carrion kites and crows  
 Even of the bonny beast he lov'd so well. 12

Enter Old CLIFFORD.

WARWICK. Of one or both of us the time is come.

YORK. Hold, Warwick ! seek thee out some other  
 chase,

For I myself must hunt this deer to death.

WARWICK. Then, nobly, York ; 'tis for a crown thou  
 fight'st. 16

As I intend, Clifford, to thrive to-day,

It grieves my soul to leave thee unassail'd. [Exit.

CLIFFORD. What seest thou in me, York ? why dost  
 thou pause ?

YORK. With thy brave bearing should I be in love,  
 But that thou art so fast mine enemy. 21

CLIFFORD. Nor should thy prowess want praise and  
 esteem,

But that 'tis shown ignobly and in treason.

YORK. So let it help me now against thy sword  
As I in justice and true right express it. 25

CLIFFORD. My soul and body on the action both !

YORK. A dreadful lay ! address thee instantly.

CLIFFORD. La fin couronne les œuvres. 28

[They fight, and CLIFFORD falls and dies.

YORK. Thus war hath given thee peace, for thou art  
still.

Peace with his soul, heaven, if it be thy will ! [Exit.

Enter Young CLIFFORD.

YOUNG CLIFFORD. Shame and confusion ! all is on the  
rout :

Fear frames disorder, and disorder wounds 32

Where it should guard. O war ! thou son of hell,

Whom angry heavens do make their minister,

Throw in the frozen bosoms of our part

Hot coals of vengeance ! Let no soldier fly : 36

He that is truly dedicate to war

Hath no self-love ; nor he that loves himself

Hath not essentially, but by circumstance,

The name of valour. [Seeing his father's body.

O ! let the vile world end, 40

And the premised flames of the last day

Knit heaven and earth together ;

Now let the general trumpet blow his blast,

Particularities and petty sounds 44

To cease !—Wast thou ordain'd, dear father,

To lose thy youth in peace, and to achieve

The silver livery of advised age,

And, in thy reverence and thy chair-days thus 48

To die in ruffian battle ? Even at this sight

My heart is turn'd to stone : and while 'tis mine

It shall be stony. York not our old men spares ; 52

No more will I their babes : tears virginal

Shall be to me even as the dew to fire ;

And beauty, that the tyrant oft reclaims,

Shall to my flaming wrath be oil and flax.

Henceforth I will not have to do with pity : 56

Meet I an infant of the house of York,

Into as many gobbets will I cut it

As mild Medea young Absyrtus did :

In cruelty will I seek out my fame. 60  
Come, thou new ruin of old Clifford's house :

[Taking up the body.

As did Æneas old Anchises bear,  
So bear I thee upon my manly shoulders ;  
But then Æneas bare a living load, 64  
Nothing so heavy as these woes of mine. [Exit.

Enter RICHARD and SOMERSET, fighting ; SOMERSET is killed.

RICHARD. So, die thou there ;  
For underneath an alehouse' paltry sign,  
The Castle in Saint Alban's, Somerset 68  
Hath made the wizard famous in his death.  
Sword, hold thy temper ; heart, be wrathful still :  
Priests pray for enemies, but princes kill [Exit.

Alarums : Excursions. Enter KING HENRY, QUEEN MARGARET, and Others, retreating.

QUEEN MARGARET. Away, my lord ! you are slow :  
for shame, away ! 72

KING HENRY. Can we outrun the heavens ? good  
Margaret, stay.

QUEEN MARGARET. What are you made of ? you'll  
nor fight nor fly :

Now is it manhood, wisdom, and defence,  
To give the enemy way, and to secure us 76  
By what we can, which can no more but fly. [Alarum afar off.  
If you be ta'en, we then should see the bottom  
Of all our fortunes : but if we haply scape,  
As well we may, if not through your neglect, 80  
We shall to London get, where you are lov'd,  
And where this breach now in our fortunes made  
May readily be stopp'd.

Re-enter Young CLIFFORD.

YOUNG CLIFFORD. But that my heart's on future  
mischief set, 84

I would speak blasphemy ere bid you fly ;  
But fly you must : uncurable discomfit  
Reigns in the hearts of all our present parts.  
Away, for your relief ! and we will live 88  
To see their day and them our fortune give.  
Away, my lord, away ! [Exeunt.

## SCENE III.—Field near Saint Alban's.

Alarum. Retreat. Flourish; then enter YORK, RICHARD, WARWICK, and Soldiers, with drum and colours.

YORK. Of Salisbury, who can report of him;  
That winter lion, who in rage forgets  
Aged contusions and all brush of time,  
And, like a gallant in the brow of youth, 4  
Repairs him with occasion? this happy day  
Is not 'itself, nor have we won one foot,  
If Salisbury be lost.

RICHARD. My noble father,  
Three times to-day I help him to his horse, 8  
Three times bestrid him; thrice I led him off,  
Persuaded him from any further act:  
But still, where danger was, still there I met him;  
And like rich hangings in a homely house, 12  
So was his will in his old feeble body.  
But, noble as he is, look where he comes.

Enter SALISBURY.

SALISBURY. Now, by my sword, well hast thou fought  
to-day; 15  
By the mass, so did we all. I thank you, Richard:  
God knows how long it is I have to live;  
And it hath pleas'd him that three times to-day  
You have defended me from imminent death.  
Well, lords, we have not got that which we have: 20  
'Tis not enough our foes are this time fled,  
Being opposites of such repairing nature.

YORK. I know our safety is to follow them;  
For, as I hear, the king is fled to London, 24  
To call a present court of parliament:  
Let us pursue him ere the writs go forth:—  
What says Lord Warwick? shall we after them?

WARWICK. After them! nay, before them, if we can.  
Now, by my hand, lords, 'twas a glorious day: 29  
Saint Alban's battle, won by famous York,  
Shall be eterniz'd in all age to come.  
Sound, drums and trumpets, and to London all: 32  
And more such days as these to us befall! [Exeunt.



THE THIRD PART OF  
KING HENRY THE SIXTH



# THE THIRD PART OF KING HENRY THE SIXTH

## INTRODUCTION

IN the Introduction to the Second Part of *King Henry VI* a brief survey of the controversy concerning the authorship of the two latter plays of this trilogy has been attempted. But nothing has been said of the value of these plays as works of art. That they are as such inferior to the other historical plays of Shakespeare cannot be denied; none the less it is certain that as we possess them in the folio they take higher rank than any historical drama of a date preceding that of *Richard III* and *Richard II*, with perhaps the solitary exception of Marlowe's *Edward II*.

The time represented was a welter, almost a chaos, of contending forces; and the impression left upon our minds when we rise from a perusal of the plays is that of a chaos, from which, however, before the close, some dominant forces emerge. In the Second Part the tug this way and that of rival powers is exhibited chiefly as a preparation for civil war, but in the fifth Act the fierce contention passes to the battlefield; in the Third Part all restraint has been cast aside; we are in the midst of ceaseless internecine strife. It can hardly be maintained that the plays are well designed for the presentation of character; and yet character rises from the chaos. Through both plays moves the helpless king, whose true place would have been in the cloister and not upon the throne. From the first scene, in which he welcomes the formidable woman who can dandle him like a baby, to that in which he sighs out a prayer for pardon of his murderer, the conception of Henry VI is maintained. The true saints are champions of God; Henry's saintliness is the negation of manly virtue as much as the negation of vice, so that a criminal



might have caused less evil than he in the process of pulling fair England down. And yet we are made to feel that everything has been against him; he is like a child thrown into a maelstrom; he is whirled round and round; he is sucked in and is lost. The same child might have been seated in a field—had luck been his—and looked gracious enough while weaving a daisy-chain. And, in a drama where hatred and greed and ferocity of temper play so large a part, we can pity Henry though we cannot respect him. We cannot see that, being born what he is, he could have played his part better than he does. He is not like Shakespeare's Richard II, a royal wanton. He is only pitifully incapable, and condemned by fate to be a king. To be the son of the great victor of Agincourt—an infant crowned at nine months old—was, for such an one as he, in itself a misfortune; to reign and be in tutelage, to be surrounded by his 'wolfish earls', to be the husband of the false and domineering Margaret, to be the rival of the crafty and ambitious York—such was Henry's fate, and, with his cloistral spirit, what more can he do than sigh for peace, seek to wear the white flower of a blameless life, shrink from the stern duties of authority, rejoice when he can imagine that he escapes responsibility?

Around this pitiable lover of peace at any price all is a tumult of contention from the first. The haughty Cardinal is at odds with Duke Humphrey, who must be pulled down and destroyed because he is the only true supporter of the throne. Every man's hand is against his fellow, but a warring group can co-operate, each for reasons of his own, in the ruin of Gloucester—the Cardinal because he has long been the Protector's enemy, Buckingham because he would step into the Protector's place, Suffolk and the Queen because they have a greed for power, and would be unchecked in their guilty passion, York because he has already fixed his gaze upon the crown. Here at the outset we have chaos in its elements. And through Humphrey's ambitious wife the attack can be directed against the Duke himself. Gloucester errs a little through the placidity of his temper, and his over-confidence in the security of honesty in a world of evil. We should

perhaps like him better if he did not quite so easily abandon his wife to her disgrace, and if he opposed the energy of militant virtue to the ill-doers who are compassing his death. He is touched with something of the fatuity of his nephew the king. 'The shepherd of the flock' is too easily snared :—

Had I twenty times so many foes,  
And each of them had twenty times their power,  
All these could not procure me any scath,  
So long as I am loyal, true, and crimeless.

It was in his power to have commanded the commons, and to have encircled his authority with loyal hearts. Even when they are but 'an angry hive of bees that want their leader' they are strong enough to wring the decree of Suffolk's banishment from the perplexed and unhappy King.

The terrible death of Cardinal Beaufort, and the murder of Suffolk by pirates follow. The circle of the King's enemies is broken, but he is now without defence, and one determined antagonist—York—in union with his sons is more formidable than the crew of jarring, if hostile, forces. And by York's devices the power of the commons under the leadership of Cade has been turned against the King. In his handling of Cade's rebellion the dramatist was guided by the chroniclers, who were themselves imperfectly informed. The humour of some of the scenes affords a welcome relief, and it is not easy to believe that such humour is that of Greene or even Peele ; it seems, as much as anything else in these plays, to bear the stamp and impress of the Shakespearean mint. Even when Shakespeare admits, as sometimes he does, that the heart of the common folk of England or of Rome is sound, he shows scant reverence for their head, and if he despises anything he despises the demagogue. The mockery of communism which we hear in *Henry VI* is the same mockery which we hear some twenty years later from that honest old counsellor, Gonzalo, in *The Tempest*. In the good time coming—so announces Jack Cade—'there shall be in England seven half-penny loaves sold for a penny ; the three-hooped pot shall have ten hoops ; and I will make it felony to drink

small beer. All the realm shall be in common, and in Cheapside shall my palfrey go to grass.' Yet, if these scenes be early work of Shakespeare, it is not a little remarkable that we are given nothing of a like kind in the later *Richard II.* Perhaps when fully started upon his career as a writer of comedy Shakespeare found sufficient outlet for his gift of humour there; his work in historical drama grew more poetic, and it was not until the days of his *Henry IV* (setting aside such saturnine, ironic humour as we find in *Richard III.*, and such mettlesome high spirits as we find in the Faulconbridge of *King John*) that laughter again lights up the pages of his histories.

The downfall of Duke Humphrey and his Duchess, the conscience-stricken deathbed of the Cardinal, the slaughter of the Queen's lover, the outbreak of the commons, the rise of York make up the Second Part of *Henry VI.* There is abundance of dramatic material in the play; but it is developed too much in the fashion of our early historical plays, having the unity of a chronicle rather than the unity of a drama. Without interruption the action proceeds to the Third Part. For long it is the tug of power this way and that, battle pursuing battle :—

Now sways it this way, like a mighty sea  
Forc'd by the tide to combat with the wind;  
Now sways it that way, like the selfsame sea  
Forc'd to retire by fury of the wind:  
Sometimes the flood prevails, and then the wind.

The persons represented are too constantly in the same attitude of battle-fury and fierce antagonism to permit any very interesting or complex study of character. A reader wearies of the monotony of combat and rage; the speeches are too often the baying of wolves, nor is it always easy to distinguish the voice of one wolf from that of another. Now and again the savagery is heightened and some decuman wave of horror gives a variation to the scene of turmoil. So it is, for example, with the fantastic butchery of York. And, as if nature were upheaved from the centre, a woman is the most gleeful and exultant of his persecutors. Now and again some great verses

make amends for what goes before or follows after :

Come, make him stand upon this molehill here,  
That raught at mountains with outstretched arms,  
Yet parted but the shadow with his hand.

In one scene we are presented with the outrages of civil war condensed, as it were, to an abstract or an essence. The wretched Henry has been chidden from the battle, which prospers best when he is withdrawn from it ; his imagination is indulging in some pretty fancies of a pastoral peace. Suddenly the alarm is heard ; a son enters 'that has killed his father', dragging in the body, and presently a father 'that has killed his son'. Nothing is known of these obscure men ; no one of them is distinguished by a name. They are the piteous, masked presenters of civil war. There are some words of remorseful grief ; the King is caught away suddenly from his imaginary Arcady. And then the incident is over, and the alarms and excursions begin anew.

The portentous figure of Queen Margaret appears in each play of the trilogy and reappears as that of a forlorn and haggard prophetess of woe in *King Richard III*. She is like the terrible spirit of this age of strife. Perhaps the death of her lover Suffolk has helped to turn her into the fury that she is. And yet she has borne a gallant son, and through her love and pride in him has not quite ceased to be woman.

How sweet a plant have you untimely cropp'd !  
You have no children, butchers !

'For her invention, or for retrieving her from the chronicles,' I have written in an essay on Shakespeare's portraiture of women, 'perhaps we owe more thanks to Marlowe than to Shakespeare ; but doubtless the conception of Marlowe was adopted by Shakespeare, and was heightened and refined. We follow her whole history from the day on which in the glory of early womanhood she meets Suffolk, the Lancelot of this Guinevere, to the day when grey-haired, loverless, husbandless, and childless, she seats herself in the dust by the side of the mother and the wife of her

royal antagonist Edward the Fourth, and teaches them, with terrible sounding of the depths of misery, how to curse their enemies. . . . Beautiful, false, amorous, tyrannous, cruel, remorseless, Margaret had been in her days of pride and power. When deprived of all that makes life precious in her eyes, she returns in wretchedness to haunt the place of her former greatness.' The outcries of women which sound through all the historical plays except *King Henry V* become a modulated chorus of lamentation in *King Richard III*.

The last play of the Yorkist tetralogy—*Richard III*—has its basis laid in the Third Part of *Henry VI*. The character of Richard is already defined, and though afterwards developed this is not so much by growth or alteration as by the greater opportunities which are given for its manifestation. Except through a certain loyal admiration for his great father, Richard from the first is separated from the rest of mankind, and is driven in upon his sole self. His deformed body has set him at odds with nature; love can never be known to him; only by power can he revenge himself on life. We see already that he will sweep out of his way the feeble Henry and the easy-natured Clarence. He can bide his time, though not without impatience, till the voluptuous Edward no longer will stand between him and the crown. A daemonic energy is pent up in his misshaped frame; to let it loose upon the world is a necessity of his existence. At the close of the second scene of the third Act of this play, and again at the close of the sixth scene of the fifth Act, he expounds the open secret of his nature in soliloquy, as he does again in the opening lines of the tragedy which bears his name. Were his hand not as prompt in action as his heart in malice and ambitious desire, Richard would consume away as with an inward fire. Perhaps the greatest feat of Richard's life is not that he has overpowered Anne with the very mockery of love; it is that he has compelled the insufferably placable Henry to rail against him before the fatal thrust is given. Nor is it only the character of Richard in this play which prepares us for its successor. We are granted—the one ray of hope in the darkness of the cloudy strife—a prophecy, and from Henry's lips, of the close of the whole contention

as we shall find it fulfilled after the battle of Bosworth.  
The King lays his hand on the young Earl of Richmond's  
head :—

Come hither, England's hope : If secret powers  
Suggest but truth to my divining thoughts,  
This pretty lad will prove our country's bliss.

And in due time we shall hear the words of fulfilment :—

- Then, as we have ta'en the sacrament,  
• We will unite the white rose and the red :  
Smile, heaven, upon this fair conjunction,  
That long hath frown'd upon their enmity !

## DRAMATIS PERSONAE

**KING HENRY THE SIXTH.**

EDWARD, Prince of Wales, his Son.

LEWIS THE ELEVENTH, King of France.

DUKE OF SOMERSET,

DUKE OF EXETER,

EARL OF OXFORD,

EARL OF NORTHUMBERLAND,

EARL OF WESTMORELAND,

LORD CLIFFORD,

} on King Henry's side.

RICHARD PLANTAGENET, Duke of York.

EDWARD, Earl of March, afterwards King Edward }  
the Fourth,

EDMUND, Earl of Rutland,

GEORGE, afterwards Duke of Clarence,

RICHARD, afterwards Duke of Gloucester,

} his Sons

DUKE OF NORFOLK,

MARQUESS OF MONTAGUE,

EARL OF WARWICK,

EARL OF PEMBROKE,

LORD HASTINGS,

LORD STAFFORD,

} of the Duke of York's Party.

SIR JOHN MORTIMER, }  
SIR HUGH MORTIMER, } Uncles to the Duke of York.

HENRY, EARL OF RICHMOND, a Youth.

LORD RIVERS, Brother to Lady Grey.

SIR WILLIAM STANLEY.

SIR JOHN MONTGOMERY.

SIR JOHN SOMERVILLE.

Tutor to Rutland.

Mayor of York.

Lieutenant of the Tower.

• A Nobleman.

Two Keepers. A Huntsman.

A Son that has killed his Father.

A Father that has killed his Son.

**QUEEN MARGARET.**

LADY GREY, afterwards Queen to Edward the Fourth.

BONA, Sister to the French Queen.

Soldiers, and other Attendants on King Henry and King Edward,  
Messengers, Watchmen, &c.

SCENE.—During part of the Third Act, in France; during the rest  
of the Play, in England.

# THE THIRD PART OF KING HENRY THE SIXTH

## ACT I.

SCENE I.—London. The Parliament-House.

Drums. Some Soldiers of YORK's party break in. Then, enter the DUKE OF YORK, EDWARD, RICHARD, NORFOLK, MONTAGUE, WARWICK, and Others, with white roses in their hats.

WARWICK. I wonder how the king escap'd our hands  
YORK. While we pursu'd the horsemen of the north,  
He slyly stole away and left his men :  
Whereat the great Lord of Northumberland, 4  
Whose warlike ears could never brook retreat,  
Cheer'd up the drooping army ; and himself,  
Lord Clifford, and Lord Stafford, all abreast,  
Charg'd our main battle's front, and breaking in 8  
Were by the swords of common soldiers slain.

EDWARD. Lord Stafford's father, Duke of Buckingham,  
Is either slain or wounded dangerously ;  
I cleft his beaver with a downright blow : 12  
That this is true, father, behold his blood.

[Showing his bloody sword.

MONTAGUE. And, brother, here 's the Earl of Wilt-  
shire's blood, [To YORK, showing his.

Whom I encounter'd as the battles join'd. 15

RICHARD. Speak thou for me, and tell them what  
I did. [Throwing down the DUKE OF SOMERSET's head.

YORK. Richard hath best deserv'd of all my sons.  
But, is your Grace dead, my Lord of Somerset ?

NORFOLK. Such hope have all the line of John of  
Gaunt !

RICHARD. Thus do I hope to shake King Henry's  
head. 20

WARWICK. And so do I. Victorious Prince of York,  
Before I see thee seated in that throne  
Which now the house of Lancaster usurps,  
I vow by heaven these eyes shall never close. 21



This is the palace of the fearful king,  
And this the regal seat : possess it, York ;  
For this is thine, and not King Henry's heirs'.

YORK. Assist me, then, sweet Warwick, and I will ;  
For hither we have broken in by force. 29

NORFOLK. We'll all assist you ; he that flies shall die.

YORK. Thanks, gentle Norfolk. Stay by me, my lords ;  
And, soldiers, stay and lodge by me this night. 32

WARWICK. And when the king comes, offer him no  
violence,

Unless he seek to thrust you out perforce. [The Soldiers retire.

YORK. The queen this day here holds her parliament,  
But little thinks we shall be of her council : 36

By words or blows here let us win our right.

RICHARD. Arm'd as we are, let's stay within this house.

WARWICK. The bloody parliament shall this be call'd,  
Unless Plantagenet, Duke of York, be king, 40  
And bashful Henry depos'd, whose cowardice  
Hath made us by-words to our enemies.

YORK. Then leave me not, my lords ; be resolute ;  
I mean to take possession of my right. 44

WARWICK. Neither the king, nor he that loves him best,  
The proudest he that holds up Lancaster,  
Dares stir a wing if Warwick shake his bells.  
I'll plant Plantagenet, root him up who dares. 48  
Resolve thee, Richard ; claim the English crown.

[WARWICK leads YORK to the throne, who seats himself.

Flourish. Enter KING HENRY, CLIFFORD, NORTHUMBERLAND, WEST-  
MORELAND, EXETER, and Others, with red roses in their hats.

KING HENRY. My lords, look where the sturdy rebel  
sits,

Even in the chair of state ! belike he means—  
Back'd by the power of Warwick, that false peer— 52

To aspire unto the crown and reign as king.  
Earl of Northumberland, he slew thy father,  
And thine, Lord Clifford ; and you both have vow'd  
revenge

On him, his sons, his favourites, and his friends. 56

NORTHUMBERLAND. If I be not, heavens be reveng'd  
on me !

CLIFFORD. The hope thereof makes Clifford mourn in  
steel.

WESTMORELAND. What! shall we suffer this? let's  
pluck him down:

My heart for anger burns; I cannot brook it. 60

KING HENRY. Be patient, gentle Earl of Westmore-  
land.

CLIFFORD. Patience is for poltroons, such as he:  
He durst not sit there had your father liv'd.

My gracious lord, here in the parliament 64

Let us assail the family of York.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Well hast thou spoken, cousin:  
be it so.

KING HENRY. Ah! know you not the city favours  
them, 67

And they have troops of soldiers at their beck?

EXETER. But when the duke is slain they'll quickly  
fly.

KING HENRY. Far be the thought of this from Henry's  
heart,

To make a shambles of the parliament-house!

Cousin of Exeter, frowns, words, and threats, 72

Shall be the war that Henry means to use.

[They advance to the DUKE.]

Thou factious Duke of York, descend my throne,

And kneel for grace and mercy at my feet;

I am thy sovereign.

YORK. I am thine. 76

EXETER. For shame! come down: he made thee  
Duke of York.

YORK. 'Twas my inheritance, as the earldom was.

EXETER. Thy father was a traitor to the crown.

WARWICK. Exeter, thou art a traitor to the crown

In following this usurping Henry. 81

CLIFFORD. Whom should he follow but his natural  
king?

WARWICK. True, Clifford; and that's Richard, Duke  
of York.

KING HENRY. And shall I stand, and thou sit in my  
throne? 84

YORK. It must and shall be so: content thyself.

WARWICK. Be Duke of Lancaster: let him be king.

WESTMORELAND. He is both king and Duke of Lan-  
caster; 87

And that the Lord of Westmoreland shall maintain.

**WARWICK.** And Warwick shall disprove it. You forget  
That we are those which chas'd you from the field.  
And slew your fathers, and with colours spread  
March'd through the city to the palace gates. 92

**NORTHUMBERLAND.** Yes, Warwick, I remember it to  
my grief ;

And, by his soul, thou and thy house shall rue it.

**WESTMORELAND.** Plantagenet, of thee, and these thy  
sons, 95

Thy kinsmen and thy friends, I'll have more lives  
Than drops of blood were in my father's veins.

**CLIFFORD.** Urge it no more ; lest that instead of words,  
I send thee, Warwick, such a messenger  
As shall revenge his death before I stir. 100

**WARWICK.** Poor Clifford ! how I scorn his worthless  
threats.

**YORK.** Will you we show our title to the crown ?  
If not, our swords shall plead it in the field.

**KING HENRY.** What title hast thou, traitor, to the  
crown ? 104

Thy father was, as thou art, Duke of York ;  
Thy grandfather, Roger Mortimer, Earl of March ;  
I am the son of Henry the Fifth,  
Who made the Dauphin and the French to stoop, 108  
And seiz'd upon their towns and provinces.

**WARWICK.** Talk not of France, sith thou hast lost it all.

**KING HENRY.** The Lord Protector lost it, and not I :  
When I was crown'd I was but nine months old. 112

**RICHARD.** You are old enough now, and yet, methinks,  
you lose.

Father, tear the crown from the usurper's head.

**EDWARD.** Sweet father, do so ; set it on your head.

**MONTAGUE.** [To **YORK.**] Good brother, as thou lov'st  
and honour'st arms, 116

Let 's fight it out and not stand cavilling thus.

**RICHARD.** Sound drums and trumpets, and the king  
will fly.

**YORK.** Sons, peace !

**KING HENRY.** Peace thou ! and give King Henry  
leave to speak. 120

**WARWICK.** Plantagenet shall speak first : hear him,  
lords ;

And be you silent and attentive too,

For he that interrupts him shall not live.

KING HENRY. Think'st thou that I will leave my  
kingly throne, 124

Wherein my grandsire and my father sat ?

No : first shall war unpeople this my realm ;

Ay, and their colours, often borne in France, 127

And now in England to our heart's great sorrow,

Shall be my winding-sheet. Why faint you, lords ?

My title's good, and better far than his.

WARWICK. Prove it, Henry, and thou shalt be king.

KING HENRY. Henry the Fourth by conquest got the  
crown. 132

YORK. 'Twas by rebellion against his king.

KING HENRY. [Aside.] I know not what to say : my  
title's weak.

[Aloud.] Tell me, may not a king adopt an heir ?

YORK. What then ? 136

KING HENRY. An if he may, then am I lawful king ;

For Richard, in the view of many lords,

Resign'd the crown to Henry the Fourth,

Whose heir my father was, and I am his. 140

YORK. He rose against him, being his sovereign,  
And made him to resign his crown perforce.

WARWICK. Suppose, my lords, he did it unconstrain'd,  
Think you 'twere prejudicial to his crown ? 144

EXETER. No ; for he could not so resign his crown  
But that the next heir should succeed and reign.

KING HENRY. Art thou against us, Duke of Exeter ?

EXETER. His is the right, and therefore pardon me.

YORK. Why whisper you, my lords, and answer not ?

EXETER. My conscience tells me he is lawful king.

KING HENRY. [Aside.] All will revolt from me, and turn  
to him.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Plantagenet, for all the claim  
thou lay'st, 152

Think not that Henry shall be so depos'd.

WARWICK. Depos'd he shall be in despite of all.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Thou art deceiv'd : 'tis not thy  
southern power,

Of Essex, Norfolk, Suffolk, nor of Kent, 156

Which makes thee thus presumptuous and proud,

Can set the duke up in despite of me.

CLIFFORD. King Henry, be thy title right or wrong,

Lord Clifford vows to fight in thy defence: 160

May that ground gape and swallow me alive,  
Where I shall kneel to him that slew my father!

KING HENRY. O Clifford, how thy words revive my heart!

YORK. Henry of Lancaster, resign thy crown. 164

What mutter you, or what conspire you, lords?

WARWICK. Do right unto this princely Duke of York,  
Or I will fill the house with armed men,  
And o'er the chair of state, where now he sits, 168  
Write up his title with usurping blood.

[He stamps with his foot, and the Soldiers show themselves.

KING HENRY. My Lord of Warwick, hear me but one word:—

Let me for this my life-time reign as king.

YORK. Confirm the crown to me and to mine heirs,  
And thou shalt reign in quiet while thou livest. 173

KING HENRY. I am content: Richard Plantagenet,  
Enjoy the kingdom after my decease.

CLIFFORD. What wrong is this unto the prince your son! 176

WARWICK. What good is this to England and himself!

WESTMORELAND. Base, fearful, and despairing Henry!

CLIFFORD. How hast thou injur'd both thyself and us!

WESTMORELAND. I cannot stay to hear these articles.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Nor I. 181

CLIFFORD. Come, cousin, let us tell the queen these news.

WESTMORELAND. Farewell, faint-hearted and degenerate king,

In whose cold blood no spark of honour bides. 184

NORTHUMBERLAND. Be thou a prey unto the house of York,

And die in bands for this unmanly deed!

CLIFFORD. In dreadful war mayst thou be overcome,  
Or live in peace abandon'd and despis'd! 188

[Exeunt NORTHUMBERLAND, CLIFFORD, and WESTMORELAND.

WARWICK. Turn this way, Henry, and regard them not.

EXETER. They seek revenge and therefore will not yield.

KING HENRY. Ah! Exeter.

WARWICK. Why should you sigh, my lord?

KING HENRY. Not for myself, Lord Warwick, but my son,  
Whom I unnaturally shall disinherit.  
But be it as it may; I here entail  
The crown to thee and to thine heirs for ever;  
Conditionally, that here thou take an oath  
To cease this civil war, and, whilst I live,  
To honour me as thy king and sovereign;  
And neither by treason nor hostility  
To seek to put me down and reign thyself.  
YORK. This oath I willingly take and will perform.

[Coming from the throne.

WARWICK. Long live King Henry! Plantagenet, embrace him.

KING HENRY. And long live thou and these thy forward sons!

YORK. Now York and Lancaster are reconcil'd.

EXETER. Accurs'd be he that seeks to make them foes!

[Sennet. The Lords come forward.

YORK. Farewell, my gracious lord; I'll to my castle.

WARWICK. And I'll keep London with my soldiers.

NORFOLK. And I to Norfolk with my followers.

MONTAGUE. And I unto the sea from whence I came.

[Exeunt YORK and his Sons, WARWICK, NORFOLK,

MONTAGUE, Soldiers, and Attendants.

KING HENRY. And I, with grief and sorrow, to the court.

Enter QUEEN MARGARET and the PRINCE OF WALES.

EXETER. Here comes the queen, whose looks bewray her anger:

I'll steal away.

[Going.

KING HENRY. Exeter, so will I.

[Going.

QUEEN MARGARET. Nay, go not from me; I will follow thee.

KING HENRY. Be patient, gentle queen, and I will stay.

QUEEN MARGARET. Who can be patient in such extremes?

Ah! wretched man; would I had died a maid,

And never seen thee, never borne thee son,

Seeing thou hast prov'd so unnatural a father.

Hath he deserv'd to lose his birthright thus?

Hadst thou but lov'd him half so well as I,

220

Or felt that pain which I did for him once,  
Or nourish'd him as I did with my blood,  
Thou wouldst have left thy dearest heart-blood there.  
Rather than have made that savage duke thine heir,  
And disinherited thine only son. 225

PRINCE. Father, you cannot disinherit me :  
If you be king, why should not I succeed ?

KING HENRY. Pardon me, Margaret ; pardon me,  
sweet son ; 228

The Earl of Warwick, and the duke, enforc'd me.

QUEEN MARGARET. Enforc'd thee ! art thou king, and  
wilt be forc'd ?

I shame to hear thee speak. Ah ! timorous wretch ;  
Thou hast undone thyself, thy son, and me ; 232  
And given unto the house of York such head  
As thou shalt reign but by their sufferance.  
To entail him and his heirs unto the crown,  
What is it but to make thy sepulchre, 236  
And creep into it far before thy time ?

Warwick is chancellor and the Lord of Calais ;  
Stern Faulconbridge commands the narrow seas ;  
The duke is made protector of the realm ; 240  
And yet shalt thou be safe ? such safety finds  
The trembling lamb environed with wolves.  
Had I been there, which am a silly woman,  
The soldiers should have toss'd me on their pikes 244  
Before I would have granted to that act ;  
But thou preferr'st thy life before thine honour :  
And seeing thou dost, I here divorce myself  
Both from thy table, Henry, and thy bed, 248  
Until that act of parliament be repeal'd  
Whereby my son is disinherited.

The northern lords that have forsworn thy colours  
Will follow mine, if once they see them spread ; 252  
And spread they shall be, to thy foul disgrace,  
And utter ruin of the house of York.

Thus do I leave thee. Come, son, let's away ;  
Our army is ready ; come, we'll after them. 256

KING HENRY. Stay, gentle Margaret, and hear me speak.

QUEEN MARGARET. Thou hast spoke too much  
already : get thee gone.

KING HENRY. Gentle son Edward, thou wilt stay with  
me ? 259

QUEEN MARGARET. Ay, to be murder'd by his enemies.

PRINCE. When I return with victory from the field  
I'll see your Grace : till then, I'll follow her.

QUEEN MARGARET. Come, son, away ; we may not  
linger thus. [Exeunt QUEEN MARGARET and the PRINCE OF WALES.

KING HENRY. Poor queen ! how love to me and to her son  
Hath made her break out into terms of rage. 265

Reveng'd may she be on that hateful duke,  
Whose haughty spirit, winged with desire,  
Will cost my crown, and like an empty eagle 268  
Tire on the flesh of me and of my son !

The loss of those three lords torments my heart :  
I'll write unto them, and entreat them fair.  
Come, cousin ; you shall be the messenger. 272

EXETER. And I, I hope, shall reconcile them all.

[Exeunt.

SCENE II.—A Room in Sandal Castle, near Wakefield, in Yorkshire.

Enter EDWARD, RICHARD, and MONTAGUE.

RICHARD. Brother, though I be youngest, give me leave.

EDWARD. No, I can better play the orator.

MONTAGUE. But I have reasons strong and forcible.

Enter YORK.

YORK. Why, how now, sons and brother ! at a strife ?  
What is your quarrel ? how began it first ? 5

EDWARD. No quarrel, but a slight contention.

YORK. About what ?

RICHARD. About that which concerns your Grace and  
us ; 8

The crown of England, father, which is yours.

YORK. Mine, boy ? not till King Henry be dead.

RICHARD. Your right depends not on his life or death.

EDWARD. Now you are heir, therefore enjoy it now :  
By giving the house of Lancaster leave to breathe, 13  
It will outrun you, father, in the end.

YORK. I took an oath that he should quietly reign.

EDWARD. But for a kingdom any oath may be  
broken ; 16

I would break a thousand oaths to reign one year

RICHARD. No ; God forbid your Grace should be  
forsworn.

YORK. I shall be, if I claim by open war.



**RICHARD.** I'll prove the contrary, if you'll hear me speak. 20

**YORK.** Thou canst not, son ; it is impossible.

**RICHARD.** An oath is of no moment, being not took  
Before a true and lawful magistrate  
That hath authority over him that swears : 24  
Henry had none, but did usurp the place ;  
Then, seeing 'twas he that made you to depose,  
Your oath, my lord, is vain and frivolous.  
Therefore, to arms ! And, father, do but think • 28  
How sweet a thing it is to wear a crown,  
Within whose circuit is Elysium,  
And all that poets feign of bliss and joy.  
Why do we linger thus ? I cannot rest 32  
Until the white rose that I wear be dy'd  
Even in the lukewarm blood of Henry's heart.

**YORK.** Richard, enough, I will be king, or die.  
Brother, thou shalt to London presently, 36  
And whet on Warwick to this enterprise.  
Thou, Richard, shalt unto the Duke of Norfolk,  
And tell him privily of our intent.  
You, Edward, shall unto my Lord Cobham, 40  
With whom the Kentishmen will willingly rise :  
In them I trust ; for they are soldiers,  
Witty, courteous, liberal, full of spirit.  
While you are thus employ'd, what resteth more, 44  
But that I seek occasion how to rise,  
And yet the king not privy to my drift,  
Nor any of the house of Lancaster ?

Enter a Messenger.

But, stay : what news ? Why comest thou in such post ?

**MESSENGER.** The queen with all the northern earls and lords 49

Intend here to besiege you in your castle.

She is hard by with twenty thousand men,

And therefore fortify your hold, my lord. 52

**YORK.** Ay, with my sword. What ! think'st thou that we fear them ?

Edward and Richard, you shall stay with me ;

My brother Montague shall post to London :

Let noble Warwick, Cobham, and the rest, 56

Whom we have left protectors of the king,

With powerful policy strengthen themselves,  
And trust not simple Henry nor his oaths.

MONTAGUE. Brother, I go ; I'll win them, fear it not :  
And thus most humbly I do take my leave. [Exit.

Enter SIR JOHN and SIR HUGH MORTIMER.

YORK. Sir John, and Sir Hugh Mortimer, mine uncles,  
You are come to Sandal in a happy hour ;  
The army of the queen mean to besiege us. 64

SIR JOHN. She shall not need, we'll meet her in the  
field.

YORK. What ! with five thousand men ?

RICHARD. Ay, with five hundred, father, for a need :  
A woman's general ; what should we fear ? [A march afar off.

EDWARD. I hear their drums ; let's set our men in  
order, 69

And issue forth and bid them battle straight.

YORK. Five men to twenty ! though the odds be great,  
I doubt not, uncle, of our victory. 72

Many a battle have I won in France.

When as the enemy hath been ten to one :

Why should I not now have the like success ? 75

[Alarum. Exeunt.

SCENE III.—Field of Battle between Sandal Castle and Wakefield.

Alarums : Excursions. Enter RUTLAND and his Tutor.

RUTLAND. Ah, whither shall I fly to 'scape their  
hands ?

Ah ! tutor, look, where bloody Clifford comes !

Enter CLIFFORD and Soldiers.

CLIFFORD. Chaplain, away ! thy priesthood saves thy  
life.

As for the brat of this accursed duke, 4  
Whose father slew my father, he shall die.

TUTOR. And I, my lord, will bear him company.

CLIFFORD. Soldiers, away with him.

TUTOR. Ah ! Clifford, murder not this innocent child,  
Lest thou be hated both of God and man ! 9

[Exit, forced off by Soldiers.

CLIFFORD. How now ! is he dead already ? Or is it  
fear

That makes him close his eyes ? I'll open them.

RUTLAND. So looks the pent-up lion o'er the wretch  
That trembles under his devouring paws ; 13

And so he walks, insulting o'er his prey,  
And so he comes to rend his limbs asunder.

Ah ! gentle Clifford, kill me with thy sword, 16  
And not with such a cruel threatening look.

Sweet Clifford ! hear me speak before I die :  
I am too mean a subject for thy wrath ;

Be thou reveng'd on men, and let me live. 20

CLIFFORD. In vain thou speak'st, poor boy ; my  
father's blood

Hath stopp'd the passage where thy words should enter.

RUTLAND. Then let my father's blood open it again :  
He is a man, and, Clifford, cope with him. 24

CLIFFORD. Had I thy brethren here, their lives and  
thine

Were not revenge sufficient for me :  
No, if I digg'd up thy forefathers' graves,

And hung their rotten coffins up in chains, 28  
It could not slake mine ire, nor ease my heart.

The sight of any of the house of York  
Is as a fury to torment my soul ;

And till I root out their accursed line, 32  
And leave not one alive, I live in hell.

Therefore— [Lifting his hand.

RUTLAND. O ! let me pray before I take my death.  
To thee I pray ; sweet Clifford, pity me ! 36

CLIFFORD. Such pity as my rapier's point affords.

RUTLAND. I never did thee harm : why wilt thou slay  
me ?

CLIFFORD. Thy father hath.

RUTLAND. But 'twas ere I was born.  
Thou hast one son ; for his sake pity me, 40

Lest in revenge thereof, sith God is just,  
He be as miserably slain as I.

Ah ! let me live in prison all my days ;  
And when I give occasion of offence, 44

Then let me die, for now thou hast no cause.

CLIFFORD. No cause !

Thy father slew my father ; therefore, die. [Stabs him.

RUTLAND. Dii faciant laudis summa sit ista tuæ ! [Dies.

CLIFFORD. Plantagenet ! I come, Plantagenet !

And this thy son's blood cleaving to my blade      50  
Shall rust upon my weapon, till thy blood,  
Congeal'd with this, do make me wipe off both.      [Exit.

SCENE IV.—Another Part of the Plains.

Alarum. Enter YORK.

YORK. The army of the queen hath got the field :  
My uncles both are slain in rescuing me ;  
And all my followers to the eager foe  
Turn back and fly, like ships before the wind,      4  
Or lambs pursu'd by hunger-starv'd wolves.  
My sons, God knows what hath bechanced them :  
But this I know, they have demean'd themselves  
Like men born to renown by life or death.      8  
Three times did Richard make a lane to me,  
And thrice cried, ' Courage, father ! fight it out ! '  
And full as oft came Edward to my side,  
With purple falchion, painted to the hilt      12  
In blood of those that had encounter'd him :  
And when the hardest warriors did retire,  
Richard cried, ' Charge ! and give no foot of ground ! '  
And cried, ' A crown, or else a glorious tomb ! '      16  
A sceptre, or an earthly sepulchre ! '  
With this, we charg'd again ; but out, alas !  
We bodg'd again : as I have seen a swan  
With bootless labour swim against the tide,      20  
And spend her strength with over-matching waves.

[A short alarum within.

Ah, hark ! the fatal followers do pursue ;  
And I am faint and cannot fly their fury ;  
And were I strong I would not shun their fury :      24  
The sands are number'd that make up my life ;  
Here must I stay, and here my life must end.

Enter QUEEN MARGARET, CLIFFORD, NORTHUMBERLAND, the young  
PRINCE, and Soldiers.

Come, bloody Clifford, rough Northumberland,  
I dare your quenchless fury to more rage :      28  
I am your butt, and I abide your shot.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Yield to our mercy, proud Plan-  
tagenet.

CLIFFORD. Ay, to such mercy as his ruthless arm

With downright payment show'd unto my father. 32  
 Now Phæthon hath tumbled from his car,  
 And made an evening at the noontide prick.

YORK. My ashes, as the phoenix, may bring forth 36  
 A bird that will revenge upon you all ;  
 And in that hope I throw mine eyes to heaven,  
 Scorning whate'er you can afflict me with.

Why come you not ? what ! multitudes, and fear ?

CLIFFORD. So cowards fight when they can fly no 40  
 further ;

So doves do peck the falcon's piercing talons ;  
 So desperate thieves, all hopeless of their lives,  
 Breathe out invectives 'gainst the officers.

YORK. O Clifford ! but bethink thee once again, 45  
 And in thy thought o'er-run my former time  
 And, if thou canst for blushing, view this face,  
 And bite thy tongue, that slanders him with cowardice  
 Whose frown hath made thee faint and fly ere this.

CLIFFORD. I will not bandy with thee word for word,  
 But buckle with thee blows, twice two for one. [Draws.

QUEEN MARGARET. Hold, valiant Clifford ! for a  
 thousand causes

I would prolong awhile the traitor's life. 52

Wrath makes him deaf : speak thou, Northumberland.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Hold, Clifford ! do not honour him  
 so much

To prick thy finger, though to wound his heart. 56  
 What valour were it, when a cur doth grin,

For one to thrust his hand between his teeth,

When he might spurn him with his foot away ?

It is war's prize to take all vantages, 60  
 And ten to one is no impeach of valour.

[They lay hands on YORK, who struggles.

CLIFFORD. Ay, ay ; so strives the woodcock with the gin.

NORTHUMBERLAND. So doth the cony struggle in the  
 net.

[YORK is taken prisoner.

YORK. So triumph thieves upon their conquer'd booty ;  
 So true men yield, with robbers so o'er-matched. 64

NORTHUMBERLAND. What would your Grace have  
 done unto him now ?

QUEEN MARGARET. Brave warriors, Clifford and North-  
 umberland,

Come, make him stand upon this molehill here,

That raught at mountains with outstretched arms,  
 Yet parted but the shadow with his hand. 69  
 What ! was it you that would be England's king ?  
 Was't you that revell'd in our parliament,  
 And made a preachment of your high descent ? 72  
 Where are your mess of sons to back you now ?  
 The wanton Edward, and the lusty George ?  
 And where 's that valiant crook-back prodigy,  
 Dicky your boy, that with his grumbling voice 76  
 Was wont to cheer his dad in mutinies ?  
 Or, with the rest, where is your darling Rutland ?  
 Look, York : I stain'd this napkin with the blood  
 That valiant Clifford with his rapier's point 80  
 Made issue from the bosom of the boy ;  
 And if thine eyes can water for his death,  
 I give thee this to dry thy cheeks withal.  
 Alas, poor York ! but that I hate thee deadly, 84  
 I should lament thy miserable state.  
 I prithee grieve, to make me merry, York.  
 What ! hath thy fiery heart so parch'd thine entrails  
 That not a tear can fall for Rutland's death ? 88  
 Why art thou patient, man ? thou shouldst be mad ;  
 And I, to make thee mad, do mock thee thus.  
 Stamp, rave, and fret, that I may sing and dance.  
 Thou wouldst be fee'd, I see, to make me sport : 92  
 York cannot speak unless he wear a crown.  
 A crown for York ! and, lords, bow low to him :  
 Hold you his hands whilst I do set it on.

[Putting a paper crown on his head.

Ay, marry, sir, now looks he like a king ! 96  
 Ay, this is he that took King Henry's chair ;  
 And this is he was his adopted heir.  
 But how is it that great Plantagenet  
 Is crown'd so soon, and broke his solemn oath ? 100  
 As I bethink me, you should not be king  
 Till our King Henry had shook hands with death.  
 And will you pale your head in Henry's glory,  
 And rob his temples of the diadem, 104  
 Now in his life, against your holy oath ?  
 O ! 'tis a fault too-too unpardonable.  
 Off with the crown ; and, with the crown, his head ;  
 And, whilst we breathe, take time to do him dead.

CLIFFORD. That is my office, for my father's sake.

QUEEN MARGARET. Nay, stay ; let 's hear the orisons  
he makes. 110

YORK. She-wolf of France, but worse than wolves of  
France,

Whose tongue more poisons than the adder's tooth !  
How ill-beseeming is it in thy sex 113

To triumph, like an Amazonian trull,  
Upon their woes whom fortune captivates !  
But that thy face is, visor-like, unchanging, 116

Made impudent with use of evil deeds,  
I would assay, proud queen, to make thee blush :  
To tell thee whence thou cam'st, of whom deriv'd,  
Were shame enough to shame thee, wert thou not shame-  
less. 120

Thy father bears the type of King of Naples,  
Of both the Sicils and Jerusalem ;  
Yet not so wealthy as an English yeoman.

Hath that poor monarch taught thee to insult ? 124

It needs not, nor it boots thee not, proud queen,  
Unless the adage must be verified,

That beggars mounted run their horse to death.  
'Tis beauty that doth oft make women proud ; 128

But, God he knows, thy share thereof is small :

'Tis virtue that doth make them most admir'd ;  
The contrary doth make thee wonder'd at :  
'Tis government that makes them seem divine ; 132

The want thereof makes thee abominable.

Thou art as opposite to every good

As the Antipodes are unto us,

Or as the south to the septentrion. 136

O tiger's heart wrapp'd in a woman's hide !

How couldst thou drain the life-blood of the child,

To bid the father wipe his eyes withal,

And yet be seen to bear a woman's face ? 140

Women are soft, mild, pitiful, and flexible ;

Thou stern, obdurate, flinty, rough, remorseless.

Bidd'st thou me rage ? why, now thou hast thy wish :

Wouldst have me weep ? why, now thou hast thy will ;

For raging wind blows up incessant showers, 145

And when the rage allays, the rain begins.

These tears are my sweet Rutland's obsequies,

And every drop cries vengeance for his death, 148

'Gainst thee, fell Clifford, and thee, false Frenchwoman.

NORTHUMBERLAND. Beshrew me, but his passion  
moves me so

That hardly can I check my eyes from tears.

YORK. That face of his the hungry cannibals 152  
Would not have touch'd, would not have stain'd with  
blood;

But you are more inhuman, more inexorable,—

O! ten times more, than tigers of Hyrcania.

See, ruthless queen, a hapless father's tears: 156

This cloth thou dipp'dst in blood of my sweet boy,

And I with tears do wash the blood away.

Keep thou the napkin, and go boast of this;

[Giving back the handkerchief.

And if thou tell'st the heavy story right, 160

Upon my soul, the hearers will shed tears;

Yea, even my foes will shed fast-falling tears,

And say, 'Alas! it was a piteous deed!'

There, take the crown, and, with the crown my curse,

And in thy need such comfort come to thee 165

As now I reap at thy too cruel hand!

Hard-hearted Clifford, take me from the world;

My soul to heaven, my blood upon your heads! 168

NORTHUMBERLAND. Had he been slaughter-man to all  
my kin,

I should not for my life but weep with him,

To see how inly sorrow gripes his soul.

QUEEN MARGARET. What! weeping-ripe, my Lord  
Northumberland? 172

Think but upon the wrong he did us all,

And that will quickly dry thy melting tears.

CLIFFORD. Here's for my oath; here's for my  
father's death. [Stabbing him.

QUEEN MARGARET. And here's to right our gentle-  
hearted king. [Stabbing him.

YORK. Open thy gate of mercy, gracious God!

My soul flies through these wounds to seek out thee.

[Dies.

QUEEN MARGARET. Off with his head, and set it on  
York gates;

So York may overlook the town of York. 180

[Flourish. Exeunt.



ACT II.

SCENE I.—A Plain near Mortimer's Cross in Herefordshire.

Drums. Enter EDWARD and RICHARD, with their Forces, marching.

EDWARD. I wonder how our princely father 'scap'd,  
Or whether he be 'scap'd away or no  
From Clifford's and Northumberland's pursuit.  
Had he been ta'en we should have heard the news ; 4  
Had he been slain we should have heard the news ;  
Or had he 'scap'd, methinks we should have heard  
The happy tidings of his good escape.  
How fares my brother ? why is he so sad ? 8

RICHARD. I cannot joy until I be resolv'd  
Where our right valiant father is become.  
I saw him in the battle range about,  
And watch'd him how he singled Clifford forth. 12  
Methought he bore him in the thickest troop  
As doth a lion in a herd of neat ;  
Or as a bear, encompass'd round with dogs,  
Who having pinch'd a few and made them cry, 16  
The rest stand all aloof and bark at him.  
So far'd our father with his enemies ;  
So fled his enemies my warlike father :  
Methinks, 'tis prize enough to be his son. 20  
See how the morning opes her golden gates,  
And takes her farewell of the glorious sun ;  
How well resembles it the prime of youth,  
Trimm'd like a younker prancing to his love. 24

EDWARD. Dazzle mine eyes, or do I see three suns ?

RICHARD. Three glorious suns, each one a perfect sun ;  
Not separated with the racking clouds,  
But sever'd in a pale clear-shining sky. 28  
See, see ! they join, embrace, and seem to kiss,  
As if they vow'd some league inviolable :  
Now are they but one lamp, one light, one sun.  
In this the heaven figures some event. 32

EDWARD. 'Tis wondrous strange, the like yet never  
heard of.

I think it cites us, brother, to the field ;  
That we, the sons of brave Plantagenet,  
Each one already blazing by our meeds, 36  
Should notwithstanding join our lights together.

And over-shine the earth, as this the world.  
Whate'er it bodes, henceforward will I bear  
Upon my target three fair-shining suns.

RICHARD. Nay, bear three daughters : by your leave 40

I speak it,

You love the breeder better than the male.

Enter a Messenger.

But what art thou, whose heavy looks foretell  
Some dreadful story hanging on thy tongue ? 44

MESSENGER. Ah ! one that was a woeful looker-on,  
When as the noble Duke of York was slain,  
Your princely father, and my loving lord.

EDWARD. O ! speak no more, for I have heard too  
much. 48

RICHARD. Say how he died, for I will hear it all.

MESSENGER. Environed he was with many foes,  
And stood against them, as the hope of Troy  
Against the Greeks that would have enter'd Troy. 52  
But Hercules himself must yield to odds ;  
And many strokes, though with a little axe,  
Hew down and fell the hardest-timber'd oak.  
By many hands your father was subdu'd ; 56  
But only slaughter'd by the ireful arm  
Of unrelenting Clifford and the queen,  
Who crown'd the gracious duke in high despite ;  
Laugh'd in his face ; and when with grief he wept,  
The ruthless queen gave him to dry his cheeks 61  
A napkin steeped in the harmless blood  
Of sweet young Rutland, by rough Clifford slain :  
And after many scorns, many foul taunts, 64  
They took his head, and on the gates of York  
They set the same ; and there it doth remain,  
The saddest spectacle that e'er I view'd.

EDWARD. Sweet Duke of York ! our prop to lean  
upon, 68

Now thou art gone, we have no staff, no stay !  
O Clifford ! boisterous Clifford ! thou hast slain  
The flower of Europe for his chivalry ;  
And treacherously hast thou vanquish'd him, 72  
For hand to hand he would have vanquish'd thee.  
Now my soul's palace is become a prison :  
Ah ! would she break from hence, that this my body

Might in the ground be closed up in rest,  
 For never henceforth shall I joy again,  
 Never, O ! never, shall I see more joy. 76

RICHARD. I cannot weep, for all my body's moisture  
 Scarce serves to quench my furnace-burning heart :  
 Nor can my tongue unload my heart's great burden ;  
 For selfsame wind, that I should speak withal  
 Is kindling coals that fire all my breast,  
 And burn me up with flames, that tears would quench.  
 To weep is to make less the depth of grief : 85  
 Tears then, for babes ; blows and revenge for me !  
 Richard, I bear thy name ; I'll venge thy death,  
 Or die renowned by attempting it. 88

EDWARD. His name that valiant duke hath left with  
 thee ;  
 His dukedom and his chair with me is left.

RICHARD. Nay, if thou be that princely eagle's bird,  
 Show thy descent by gazing 'gainst the sun : 92  
 For chair and dukedom, throne and kingdom say ;  
 Either that is thine, or else thou wert not his.

March. Enter WARWICK and the MARQUESS OF MONTAGUE, with  
 Forces.

WARWICK. How now, fair lords ! What fare ? what  
 news abroad ?

RICHARD. Great Lord of Warwick, if we should  
 recount 96

Our baleful news, and at each word's deliverance  
 Stab poniards in our flesh till all were told,  
 The words would add more anguish than the wounds.  
 O valiant lord ! the Duke of York is slain. 100

EDWARD. O Warwick ! Warwick ! that Plantagenet  
 Which held thee dearly as his soul's redemption,  
 Is by the stern Lord Clifford done to death.

WARWICK. Ten days ago I drown'd these news in tears,  
 And now, to add more measure to your woes, 105  
 I come to tell you things sith then befallen.  
 After the bloody fray at Wakefield fought,  
 Where your brave father breath'd his latest gasp, 108  
 Tidings, as swiftly as the posts could run,  
 Were brought me of your loss and his depart.  
 I, then in London, keeper of the king,  
 Muster'd my soldiers, gather'd flocks of friends, 112

And very well appointed, as I thought,  
 March'd towards Saint Alban's to intercept the queen.  
 Bearing the king in my behalf along ;  
 For by my scouts I was advertised 116  
 That she was coming with a full intent  
 To dash our late decree in parliament,  
 Touching King Henry's oath and your succession.  
 Short tale to make, we at Saint Alban's met, 120  
 Our battles join'd, and both sides fiercely fought :  
 But whether 'twas the coldness of the king,  
 Who look'd full gently on his warlike queen,  
 That robb'd my soldiers of their heated spleen ; 124  
 Or whether 'twas report of her success ;  
 Or more than common fear of Clifford's rigour,  
 Who thunders to his captives blood and death,  
 I cannot judge : but, to conclude with truth, 128  
 Their weapons like to lightning came and went ;  
 Our soldiers'—like the night-owl's lazy flight,  
 Or like a lazy thresher with a flail—  
 Fell gently down, as if they struck their friends. 132  
 I cheer'd them up with justice of our cause,  
 With promise of high pay, and great rewards :  
 But all in vain ; they had no heart to fight,  
 And we in them no hope to win the day ; 136  
 So that we fled : the king unto the queen ;  
 Lord George your brother, Norfolk, and myself,  
 In haste, post-haste, are come to join with you ;  
 For in the marches here we heard you were, 140  
 Making another head to fight again.

EDWARD. Where is the Duke of Norfolk, gentle  
 Warwick ?

And when came George from Burgundy to England ?

WARWICK. Some six miles off the duke is with the  
 soldiers ; 144

And for your brother, he was lately sent  
 From your kind aunt, Duchess of Burgundy,  
 With aid of soldiers to this needful war.

RICHARD. 'Twas odds, belike, when valiant Warwick  
 fled : 148

Oft have I heard his praises in pursuit,  
 But ne'er till now his scandal of retire.

WARWICK. Nor now my scandal, Richard, dost thou  
 hear ;

For thou shalt know, this strong right hand of mine  
Can pluck the diadem from faint Henry's head, 153

And wring the awful sceptre from his fist,  
Were he as famous and as bold in war  
As he is fam'd for mildness, peace, and prayer. 156

RICHARD. I know it well, Lord Warwick; blame me  
not :

'Tis love I bear thy glories makes me speak.  
But in this troublous time what's to be done?  
Shall we go throw away our coats of steel, 160  
And wrap our bodies in black mourning gowns,  
Numbering our Ave-Maries with our beads?  
Or shall we on the helmets of our foes  
Tell our devotion with revengeful arms ? 164  
If for the last, say 'Ay', and to it, lords.

WARWICK. Why, therefore Warwick came to seek you  
out ;

And therefore comes my brother Montague.  
Attend me, lords. The proud insulting queen, 168  
With Clifford and the haught Northumberland,  
And of their feather many more proud birds,  
Have wrought the easy-melting king like wax.  
He swore consent to your succession, 172  
His oath enrolled in the parliament ;  
And now to London all the crew are gone,  
To frustrate both his oath and what beside  
May make against the house of Lancaster. 176  
Their power, I think, is thirty thousand strong :  
Now, if the help of Norfolk and myself,  
With all the friends that thou, brave Earl of March,  
Amongst the loving Welshmen canst procure, 180  
Will but amount to five and twenty thousand,  
Why, Via ! to London will we march amain,  
And once again bestride our foaming steeds,  
And once again cry ' Charge upon our foes ! ' 184  
But never once again turn back and fly.

RICHARD. Ay, now methinks I hear great Warwick  
speak :

Ne'er may he live to see a sunshine day,  
That cries ' Retire ', if Warwick bid him stay. 188

EDWARD. Lord Warwick, on thy shoulder will I lean ;  
And when thou fail'st—as God forbid the hour !—  
Must Edward fall, which peril heaven forbend !

WARWICK. No longer Earl of March, but Duke of York : 192

The next degree is England's royal throne ;  
For King of England shalt thou be proclaim'd  
In every borough as we pass along ;  
And he that throws not up his cap for joy 196  
Shall for the fault make forfeit of his head.  
King Edward, valiant Richard, Montague,  
Stay we no longer dreaming of renown,  
But sound the trumpets, and about our task. 200

RICHARD. Then, Clifford, were thy heart as hard as steel,—  
As thou hast shown it flinty by thy deeds,—  
I come to pierce it, or to give thee mine.

EDWARD. Then strike up, drums ! God, and Saint George for us ! 204

Enter a Messenger.

WARWICK. How now ! what news ?

MESSANGER. The Duke of Norfolk sends you word by me,  
The queen is coming with a puissant host ;  
And craves your company for speedy counsel. 208

WARWICK. Why then it sorts ; brave warriors, let's away. [Exeunt.

SCENE II.—Before York.

Flourish. Enter KING HENRY, QUEEN MARGARET, the PRINCE OF WALES, CLIFFORD, and NORTHUMBERLAND, with drums and trumpets.

QUEEN MARGARET. Welcome, my lord, to this brave town of York.

Yonder's the head of that arch-enemy,  
That sought to be encompass'd with your crown :  
Doth not the object cheer your heart, my lord ? 4

KING HENRY. Ay, as the rocks cheer them that fear their wrack :

To see this sight, it irks my very soul.  
Withhold revenge, dear God ! 'tis not my fault,  
Nor wittingly have I infring'd my vow. 8

CLIFFORD. My gracious liege, this too much lenity  
And harmful pity must be laid aside.  
To whom do lions cast their gentle looks ?  
Not to the beast that would usurp their den. 12

Whose hand is that the forest bear doth lick ?  
 Not his that spoils her young before her face.  
 Who 'scapes the lurking serpent's mortal sting ?  
 Not he that sets his foot upon her back. 16  
 The smallest worm will turn being trodden on,  
 And doves will peck in safeguard of their brood.  
 Ambitious York did level at thy crown ;  
 Thou smiling while he knit his angry brows : 20  
 He, but a duke, would have his son a king,  
 And raise his issue like a loving sire ;  
 Thou, being a king, bless'd with a goodly son,  
 Didst yield consent to disinherit him, 24  
 Which argu'd thee a most unloving father.  
 Unreasonable creatures feed their young ;  
 And thou, man's face be fearful to their eyes,  
 Yet, in protection of their tender ones, 28  
 Who hath not seen them, even with those wings  
 Which sometime they have us'd with fearful flight,  
 Make war with him that climb'd unto their nest,  
 Offering their own lives in their young's defence ? 32  
 For shame, my liege ! make them your precedent.  
 Were it not pity that this goodly boy  
 Should lose his birthright by his father's fault,  
 And long hereafter say unto his child, 36  
 ' What my great-grandfather and grandsire got,  
 My careless father fondly gave away ' ?  
 Ah ! what a shame were this. Look on the boy :  
 And let his manly face, which promiseth 40  
 Successful fortune, steel thy melting heart  
 To hold thine own and leave thine own with him.  
 KING HENRY. Full well hath Clifford play'd the  
 orator,  
 Inferring arguments of mighty force. 44  
 But, Clifford, tell me, didst thou never hear  
 That things ill-got had ever bad success ?  
 And happy always was it for that son  
 Whose father for his hoarding went to hell ? 48  
 I'll leave my son my virtuous deeds behind ;  
 And would my father had left me no more !  
 For all the rest is held at such a rate  
 As brings a thousand-fold more care to keep 52  
 Than in possession any jot of pleasure.  
 Ah ! cousin York, would thy best friends did know

How it doth grieve me that thy head is here !

QUEEN MARGARET. My lord, cheer up your spirits  
our foes are nigh, 56

And this soft courage makes your followers faint.

You promis'd knighthood to our forward son :

Unsheathe your sword, and dub him presently.

Edward, kneel down. 60

KING HENRY. Edward Plantagenet, arise a knight ;  
And learn this lesson, draw thy sword in right.

PRINCE. My gracious father, by your kingly leave,  
I'll draw it as apparent to the crown, 64

And in that quarrel use it to the death.

CLIFFORD. Why, that is spoken like a toward prince.

Enter a Messenger.

MESSENGER. Royal commanders, be in readiness :  
For with a band of thirty thousand men 68

Comes Warwick, backing of the Duke of York ;

And in the towns, as they do march along,

Proclaims him king, and many fly to him :

Darraign your battle, for they are at hand. 72

CLIFFORD. I would your highness would depart the  
field :

The queen hath best success when you are absent.

QUEEN MARGARET. Ay, good my lord, and leave us to  
our fortune.

KING HENRY. Why, that's my fortune too ; there-  
fore I'll stay. 76

NORTHUMBERLAND. Be it with resolution then to  
fight.

PRINCE. My royal father, cheer these noble lords,  
And hearten those that fight in your defence :

Unsheathe your sword, good father : cry, ' Saint  
George ! ' 80

March. Enter EDWARD, GEORGE, RICHARD, WARWICK, NORFOLK,  
MONTAGUE, and Soldiers.

EDWARD. Now, perjur'd Henry, wilt thou kneel for  
grace,

And set thy diadem upon my head ;

Or bide the mortal fortune of the field ?

QUEEN MARGARET. Go, rate thy minions, proud in-  
sulting boy ! 84



Becomes it thee to be thus bold in terms  
Before thy sovereign and thy lawful king ?

EDWARD. I am his king, and he should bow his knee ;  
I was adopted heir by his consent : 68

Since when, his oath is broke ; for, as I hear,  
You, that are king, though he do wear the crown,  
Have caus'd him, by new act of parliament,  
To blot out me, and put his own son in. 92

CLIFFORD. And reason too :

Who should succeed the father but the son ? •

RICHARD. Are you there, butcher ? O ! I cannot speak.

CLIFFORD. Ay, crook-back ; here I stand to answer  
thee, 96

Or any he the proudest of thy sort,

RICHARD. 'Twas you that kill'd young Rutland, was  
it not ?

CLIFFORD. Ay, and old York, and yet not satisfied.

RICHARD. For God's sake, lords, give signal to the  
fight. 100

WARWICK. What sayst thou, Henry, wilt thou yield  
the crown ?

QUEEN MARGARET. Why, how now, long-tongu'd  
Warwick ! dare you speak ?

When you and I met at Saint Alban's last,  
Your legs did better service than your hands. 104

WARWICK. Then 'twas my turn to fly, and now 'tis  
thine.

CLIFFORD. You said so much before, and yet you fled.

WARWICK. 'Twas not your valour, Clifford, drove me  
thence.

NORTHUMBERLAND. No, nor your manhood that durst  
make you stay. 106

RICHARD. Northumberland, I hold thee reverently.

Break off the parley ; for scarce I can refrain

The execution of my big-swoln heart

Upon that Clifford, that cruel child-killer. 112

CLIFFORD. I slew thy father : call'st thou him a child ?

RICHARD. Ay, like a dastard and a treacherous  
coward,

As thou didst kill our tender brother Rutland ;

But ere sunset I'll make thee curse the deed. 116

KING HENRY. Have done with words, my lords, and  
hear me speak.

QUEEN MARGARET. Defy them, then, or else hold close thy lips.

KING HENRY. I prithee, give no limits to my tongue :  
I am a king, and privileg'd to speak. 120

CLIFFORD. My liege, the wound that bred this meeting here

Cannot be cur'd by words ; therefore be still.

RICHARD. Then, executioner, unsheathe thy sword.  
By him that made us all, I am resolv'd 124  
That Clifford's manhood lies upon his tongue.

EDWARD. Say, Henry, shall I have my right or no?  
A thousand men have broke their fasts to-day,  
That ne'er shall dine unless thou yield the crown. 128

WARWICK. If thou deny, their blood upon thy head ;  
For York in justice puts his armour on.

PRINCE. If that be right which Warwick says is right,  
There is no wrong, but everything is right. 132

RICHARD. Whoever got thee, there thy mother stands ;  
For well I wot thou hast thy mother's tongue.

QUEEN MARGARET. But thou art neither like thy sire  
nor dam,  
But like a foul mis-shapen stigmatic, 136  
Mark'd by the destinies to be avoided,  
As venom toads, or lizards' dreadful stings.

RICHARD. Iron of Naples hid with English gilt,  
Whose father bears the title of a king,— 140  
As if a channel should be call'd the sea,—  
Sham'st thou not, knowing whence thou art extraught,  
To let thy tongue detect thy base-born heart ?

EDWARD. A wisp of straw were worth a thousand  
crowns, 144

To make this shameless callet know herself.  
Helen of Greece was fairer far than thou,  
Although thy husband may be Menelaus ;  
And ne'er was Agamemnon's brother wrong'd 148  
By that false woman as this king by thee.  
His father revell'd in the heart of France,  
And tam'd the king, and made the Dauphin stoop ;  
And had he match'd according to his state, 152  
He might have kept that glory to this day ;  
But when he took a beggar to his bed,  
And grac'd thy poor sire with his bridal day, 155  
Even then that sunshine brew'd a shower for him,

That wash'd his father's fortunes forth of France,  
 And heap'd sedition on his crown at home.  
 For what hath broach'd this tumult but thy pride ?  
 Hadst thou been meek, our title still had slept, 160  
 And we, in pity of the gentle king,  
 Had slipp'd our claim until another age.

GEORGE. But when we saw our sunshine made thy  
 spring,  
 And that thy summer bred us no increase, 164  
 We set the axe to thy usurping root ;  
 And though the edge hath something hit ourselves,  
 Yet know thou, since we have begun to strike,  
 We'll never leave, till we have hewn thee down, 168  
 Or bath'd thy growing with our heated bloods.

EDWARD. And in this resolution I defy thee ;  
 Not willing any longer conference,  
 Since thou deniest the gentle king to speak. 172  
 Sound trumpets !—let our bloody colours wave !  
 And either victory, or else a grave.

QUEEN MARGARET. Stay, Edward.

EDWARD. No, wrangling woman, we'll no longer stay:  
 These words will cost ten thousand lives this day.

[Exeunt.

SCENE III.—A Field of Battle between Towton and Saxton, in  
 Yorkshire.

Alarums : Excursions. Enter WARWICK.

WARWICK. Forspent with toil, as runners with a race,  
 I lay me down a little while to breathe ;  
 For strokes receiv'd, and many blows repaid,  
 Have robb'd my strong-knit sinews of their strength,  
 And spite of spite needs must I rest a while. 5

Enter EDWARD, running.

EDWARD. Smile, gentle heaven ! or strike, ungentle  
 death !  
 For this world frowns, and Edward's sun is clouded.

WARWICK. How now, my lord ! what hap ? what  
 hope of good ? 8

Enter GEORGE.

GEORGE. Our hap is loss, our hope but sad despair,  
 Our ranks are broke, and ruin follows us.  
 What counsel give you ? whither shall we fly ?

EDWARD. Bootless is flight, they follow us with wings;  
And weak we are and cannot shun pursuit. 13

Enter RICHARD.

RICHARD. Ah! Warwick, why hast thou withdrawn  
thyself?

Thy brother's blood the thirsty earth hath drunk,  
Broach'd with the steely point of Clifford's lance; 16  
And in the very pangs of death he cried,  
Like to a dismal clangor heard from far.  
'Warwick, revenge! brother, revenge my death!'  
So, underneath the belly of their steeds, 20  
That stain'd their fetlocks in his smoking blood,  
The noble gentleman gave up the ghost.

WARWICK. Then let the earth be drunken with our  
blood:

I'll kill my horse because I will not fly. 24  
Why stand we like soft-hearted women here,  
Wailing our losses, whiles the foe doth rage;  
And look upon, as if the tragedy  
Were play'd in jest by councerteiting actors? 28  
Here on my knee I vow to God above,  
I'll never pause again, never stand still  
Till either death hath clos'd these eyes of mine,  
Or fortune given me measure of revenge. 32

EDWARD. O Warwick! I do bend my knee with thine;  
And in this vow do chain my soul to thine.  
And, ere my knee rise from the earth's cold face,  
I throw my hands, mine eyes, my heart to thee, 36  
Thou setter up and plucker down of kings,  
Beseeching thee, if with thy will it stands  
That to my foes this body must be prey,  
Yet that thy brazen gates of heaven may ope, 40  
And give sweet passage to my sinful soul!  
Now, lords, take leave until we meet again,  
Where'er it be, in heaven or in earth.

RICHARD. Brother, give me thy hand; and, gentle  
Warwick, 44

Let me embrace thee in my weary arms:  
I, that did never weep, now melt with woe  
That winter should cut off our spring-time so.

WARWICK. Away, away! Once more, sweet lords,  
farewell. 48

**GEORGE.** Yet let us all together to our troops,  
 And give them leave to fly that will not stay;  
 And call them pillars that will stand to us;  
 And if we thrive, promise them such rewards 52  
 As victors wear at the Olympian games.  
 This may plant courage in their quailing breasts;  
 For yet is hope of life and victory.  
 Forslow no longer; make we hence amain. [Exeunt.]

SCENE IV.—Another Part of the Field.

Excursions. Enter RICHARD and CLIFFORD.

**RICHARD.** Now, Clifford, I have singled thee alone.  
 Suppose this arm is for the Duke of York,  
 And this for Rutland; both bound to revenge.  
 Wert thou environ'd with a brazen wall. 4

**CLIFFORD.** Now, Richard, I am with thee here alone.  
 This is the hand that stabb'd thy father York,  
 And this the hand that slew thy brother Rutland;  
 And here 's the heart that triumphs in their death. 8  
 And cheers these hands that slew thy sire and brother,  
 To execute the like upon thyself;  
 And so, have at thee! 11

[They fight. WARWICK enters; CLIFFORD flies.]

**RICHARD.** Nay, Warwick, single out some other chase;  
 For I myself will hunt this wolf to death. [Exeunt.]

SCENE V.—Another Part of the Field.

Alarum. Enter KING HENRY.

**KING HENRY.** This battle fares like to the morning's  
 war,  
 When dying clouds contend with growing light,  
 What time the shepherd, blowing of his nails,  
 Can neither call it perfect day nor night. 4  
 Now sways it this way, like a mighty sea,  
 Forc'd by the tide to combat with the wind;  
 Now sways it that way, like the selfsame sea  
 Forc'd to retire by fury of the wind: 8  
 Sometime the flood prevails, and then the wind;  
 Now one the better, then another best;  
 Both tugging to be victors, breast to breast,  
 Yet neither conqueror nor conquered: 12

So is the equal poise of this fell war.  
Here on this molehill will I sit me down.  
To whom God will, there be the victory !  
For Margaret my queen, and Clifford too, 16  
Have chid me from the battle ; swearing both  
They prosper best of all when I am thence.  
Would I were dead ! if God's good will were so ;  
For what is in this world but grief and woe ? 20  
O God ! methinks it were a happy life,  
To be no better than a homely swain ;  
To sit upon a hill, as I do now,  
To carve out dials quaintly, point by point, 24  
Thereby to see the minutes how they run,  
How many make the hour full complete ;  
How many hours bring about the day ;  
How many days will finish up the year ; 28  
How many years a mortal man may live.  
When this is known, then to divide the times :  
So many hours must I tend my flock ;  
So many hours must I take my rest ; 32  
So many hours must I contemplate ;  
So many hours must I sport myself ;  
So many days my ewes have been with young ;  
So many weeks ere the poor fools will ean ; 36  
So many years ere I shall shear the fleece :  
So minutes, hours, days, months, and years,  
Pass'd over to the end they were created,  
Would bring white hairs unto a quiet grave. 40  
Ah ! what a life were this ! how sweet ! how lovely !  
Gives not the hawthorn bush a sweeter shade  
To shepherds, looking on their silly sheep,  
Than doth a rich embroider'd canopy 44  
To kings, that fear their subjects' treachery ?  
O, yes ! it doth ; a thousand-fold it doth.  
And to conclude, the shepherd's homely curds,  
His cold thin drink out of his leather bottle, 48  
His wonted sleep under a fresh tree's shade,  
All which secure and sweetly he enjoys,  
Is far beyond a prince's delicates,  
His viands sparkling in a golden cup, 52  
His body couched in a curious bed,  
When care, mistrust, and treason wait on him.

**Alarum.** Enter a Son that hath killed his Father, with the dead body.

**SON.** Ill blows the wind that profits nobody.  
 This man whom hand to hand I slew in fight, 56  
 May be possessed with some store of crowns ;  
 And I, that haply take them from him now,  
 May yet ere night yield both my life and them  
 To some man else, as this dead man doth me. 60  
 Who's this ? O God ! it is my father's face,  
 Whom in this conflict I unwares have kill'd.  
 O heavy times, begetting such events !  
 From London by the king was I press'd forth ; 64  
 My father, being the Earl of Warwick's man,  
 Came on the part of York, press'd by his master ;  
 And I, who at his hands receiv'd my life,  
 Have by my hands of life bereaved him. 68  
 Pardon me, God, I knew not what I did !  
 And pardon, father, for I knew not thee !  
 My tears shall wipe away these bloody marks ;  
 And no more words till they have flow'd their fill. 72

**KING HENRY.** O piteous spectacle ! O bloody times !  
 Whiles lions war and battle for their dens,  
 Poor harmless lambs abide their enmity.  
 Weep, wretched man, I'll aid thee tear for tear ; 76  
 And let our hearts and eyes, like civil war,  
 Be blind with tears, and break o'ercharg'd with grief.

Enter a Father that hath killed his Son, with the body in his arms.

**FATHER.** Thou that so stoutly hast resisted me,  
 Give me thy gold, if thou hast any gold, 80  
 For I have bought it with a hundred blows.  
 But let me see : is this our foeman's face ?  
 Ah ! no, no, no, it is mine only son.  
 Ah ! boy, if any life be left in thee, 84  
 Throw up thine eye : see, see ! what showers arise,  
 Blown with the windy tempest of my heart,  
 Upon thy wounds, that kill mine eye and heart.  
 O ! pity, God, this miserable age. 88  
 What stratagems, how fell, how butcherly,  
 Erroneous, mutinous, and unnatural,  
 This deadly quarrel daily doth beget !  
 O boy ! thy father gave thee life too soon, 92  
 And hath bereft thee of thy life too late.

KING HENRY. Woe above woe ! ' grief more than common grief !

O ! that my death would stay these ruthful deeds.  
O ! pity, pity ; gentle heaven, pity. 96

The red rose and the white are on his face,  
The fatal colours of our striving houses :  
The one his purple blood right well resembles ;  
The other his pale cheeks, methinks, presenteth : 100  
Wither one rose, and let the other flourish !  
If you contend, a thousand lives must wither.

SON. How will my mother for a father's death.  
Take on with me and ne'er be satisfied ! 104

FATHER. How will my wife for slaughter of my son  
Shed seas of tears and ne'er be satisfied !

KING HENRY. How will the country for these woeful  
chances  
Misthink the king and not be satisfied ! 108

SON. Was ever son so ru'd a father's death ?

FATHER. Was ever father so bemoan'd a son ?

KING HENRY. Was ever king so griev'd for subjects'  
woe ?  
Much is your sorrow ; mine, ten times so much. 112  
SON. I'll bear thee hence, where I may weep my fill.

[Exit with the body.

FATHER. These arms of mine shall be thy winding-  
sheet ;  
My heart, sweet boy, shall be thy sepulchre,  
For from my heart thine image ne'er shall go : 116  
My sighing breast shall be thy funeral bell ;  
And so obsequious will thy father be,  
E'en for the loss of thee, having no more,  
As Priam was for all his valiant sons. 120  
I'll bear thee hence ; and let them fight that will,  
For I have murder'd where I should not kill.

[Exit with the body.

KING HENRY. Sad-hearted men, much overgone with  
care,  
Here sits a king more woeful than you are. 124

Alarum. Excursions. Enter QUEEN MARGARET, PRINCE OF WALES,  
and EXETER.

PRINCE. Fly, father, fly ! for all your friends are fled,  
And Warwick rages like a chafed bull.



Away ! for death doth hold us in pursuit.

QUEEN MARGARET. Mount you, my lord ; towards  
Berwick post amain. 128

Edward and Richard, like a brace of greyhounds  
Having the fearful flying hare in sight,  
With fiery eyes sparkling for very wrath,  
And bloody steel grasp'd in their ireful hands, 132  
Are at our backs ; and therefore hence amain.

EXETER. Away ! for vengeance comes along with  
them.

Nay, stay not to expostulate ; make speed,  
Or else come after : I'll away before. 136

KING HENRY. Nay, take me with thee, good sweet  
Exeter :

Not that I fear to stay, but love to go  
Whither the queen intends. Forward ! away ! [Exeunt.

SCENE VI.—The Same.

A loud alarum. Enter CLIFFORD, wounded.

CLIFFORD. Here burns my candle out ; ay, here it dies,  
Which, while it lasted, gave King Henry light.  
O Lancaster ! I fear thy overthrow  
More than my body's parting with my soul. 4  
My love and fear glu'd many friends to thee ;  
And, now I fall, thy tough commixtures melt,  
Impairing Henry, strengthening misproud York :  
The common people swarm like summer flies ; 8  
And whither fly the gnats but to the sun ?  
And who shines now but Henry's enemies ?  
O Phœbus ! hadst thou never given consent  
That Phaethon should check thy fiery steeds, 12  
Thy burning car never had scorch'd the earth ;  
And, Henry, hadst thou sway'd as kings should do,  
Or as thy father and his father did,  
Giving no ground unto the house of York, 16  
They never then had sprung like summer flies ;  
I and ten thousand in this luckless realm  
Had left no mourning widows for our death,  
And thou this day hadst kept thy chair in peace. 20  
For what doth cherish weeds but gentle air ?  
And what makes robbers bold but too much lenity ?  
Bootless are plaints, and cureless are my wounds ;

No way to fly, nor strength to hold out flight ; 24  
The foe is merciless, and will not pity ;  
For at their hands I have deserv'd no pity.  
The air hath got into my deadly wounds,  
And much effuse of blood doth make me faint. 28  
Come, York and Richard, Warwick and the rest ;  
I stabb'd your fathers' bosoms, split my breast. [He faints.

Alarum and Retreat. Enter EDWARD, GEORGE, RICHARD,  
MONTAGUE, WARWICK, and Soldiers.

EDWARD. Now breathe we, lords : good fortune bids  
us pause, 31  
And smooth the frowns of war with peaceful looks.  
Some troops pursue the bloody-minded queen,  
That led calm Henry, though he were a king,  
As doth a sail, fill'd with a fretting gust,  
Command an argosy to stem the waves. 36  
But think you, lords, that Clifford fled with them ?  
WARWICK. No, 'tis impossible he should escape ;  
For, though before his face I speak the words,  
Your brother Richard mark'd him for the grave ; 40  
And wheresoe'er he is, he 's surely dead.

[CLIFFORD groans and dies.

EDWARD. Whose soul is that which takes her heavy  
leave ?  
RICHARD. A deadly groan, like life and death's  
departing.  
EDWARD. See who it is : and, now the battle 's ended,  
If friend or foe, let him be gently us'd. 45  
RICHARD. Revoke that doom of mercy, for 'tis Clifford ;  
Who not contented that he lopp'd the branch  
In hewing Rutland when his leaves put forth, 48  
But set his murdering knife unto the root  
From whence that tender spray did sweetly spring,  
I mean our princely father, Duke of York.

WARWICK. From off the gates of York fetch down  
the head, 52  
Your father's head, which Clifford placed there ;  
Instead whereof let this supply the room :  
Measure for measure must be answered.

EDWARD. Bring forth that fatal screech-owl to our  
house, 56  
That nothing sung but death to us and ours :

Now death shall stop his dismal threatening sound,  
And his ill-boding tongue no more shall speak.

[Attendants bring the body forward.]

WARWICK. I think his understanding is bereft. 60  
Speak, Clifford; dost thou know who speaks to thee?  
Dark cloudy death o'ershades his beams of life,  
And he nor sees, nor hears us what we say.

RICHARD. O! would he did; and so perhaps he  
doth: 64

'Tis but his policy to counterfeit,  
Because he would avoid such bitter taunts  
Which in the time of death he gave our father. 67

GEORGE. If so thou think'st, vex him with eager words.

RICHARD. Clifford! ask mercy and obtain no grace.

EDWARD. Clifford! repent in bootless penitence.

WARWICK. Clifford! devise excuses for thy faults.

GEORGE. While we devise fell tortures for thy faults.

RICHARD. Thou didst love York, and I am son to  
York. 73

EDWARD. Thou pitiedst Rutland, I will pity thee.

GEORGE. Where's Captain Margaret, to fence you now?

WARWICK. They mock thee, Clifford: swear as thou  
wast wont. 76

RICHARD. What! not an oath? nay, then the world  
goes hard

When Clifford cannot spare his friends an oath.  
I know by that he's dead; and, by my soul,  
If this right hand would buy two hours' life, 80  
That I in all despite might rail at him,  
This hand should chop it off, and with the issuing blood  
Stifle the villain whose unstanched thirst  
York and young Rutland could not satisfy. 84

WARWICK. Ay, but he's dead: off with the traitor's  
head,

And rear it in the place your father's stands.  
And now to London with triumphant march,  
There to be crowned England's royal king: 88  
From whence shall Warwick cut the sea to France,  
And ask the Lady Bona for thy queen.  
So shalt thou sinew both these lands together;  
And, having France thy friend, thou shalt not dread  
The scatter'd foe that hopes to rise again; 93  
For though they cannot greatly sting to hurt,

Yet look to have them buzz to offend thine ears.  
 First will I see the coronation ; 6  
 And then to Brittany I'll cross the sea,  
 To effect this marriage, so it please my lord.

EDWARD. Even as thou wilt, sweet Warwick, let it be ;  
 For on thy shoulder do I build my seat, 100  
 And never will I undertake the thing  
 Wherein thy counsel and consent is wanting.  
 Richard, I will create thee Duke of Gloucester ;  
 And George, of Clarence ; Warwick, as ourself, 104  
 Shall do and undo as him pleaseth best.

RICHARD. Let me be Duke of Clarence, George of  
 Gloucester,  
 For Gloucester's dukedom is too ominous. 107

WARWICK. Tut ! that 's a foolish observation :  
 Richard, be Duke of Gloucester. Now to London,  
 To see these honours in possession. [Exeunt.

## ACT III.

SCENE I.—A Chase in the North of England.

Enter two Keepers, with cross-bows in their hands.

FIRST KEEPER. Under this thick-grown brake we'll  
 shroud ourselves ;  
 For through this laund anon the deer will come ;  
 And in this covert will we make our stand,  
 Culling the principal of all the deer. 4

SECOND KEEPER. I'll stay above the hill, so both may  
 shoot.

FIRST KEEPER. That cannot be ; the noise of thy  
 cross-bow  
 Will scare the herd, and so my shoot is lost.  
 Here stand we both, and aim we at the best : 8  
 And, for the time shall not seem tedious,  
 I'll tell thee what befell me on a day  
 In this self place where now we mean to stand.

SECOND KEEPER. Here comes a man ; let 's stay till  
 he be past. 12

Enter KING HENRY, disguised, with a prayer-book.

KING HENRY. From Scotland am I stol'n, even of pure love,

To greet mine own land with my wishful sight.

No, Harry, Harry, 'tis no land of thine ;

Thy place is fill'd, thy sceptre wrung from thee, 16

Thy balm wash'd off wherewith thou wast anointed :

No bending knee will call thee Cæsar now,

No humble suitors press to speak for right, .

No, not a man comes for redress of thee ; 20

For how can I help them, and not myself ?

FIRST KEEPER. Ay, here's a deer whose skin's a keeper's fee :

This is the quondam king ; let's seize upon him.

KING HENRY. Let me embrace thee, sour adversity, For wise men say it is the wisest course. 25

SECOND KEEPER. Why linger we ? let us lay hands upon him.

FIRST KEEPER. Forbear awhile ; we'll hear a little more.

KING HENRY. My queen and son are gone to France for aid ; 28

And, as I hear, the great commanding Warwick

Is thither gone, to crave the French king's sister

To wife for Edward. If this news be true,

Poor queen and son, your labour is but lost ; 32

For Warwick is a subtle orator,

And Lewis a prince soon won with moving words.

By this account then Margaret may win him.

For she's a woman to be pitied much : 36

Her sighs will make a battery in his breast ;

Her tears will pierce into a marble heart ;

The tiger will be mild whiles she doth mourn ;

And Nero will be tainted with remorse, 40

To hear and see her complaints, her brinish tears.

Ay, but she's come to beg ; Warwick, to give :

She on his left side craving aid for Henry ;

He on his right asking a wife for Edward. 44

She weeps, and says her Henry is depos'd ;

He smiles, and says his Edward is install'd ;

That she, poor wretch, for grief can speak no more :

Whiles Warwick tells his title, smooths the wrong, 48

Inferreth arguments of mighty strength,  
And in conclusion wins the king from her,  
With promise of his sister, and what else,  
To strengthen and support King Edward's place. 52  
O Margaret ! thus 'twill be ; and thou, poor soul,  
Art then forsaken, as thou went'st forlorn.

SECOND KEEPER. Say, what art thou, that talk'st of  
kings and queens ?

KING HENRY. More than I seem, and less than I was  
born to : 56

A man at least, for less I should not be ;  
And men may talk of kings, and why not I ?

SECOND KEEPER. Ay, but thou talk'st as if thou wert  
a king.

KING HENRY. Why, so I am, in mind ; and that's  
enough. 60

SECOND KEEPER. But, if thou be a king, where is  
thy crown ?

KING HENRY. My crown is in my heart, not on my  
head ;  
Not deck'd with diamonds and Indian stones,  
Nor to be seen : my crown is call'd content ; 64  
A crown it is that seldom kings enjoy.

SECOND KEEPER. Well, if you be a king crown'd with  
content,  
Your crown content and you must be contented  
To go along with us ; for, as we think, 68  
You are the king King Edward hath depos'd ;  
And we his subjects, sworn in all allegiance,  
Will apprehend you as his enemy.

KING HENRY. But did you never swear, and break an  
oath ? 72

SECOND KEEPER. No, never such an oath ; nor will  
not now.

KING HENRY. Where did you dwell when I was King of  
England ?

SECOND KEEPER. Here in this country, where we now  
remain.

KING HENRY. I was anointed king at nine months  
old ; 76  
My father and my grandfather were kings,  
And you were sworn true subjects unto me :  
And tell me, then, have you not broke your oaths ?

FIRST KEEPER. No;  
For we were subjects but while you were king. 80

KING HENRY. Why, am I dead? do I not breathe a man?

Ah! simple men, you know not what you swear.  
Look, as I blow this feather from my face, 84

And as the air blows it to me again,

Obeying with my wind when I do blow,

And yielding to another when it blows,

Commanded always by the greater gust; 88

Such is the lightness of you common men.

But do not break your oaths; for of that sin

My mild entreaty shall not make you guilty.

Go where you will, the king shall be commanded; 92

And be you kings: command, and I'll obey.

FIRST KEEPER. We are true subjects to the king, King Edward.

KING HENRY. So would you be again to Henry,  
If he were seated as King Edward is. 96

FIRST KEEPER. We charge you, in God's name, and in the king's,

To go with us unto the officers.

KING HENRY. In God's name, lead; your king's name be obey'd:

And what God will, that let your king perform; 100

And what he will, I humbly yield unto. [Exeunt.]

SCENE II.—London. A Room in the Palace.

Enter KING EDWARD, GLOUCESTER, CLARENCE, and LADY GREY.

KING EDWARD. Brother of Gloucester, at Saint Alban's field

This lady's husband, Sir John Grey, was slain,

His lands then seiz'd on by the conqueror:

Her suit is now, to repossess those lands; 4

Which we in justice cannot well deny,

Because in quarrel of the house of York

The worthy gentleman did lose his life.

GLOUCESTER. Your highness shall do well to grant her suit; 8

It were dishonour to deny it her.

KING EDWARD. It were no less: but yet I'll make a pause.

GLOUCESTER. [Aside to CLARENCE.] Yea ; is it so ?  
I see the lady hath a thing to grant . 12  
Before the king will grant her humble suit.

CLARENCE. [Aside to GLOUCESTER.] He knows the game :  
how true he keeps the wind !

GLOUCESTER. [Aside to CLARENCE.] Silence !

KING EDWARD. Widow, we will consider of your suit,  
And come some other time to know our mind. 17

LADY GREY. Right gracious lord, I cannot brook  
delay :

May it please your highness to resolve me now,  
And what your pleasure is shall satisfy me. 20

GLOUCESTER. [Aside to CLARENCE.] Ay, widow ? then I'll  
warrant you all your lands,  
An if what pleases him shall pleasure you.

Fight closer, or, good faith, you'll catch a blow.

CLARENCE. [Aside to GLOUCESTER.] I fear her not, unless she  
chance to fall. 24

GLOUCESTER. [Aside to CLARENCE.] God forbid that ! for  
he'll take vantages.

KING EDWARD. How many children hast thou,  
widow ? tell me.

CLARENCE. [Aside to GLOUCESTER.] I think he means to beg  
a child of her.

GLOUCESTER. [Aside to CLARENCE.] Nay, whip me, then ;  
he'll rather give her two. 28

LADY GREY. Three, my most gracious lord.

GLOUCESTER. [Aside to CLARENCE.] You shall have four, if  
you'll be rul'd by him.

KING EDWARD. 'Twere pity they should lose their  
father's lands.

LADY GREY. Be pitiful, dread lord, and grant it then.

KING EDWARD. Lords, give us leave : I'll try this  
widow's wit. 33

GLOUCESTER. [Aside to CLARENCE.] Ay, good leave have  
you ; for you will have leave,  
Till youth take leave and leave you to the crutch.

[Retiring with CLARENCE.]

KING EDWARD. Now, tell me, madam, do you love  
your children ? 36

LADY GREY. Ay, full as dearly as I love myself.

KING EDWARD. And would you not do much to do  
them good ?



LADY GREY. To do them good I would sustain some harm.

KING EDWARD. Then get your husband's lands, to do them good. 40

LADY GREY. Therefore I came unto your majesty.

KING EDWARD. I'll tell you how these lands are to be got.

LADY GREY. So shall you bind me to your highness' service.

KING EDWARD. What service wilt thou do me, if I give them? 44

LADY GREY. What you command, that rests in me to do.

KING EDWARD. But you will take exceptions to my boon.

LADY GREY. No, gracious lord, except I cannot do it.

KING EDWARD. Ay, but thou canst do what I mean to ask. 48

LADY GREY. Why, then I will do what your Grace commands.

GLOUCESTER. [Aside to CLARENCE.] He plies her hard; and much rain wears the marble.

CLARENCE. [Aside to GLOUCESTER.] As red as fire! nay, then her wax must melt.

LADY GREY. Why stops my lord? shall I not hear my task? 52

KING EDWARD. An easy task: 'tis but to love a king.

LADY GREY. That's soon perform'd, because I am a subject.

KING EDWARD. Why then, thy husband's lands I freely give thee.

LADY GREY. I take my leave with many thousand thanks. 56

GLOUCESTER. [Aside to CLARENCE.] The match is made; she seals it with a curtsy.

KING EDWARD. But stay thee; 'tis the fruits of love I mean.

LADY GREY. The fruits of love I mean, my loving liege.

KING EDWARD. Ay, but, I fear me, in another sense.

What love think'st thou I sue so much to get? 61

LADY GREY. My love till death, my humble thanks, my prayers:

That love which virtue begs and virtue grants.

KING EDWARD. No, by my troth, I did not mean such love. 64

LADY GREY. Why, then you mean not as I thought you did.

KING EDWARD. But now you partly may perceive my mind.

LADY GREY. My mind will never grant what I perceive Your highness aims at, if I aim aright. 68

KING EDWARD. To tell thee plain, I aim to lie with thee.

LADY GREY. To tell you plain, I had rather lie in prison.

KING EDWARD. Why, then thou shalt not have thy husband's lands.

LADY GREY. Why, then mine honesty shall be my dower ; 72

For by that loss I will not purchase them.

KING EDWARD. Therein thou wrong'st thy children mightily.

LADY GREY. Herein your highness wrongs both them and me.

But, mighty lord, this merry inclination 76

Accords not with the sadness of my suit :

Please you dismiss me, either with 'ay' or 'no'.

KING EDWARD. Ay, if thou wilt say 'ay' to my request ;

No, if thou dost say 'no' to my demand. 80

LADY GREY. Then, no, my lord. My suit is at an end.

GLOUCESTER. [Aside to CLARENCE.] The widow likes him not, she knits her brows.

CLARENCE. [Aside to GLOUCESTER.] He is the bluntest wooer in Christendom.

KING EDWARD. [Aside.] Her looks do argue her replete with modesty ; 84

Her words do show her wit incomparable ;

All her perfections challenge sovereignty :

One way or other, she is for a king ;

And she shall be my love, or else my queen. 88

Say that King Edward take thee for his queen ?

LADY GREY. 'Tis better said than done, my gracious lord :

I am a subject fit to jest withal,

But far unfit to be a sovereign 92

KING EDWARD. Sweet widow, by my state I swear to thee

I speak no more than what my soul intends ;  
And that is, to enjoy thee for my love.

LADY GREY. And that is more than I will yield unto.  
I know I am too mean to be your queen, 97  
And yet too good to be your concubine.

KING EDWARD. You cavil, widow : I did mean, my queen.

LADY GREY. 'Twill grieve your Grace my sons should  
call you father. 100

KING EDWARD. No more than when my daughters  
call thee mother.

Thou art a widow, and thou hast some children ;  
And, by God's mother, I, being but a bachelor,  
Have other some : why, 'tis a happy thing 104  
To be the father unto many sons.

Answer no more, for thou shalt be my queen.

GLOUCESTER. [Aside to CLARENCE.] The ghostly father now  
hath done his shrift.

CLARENCE. [Aside to GLOUCESTER.] When he was made a  
shriver, 'twas for shift. 108

KING EDWARD. Brothers, you muse what chat we two  
have had.

GLOUCESTER. The widow likes it not, for she looks  
very sad.

KING EDWARD. You'd think it strange if I should  
marry her.

CLARENCE. To whom, my lord ?

KING EDWARD. Why, Clarence, to myself.

GLOUCESTER. That would be ten days' wonder at the  
least. 113

CLARENCE. That's a day longer than a wonder lasts.

GLOUCESTER. By so much is the wonder in extremes.

KING EDWARD. Well, jest on, brothers : I can tell you  
both 116

Her suit is granted for her husband's lands.

Enter a Nobleman.

NOBLEMAN. My gracious lord, Henry your foe is taken,  
And brought as prisoner to your palace gate.

KING EDWARD. See that he be convey'd unto the  
Tower : 120

And go we, brothers, to the man that took him,  
To question of his apprehension.  
Widow, go you along. Lords, use her honourably.

[Exit all but GLOUCESTER.]

GLOUCESTER. Ay, Edward will use women honourably.  
Would he were wasted, marrow, bones, and all, 125  
That from his loins no hopeful branch may spring,  
To cross me from the golden time I look for !  
And yet, between my soul's desire and me— 128  
The lustful Edward's title buried,—  
Is Clarence, Henry, and his son young Edward,  
And all the unlook'd for issue of their bodies,  
To take their rooms, ere I can place myself : 132  
A cold premeditation for my purpose !  
Why then, I do but dream on sovereignty ;  
Like one that stands upon a promontory,  
And spies a far-off shore where he would tread, 136  
Wishing his foot were equal with his eye ;  
And chides the sea that sunders him from thence,  
Saying, he'll lade it dry to have his way :  
So do I wish the crown, being so far off, 140  
And so I chide the means that keep me from it,  
And so I say I'll cut the causes off,  
Flattering me with impossibilities. 143  
My eye 's too quick, my heart o'erweens too much,  
Unless my hand and strength could equal them.  
Well, say there is no kingdom then for Richard ;  
What other pleasure can the world afford ?  
I'll make my heaven in a lady's lap, 148  
And deck my body in gay ornaments,  
And witch sweet ladies with my words and looks.  
O miserable thought ! and more unlikely  
Than to accomplish twenty golden crowns. 152  
Why, love forswore me in my mother's womb :  
And, for I should not deal in her soft laws,  
She did corrupt frail nature with some bribe,  
To shrink mine arm up like a wither'd shrub ; 156  
To make an envious mountain on my back,  
Where sits deformity to mock my body ;  
To shape my legs of an unequal size ;  
To disproportion me in every part, 160  
Like to a chaos, or an unlick'd bear-whelp  
That carries no impression like the dam.

And am I then a man to be belov'd ?  
 O monstrous fault ! to harbour such a thought. 164  
 Then, since this earth affords no joy to me  
 But to command, to check, to o'erbear such  
 As are of better person than myself,  
 I'll make my heaven to dream upon the crown ; 168  
 And, whiles I live, to account this world but hell,  
 Until my mis-shap'd trunk that bears this head  
 Be round impaled with a glorious crown.  
 And yet I know not how to get the crown, 172  
 For many lives stand between me and home :  
 And I, like one lost in a thorny wood,  
 That rents the thorns and is rent with the thorns,  
 Seeking a way and straying from the way ; 176  
 Not knowing how to find the open air,  
 But toiling desperately to find it out,  
 Torment myself to catch the English crown :  
 And from that torment I will free myself, 180  
 Or hew my way out with a bloody axe.  
 Why, I can smile, and murder while I smile,  
 And cry, ' Content,' to that which grieves my heart,  
 And wet my cheeks with artificial tears, 184  
 And frame my face to all occasions.  
 I'll drown more sailors than the mermaid shall ;  
 I'll slay more gazers than the basilisk ;  
 I'll play the orator as well as Nestor, 188  
 Deceive more slyly than Ulysses could,  
 And, like a Sinon, take another Troy.  
 I can add colours to the chameleon,  
 Change shapes with Proteus for advantages, 192  
 And set the murderous Machiavel to school.  
 Can I do this, and cannot get a crown ?  
 Tut ! were it farther off, I'll pluck it down. [Exit.

SCENE III.—France. A Room in the Palace.

Flourish. Enter LEWIS the French King, his sister LADY BONA,  
 attended : his Admiral called BOURBON ; the King takes his  
 state. Then enter QUEEN MARGARET, PRINCE EDWARD, and the  
 EARL OF OXFORD. LEWIS sits, and riseth up again.

KING LEWIS. Fair Queen of England, worthy Margaret,  
 Sit down with us : it ill befits thy state.  
 And birth, that thou shouldst stand while Lewis doth sit.

QUEEN MARGARET. No, mighty King of France : now  
Margaret

Must strike her sail, and learn a while to serve  
Where kings command. I was, I must confess,  
Great Albion's queen in former golden days ;  
But now mischance hath trod my title down, 8  
And with dishonour laid me on the ground,  
Where I must take like seat unto my fortune,  
And to my humble seat conform myself.

KING LEWIS. Why, say, fair queen, whence springs  
this deep despair ? 12

QUEEN MARGARET. From such a cause as fills mine  
eyes with tears  
And stops my tongue, while heart is drown'd in cares.

KING LEWIS. Whate'er it be, be thou still like thyself,  
And sit thee by our side. [Seats her by him.] Yield not thy neck  
To fortune's yoke, but let thy dauntless mind 17  
Still ride in triumph over all mischance.  
Be plain, Queen Margaret, and tell thy grief :  
It shall be eas'd, if France can yield relief. 20

QUEEN MARGARET. Those gracious words revive my  
drooping thoughts,  
And give my tongue-tied sorrows leave to speak.  
Now, therefore, be it known to noble Lewis,  
That Henry, sole possessor of my love, 24  
Is of a king become a banish'd man,  
And forc'd to live in Scotland a forlorn ;  
While proud ambitious Edward Duke of York  
Usurps the regal title and the seat 28  
Of England's true-anointed lawful king.  
This is the cause that I, poor Margaret,  
With this my son, Prince Edward, Henry's heir,  
Am come to crave thy just and lawful aid ; 32  
And if thou fail us, all our hope is done.  
Scotland hath will to help, but cannot help ;  
Our people and our peers are both misled,  
Our treasure seiz'd, our soldiers put to flight, 36  
And, as thou seest, ourselves in heavy plight.

KING LEWIS. Renowned queen, with patience calm  
the storm,  
While we bethink a means to break it off.

QUEEN MARGARET. The more we stay, the stronger  
grows our foe. 40

KING LEWIS. The more I stay, the more I'll succour thee.

QUEEN MARGARET. O ! but impatience waiteth on true SORROW :

And see where comes the breeder of my sorrow.

*Enter WARWICK, attended.*

KING LEWIS. What's he approacheth boldly to our presence ? 44

QUEEN MARGARET. Our Earl of Warwick, Edward's greatest friend.

KING LEWIS. Welcome, brave Warwick ! What brings thee to France ?

*[Descending from his state. QUEEN MARGARET rises.*

QUEEN MARGARET. Ay, now begins a second storm to rise ;

For this is he that moves both wind and tide. 48

WARWICK. From worthy Edward, King of Albion,  
My lord and sovereign, and thy vowed friend,  
I come, in kindness and unfeigned love,  
First, to do greetings to thy royal person ; 52  
And then to crave a league of amity ;

And lastly to confirm that amity  
With nuptial knot, if thou vouchsafe to grant  
That virtuous Lady Bona, thy fair sister, 56  
To England's king in lawful marriage.

QUEEN MARGARET. If that go forward, Henry's hope is done.

WARWICK. *[To BONA.]* And, gracious madam, in our king's behalf,

I am commanded, with your leave and favour, 60  
Humbly to kiss your hand, and with my tongue  
To tell the passion of my sovereign's heart ;  
Where fame, late entering at his heedful ears,  
Hath plac'd thy beauty's image and thy virtue. 64

QUEEN MARGARET. King Lewis and Lady Bona, hear me speak,

Before you answer Warwick. His demand  
Springs not from Edward's well-meant honest love,  
But from deceit bred by necessity ; 68  
For how can tyrants safely govern home,  
Unless abroad they purchase great alliance ?  
To prove him tyrant this reason may suffice,

That Henry liveth still ; but were he dead,  
Yet here Prince Edward stands, King Henry's son.  
Look, therefore, Lewis, that by this league and marriage  
Thou draw not on thy danger and dishonour ;  
For though usurpers sway the rule awhile, 76  
Yet heavens are just, and time suppresseth wrongs.

WARWICK. Injurious Margaret !

PRINCE. And why not queen ?

WARWICK. Because thy father Henry did usurp,  
And thou' no more are prince than she is queen. 80

OXFORD. Then Warwick disannuls great John of Gaunt,  
Which did subdue the greatest part of Spain ;  
And, after John of Gaunt, Henry the Fourth,  
Whose wisdom was a mirror to the wisest ; 84  
And, after that wise prince, Henry the Fifth,  
Who by his prowess conquered all France :  
From these our Henry lineally descends.

WARWICK. Oxford, how haps it, in this smooth dis-  
course, 88

You told not how Henry the Sixth hath lost  
All that which Henry the Fifth had gotten ?  
Methinks these peers of France should smile at that.  
But for the rest, you tell a pedigree 92  
Of threescore and two years ; a silly time  
To make prescription for a kingdom's worth.

OXFORD. Why, Warwick, canst thou speak against  
thy liege,  
Whom thou obeyedst thirty and six years, 96  
And not bewray thy treason with a blush ?

WARWICK. Can Oxford, that did ever fence the right,  
Now buckler falsehood with a pedigree ?  
For shame ! leave Henry, and call Edward king. 100

OXFORD. Call him my king, by whose injurious doom  
My elder brother, the Lord Aubrey Vere,  
Was done to death ? and more than so, my father,  
Even in the downfall of his mellow'd years, 104  
When nature brought him to the door of death ?  
No, Warwick, no ; while life upholds this arm,  
This arm upholds the house of Lancaster.

WARWICK. And I the house of York. 108

KING LEWIS. Queen Margaret, Prince Edward, and  
Oxford, •  
Vouchsafe at our request to stand aside,



While I use further conference with Warwick.

[They stand aloof.

QUEEN MARGARET. Heaven grant that Warwick's words bewitch him not ! 112

KING LEWIS. Now, Warwick, tell me, even upon thy conscience,

Is Edward your true king ? for I were loath  
To link with him that were not lawful chosen.

WARWICK. Thereon I pawn my credit and mine honour. 116

KING LEWIS. But is he gracious in the people's eye ?

WARWICK. The more that Henry was unfortunate.

KING LEWIS. Then further, all dissembling set aside,  
Tell me for truth the measure of his love 120  
Unto our sister Bona.

WARWICK. Such it seems  
As may beseem a monarch like himself.  
Myself have often hear him say and swear  
That this his love was an eternal plant, 124  
Whereof the root was fix'd in virtue's ground,  
The leaves and fruit maintain'd with beauty's sun,  
Exempt from envy, but not from disdain,  
Unless the Lady Bona quit his pain. 128

KING LEWIS. Now, sister, let us hear your firm resolve.

BONA. Your grant, or your denial, shall be mine :  
[To WARWICK.] Yet I confess that often ere this day,  
When I have heard your king's desert recounted, 132  
Mine ear hath tempted judgment to desire.

KING LEWIS. Then, Warwick, thus : our sister shall  
be Edward's ;  
And now forthwith shall articles be drawn  
Touching the jointure that your king must make, 136  
Which with her dowry shall be counterpois'd.  
Draw near, Queen Margaret, and be a witness  
That Bona shall be wife to the English king.

PRINCE. To Edward, but not to the English king.

QUEEN MARGARET. Deceitful Warwick ! it was thy device 141

By this alliance to make void my suit :  
Before thy coming Lewis was Henry's friend.

KING LEWIS. And still is friend to him and Margaret :  
But if your title to the crown be weak, 145

As may appear by Edward's good success,  
 Then 'tis but reason that I be releas'd  
 From giving aid which late I promised. 148  
 Yet shall you have all kindness at my hand  
 That your estate requires and mine can yield.

WARWICK. Henry now lives in Scotland at his ease,  
 Where having nothing, nothing can he lose. 152  
 And as for you yourself, our quondam queen,  
 You have a father able to maintain you,  
 And better 'twere you troubled him than France.

QUEEN MARGARET. Peace! impudent and shameless

Warwick, peace; 156  
 Proud setter up and puller down of kings;  
 I will not hence, till, with my talk and tears,  
 Both full of truth, I make King Lewis behold  
 Thy sly conveyance and thy lord's false love; 160  
 For both of you are birds of selfsame feather.

[A horn windeth within.

KING LEWIS. Warwick, this is some post to us or  
 thee.

Enter a Post.

MESSENGER. My lord ambassador, these letters are  
 for you,  
 Sent from your brother, Marquess Montague: 164  
 These from our king unto your majesty;

[To MARGARET.] And, madam, these for you; from whom  
 I know not. [They all read their letters.

OXFORD. I like it well that our fair queen and mistress  
 Smiles at her news, while Warwick frowns at his. 168

PRINCE. Nay, mark how Lewis stamps as he were  
 nettled:

I hope all's for the best.

KING LEWIS. Warwick, what are thy news? and  
 yours, fair queen?

QUEEN MARGARET. Mine, such as fill my heart with  
 unhop'd joys. 172

WARWICK. Mine, full of sorrow and heart's dis-  
 content.

KING LEWIS. What! has your king married the Lady  
 Grey?

And now, to soothe your forgery and his,  
 Sends me a paper to persuade me patience? 176  
 Is this the alliance that he seeks with France?

Dare he presume to scorn us in this manner ?

QUEEN MARGARET. I told your majesty as much before :

This proveth Edward's love and Warwick's honesty.

WARWICK. King Lewis, I here protest, in sight of heaven, 181

And by the hope I have of heavenly bliss,

That I am clear from this misdeed of Edward's ;

No more my king, for he dishonours me ; 184

But most himself, if he could see his shame.

Did I forget that by the house of York

My father came untimely to his death ?

Did I let pass the abuse done to my niece ? 188

Did I impale him with the regal crown ?

Did I put Henry from his native right ?

And am I guerdon'd at the last with shame ?

Shame on himself ! for my desert is honour : 192

And, to repair my honour, lost for him,

I here renounce him and return to Henry.

My noble queen, let former grudges pass,

And henceforth I am thy true servitor. 196

I will revenge his wrong to Lady Bona,

And replant Henry in his former state.

QUEEN MARGARET. Warwick, these words have turn'd my hate to love ;

And I forgive and quite forget old faults, 200

And joy that thou becomest King Henry's friend.

WARWICK. So much his friend, ay, his unfeigned friend,

That, if King Lewis vouchsafe to furnish us

With some few bands of chosen soldiers, 204

I'll undertake to land them on our coast,

And force the tyrant from his seat by war.

'Tis not his new-made bride shall succour him :

And as for Clarence, as my letters tell me, 208

He's very likely now to fall from him,

For matching more for wanton lust than honour,

Or than for strength and safety of our country.

BONA. Dear brother, how shall Bona be reveng'd,

But by thy help to this distressed queen ? 213

QUEEN MARGARET. Renowned prince, how shall poor Henry live,

Unless thou rescue him from foul despair ?

BONA. My quarrel and this English queen's are one.

WARWICK. And mine, fair Lady Bona, joins with yours. 217

KING LEWIS. And mine with hers, and thine and Margaret's.

Therefore, at last, I firmly am resolv'd

You shall have aid. 220

QUEEN MARGARET. Let me give humble thanks for all at once.

KING LEWIS. Then, England's messenger, return in post, And tell false Edward, thy supposed king,

That Lewis of France is sending over masquers. 224

To revel it with him and his new bride.

Thou seest what 's past ; go fear thy king withal.

BONA. Tell him, in hope he'll prove a widower shortly, I'll wear the willow garland for his sake. 228

QUEEN MARGARET. Tell him, my mourning weeds are laid aside,

And I am ready to put armour on.

WARWICK. Tell him from me that he hath done me wrong,

And therefore I'll uncrown him ere 't be long. 232

There 's thy reward : be gone. [Exit Messenger.

KING LEWIS. But, Warwick,

Thou and Oxford, with five thousand men,

Shall cross the seas, and bid false Edward battle ;

And, as occasion serves, this noble queen 236

And prince shall follow with a fresh supply.

Yet ere thou go, but answer me one doubt :

What pledge have we of thy firm loyalty ?

WARWICK. This shall assure my constant loyalty :

That if our queen and this young prince agree, 241

I'll join mine eldest daughter and my joy

To him forthwith in holy wedlock bands.

QUEEN MARGARET. Yes, I agree, and thank you for your motion. 244

Son Edward, she is fair and virtuous,

Therefore delay not, give thy hand to Warwick ;

And, with thy hand, thy faith irrevocable,

That only Warwick's daughter shall be thine. 248

PRINCE. Yes, I accept her, for she well deserves it ;

And here, to pledge my vow, I give my hand.

[He gives his hand to WARWICK.]

**KING LEWIS.** Why stay we now ? These soldiers shall  
 be levied,  
 And thou, Lord Bourbon, our high admiral, 252  
 Shall waft them over with our royal fleet.  
 I long till Edward fall by war's mischance,  
 For mocking marriage with a dame of France.

[Exeunt all except WARWICK.]

**WARWICK.** I came from Edward as ambassador,  
 But I return his sworn and mortal foe : 257  
 Matter of marriage was the charge he gave me,  
 But dreadful war shall answer his demand.  
 Had he none else to make a stale but me ? 260  
 Then none but I shall turn his jest to sorrow.  
 I was the chief that rais'd him to the crown,  
 And I'll be chief to bring him down again :  
 Not that I pity Henry's misery, 264  
 But seek revenge on Edward's mockery. [Exit.]

## ACT IV.

SCENE I.—London. A Room in the Palace.

Enter GLOUCESTER, CLARENCE, SOMERSET, MONTAGUE, and Others.

**GLOUCESTER.** Now tell me, brother Clarence, what  
 think you  
 Of this new marriage with the Lady Grey?  
 Hath not our brother made a worthy choice?

**CLARENCE.** Alas ! you know, 'tis far from hence to  
 France ; 4

How could he stay till Warwick made return ?

**SOMERSET.** My lords, forbear this talk ; here comes  
 the king.

**GLOUCESTER.** And his well-chosen bride. 7

**CLARENCE.** I mind to tell him plainly what I think.

Flourish. Enter **KING EDWARD**, attended ; **LADY GREY**, as Queen ;  
**PEMBROKE**, **STAFFORD**, **HASTINGS**, and Others.

**KING EDWARD.** Now, brother Clarence, how like you  
 our choice,  
 That you stand pensive, as half malcontent ?

**CLARENCE.** As well as Lewis of France, or the Earl of  
 Warwick ;

Which are so weak of courage and in judgment 17  
That they'll take no offence at our abuse.

KING EDWARD. Suppose they take offence without  
a cause,

They are but Lewis and Warwick : I am Edward,  
Your king and Warwick's, and must have my will. 16

GLOUCESTER. And you shall have your will, because  
our king :

Yet hasty marriage seldom proveth well.

KING EDWARD. Yea, brother Richard, are you offended  
too ?

GLOUCESTER. Not I : 20

No, God forbid, that I should wish them sever'd  
Whom God hath join'd together ; ay, and 'twere pity  
To sunder them that yoke so well together.

KING EDWARD. Setting your scorns and your mislike  
aside, 24

Tell me some reason why the Lady Grey  
Should not become my wife and England's queen :  
And you too, Somerset and Montague,  
Speak freely what you think. 28

CLARENCE. Then this is mine opinion : that King Lewis  
Becomes your enemy for mocking him  
About the marriage of the Lady Bona.

GLOUCESTER. And Warwick, doing what you gave in  
charge, 32

Is now dishonoured by this new marriage.

KING EDWARD. What if both Lewis and Warwick be  
appeas'd

By such invention as I can devise ?

MONTAGUE. Yet to have join'd with France in such  
alliance 36

Would more have strengthen'd this our commonwealth  
'Gainst foreign storms, than any home-bred marriage.

HASTINGS. Why, knows not Montague, that of itself  
England is safe, if true within itself ? 40

MONTAGUE. Yes ; but the safer when 'tis back'd with  
France.

HASTINGS. 'Tis better using France than trusting  
France :

Let us be back'd with God and with the seas  
Which he hath given for fence impregnable, 44  
And with their helps only defend ourselves :

In them and in ourselves, our safety lies.

CLARENCE. For this one speech Lord Hastings well  
deserves

To have the heir of the Lord Hungerford. 48

KING EDWARD. Ay, what of that ? it was my will and  
grant ;

And for this once my will shall stand for law.

GLOUCESTER. And yet methinks your Grace hath not  
done well,

To give the heir and daughter of Lord Scales , 52

Unto the brother of your loving bride :

She better would have fitted me or Clarence :

But in your bride you bury brotherhood.

CLARENCE. Or else you would not have bestow'd the  
heir 56

Of the Lord Bonville on your new wife's son,

And leave your brothers to go speed elsewhere.

KING EDWARD. Alas, poor Clarence, is it for a wife  
That thou art malcontent ? I will provide thee. 60

CLARENCE. In choosing for yourself you show'd your  
judgment,

Which being shallow, you shall give me leave

To play the broker on mine own behalf ;

And to that end I shortly mind to leave you. 64

KING EDWARD. Leave me, or tarry, Edward will be king,  
And not be tied unto his brother's will.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. My lords, before it pleas'd his  
majesty

To raise my state to title of a queen, 68

Do me but right, and you must all confess

That I was not ignoble of descent ;

And meaner than myself have had like fortune.

But as this title honours me and mine, 72

So your dislikes, to whom I would be pleasing,

Do cloud my joys with danger and with sorrow.

KING EDWARD. My love, forbear to fawn upon their  
frowns :

What danger or what sorrow can befall thee, 76

So long as Edward is thy constant friend,

And their true sovereign, whom they must obey ?

Nay, whom they shall obey, and love thee too,

Unless they seek for hatred at my hands ; 80

Which if they do, yet will I keep thee safe,

And they shall feel the vengeance of my wrath.

GLoucester. [Aside.] I hear, yet say not much, but think the more.

Enter a Messenger.

KING EDWARD. Now, messenger, what letters or what news  
From France ? 84

MEsSENGER. My sovereign liege, no letters ; and few words ;  
But such as I, without your special pardon,  
Dare not relate. 88

KING EDWARD. Go to, we pardon thee : therefore, in brief,  
Tell me their words as near as thou canst guess them.  
What answer makes King Lewis unto our letters ?

MEsSENGER. At my depart these were his very words :  
'Go tell false Edward, thy supposed king, 93  
That Lewis of France is sending over masquers,  
To revel it with him and his new bride.'

KING EDWARD. Is Lewis so brave ? belike he thinks me Henry. 96  
But what said Lady Bona to my marriage ?

MEsSENGER. These were her words, utter'd with mild disdain :  
'Tell him, in hope he'll prove a widower shortly,  
I'll wear the willow garland for his sake.' 100

KING EDWARD. I blame not her, she could say little less ;  
She had the wrong. But what said Henry's queen ?  
For I have heard that she was there in place.

MEsSENGER. 'Tell him,' quoth she, 'my mourning weeds are done, 104  
And I am ready to put armour on.'

KING EDWARD. Belike she minds to play the Amazon.  
But what said Warwick to these injuries ? 107

MEsSENGER. He, more incens'd against your majesty  
Than all the rest, discharg'd me with these words :  
'Tell him from me that he hath done me wrong,  
And therefore I'll uncrown him ere 't be long.'

KING EDWARD. Ha ! durst the traitor breathe out so proud words ? 112  
Well, I will arm, me, being thus forewarn'd :  
They shall have wars, and pay for their presumption.



But say, is Warwick friends with Margaret ?

MESSENGER. Ay, gracious sovereign ; they are so  
link'd in friendship, 116

That young Prince Edward marries Warwick's daughter.

CLARENCE. Belike the elder ; Clarence will have the  
younger.

Now, brother king, farewell, and sit you fast,  
For I will hence to Warwick's other daughter ; 120

That, though I want a kingdom, yet in marriage  
I may not prove inferior to yourself.

You that love me and Warwick, follow me.

[Exit CLARENCE, and SOMERSET follows.

GLOUCESTER. [Aside.] Not I. 124

My thoughts aim at a further matter ; I

Stay not for love of Edward, but the crown.

KING EDWARD. Clarence and Somerset both gone to  
Warwick !

Yet am I arm'd against the worst can happen, 128

And haste is needful in this desperate case.

Pembroke and Stafford, you in our behalf

Go levy men, and make prepare for war :

They are already, or quickly will be landed : 132

Myself in person will straight follow you,

[Exeunt PEMBROKE and STAFFORD.

But ere I go, Hastings and Montague,

Resolve my doubt. You twain, of all the rest,

Are near to Warwick by blood, and by alliance : 136

Tell me if you love Warwick more than me ?

If it be so, then both depart to him ;

I rather wish you foes than hollow friends :

But if you mind to hold your true obedience, 140

Give me assurance with some friendly vow

That I may never have you in suspect.

MONTAGUE. So God help Montague as he proves true !

HASTINGS. And Hastings as he favours Edward's  
cause ! 144

KING EDWARD. Now, brother Richard, will you stand  
by us ?

GLOUCESTER. Ay, in despite of all that shall with-  
stand you.

KING EDWARD. Why, so ! then am I sure of victory.  
Now therefore let us hence ; and lose no hour 148

Till we meet Warwick with his foreign power. [Exeunt.

## SCENE II.—A Plain in Warwickshire.

Enter WARWICK and OXFORD, with French and other Forces.

WARWICK. Trust me, my lord, all hitherto goes well ;  
The common people by numbers swarm to us.

Enter CLARENCE and SOMERSET.

But see where Somerset and Clarence come !  
Speak suddenly, my lords, are we all friends ? 4

CLARENCE. Fear not that, my lord.

WARWICK. Then, gentle Clarence, welcome unto Warwick ;

And welcome, Somerset ; I hold it cowardice,  
To rest mistrustful where a noble heart 8  
Hath pawn'd an open hand in sign of love ;  
Else might I think that Clarence, Edward's brother.  
Were but a feigned friend to our proceedings :  
But welcome, sweet Clarence ; my daughter shall be  
thine. 12

And now what rests but, in night's coverture,  
Thy brother being carelessly encamp'd,  
His soldiers lurking in the towns about,  
And but attended by a simple guard, 16  
We may surprise and take him at our pleasure ?  
Our scouts have found the adventure very easy :  
That as Ulysses, and stout Diomedes, 19  
With sleight and manhood stole to Rhesus' tents,  
And brought from thence the Thracian fatal steeds ;  
So we, well cover'd with the night's black mantle,  
At unawares may beat down Edward's guard,  
And seize himself ; I say not, slaughter him, 24  
For I intend but only to surprise him.  
You, that will follow me to this attempt,  
Applaud the name of Henry with your leader.

[They all cry ' Henry ! ']

Why, then, let 's on our way in silent sort. 28  
For Warwick and his friends, God and Saint George !

[Exeunt.]

## SCENE III.—EDWARD'S Camp near Warwick.

Enter certain Watchmen to guard the KING's tent.

FIRST WATCHMAN. Come on, my masters, each man  
take his stand ;  
The king, by this, is set him down to sleep.

SECOND WATCHMAN. What, will he not to bed ?

FIRST WATCHMAN. Why, no : for he hath made a solemn vow

4

Never to lie and take his natural rest  
Till Warwick or himself be quite suppress'd.

SECOND WATCHMAN. To-morrow then belike shall be the day,

If Warwick be so near as men report.

8

THIRD WATCHMAN. But say, I pray, what nobleman is that

That with the king here resteth in his tent ?

FIRST WATCHMAN. 'Tis the Lord Hastings, the king's chiefest friend.

THIRD WATCHMAN. O ! is it so ? But why commands the king

12

That his chief followers lodge in towns about him,  
While he himself keeps in the cold field ?

SECOND WATCHMAN. 'Tis the more honour, because the more dangerous.

THIRD WATCHMAN. Ay, but give me worship and quietness ;

16

I like it better than a dangerous honour.

If Warwick knew in what estate he stands,

'Tis to be doubted he would waken him.

FIRST WATCHMAN. Unless our halberds did shut up his passage.

20

SECOND WATCHMAN. Ay ; wherefore else guard we his royal tent,

But to defend his person from night-foes ?

Enter WARWICK, CLARENCE, OXFORD, SOMERSET. and Forces.

WARWICK. This is his tent ; and see where stand his guard.

Courage, my masters ! honour now or never !

24

But follow me, and Edward shall be ours.

FIRST WATCHMAN. Who goes there ?

SECOND WATCHMAN. Stay, or thou diest.

[WARWICK and the rest cry all, 'Warwick ! Warwick !'  
and set upon the Guard ; who fly, crying 'Arm ! Arm !'  
WARWICK and the rest following them.]

Drums beating, and Trumpets sounding, re-enter WARWICK and the rest, bringing the KING out in his gown, sitting in a chair. GLOUCESTER and HASTINGS fly over the stage.

SOMERSET. What are they that fly there ?

WARWICK. Richard and Hastings : let them go ;  
here 's the duke. 28

KING EDWARD. The duke ! Why, Warwick, when we parted last,  
Thou call'dst me king !

WARWICK. Ay, but the case is alter'd :  
When you disgrac'd me in my embassy,  
Then I degraded you from being king, 32  
And come now to create you Duke of York.  
Alas ! how should you govern any kingdom,  
That know not how to use ambassadors,  
Nor how to be contented with one wife, 36  
Nor how to use your brothers brotherly,  
Nor how to study for the people's welfare,  
Nor how to shroud yourself from enemies ?

KING EDWARD. Yea, brother of Clarence, art thou here too ? 40

Nay, then, I see that Edward needs must down.  
Yet, Warwick, in despite of all mischance,  
Of thee thyself, and all thy complices,  
Edward will always bear himself as king : 44  
Though Fortune's malice overthrow my state,  
My mind exceeds the compass of her wheel.

WARWICK. Then, for his mind, be Edward England's king : 48

But Henry now shall wear the English crown,  
And be true king indeed, thou but the shadow. 48

My Lord of Somerset, at my request,  
See that forthwith Duke Edward be convey'd  
Unto my brother, Archbishop of York. 52

When I have fought with Pembroke and his fellows,  
I'll follow you, and tell what answer  
Lewis and the Lady Bona send to him :

Now, for a while farewell, good Duke of York. 56

KING EDWARD. What fates impose, that men must  
needs abide ;

It boots not to resist both wind and tide.

[Exit, led out ; SOMERSET with him.]

OXFORD. What now remains, my lords, for us to do,  
But march to London with our soldiers? 60

WARWICK. Ay, that's the first thing that we have to  
do;

To free King Henry from imprisonment,  
And see him seated in the regal throne.

[Exeunt.

SCENE IV.—London. A Room in the Palace.

Enter QUEEN ELIZABETH and RIVERS.

RIVERS. Madam, what makes you in this sudden  
change?

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Why, brother Rivers, are you yet  
to learn

What late misfortune is befall'n King Edward?

RIVERS. What! loss of some pitch'd battle against  
Warwick? 4

QUEEN ELIZABETH. No, but the loss of his own royal  
person.

RIVERS. Then is my sovereign slain?

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Ay, almost slain, for he is taken  
prisoner;

Either betray'd by falsehood of his guard 8

Or by his foe surpris'd at unawares:

And, as I further have to understand,

Is new committed to the Bishop of York,

Fell Warwick's brother, and by that our foe. 12

RIVERS. These news, I must confess, are full of grief;

Yet, gracious madam, bear it as you may:

Warwick may lose, that now hath won the day.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Till then fair hope must hinder  
life's decay. 16

And I the rather wean me from despair

For love of Edward's offspring in my womb:

This is it that makes me bridle passion,

And bear with mildness my misfortune's cross; 20

Ay, ay, for this I draw in many a tear,

And stop the rising of blood-sucking sighs,

Lest with my sighs or tears I blast or drown 23

King Edward's fruit, true heir to the English crown.

RIVERS. But, madam, where is Warwick then become?

QUEEN ELIZABETH. I am inform'd that he comes  
towards London,

To set the crown once more on Henry's head :  
Guess thou the rest ; King Edward's friends must down.  
But, to prevent the tyrant's violence,— 29  
For trust not him that hath once broken faith,—  
I'll hence forthwith unto the sanctuary,  
To save at least the heir of Edward's right : 32  
There shall I rest secure from force and fraud.  
Come, therefore ; let us fly while we may fly :  
If Warwick take us we are sure to die. [Exit.]

SCENE V.—A Park near Middleham Castle in Yorkshire.

Enter GLOUCESTER, HASTINGS, SIR WILLIAM STANLEY, and Others.

GLOUCESTER. Now, my Lord Hastings and Sir William Stanley,

Leave off to wonder why I drew you hither,  
Into this chiefest thicket of the park.  
Thus stands the case. You know, our king, my brother,  
Is prisoner to the bishop here, at whose hands 5  
He hath good usage and great liberty,  
And often but attended with weak guard,  
Comes hunting this way to disport himself. 8  
I have advertis'd him by secret means,  
That if about this hour he make this way,  
Under the colour of his usual game,  
He shall here find his friends, with horse and men 12  
To set him free from his captivity.

Enter KING EDWARD and a Huntsman.

HUNTSMAN. This way, my lord, for this way lies the game.

KING EDWARD. Nay, this way, man : see where the huntsmen stand.

Now, brother of Gloucester, Lord Hastings, and the rest,  
Stand you thus close, to steal the bishop's deer ? 17

GLOUCESTER. Brother, the time and case requireth haste.

Your horse stands ready at the park-corner.

KING EDWARD. But whither shall we then ? 20

HASTINGS. To Lynn, my lord ; and ship from thence to Flanders.

GLOUCESTER. Well guess'd, believe me ; for that was my meaning.

KING EDWARD. Stanley, I will requite thy forwardness.

GLOUCESTER. But wherefore stay we ? 'tis no time to talk. 24

KING EDWARD. Huntsman, what sayst thou ? wilt thou go along ?

HUNTSMAN. Better do so than tarry and be hang'd.

GLOUCESTER. Come then, away ; let's ha' no more ado.

KING EDWARD. Bishop, farewell : shield thee from Warwick's frown, 28

And pray that I may repossess the crown. [Exeunt.

SCENE VI.—A Room in the Tower.

Enter KING HENRY, CLARENCE, WARWICK, SOMERSET, young RICHMOND, OXFORD, MONTAGUE, Lieutenant of the Tower, and Attendants.

KING HENRY. Master lieutenant, now that God and friends

Have shaken Edward from the regal seat,  
And turn'd my captive state to liberty,  
My fear to hope, my sorrows unto joys, 4  
At our enlargement what are thy due fees ?

LIEUTENANT. Subjects may challenge nothing of their sovereigns ;

But if a humble prayer may prevail,  
I then crave pardon of your majesty. 8

KING HENRY. For what, lieutenant ? for well using me ?

Nay, be thou sure, I'll well requite thy kindness,  
For that it made my imprisonment a pleasure ;  
Ay, such a pleasure as encaged birds 12

Conceive, when, after many moody thoughts  
At last by notes of household harmony  
They quite forget their loss of liberty.

But, Warwick, after God, thou set'st me free, 16  
And chiefly therefore I thank God and thee ;  
He was the author, thou the instrument.

Therefore, that I may conquer Fortune's spite  
By living low, where Fortune cannot hurt me, 20  
And that the people of this blessed land  
May not be punish'd with my thwarting stars,

Warwick, although my head still wear the crown,  
I here resign my government to thee,  
For thou art fortunate in all thy deeds.

WARWICK. Your Grace hath still been fam'd for  
virtuous ;

And now may seem as wise as virtuous,  
By spying and avoiding Fortune's malice ; 28  
For few men rightly temper with the stars :  
Yet in this one thing let me blame your Grace,  
For choosing me when Clarence is in place.

CLARENCE. No, Warwick, thou art worthy of the  
sway, 32

To whom the heavens, in thy nativity  
Adjudg'd an olive branch and laurel crown,  
As likely to be blest in peace, and war ;  
And therefore I yield thee my free consent. 36

WARWICK. And I choose Clarence only for protector.

KING HENRY. Warwick and Clarence, give me both  
your hands :

Now join your hands, and with your hands your hearts,  
That no dissension hinder government : 40  
I make you both protectors of this land,  
While I myself will lead a private life,  
And in devotion spend my latter days,  
To sin's rebuke and my Creator's praise. 44

WARWICK. What answers Clarence to his sovereign's  
will ?

CLARENCE. That he consents, if Warwick yield con-  
sent ;

For on thy fortune I repose myself.

WARWICK. Why then, though loath, yet must I be  
content : 48

We'll yoke together, like a double shadow  
To Henry's body, and supply his place ;  
I mean, in bearing weight of government,  
While he enjoys the honour and his ease. 52  
And, Clarence, now then it is more than needful  
Forthwith that Edward be pronounc'd a traitor,  
And all his lands and goods be confiscate.

CLARENCE. What else ? and that succession be  
determin'd. 56

WARWICK. Ay, therein Clarence shall not want his  
part.



**KING HENRY.** But, with the first of all your chief affairs,

Let me entreat, for I command no more,  
That Margaret your queen, and my son Edward, 60  
Be sent for, to return from France with speed;  
For, till I see them here, by doubtful fear  
My joy of liberty is half eclips'd.

**CLARENCE.** It shall be done, my sovereign, with all speed. 64

**KING HENRY.** My Lord of Somerset, what youth is that

Of whom you seem to have so tender care?

**SOMERSET.** My liege, it is young Henry, Earl of Richmond.

**KING HENRY.** Come hither, England's hope : [Lays his hand on his head.] If secret powers 68

Suggest but truth to my divining thoughts,  
This pretty lad will prove our country's bliss.

His looks are full of peaceful majesty,  
His head by nature fram'd to wear a crown, 72

His hand to wield a sceptre, and himself  
Likely in time to bless a regal throne.

Make much of him, my lords ; for this is he  
Must help you more than you are hurt by me. 76

Enter a Post.

**WARWICK.** What news, my friend?

**MESSENGER.** That Edward is escaped from your brother,

And fled, as he hears since, to Burgundy.

**WARWICK.** Unsavoury news ! but how made he escape ? 80

**MESSENGER.** He was convey'd by Richard Duke of Gloucester,

And the Lord Hastings, who attended him

In secret ambush on the forest side,  
And from the bishop's huntsmen rescu'd him : 84

For hunting was his daily exercise.

**WARWICK.** My brother was too careless of his charge.

But let us hence, my sovereign, to provide  
A salve for any sore that may betide. 88

[Exit KING HENRY, WARWICK, CLARENCE,  
Lieutenant, and Attendant.]

SOMERSET. My lord, I like not of this flight of Edward's ;

For doubtless Burgundy will yield him help,  
And we shall have more wars before 't be long.  
As Henry's late presaging prophecy 92  
Did glad my heart with hope of this young Richmond,  
So doth my heart misgive me, in these conflicts  
What may befall him to his harm and ours :  
Therefore, Lord Oxford, to prevent the worst, 96  
Forthwith we'll send him hence to Brittany,  
Till storms be past of civil enmity.

OXFORD. Ay, for if Edward repossess the crown,  
'Tis like that Richmond with the rest shall down. 100

SOMERSET. It shall be so ; he shall to Brittany.  
Come, therefore, let 's about it speedily. [Exeunt.

## SCENE VII.—Before York.

Enter KING EDWARD, GLOUCESTER, HASTINGS, and Forces.

KING EDWARD. Now, brother Richard, Lord Hastings,  
and the rest,

Yet thus far Fortune maketh us amends,  
And says, that once more I shall interchange  
My waned state for Henry's regal crown. 4  
Well have we pass'd, and now repass'd the seas,  
And brought desired help from Burgundy :  
What then remains, we being thus arriv'd  
From Ravenspurgh haven before the gates of York,  
But that we enter, as into our dukedom ? 9

GLOUCESTER. The gates made fast ! Brother, I like  
not this ;  
For many men that stumble at the threshold  
Are well foretold that danger lurks within. 12

KING EDWARD. Tush, man ! abodements must not  
now affright us.  
By fair or foul means we must enter in,  
For hither will our friends repair to us.

HASTINGS. My liege, I'll knock once more to summon  
them. 16

Enter, on the Walls, the Mayor of York and his Brethren.

MAYOR. My lords, we were forewarned of your coming,  
And shut the gates for safety of ourselves ;

For now we owe allegiance unto Henry.

KING EDWARD. But, Master Mayor, if Henry be your king, 20

Yet Edward, at the least, is Duke of York.

MAYOR. True, my good lord, I know you for no less.

KING EDWARD. Why, and I challenge nothing but my dukedom,

As being well content with that alone. 24

GLOUCESTER. [Aside.] But when the fox hath once got in his nose,

He'll soon find means to make the body follow.

HASTINGS. Why, Master Mayor, why stand you in a doubt?

Open the gates; we are King Henry's friends. 28

MAYOR. Ay, say you so? the gates shall then be open'd. [Exit, with Aldermen, above.]

GLOUCESTER. A wise stout captain, and soon persuaded.

HASTINGS. The good old man would fain that all were well,

So 'twere not 'long of him; but being enter'd, 32

I doubt not, I, but we shall soon persuade Both him and all his brothers unto reason.

Re-enter the Mayor and two Aldermen.

KING EDWARD. So, Master Mayor: these gates must not be shut

But in the night, or in the time of war. 36

What! fear not, man, but yield me up the keys;

[Takes his keys.]

For Edward will defend the town and thee,  
And all those friends that deign to follow me.

Enter MONTGOMERY and Forces.

GLOUCESTER. Brother, this is Sir John Montgomery,  
Our trusty friend, unless I be deceiv'd. 41

KING EDWARD. Welcome, Sir John! but why come you in arms?

MONTGOMERY. To help King Edward in his time of storm,

As every loyal subject ought to do. 44

KING EDWARD. Thanks, good Montgomery; but we now forget

Our title to the crown, and only claim  
Our dukedom till God please to send the rest.

MONTGOMERY. Then fare you well. for I will hence  
again: 48

I came to serve a king and not a duke.  
Drummer, strike up, and let us march away.

[A march begun.

KING EDWARD. Nay, stay, Sir John, awhile; and  
we'll debate

By what safe means the crown may be recover'd. 52

MONTGOMERY. What talk you of debating? in few  
words,

If you'll not here proclaim yourself our king,  
I'll leave you to your fortune, and be gone  
To keep them back that come to succour you. 56  
Why shall we fight, if you pretend no title?

GLOUCESTER. Why, brother, wherefore stand you on  
nice points?

KING EDWARD. When we grow stronger then we'll  
make our claim;

Till then, 'tis wisdom to conceal our meaning. 60

HASTINGS Away with scrupulous wit! now arms  
must rule.

GLOUCESTER. And fearless minds climb soonest unto  
crowns.

Brother, we will proclaim you out of hand;  
The bruit thereof will bring you many friends. 64

KING EDWARD. Then be it as you will; for 'tis my  
right,

And Henry but usurps the diadem.

MONTGOMERY. Ay, now my sovereign speaketh like  
himself;

And now will I be Edward's champion. 68

HASTINGS. Sound, trumpet! Edward shall be here  
proclaim'd;

Come, fellow soldier, make thou proclamation.

[Gives him a paper. Flourish.

SOLDIER. 'Edward the Fourth, by the grace of God,  
King of England and France, and Lord of Ireland, &c.'

MONTGOMERY. And whosoe'er gainsays King Ed-  
ward's right, 73

By this I challenge him to single fight.

[Throws down his gauntlet.

ALL. Long live Edward the Fourth !

KING EDWARD. Thanks, brave Montgomery ;—and  
thanks unto you all : 76

If Fortune serve me, I'll requite this kindness.

Now, for this night, let's harbour here in York ;

And when the morning sun shall raise his car

Above the border of this horizon, 80

We'll forward towards Warwick and his mates ;

For well I wot that Henry is no soldier.

Ah, froward Clarence, how evil it beseems thee

To flatter Henry, and forsake thy brother ! 84

Yet, as we may, we'll meet both thee and Warwick.

Come on, brave soldiers : doubt not of the day ;

And, that once gotten, doubt not of large pay. [Exeunt.

SCENE VIII.—London. A Room in the Palace.

Flourish. Enter KING HENRY, WARWICK, CLARENCE, MONTAGUE,  
EXETER, and OXFORD.

WARWICK. What counsel, lords? Edward from Belgia,  
With hasty Germans and blunt Hollanders,

Hath pass'd in safety through the narrow seas,

And with his troops doth march amain to London ; 4

And many giddy people flock to him.

OXFORD. Let's levy men, and beat him back again.

CLARENCE. A little fire is quickly trodden out,  
Which, being suffer'd, rivers cannot quench. 8

WARWICK. In Warwickshire I have true-hearted  
friends,

Not mutinous in peace, yet bold in war ;

Those will I muster up : and thou, son Clarence,

Shalt stir up in Suffolk, Norfolk, and in Kent, 12

The knights and gentlemen to come with thee :

Thou, brother Montague, in Buckingham,

Northampton, and in Leicestershire, shalt find

Men well inclin'd to hear what thou command'st : 16

And thou, brave Oxford, wondrous well belov'd

In Oxfordshire, shalt muster up thy friends.

My sovereign, with the loving citizens,

Like to his island girt in with the ocean, 20

Or modest Dian circled with her nymphs,

Shall rest in London till we come to him.

Fair lords, take leave, and stand not to reply.

Farewell, my sovereign.

KING HENRY. Farewell, my Hector, and my Troy's true hope.

CLARENCE. In sign of truth, I kiss your highness' hand.

KING HENRY. Well-minded Clarence, be thou fortunate!

MONTAGUE. Comfort, my lord; and so I take my leave. 28

OXFORD [Kissing HENRY's hand.] And thus I seal my truth, and bid adieu.

KING HENRY. Sweet Oxford, and my loving Montague, And all at once, once more a happy farewell. 31

WARWICK. Farewell, sweet lords: let's meet at Coventry. [Exeunt all but KING HENRY and EXETER.]

KING HENRY. Here at the palace will I rest awhile. Cousin of Exeter, what thinks your lordship?

Methinks the power that Edward hath in field Should not be able to encounter mine. 36

EXETER. The doubt is that he will seduce the rest.

KING HENRY. That's not my fear; my meed hath got me fame:

I have not stopp'd mine ears to their demands, Nor posted off their suits with slow delays; 40

My pity hath been balm to heal their wounds My mildness hath allay'd their swelling griefs,

My mercy dried their water-flowing tears; I have not been desirous of their wealth; 44

Nor much oppress'd them with great subsidies, Nor forward of revenge, though they much err'd.

Then why should they love Edward more than me? No, Exeter, these graces challenge grace: 48

And, when the lion fawns upon the lamb, The lamb will never cease to follow him.

[Shout within, 'A Lancaster! A Lancaster!']

EXETER. Hark, hark, my lord! what shouts are these?

Enter KING EDWARD, GLOUCESTER, and Soldiers.

KING EDWARD. Seize on the shame-fac'd Henry! bear him hence: 52

And once again proclaim us King of England.

You are the fount that makes small brooks to flow: Now stops thy spring; my sea shall suck them dry,

And swell so much the higher by their ebb. 56  
Hence with him to the Tower ! let him not speak.

[*Exeunt* some with KING HENRY.

And, lords, towards Coventry bend we our course,  
Where peremptory Warwick now remains :  
The sun shines hot ; and, if we use delay, 60  
Cold biting winter mars our hop'd-for hay.

GLOUCESTER. Away betimes, before his forces join,  
And take the great-grown traitor unawares :  
Brave warriors, march amain towards Coventry. [*Exeunt.*

## ACT V.

### SCENE I.—Coventry.

*Enter, upon the Walls, WARWICK, the Mayor of Coventry, two Messengers, and Others.*

WARWICK. Where is the post that came from valiant Oxford ?

How far hence is thy lord, mine honest fellow ?

FIRST MESSENGER. By this at Dunsmore, marching hitherward.

WARWICK. How far off is our brother Montague ? 4  
Where is the post that came from Montague ?

SECOND MESSENGER. By this at Daintry, with a puissant troop.

*Enter* SIR JOHN SOMERVILLE.

WARWICK. Say, Somerville, what says my loving son ?  
And, by thy guess, how nigh is Clarence now ? 8

SOMERVILLE. At Southam I did leave him with his forces,  
And do expect him here some two hours hence.

[*Drum heard.*

WARWICK. Then Clarence is at hand, I hear his drum.

SOMERVILLE. It is not his, my lord ; here Southam lies : 12

The drum your honour hears marcheth from Warwick.

WARWICK. Who should that be ? belike, unlook'd for friends.

SOMERVILLE. They are at hand, and you shall quickly know.

Enter KING EDWARD, GLOUCESTER, and Forces.

KING EDWARD. Go, trumpet, to the walls, and sound  
a parle. 16

GLOUCESTER. See how the surly Warwick mans the  
wall.

WARWICK. O, unbid spite ! is sportful Edward come ?  
Where slept our scouts, or how are they seduc'd,  
That we could hear no news of his repair ? 20

KING EDWARD. Now, Warwick, wilt thou ope the city  
gates.

Speak gentle words, and humbly bend thy knee ?—  
Call Edward king, and at his hands beg mercy ?  
And he shall pardon thee these outrages. 24

WARWICK. Nay, rather, wilt thou draw thy forces  
hence,—

Confess who set thee up and pluck'd thee down ?—  
Call Warwick patron, and be penitent ;  
And thou shalt still remain the Duke of York. 28

GLOUCESTER. I thought, at least, he would have said  
the king ;

Or did he make the jest against his will ?

WARWICK. Is not a dukedom, sir, a goodly gift ?

GLOUCESTER. Ay, by my faith, for a poor earl to give ;  
I'll do thee service for so good a gift. 33

WARWICK. 'Twas I that gave the kingdom to thy  
brother.

KING EDWARD. Why then 'tis mine, if but by War-  
wick's gift.

WARWICK. Thou art no Atlas for so great a weight :  
And, weakling, Warwick takes his gift again ; 37  
And Henry is my king, Warwick his subject.

KING EDWARD. But Warwick's king is Edward's  
prisoner ;

And, gallant Warwick, do but answer this, 40  
What is the body, when the head is off ?

GLOUCESTER. Alas ! that Warwick had no more fore-  
cast,

But, whiles he thought to steal the single ten,  
The king was slyly finger'd from the deck. 44

You left poor Henry at the bishop's palace,  
And, ten to one, you'll meet him in the Tower.

KING EDWARD. 'Tis even so : yet you are Warwick  
still.



GLOUCESTER. Come, Warwick, take the time ; kneel  
down, kneel down : 48

Nay, when ? strike now, or else the iron cools.

WARWICK. I had rather chop this hand off at a blow,  
And with the other fling it at thy face,  
Than bear so low a sail to strike to thee. 52

KING EDWARD. Sail how thou canst, have wind and  
tide thy friend ;

This hand, fast wound about thy coal-black hair,  
Shall, whiles thy head is warm and new cut off,  
Write in the dust this sentence with thy blood : 56  
' Wind-changing Warwick now can change no more.'

Enter OXFORD, with Soldiers, drum, and colours.

WARWICK. O cheerful colours ! see where Oxford  
comes !

OXFORD. Oxford, Oxford, for Lancaster ! 59

[He and his Forces enter the city.

GLOUCESTER. The gates are open, let us enter too.

KING EDWARD. So other foes may set upon our backs.  
Stand we in good array ; for they no doubt  
Will issue out again and bid us battle :  
If not, the city being but of small defence, 64  
We'll quickly rouse the traitors in the same.

WARWICK. O ! welcome, Oxford ! for we want thy  
help.

Enter MONTAGUE, with Soldiers, drum, and colours.

MONTAGUE. Montague, Montague, for Lancaster !

[He and his Forces enter the city.

GLOUCESTER. Thou and thy brother both shall buy  
this treason 68

Even with the dearest blood your bodies bear.

KING EDWARD. The harder match'd, the greater  
victory :

My mind presageth happy gain, and conquest.

Enter SOMERSET, with Soldiers, drum, and colours.

SOMERSET. Somerset, Somerset, for Lancaster ! 72

[He and his Forces enter the city.

GLOUCESTER. Two of thy name, both Dukes of  
Somerset,

Have sold their lives unto the house of York ;  
And thou shalt be the third, if this sword hold.

Enter CLARENCE, with Forces, drum, and colours.

WARWICK. And lo ! where George of Clarence sweeps  
along, 76

Of force enough to bid his brother battle ;  
With whom an upright zeal to right prevails  
More than the nature of a brother's love.  
Come, Clarence, come ; thou wilt, if Warwick call. 80

CLARENCE. Father of Warwick, know you what this  
means ? [Taking the red rose out of his hat.

Look here, I throw my infamy at thee :  
I will not ruinate my father's house,  
Who gave his blood to lime the stones together, 84  
And set up Lancaster. Why, trow'st thou, Warwick,  
That Clarence is so harsh, so blunt, unnatural,  
To bend the fatal instruments of war  
Against his brother and his lawful king ? 88

Perhaps thou wilt object my holy oath :  
To keep that oath were more impiety  
Than Jephthah's, when he sacrific'd his daughter.  
I am so sorry for my trespass made 92

That, to deserve well at my brother's hands,  
I here proclaim myself thy mortal foe ;  
With resolution, wheresoe'er I meet thee—  
As I will meet thee if thou stir abroad— 96  
To plague thee for thy foul misleading me.  
And so, proud-hearted Warwick, I defy thee,  
And to my brother turn my blushing cheeks.  
Pardon me, Edward, I will make amends ; 100  
And, Richard, do not frown upon my faults,  
For I will henceforth be no more unconstant.

KING EDWARD. Now welcome more, and ten times  
more belov'd,  
Than if thou never hadst deserv'd our hate. 104

GLOUCESTER. Welcome, good Clarence ; this is  
brother-like.

WARWICK. O passing traitor, perjur'd, and unjust !

KING EDWARD. What, Warwick, wilt thou leave the  
town, and fight ?  
Or shall we beat the stones about thine ears ? 108

WARWICK. Alas ! I am not coop'd here for defence :  
I will away towards Barnet presently,  
And bid thee battle, Edward, if thou darest.

KING EDWARD. Yes, Warwick, Edward dares, and  
 leads the way. 112  
 Lords, to the field ; Saint George and victory !

[March. Exeunt.

SCENE II.—A Field of Battle near Barnet.

Alarums and Excursions. Enter KING EDWARD, bringing in  
 WARWICK, wounded.

KING EDWARD. So, lie thou there: die thou, and die  
 our fear ;  
 For Warwick was a bug that fear'd us all.  
 Now Montague, sit fast ; I seek for thee,  
 That Warwick's bones may keep thine company. [Exit.

WARWICK. Ah ! who is nigh ? come to me, friend or  
 foe, 5  
 And tell me who is victor, York or Warwick ?  
 Why ask I that ? my mangled body shows,  
 My blood, my want of strength, my sick heart shows,  
 That I must yield my body to the earth, 9  
 And, by my fall, the conquest to my foe.  
 Thus yields the cedar to the axe's edge,  
 Whose arms gave shelter to the princely eagle, 12  
 Under whose shade the ramping lion slept,  
 Whose top branch overpeer'd Jove's spreading tree,  
 And kept low shrubs from winter's powerful wind.  
 These eyes, that now are dimm'd with death's black veil,  
 Have been as piercing as the mid-day sun, 17  
 To search the secret treasons of the world :  
 The wrinkles in my brows, now fill'd with blood,  
 Were liken'd oft to kingly sepulchres ; 20  
 For who liv'd king, but I could dig his grave ?  
 And who durst smile when Warwick bent his brow ?  
 Lo ! now my glory smear'd in dust and blood ;  
 My parks, my walks, my manors that I had, 24  
 Even now forsake me ; and of all my lands  
 Is nothing left me but my body's length.  
 Why, what is pomp, rule, reign, but earth and dust ?  
 And, live we how we can, yet die we must. 28

Enter OXFORD and SOMERSET.

SOMERSET. Ah ! Warwick, Warwick, wert thou as  
 we are,  
 We might recover all our loss again.

The queen from France hath brought a puissant power :  
Even now we heard the news. Ah ! couldst thou fly.

WARWICK. Why, then, I would not fly. Ah ! Montague, 33

If thou be there, sweet brother, take my hand,  
And with thy lips keep in my soul awhile.  
Thou lov'st me not ; for, brother, if thou didst, 36  
Thy tears would wash this cold congealed blood  
That glues my lips and will not let me speak.  
Come quickly, Montague, or I am dead.

SOMERSET. Ah ! Warwick, Montague hath breath'd  
his last ; 40

And to the latest gasp, cried out for Warwick,  
And said, ' Commend me to my valiant brother.'  
And more he would have said ; and more he spoke,  
Which sounded like a clamour in a vault, 44  
That mought not be distinguish'd : but at last  
I well might hear, deliver'd with a groan,  
' O ! farewell, Warwick ! '

WARWICK. Sweet rest his soul ! Fly, lords, and save  
yourselves ; 48  
For Warwick bids you all farewell, to meet in heaven.

[Dies.  
OXFORD. Away, away, to meet the queen's great  
power. [Exeunt, bearing off WARWICK's body.

SCENE III.—Another Part of the Field.

Flourish. Enter KING EDWARD, in triumph : with CLARENCE,  
GLOUCESTER, and the rest.

KING EDWARD. Thus far our fortune keeps an upward  
course,  
And we are grac'd with wreaths of victory.  
But in the midst of this bright-shining day,  
I spy a black, suspicious, threatening cloud, 4  
That will encounter with our glorious sun,  
Ere he attain his easeful western bed :  
I mean, my lords, those powers that the queen  
Hath rais'd in Gallia, have arriv'd our coast, 8  
And, as we hear, march on to fight with us.

CLARENCE. A little gale will soon disperse that cloud,  
And blow it to the source from whence it came :  
Thy very beams will dry those vapours up, 12

For every cloud engenders not a storm.

GLOUCESTER. The queen is valu'd thirty thousand strong,

And Somerset, with Oxford, fled to her :

If she have time to breathe, be well assur'd 16

Her faction will be full as strong as ours.

KING EDWARD. We are advertis'd by our loving friends That they do hold their course toward Tewksbury.

We, having now the best at Barnet field, 20

Will thither straight, for willingness rides way;

And, as we march, our strength will be augmented

In every county as we go along.

Strike up the drum ! cry ' Courage ! ' and away. 24

[Flourish. Exeunt.

SCENE IV.—Plains near Tewksbury.

March. Enter QUEEN MARGARET, PRINCE EDWARD, SOMERSET, OXFORD, and Soldiers.

QUEEN MARGARET. Great lords, wise men ne'er sit and wail their loss,

But cheerly seek how to redress their harms.

What though the mast be now blown overboard,

The cable broke, the holding anchor lost, 4

And half our sailors swallow'd in the flood?

Yet lives our pilot still : is 't meet that he

Should leave the helm and like a fearful lad

With tearful eyes add water to the sea, 8

And give more strength to that which hath too much ;

Whiles in his moan the ship splits on the rock,

Which industry and courage might have sav'd ?

Ah ! what a shame ! ah, what a fault were this. 12

Say, Warwick was our anchor ; what of that ?

And Montague our top-mast ; what of him ?

Our slaughter'd friends the tackles ; what of these ?

Why, is not Oxford here another anchor ? 16

And Somerset, another goodly mast ?

The friends of France our shrouds and tacklings ?

And, though unskilful, why not Ned and I

For once allow'd the skilful pilot's charge ? 20

We will not from the helm, to sit and weep,

But keep our course, though the rough wind say no,  
From shelves and rocks that threaten us with wrack.

As good to chide the waves as speak them fair. 24

And what is Edward but a ruthless sea ?  
What Clarence but a quicksand of deceit ?  
And Richard but a ragged fatal rock ?  
All those the enemies to our poor bark. 28  
Say you can swim ; alas ! 'tis but a while :  
Tread on the sand ; why, there you quickly sink :  
Bestride the rock ; the tide will wash you off,  
Or else you famish ; that 's a threefold death. 32  
This speak I, lords, to let you understand,  
In case some one of you would fly from us,  
That there 's no hop'd-for mercy with the brothers  
More than with ruthless waves, with sands and rocks.  
Why, courage, then ! what cannot be avoided 37  
'Twere childish weakness to lament or fear.

PRINCE. Methinks a woman of this valiant spirit  
Should, if a coward heard her speak these words, 40  
Infuse his breast with magnanimity,  
And make him, naked, foil a man at arms.  
I speak not this, as doubting any here ;  
For did I but suspect a fearful man, 44  
He should have leave to go away betimes,  
Lest in our need he might infect another,  
And make him of like spirit to himself.  
If any such be here, as God forbid ! 48  
Let him depart before we need his help.

OXFORD. Women and children of so high a courage,  
And warriors faint ! why, 'twere perpetual shame.  
O brave young prince ! thy famous grandfather 52  
Doth live again in thee : long mayst thou live  
To bear his image and renew his glories !

SOMERSET. And he that will not fight for such a hope,  
Go home to bed, and, like the owl by day, 56  
If he arise, be mock'd and wonder'd at.

QUEEN MARGARET. Thanks, gentle Somerset : sweet  
Oxford, thanks.

PRINCE. And take his thanks that yet hath nothing  
else.

Enter a Messenger.

MESSANGER. Prepare you, lords, for Edward is at  
hand, 60

Ready to fight ; therefore be resolute.

OXFORD. I thought no less : it is his policy  
To haste thus fast, to find us unprovided.

SOMERSET. But he's deceiv'd ; we are in readiness.

QUEEN MARGARET. This cheers my heart to see your forwardness. 65

OXFORD. Here pitch our battle ; hence we will not budge.

March. Enter, at a distance, KING EDWARD, CLARENCE, GLOUCESTER, and Forces.

KING EDWARD. Brave followers, yonder stands the thorny wood,

Which, by the heavens' assistance, and your strength, Must by the roots be hewn up yet ere night. 69

I need not add more fuel to your fire,  
For well I wot ye blaze to burn them out :  
Give signal to the fight, and to it, lords. 72

QUEEN MARGARET. Lords, knights, and gentlemen, what I should say

My tears gainsay ; for every word I speak,  
Ye see, I drink the water of mine eyes.  
Therefore, no more but this : Henry, your sovereign,  
Is prisoner to the foe ; his state usurp'd, 77

His realm a slaughter-house, his subjects slain,  
His statutes cancell'd, and his treasure spent ;  
And yonder is the wolf that makes this spoil. 80

You fight in justice : then, in God's name, lords,  
Be valiant, and give signal to the fight. [Exeunt both armies.

SCENE V.—Another Part of the Same.

Alarums : Excursions : and afterwards a retreat. Then enter KING EDWARD, CLARENCE, GLOUCESTER, and Forces ; with QUEEN MARGARET, OXFORD, and SOMERSET, prisoners.

KING EDWARD. Now, here a period of tumultuous broils.

Away with Oxford to Hames Castle straight :

For Somerset, off with his guilty head.

Go, bear them hence ; I will not hear them speak. 4

OXFORD. For my part, I'll not trouble thee with words.

SOMERSET. Nor I, but stoop with patience to my fortune.

[Exeunt OXFORD and SOMERSET, guarded.

QUEEN MARGARET. So part we sadly in this troublous world,

To meet with joy in sweet Jerusalem.

KING EDWARD. Is proclamation made, that who finds Edward

Shall have a high reward, and he his life ?

GLOUCESTER. It is : and lo, where youthful Edward comes.

Enter Soldiers, with PRINCE EDWARD.

KING EDWARD. Bring forth the gallant : let us hear him speak. 12

What ! can so young a thorn begin to prick ?

Edward, what satisfaction canst thou make

For bearing arms, for stirring up my subjects,

And all the trouble thou hast turn'd me to ? 16

PRINCE. Speak like a subject, proud ambitious York ! Suppose that I am now my father's mouth :

Resign thy chair, and where I stand kneel thou,

Whilst I propose the selfsame words to thee, 20

Which, traitor, thou wouldst have me answer to.

QUEEN MARGARET. Ah ! that thy father had been so resolv'd.

GLOUCESTER. That you might still have worn the petticoat,

And ne'er have stol'n the breech from Lancaster. 24

PRINCE. Let Æsop fable in a winter's night ;

His currish riddles sort not with this place.

GLOUCESTER. By heaven, brat, I'll plague you for that word.

QUEEN MARGARET. Ay, thou wast born to be a plague to men. 28

GLOUCESTER. For God's sake, take away this captive scold.

PRINCE. Nay, take away this scolding crook-back rather.

KING EDWARD. Peace, wilful boy, or I will charm your tongue. 31

CLARENCE. Untutor'd lad, thou art too malapert.

PRINCE. I know my duty ; you are all undutiful:

Lascivious Edward, and thou perjur'd George,

And thou mis-shapen Dick, I tell ye all,

I am your better, traitors as ye are ; 36

And thou usurp'st my father's right and mine.

KING EDWARD. Take that, the likeness of this railer here.

[Stabs him.

GLOUCESTER. Sprawl'st thou ? take that, to end thy agony. [Stabs him.



CLARENCE. And there 's for twitting me with **perjury**.

[Stabs him.

QUEEN MARGARET. O, kill me too ! 41

GLOUCESTER. Mairry, and shall. [Offers to kill her.

KING EDWARD. Hold, Richard, hold ! for we have  
done too much.

GLOUCESTER. Why should she live, to fill the world  
with words ? 44

KING EDWARD. What ! doth she swoon ? use means  
for her recovery.

GLOUCESTER. Clarence, excuse me to the king, my  
brother ;

I'll hence to London on a serious matter :  
Ere ye come there, be sure to hear some news. 48

CLARENCE. What ? what ?

GLOUCESTER. The Tower ! the Tower ! [Exit.

QUEEN MARGARET. O Ned, sweet Ned ! speak to thy  
mother, boy !

Canst thou not speak ? O traitors ! murderers ! 52 •

They that stabb'd Cæsar shed no blood at all,

Did not offend, nor were not worthy blame,

If this foul deed were by, to equal it :

He was a man ; this, in respect, a child ; 56

And men ne'er spend their fury on a child.

What 's worse than murderer, that I may name it ?

No, no, my heart will burst, an if I speak :

And I will speak, that so my heart may burst. 60

Butchers and villains ! bloody cannibals !

How sweet a plant have you untimely cropp'd !

You have no children, butchers ! if you had,

The thought of them would have stirr'd up remorse ;

But if you ever chance to have a child, 65

Look in his youth to have him so cut off

As, deathsmen, you have rid this sweet young prince !

KING EDWARD. Away with her ! go, bear her hence  
perforce. 68

QUEEN MARGARET. Nay, never bear me hence, dis-  
patch me here :

Here sheathe thy sword, I'll pardon thee my death.

What ! wilt thou not ? then, Clarence, do it thou.

CLARENCE. By heaven, I will not do thee so much ease.

QUEEN MARGARET. Good Clarence, do ; sweet Clarence,  
do thou do it. 73

CLARENCE. Didst thou not hear me swear I would not do it ?

QUEEN MARGARET. Ay, but thou usest to forswear thyself :

'Twas sin before, but now 'tis charity. 76

What ! wilt thou not ? Where is that devil's butcher, Hard-favour'd Richard ? Richard, where art thou ?

Thou art not here ; murder is thy alms-deed ;

Petitioners for blood thou ne'er put'st back. 80

KING EDWARD. Away, I say ! I charge ye, bear her hence.

QUEEN MARGARET. So come to you and yours, as to this prince ! [Exit, led out forcibly.

KING EDWARD. Where's Richard gone ?

CLARENCE. To London, all in post ; and, as I guess, To make a bloody supper in the Tower. 85

KING EDWARD. He's sudden if a thing comes in his head.

. Now march we hence : discharge the common sort

With pay and thanks, and let's away to London 88

And see our gentle queen how well she fares ;

By this, I hope, she hath a son for me. [Exeunt.

SCENE VI.—London. A Room in the Tower.

KING HENRY is discovered sitting with a book in his hand, the Lieutenant attending. Enter GLOUCESTER.

GLOUCESTER. Good day, my lord. What ! at your book so hard ?

KING HENRY. Ay, my good lord :—my lord, I should say rather ;

'Tis sin to flatter ; 'good' was little better :

'Good Gloucester' and 'good devil' were alike, 4

And both preposterous ; therefore, not 'good lord'.

GLOUCESTER. Sirrah, leave us to ourselves : we must confer. [Exit Lieutenant.

KING HENRY. So flies the reckless shepherd from the wolf ;

So first the harmless sheep doth yield his fleece, 8

And next his throat unto the butcher's knife.

What scene of death hath Roscius now to act ?

GLOUCESTER. Suspicion always haunts the guilty mind ;

The thief doth fear each bush an officer. 12

KING HENRY. The bird that hath been limed in a bush,

With trembling wings misdoubteth every bush ;

And I, the hapless male to one sweet bird,

Have now the fatal object in my eye 16

Where my poor young was lim'd, was caught, and kill'd.

GLOUCESTER. Why, what a peevish fool was that of Crete,

That taught his son the office of a fowl !

And yet, for all his wings, the fool was drown'd. 20

KING HENRY. I, Dædalus ; my poor boy, Icarus ;

Thy father, Minos, that denied our course ;

The sun, that sear'd the wings of my sweet boy,

Thy brother Edward, and thyself the sea, 24

Whose envious gulf did swallow up his life.

Ah ! kill me with thy weapon, not with words.

My breast can better brook thy dagger's point

Than can my ears that tragic history. 28

But wherefore dost thou come ? is 't for my life ?

GLOUCESTER. Think'st thou I am an executioner ?

KING HENRY. A persecutor, I am sure, thou art :

If murdering innocents be executing, 32

Why, then thou art an executioner.

GLOUCESTER. Thy son I kill'd for his presumption.

KING HENRY. Hadst thou been kill'd, when first thou didst presume,

Thou hadst not liv'd to kill a son of mine. 36

And thus I prophesy : that many a thousand,

Which now mistrust no parcel of my fear,

And many an old man's sigh, and many a widow's,

And many an orphan's water-standing eye, 40

Men for their sons', wives for their husbands',

And orphans for their parents' timeless death,

Shall rue the hour that ever thou wast born.

The owl shriek'd at thy birth, an evil sign ; 44

The night-crow cried, aboding luckless time ;

Dogs howl'd, and hideous tempest shook down trees !

The raven rook'd her on the chimney's top,

And chattering pies in dismal discords sung. 48

Thy mother felt more than a mother's pain,

And yet brought forth less than a mother's hope ;

To wit, an indigest deformed lump,

Not like the fruit of such a goodly tree.  
Teeth hadst thou in thy head when thou wast born,  
To signify thou camest to bite the world :  
And, if the rest be true which I have heard,  
Thou camest— 56

GLOUCESTER. I'll hear no more : die, prophet, in thy  
speech : [Stabs him.

For this, amongst the rest, was I ordain'd.

KING HENRY. Ay, and for much more slaughter after  
this., 59

O, God forgive my sins, and pardon thee ! [Dies.

GLOUCESTER. What ! will the aspiring blood of Lan-  
caster

Sink in the ground ? I thought it would have mounted.  
See how my sword weeps for the poor king's death !

O ! may such purple tears be always shed 64

From those that wish the downfall of our house.

If any spark of life be yet remaining,

Down, down to hell ; and say I sent thee thither,

[Stabs him again.

I, that have neither pity, love, nor fear. 68

Indeed, 'tis true, that Henry told me of ;

For I have often heard my mother say

I came into the world with my legs forward.

Had I not reason, think ye, to make haste, 72

And seek their ruin that usurp'd our right ?

The midwife wonder'd, and the women cried

' O ! Jesus bless us, he is born with teeth.'

And so I was ; which plainly signified 76

That I should snarl and bite and play the dog.

Then, since the heavens have shap'd my body so,

Let hell make crook'd my mind to answer it.

I have no brother, I am like no brother ; 80

And this word 'love', which greybeards call divine,

Be resident in men like one another

And not in me : I am myself alone.

Clarence, beware ; thou keep'st me from the light :

But I will sort a pitchy day for thee ; 85

For I will buzz abroad such prophecies

That Edward shall be fearful of his life ;

And then, to purge his fear, I'll be thy death. 88

King Henry and the prince his son are gone :

Clarence, thy turn is next, and then the rest,

Counting myself but bad till I be best.  
 I'll throw thy body in another room, 92  
 And triumph, Henry, in thy day of doom. [Exit, with the body.]

SCENE VII.—The Same. A Room in the Palace.

KING EDWARD is discovered sitting on his throne : QUEEN ELIZABETH with the infant Prince, CLARENCE, GLOUCESTER, HASTINGS, and Others, near him.

KING EDWARD. Once more we sit in England's royal throne,

Re-purchas'd with the blood of enemies.  
 What valiant foemen like to autumn's corn,  
 Have we mow'd down, in tops of all their pride ! 4  
 Three Dukes of Somerset, threefold renown'd  
 For hardy and undoubted champions ;  
 Two Cliffords, as the father and the son ;  
 And two Northumberlands : two braver men 8  
 Ne'er spurr'd their coursers at the trumpet's sound ;  
 With them, the two brave bears, Warwick and Montague,  
 That in their chains fetter'd the kingly lion,  
 And made the forest tremble when they roar'd. 12  
 Thus have we swept suspicion from our seat,  
 And made our footstool of security.  
 Come hither, Bess, and let me kiss my boy.  
 Young Ned, for thee thine uncles and myself 16  
 Have in our armours watch'd the winter's night ;  
 Went all a-foot in summer's scalding heat,  
 That thou might'st repossess the crown in peace ;  
 And of our labours thou shalt reap the gain. 20

GLOUCESTER. [Aside.] I'll blast his harvest, if your head were laid ;  
 For yet I am not look'd on in the world.  
 This shoulder was ordain'd so thick to heave ;  
 And heave it shall some weight, or break my back :  
 Work thou the way, and thou shalt execute. 25

KING EDWARD. Clarence and Gloucester, love my lovely queen ;  
 And kiss your princely nephew, brothers both.

CLARENCE. The duty, that I owe unto your majesty,  
 I seal upon the lips of this sweet babe. 29

KING EDWARD. Thanks, noble Clarence ; worthy brother, thanks.

GLOUCESTER. And, that I love the tree from whence  
thou sprang'st,  
Witness the loving kiss I give the fruit. 32

[Aside.] To say the truth, so Judas kiss'd his master,  
And cried 'all hail' when as he meant all harm.

KING EDWARD. Now am I seated as my soul delights,  
Having my country's peace and brothers' loves. 36

CLARENCE. What will your Grace have done with  
Margaret?

Reignier, her father, to the King of France  
Hath pawn'd the Sicils and Jerusalem,  
And hither have they sent it for her ransom. 40

KING EDWARD. Away with her, and waft her hence to  
France.

And now what rests but that we spend the time  
With stately triumphs, mirthful comic shows,  
Such as befit the pleasure of the court? 44  
Sound, drums and trumpets! farewell, sour annoy!  
For here, I hope, begins our lasting joy. [Exeunt.]



**THE TRAGEDY OF  
KING RICHARD THE THIRD**





# THE TRAGEDY OF KING RICHARD THE THIRD

## INTRODUCTION

WE first hear of *King Richard III* in the entry under the name of Andrew Wise, in the Stationers' Register of October 19, 1597: 'Entred for his copie under thandes of master Barlow, and master warden man. The tragedie of Kinge Richard the Third with the death of the Duke of Clarence.' Here we have a certain downward limit of date. In John Weever's *Epigrammes* (1599) occurs a reference to Romeo and to Richard—and the Richard may be the third rather than the second of the kings of that name. Weever states that most of the epigrams were written before he was twenty years of age. He was born in 1576. Obviously the evidence that we have here an allusion of 1595-6 to Shakespeare's play is far from decisive. In conjecturing the date we are thrown back upon suggestions derived from internal evidence. The play was apparently written in direct continuation of the Third Part of *Henry VI*; it is probable that *Henry VI* was completed before the close of 1592. The present play may have followed in 1593. Critics, indeed, differ as to the chronological order of *Richard II* and *Richard III*; the weight of authority inclines to the opinion that *Richard III* is the earlier play. Although Marlowe's *Edward II* to some extent served as a model for *Richard II*, Shakespeare in that play is less Marlowesque in the general character of the piece than we find him here, and we may hesitate before admitting that he could have returned to such discipleship as is manifest throughout *Richard III*. The date 1593 or 1594 may be accepted as probably correct, but it must be admitted that certainty is not attainable.

The first quarto appeared in 1597. The play was

highly popular with Elizabethan and Jacobean readers, and no fewer than six editions were published before 1623, the date of the first folio. The second edition (1598) gives the name of the author, 'William Shakespeare.' The third (1602) is described as 'newly augmented', but this is not in fact the case. Editions followed in 1605, 1612, and 1622. The folio text is printed probably from the last of these, with additions, omissions, and corrections derived from some other source.

At this point we are confronted by a problem the solution of which is as difficult perhaps as any that arises in connexion with *King Henry VI*. To discuss it here anew or in detail is impossible. All that can be done is to explain the nature of the problem, and to state the conclusions of some scholars who have made special efforts to grapple with the difficulty. We cannot do better than quote the words of the editors of the Cambridge Shakespeare: 'The first Quarto contains passages not found in the Folio, which are essential to the understanding of the context: the Folio, on the other hand, contains passages equally essential, which are not found in the Quarto. Again, passages which in the Quarto are complete and consecutive, are amplified in the Folio, the expanded text being quite in the manner of Shakespeare. The Folio, too, contains passages not in the Quartos, which though not necessary to the sense yet harmonize so well, in sense and tone, with the context that we can have no hesitation in attributing them to the author himself.' The writers go on to say that, on the other hand, insertions and alterations occur in the folio which are certainly not due to Shakespeare, showing that *Richard III* had been tampered with, even before the publication of the folio, 'by a nameless transcriber who worked in the spirit, though not with the audacity, of Colley Cibber.' Their conclusion is that the quarto text was derived from the author's manuscript through a transcript by another hand, to which are due some accidental omissions and errors. The folio text they would trace back to a revision by Shakespeare of his original manuscript, through a copy of this revised manuscript, made by another hand, probably after the author's death; and

here, as they suppose, the unknown transcriber on occasions took unwarrantable liberties in dealing with the text. The nearest approximation to a trustworthy text is, in their opinion, to be obtained by rejecting all that is due to the transcriber, whom the printers of the folio followed, and supplying its place from the quarto.

The conclusions of the Cambridge editors were subjected to a very searching criticism by Spedding, the eminent editor of Bacon's Works, in a paper which appears in the 'New Shakspeare Society's Transactions', 1875-6. He dismisses the theory of the unknown transcriber, maintains that Shakespeare prepared in part a corrected and amended copy of his play, but had not leisure to complete his revision, and argues that this revision came into the hands of the editors of the folio, and was used as the copy for their text; he concludes that 'the text of the folio (errors being corrected or allowed for) represents the result of Shakespeare's own latest revision, and approaches nearest to the form in which he wished it to stand'. To Spedding replied Mr. E. H. Pickersgill, who endeavoured to show that Shakespeare never revised the play; that the first quarto was printed, with many blunders, from the actors' copy, which had been shortened for representation, and perhaps contained some corrections by Shakespeare; and that the folio text gives *Richard III* not as revised by Shakespeare, but as originally written, with alterations made by some unknown hand. Finally, we may mention the result of investigations carried out by that admirable scholar, Mr. P. A. Daniel; to a certain point his conclusions are akin to those of Mr. Pickersgill—the folio represents the play as first set forth by its author or authors; the quarto, a shortened and revised copy of it. But Mr. Daniel adds that *Richard III* is, in his opinion, not of Shakespeare's original composition; it is rather 'the work of the author, or authors, of the *Henry VI* series of plays; his part in this, as in those, being merely that of a reviser or rewriter'. The differences of opinion may at least satisfy us as to the great difficulty of the problem. To me it seems certain that there is work from Shakespeare's hand in the quarto which does not appear in the folio, and work

from Shakespeare's hand, in larger quantity, in the folio, which does not appear in the quarto. Beyond this statement I do not venture to go. While it is true that, as we possess it, the play has every right to be named a work of Shakespeare, that as such it was named by Meres, that as such it was included in the first folio, and that quartos ascribe its authorship to him, Mr. Daniel's opinion that he was working over a piece by the authors of the *Henry VI* plays is not to be lightly dismissed, nor is the conjecture of Mr. Fleay that Marlowe may have 'laid the foundation and erected part of the building of *Richard III*'. We may, however, venture to believe that Shakespeare, having revised and in part rewritten the old plays on which the last two parts of *Henry VI* are founded (in which old plays he may himself have collaborated), was not incapable of continuing the series in an original work, written in the same spirit and yet essentially his own. It is wise to restrain the passion for pronouncing with confidence in matters where the basis on which full assurance can rest is not in existence.

The historical source used by the writer of the play was the *Chronicle* of Holinshed, or that of Hall; behind both of these lies Sir Thomas More's *History of Edward V and Richard III*; and behind this again some have supposed that a Latin form of that history, which they ascribe to Cardinal Morton, should be placed. We need not, however, consider a question which does not immediately relate to the play. The Latin play *Richardus Tertius*, by Dr. Thomas Legge, performed at Cambridge in 1579, did not influence the author of our *Richard III*, nor does he seem to be under obligations to *The True Tragedie of Richard III*, which was presented by the queen's players, and was published in 1594. To discover a dramatic source for our play we must, as does Mr. Fleay, imagine one. With the matter of history Shakespeare deals in his accustomed freedom, caring little for the actual sequence of events, and adding from his own invention with a view to stage effect.

The personality of Richard dominates—it may almost be said to constitute—the play. It is so strongly drawn, and the sense of it is so driven home in every

scene, that analysis of the character becomes almost impertinence. A great force, whether good or evil, masters and overawes the imagination, and Richard, the evil genius of the civil wars, is force concentrated, annealed by the fires of hatred, incarnated in a withered and shrunken body, powerless only against the final law of avenging justice. For above Richard, from first to last, there stands Fate, or Nemesis, or Divine Law—call it what we will. The terrible prophecies or curses of Margaret, a fury and a pythoness, keep alive in us the sense that Richard, though he cannot be bowed, must be broken. Intellect and will are his; he can lay a crafty train or explode it on the instant with a fierce detonation; intellect and will are his—but never love: ‘I am myself alone.’ Yet he is not a gloomy villain; the laws of the world being inverted for him, he lives with a certain glee in this inverted world. An actor has not caught Shakespeare’s idea unless he can play the part—as did Irving—with a kind of perverted gaiety, and a smiling contempt for his victims. It is only at the close that Richard for a moment quails; for a moment a shudder at the thought of his own solitude thrills him; and then he is himself again.

I shall despair. There is no creature loves me;  
And if I die, no soul shall pity me—

this is the cry heard when the strong hand of God presses him; but presently he can address to his soldiery an oration full of spirit, and he dies, we may be certain, in a spasm of battle-rage. Clarence we remember for the sake of his romantic dream; Edward IV we remember for the sake of his self-indulgent folly as a peacemaker, who would build a substantial structure upon the sands. We remember Richard as unalterable craft, almost indomitable force, and in his very loyalty to evil he wrings from us a certain feeling of admiration. With his extinction enters Peace, and the ‘civil wounds are stopp’d’.

The fortunes of the play upon the stage have been singular. In Shakespeare’s day it was undoubtedly popular, not only with readers, but also with spectators in the theatre. The name of the great actor Burbage was closely associated with that of Richard. In Corbet’s

*Iter Boreale* (1618-21) he tells of the host who served as cicerone over the field of the battle of Bosworth :—

Where he mistook a player for a King.  
For when he would have sayd, King Richard dyed,  
And call'd—A horse! a horse!—he Burbidge cry'de.

After the Restoration the play does not seem to have been revived; we do not hear of Betterton's having appeared in the chief part; we do not hear of Pepys having witnessed a performance. In 1700 it was recast and in great part rewritten by Colley Cibber, but at first a scrupulous Master of the Revels would not permit the presentation of his first Act, in which King Henry VI is killed. Not many readers of the present day are aware of the great transformation of Shakespeare's text effected by Cibber. From seven other historical plays he imported various passages; he retained less than a fourth of the original; he added over a thousand lines of his own. Clarence and his dream wholly disappear. 'The inherent vulgarity of the play, as revised,' writes Mr. A. H. Paget, 'is shown by an interpolated passage in which Richard deliberately sets himself to kill his wife by neglect and cruelty. Equally commonplace and morbid is a scene in which we are brought to the very threshold of the chamber where the children are smothered, and there see Richard prowling about and moralizing on his wickedness.' Yet it cannot be denied that Cibber's play was theatrically effective; it held the stage, to the exclusion of Shakespeare's tragedy, for more than a century. Some of the most telling stage hits—such as the line 'Off with his head! So much for Buckingham!'—are of Cibber's invention. It was in Cibber's *Richard III* that Garrick first came forward in 1741, at Goodman's Fields, as 'A gentleman (who never appeared on any stage),' and entranced the spectators. It was in Cibber's play that Edmund Kean in the early years of the nineteenth century astonished the audience of Drury Lane. It was Cibber, not Shakespeare, whom J. P. Kemble revised for Covent Garden. In 1821 Macready restored something approaching the original to the theatre, but in his *Diary* he acknowledges that the experiment was only 'partially successful'. 'Our audiences,' he says, 'were accustomed to the coarse

jests and *ad captandum* speeches of Cibber, and would have condemned the omission of such uncharacteristic claptraps as "Off with his head ! So much for Buckingham !" or such bombast as : " Hence, babbling dreams : you threaten here in vain. Conscience avaunt ! Richard 's himself again !" In deference to the taste of the times, the passages, as well as similar ones, were retained.'

Since the days of Cooke and Kean the greatest of stage Richards was undoubtedly Irving, who presented Shakespeare's play at the Lyceum in 1877. He was essentially a romantic artist, and the villany of Richard, in his rendering, was lit up by fine ecstasies of lurid mirth, subtle irony, and the very revelry of evil. With this the contrast of Richard in his tent before the battle of Bosworth, for a little time broken, agitated, and alone, became doubly impressive. We went to the theatre expecting perhaps to see Irving rather than Richard ; but we saw both, and for us from that hour they were inseparably one.



## DRAMATIS PERSONAE

KING EDWARD THE FOURTH.

EDWARD, Prince of Wales ; afterwards  
King Edward the Fifth, } Sons to the King.

RICHARD, Duke of York,

GEORGE, Duke of Clarence,

RICHARD, Duke of Gloucester, }  
afterwards King Richard } Brothers to the King.  
the Third,

A young Son of Clarence.

HENRY, Earl of Richmond ; afterwards King Henry the Seventh.

CARDINAL BOURCHIER, Archbishop of Canterbury.

THOMAS ROTHERHAM, Archbishop of York.

JOHN MORTON, Bishop of Ely.

DUKE OF BUCKINGHAM.

DUKE OF NORFOLK.

EARL OF SURREY, his Son.

EARL RIVERS, Brother to King Edward's Queen.

MARQUESS OF DORSET, and LORD GREY, her Sons.

EARL OF OXFORD.

LORD HASTINGS.

LORD STANLEY, called also EARL OF DERBY.

LORD LOVEL.

SIR THOMAS VAUGHAN.

SIR RICHARD RATCLIFF.

SIR WILLIAM CATESBY.

SIR JAMES TYRRELL.

SIR JAMES BLOUNT.

SIR WALTER HERBERT.

SIR ROBERT BRAKENBURY, Lieutenant of the Tower

SIR WILLIAM BRANDON.

CHRISTOPHER URSWICK, a Priest.

Another Priest.

Lord Mayor of London. Sheriff of Wiltshire.

TRESSEL and BERKELEY, Gentlemen attending on Lady Anne.

ELIZABETH, Queen of King Edward the Fourth.

MARGARET, Widow of King Henry the Sixth.

DUCHESS OF YORK, Mother to King Edward the Fourth, Clarence,  
and Gloucester.

LADY ANNE, Widow of Edward, Prince of Wales, Son to King Henry  
the Sixth ; afterwards married to the Duke of Gloucester.

LADY MARGARET PLANTAGENET, a young Daughter of Clarence.

Lords, and other Attendants ; two Gentlemen, a Pursuivant, Scri-  
vener, Citizens, Murderers, Messengers, Ghosts of those murdered  
by Richard the Third, Soldiers, &c.

SCENE.--England.

# THE TRAGEDY OF KING RICHARD THE THIRD

## ACT I

SCENE I.—London. A Street.

Enter GLOUCESTER.

GLOUCESTER. Now is the winter of our discontent  
Made glorious summer by this sun of York ;  
And all the clouds that lour'd upon our house  
In the deep bosom of the ocean buried. 4  
Now are our brows bound with victorious wreaths ;  
Our bruised arms hung up for monuments ;  
Our stern alarums changed to merry meetings ;  
Our dreadful marches to delightful measures. 8  
Grim-visag'd war hath smooth'd his wrinkled front ;  
And now,—instead of mounting barbed steeds,  
To fright the souls of fearful adversaries,—  
He capers nimbly in a lady's chamber 12  
To the lascivious pleasing of a lute.  
But I, that am not shap'd for sportive tricks,  
Nor made to court an amorous looking-glass ;  
I, that am rudely stamp'd, and want love's majesty  
To strut before a wanton ambling nymph ; 17  
I, that am curtail'd of this fair proportion,  
Cheated of feature by dissembling nature,  
Deform'd, unfinish'd, sent before my time 20  
Into this breathing world, scarce half made up,  
And that so lamely and unfashionable  
That dogs bark at me, as I halt by them ;  
Why, I, in this weak piping time of peace, 24  
Have no delight to pass away the time,  
Unless to see my shadow in the sun  
And descant on mine own deformity :  
And therefore, since I cannot prove a lover, 28  
To entertain these fair well-spoken days,  
I am determin'd to prove a villain,

And hate the idle pleasures of these days.  
 Plots have I laid, inductions dangerous, 32  
 By drunken prophecies, libels, and dreams,  
 To set my brother Clarence and the king  
 In deadly hate the one against the other :  
 And if King Edward be as true and just 36  
 As I am subtle, false, and treacherous,  
 This day should Clarence closely be mew'd up,  
 About a prophecy, which says, that G  
 Of Edward's heirs the murderer shall be. 40  
 Dive, thoughts, down to my soul : here Clarence comes.

Enter CLARENCE, guarded, and BRAKENBURY.

Brother, good day : what means this armed guard  
 That waits upon your Grace ?

CLARENCE. His majesty,  
 Tendering my person's safety, hath appointed 44  
 This conduct to convey me to the Tower.

GLOUCESTER. Upon what cause ?

CLARENCE. Because my name is George.

GLOUCESTER. Alack ! my lord, that fault is none of  
 yours ;

He should, for that, commit your godfathers. 48

O ! belike his majesty hath some intent

That you should be new-christen'd in the Tower.

But what 's the matter, Clarence ? may I know ?

CLARENCE. Yea, Richard, when I know ; for I protest  
 As yet I do not : but, as I can learn, 53

He hearkens after prophecies and dreams ;

And from the cross-row plucks the letter G,

And says a wizard told him that by G 56

His issue disinherited should be ;

And, for my name of George begins with G,

It follows in his thought that I am he.

These, as I learn, and such like toys as these, 60

Have mov'd his highness to commit me now.

GLOUCESTER. Why, this it is, when men are rul'd by  
 women :

'Tis not the king that sends you to the Tower ;

My Lady Grey, his wife, Clarence, 'tis she 64

That tempers him to this extremity.

Was it not she and that good man of worship,

Anthony Woodville, her brother there,

That made him send Lord Hastings to the Tower, 68  
From whence this present day he is deliver'd ?  
We are not safe, Clarence ; we are not safe.

CLARENCE. By heaven, I think there is no man secure  
But the queen's kindred and night-walking heralds  
That trudge betwixt the king and Mistress Shore. 73  
Heard you not what a humble suppliant  
Lord Hastings was to her for his delivery ?

GLOUCESTER. Humbly complaining to her deity 76  
Got my lord chamberlain his liberty.  
I'll tell you what ; I think it is our way,  
If we will keep in favour with the king,  
To be her men and wear her livery : 80  
The jealous o'er-worn widow and herself,  
Since that our brother dubb'd them gentlewomen,  
Are mighty gossips in our monarchy.

BRAKENBURY. I beseech your Graces both to pardon  
me ; 84  
His majesty hath straitly given in charge  
That no man shall have private conference,  
Of what degree soever, with your brother.

GLOUCESTER. Even so ; an please your worship,  
Brakenbury, 88  
You may partake of anything we say :  
We speak no treason, man : we say the king  
Is wise and virtuous, and his noble queen  
Well struck in years, fair, and not jealous ; 92  
We say that Shore's wife hath a pretty foot,  
A cherry lip, a bonny eye, a passing pleasing tongue ;  
And that the queen's kindred are made gentlefolks.  
How say you, sir ? can you deny all this ? 96

BRAKENBURY. With this, my lord, myself have nought  
to do.  
GLOUCESTER. Naught to do with Mistress Shore ! I  
tell thee, fellow,  
He that doth naught with her, excepting one,  
Were best to do it secretly, alone. 100

BRAKENBURY. What one, my lord ?

GLOUCESTER. Her husband, knave. Wouldst thou  
betray me ?

BRAKENBURY. I beseech your Grace to pardon me ;  
and withal  
Forbear your conference with the noble duke. 104

CLARENCE. We know thy charge, Brakenbury, and will obey.

GLOUCESTER. We are the queen's abjects, and must obey.

Brother, farewell : I will unto the king ;  
And whatsoe'er you will employ me in, 108  
Were it to call King Edward's widow sister,  
I will perform it to enfranchise you.

Meantime, this deep disgrace in brotherhood  
Touches me deeper than you can imagine. 112

CLARENCE. I know it pleaseth neither of us well.

GLOUCESTER. Well, your imprisonment shall not be long ;

I will deliver you, or else lie for you :  
Meantime, have patience.

CLARENCE. I must perforce : farewell.

[Exeunt CLARENCE, BRAKENBURY, and Guard.

GLOUCESTER. Go, tread the path that thou shalt ne'er  
return, 117

Simple, plain Clarence ! I do love thee so  
That I will shortly send thy soul to heaven,  
If heaven will take the present at our hands. 120  
But who comes here ? the new-deliver'd Hastings !

Enter HASTINGS.

HASTINGS. Good time of day unto my gracious lord !

GLOUCESTER. As much unto my good lord chamberlain !

Well are you welcome to this open air. 124  
How hath your lordship brook'd imprisonment ?

HASTINGS. With patience, noble lord, as prisoners must :

But I shall live, my lord, to give them thanks  
That were the cause of my imprisonment. 128

GLOUCESTER. No doubt, no doubt ; and so shall  
Clarence too ;

For they that were your enemies are his,  
And have prevail'd as much on him as you.

HASTINGS. More pity that the eagles should be  
mew'd, 132

While kites and buzzards prey at liberty.

GLOUCESTER. What news abroad ?

HASTINGS. No news so bad abroad as this at home ;

The king is sickly, weak, and melancholy, 136  
And his physicians fear him mightily.

GLOUCESTER. Now by Saint Paul, this news is bad indeed.

O ! he hath kept an evil diet long.

And over-much consum'd his royal person : 140

'Tis very grievous to be thought upon.

What, is he in his bed ?

HASTINGS.

He is.

GLOUCESTER. Go you before, and I will follow you.

[Exit HASTINGS.

He cannot live, I hope ; and must not die 144

Till George be pack'd with post-horse up to heaven.

I'll in, to urge his hatred more to Clarence,

With lies well steel'd with weighty arguments ;

And, if I fail not in my deep intent, 148

Clarence hath not another day to live :

Which done, God take King Edward to his mercy,

And leave the world for me to bustle in ! 151

For then I'll marry Warwick's youngest daughter.

What though I kill'd her husband and her father,

The readiest way to make the wench amends

Is to become her husband and her father :

The which will I ; not all so much for love 156

As for another secret close intent,

By marrying her, which I must reach unto.

But yet I run before my horse to market : 159

Clarence still breathes ; Edward still lives and reigns :

When they are gone, then must I count my gains. [Exit.

SCENE II.—London. Another Street.

Enter the corpse of KING HENRY THE SIXTH, borne in an open coffin ;  
Gentlemen bearing halberds to guard it ; and LADY ANNE, as  
mourner.

ANNE. Set down, set down your honourable load,

If honour may be shrouded in a hearse,

Whilst I awhile obsequiously lament

The untimely fall of virtuous Lancaster. 4

Poor key-cold figure of a holy king !

Pale ashes of the house of Lancaster !

Thou bloodless remnant of that royal blood !

Be it lawful that I invoke thy ghost, 8

To hear the lamentations of poor Anne,  
 Wife to thy Edward, to thy slaughter'd son,  
 Stabb'd by the selfsame hand that made these wounds !  
 Lo, in these windows that let forth thy life, 12  
 I pour the helpless balm of my poor eyes.  
 O ! cursed be the hand that made these holes ;  
 Cursed the heart that had the heart to do it !  
 Cursed the blood that let this blood from hence ! 16  
 More direful hap betide that hated wretch,  
 That makes us wretched by the death of thee,  
 Than I can wish to adders, spiders, toads,  
 Or any creeping venom'd thing that lives ! 20  
 If ever he have child, abortive be it,  
 Prodigious, and untimely brought to light,  
 Whose ugly and unnatural aspect  
 May fright the hopeful mother at the view ; 24  
 And that be heir to his unhappiness !  
 If ever he have wife, let her be made  
 More miserable by the death of him  
 Than I am made by my young lord and thee ! 28  
 Come, now towards Chertsey with your holy load,  
 Taken from Paul's to be interred there ;  
 And still, as you are weary of the weight,  
 Rest you, whiles I lament King Henry's corse. 32

[The Bearers take up the corpse and advance.

Enter GLOUCESTER.

GLOUCESTER. Stay, you that bear the corse, and set it  
 down.

ANNE. What black magician conjures up this fiend,  
 To stop devoted charitable deeds ?

GLOUCESTER. Villains ! set down the corse ; or, by  
 Saint Paul, 36

I'll make a corse of him that disobeys.

FIRST GENTLEMAN. My lord, stand back, and let the  
 coffin pass.

GLOUCESTER. Unmanner'd dog ! stand thou when I  
 command :

Advance thy halberd higher than my breast, 40  
 Or, by Saint Paul, I'll strike thee to my foot,  
 And spurn upon thee, beggar, for thy boldness.

[The Bearers set down the coffin.

ANNE. What ! do you tremble ? are you all afraid ?  
 Alas ! I blame you not ; for you are mortal, 44

And mortal eyes cannot endure the devil.  
Avaunt ! thou dreadful minister of hell,  
Thou hadst but power over his mortal body,  
His soul thou canst not have : therefore, be gone. 48

GLOUCESTER. Sweet saint, for charity, be not so curst.

ANNE. Foul devil, for God's sake hence, and trouble  
us not ;

For thou hast made the happy earth thy hell,  
Fill'd it with cursing cries and deep exclams. 52

If thou delight to view thy heinous deeds,  
Behold this pattern of thy butcheries.

O ! gentlemen : see, see ! dead Henry's wounds  
Open their congeal'd mouths and bleed afresh. 56

Blush, blush, thou lump of foul deformity,  
For 'tis thy presence that exhales this blood  
From cold and empty veins, where no blood dwells :  
Thy deed, inhuman and unnatural, 60  
Provokes this deluge most unnatural.

O God ! which this blood mad'st, revenge his death ;  
O earth ! which this blood drink'st, revenge his death ;  
Either heaven with lightning strike the murderer dead,  
Or earth, gape open wide, and eat him quick, 65  
As thou dost swallow up this good king's blood,  
Which his hell-govern'd arm hath butchered !

GLOUCESTER. Lady, you know no rules of charity,  
Which renders good for bad, blessings for curses. 69

ANNE. Villain, thou know'st no law of God nor man :  
No beast so fierce but knows some touch of pity.

GLOUCESTER. But I know none, and therefore am  
no beast. 72

ANNE. O ! wonderful, when devils tell the truth.

GLOUCESTER. More wonderful when angels are so angry.  
Vouchsafe, divine perfection of a woman,  
Of these supposed evils, to give me leave, 76  
By circumstance, but to acquit myself.

ANNE. Vouchsafe, diffus'd infection of a man,  
For these known evils, but to give me leave,  
By circumstance, to curse thy cursed self. 80

GLOUCESTER. Fairer than tongue can name thee, let  
me have  
Some patient leisure to excuse myself.

ANNE. Foul'er than heart can think thee, thou canst  
make



No excuse current, but to hang thyself. 84

GLOUCESTER. By such despair I should accuse myself.

ANNE. And by despairing shouldst thou stand excus'd  
For doing worthy vengeance on thyself,

Which didst unworthy slaughter upon others. 88

GLOUCESTER. Say that I slew them not.

ANNE. Then say they were not slain :  
But dead they are, and, devilish slave, by thee.

GLOUCESTER. I did not kill your husband.

ANNE. Why, then he is alive.

GLOUCESTER. Nay, he is dead ; and slain by Edward's hand. 92

ANNE. In thy foul throat thou liest : Queen Margaret  
saw

Thy murderous falchion smoking in his blood ;  
The which thou once didst bend against her breast,  
But that thy brothers beat aside the point. 96

GLOUCESTER. I was provoked by her slanderous  
tongue,

That laid their guilt upon my guiltless shoulders.

ANNE. Thou was provoked by thy bloody mind,  
That never dreamt on aught but butcheries. 100  
Didst thou not kill this king ?

GLOUCESTER. I grant ye.

ANNE. Dost grant me, hedgehog ? Then, God grant  
me too

Thou mayst be damned for that wicked deed ! 104

O ! he was gentle, mild, and virtuous.

GLOUCESTER. The fitter for the King of heaven, that  
hath him.

ANNE. He is in heaven, where thou shalt never come.

GLOUCESTER. Let him thank me, that help'd to send  
him thither ; 108

For he was fitter for that place than earth.

ANNE. And thou unfit for any place but hell.

GLOUCESTER. Yes, one place else, if you will hear me  
name it.

ANNE. Some dungeon.

GLOUCESTER. Your bed-chamber. 112

ANNE. Ill rest betide the chamber where thou liest !

GLOUCESTER. So will it, madam, till I lie with you.

ANNE. I hope so.

GLOUCESTER. I know so. But, gentle Lady Anne,

To leave this keen encounter of our wits, 116  
And fall somewhat into a slower method,  
Is not the causer of the timeless deaths  
Of these Plantagenets, Henry and Edward,  
As blameful as the executioner ? 120

ANNE. Thou wast the cause, and most accurs'd effect.

GLOUCESTER. Your beauty was the cause of that effect ;  
Your beauty, that did haunt me in my sleep  
To undertake the death of all the world, 124  
So might I live one hour in your sweet bosom.

ANNE. If I thought that, I tell thee, homicide,  
These nails should rend that beauty from my cheeks.

GLOUCESTER. These eyes could not endure that  
beauty's wrack ; 128

You should not blemish it if I stood by :  
As all the world is cheered by the sun,  
So I by that ; it is my day, my life.

ANNE. Black night o'ershade thy day, and death  
thy life ! 132

GLOUCESTER. Curse not thyself, fair creature ; thou  
art both.

ANNE. I would I were, to be reveng'd on thee.

GLOUCESTER. It is a quarrel most unnatural,  
To be reveng'd on him that loveth thee. 136

ANNE. It is a quarrel just and reasonable,  
To be reveng'd on him that kill'd my husband.

GLOUCESTER. He that bereft thee, lady, of thy husband,  
Did it to help thee to a better husband. 140

ANNE. His better doth not breathe upon the earth.

GLOUCESTER. He lives that loves thee better than he  
could.

ANNE. Name him.

GLOUCESTER. Plantagenet.

ANNE. Why, that was he.

GLOUCESTER. The selfsame name, but one of better  
nature. 144

ANNE. Where is he ?

GLOUCESTER. Here. [She spitteth at him.] Why  
dost thou spit at me ?

ANNE. Would it were mortal poison, for thy sake !

GLOUCESTER. Never came poison from so sweet a  
place.

ANNE. Never hung poison on a fouler toad. 148

Out of my sight ! thou dost infect mine eyes.

GLOUCESTER. Thine eyes, sweet lady, have infected mine.

ANNE. Would they were basilisks, to strike thee dead !

GLOUCESTER. I would they were, that I might die at once ; 152

For now they kill me with a living death.

Those eyes of thine from mine have drawn salt tears,

Sham'd their aspects with store of childish drops ;

These eyes, which never shed remorseful tear ; 156

No, when my father York and Edward wept

To hear the piteous moan that Rutland made

When black-fac'd Clifford shook his sword at him ;

Nor when thy warlike father like a child, 160

Told the sad story of my father's death,

And twenty times made pause to sob and weep,

That all the standers-by had wet their cheeks,

Like trees bedash'd with rain : in that sad time 164

My manly eyes did scorn an humble tear ;

And what these sorrows could not thence exhale,

Thy beauty hath, and made them blind with weeping.

I never su'd to friend nor enemy ; 168

My tongue could never learn sweet smoothing words ;

But, now thy beauty is propos'd my fee,

My proud heart sues, and prompts my tongue to speak.

[She looks scornfully at him.

Teach not thy lip such scorn, for it was made 172

For kissing, lady, not for such contempt.

If thy revengeful heart cannot forgive,

Lo ! here I lend thee this sharp-pointed sword ;

Which if thou please to hide in this true breast, 176

And let the soul forth that adoreth thee,

I lay it open to the deadly stroke,

And humbly beg the death upon my knee.

[He lays his breast open : she offers at it with his sword.

Nay, do not pause ; for I did kill King Henry ; 180

But 'twas thy beauty that provoked me.

Nay, now dispatch ; 'twas I that stabb'd young Edward ;

[She again offers at his breast.

But 'twas thy heavenly face that set me on.

[She lets fall the sword.

Take up the sword again, or take up me. 184

ANNE. Arise, dissembler : though I wish thy death,

I will not be thy executioner.

GLOUCESTER. Then bid me kill myself, and I will do it.

ANNE. I have already.

GLOUCESTER. That was in thy rage : 188

Speak it again, and, even with the word,  
This hand, which for thy love did kill thy love,  
Shall, for thy love, kill a far truer love :

To both their deaths shalt thou be accessary. 192

ANNE. I would I knew thy heart.

GLOUCESTER. 'Tis figur'd in my tongue.

ANNE. I fear me both are false.

GLOUCESTER. Then never man was true. 196

ANNE. Well, well, put up your sword.

GLOUCESTER. Say, then, my peace is made.

ANNE. That shalt thou know hereafter.

GLOUCESTER. But shall I live in hope ? 200

ANNE. All men, I hope, live so.

GLOUCESTER. Vouchsafe to wear this ring.

ANNE. To take is not to give. [She puts on the ring.

GLOUCESTER. Look, how my ring encompasseth thy  
finger, 204

Even so thy breast encloseth my poor heart ;  
Wear both of them, for both of them are thine.

And if thy poor devoted servant may  
But beg one favour at thy gracious hand, 208  
Thou dost confirm his happiness for ever.

ANNE. What is it ?

GLOUCESTER. That it may please you leave these sad  
designs

To him that hath most cause to be a mourner, 212

And presently repair to Crosby-place ;

Where, after I have solemnly interr'd

At Chertsey monastery this noble king,

And wet his grave with my repentant tears, 216

I will with all expedient duty see you :

For divers unknown reasons, I beseech you,  
Grant me this boon.

ANNE. With all my heart ; and much it joys me too  
To see you are become so penitent. 221

Tressel and Berkeley, go along with me.

GLOUCESTER. Bid me farewell.

ANNE. 'Tis more than you deserve ;  
But since you teach me how to flatter you, 224

Imagine I have said farewell already.

[*Exeunt* LADY ANNE, TRESEL, and BERKELEY.

GLOUCESTER. Sirs, take up the corse.

GENTLEMAN. Towards Chertsey, noble lord ?

GLOUCESTER. No, to White-Friars ; there attend my coming.

[*Exeunt* all but GLOUCESTER.

Was ever woman in this humour woo'd ? 229

Was ever woman in this humour won ?

I'll have her ; but I will not keep her long.

What ! I, that kill'd her husband, and his father, 232

To take her in her heart's extremest hate ;

With curses in her mouth, tears in her eyes,

The bleeding witness of her hatred by ;

Having God, her conscience, and these bars against me,

And nothing I to back my suit withal 237

But the plain devil and dissembling looks,

And yet to win her, all the world to nothing !

Ha ! 240

Hath she forgot already that brave prince,

Edward, her lord, whom I, some three months since,

Stabb'd in my angry mood at Tewksbury ?

A sweeter and a lovelier gentleman, 244

Fram'd in the prodigality of nature,

Young, valiant, wise, and, no doubt, right royal,

The spacious world cannot again afford :

And will she yet abase her eyes on me, 248

That cropp'd the golden prime of this sweet prince,

And made her widow to a woeful bed ?

On me, whose all not equals Edward's moiety ?

On me, that halt and am mis-shapen thus ? 252

My dukedom to a beggarly denier

I do mistake my person all this while :

Upon my life, she finds, although I cannot,

Myself to be a marvellous proper man. 256

I'll be at charges for a looking-glass,

And entertain a score or two of tailors,

To study fashions to adorn my body :

Since I am crept in favour with myself, 260

I will maintain it with some little cost.

But first I'll turn yon fellow in his grave,

And then return lamenting to my love.

Shine out, fair sun, till I have bought a glass, 264

That I may see my shadow as I pass.

[*Exit.*

SCENE III.—London. A Room in the Palace.

Enter QUEEN ELIZABETH, LORD RIVERS, and LORD GREY.

RIVERS. Have patience, madam : there's no doubt  
his majesty

Will soon recover his accustom'd health.

GREY. In that you brook it ill, it makes him worse :  
Therefore, for God's sake, entertain good comfort, 4  
And cheer his Grace with quick and merry words.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. If he were dead, what would betide  
on me?

GREY. No other harm but loss of such a lord.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. The loss of such a lord includes  
all harms. 8

GREY. The heavens have bless'd you with a goodly  
son,

To be your comforter when he is gone.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Ah ! he is young ; and his  
minority

Is put into the trust of Richard Gloucester, 12  
A man that loves not me, nor none of you.

RIVERS. Is it concluded he shall be protector ?

QUEEN ELIZABETH. It is determin'd, not concluded  
yet :

But so it must be if the king miscarry. 16

Enter BUCKINGHAM and STANLEY.

GREY. Here come the Lords of Buckingham and  
Stanley.

BUCKINGHAM. Good time of day unto your royal  
Grace !

STANLEY. God make your majesty joyful as you have  
been !

QUEEN ELIZABETH. The Countess Richmond, good my  
Lord of Stanley, 20

To your good prayer will scarcely say amen.

Yet, Stanley, notwithstanding she's your wife,

And loves not me, be you, good lord, assur'd

I hate not you for her proud arrogance. 24

STANLEY. I do beseech you, either not believe

The envious slanders of her false accusers ;

Or, if she be accus'd on true report,

Bear with her weakness, which, I think, proceeds 28

From wayward sickness, and no grounded malice.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Saw you the king to-day, my Lord of Stanley ?

STANLEY. But now the Duke of Buckingham and I Are come from visiting his majesty. 32

QUEEN ELIZABETH. What likelihood of his amendment, lords ?

BUCKINGHAM. Madam, good hope ; his Grace speaks cheerfully.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. God grant him health ! did you confer with him ?

BUCKINGHAM. Ay, madam : he desires to make atonement 36

Between the Duke of Gloucester and your brothers,  
And between them and my lord chamberlain ;  
And sent to warn them to his royal presence.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Would all were well ! But that will never be. 40

I fear our happiness is at the highest.

Enter GLOUCESTER, HASTINGS, and DORSET.

GLOUCESTER. They do me wrong, and I will not endure it :

Who are they that complain unto the king,  
That I, forsooth, am stern and love them not ? 41  
By holy Paul, they love his Grace but lightly  
That fill his ears with such dissentious rumours.

Because I cannot flatter and speak fair,  
Smile in men's faces, smooth, deceive, and cog, 48  
Duck with French nods and apish courtesy,  
I must be held a rancorous enemy.

Cannot a plain man live and think no harm,  
But thus his simple truth must be abus'd 52  
By silken, sly, insinuating Jacks ?

GREY. To whom in all this presence speaks your Grace ?

GLOUCESTER. To thee, that hast nor honesty nor grace. 55

When have I injur'd thee ? when done thee wrong ?  
Or thee ? or thee ? or any of your faction ?

A plague upon you all ! His royal person,—  
Whom God preserve better than you would wish !—  
Cannot be quiet scarce a breathing-while, 60

But you must trouble him with lewd complaints.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Brother of Gloucester, you mistake the matter.

The king, on his own royal disposition,  
And not provok'd by any suitor else, 64  
Aiming, belike, at your interior hatred,  
That in your outward action shows itself  
Against my children, brothers, and myself,  
Makes him to send ; that thereby he may gather 68  
The ground of your ill-will, and so remove it.

GLOUCESTER. I cannot tell ; the world is grown so bad  
That wrens make prey where eagles dare not perch :  
Since every Jack became a gentleman 72  
There 's many a gentle person made a Jack.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Come, come, we know your meaning, brother Gloucester ;  
You envy my advancement and my friends'.  
God grant we never may have need of you ! 76

GLOUCESTER. Meantime, God grants that we have  
need of you :  
Our brother is imprison'd by your means,  
Myself disgrac'd, and the nobility  
Held in contempt ; while great promotions 80  
Are daily given to ennoble those  
That scarce, some two days since, were worth a noble.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. By him that rais'd me to this  
careful height  
From that contented hap which I enjoy'd, 84  
I never did incense his majesty  
Against the Duke of Clarence, but have been  
An earnest advocate to plead for him.  
My lord, you do me shameful injury, 88  
Falsely to draw me in these vile suspects.

GLOUCESTER. You may deny that you were not the  
mean  
Of my Lord Hastings' late imprisonment.

RIVERS. She may, my lord ; for— 92

GLOUCESTER. She may, Lord Rivers ! why. who  
knows not so ?

She may do more, sir, than denying that :  
She may help you to many fair preferments,  
And then deny her aiding hand therein, 96  
And lay those honours on your high desert.



What may she not ? She may,—ay, marry, may she,—  
RIVERS. What, marry, may she ?

GLOUCESTER. What, marry, may she ! marry with  
a king, 100

A bachelor, a handsome stripling too.

I wis your grandam had a worser match.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. My Lord of Gloucester, I have too  
long borne

Your blunt upbraiding and your bitter scoffs ; 104

By heaven, I will acquaint his majesty

Of those gross taunts that oft I have endur'd.

I had rather be a country servantmaid

Than a great queen, with this condition, 108

To be so baited, scorn'd, and stormed at :

Small joy have I in being England's queen.

Enter QUEEN MARGARET, behind.

QUEEN MARGARET. [Apart.] And lessen'd be that small,  
God, I beseech him !

Thy honour, state, and seat is due to me. 112

GLOUCESTER. What ! threat you me with telling of  
the king ?

Tell him, and spare not : look, what I have said

I will avouch in presence of the king :

I dare adventure to be sent to the Tower. 116

'Tis time to speak ; my pains are quite forgot.

QUEEN MARGARET. [Apart.] Out, devil ! I remember  
them too well :

Thou kill'dst my husband Henry in the Tower,

And Edward, my poor son, at Tewksbury. 120

GLOUCESTER. Ere you were queen, ay, or your husband  
king,

I was a pack-horse in his great affairs,

A weeder-out of his proud adversaries,

A liberal rewarder of his friends ; 124

To royalize his blood I spilt mine own.

QUEEN MARGARET. Ay, and much better blood than  
his, or thine.

GLOUCESTER. In all which time you and your husband  
Grey

Were factious for the house of Lancaster ; 128

And, Rivers, so were you. Was not your husband

In Margaret's battle at Saint Alban's slain ?

Let me put in your minds, if you forget,  
What you have been ere now, and what you are ;  
Withal, what I have been, and what I am. 133

QUEEN MARGARET. A murderous villain, and so still  
thou art.

GLOUCESTER. Poor Clarence did forsake his father,  
Warwick,

Ay, and forswore himself,—which Jesu pardon !—

QUEEN MARGARET. Which God revenge ! 137

GLOUCESTER. To fight on Edward's party for the  
crown ;

And for his meed, poor lord, he is mew'd up.

I would to God my heart were flint, like Edward's ;

Or Edward's soft and pitiful, like mine : 141

I am too childish-foolish for this world.

QUEEN MARGARET. Hie thee to hell for shame, and  
leave this world,

Thou cacodemon ! there thy kingdom is. 144

RIVERS. My Lord of Gloucester, in those busy days

Which here you urge to prove us enemies,

We follow'd then our lord, our lawful king ;

So should we you, if you should be our king. 148

GLOUCESTER. If I should be ! I had rather be a pedlar.  
Far be it from my heart the thought thereof !

QUEEN ELIZABETH. As little joy, my lord, as you  
suppose

You should enjoy, were you this country's king. 152

As little joy you may suppose in me

That I enjoy, being the queen thereof.

QUEEN MARGARET. As little joy enjoys the queen  
thereof ;

For I am she, and altogether joyless. 156

I can no longer hold me patient. [Advancing.

Hear me, you wrangling pirates, that fall out

In sharing that which you have pill'd from me !

Which of you trembles not that looks on me ? 160

If not, that, I being queen, you bow like subjects,

Yet that, by you depos'd, you quake like rebels ?

Ah ! gentle villain, do not turn away.

GLOUCESTER. Foul wrinkled witch, what makest thou  
in my sight ? 164

QUEEN MARGARET. But repetition of what thou hast  
marr'd ;

That will I make before I let thee go.

GLoucester. Wert thou not banished on pain of death?

QUEEN MARGARET. I was ; but I do find more pain in banishment 168

Than death can yield me here by my abode.

A husband and a son thou owest to me ;

And thou, a kingdom ; all of you, allegiance :

This sorrow that I have, by right is yours, 172

And all the pleasures you usurp are mine.

GLoucester. The curse my noble father laid on thee, When thou didst crown his warlike brows with paper,

And with thy scorns drew'st rivers from his eyes ; 176

And then, to dry them, gavest the duke a clout

Steep'd in the faultless blood of pretty Rutland :

His curses, then from bitterness of soul

Denounc'd against thee, are all fall'n upon thee ; 180

And God, not we, hath plagu'd thy bloody deed.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. So just is God, to right the innocent.

HASTINGS. O ! 'twas the foulest deed to slay that babe, And the most merciless, that e'er was heard of. 184

RIVERS. Tyrants themselves wept when it was reported.

DORSET. No man but prophesied revenge for it.

BUCKINGHAM. Northumberland, then present, wept to see it.

QUEEN MARGARET. What ! were you snarling all before I came, 188

Ready to catch each other by the throat,

And turn you all your hatred now on me ?

Did York's dread curse prevail so much with heaven

That Henry's death, my lovely Edward's death, 192

Their kingdom's loss, my woeful banishment,

Should all but answer for that peevish brat ?

Can curses pierce the clouds and enter heaven ?

Why then, give way, dull clouds, to my quick curses !

Though not by war, by surfeit die your king, 197

As ours by murder, to make him a king !

Edward, thy son, that now is Prince of Wales,

For Edward, my son, which was Prince of Wales, 200

Die in his youth by like untimely violence !

Thyself a queen, for me that was a queen,

Outlive thy glory, like my wretched self !

Long mayst thou live to wail thy children's loss,  
 And see another, as I see thee now,  
 Deck'd in thy rights, as thou art stall'd in mine !  
 Long die thy happy days before thy death ;  
 And, after many lengthen'd hours of grief, 208  
 Die neither mother, wife, nor England's queen !  
 Rivers, and Dorset, you were standers by,—  
 And so wast thou, Lord Hastings,—when my son  
 Was stabb'd with bloody daggers : God, I pray him,  
 That none of you may live your natural age, 213  
 But by some unlook'd accident cut off.

GLOUCESTER. Have done thy charm, thou hateful  
 wither'd hag !

QUEEN MARGARET. And leave out thee ? stay, dog, for  
 thou shalt hear me. 216

If heaven have any grievous plague in store  
 Exceeding those that I can wish upon thee,  
 O ! let them keep it till thy sins be ripe,  
 And then hurl down their indignation 220  
 On thee, the troubler of the poor world's peace.  
 The worm of conscience still begnaw thy soul !  
 Thy friends suspect for traitors while thou livest  
 And take deep traitors for thy dearest friends ! 224  
 No sleep close up that deadly eye of thine,  
 Unless it be while some tormenting dream  
 Affrights thee with a hell of ugly devils !  
 Thou elvish-mark'd, abortive, rooting hog ! 228  
 Thou that wast seal'd in thy nativity  
 The slave of nature and the son of hell !  
 Thou slander of thy mother's heavy womb !  
 Thou loathed issue of thy father's loins ! 232  
 Thou rag of honour ! thou detested—

GLOUCESTER. Margaret !

QUEEN MARGARET. Richard !

GLOUCESTER.

Ha !

QUEEN MARGARET.

I call thee not.

GLOUCESTER. I cry thee mercy then, for I did think  
 That thou hadst call'd me all these bitter names. 236

QUEEN MARGARET. Why, so I did ; but look'd for no  
 reply.

O ! let me make the period to my curse.

GLOUCESTER. 'Tis done by me, and ends in 'Mar-  
 garet'.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Thus have you breath'd your curse  
against yourself. 240

QUEEN MARGARET. Poor painted queen, vain flourish  
of my fortune !

Why strew'st thou sugar on that bottled spider,  
Whose deadly web ensnareth thee about ?

Fool, fool ! thou whet'st a knife to kill thyself. 244

The day will come that thou shalt wish for me

To help thee curse this poisonous bunch-back'd toad.

HASTINGS. False-boding woman, end thy frantic curse,  
Lest to thy harm thou move our patience. 248

QUEEN MARGARET. Foul shame upon you ! you have  
all mov'd mine.

RIVERS. Were you well serv'd, you would be taught  
your duty.

QUEEN MARGARET. To serve me well, you all should  
do me duty, 251

Teach me to be your queen, and you my subjects :

O ! serve me well, and teach yourselves that duty.

DORSET. Dispute not with her, she is lunatic.

QUEEN MARGARET. Peace ! Master marquess, you are  
malapert :

Your fire-new stamp of honour is scarce current. 256

O ! that your young nobility could judge

What 'twere to lose it, and be miserable !

They that stand high have many blasts to shake them,

And if they fall, they dash themselves to pieces. 260

GLOUCESTER. Good counsel, marry : learn it, learn it,  
marquess.

DORSET. It touches you, my lord, as much as me.

GLOUCESTER. Ay, and much more ; but I was born  
so high,

Our aery buildeth in the cedar's top, 264

And dallies with the wind, and scorns the sun.

QUEEN MARGARET. And turns the sun to shade ; alas !  
alas !

Witness my son, now in the shade of death ;

Whose bright out-shining beams thy cloudy wrath

Hath in eternal darkness folded up. 269

Your aery buildeth in our aery's nest :

O God ! that seest it, do not suffer it ;

As it was won with blood, lost be it so ! 272

BUCKINGHAM. Peace, peace ! for shame, if not for charity.

QUEEN MARGARET. Urge neither charity nor shame to me :

Uncharitably with me have you dealt,  
And shamefully my hopes by you are butcher'd. 276  
My charity is outrage, life my shame ;  
And in that shame still live my sorrow's rage !

BUCKINGHAM. Have done, have done.

QUEEN MARGARET. O princely Buckingham ! I'll kiss  
thy hand, 280

In sign of league and amity with thee :  
Now fair befall thee and thy noble house !  
Thy garments are not spotted with our blood,  
Nor thou within the compass of my curse. 284

BUCKINGHAM. Nor no one here ; for curses never pass  
The lips of those that breathe them in the air.

QUEEN MARGARET. I will not think but they ascend  
the sky,

And there awake God's gentle-sleeping peace. 288

O Buckingham ! take heed of yonder dog :  
Look, when he fawns, he bites ; and when he bites  
His venom tooth will rankle to the death :  
Have not to do with him, beware of him ; 292  
Sin, death and hell have set their marks on him,  
And all their ministers attend on him.

GLOUCESTER. What doth she say, my Lord of Buck-  
ingham ?

BUCKINGHAM. Nothing that I respect, my gracious  
lord. 296

QUEEN MARGARET. What ! dost thou scorn me for my  
gentle counsel,

And soothe the devil that I warn thee from ?  
O ! but remember this another day,  
When he shall split thy very heart with sorrow, 300  
And say poor Margaret was a prophetess.  
Live each of you the subject to his hate,  
And he to yours, and all of you to God's ! [Exit.

HASTINGS. My hair doth stand on end to hear her  
curses. 304

RIVERS. And so doth mine. I muse why she's at  
liberty.

GLOUCESTER. I cannot blame her : by God's holy  
mother,

She hath had too much wrong, and I repent

My part thereof that I have done to her. 308

QUEEN ELIZABETH. I never did her any, to my knowledge.

GLOUCESTER. Yet you have all the vantage of her wrong.

I was too hot to do somebody good,  
That is too cold in thinking of it now. 312

Marry, as for Clarence, he is well repaid ;

He is frank'd up to fattening for his pains :

God pardon them that are the cause thereof !

RIVERS. A virtuous and a Christian-like conclusion,  
To pray for them that have done scath to us. 317

GLOUCESTER. So do I ever, [Aside.] being well-advis'd ;  
For had I curs'd now, I had curs'd myself.

Enter CATESBY.

CATESBY. Madam, his majesty doth call for you ;  
And for your Grace ; and you, my noble lords. 321

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Catesby, I come. Lords, will you go with me ?

RIVERS. We wait upon your Grace.

[Exeunt all but GLOUCESTER.]

GLOUCESTER. I do the wrong, and first begin to brawl.  
The secret mischiefs that I set abroad 325

I lay unto the grievous charge of others.

Clarence, whom I, indeed, have cast in darkness,  
I do beweepe to many simple gulls ; 328

Namely, to Stanley, Hastings, Buckingham ;

And tell them 'tis the queen and her allies

That stir the king against the duke my brother.\*  
Now they believe it ; and withal whet me 332

To be reveng'd on Rivers, Vaughan, Grey ;

But then I sigh, and, with a piece of scripture,

Tell them that God bids us do good for evil :  
And thus I clothe my naked villany 336

With odd old ends stolen forth of holy writ,

And seem a saint when most I play the devil.

Enter two Murderers.

But soft ! here come my executioners.

How now, my hardy, stout, resolved mates ! 340

Are you now going to dispatch this thing ?

FIRST MURDERER. We are, my lord ; and come to have the warrant,

That we may be admitted where he is.

GLOUCESTER. Well thought upon; I have it here  
about me: [Gives the warrant.

When you have done, repair to Crosby-place. 345

But, sirs, be sudden in the execution,

Withal obdurate, do not hear him plead;

For Clarence is well-spoken, and perhaps 348

May move your hearts to pity, if you mark him.

FIRST MURDERER. Tut, tut, my lord, we will not stand  
to prate;

Talkers are no good doers: be assur'd

We go to use our hands and not our tongues. 352

GLOUCESTER. Your eyes drop millstones, when fools'  
eyes fall tears:

I like you, lads; about your business straight;

Go, go, dispatch.

FIRST MURDERER. We will, my noble lord. [Exeunt.

SCENE IV.—The Same. The Tower.

Enter CLARENCE and BRAKENBURY.

BRAKENBURY. Why looks your Grace so heavily to-  
day?

CLARENCE. O, I have pass'd a miserable night,

So full of ugly sights, of ghastly dreams,

That, as I am a Christian faithful man, 4

I would not spend another such a night,

Though 'twere to buy a world of happy days,

So full of dismal terror was the time.

BRAKENBURY. What was your dream, my lord? I  
pray you, tell me. 8

CLARENCE. Methought that I had broken from the  
Tower,

And was embark'd to cross to Burgundy;

And in my company my brother Gloucester,

Who from my cabin tempted me to walk 12

Upon the hatches: thence we look'd toward England,

And cited up a thousand heavy times,

During the wars of York and Lancaster,

That had befall'n us. As we pac'd along 16

Upon the giddy footing of the hatches,

Methought that Gloucester stumbled; and, in falling,

Struck me, that thought to stay him, overboard,



Into the tumbling billows of the main. 20  
 Lord, Lord ! methought what pain it was to drown :  
 What dreadful noise of water in mine ears !  
 What sights of ugly death within mine eyes !  
 Methought I saw a thousand fearful wracks ; 24  
 A thousand men that fishes gnaw'd upon ;  
 Wedges of gold, great anchors, heaps of pearl,  
 Inestimable stones, unvalu'd jewels,  
 All scatter'd in the bottom of the sea. 28  
 Some lay in dead men's skulls ; and in those holes  
 Where eyes did once inhabit, there were crept,  
 As 'twere in scorn of eyes, reflecting gems,  
 That woo'd the slimy bottom of the deep, 32  
 And mock'd the dead bones that lay scatter'd by.

BRAKENBURY. Had you such leisure in the time of  
 death

To gaze upon these secrets of the deep ?

CLARENCE. Methought I had ; and often did I strive  
 To yield the ghost ; but still the envious flood 37  
 Stopt in my soul, and would not let it forth  
 To find the empty, vast, and wandering air ;  
 But smother'd it within my panting bulk, 40  
 Which almost burst to belch it in the sea.

BRAKENBURY. Awak'd you not with this sore agony ?

CLARENCE. No, no, my dream was lengthen'd after life ;  
 O ! then began the tempest to my soul. 44  
 I pass'd, methought, the melancholy flood,  
 With that grim ferryman which poets write of,  
 Unto the kingdom of perpetual night.  
 The first that there did greet my stranger soul, 48  
 Was my great father-in-law, renowned Warwick ;  
 Who cried aloud, ' What scourge for perjury  
 Can this dark monarchy afford false Clarence ? '  
 And so he vanish'd : then came wandering by 52  
 A shadow like an angel, with bright hair  
 Dabbled in blood ; and he shriek'd out aloud,  
 ' Clarence is come,—false, fleeting, perjur'd Clarence,  
 That stabb'd me in the field by Tewksbury ;— 56  
 Seize on him ! Furies, take him unto torment.'  
 With that, methought, a legion of foul fiends  
 Environ'd me, and howled in mine ears  
 Such hideous cries, that with the very noise 60  
 I trembling wak'd, and, for a season after,

Could not believe but that I was in hell,  
Such terrible impression made my dream.

BRAKENBURY. No marvel, lord, though it affrighted  
you ; 64

I am afraid, methinks, to hear you tell it.

CLARENCE. O Brakenbury ! I have done these things  
That now give evidence against my soul,  
For Edward's sake ; and see how he requites me. 68  
O God ! if my deep prayers cannot appease thee,  
But thou wilt be aveng'd on my misdeeds,  
Yet execute thy wrath on me alone :

O ! spare my guiltless wife and my poor children. 72  
I pray thee, gentle keeper, stay by me ;  
My soul is heavy, and I fain would sleep.

BRAKENBURY. I will, my lord. God give your Grace  
good rest ! [CLARENCE sleeps.

Sorrow breaks seasons and reposing hours, 76  
Makes the night morning, and the noon-tide night.  
Princes have but their titles for their glories,  
An outward honour for an inward toil ;  
And, for unfelt imaginations, 80  
They often feel a world of restless cares :  
So that, between their titles and low names,  
There 's nothing differs but the outward tame.

Enter the two Murderers.

FIRST MURDERER. Ho ! who 's here ? 84

BRAKENBURY. What wouldst thou, fellow ? and how  
cam'st thou hither ?

FIRST MURDERER. I would speak with Clarence, and  
I came hither on my legs.

BRAKENBURY. What ! so brief ? 88

SECOND MURDERER. 'Tis better, sir, than to be  
tedious.—

Let him see our commission, and talk no more.

[A paper is delivered to BRAKENBURY, who reads it.

BRAKENBURY. I am, in this, commanded to deliver  
The noble Duke of Clarence to your hands : 92  
I will not reason what is meant hereby,  
Because I will be guiltless of the meaning.  
There lies the duke asleep, and there the keys.  
I'll to the king ;, and signify to him 96  
That thus I have resign'd to you my charge.

FIRST MURDERER. You may, sir ; 'tis a point of wisdom : fare you well. [Exit BRANFLEURY.]

SECOND MURDERER. What ! shall we stab him as he sleeps ? 101

FIRST MURDERER. No ; he'll say 'twas done cowardly, when he wakes.

SECOND MURDERER. When he wakes ! why, fool, he shall never wake till the judgment-day. 105

FIRST MURDERER. Why, then he'll say we stabbed him sleeping.

SECOND MURDERER. The urging of that word ' judgment ' hath bred a kind of remorse in me. 109

FIRST MURDERER. What ! art thou afraid ?

SECOND MURDERER. Not to kill him, having a warrant for it ; but to be damn'd for killing him, from the which no warrant can defend me. 113

FIRST MURDERER. I thought thou hadst been resolute.

SECOND MURDERER. So I am, to let him live.

FIRST MURDERER. I'll back to the Duke of Gloucester, and tell him so. 117

SECOND MURDERER. Nay, I prithee, stay a little : I hope my holy humour will change ; it was wont to hold me but while one tells twenty. 120

FIRST MURDERER. How dost thou feel thyself now ?

SECOND MURDERER. Some certain dregs of conscience are yet within me.

FIRST MURDERER. Remember our reward when the deed's done. 125

SECOND MURDERER. 'Zounds ! he dies : I had forgot the reward.

FIRST MURDERER. Where's thy conscience now ?

SECOND MURDERER. In the Duke of Gloucester's purse.

FIRST MURDERER. So when he opens his purse to give us our reward, thy conscience flies out. 132

SECOND MURDERER. 'Tis no matter ; let it go : there's few or none will entertain it.

FIRST MURDERER. What if it come to thee again ?

SECOND MURDERER. I'll not meddle with it ; it makes a man a coward ; a man cannot steal, but it accuseth him ; a man cannot swear, but it checks him ; a man cannot lie with his neighbour's wife, but it detects him : 'tis a blushing shamefast spirit, that mutinies in

a man's bosom ; it fills one full of obstacles ; it made me once restore a purse of gold that I found ; it beggars any man that keeps it ; it is turned out of all towns and cities for a dangerous thing ; and every man that means to live well, endeavours to trust to himself and live without it.

FIRST MURDERER. 'Zounds ! it is even now at my elbow, persuading me not to kill the duke. 148

SECOND MURDERER. Take the devil in thy mind, and believe him, not : he would insinuate with thee but to make thee sigh.

FIRST MURDERER. Tut, I am strong-framed ; he cannot prevail with me. 153

SECOND MURDERER. Spoke like a tall fellow that respects his reputation. Come, shall we to this gear ?

FIRST MURDERER. Take him over the costard with the hilts of thy sword, and then throw him into the malmsey-butt in the next room.

SECOND MURDERER. O, excellent device ! make a sop of him. 160

FIRST MURDERER. Soft ! he wakes.

SECOND MURDERER. Strike !

FIRST MURDERER. No, we'll reason with him.

CLARENCE. Where art thou, keeper ? give me a cup of wine. 165

FIRST MURDERER. You shall have wine enough, my lord, anon.

CLARENCE. In God's name, what art thou ? 168

FIRST MURDERER. A man, as you are.

CLARENCE. But not, as I am, royal.

FIRST MURDERER. Nor you, as we are, loyal.

CLARENCE. Thy voice is thunder, but thy looks are humble. 172

FIRST MURDERER. My voice is now the king's, my looks mine own.

CLARENCE. How darkly, and how deadly dost thou speak !

Your eyes do menace me : why look you pale ?

Who sent you hither ? Wherefore do you come ?

BOTH MURDERERS. To, to, to— 177

CLARENCE. To murder me ?

BOTH MURDERERS. Ay, ay.

CLARENCE. You scarcely have the hearts to tell me so,

And therefore cannot have the hearts to do it. 181

Wherein, my friends, have I offended you ?

FIRST MURDERER. Offended us you have not, but the king.

CLARENCE. I shall be reconcil'd to him again. 184

SECOND MURDERER. Never, my lord ; therefore prepare to die.

CLARENCE. Are you call'd forth from out a world of men

To slay the innocent ? What is my offence ?

Where is the evidence that doth accuse me ? 188

What lawful quest have given their verdict up

Unto the frowning judge ? or who pronounc'd

The bitter sentence of poor Clarence' death ?

Before I be convict by course of law, 192

To threaten me with death is most unlawful.

I charge you, as you hope to have redemption

By Christ's dear blood shed for our grievous sins,

That you depart and lay no hands on me ; 196

The deed you undertake is damnable.

FIRST MURDERER. What we will do, we do upon command.

SECOND MURDERER. And he that hath commanded is our king.

CLARENCE. Erroneous vassal ! the great King of kings Hath in the table of his law commanded 201

That thou shalt do no murder : will you, then,

Spurn at his edict and fulfil a man's ?

Take heed ; for he holds vengeance in his hand,

To hurl upon their heads that break his law. 205

SECOND MURDERER. And that same vengeance doth he hurl on thee,

For false forswearing and for murder too :

Thou didst receive the sacrament to fight 208

In quarrel of the house of Lancaster.

FIRST MURDERER. And, like a traitor to the name of God,

Didst break that vow, and, with thy treacherous blade

Unripp'dst the bowels of thy sovereign's son. 212

SECOND MURDERER. Whom thou wast sworn to cherish and defend.

FIRST MURDERER. How canst thou urge God's dreadful law to us,

When thou hast broke it in such dear degree ?

CLARENCE. Alas ! for whose sake did I that ill deed ?

For Edward, for my brother, for his sake : 217

He sends you not to murder me for this ;

For in that sin he is as deep as I.

If God will be avenged for the deed, 220

O ! know you yet, he doth it publicly :

Take not the quarrel from his powerful arm ;

He needs no indirect or lawless course

To cut off those that have offended him. 224

FIRST MURDERER. Who made thee then a bloody  
minister,

When gallant-springing, brave Plantagenet,

That princely novice, was struck dead by thee ?

CLARENCE. My brother's love, the devil, and my rage.

FIRST MURDERER. Thy brother's love, our duty, and  
thy fault, 229

Provoke us hither now to slaughter thee.

CLARENCE. If you do love my brother, hate not me ;  
I am his brother, and I love him well. 232

If you are hir'd for meed, go back again,

And I will send you to my brother Gloucester,

Who shall reward you better for my life

Than Edward will for tidings of my death. 236

SECOND MURDERER. You are deceiv'd, your brother  
Gloucester hates you.

CLARENCE. O, no ! he loves me, and he holds me  
dear :

Go you to him from me.

BOTH MURDERERS. Ay, so we will.

CLARENCE. Tell him, when that our princely father  
York 240

Bless'd his three sons with his victorious arm,

And charg'd us from his soul to love each other,

He little thought of this divided friendship :

Bid Gloucester think on this, and he will weep. 244

FIRST MURDERER. Ay, millstones ; as he lesson'd us  
to weep.

CLARENCE. O ! do not slander him, for he is kind.

FIRST MURDERER. Right ;

As snow in harvest. Thou deceiv'st thyself : 248

'Tis he that sends us to destroy you here.

CLARENCE. It cannot be ; for he bewept my fortune,

And hugg'd me in his arms, and swore, with sobs,  
That he would labour my delivery. 252

FIRST MURDERER. Why, so he doth, when he delivers  
you

From this earth's thralldom to the joys of heaven.

SECOND MURDERER. Make peace with God, for you  
must die, my lord.

CLARENCE. Hast thou that holy feeling in thy soul,  
To counsel me to make my peace with God, 257  
And art thou yet to thy own soul so blind;  
That thou wilt war with God by murdering me?

O! sirs, consider, he that set you on 260  
To do this deed, will hate you for the deed.

SECOND MURDERER. What shall we do?

CLARENCE. Relent, and save your souls.

FIRST MURDERER. Relent! 'tis cowardly, and  
womanish.

CLARENCE. Not to relent is beastly, savage; devilish.  
Which of you, if you were a prince's son, 265

Being pent from liberty, as I am now,  
If two such murderers as yourselves came to you,  
Would not entreat for life? 268

My friend, I spy some pity in thy looks;  
O! if thine eye be not a flatterer,  
Come thou on my side, and entreat for me,  
As you would beg, were you in my distress: 272  
A begging prince what beggar pities not?

SECOND MURDERER. Look behind you, my lord.

FIRST MURDERER. [Stabs him.] Take that, and that:  
if all this will not do,  
I'll drown you in the malmsey-butt within. 276

[Exit with the body.]

SECOND MURDERER. A bloody deed, and desperately  
dispatch'd!

How fain, like Pilate, would I wash my hands  
Of this most grievous murder.

Re-enter first Murderer.

FIRST MURDERER. How now! what mean'st thou,  
that thou help'st me not? 280

By heaven, the duke shall know how slack you have been.

SECOND MURDERER. I would he knew that I had sav'd  
his brother!

Take thou the fee, and tell him what I say ; 283  
 For I repent me that the duke is slain. [Exit.

FIRST MURDERER. So do not I : go, coward as thou art.  
 Well, I'll go hide the body in some hole,  
 Till that the duke give order for his burial :  
 And when I have my meed, I will away ; 288  
 For this will out, and here I must not stay. [Exit.

## ACT II.

SCENE I.—London. A Room in the Palace.

Enter KING EDWARD sick, QUEEN ELIZABETH, DORSET, RIVERS,  
 HASTINGS, BUCKINGHAM, GREY, and Others.

KING EDWARD. Why, so : now have I done a good  
 day's work.

You peers, continue this united league :  
 I every day expect an embassy  
 From my Redeemer to redeem me hence ; 4  
 And more in peace my soul shall part to heaven,  
 Since I have made my friends at peace on earth.  
 Rivers and Hastings, take each other's hand ;  
 Dissemble not your hatred, swear your love. 8

RIVERS. By heaven, my soul is purg'd from grudging  
 hate ;  
 And with my hand I seal my true heart's love.

HASTINGS. So thrive I, as I truly swear the like !

KING EDWARD. Take heed, you dally not before your  
 king ; 12

Lest he that is the supreme King of kings  
 Confound your hidden falsehood, and award  
 Either of you to be the other's end. 15

HASTINGS. So prosper I, as I swear perfect love !

RIVERS. And I, as I love Hastings with my heart !

KING EDWARD. Madam, yourself are not exempt in  
 this,

Nor you, son Dorset, Buckingham, nor you ;  
 You have been factious one against the other. 20  
 Wife, love Lord Hastings, let him kiss your hand ;  
 And what you do, do it unfeignedly.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. There, Hastings ; I will never  
 more remember



Our former hatred, so thrive I and mine ! 24

KING EDWARD. Dorset, embrace him ; Hastings, love  
lord marquess.

DORSET. This interchange of love, I here protest,  
Upon my part shall be inviolable.

HASTINGS. And so swear I. [They embrace.

KING EDWARD. Now, princely Buckingham, seal thou  
this league 29

With thy embracements to my wife's allies,  
And make me happy in your unity.

BUCKINGHAM. [To the QUEEN.] Whenever Buckingham  
doth turn his hate 32

Upon your Grace, but with all duteous love  
Doth cherish you and yours, God punish me  
With hate in those where I expect most love !

When I have most need to employ a friend, 36

And most assured that he is a friend,

Deep, hollow, treacherous, and full of guile,

Be he unto me ! This do I beg of God,

When I am cold in love to you or yours. [They embrace.

KING EDWARD. A pleasing cordial, princely Bucking-  
ham, 41

Is this thy vow unto my sickly heart.

There wanteth now our brother Gloucester here

To make the blessed period of this peace. 44

BUCKINGHAM. And, in good time, here comes the  
noble duke.

Enter GLOUCESTER.

GLOUCESTER. Good morrow to my sovereign king and  
queen ;

And princely peers, a happy time of day !

KING EDWARD. Happy, indeed, as we have spent the  
day. 48

Gloucester, we have done deeds of charity ;

Made peace of enmity, fair love of hate,

Between these swelling wrong-incensed peers.

GLOUCESTER. A blessed labour, my most sovereign  
lord. 52

Among this princely heap, if any here,

By false intelligence, or wrong surmise,

Hold me a foe ;

If I unwittingly, or in my rage, 56

Have aught committed that is hardly borne

By any in this presence, I desire  
To reconcile me to his friendly peace :  
'Tis death to me to be at enmity ; 60  
I hate it, and desire all good men's love.  
First, madam, I entreat true peace of you,  
Which I will purchase with my duteous service ;  
Of you, my noble cousin Buckingham, 64  
If ever any grudge were lodg'd between us ;  
Of you, Lord Rivers, and Lord Grey, of you,  
That all without desert have frown'd on me ;  
Of you, Lord Woodville, and Lord Scales, of you ; 68  
Dukes, earls, lords, gentlemen ; indeed, of all.  
I do not know that Englishman alive  
With whom my soul is any jot at odds  
More than the infant that is born to-night : 72  
I thank my God for my humility.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. A holy day shall this be kept  
hereafter :

I would to God all strifes were well compounded.  
My sovereign lord, I do beseech your highness 76  
To take our brother Clarence to your grace.

GLOUCESTER. Why, madam, have I offer'd love for  
this,

To be so flouted in this royal presence ?  
Who knows not that the gentle duke is dead ? [They all start.  
You do him injury to scorn his corse. 81

KING EDWARD. Who knows not he is dead ! who  
knows he is ?

QUEEN ELIZABETH. All-seeing heaven, what a world is  
this !

BUCKINGHAM. Look I so pale, Lord Dorset, as the  
rest ? 84

DORSET. Ay, my good lord ; and no man in the  
presence

But his red colour hath forsook his cheeks.

KING EDWARD. Is Clarence dead ? the order was  
revers'd.

GLOUCESTER. But he, poor man, by your first order  
died, 88

And that a winged Mercury did bear ;  
Some tardy cripple bore the countermand,  
That came too lag to see him buried.  
God grant that some, less noble and less loyal, 92

Nearer in bloody thoughts, and not in blood,  
Deserve not worse than wretched Clarence did,  
And yet go current from suspicion.

Enter STANLEY.

STANLEY. A boon, my sovereign, for my service done !

KING EDWARD. I prithee, peace : my soul is full of  
Sorrow. 97

STANLEY. I will not rise, unless your highness hear  
me.

KING EDWARD. Then say at once, what is it thou  
request'st.

STANLEY. The forfeit, sovereign, of my servant's life ;  
Who slew to-day a riotous gentleman 101  
Lately attendant on the Duke of Norfolk.

KING EDWARD. Have I a tongue to doom my brother's  
death,

And shall that tongue give pardon to a slave ? 104

My brother kill'd no man, his fault was thought ;

And yet his punishment was bitter death.

Who su'd to me for him ? who, in my wrath,

Kneel'd at my feet, and bade me be advis'd ? 108

Who spoke of brotherhood ? who spoke of love ?

Who told me how the poor soul did forsake

The mighty Warwick, and did fight for me ?

Who told me, in the field at Tewksbury, 112

When Oxford had me down, he rescu'd me,

And said, ' Dear brother, live, and be a king ' ?

Who told me, when we both lay in the field

Frozen almost to death, how he did lap me 116

Even in his garments ; and did give himself,

All thin and naked, to the numb cold night ?

All this from my remembrance brutish wrath

Sinfully pluck'd, and not a man of you 120

Had so much grace to put it in my mind.

But when your carters or your waiting-vassals

Have done a drunken slaughter, and defac'd

The precious image of our dear Redeemer, 124

You straight are on your knees for pardon, pardon ;

And I, unjustly too, must grant it you ;

But for my brother not a man would speak,

Nor I, ungracious, speak unto myself 128

For him, poor soul. The proudest of you all

Have been beholding to him in his life,  
Yet none of you would once beg for his life.  
O God ! I fear, thy justice will take hold 132  
On me and you and mine and yours for this.  
Come, Hastings, help me to my closet. O ! poor  
Clarence !

[Exeunt KING EDWARD, QUEEN, HASTINGS, RIVERS, DORSET, and GREY.  
GLOUCESTER. This is the fruit of rashness. Mark'd  
you not

How that the guilty kindred of the queen 136  
Look'd pale when they did hear of Clarence' death?  
O ! they did urge it still unto the king :  
God will revenge it. Come, lords ; will you go  
To comfort Edward with our company ? 140  
BUCKINGHAM. We wait upon your Grace. [Exeunt.

SCENE II.—The Same. A Room in the Palace.

Enter the DUCHESS OF YORK, with a Son and Daughter of  
CLARENCE.

BOY. Good grandam, tell us, is our father dead?

DUCHESS. No, boy.

DAUGHTER. Why do you wring your hands, and beat  
your breast,

And cry—' O Clarence, my unhappy son?' 4

BOY. Why do you look on us, and shake your head,  
And call us orphans, wretches, castaways,  
If that our noble father be alive ?

DUCHESS. My pretty cousins, you mistake me much ;  
I do lament the sickness of the king, 9  
As loath to lose him, not your father's death ;  
It were lost sorrow to wail one that 's lost.

BOY. Then, grandam, you conclude that he is dead.  
The king mine uncle is to blame for it : 13  
God will revenge it ; whom I will importune  
With earnest prayers all to that effect.

DAUGHTER. And so will I. 16

DUCHESS. Peace, children, peace ! the king doth love  
you well :

Incapable and shallow innocents,

You cannot guess who caus'd your father's death.

BOY. Grandam, we can ; for my good uncle Glou-  
cester 20

Told me, the king, provok'd to 't by the queen,  
Devis'd impeachments to imprison him :  
And when my uncle told me so, he wept,  
And pitied me, and kindly kiss'd my cheek ; 24  
Bade me rely on him, as on my father,  
And he would love me dearly as his child.

DUCHESS. Ah ! that deceit should steal such gentle  
shape,  
And with a virtuous vizard hide deep vice. 28  
He is my son, ay, and therein my shame,  
Yet from my dugs he drew not this deceit.

BOY. Think you my uncle did dissemble, grandam ?

DUCHESS. Ay, boy. 32

BOY. I cannot think it. Hark ! what noise is this ?

Enter QUEEN ELIZABETH, distractedly ; RIVERS and DORSET  
following her.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Oh ! who shall hinder me to wail  
and weep,  
To chide my fortune, and torment myself ?  
I'll join with black despair against my soul, 36  
And to myself become an enemy.

DUCHESS. What means this scene of rude impatience ?

QUEEN ELIZABETH. To make an act of tragic violence :  
Edward, my lord, thy son, our king, is dead ! 40  
Why grow the branches now the root is wither'd ?  
Why wither not the leaves that want their sap ?  
If you will live, lament : if die, be brief,  
That our swift-winged souls may catch the king's ; 44  
Or, like obedient subjects, follow him  
To his new kingdom of perpetual rest.

DUCHESS. Ah ! so much interest have I in thy sorrow  
As I had title in thy noble husband. 48  
I have bewept a worthy husband's death,  
And liv'd with looking on his images ;  
But now two mirrors of his princely semblance  
Are crack'd in pieces by malignant death, 52  
And I for comfort have but one false glass,  
That grieves me when I see my shame in him.  
Thou art a widow ; yet thou art a mother,  
And hast the comfort of thy children left thee : 56  
But death hath snatch'd my husband from mine arms,  
And pluck'd two crutches from my feeble limbs,

Clarence and Edward. O ! what cause have I—  
Thine being but a moiety of my grief— 60  
To overgo thy plaints, and drown thy cries !

BOY. Ah, aunt, you wept not for our father's death ;  
How can we aid you with our kindred tears ?

LAUGHTER. Our fatherless distress was left unmoan'd ;  
Your widow-dolour likewise be unwept. 65

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Give me no help in lamentation ;  
I am not barren to bring forth complaints :  
All springs reduce their currents to mine eyes, 68  
That I, being govern'd by the watery moon,  
May send forth plenteous tears to drown the world !  
Ah ! for my husband, for my dear Lord Edward !

CHILDREN. Ah ! for our father, for our dear Lord  
Clarence ! 72

DUCHESS. Alas ! for both, both mine, Edward and  
Clarence !

QUEEN ELIZABETH. What stay had I but Edward ?  
and he 's gone.

CHILDREN. What stay had we but Clarence ? and  
he 's gone.

DUCHESS. What stays had I but they ? and they are  
gone. 76

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Was never widow had so dear a  
loss.

CHILDREN. Were never orphans had so dear a loss.

DUCHESS. Was never mother had so dear a loss.

Alas ! I am the mother of these griefs : 80

Their woes are parcell'd, mine are general.

She for an Edward weeps, and so do I ;

I for a Clarence weep, so doth not she :

These babes for Clarence weep, and so do I ; 84

I for an Edward weep, so do not they :

Alas ! you three, on me, threefold distress'd,

Pour all your tears ; I am your sorrow's nurse,

And I will pamper it with lamentation. 88

DORSET. Comfort, dear mother : God is much dis-  
pleas'd

That you take with unthankfulness his doing.

In common worldly things 'tis call'd ungrateful

With dull unwillingness to repay a debt 92

Which with a bounteous hand was kindly lent ;

Much more to be thus opposite with heaven,

For it requires the royal debt it lent you. 95

RIVERS. Madam, bethink you, like a careful mother,  
Of the young prince your son : send straight for him ;  
Let him be crown'd ; in him your comfort lives.  
Drown desperate sorrow in dead Edward's grave,  
And plant your joys in living Edward's throne. 100

Enter GLOUCESTER, BUCKINGHAM, STANLEY, HASTINGS, RATCLIFF,  
and Others.

GLOUCESTER. Sister, have comfort : all of us have  
cause

To wail the dimming of our shining star ;  
But none can cure their harms by wailing them.  
Madam, my mother, I do cry you mercy ; 104  
I did not see your Grace : humbly on my knee  
I crave your blessing.

DUCHESS. God bless thee ! and put meekness in thy  
mind,  
Love, charity, obedience, and true duty. 108

GLOUCESTER. Amen ; [Aside.] and make me die a good  
old man !

That is the butt-end of a mother's blessing ;  
I marvel that her Grace did leave it out.

BUCKINGHAM. You cloudy princes and heart-sorrow-  
ing peers, 112

That bear this heavy mutual load of moan,  
Now cheer each other in each other's love :  
Though we have spent our harvest of this king,  
We are to reap the harvest of his son. 116  
The broken rancour of your high-swoln hearts,  
But lately splinter'd, knit, and join'd together,  
Must gently be preserv'd, cherish'd, and kept :  
Me seemeth good, that, with some little train, 120  
Forthwith from Ludlow the young prince be fetch'd  
Hither to London, to be crown'd our king.

RIVERS. Why with some little train, my Lord of  
Buckingham? 123

BUCKINGHAM. Marry, my lord, lest, by a multitude,  
The new-heal'd wound of malice should break out ;  
Which would be so much the more dangerous,  
By how much the estate is green and yet ungovern'd ;  
Where every horse bears his commanding rein, 128  
And may direct his course as please himself,

As well the fear of harm, as harm apparent,  
In my opinion, ought to be prevented.

GLOUCESTER. I hope the king made peace with all  
of us ; 132

And the compact is firm and true in me.

RIVERS. And so in me ; and so, I think, in all :  
Yet, since it is but green, it should be put  
To no apparent likelihood of breach, 136  
Which haply by much company might be arg'd :  
Therefore I say with noble Buckingham,  
That it is meet so few should fetch the prince.

HASTINGS. And so say I. 140

GLOUCESTER. Then be it so ; and go we to determine  
Who they shall be that straight shall post to Ludlow.  
Madam, and you my mother, will you go  
To give your censures in this business ? 144

[Exeunt all except BUCKINGHAM and GLOUCESTER.

BUCKINGHAM. My lord, whoever journeys to the  
prince,

For God's sake, let not us two stay at home :  
For by the way I'll sort occasion,  
As index to the story we late talk'd of, 148  
To part the queen's proud kindred from the prince.

GLOUCESTER. My other self, my counsel's consistory,  
My oracle, my prophet ! My dear cousin,  
I, as a child, will go by thy direction. 152  
Towards Ludlow then, for we'll not stay behind. [Exeunt.

• SCENE III.—The Same. A Street.

Enter two Citizens, meeting.

FIRST CITIZEN. Good morrow, neighbour : whither  
away so fast ?

SECOND CITIZEN. I promise you, I scarcely know my-  
self :

Hear you the news abroad ?

FIRST CITIZEN. Ay ; that the king is dead.

SECOND CITIZEN. Ill news, by'r lady ; seldom comes  
the better : 4

I fear, I fear, 'twill prove a giddy world.

Enter a third Citizen.

THIRD CITIZEN. Neighbours, God speed !

FIRST CITIZEN. Give you good morrow, sir.



THIRD CITIZEN. Doth the news hold of good King Edward's death?

SECOND CITIZEN. Ay, sir, it is too true ; God help the while ! 8

THIRD CITIZEN. Then, masters, look to see a troublous world.

FIRST CITIZEN. No, no ; by God's good grace, his son shall reign.

THIRD CITIZEN. Woe to that land that 's govern'd by a child !

SECOND CITIZEN. In him there is a hope of government, 12

That in his nonage council under him,  
And in his full and ripen'd years himself,  
No doubt, shall then and till then govern well.

FIRST CITIZEN. So stood the state when Henry the Sixth 16

Was crown'd at Paris but at nine months old.

THIRD CITIZEN. Stood the state so ? no, no, good friends, God wot ;

For then this land was famously enrich'd  
With politic grave counsel ; then the king 20  
Had virtuous uncles to protect his Grace.

FIRST CITIZEN. Why, so hath this, both by his father and mother.

THIRD CITIZEN. Better it were they all came by his father,

Or by his father there were none at all ; 24

For emulation, who shall now be nearest,  
Will touch us all too near, if God prevent not.

O ! full of danger is the Duke of Gloucester !  
And the queen's sons and brothers haught and proud ;  
And were they to be rul'd, and not to rule, 29

This sickly land might solace as before.

FIRST CITIZEN. Come, come, we fear the worst ; all will be well.

THIRD CITIZEN. When clouds are seen, wise men put on their cloaks ; 32

When great leaves fall, then winter is at hand ;  
When the sun sets, who doth not look for night ?

Untimely storms make men expect a dearth.  
All may be well ; but, if God sort it so, 36  
'Tis more than we deserve, or I expect.

SECOND CITIZEN. Truly, the hearts of men are full of fear :

You cannot reason almost with a man  
That looks not heavily and full of dread. 40

THIRD CITIZEN. Before the days of change, still is it  
so :

By a divine instinct men's minds mistrust  
Ensuing danger ; as, by proof, we see  
The waters swell before a boisterous storm.. 44  
But leave it all to God. Whither away ?

SECOND CITIZEN. Marry, we were sent for to the justices.

THIRD CITIZEN. And so was I : I'll bear you company.  
[Exeunt.

SCENE IV.—The Same. A Room in the Palace.

Enter the ARCHBISHOP OF YORK, the young DUKE OF YORK, QUEEN ELIZABETH, and the DUCHESS OF YORK.

ARCHBISHOP. Last night, I hear, they lay at Northampton ;

At Stony-Stratford they do rest to-night :  
To-morrow, or next day, they will be here.

DUCHESS. I long with all my heart to see the prince.  
I hope he is much grown since last I saw him. 5

QUEEN ELIZABETH. But I hear, no ; they say my son  
of York

Hath almost overta'en him in his growth.

YORK. Ay, mother, but I would not have it so. 8

DUCHESS. Why, my young cousin, it is good to grow.

YORK. Grandam, one night, as we did sit at supper,  
My uncle Rivers talk'd how I did grow  
More than my brother : ' Ay,' quoth my uncle Gloucester,  
Small herbs have grace, great weeds do grow apace :'

And since, methinks, I would not grow so fast,  
Because sweet flowers are slow and weeds make haste.

DUCHESS. Good faith, good faith, the saying did not  
hold 16

In him that did object the same to thee :

He was the wretched'st thing when he was young,

So long a-growing, and so leisurely,

That, if his rule were true, he should be gracious. 20

ARCHBISHOP. And so, no doubt, he is, my gracious  
madam.

DUCHESS. I hope he is ; but yet let mothers doubt.

YORK. Now, by my troth, if I had been remember'd,  
I could have given my uncle's grace a flout, 24  
To touch his growth nearer than he touch'd mine.

DUCHESS. How, my young York ? I prithee, let me  
hear it.

YORK. Marry, they say my uncle grew so fast,  
That he could gnaw a crust at two hours old : 28  
'Twas full two years ere I could get a tooth.

Grandam, this would have been a biting jest.

DUCHESS. I prithee, pretty York, who told thee this ?

YORK. Grandam, his nurse. 32

DUCHESS. His nurse ! why, she was dead ere thou  
wast born.

YORK. If 'twere not she, I cannot tell who told me.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. A parlous boy : go to, you are too  
shrewd.

ARCHBISHOP. Good madam, be not angry with the  
child. 36

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Pitchers have ears.

Enter a Messenger.

ARCHBISHOP. Here comes a messenger. What news ?

MESSENGER. Such news, my lord, as grieves me to  
report.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. How doth the prince ?

MESSENGER. Well, madam, and in health.

DUCHESS. What is thy news ? 41

MESSENGER. Lord Rivers and Lord Grey are sent to  
Pomfret,

With them Sir Thomas Vaughan, prisoners.

DUCHESS. Who hath committed them ?

MESSENGER. The mighty dukes,  
Gloucester and Buckingham.

ARCHBISHOP. For what offence ? 45

MESSENGER. The sum of all I can I have disclos'd :  
Why or for what the nobles were committed

Is all unknown to me, my gracious lord. 48

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Ah me ! I see the ruin of my  
house !

The tiger now hath seiz'd the gentle hind ;

Insulting tyranny begins to jet

Upon the innocent and aweless throne : 52

Welcome, destruction, death, and massacre !

I see, as in a map, the end of all.

DUCHESS. Accursed and unquiet wrangling days,  
How many of you have mine eyes beheld ! 56

My husband lost his life to get the crown,  
And often up and down my sons were toss'd,  
For me to joy and weep their gain and loss :  
And being seated, and domestic broils 60

Clean over-blown, themselves, the conquerors,  
Make war upon themselves ; brother to brother,  
Blood to blood, self against self : O ! preposterous  
And frantic outrage, end thy damned spleen ; 64  
Or let me die, to look on death no more.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Come, come, my boy ; we will to  
sanctuary.

Madam, farewell.

DUCHESS. Stay, I will go with you. 67

QUEEN ELIZABETH. You have no cause.

ARCHBISHOP. [To the QUEEN.] My gracious lady, go ;  
And thither bear your treasure and your goods.  
For my part, I'll resign unto your Grace  
The seal I keep : and so betide to me  
As well I tender you and all of yours ! 72  
Come ; I'll conduct you to the sanctuary. [Exeunt.

### ACT III.

• SCENE I.—The Same. A Street.

The Trumpets sound. Enter the PRINCE OF WALES, GLOUCESTER,  
BUCKINGHAM, CATESBY, CARDINAL BOURCHIER, and Others.

BUCKINGHAM. Welcome, sweet prince, to London, to  
your chamber.

GLOUCESTER. Welcome, dear cousin, my thoughts'  
sovereign ;

The weary way hath made you melancholy.

PRINCE. No, uncle ; but our crosses on the way 4  
Have made it tedious, wearisome, and heavy :  
I want more uncles here to welcome me.

GLOUCESTER. Sweet prince, the untainted virtue of  
your years  
Hath not yet div'd into the world's deceit : 8

No more can you distinguish of a man  
 Than of his outward show ; which, God he knows,  
 Seldom or never jumpeth with the heart.  
 Those uncles which you want were dangerous ; 12  
 Your Grace attended to their sugar'd words,  
 But look'd not on the poison of their hearts :  
 God keep you from them, and from such false friends !

PRINCE. God keep me from false friends ! but they  
 were none. 16

GLOUCESTER. My lord, the Mayor of London comes  
 to greet you.

Enter the Lord Mayor and his Train.

MAYOR. God bless your Grace with health and happy  
 days !

PRINCE. I thank you, good my lord ; and thank you all.  
 I thought my mother and my brother York 20  
 Would long ere this have met us on the way :  
 Fie ! what a slug is Hastings, that he comes not  
 To tell us whether they will come or no.

Enter HASTINGS.

BUCKINGHAM. And in good time here comes the sweat-  
 ing lord. 24

PRINCE. Welcome, my lord. • What, will our mother  
 come ?

HASTINGS. On what occasion, God he knows, not I,  
 The queen your mother, and your brother York,  
 Have taken sanctuary : the tender prince 28  
 Would fain have come with me to meet your Grace,  
 But by his mother was perforce withheld.

BUCKINGHAM. Fie ! what an indirect and peevish  
 course

Is this of hers ! Lord Cardinal, will your Grace 32  
 Persuade the queen to send the Duke of York  
 Unto his princely brother presently ?  
 If she deny, Lord Hastings, go with him,  
 And from her jealous arms pluck him perforce. 36

CARDINAL. My Lord of Buckingham, if my weak ora-  
 tory

Can from his mother win the Duke of York,  
 Anon expect him here ; but if she be obdurate .  
 To mild entreaties, God in heaven forbid 40

We should infringe the holy privilege  
Of blessed sanctuary ! not for all this land  
Would I be guilty of so great a sin.

BUCKINGHAM. You are too senseless-obstinate, my  
lord, 4.

Too ceremonious and traditional :  
Weigh it but with the grossness of this age,  
You break not sanctuary in seizing him.  
The benefit thereof is always granted 48  
To those whose dealings have deserved the place  
And those who have the wit to claim the place :  
This prince hath neither claim'd it, nor deserv'd it ;  
And therefore, in mine opinion, cannot have it : 52  
Then, taking him from thence that is not there,  
You break no privilege nor charter there.  
Oft have I heard of sanctuary men,  
But sanctuary children ne'er till now. 56

CARDINAL. My lord, you shall o'er-rule my mind for  
once.

Come on, Lord Hastings, will you go with me ?

HASTINGS. I go, my lord.

PRINCE. Good lords, make all the speedy haste you  
may. [Exeunt CARDINAL BOURCHIER and HASTINGS.

Say, uncle Gloucester, if our brother come, 61  
Where shall we sojourn till our coronation ?

GLOUCESTER. Where it seems best unto your royal  
self.

If I may counsel you, some day or two 64  
Your highness shall repose you at the Tower :  
Then where you please, and shall be thought most fit  
For your best health and recreation.

PRINCE. I do not like the Tower, of any place : 68  
Did Julius Cæsar build that place, my lord ?

BUCKINGHAM. He did, my gracious lord, begin that  
place,

Which, since, succeeding ages have re-edified.

PRINCE. Is it upon record, or else reported 72  
Successively from age to age, he built it ?

BUCKINGHAM. Upon record, my gracious lord.

PRINCE. But say, my lord, it were not register'd,  
Methinks the truth should live from age to age, 76  
As 'twere retail'd to all posterity,  
Even to the general all-ending day.

GLOUCESTER. [Aside.] So wise so young, they say, do  
never live long.

PRINCE. What say you, uncle ? 80

GLOUCESTER. I say, without characters, fame lives  
long.

[Aside.] Thus, like the formal Vice, Iniquity,  
I moralize two meanings in one word.

PRINCE. That Julius Cæsar was a famous man ; 84  
With what his valour did enrich his wit,  
His wit set down to make his valour live :

Death makes no conquest of this conqueror,  
For now he lives in fame, though not in life. 88

I'll tell you what, my cousin Buckingham,—

BUCKINGHAM. What, my gracious lord ?

PRINCE. An if I live until I be a man,  
I'll win our ancient right in France again, 92  
Or die a soldier, as I liv'd a king.

GLOUCESTER. [Aside.] Short summers lightly have a  
forward spring.

Enter YORK, HASTINGS, and CARDINAL BOURCHIER.

BUCKINGHAM. Now, in good time, here comes the  
Duke of York.

PRINCE. Richard of York ! how fares our loving  
brother ? 96

YORK. Well, my dread lord ; so must I call you now.

PRINCE. Ay, brother, to our grief, as it is yours :  
Too late he died that might have kept that title,  
Which by his death hath lost much majesty. 100

GLOUCESTER. How fares our cousin, noble Lord of  
York ?

YORK. I thank you, gentle uncle. O, my lord,  
You said that idle weeds are fast in growth :  
The prince my brother hath outgrown me far. 104

GLOUCESTER. He hath, my lord.

YORK. And therefore is he idle ?

GLOUCESTER. O, my fair cousin, I must not say so.

YORK. Then he is more beholding to you than I.

GLOUCESTER. He may command me as my sovereign ;  
But you have power in me as in a kinsman. 109

YORK. I pray you, uncle, give me this dagger.

GLOUCESTER. My dagger, little cousin, with all my  
heart.

PRINCE. A beggar, brother ? 112

YORK. Of my kind uncle, that I know will give ;  
And, being but a toy, which is no grief to give.

GLOUCESTER. A greater gift than that I'll give my  
cousin. 115

YORK. A greater gift ! O, that 's the sword to it.

GLOUCESTER. Ay, gentle cousin, were it light enough.

YORK. O, then, I see, you'll part but with light gifts ;  
In weightier things you'll say a beggar nay.

GLOUCESTER. It is too weighty for your Grace to wear.

YORK. I weigh it lightly, were it heavier. 121

GLOUCESTER. What ! would you have my weapon,  
little lord ?

YORK. I would, that I might thank you as you call me.

GLOUCESTER. How ? 124

YORK. Little.

PRINCE. My Lord of York will still be cross in talk.  
Uncle, your Grace knows how to bear with him.

YORK. You mean, to bear me, not to bear with me :  
Uncle, my brother mocks both you and me. 129

Because that I am little, like an ape,  
He thinks that you should bear me on your shoulders.

BUCKINGHAM. With what a sharp provided wit he  
reasons ! 132

To mitigate the scorn he gives his uncle,

He prettily and aptly taunts himself :

So cunning and so young is wonderful.

GLOUCESTER. My lord, will 't please you pass along ?  
Myself, and my good cousin Buckingham 137

Will to your mother, to entreat of her

To meet you at the Tower and welcome you.

YORK. What ! will you go unto the Tower, my lord ?

PRINCE. My Lord Protector needs will have it so.

YORK. I shall not sleep in quiet at the Tower.

GLOUCESTER. Why, what would you fear ? 143

YORK. Marry, my uncle Clarence' angry ghost :  
My grandam told me he was murder'd there.

PRINCE. I fear no uncles dead.

GLOUCESTER. Nor none that live, I hope.

PRINCE. An if they live, I hope, I need not fear.

But come, my lord ; and, with a heavy heart, 149  
Thinking on them, go I unto the Tower.

[Sennet. Exeunt all but GLOUCESTER, BUCKINGHAM, and CATESBY.]



**BUCKINGHAM.** Think you, my lord, this little prating  
York

Was not incensed by his subtle mother 152

To taunt and scorn you thus opprobriously ?

**GLOUCESTER.** No doubt, no doubt: O ! 'tis a parlous  
boy ;

Bold, quick, ingenious, forward, capable :

He's all the mother's, from the top to toe. 156

**BUCKINGHAM.** Well, let them rest. Come hither,  
Catesby ; thou art sworn

As deeply to effect what we intend

As closely to conceal what we impart.

Thou know'st our reasons urg'd upon the way : 160

What think'st thou ? is it not an easy matter

To make William Lord Hastings of our mind,

For the instalment of this noble duke

In the seat royal of this famous isle ? 164

**CATESBY.** He for his father's sake so loves the prince  
That he will not be won to aught against him.

**BUCKINGHAM.** What think'st thou then of Stanley ?  
what will he ?

**CATESBY.** He will do all in all as Hastings doth.

**BUCKINGHAM.** Well then, no more but this : go, gentle  
Catesby, 169

And, as it were far off, sound thou Lord Hastings,

How he doth stand affected to our purpose ;

And summon him to-morrow to the Tower, 172

To sit about the coronation.

If thou dost find him tractable to us,

Encourage him, and tell him all our reasons :

If he be leaden, icy-cold, unwilling, 176

Be thou so too, and so break off the talk,

And give us notice of his inclination ;

For we to-morrow hold divided councils,

Wherein thyself shalt highly be employ'd. 180

**GLOUCESTER.** Commend me to Lord William : tell  
him, Catesby,

His ancient knot of dangerous adversaries

To-morrow are let blood at Pomfret Castle ;

And bid my lord, for joy of this good news, 184

Give Mistress Shore one gentle kiss the more.

**BUCKINGHAM.** Good Catesby, go, effect this business  
soundly.

CATESBY. My good lords both, with all the heed I can

GLOUCESTER. Shall we hear from you, Catesby, ere  
we sleep? 188

CATESBY. You shall, my lord.

GLOUCESTER. At Crosby-place, there shall you find us  
both. [Exit CATESBY.]

BUCKINGHAM. Now, my lord, what shall we do if we  
perceive

Lord Hastings will not yield to our complots; 192

GLOUCESTER. Chop off his head; something we will  
determine:

And, look, when I am king, claim thou of me  
The earldom of Hereford, and all the moveables

Whereof the king my brother stood possess'd. 196

BUCKINGHAM. I'll claim that promise at your Grace's  
hand.

GLOUCESTER. And look to have it yielded with all  
kindness.

Come, let us sup betimes, that afterwards

We may digest our complots in some form. [Exeunt.]

SCENE II.—The Same. Before LORD HASTINGS' House.

Enter a Messenger.

MESSENGER. [Knocking.] My lord! my lord!

HASTINGS. [Within.] Who knocks?

MESSENGER. One from the Lord Stanley.

HASTINGS. [Within.] What is't o'clock? 4

MESSENGER. Upon the stroke of four.

Enter HASTINGS.

HASTINGS. Cannot my Lord Stanley sleep these tedious  
nights?

MESSENGER. So it appears by that I have to say.  
First, he commends him to your noble self. 8

HASTINGS. What then?

MESSENGER. Then certifies your lordship, that this  
night

He dreamt the boar had razed off his helm:

Besides, he says there are two councils held; 12

And that may be determin'd at the one

Which may make you and him to rue at the other.

Therefore he sends to know your lordship's pleasure,

If you will presently take horse with him, 16  
 And with all speed post with him toward the north,  
 To shun the danger that his soul divines.

HASTINGS. Go, fellow, go, return unto thy lord ;  
 Bid him not fear the separated councils : 20

His honour and myself are at the one,  
 And at the other is my good friend Catesby ;  
 Where nothing can proceed that toucheth us  
 Whereof I shall not have intelligence. 24

Tell him his fears are shallow, wanting instance :  
 And for his dreams, I wonder he's so fond  
 To trust the mockery of unquiet slumbers.

To fly the boar before the boar pursues, 28  
 Were to incense the boar to follow us  
 And make pursuit where he did mean no chase.

Go, bid thy master rise and come to me ;  
 And we will both together to the Tower, 32  
 Where, he shall see, the boar will use us kindly.

MESSENGER. I'll go, my lord, and tell him what you  
 say. [Exit.

Enter CATESBY.

CATESBY. Many good morrows to my noble lord :

HASTINGS. Good morrow, Catesby ; you are early  
 stirring. 36

What news, what news, in this our tottering state ?

CATESBY. It is a reeling world, indeed, my lord ;  
 And I believe will never stand upright  
 Till Richard wear the garland of the realm. 40

HASTINGS. How ! wear the garland ! dost thou mean  
 the crown ?

CATESBY. Ay, my good lord.

HASTINGS. I'll have this crown of mine cut from my  
 shoulders  
 Before I'll see the crown so foul misplac'd. 44

But canst thou guess that he doth aim at it ?

CATESBY. Ay, on my life ; and hopes to find you for-  
 ward

Upon his party for the gain thereof :  
 And thereupon he sends you this good news, 48  
 That this same very day your enemies,  
 The kindred of the queen, must die at Pomfret.

HASTINGS. Indeed, I am no mourner for that news,  
 Because they have been still my adversaries ; 52

But that I'll give my voice on Richard's side,  
To bar my master's heirs in true descent,  
God knows I will not do it, to the death.

CATESBY. God keep your lordship in that gracious  
mind! 56

HASTINGS. But I shall laugh at this a twelvemonth  
hence,

That they which brought me in my master's hate,  
I live to look upon their tragedy.

Well, Catesby, ere a fortnight make me older, 60  
I'll send some packing that yet think not on't.

CATESBY. 'Tis a vile thing to die, my gracious lord,  
When men are unprepar'd and look not for it.

HASTINGS. O monstrous, monstrous! and so falls it  
out 64

With Rivers, Vaughan, Grey; and so 'twill do  
With some men else, who think themselves as safe  
As thou and I; who, as thou know'st, are dear  
To princely Richard and to Buckingham. 68

CATESBY. The princes both make high account of  
you;

[Aside.] For they account his head upon the bridge.

HASTINGS. I know they do, and I have well deserv'd it.

Enter STANLEY.

Come on, come on; where is your boar-spear, man?  
Fear you the boar, and go so unprovided? 73

STANLEY. My lord, good morrow; good morrow,  
Catesby:

You may jest on, but by the holy rood,  
I do not like these several councils, I. 76

HASTINGS. My lord, I hold my life as dear as you do  
yours;

And never, in my days, I do protest,  
Was it so precious to me as 'tis now.

Think you, but that I know our state secure, 80  
I would be so triumphant as I am?

STANLEY. The lords at Pomfret, when they rode from  
London,

Were jocund and suppos'd their state was sure,  
And they indeed had no cause to mistrust; 84

But yet you see how soon the day o'ercast.

This sudden stab of rancour I misdoubt;

Pray God, I say, I prove a needless coward!

What, shall we toward the Tower? the day is spent.

HASTINGS. Come, come, have with you. Wot you  
what, my lord? 89

To-day the lords you talk of are beheaded.

STANLEY. They, for their truth, might better wear  
their heads,

Than some that have accus'd them wear their hats.

But come, my lord, let 's away. 93

Enter a Pursuivant.

HASTINGS. Go on before; I'll talk with this good  
fellow. [Exeunt STANLEY and CATESBY.

How now, sirrah! how goes the world with thee?

PURSUIVANT. The better that your lordship please  
to ask. 96

HASTINGS. I tell thee, man, 'tis better with me now  
Than when I met thee last where now we meet:

Then was I going prisoner to the Tower,  
By the suggestion of the queen's allies; 100

But now, I tell thee,—keep it to thyself,—

This day those enemies are put to death,

And I in better state than e'er I was.

PURSUIVANT. God hold it to your honour's good  
content! 104

HASTINGS. Gramercy, fellow: there, drink that for  
me. [Throws him his purse.

PURSUIVANT. God save your lordship. [Exit. 106

Enter a Priest.

PRIEST. Well met, my lord; I am glad to see your  
honour.

HASTINGS. I thank thee, good Sir John, with all my  
heart. 108

I am in your debt for your last exercise;

Come the next Sabbath, and I will content you.

Enter BUCKINGHAM.

BUCKINGHAM. What, talking with a priest, lord cham-  
berlain?

Your friends of Pomfret, they do need the priest: 112  
Your honour hath no shriving work in hand.

HASTINGS. Good faith, and when I met this holy man,  
The men you talk of came into my mind.

What, go you toward the Tower ? 116

BUCKINGHAM. I do, my lord ; but long I shall not stay :

I shall return before your lordship thence.

HASTINGS. Nay, like enough, for I stay dinner there.

BUCKINGHAM. [Aside.] And supper too, although thou know'st it not. 120

Come, will you go ?

HASTINGS. I'll wait upon your lordship. [Exeunt.

SCENE III.—Pomfret. Before the Castle.

Enter RATCLIFF, with halberds, carrying RIVERS, GREY, and VAUGHAN to death.

RIVERS. Sir Richard Ratcliff, let me tell thee this :  
To-day shalt thou behold a subject die  
For truth, for duty, and for loyalty.

GREY. God bless the prince from all the pack of you !  
A knot you are of damned blood-suckers. 5

VAUGHAN. You live that shall cry woe for this here-  
after.

RATCLIFF. Dispatch ; the limit of your lives is out.

RIVERS. O Pomfret, Pomfret ! O thou bloody prison !  
Fatal and ominous to noble peers ! 9

Within the guilty closure of thy walls  
Richard the Second here was hack'd to death ;  
And, for more slander to thy dismal seat, 12  
We give thee up our guiltless blood to drink.

GREY. Now Margaret's curse is fall'n upon our heads,  
When she exclaim'd on Hastings, you, and I,  
For standing by when Richard stabb'd her son. 16

RIVERS. Then curs'd she Richard, then curs'd she  
Buckingham,

Then curs'd she Hastings : O ! remember, God,  
To hear her prayer for them, as now for us ;  
And for my sister and her princely sons, 20  
Be satisfied, dear God, with our true blood,  
Which, as thou know'st, unjustly must be spilt.

RATCLIFF. Make haste ; the hour of death is expiate.

RIVERS. Come, Grey, come, Vaughan ; let us here  
embrace : 24  
And take our leave until we meet in heaven. [Exeunt.

## SCENE IV.—London. The Tower.

BUCKINGHAM, STANLEY, HASTINGS, the BISHOP OF ELY, RATCLIFF, LOVEL, and Others, sitting at a table. Officers of the Council attending.

HASTINGS. My lords, at once : the cause why we are met

Is to determine of the coronation :

In God's name, speak, when is the royal day ?

BUCKINGHAM. Are all things ready for that royal time ? 4

STANLEY. It is ; and wants but nomination.

ELY. To-morrow then I judge a happy day.

BUCKINGHAM. Who knows the Lord Protector's mind herein ?

Who is most inward with the noble duke ? 8

ELY. Your Grace, we think, should soonest know his mind.

BUCKINGHAM. We know each other's faces ; for our hearts,

He knows no more of mine than I of yours ;

Nor I of his, my lord, than you of mine. 12

Lord Hastings, you and he are near in love.

HASTINGS. I thank his Grace, I know he loves me well ;

But, for his purpose in the coronation,

I have not sounded him, nor he deliver'd 16

His gracious pleasure any way therein :

But you, my noble lords, may name the time ;

And in the duke's behalf I'll give my voice,

Which, I presume, he'll take in gentle part. 20

Enter GLOUCESTER.

ELY. In happy time, here comes the duke himself.

GLOUCESTER. My noble lords and cousins all, good morrow.

I have been long a sleeper ; but, I trust,

My absence doth neglect no great design, 24

Which by my presence might have been concluded.

BUCKINGHAM. Had you not come upon your cue, my lord,

William Lord Hastings had pronounc'd your part,

I mean, your voice, for crowning of the king. 28

GLOUCESTER. Than my Lord Hastings no man might  
be bolder :

His lordship knows me well, and loves me well.  
My Lord of Ely, when I was last in Holborn,  
I saw good strawberries in your garden there ; 32  
I do beseech you send for some of them.

ELY. Marry, and will, my lord, with all my heart. [Exit.

GLOUCESTER. Cousin of Buckingham, a word with you.  
[Takes him aside.

Catesby hath sounded Hastings in our business, 36  
And finds the testy gentleman so hot,  
That he will lose his head ere give consent  
His master's child, as worshipfully he terms it,  
Shall lose the royalty of England's throne. 40

BUCKINGHAM. Withdraw yourself a while ; I'll go  
with you. [Exeunt GLOUCESTER and BUCKINGHAM.

STANLEY. We have not yet set down this day of  
triumph.

To-morrow, in my judgment, is too sudden ;  
For I myself am not so well provided 44  
As else I would be, were the day prolong'd.

Re-enter BISHOP OF ELY.

ELY. Where is my lord, the Duke of Gloucester ?  
I have sent for these strawberries.

HASTINGS. His Grace looks cheerfully and smooth  
this morning : 48

There 's some conceit or other likes him well,  
When that he bids good morrow with such spirit.  
I think there 's never a man in Christendom  
Can lesser hide his hate or love than he ; 52  
For by his face straight shall you know his heart.

STANLEY. What of his heart perceiv'd you in his face  
By any livelihood he show'd to-day ?

HASTINGS. Marry, that with no man here he is  
offended ; 56

For, were he, he had shown it in his looks.

Re-enter GLOUCESTER and BUCKINGHAM.

GLOUCESTER. I pray you all, tell me what they de-  
serve

That do conspire my death with devilish plots  
Of damned witchcraft, and that have prevail'd 60



Upon my body with their hellish charms?

HASTINGS. The tender love I bear your Grace, my lord,

Makes me most forward in this princely presence  
To doom th' offenders, whosoe'er they be : 64  
I say, my lord, they have deserved death.

GLOUCESTER. Then be your eyes the witness of their evil.

Look how I am bewitch'd ; behold mine arm  
Is like a blasted sapling, wither'd up : 68  
And this is Edward's wife, that monstrous witch  
Consorted with that harlot strumpet Shore,  
That by their witchcraft thus have marked me.

HASTINGS. If they have done this thing, my noble lord,— 72

GLOUCESTER. If ! thou protector of this damned strumpet,

Talk'st thou to me of ifs ? Thou art a traitor :  
Off with his head ! now, by Saint Paul, I swear,  
I will not dine until I see the same. 76  
Lovel and Ratcliff, look that it be done :  
The rest, that love me, rise, and follow me.

[Exeunt all but HASTINGS, RATCLIFF, and LOVEL.]

HASTINGS. Woe, woe, for England ! not a whit for me ;

For I, too fond, might have prevented this. 80  
Stanley did dream the boar did raze his helm ;  
And I did scorn it, and disdain'd to fly.

Three times to-day my foot-cloth horse did stumble,  
And startled when he looked upon the Tower, 84  
As loath to bear me to the slaughter-house.

O ! now I need the priest that spake to me :  
I now repent I told the pursuivant,  
As too triumphing, how mine enemies 88

To-day at Pomfret bloodily were butcher'd  
And I myself secure in grace and favour.  
O Margaret, Margaret ! now thy heavy curse  
Is lighted on poor Hastings' wretched head. 92

RATCLIFF. Come, come, dispatch ; the duke would be at dinner :

Make a short shrift, he longs to see your head.

HASTINGS. O momentary grace of mortal man,  
Which we more hunt for than the grace of God ! 96

Who builds his hope in air of your good looks,  
Lives like a drunken sailor on a mast;  
Ready with every nod to tumble down  
Into the fatal bowels of the deep. 100

LOVELL. Come, come, dispatch; 'tis bootless to  
exclaim.

HASTINGS. O bloody Richard! miserable England!  
I prophesy the fearfull'st time to thee  
That ever wretched age hath look'd upon. 104  
Come, lead me to the block; bear him my head:  
They smile at me who shortly shall be dead. [Exit.

## SCENE V.—London. The Tower Walls.

Enter GLOUCESTER and BUCKINGHAM, in rotten armour, marvellous  
ill-favoured.

GLOUCESTER. Come, cousin, canst thou quake, and  
change thy colour,  
Murder thy breath in middle of a word,  
And then again begin, and stop again,  
As if thou wert distraught and mad with terror? 4

BUCKINGHAM. Tut! I can counterfeit the deep  
tragedian,  
Speak and look back, and pry on every side,  
Tremble and start at wagging of a straw,  
Intending deep suspicion: ghastly looks 8  
Are at my service, like enforced smiles;  
And both are ready in their offices,  
At any time, to grace my stratagems.  
But what! is Catesby gone? 12

GLOUCESTER. He is; and, see, he brings the mayor  
along.

Enter the Lord Mayor and CATESBY.

BUCKINGHAM. Lord Mayor,—

GLOUCESTER. Look to the drawbridge there!

BUCKINGHAM. Hark! a drum.

GLOUCESTER. Catesby, o'erlook the walls. 16

BUCKINGHAM. Lord Mayor, the reason we have  
sent,—

GLOUCESTER. Look back, defend thee; here are  
enemies.

BUCKINGHAM. God and our innocency defend and  
guard us!

Enter LOVEL and RATCLIFF, with HASTINGS' head.

GLOUCESTER. Be patient, they are friends, Ratcliff and Lovel. 20

LOVEL. Here is the head of that ignoble traitor,  
The dangerous and unsuspected Hastings.

GLOUCESTER. So dear I lov'd the man, that I must weep.

I took him for the plainest harmless creature 24

That breath'd upon the earth a Christian ;

Made him my book, wherein my soul recorded,

The history of all her secret thoughts :

So smooth he daub'd his vice with show of virtue, 28

That, his apparent open guilt omitted,

I mean his conversation with Shore's wife,

He liv'd from all attainder of suspect.

BUCKINGHAM. Well, well, he was the covert'st  
shelter'd traitor 32

That ever liv'd.

Would you imagine, or almost believe,—

Were 't not that by great preservation

We live to tell it, that the subtle traitor 36

This day had plotted, in the council-house,

To murder me and my good Lord of Gloucester ?

MAYOR. Had he done so ?

GLOUCESTER. What ! think you we are Turks or  
infidels ? 40

Or that we would, against the form of law,

Proceed thus rashly in the villain's death,

But that the extreme peril of the case,

The peace of England and our person's safety, 44

Enforc'd us to this execution ?

MAYOR. Now, fair befall you ! he deserv'd his death ;

And your good Graces both have well proceeded,

To warn false traitors from the like attempts. 48

I never look'd for better at his hands,

After he once fell in with Mistress Shore.

BUCKINGHAM. Yet had we not determin'd he should die, 52

Until your lordship came to see his end ;

Which now the loving haste of these our friends,

Something against our meaning, hath prevented :

Because, my lord, we would have had you heard

The traitor speak, and timorously confess 56

The manner and the purpose of his treason ;

That you might well have signified the same  
Unto the citizens, who haply may  
Misconster us in him, and wail his death.

60

MAYOR. But, my good lord, your Grace's word shall  
serve,

As well as I had seen and heard him speak :  
And do not doubt, right noble princes both,  
But I'll acquaint our duteous citizens  
With all your just proceedings in this cause.

64

GLOUCESTER. And to that end we wish'd your lordship  
here,

To avoid the censures of the carping world.

BUCKINGHAM. But since you come too late of our  
intent,

68

Yet witness what you hear we did intend :  
And so, my good Lord Mayor, we bid farewell.

[Exit Lord Mayor.

GLOUCESTER. Go, after, after, cousin Buckingham.  
The mayor towards Guildhall hies him in all post :

72

There, at your meetest vantage of the time,  
Infer the bastardy of Edward's children :  
Tell them how Edward put to death a citizen,  
Only for saying he would make his son  
Heir to the crown ; meaning indeed his house,  
Which by the sign thereof was termed so.

76

Moreover, urge his hateful luxury  
And bestial appetite in change of lust ;  
Which stretch'd unto their servants, daughters, wives,  
Even where his raging eye or savage heart  
Without control lusted to make a prey.

80

Nay, for a need, thus far come near my person :  
Tell them, when that my mother went with child

84

Of that insatiate Edward, noble York  
My princely father then had wars in France ;  
And, by true computation of the time,

88

Found that the issue was not his begot ;  
Which well appeared in his lineaments,  
Being nothing like the noble duke my father.  
Yet touch this sparingly, as 'twere far off ;  
Because, my lord, you know my mother lives.

92

BUCKINGHAM. Doubt not, my lord, I'll play the  
orator

As if the golden fee for which I plead

Were for myself : and so, my lord, adieu. 96

GLOUCESTER. If you thrive well, bring them to Baynard's Castle ;

Where you shall find me well accompanied  
With reverend fathers and well-learned bishops.

BUCKINGHAM. I go ; and towards three or four  
o'clock 100

Look for the news that the Guildhall affords. [Exit.

GLOUCESTER. Go, Lovel, with all speed to Doctor  
Shaw ;

[To CATESBY.] Go thou to Friar Penker ; bid them both  
Meet me within this hour at Baynard's Castle. 104

[Exeunt LOVEL and CATESBY.]

Now will I in, to take some privy order,  
To draw the brats of Clarence out of sight ;  
And to give notice that no manner person 107  
Have any time recourse unto the princes. [Exit.

SCENE VI.—The Same. A Street.

Enter a Scrivener.

SCRIVENER. Here is the indictment of the good Lord  
Hastings ;

Which in a set hand fairly is engross'd,  
That it may be to-day read o'er in Paul's :  
And mark how well the sequel hangs together. 4  
Eleven hours I have spent to write it over,  
For yesternight by Catesby was it sent me.  
The precedent was full as long a-doing ;  
And yet within these five hours Hastings liv'd, 8  
Untainted, unexamin'd, free, at liberty.  
Here 's a good world the while ! Who is so gross  
That cannot see this palpable device ?  
Yet who so bold but says he sees it not ? 12  
Bad is the world ; and all will come to naught,  
When such ill dealing must be seen in thought. [Exit.

SCENE VII.—The Same. The Court of Baynard's Castle.

Enter GLOUCESTER and BUCKINGHAM, meeting.

GLOUCESTER. How now, how now ! what say the  
citizens ?

BUCKINGHAM. Now, by the holy mother of our Lord,

The citizens are mum, say not a word.

GLOUCESTER. Touch'd you the bastardy of Edward's children ? 4

BUCKINGHAM. I did ; with his contract with Lady Lucy,  
And his contract by deputy in France ;  
The insatiate greediness of his desires,  
And his enforcement of the city wives ;  
His tyranny for trifles ; his own bastardy,  
As being got, your father then in France,  
And his resemblance, being not like the duke :  
Withal I did infer your lineaments, 12  
Being the right idea of your father,  
Both in your form and nobleness of mind ;  
Laid open all your victories in Scotland,  
Your discipline in war, wisdom in peace, 16  
Your bounty, virtue, fair humility ;  
Indeed, left nothing fitting for your purpose  
Untouch'd or slightly handled in discourse ;  
And when my oratory drew toward end, 20  
I bade them that did love their country's good  
Cry ' God save Richard, England's royal king ! '

GLOUCESTER. And did they so ?

BUCKINGHAM. No, so God help me, they spake not a word ; 24

But, like dumb statuas or breathing stones,  
Star'd each on other, and look'd deadly pale.  
Which when I saw, I reprehended them ;  
And ask'd the mayor what meant this wilful silence :  
His answer was, the people were not wont 29  
To be spoke to but by the recorder.  
Then he was urg'd to tell my tale again :  
' Thus saith the duke, thus hath the duke inferr'd ; ' 32  
But nothing spoke in warrant from himself.  
When he had done, some followers of mine own,  
At lower end of the hall, hurl'd up their caps,  
And some ten voices cried, ' God save King Richard ! '  
And thus I took the vantage of those few, 37  
' Thanks, gentle citizens and friends,' quoth I ;  
' This general applause and cheerful shout  
Argues your wisdom and your love to Richard : ' 40  
And even here brake off, and came away.

GLOUCESTER. What tongueless blocks were they !  
would they not speak ?

Will not the mayor then and his brethren come ?

BUCKINGHAM. The mayor is here at hand. Intend  
some fear ; 44

Be not you spoke with but by mighty suit :  
And look you get a prayer-book in your hand,  
And stand between two churchmen, good my lord :  
For on that ground I'll make a holy descant : 48  
And be not easily won to our requests ;

Play the maid's part, still answer nay, and take it.

GLOUCESTER. I go ; and if you plead as well for them  
As I can say nay to thee for myself, 52  
No doubt we bring it to a happy issue.

BUCKINGHAM. Go, go, up to the leads ! the Lord  
Mayor knocks. [Exit GLOUCESTER.

Enter the Lord Mayor, Aldermen, and Citizens.

Welcome, my lord : I dance attendance here ;  
I think the duke will not be spoke withal. 56

Enter, from the Castle, CATESBY.

Now, Catesby ! what says your lord to my request ?

CATESBY. He doth entreat your Grace, my noble lord,  
To visit him to-morrow or next day.  
He is within, with two right reverend fathers, 60  
Divinely bent to meditation ;  
And in no worldly suit would he be mov'd,  
To draw him from his holy exercise.

BUCKINGHAM. Return, good Catesby, to the gracious  
duke : 64

Tell him, myself, the mayor and aldermen,  
In deep designs in matter of great moment,  
No less importing than our general good,  
Are come to have some conference with his Grace. 68

CATESBY. I'll signify so much unto him straight. [Exit.

BUCKINGHAM. Ah, ha, my lord, this prince is not an  
Edward !

He is not lolling on a lewd day-bed,  
But on his knees at meditation ; 72  
Not dallying with a brace of courtézans,  
But meditating with two deep divines ;  
Not sleeping, to engross his idle body,  
But praying, to enrich his watchful soul. 76  
Happy were England, would this virtuous prince

Take on his Grace the sovereignty thereof :  
But sore, I fear, we shall not win him to it.

MAYOR. Marry, God defend his Grace should say us  
nay ! 80

BUCKINGHAM. I fear he will. Here Catesby comes  
again.

Re-enter CATESBY.

Now, Catesby, what says his Grace ?

CATESBY. He wonders to what end you have assem-  
bled .

Such troops of citizens to come to him, 84  
His Grace not being warn'd thereof before :  
My lord, he fears you mean no good to him.

BUCKINGHAM. Sorry I am my noble cousin should  
Suspect me that I mean no good to him. 88  
By heaven, we come to him in perfect love ;  
And so once more return, and tell his Grace. [Exit CATESBY.  
When holy and devout religious men  
Are at their beads, 'tis much to draw them thence ; 92  
So sweet is zealous contemplation.

Enter GLOUCESTER, in a gallery above, between two Bishops.

CATESBY returns.

MAYOR. See, where his Grace stands 'tween two clergy-  
men !

BUCKINGHAM. Two props of virtue for a Christian  
prince,  
To stay him from the fall of vanity ; 96  
And, see, a book of prayer in his hand ;  
True ornament to know a holy man.  
Famous Plantagenet, most gracious prince,  
Lend favourable ear to our requests, 100  
And pardon us the interruption  
Of thy devotion and right Christian zeal.

GLOUCESTER. My lord, there needs no such apology ;  
I do beseech your Grace to pardon me, 104  
Who, earnest in the service of my God,  
Deferr'd the visitation of my friends.  
But, leaving this, what is your Grace's pleasure ?

BUCKINGHAM. Even that, I hope, which pleaseth God  
above, 108  
And all good men of this ungovern'd isle.

GLOUCESTER. \* I do suspect I have done some offence



That seems disgracious in the city's eye;  
And that you come to reprehend my ignorance. 112

BUCKINGHAM. You have, my lord: would it might  
please your Grace,

On our entreaties to amend your fault!

GLOUCESTER. Else wherefore breathe I in a Christian  
land?

BUCKINGHAM. Know then, it is your fault that you  
resign 116

The supreme seat, the throne majestic,  
The sceptred office of your ancestors,  
Your state of fortune and your due of birth,  
The lineal glory of your royal house, 120

To the corruption of a blemish'd stock;  
Whiles, in the mildness of your sleepy thoughts,—  
Which here we waken to our country's good,—  
This noble isle doth want her proper limbs; 124

Her face defac'd with scars of infamy,  
Her royal stock graft with ignoble plants,  
And almost shoulder'd in the swallowing gulf  
Of dark forgetfulness and deep oblivion. 128

Which to recure we heartily solicit  
Your gracious self to take on you the charge  
And kingly government of this your land;  
Not as protector, steward, substitute, 132

Or lowly factor for another's gain;  
But as successively from blood to blood,  
Your right of birth, your empery, your own.  
For this, consorted with the citizens, 136

Your very worshipful and loving friends,  
And by their vehement instigation,  
In this just cause come I to move your Grace.

GLOUCESTER. I cannot tell if to depart in silence,  
Or bitterly to speak in your reproof, 141

Best fitteth my degree or your condition:  
If not to answer, you might haply think  
Tongue-tied ambition, not replying, yielded 144

To bear the golden yoke of sovereignty,  
Which fondly you would here impose on me;  
If to reprove you for this suit of yours,  
So season'd with your faithful love to me, 148

Then, on the other side, I check'd my friends.  
Therefore, to speak, and to avoid the first,

And then, in speaking, not to incur the last,  
 Definitely thus I answer you. 152  
 Your love deserves my thanks ; but my desert  
 Unmeritable shuns your high request.  
 First, if all obstacles were cut away,  
 And that my path were even to the crown, 156  
 As the ripe revenue and due of birth,  
 Yet so much is my poverty of spirit,  
 So mighty and so many my defects,  
 That I would rather hide me from my greatness, 160  
 Being a bark to brook no mighty sea,  
 Than in my greatness covet to be hid,  
 And in the vapour of my glory smother'd.  
 But, God be thank'd, there is no need of me ; 164  
 And much I need to help you, were there need ;  
 The royal tree hath left us royal fruit,  
 Which, mellow'd by the stealing hours of time,  
 Will well become the seat of majesty, 168  
 And make, no doubt, us happy by his reign.  
 On him I lay that you would lay on me,  
 The right and fortune of his happy stars ;  
 Which God defend that I should wring from him ! 172  
 BUCKINGHAM. My lord, this argues conscience in your  
 Grace ;  
 But the respects thereof are nice and trivial,  
 All circumstances well considered.  
 You say that Edward is your brother's son : 176  
 So say we too, but not by Edward's wife ;  
 For first was he contract to Lady Lucy,  
 Your mother lives a witness to his vow,  
 And afterward by substitute betroth'd 180  
 To Bona, sister to the King of France.  
 These both put by, a poor petitioner,  
 A care-craz'd mother to a many sons ;  
 A beauty-waning and distressed widow, 184  
 Even in the afternoon of her best days,  
 Made prize and purchase of his wanton eye,  
 Seduc'd the pitch and height of his degree  
 To base declension and loath'd bigamy : 188  
 By her, in his unlawful bed, he got  
 This Edward, whom our manners call the prince.  
 More bitterly could I expostulate,  
 Save that, for reverence to some alive, 192

I give a sparing limit to my tongue.  
 Then, good my lord, take to your royal self  
 This proffer'd benefit of dignity;  
 If not to bless us and the land withal, 198  
 Yet to draw forth your noble ancestry  
 From the corruption of abusing times,  
 Unto a lineal true-derived course.

MAYOR. Do, good my lord; your citizens entreat you.

BUCKINGHAM. Refuse not, mighty lord, this proffer'd  
 love. 201

CATESBY. O! make them joyful: grant their lawful  
 suit:

GLOUCESTER. Alas! why would you heap those cares  
 on me?

I am unfit for state and majesty: 204

I do beseech you, take it not amiss,

I cannot nor I will not yield to you.

BUCKINGHAM. If you refuse it, as, in love and zeal,  
 Loath to depose the child, your brother's son; 208

As well we know your tenderness of heart

And gentle, kind, effeminate remorse,

Which we have noted in you to your kindred,  
 And egally, indeed, to all estates, 212

Yet whether you accept our suit or no,

Your brother's son shall never reign our king;

But we will plant some other in the throne,

To the disgrace and downfall of your house: 216

And in this resolution here we leave you.

Come, citizens, we will entreat no more.

[Exit BUCKINGHAM and Citizens.]

CATESBY. Call them again, sweet prince; accept  
 their suit:

If you deny them, all the land will rue it. 220

GLOUCESTER. Will you enforce me to a world of  
 cares?

Call them again: I am not made of stone,

But penetrable to your kind entreats, [Exit CATESBY.]

Albeit against my conscience and my soul. 224

Re-enter BUCKINGHAM and the rest.

Cousin of Buckingham, and sage, grave men,

Since you will buckle fortune on my back,

To bear her burden, whe'r I will or no,

I must have patience to endure the load : 228  
 But if black scandal or foul-fac'd reproach  
 Attend the sequel of your imposition,  
 Your mere enforcement shall acquittance me  
 From all the impure blots and stains thereof ; 232  
 For God doth know, and you may partly see,  
 How far I am from the desire of this.

MAYOR. God bless your Grace ! we see it, and will  
 say it.

GLOUCESTER. In saying so, you shall but say the  
 truth. 236

BUCKINGHAM. Then I salute you with this royal title :  
 Long live King Richard, England's worthy king !

ALL. Amen.

BUCKINGHAM. To-morrow may it please you to be  
 crown'd ? 240

GLOUCESTER. Even when you please, for you will have  
 it so.

BUCKINGHAM. To-morrow then we will attend your  
 Grace :

And so most joyfully we take our leave.

GLOUCESTER. [To the Bishops.] Come, let us to our holy  
 work again. 244

Farewell, my cousin ;—farewell, gentle friends. [Exeunt.

## ACT IV.

• SCENE I.—London. Before the Tower.

Enter on one side, QUEEN ELIZABETH, DUCHESS OF YORK, and  
 MARQUESS OF DORSET ; on the other, ANNE, DUCHESS OF  
 GLOUCESTER, leading LADY MARGARET PLANTAGENET, CLARENCE'S  
 young daughter.

DUCHESS. Who meets us here ? my niece Plantagenet,  
 Led in the hand of her kind aunt of Gloucester ?  
 Now, for my life, she 's wandering to the Tower,  
 On pure heart's love, to greet the tender princes 4  
 Daughter, well met.

ANNE. God give your Graces both  
 A happy and a joyful time of day !

QUEEN ELIZABETH. As much to you, good sister !  
 whither away ?

ANNE. No farther than the Tower ; and, as I guess,

Upon the like devotion as yourselves, 9  
To gratulate the gentle princes there.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Kind sister, thanks : we'll enter  
all together :—

Enter BRAKENBURY.

And, in good time, here the lieutenant comes. 12  
Master lieutenant, pray you, by your leave,  
How doth the prince, and my young son of York ?

BRAKENBURY. Right well, dear madam. By your  
patience,

I may not suffer you to visit them : 16  
The king hath strictly charg'd the contrary.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. The king ! who's that ?

BRAKENBURY. I mean the Lord Protector.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. The Lord protect him from that  
kingly title !

Hath he set bounds between their love and me ? 20  
I am their mother ; who shall bar me from them ?

DUCHESS. I am their father's mother ; I will see them.

ANNE. Their aunt I am in law, in love their mother :

Then bring me to their sights ; I'll bear thy blame,  
And take thy office from thee, on my peril. 25

BRAKENBURY. No, madam, no, I may not leave it so :  
I am bound by oath, and therefore pardon me. [Exit.

Enter STANLEY.

STANLEY. Let me but meet you, ladies, one hour  
hence, 28

And I'll salute your Grace of York as mother,  
And reverend looker-on, of two fair queens.

[To the DUCHESS OF GLOUCESTER.] Come, madam, you must  
straight to Westminster,

There to be crowned Richard's royal queen. 32

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Ah ! cut my lace asunder.  
That my pent heart may have some scope to beat,  
Or else I swoon with this dead-killing news.

ANNE. Despiteful tidings ! O ! unpleasing news !

DORSET. Be of good cheer : mother, how fares your  
Grace ? 37

QUEEN ELIZABETH. O, Dorset ! speak not to me, get  
thee gone ;  
Death and destruction dog thee at the heels :  
Thy mother's name is ominous to children. 40

If thou wilt outstrip death, go cross the seas,  
And live with Richmond, from the reach of hell :  
Go, hie thee, hie thee, from this slaughter-house,  
Lest thou increase the number of the dead, 44  
And make me die the thrall of Margaret's curse,  
Nor mother, wife, nor England's counted queen.

STANLEY. Full of wise care is this your counsel,  
madam.

[To DORSET.] Take all the swift advantage of the hours ;  
You shall have letters from me to my son 49  
In your behalf, to meet you on the way :  
Be not ta'en tardy by unwise delay.

DUCHESS. O ill-dispersing wind of misery ! 52  
O ! my accursed womb, the bed of death,  
A cockatrice hast thou hatch'd to the world,  
Whose unavowed eye is murderous !

STANLEY. Come, madam, come ; I in all haste was  
sent. 56

ANNE. And I with all unwillingness will go.  
O ! would to God that the inclusive verge  
Of golden metal that must round my brow  
Were red-hot steel to sear me to the brain. 60  
Anointed let me be with deadly venom ;  
And die, ere men can say ' God save the queen ! '

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Go, go, poor soul, I envy not thy  
glory ;  
To feed my humour, wish thyself no harm. 64

ANNE. No ! why ? When he, that is my husband now  
Came to me, as I follow'd Henry's corse ;  
When scarce the blood was well wash'd from his hands,  
Which issu'd from my other angel husband, 68  
And that dead saint which then I weeping follow'd ;  
O ! when I say, I look'd on Richard's face,  
This was my wish, ' Be thou,' quoth I, ' accurs'd,  
For making me so young, so old a widow ! 72  
And, when thou wedd'st, let sorrow haunt thy bed ;  
And be thy wife—if any be so mad—  
More miserable by the life of thee  
Than thou hast made me by my dear lord's death ! '  
Lo ! ere I can repeat this curse again, 77  
Within so small a time, my woman's heart  
Grossly grew captive to his honey words,  
And prov'd the subject of mine own soul's curse : 80

Which hitherto hath held mine eyes from rest ;  
 For never yet one hour in his bed  
 Did I enjoy the golden dew of sleep,  
 But with his timorous dreams was still awak'd. 84  
 Besides, he hates me for my father Warwick,  
 And will, no doubt, shortly be rid of me.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Poor heart, adieu ! I pity thy  
 complaining.

ANNE. No more than with my soul I mourn for yours.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Farewell ! thou woeful welcomer  
 of glory ! 89

ANNE. Adieu, poor soul, that takest thy leave of it !

DUCHESS. [To DORSET.] Go thou to Richmond, and good  
 fortune guide thee !

[To ANNE.] Go thou to Richard, and good angels tend thee !

[To QUEEN ELIZABETH.] Go thou to sanctuary, and good  
 thoughts possess thee ! 93

I to my grave, where peace and rest lie with me !

Eighty odd years of sorrow have I seen,

And each hour's joy wrack'd with a week of teen. 96

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Stay yet, look back with me unto  
 the Tower.

Pity, you ancient stones, those tender babes

Whom envy hath immur'd within your walls,

Rough cradle for such little pretty ones ! 100

Rude ragged nurse, old sullen playfellow

For tender princes, use my babies well.

So foolish sorrow bids your stones farewell. [Exeunt. 101

SCENE II.—The Same. A Room of State in the Palace.

Sennet. RICHARD, in pomp, crowned : BUCKINGHAM, CATESBY,  
 a Page, and Others.

KING RICHARD. Stand all apart. Cousin of Bucking-  
 ham.

BUCKINGHAM. My gracious sovereign !

KING RICHARD. Give me thy hand. [He ascends the throne.]

Thus high, by thy advice,

And thy assistance, is King Richard seated : 4

But shall we wear these glories for a day ?

Or shall they last, and we rejoice in them ?

BUCKINGHAM. Still live they, and for ever let them  
 last !

KING RICHARD. Ah ! Buckingham, now do I play the touch,

To try if thou be current gold indeed :

Young Edward lives : think now what I would speak.

BUCKINGHAM. Say on, my loving lord.

KING RICHARD. Why, Buckingham, I say, I would be king. 12

BUCKINGHAM. Why, so you are, my thrice-renowned liege.

KING RICHARD. Ha ! am I king ? 'Tis so : but Edward lives.

BUCKINGHAM. True, noble prince.

KING RICHARD. O bitter consequence,  
That Edward still should live ! ' True, noble prince ! '

Cousin, thou wast not wont to be so dull : 17

Shall I be plain ? I wish the bastards dead ;

And I would have it suddenly perform'd.

What sayest thou now ? speak suddenly, be brief. 20

BUCKINGHAM. Your Grace may do your pleasure.

KING RICHARD. Tut, tut ! thou art all ice, thy kindness freezes :

Say, have I thy consent that they shall die ?

BUCKINGHAM. Give me some little breath, some pause,  
dear lord, 24

Before I positively speak in this :

I will resolve you herein presently. [Exit.

CATESBY. [Aside to another.] The king is angry : see, he gnaws his lip.

KING RICHARD. [Descends from his throne.] I will converse  
with iron-witted fools 28

And unrespective boys : none are for me

That look into me with considerate eyes.

High-reaching Buckingham grows circumspect.

Boy ! 32

PAGE. My lord !

KING RICHARD. Know'st thou not any whom corrupting gold

Will tempt unto a close exploit of death ?

PAGE. I know a discontented gentleman, 36

Whose humble means match not his haughty spirit :

Gold were as good as twenty orators,

And will, no doubt, tempt him to any thing. 39

KING RICHARD. What is his name ?



PAGE.

His name, my lord, is Tyrrell.

KING RICHARD. I partly know the man : go, call him  
hither. [Exit Page.

The deep-revolving witty Buckingham  
No more shall be the neighbour to my counsel.  
Hath he so long held out with me untir'd, 44  
And stops he now for breath? well, be it so.

Enter STANLEY.

How now, Lord Stanley! what's the news?

STANLEY. Know, my loving lord,  
The Marquess Dorset, as I hear, is fled 48  
To Richmond, in the parts where he abides.

KING RICHARD. Come hither, Catesby: rumour it  
abroad,  
That Anne my wife is very grievous sick;  
I will take order for her keeping close. 52  
Inquire me out some mean poor gentleman,  
Whom I will marry straight to Clarence' daughter:  
The boy is foolish, and I fear not him.  
Look, how thou dream'st! I say again, give out 56  
That Anne my queen is sick, and like to die:  
About it; for it stands me much upon,  
To stop all hopes whose growth may damage me.

[Exit CATESBY.

I must be married to my brother's daughter, 60  
Or else my kingdom stands on brittle glass.  
Murder her brothers, and then marry her!  
Uncertain way of gain! But I am in  
So far in blood, that sin will pluck on sin: 64  
Tear-falling pity dwells not in this eye.

Re-enter Page, with TYRRELL.

Is thy name Tyrrell?

TYRRELL. James Tyrrell, and your most obedient  
subject.

KING RICHARD. Art thou, indeed?

TYRRELL. Prove me, my gracious lord.

KING RICHARD. Darest thou resolve to kill a friend of  
mine? 69TYRRELL. Please you; but I had rather kill two  
enemies.KING RICHARD. Why, then thou hast it: two deep  
enemies,

Foes to my rest and my sweet sleep's disturbers, 72  
Are they that I would have thee deal upon.  
Tyrrell, I mean those bastards in the Tower.

TYRRELL. Let me have open means to come to them,  
And soon I'll rid you from the fear of them. 76

KING RICHARD. Thou sing'st sweet music. Hark,  
come hither, Tyrrell:

Go, by this token: rise, and lend thine ear. [Whispers.  
There is no more but so: say it is done,  
And I will love thee, and prefer thee for it. 80

TYRRELL. I will dispatch it straight. [Exit.

Re-enter BUCKINGHAM.

BUCKINGHAM. My lord, I have consider'd in my mind  
The late demand that you did sound me in.

KING RICHARD. Well, let that rest. Dorset is fled to  
Richmond. 84

BUCKINGHAM. I hear the news, my lord.

KING RICHARD. Stanley, he is your wife's son: well,  
look to it.

BUCKINGHAM. My lord, I claim the gift, my due by  
promise,  
For which your honour and your faith is pawn'd; 88  
The earldom of Hereford and the moveables  
Which you have promised I shall possess.

KING RICHARD. Stanley, look to your wife: if she  
convey  
Letters to Richmond, you shall answer it. 92

BUCKINGHAM. What says your highness to my just  
request?

KING RICHARD. I do remember me, Henry the Sixth  
Did prophesy that Richmond should be king,  
When Richmond was a little peevish boy. 96  
A king! perhaps—

BUCKINGHAM. My lord!

KING RICHARD. How chance the prophet could not at  
that time  
Have told me, I being by, that I should kill him? 100  
BUCKINGHAM. My lord, your promise for the earl-  
dom,—

KING RICHARD. Richmond! When last I was at Exeter,  
The mayor in courtesy show'd me the castle,  
And call'd it Rougemont: at which name I started,

Because a bard of Ireland told me once 105  
I should not live long after I saw Richmond.

BUCKINGHAM. My lord !

KING RICHARD. Ay, what 's o'clock ? 108

BUCKINGHAM. I am thus bold to put your Grace in  
mind

Of what you promis'd me.

KING RICHARD. Well, but what is 't o'clock ?

BUCKINGHAM. Upon the stroke of ten.

KING RICHARD. Well, let it strike.

BUCKINGHAM. Why let it strike ?

KING RICHARD. Because that, like a Jack, thou  
keep'st the stroke 113

Betwixt thy begging and my meditation.

I am not in the giving vein to-day.

BUCKINGHAM. Why, then resolve me whether you will  
or no. 116

KING RICHARD. Thou troublest me : I am not in the  
vein. [Exeunt KING RICHARD and train.

BUCKINGHAM. And is it thus ? repays he my deep  
service

With such contempt ? made I him king for this ?

O, let me think on Hastings, and be gone 120

To Brecknock, while my fearful head is on. [Exit.

### SCENE III.—The Same.

Enter TYRRELL.

TYRRELL. The tyrannous and bloody act is done ;  
The most arch deed of piteous massacre  
That ever yet this land was guilty of.  
Dighton and Forrest, whom I did suborn 4  
To do this piece of ruthless butchery,  
Albeit they were flesh'd villains, bloody dogs,  
Melting with tenderness and mild compassion;  
Wept like to children in their death's sad story : 8  
' Oh ! thus,' quoth Dighton, ' lay the gentle babes :'  
' Thus, thus,' quoth Forrest, ' girdling one another  
Within their alabaster innocent arms :  
Their lips were four red roses on a stalk, 12  
Which in their summer beauty kiss'd each other.  
A book of prayers on their pillow lay ;  
Which once,' quoth Forrest, ' almost chang'd my mind ;

But, O, the devil '—there the villain stopp'd ; 16  
When Dighton thus told on : ' We smothered  
The most replenished sweet work of nature,  
That from the prime creation e'er she fram'd.'  
Hence both are gone with conscience and remorse ; 20  
They could not speak ; and so I left them both,  
To bear this tidings to the bloody king :  
And here he comes.

Enter KING RICHARD.

All health, my sovereign lord !

KING RICHARD. Kind Tyrrell, am I happy in thy news ?

TYRRELL. If to have done the thing you gave in charge  
Beget your happiness, be happy then, 26  
For it is done.

KING RICHARD. But didst thou see them dead ?

TYRRELL. I did, my lord.

KING RICHARD. And buried, gentle Tyrrell ?

TYRRELL. The chaplain of the Tower hath buried them ;  
But how or in what place I do not know.

KING RICHARD. Come to me, Tyrrell, soon at after  
supper,  
When thou shalt tell the process of their death. 32  
Meantime, but think how I may do thee good,  
And be inheritor of thy desire.  
Farewell till then.

TYRRELL. I humbly take my leave. [Exit. 36

KING RICHARD. The son of Clarence have I pent up  
close ; 36

His daughter meanly have I match'd in marriage ;  
The sons of Edward sleep in Abraham's bosom,  
And Anne my wife hath bid the world good night.  
Now, for I know the Breton Richmond aims 40  
At young Elizabeth, my brother's daughter,  
And, by that knot, looks proudly on the crown,  
To her go I, a jolly thriving wooer.

Enter CATESBY.

CATESBY. My lord ! 44

KING RICHARD. Good or bad news, that thou comest  
in so bluntly ?

CATESBY. Bad news, my lord : Morton is fled to  
Richmond ;  
And Buckingham, back'd with the hardy Welshmen,

Is in the field, and still his power increaseth. 48

KING RICHARD. Ely with Richmond troubles me more  
near

Than Buckingham and his rash-levied strength.

Come ; I have learn'd that fearful commenting

Is leaden servitor to dull delay: 52

Delay leads impotent and snail-pac'd beggary :

Then fiery expedition be my wing,

Jove's Mercury, and herald for a king !

Go, muster men : my counsel is my shield; 56

We must be brief when traitors brave the field. [Exeunt.

SCENE IV.—The Same. Before the Palace.

Enter QUEEN MARGARET.

QUEEN MARGARET. So, now prosperity begins to mellow  
And drop into the rotten mouth of death.

Here in these confines slyly have I lurk'd

To watch the waning of mine enemies. 4

A dire induction am I witness to,

And will to France, hoping the consequence

Will prove as bitter, black, and tragical.

Withdraw thee, wretched Margaret: who comes here ?

Enter QUEEN ELIZABETH and the DUCHESS OF YORK.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Ah ! my poor princes ! ah, my  
tender babes, 9

My unblown flowers, new-appearing sweets,

If yet your gentle souls fly in the air

And be not fix'd in doom perpetual, 12

Hover about me with your airy wings,

And hear your mother's lamentation.

QUEEN MARGARET. Hover about her ; say, that right  
for right

Hath dimm'd your infant morn to aged night. 16

DUCHESS. So many miseries have craz'd my voice,

That my woe-wearied tongue is still and mute.

Edward Plantagenet, why art thou dead ?

QUEEN MARGARET. Plantagenet doth quit Plantage-  
net; 20

Edward for Edward pays a dying debt.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Wilt thou, O God ! fly from such  
gentle lambs,

And throw them in the entrails of the wolf?

When didst thou sleep when such a deed was done?

QUEEN MARGARET. When holy Harry died, and my  
sweet son. 25

DUCHESS. Dead life, blind sight, poor mortal living  
ghost,

Woe's scene, world's shame, grave's due by life usurp'd,

Brief abstract and record of tedious days, 28

Rest thy unrest on England's lawful earth, [Sitting down.

Unlawfully made drunk with innocent blood!

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Ah! that thou wouldst as soon  
afford a grave

As thou canst yield a melancholy seat; 32

Then would I hide my bones, not rest them here.

Ah! who hath any cause to mourn but I?

[Sitting down by her.

QUEEN MARGARET. If ancient sorrow be most rever-  
end,

Give mine the benefit of seniory, 36

And let my griefs frown on the upper hand,

If sorrow can admit society. [Sitting down with them.

Tell o'er your woes again by viewing mine:

I had an Edward, till a Richard kill'd him; 40

I had a Harry, till a Richard kill'd him;

Thou hadst an Edward, till a Richard kill'd him;

Thou hadst a Richard, till a Richard kill'd him.

DUCHESS. I had a Richard too, and thou didst kill  
him; 44

I had a Rutland too, thou help'st to kill him.

QUEEN MARGARET. Thou hadst a Clarence too, and  
Richard kill'd him.

From forth the kennel of thy womb hath crept

A hell-hound that doth hunt us all to death: 48

That dog, that had his teeth before his eyes,

To worry lambs, and lap their gentle blood,

That foul defacer of God's handiwork,

That excellent grand tyrant of the earth, 52

That reigns in galled eyes of weeping souls,

Thy womb let loose, to chase us to our graves.

O! upright, just, and true-disposing God,

How do I thank thee that this carnal cur 56

Preys on the issue of his mother's body,

And makes her pew-fellow with others' moan.

DUCHESS. O ! Harry's wife, triumph not in my woes :  
God witness with me, I have wept for thine. 60

QUEEN MARGARET. Bear with me ; I am hungry for  
revenge,

And now I cloy me with beholding it.

Thy Edward he is dead, that kill'd my Edward ;

Thy other Edward dead, to quit my Edward ; 64

Young York he is but boot, because both they

Match not the high perfection of my loss :

Thy Clarence he is dead that stabb'd my Edward ;  
And the beholders of this tragic play, 68

The adulterate Hastings, Rivers, Vaughan, Grey,

Untimely smother'd in their dusky graves.

Richard yet lives, hell's black intelligencer,  
Only reserv'd their factor, to buy souls 72

And send them thither ; but at hand, at hand,

Ensues his piteous and unpitied end :

Earth gapes, hell burns, fiends roar, saints pray, 76

To have him suddenly convey'd from hence.

Cancel his bond of life, dear God ! I pray,

That I may live to say, The dog is dead.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. O ! thou didst prophesy the time  
would come

That I should wish for thee to help me curse 80

That bottled spider, that foul bunchback'd toad.

QUEEN MARGARET. I call'd thee then vain flourish of  
my fortune ;

I call'd thee then poor shadow, painted queen ;

The presentation of but what I was ; 84

The flattering index of a direful pageant ;

One heav'd a-high to be hurl'd down below ;

A mother only mock'd with two fair babes ;

A dream of what thou wert, a breath, a bubble, 88

A sign of dignity, a garish flag,

To be the aim of every dangerous shot ;

A queen in jest, only to fill the scene.

Where is thy husband now ? where be thy brothers ?

Where are thy children ? wherein dost thou joy ? 93

Who sues and kneels and cries God save the queen ?

Where be the bending peers that flatter'd thee ?

Where be the thronging troops that follow'd thee ?

Decline all this, and see what now thou art : 97

For happy wife, a most distressed widow ;

For joyful mother, one that wails the name ;  
 For one being su'd to, one that humbly sues ;  
 For queen, a very caitiff crown'd with care ;  
 For one that scorn'd at me, now scorn'd of me ;  
 For one being fear'd of all, now fearing one ;  
 For one commanding all, obey'd of none. 104  
 Thus hath the course of justice whirl'd about,  
 And left thee but a very prey to time ;  
 Having no more but thought of what thou wert,  
 To torture thee the more, being what thou art. 108  
 Thou didst usurp my place, and dost thou not  
 Usurp the just proportion of my sorrow ?  
 Now thy proud neck bears half my burden'd yoke ;  
 From which even here, I slip my wearied head, 112  
 And leave the burden of it all on thee.  
 Farewell, York's wife, and queen of sad mischance :  
 These English woes shall make me smile in France.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. O thou, well skill'd in curses, stay  
 awhile, 116

And teach me how to curse mine enemies.

QUEEN MARGARET. Forbear to sleep the night, and  
 fast the day ;

Compare dead happiness with living woe ;  
 Think that thy babes were fairer than they were, 120  
 And he that slew them fouler than he is :  
 Bettering thy loss makes the bad causer worse :  
 Revolving this will teach thee how to curse.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. My words are dull ; O ! quicken  
 them with thine ! 124

QUEEN MARGARET. Thy woes will make them sharp,  
 and pierce like mine. [Exit.

DUCHESS. Why should calamity be full of words ?

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Windy attorneys to their client  
 woes,

Airy succeeders of intestate joys, 128  
 Poor breathing orators of miseries !

Let them have scope : though what they do impart  
 Help nothing else, yet do they ease the heart.

DUCHESS. If so, then be not tongue-tied : go with me,  
 And in the breath of bitter words let's smother 133  
 My damned son, that thy two sweet sons smother'd.

[A trumpet heard.

The trumpet sounds : be copious in exclaims.



Enter KING RICHARD. and his Train, marching.

KING RICHARD. Who intercepts me in my expedition?

DUCHESS. O! she that might have intercepted thee,  
By strangling thee in her accursed womb,  
From all the slaughters, wretch, that thou hast done!

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Hid'st thou that forehead with a  
golden crown, 140

Where should be branded, if that right were right,  
The slaughter of the prince that ow'd that crown,  
And the dire death of my poor sons and brothers?  
Tell me, thou villain slave, where are my children?

DUCHESS. Thou toad, thou toad, where is thy brother  
Clarence 145

And little Ned Plantagenet, his son?

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Where is the gentle Rivers,  
Vaughan, Grey?

DUCHESS. Where is kind Hastings? 148

KING RICHARD. A flourish, trumpets! strike alarum,  
drums!

Let not the heavens hear these tell-tale women  
Rail on the Lord's anointed. Strike, I say!

[Flourish. Alarums.

Either be patient, and entreat me fair, 152

Or with the clamorous report of war

Thus will I drown your exclamations.

DUCHESS. Art thou my son?

KING RICHARD. Ay; I thank God, my father, and  
yourself. 156

DUCHESS. Then patiently hear my impatience.

KING RICHARD. Madam, I have a touch of your con-  
dition,

That cannot brook the accent of reproof.

DUCHESS. O, let me speak!

KING RICHARD. Do, then; but I'll not hear. 160

DUCHESS. I will be mild and gentle in my words.

KING RICHARD. And brief, good mother; for I am in  
haste.

DUCHESS. Art thou so hasty? I have stay'd for thee,  
God knows, in torment and in agony. 164

KING RICHARD. And came I not at last to comfort you?

DUCHESS. No, by the holy rood, thou know'st it well,  
Thou cam'st on earth to make the earth my hell.

A grievous burden was thy birth to me ; 168  
Tetchy and wayward was thy infancy ;  
Thy school-days frightful, desperate, wild and furious ;  
Thy prime of manhood daring, bold, and venturous ;  
Thy age confirm'd, proud, subtle, sly, and bloody,  
More mild, but yet more harmful, kind in hatred :  
What comfortable hour canst thou name  
That ever grac'd me in thy company ?

KING RICHARD. Faith, none, but Humphrey Hour,  
that call'd your Grace 176  
To breakfast once forth of my company.  
If I be so disgracious in your eye,  
Let me march on, and not offend you, madam.  
Strike up the drum !

DUCHESS. I prithee, hear me speak. 180

KING RICHARD. You speak too bitterly.

DUCHESS. Hear me a word ;  
For I shall never speak to thee again.

KING RICHARD. So !

DUCHESS. Either thou wilt die by God's just ordi-  
nance, 184

Ere from this war thou turn a conqueror ;  
Or I with grief and extreme age shall perish  
And never look upon thy face again.  
Therefore take with thee my most grievous curse, 188  
Which, in the day of battle, tire thee more  
Than all the complete armour that thou wear'st !  
My prayers on the adverse party fight ;  
And there the little souls of Edward's children 192  
Whisper the spirits of thine enemies  
And promise them success and victory.  
Bloody thou art, bloody will be thy end ;  
Shame serves thy life and doth thy death attend. [Exit.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Though far more cause, yet much  
less spirit to curse 197

Abides in me : I say amen to her. [Going.

KING RICHARD. Stay, madam ; I must talk a word  
with you.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. I have no more sons of the royal  
blood 200

For thee to slaughter : for my daughters, Richard,  
They shall be praying nuns, not weeping queens ;  
And therefore level not to hit their lives.

KING RICHARD. You have a daughter call'd Elizabeth,  
Virtuous and fair, royal and gracious. 205

QUEEN ELIZABETH. And must she die for this? O!  
let her live,

And I'll corrupt her manners, stain her beauty;  
Slander myself as false to Edward's bed; 208

Throw over her the veil of infamy:

So she may live unscarr'd of bleeding slaughter,

I will confess she was not Edward's daughter.

KING RICHARD. Wrong not her birth; she is of royal  
blood. 212

QUEEN ELIZABETH. To save her life, I'll say she is  
not so.

KING RICHARD. Her life is safest only in her birth.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. And only in that safety died her  
brothers.

KING RICHARD. Lo! at their births good stars were  
opposite! 216

QUEEN ELIZABETH. No, to their lives ill friends were  
contrary.

KING RICHARD. All unavoided is the doom of destiny.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. True, when avoided grace makes  
destiny.

My babes were destin'd to a fairer death, 220

If grace had bless'd thee with a fairer life.

KING RICHARD. You speak as if that I had slain my  
cousins.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Cousins, indeed; and by their  
uncle cozen'd

Of comfort, kingdom, kindred, freedom, life. 224

Whose hand soever lanc'd their tender hearts,

Thy head, all indirectly, gave direction:

No doubt the murderous knife was dull and blunt

Till it was whetted on thy stone-hard heart, 228

To revel in the entrails of my lambs.

But that still use of grief makes wild grief tame,

My tongue should to thy ears not name my boys

Till that my nails were anchor'd in thine eyes; 232

And I, in such a desperate bay of death,

Like a poor bark, of sails and tackling reft,

Rush all to pieces on thy rocky bosom.

KING RICHARD. Madam, so thrive I in my enterprise  
And dangerous success of bloody wars, 237

As I intend more good to you and yours  
Than ever you or yours by me were harm'd.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. What good is cover'd with the  
face of heaven, 240

To be discover'd, that can do me good ?

KING RICHARD. The advancement of your children,  
gentle lady.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Up to some scaffold, there to lose  
their heads ?

KING RICHARD. No, to the dignity and height of  
fortune, 244

The high imperial type of this earth's glory.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Flatter my sorrow with report of  
it :

Tell me what state, what dignity, what honour,  
Canst thou demise to any child of mine ? 248

KING RICHARD. Even all I have ; ay, and myself and  
all,

Will I withal endow a child of thine ;

So in the Lethe of thy angry soul

Thou drown the sad remembrance of those wrongs

Which thou supposest I have done to thee. 253

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Be brief, lest that the process of  
thy kindness

Last longer telling than thy kindness' date.

KING RICHARD. Then know, that from my soul I love  
thy daughter. 256

QUEEN ELIZABETH. My daughter's mother thinks it  
with her soul.

KING RICHARD. What do you think ?

QUEEN ELIZABETH. That thou dost love my daughter  
from thy soul : 259

So from thy soul's love didst thou love her brothers ;

And from my heart's love I do thank thee for it.

KING RICHARD. Be not too hasty to confound my  
meaning :

I mean, that with my soul I love thy daughter,

And do intend to make her Queen of England. 264

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Well then, who dost thou mean  
shall be her king ?

KING RICHARD. Even he that makes her queen : who  
else should be ?

QUEEN ELIZABETH. What ! thou ?

KING RICHARD. Even so : what think you of it ?

QUEEN ELIZABETH. How canst thou woo her ?

KING RICHARD. That I would learn of you,  
As one being best acquainted with her humour.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. And wilt thou learn of me ?

KING RICHARD. Madam, with all my heart.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Send to her, by the man that slew  
her brothers, 272

A pair of bleeding hearts ; thereon engrave  
Edward and York ; then haply will she weep :  
Therefore present to her, as sometime Margaret  
Did to thy father, steep'd in Rutland's blood, 276  
A handkerchief, which, say to her, did drain  
The purple sap from her sweet brother's body,  
And bid her wipe her weeping eyes withal.  
If this inducement move her not to love, 280  
Send her a letter of thy noble deeds ;  
Tell her thou madest away her uncle Clarence,  
Her uncle Rivers ; ay, and for her sake,  
Madest quick conveyance with her good aunt Anne.

KING RICHARD. You mock me, madam ; this is not  
the way 285  
To win your daughter.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. There is no other way  
Unless thou couldst put on some other shape,  
And not be Richard that hath done all this. 288

KING RICHARD. Say, that I did all this for love of her.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Nay, then indeed she cannot  
choose but hate thee,  
Having bought love with such a bloody spoil.

KING RICHARD. Look, what is done cannot be now  
amended : 292

Men shall deal unadvisedly sometimes,  
Which after-hours give leisure to repent.  
If I did take the kingdom from your sons,  
To make amends I'll give it to your daughter. 296  
If I have kill'd the issue of your womb,  
To quicken your increase, I will beget  
Mine issue of your blood upon your daughter :  
A grandam's name is little less in love 300  
Than is the doting title of a mother ;  
They are as children but one step below,  
Even of your mettle, of your very blood ;

Of all one pain, save for a night of groans 304  
 Endur'd of her for whom you bid like sorrow.  
 Your children were vexation to your youth,  
 But mine shall be a comfort to your age.  
 The loss you have is but a son being king, 308  
 And by that loss your daughter is made queen.  
 I cannot make you what amends I would,  
 Therefore accept such kindness as I can.  
 Dorset your son, that with a fearful soul 312  
 Leads discontented steps in foreign soil,  
 This fair alliance quickly shall call home  
 To high promotions and great dignity :  
 The king that calls your beauteous daughter wife, 316  
 Familiarly shall call thy Dorset brother ;  
 Again shall you be mother to a king,  
 And all the ruins of distressful times  
 Repair'd with double riches of content. 320  
 What ! we have many goodly days to see :  
 The liquid drops of tears that you have shed  
 Shall come again, transform'd to orient pearl,  
 Advantaging their loan with interest 324  
 Of ten times double gain of happiness.  
 Go then, my mother; to thy daughter go:  
 Make bold her bashful years with your experience;  
 Prepare her ears to hear a wooer's tale; 328  
 Put in her tender heart the aspiring flame  
 Of golden sovereignty ; acquaint the princess  
 With the sweet silent hours of marriage joys:  
 And when this arm of mine hath chastised 332  
 The petty rebel, dull-brain'd Buckingham,  
 Bound with triumphant garlands will I come,  
 And lead thy daughter to a conqueror's bed;  
 To whom I will retail my conquest won, 336  
 And she shall be sole victress, Cæsar's Cæsar.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. What were I best to say? her  
 father's brother  
 Would be her lord? Or shall I say, her uncle?  
 Or, he that slew her brothers and her uncles? 340  
 Under what title shall I woo for thee,  
 That God, the law, my honour, and her love  
 Can make seem pleasing to her tender years?

KING RICHARD. Infer fair England's peace by this  
 alliance. 344

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Which she shall purchase with still lasting war.

KING RICHARD. Tell her, the king, that may command, entreats.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. That at her hands which the king's King forbids.

KING RICHARD. Say, she shall be a high and mighty queen. 348

QUEEN ELIZABETH. To wail the title, as her mother doth.

KING RICHARD. Say, I will love her everlastingly.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. But how long shall that title 'ever' last?

KING RICHARD. Sweetly in force unto her fair life's end.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. But how long fairly shall her sweet life last? 353

KING RICHARD. As long as heaven and nature lengthens it.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. As long as hell and Richard likes of it.

KING RICHARD. Say, I, her sovereign, am her subject low. 356

QUEEN ELIZABETH. But she, your subject, loathes such sovereignty.

KING RICHARD. Be eloquent in my behalf to her.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. An honest tale speeds best being plainly told.

KING RICHARD. Then plainly to her tell my loving tale.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Plain and not honest is too harsh a style. 361

KING RICHARD. Your reasons are too shallow and too quick.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. O, no! my reasons are too deep and dead;

Too deep and dead, poor infants, in their graves. 364

KING RICHARD. Harp not on that string, madam; that is past.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Harp on it still shall I till heart-strings break.

KING RICHARD. Now, by my George, my garter, and my crown,—

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Profan'd, dishonour'd, and the third usurp'd. 368

KING RICHARD. I swear,—

QUEEN ELIZABETH. By nothing ; for this is no oath.  
Thy George, profan'd, hath lost his holy honour;  
Thy garter, blemish'd, pawn'd his knightly virtue;  
Thy crown, usurp'd, disgrac'd his kingly glory. 372  
If something thou wouldst swear to be believ'd,  
Swear, then, by something that thou hast not wrong'd.

KING RICHARD. Now, by the world,—

QUEEN ELIZABETH. 'Tis full of thy foul wrongs.

KING RICHARD. My father's death,—

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Thy life hath that dishonour'd.

KING RICHARD. Then, by myself,—

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Thyself is self-misus'd.

KING RICHARD. Why, then, by God,—

QUEEN ELIZABETH. God's wrong is most of all.  
If thou hadst fear'd to break an oath by him,  
The unity the king my husband made 380  
Had not been broken, nor my brothers died:  
If thou hadst fear'd to break an oath by him,  
The imperial metal, circling now thy head,  
Had grac'd the tender temples of my child, 384  
And both the princes had been breathing here,  
Which now, too tender bedfellows for dust,  
Thy broken faith hath made a prey for worms.  
What canst thou swear by now?

KING RICHARD. The time to come.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. That thou hast wronged in the  
time o'erpast ; 389

For I myself have many tears to wash  
Hereafter time for time past wrong'd by thee.  
The children live, whose parents thou hast slaughter'd,  
Ungovern'd youth, to wail it in their age: 393  
The parents live, whose children thou hast butcher'd,  
Old barren plants, to wail it with their age.  
Swear not by time to come ; for that thou hast 396  
Misus'd ere us'd, by times ill-us'd o'erpast.

KING RICHARD. As I intend to prosper, and repent,  
So thrive I in my dangerous affairs  
Of hostile arms ! myself myself confound ! 400  
Heaven and fortune bar me happy hours !  
Day, yield me not thy light ; nor, night, thy rest !  
Be opposite all planets of good luck  
To my proceeding, if, with pure heart's love, 404



Immaculate devotion, holy thoughts,  
 I tender not thy beauteous princely daughter !  
 In her consists my happiness and thine ;  
 Without her, follows to myself, and thee, 408  
 Herself, the land, and many a Christian soul,  
 Death, desolation, ruin, and decay :  
 It cannot be avoided but by this ;  
 It will not be avoided but by this. 412  
 Therefore, dear mother,—I must call you so,—  
 Be the attorney of my love to her :  
 Plead what I will be, not what I have been ;  
 Not my deserts, but what I will deserve : 416  
 Urge the necessity and state of times,  
 And be not peevish-fond in great designs.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Shall I be tempted of the devil  
 thus ? 419

KING RICHARD. Ay, if the devil tempt thee to do good.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Shall I forget myself to be myself ?

KING RICHARD. Ay, if your self's remembrance wrong  
 yourself.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Yet thou didst kill my children.

KING RICHARD. But in your daughter's womb I bury  
 them : 424

Where, in that nest of spicery, they shall breed  
 Selves of themselves, to your recomforture.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. Shall I go win my daughter to  
 thy will ? 427

KING RICHARD. And be a happy mother by the deed.

QUEEN ELIZABETH. I go. Write to me very shortly,  
 And you shall understand from me her mind.

KING RICHARD. Bear her my true love's kiss ; and so,  
 farewell.

[Kissing her. Exit QUEEN ELIZABETH.  
 Relenting fool, and shallow changing woman ! 432

Enter RATCLIFF ; CATESBY following.

How now ! what news ?

RATCLIFF. Most mighty sovereign, on the western  
 coast

Rideth a puissant navy ; to the shores  
 Throng many doubtful hollow-hearted friends, 436  
 Unarm'd, and unresolv'd to beat them back.  
 'Tis thought that Richmond is their admiral ;  
 And there they hull, expecting but the aid

Of Buckingham to welcome them ashore. 440

KING RICHARD. Some light-foot friend post to the Duke of Norfolk :

Ratcliff, thyself, or Catesby ; where is he ?

CATESBY. Here, my good lord.

KING RICHARD. Catesby, fly to the duke.

CATESBY. I will, my lord, with all convenient haste.

KING RICHARD. Ratcliff, come hither. Post to Salisbury :

When thou com'st thither,—[To CATESBY.] Dull, unmindful villain,

Why stay'st thou here, and go'st not to the duke ?

CATESBY. First, mighty liege, tell me your highness' pleasure, 448

What from your Grace I shall deliver to him.

KING RICHARD. O ! true, good Catesby : bid him levy straight

The greatest strength and power he can make,

And meet me suddenly at Salisbury. 452

CATESBY. I go. [Exit.

RATCLIFF. What, may it please you, shall I do at Salisbury ?

KING RICHARD. Why, what wouldst thou do there before I go ?

RATCLIFF. Your highness told me I should post before.

Enter STANLEY.

KING RICHARD. My mind is chang'd. Stanley, what news with you ? 457

STANLEY. None good, my liege, to please you with the hearing ;

Nor none so bad but well may be reported.

KING RICHARD. Hoyday, a riddle ! neither good nor bad ! 460

What need'st thou run so many miles about,

When thou mayst tell thy tale the nearest way ?

Once more, what news ?

STANLEY. Richmond is on the seas.

KING RICHARD. There let him sink, and be the seas on him ! 464

White-liver'd runagate ! what doth he there ?

STANLEY. I know not, mighty sovereign, but by guess.

KING RICHARD. Well, as you guess ?

STANLEY. Stir'd up by Dorset, Buckingham, and  
Morton, 466

He makes for England, here to claim the crown.

KING RICHARD. Is the chair empty? is the sword  
unsway'd?

Is the king dead? the empire unpossess'd?

What heir of York is there alive but we? 472

And who is England's king but great York's heir?

Then, tell me, what makes he upon the seas?

STANLEY. Unless for that, my liege, I cannot guess.

KING RICHARD. Unless for that he comes to be your  
liege, 476

You cannot guess wherefore the Welshman comes.

Thou wilt revolt and fly to him, I fear.

STANLEY. No, my good lord; therefore mistrust me  
not.

KING RICHARD. Where is thy power then to beat him  
back? 480

Where be thy tenants and thy followers?

Are they not now upon the western shore,

Safe-conducting the rebels from their ships?

STANLEY. No, my good lord, my friends are in the  
north. 484

KING RICHARD. Cold friends to me: what do they in  
the north,

When they should serve their sovereign in the west?

STANLEY. They have not been commanded, mighty  
king:

Pleaseth your majesty to give me leave, 488

I'll muster up my friends, and meet your Grace,

Where and what time your majesty shall please.

KING RICHARD. Ay, ay, thou wouldst be gone to join  
with Richmond:

But I'll not trust thee.

STANLEY. Most mighty sovereign, 492

You have no cause to hold my friendship doubtful.

I never was nor never will be false.

KING RICHARD. Go then and muster men: but leave  
behind

Your son, George Stanley: look your heart be firm,

Or else his head's assurance is but frail. 497

STANLEY. So deal with him as I prove true to you.

[Exit.

Enter a Messenger.

MESSENGER. My gracious sovereign, now in Devonshire,

As I by friends am well advertised, 500  
Sir Edward Courtney, and the haughty prelate,  
Bishop of Exeter, his brother there,  
With many more confederates are in arms.

Enter a second Messenger.

SECOND MESSENGER. In Kent, my liege, the Guildfords are in arms; 504

And every hour more competitors  
Flock to the rebels, and their power grows strong.

Enter a third Messenger.

THIRD MESSENGER. My lord, the army of great Buckingham—

KING RICHARD. Out on ye, owls! nothing but songs of death? [He strikes him.

There, take thou that, till thou bring better news.

THIRD MESSENGER. The news I have to tell your majesty

Is, that by sudden floods and fall of waters,  
Buckingham's army is dispers'd and scatter'd; 512  
And he himself wander'd away alone,  
No man knows whither.

KING RICHARD. I cry thee mercy:  
There is my purse, to cure that blow of thine.  
Hath any well-advised friend proclaim'd 516  
Reward to him that brings the traitor in?

THIRD MESSENGER. Such proclamation hath been made, my liege.

Enter a fourth Messenger.

FOURTH MESSENGER. Sir Thomas Lovel, and Lord Marquess Dorset,

'Tis said, my liege, in Yorkshire are in arms: 520  
But this good comfort bring I to your highness,  
The Breton navy is dispers'd by tempest.  
Richmond, in Dorsetshire, sent out a boat  
Unto the shore to ask those on the banks 524  
If they were his assistants, yea or no;

Who answer'd him, they came from Buckingham  
 Upon his party : he, mistrusting them,  
 Hais'd sail, and made away for Brittany. 528

KING RICHARD. March on, march on, since we are up  
 in arms ;

If not to fight with foreign enemies,  
 Yet to beat down these rebels here at home.

Re-enter CATESBY.

CATESBY. My liege, the Duke of Buckingham is  
 taken, 532

That is the best news : that the Earl of Richmond  
 Is with a mighty power landed at Milford  
 Is colder news, but yet they must be told.

KING RICHARD. Away towards Salisbury ! while we  
 reason here, 536

A royal battle might be won and lost.  
 Some one take order Buckingham be brought  
 To Salisbury ; the rest march on with me. [Exeunt.

SCENE V.—The Same. A Room in LORD STANLEY'S House.

Enter STANLEY and SIR CHRISTOPHER URSWICK.

STANLEY. Sir Christopher, tell Richmond this from  
 me :

That in the sty of this most bloody boar  
 My son George Stanley is frank'd up in hold ;  
 If I revolt, off goes young George's head ; 4  
 The fear of that holds off my present aid.  
 So, get thee gone : commend me to thy lord.  
 Withal, say that the queen hath heartily consented  
 He should espouse Elizabeth her daughter. 8  
 But, tell me, where is princely Richmond now ?

CHRISTOPHER. At Pembroke, or at Harford-west, in  
 Wales.

STANLEY. What men of name resort to him ?

CHRISTOPHER. Sir Walter Herbert, a renowned soldier,  
 Sir Gilbert Talbot, Sir William Stanley, 13  
 Oxford, redoubted Pembroke, Sir James Blunt,  
 And Rice ap Thomas, with a valiant crew ;  
 And many other of great name and worth : 16  
 And towards London do they bend their power,

If by the way they be not fought withal.

STANLEY. Well, hie thee to thy lord; I kiss his hand:  
My letter will resolve him of my mind. 20  
Farewell. [Exeunt.

## ACT V.

SCENE I.—Salisbury. An open Place.

Enter the Sheriff and Guard, with BUCKINGHAM, led to execution.

BUCKINGHAM. Will not King Richard let me speak  
with him?

SHERIFF. No, my good lord; therefore be patient.

BUCKINGHAM. Hastings, and Edward's children, Grey  
and Rivers,

Holy King Henry, and thy fair son Edward, 4

Vaughan, and all that have miscarried

By underhand corrupted foul injustice,

If that your moody discontented souls

Do through the clouds behold this present hour, 8

Even for revenge mock my destruction!

This is All-Souls' day, fellows, is it not?

SHERIFF. It is, my lord.

BUCKINGHAM. Why, then All-Souls' day is my body's  
doomsday. 12

This is the day that, in King Edward's time,

I wish'd might fall on me, when I was found

False to his children or his wife's allies;

This is the day wherein I wish'd to fall 16

By the false faith of him whom most I trusted;

This, this All-Souls' day to my fearful soul

Is the determin'd respite of my wrongs.

That high All-Seer which I dallied with 20

Hath turn'd my feigned prayer on my head,

And given in earnest what I begg'd in jest.

Thus doth he force the swords of wicked men

To turn their own points on their masters' bosoms:

Thus Margaret's curse falls heavy on my neck: 25

'When he,' quoth she, 'shall split thy heart with sorrow,

Remember Margaret was a prophetess.'

Come, lead me, officers, to the block of shame: 28

Wrong hath but wrong, and blame the due of blame.

[Exeunt.

## SCENE II.—A Plain near Tamworth.

Enter with drum and colours, RICHMOND, OXFORD, SIR JAMES BLUNT, SIR WALTER HERBERT, and Others, with Forces, marching.

RICHMOND. Fellows in arms, and my most loving friends,

Bruis'd underneath the yoke of tyranny,  
Thus far into the bowels of the land  
Have we march'd on without impediment : 4  
And here receive we from our father Stanley  
Lines of fair comfort and encouragement.  
The wretched, bloody, and usurping boar,  
That spoil'd your summer fields and fruitful vines, 8  
Swills your warm blood like wash, and makes his trough  
In your embowell'd bosoms, this foul swine  
Is now even in the centre of this isle,  
Near to the town of Leicester, as we learn : 12  
From Tamworth thither is but one day's march.  
In God's name, cheerly on, courageous friends,  
To reap the harvest of perpetual peace  
By this one bloody trial of sharp war. 16

OXFORD. Every man's conscience is a thousand men,  
To fight against this guilty homicide.

HERBERT. I doubt not but his friends will turn to us.

BLUNT. He hath no friends but what are friends for  
fear, 20

Which in his dearest need will fly from him.

RICHMOND. All for our vantage : then, in God's name,  
march :

True hope is swift, and flies with swallow's wings ;  
Kings it makes gods, and meaner creatures kings.

[Exeunt.

## SCENE III.—Bosworth Field.

Enter KING RICHARD and Forces ; the DUKE OF NORFOLK, EARL OF  
SURREY, and Others.

KING RICHARD. Here pitch our tent, even here in  
Bosworth field.

My Lord of Surrey, why look you so sad ?

SURREY. My heart is ten times lighter than my looks.

KING RICHARD. My Lord of Norfolk,

NORFOLK.

Here, most gracious liege.

KING RICHARD. Norfolk, we must have knocks ; ha !  
must we not ? 5

NORFOLK. We must both give and take, my loving lord.

KING RICHARD. Up with my tent ! here will I lie to-night ;  
 [Soldiers begin to set up the KING's tent.  
 But where to-morrow ? Well, all's one for that. 8  
 Who hath descried the number of the traitors ?

NORFOLK. Six or seven thousand is their utmost power.

KING RICHARD. Why, our battalia trebles that account ;  
 Besides, the king's name is a tower of strength, 12  
 Which they upon the adverse faction want.  
 Up with the tent ! Come, noble gentlemen,  
 Let us survey the vantage of the ground ;  
 Call for some men of sound direction : 16  
 Let's lack no discipline, make no delay ;  
 For, lords, to-morrow is a busy day. [Exeunt.

Enter on the other side of the field, RICHMOND, SIR WILLIAM BRANDON, OXFORD, and other Officers. Some of the Soldiers pitch RICHMOND's tent.

RICHMOND. The weary sun hath made a golden set,  
 And, by the bright track of his fiery car, 20  
 Gives token of a goodly day to-morrow.  
 Sir William Brandon, you shall bear my standard.  
 Give me some ink and paper in my tent :  
 I'll draw the form and model of our battle, 24  
 Limit each leader to his several charge,  
 And part in just proportion our small power.  
 My Lord of Oxford, you, Sir William Brandon,  
 And you, Sir Walter Herbert, stay with me. 28  
 The Earl of Pembroke keeps his regiment :  
 Good Captain Blunt, bear my good-night to him,  
 And by the second hour in the morning  
 Desire the earl to see me in my tent. 32  
 Yet one thing more, good captain, do for me ;  
 Where is Lord Stanley quarter'd, do you know ?

BLUNT. Unless I have mista'en his colours much,—  
 Which, well I am assur'd, I have not done,— 36  
 His regiment lies half a mile at least  
 South from the mighty power of the king.

RICHMOND. If without peril it be possible,  
 Good Captain Blunt, bear my good-night to him, 40



And give him from me this most needful note.

BLUNT. Upon my life, my lord, I'll undertake it ;  
And so, God give you quiet rest to-night !

RICHMOND. Good night, good Captain Blunt. Come,  
gentlemen, 44

Let us consult upon to-morrow's business ;  
In to my tent, the air is raw and cold.

[They withdraw into the tent.

Enter, to his tent, KING RICHARD, NORFOLK, RATCLIFF, and CATESBY.

KING RICHARD. What is 't o'clock ?

CATESBY. It's supper-time, my lord ;  
It's nine o'clock.

KING RICHARD. I will not sup to-night. 48  
Give me some ink and paper.

What, is my beaver easier than it was,  
And all my armour laid into my tent ?

CATESBY. It is, my liege ; and all things are in readi-  
ness. 52

KING RICHARD. Good Norfolk, hie thee to thy charge ;  
Use careful watch ; choose trusty sentinels.

NORFOLK. I go, my lord.

KING RICHARD. Stir with the lark to-morrow, gentle  
Norfolk. 56

NORFOLK. I warrant you, my lord. [Exit.

KING RICHARD. Ratcliff !

RATCLIFF. My lord ?

KING RICHARD. Send out a pursuivant at arms  
To Stanley's regiment ; bid him bring his power 60

Before sunrising, lest his son George fall

Into the blind cave of eternal night.

Fill me a bowl of wine. Give me a watch.

Saddle white Surrey for the field to-morrow. 64

Look that my staves be sound, and not too heavy.

Ratcliff !

RATCLIFF. My lord ?

KING RICHARD. Saw'st thou the melancholy Lord  
Northumberland ? 68

RATCLIFF. Thomas the Earl of Surrey, and himself,  
Much about cock-shut time, from troop to troop.

Went through the army, cheering up the soldiers.

KING RICHARD. So, I am satisfied. Give me a bowl of  
wine : 72

I have not that alacrity of spirit,  
Nor cheer of mind, that I was wont to have.  
Set it down. Is ink and paper ready?

RATCLIFF. It is, my lord.

76

KING RICHARD. Bid my guard watch; leave me.  
Ratcliff, about the mid of night come to my tent  
And help to arm me. Leave me, I say.

[KING RICHARD retires into his tent. Exeunt RATCLIFF and CATESBY.]

RICHMOND's tent opens, and discovers him and his Officers, &c.

Enter STANLEY.

STANLEY. Fortune and victory sit on thy helm!

RICHMOND. All comfort that the dark night can afford  
Be to thy person, noble father-in-law!  
Tell me, how fares our loving mother?

83

STANLEY. I, by attorney, bless thee from thy mother,  
Who prays continually for Richmond's good:  
So much for that. The silent hours steal on,  
And flaky darkness breaks within the east.

In brief, for so the season bids us be,

88

Prepare thy battle early in the morning,

And put thy fortune to the arbitrement

Of bloody strokes and mortal-staring war.

I, as I may,—that which I would I cannot,—

92

With best advantage will deceive the time,

And aid thee in this doubtful shock of arms.

But on thy side I may not be too forward,

Lest, being seen, thy brother, tender George,

96

Be executed in his father's sight.

Farewell: the leisure and the fearful time

Cuts off the ceremonious vows of love

And ample interchange of sweet discourse,

100

Which so long sunder'd friends should dwell upon:

God give us leisure for these rites of love!

Once more, adieu: be valiant, and speed well!

RICHMOND. Good lords, conduct him to his regiment.

I'll strive, with troubled thoughts, to take a nap,

105

Lest leaden slumber peise me down to-morrow,

When I should mount with wings of victory.

Once more, good night, kind lords and gentlemen.

[Exeunt all but RICHMOND.]

O! thou, whose captain I account myself,

109

Look on my forces with a gracious eye;

Put in their hands thy bruising irons of wrath,  
 That they may crush down with a heavy fall 112  
 The usurping helmets of our adversaries!  
 Make us thy ministers of chastisement,  
 That we may praise thee in thy victory!  
 To thee I do commend my watchful soul, 116  
 Ere I let fall the windows of mine eyes :  
 Sleeping and waking, O ! defend me still ! [Sleeps.

The Ghost of PRINCE EDWARD, Son to Henry the Sixth, rises between  
 the two tents.

GHOST. [To KING RICHARD.] Let me sit heavy on thy soul  
 to-morrow !  
 Think how thou stab'dst me in my prime of youth  
 At Tewksbury : despair, therefore, and die ! 121  
 [To RICHMOND.] Be cheerful, Richmond ; for the wronged  
 souls  
 Of butcher'd princes fight in thy behalf :  
 King Henry's issue, Richmond, comforts thee. 124

The Ghost of KING HENRY THE SIXTH rises.

GHOST. [To KING RICHARD.] When I was mortal, my  
 anointed body  
 By thee was punched full of deadly holes :  
 Think on the Tower and me ; despair and die !  
 Henry the Sixth bids thee despair and die. 128  
 [To RICHMOND.] Virtuous and holy, be thou conqueror !  
 Harry, that prophesied thou shouldst be king,  
 Doth comfort thee in thy sleep : live thou and flourish !

The Ghost of CLARENCE rises.

GHOST. [To KING RICHARD.] Let me sit heavy on thy soul  
 to-morrow ! 132  
 I, that was wash'd to death with fulsome wine,  
 Poor Clarence, by thy guile betray'd to death !  
 To-morrow in the battle think on me,  
 And fall thy edgeless sword : despair, and die ! 136  
 [To RICHMOND.] Thou offspring of the house of Lancaster,  
 The wronged heirs of York do pray for thee :  
 Good angels guard thy battle ! live, and flourish !

The Ghosts of RIVERS, GREY, and VAUGHAN rise.

GHOST OF RIVERS. [To KING RICHARD.] Let me sit heavy  
 on thy soul to-morrow ! 140

Rivers, that died at Pomfret! despair, and die!

GHOST OF GREY. [To KING RICHARD.] Think upon Grey,  
and let thy soul despair.

GHOST OF VAUGHAN. [To KING RICHARD.] Think upon  
Vaughan, and with guilty fear

Let fall thy pointless lance: despair, and die!— 144

ALL THREE. [To RICHMOND.] Awake! and think our  
wrongs in Richard's bosom

Will conquer him: awake, and win the day!

• The Ghost of HASTINGS rises.

GHOST. [To KING RICHARD.] Bloody and guilty, guiltily  
awake;

And in a bloody battle end thy days! 148

Think on Lord Hastings, so despair, and die!—

[To RICHMOND.] Quiet, untroubled soul, awake, awake!  
Arm, fight, and conquer, for fair England's sake!

The Ghosts of the two young PRINCES rise.

GHOSTS. [To KING RICHARD.] Dream on thy cousins  
smother'd in the Tower: 152

Let us be lead within thy bosom, Richard,

And weigh thee down to ruin, shame, and death!

Thy nephews' souls bid thee despair and die!

[To RICHMOND.] Sleep, Richmond, sleep in peace, and  
wake in joy; 156

Good angels guard thee from the boar's annoy!

Live, and beget a happy race of kings!

Edward's unhappy sons do bid thee flourish.

• The Ghost of LADY ANNE rises.

GHOST. [To KING RICHARD.] Richard, thy wife, that  
wretched Anne thy wife, 160

That never slept a quiet hour with thee,

Now fills thy sleep with perturbations:

To-morrow in the battle think on me,

And fall thy edgeless sword: despair, and die! 164

[To RICHMOND.] Thou quiet soul, sleep thou a quiet sleep,  
Dream of success and happy victory!

Thy adversary's wife doth pray for thee.

The Ghost of BUCKINGHAM rises.

GHOST. [To KING RICHARD.] The first was I that help'd  
thee to the crown; 168

The last was I that felt thy tyranny.

O ! in the battle think on Buckingham,

And die in terror of thy guiltiness !

Dream on, dream on, of bloody deeds and death : 172

Fainting, despair ; despairing, yield thy breath !

[To RICHMOND.] I died for hope ere I could lend thee aid :

But cheer thy heart, and be thou not dismay'd :

God and good angels fight on Richmond's side ; 176

And Richard falls in height of all his pride.

[The Ghosts vanish. KING RICHARD starts out of his dream.

KING RICHARD. Give me another horse ! bind up my wounds !

Have mercy, Jesu ! Soft ! I did but dream.

O coward conscience, how dost thou afflict me ! 180

The lights burn blue. It is now dead midnight.

Cold fearful drops stand on my trembling flesh.

What ! do I fear myself ? there's none else by :

Richard loves Richard ; that is, I am I. 184

Is there a murderer here ? No. Yes, I am :

Then fly : what ! from myself ? Great reason why :

Lest I revenge. What ! myself upon myself ?

Alack ! I love myself. Wherefore ? for any good

That I myself have done unto myself ? 189

O ! no : alas ! I rather hate myself

For hateful deeds committed by myself.

I am a villain. Yet I lie ; I am not. 192

Fool, of thyself speak well : fool, do not flatter.

My conscience hath a thousand several tongues,

And every tongue brings in a several tale,

And every tale condemns me for a villain. 196

Perjury, perjury, in the high'st degree :

Murder, stern murder, in the direst degree ;

All several sins, all us'd in each degree,

Throng to the bar, crying all, ' Guilty ! guilty ! ' 200

I shall despair. There is no creature loves me ;

And if I die, no soul will pity me :

Nay, wherefore should they, since that I myself

Find in myself no pity to myself ? 204

Methought the souls of all that I had murder'd

Came to my tent ; and every one did threat

To-morrow's vengeance on the head of Richard.

Enter RATCLIFF.

RATCLIFF. My lord !

208

KING RICHARD. 'Zounds ! who 's there ?

RATCLIFF. Ratcliff, my lord ; 'tis I. The early village  
cock

Hath twice done salutation to the morn ;

Your friends are up, and buckle on their armour. 212

KING RICHARD. O Ratcliff ! I have dream'd a fearful  
dream.

What thinkest thou, will our friends prove all true ?

RATCLIFF. No doubt, my lord.

KING RICHARD. O Ratcliff ! I fear, I fear,—

RATCLIFF. Nay, good my lord, be not afraid of  
shadows. 216

KING RICHARD. By the apostle Paul, shadows to-night  
Have struck more terror to the soul of Richard

Than can the substance of ten thousand soldiers

Armed in proof, and led by shallow Richmond. 220

It is not yet near day. Come, go with me ;

Under our tents I'll play the eaves-dropper,

To hear if any mean to shrink from me. [Exeunt.

RICHMOND wakes. Enter OXFORD and others.

LORDS. Good morrow, Richmond ! 224

RICHMOND. Cry mercy, lords, and watchful gentlemen,  
That you have ta'en a tardy sluggard here.

LORDS. How have you slept, my lord ?

RICHMOND. The sweetest sleep, the fairest-boding  
dreams 228

That ever enter'd in a drowsy head,

Have I since your departure had, my lords.

Methought their souls, whose bodies Richard murder'd,  
Came to my tent and cried on victory : 232

I promise you, my heart is very jocund

In the remembrance of so fair a dream.

How far into the morning is it, lords ?

LORDS. Upon the stroke of four. 236

RICHMOND. Why, then 'tis time to arm and give  
direction.

RICHMOND's oration to his Soldiers.

More than I have said, loving countrymen,  
The leisure and enforcement of the time

Forbids to dwell on : yet remember this, 240  
 God and our good cause fight upon our side ;  
 The prayers of holy saints and wronged souls,  
 Like high-rear'd bulwarks, stand before our faces ;  
 Richard except, those whom we fight against 244  
 Had rather have us win than him they follow.  
 For what is he they follow ? truly, gentlemen,  
 A bloody tyrant and a homicide ;  
 One rais'd in blood, and one in blood establish'd ; 248  
 One that made means to come by what he hath,  
 And slaughter'd those that were the means to help him ;  
 A base foul stone, made precious by the foil  
 Of England's chair, where he is falsely set ; 252  
 One that hath ever been God's enemy.  
 Then, if you fight against God's enemy,  
 God will in justice ward you as his soldiers ;  
 If you do sweat to put a tyrant down, 256  
 You sleep in peace, the tyrant being slain ;  
 If you do fight against your country's foes,  
 Your country's fat shall pay your pains the hire ;  
 If you do fight in safeguard of your wives, 260  
 Your wives shall welcome home the conquerors ;  
 If you do free your children from the sword,  
 Your children's children quit it in your age.  
 Then, in the name of God and all these rights, 264  
 Advance your standards, draw your willing swords.  
 For me, the ransom of my bold attempt  
 Shall be this cold corse on the earth's cold face ;  
 But if I thrive, the gain of my attempt 268  
 The least of you shall share his part thereof.  
 Sound drums and trumpets, boldly and cheerfully ;  
 God and Saint George ! Richmond and victory ! [Exeunt.

Re-enter KING RICHARD, RATCLIFF, Attendants, and Forces.

KING RICHARD. What said Northumberland as touching Richmond ? 272

RATCLIFF. That he was never trained up in arms.

KING RICHARD. He said the truth : and what said Surrey then ?

RATCLIFF. He smil'd, and said, ' The better for our purpose.'

KING RICHARD. He was i' the right ; and so, indeed, it is. [Clock strikes.

Tell the clock there. Give me a calendar. 277  
 Who saw the sun to-day ?

RATCLIFF. Not I, my lord.

KING RICHARD. Then he disdains to shine ; for by  
 the book  
 He should have brav'd the east an hour ago : 280  
 A black day will it be to somebody.  
 Ratcliff !

RATCLIFF. My lord ?

KING RICHARD. The sun will not be seen to-day ;  
 The sky doth frown and lower upon our army. 284  
 I would these dewy tears were from the ground.  
 Not shine to-day ! Why, what is that to me  
 More than to Richmond ? for the selfsame heaven  
 That frowns on me looks sadly upon him. 288

Enter NORFOLK.

NORFOLK. Arm, arm, my lord ! the foe vaunts in the  
 field.

KING RICHARD. Come, bustle, bustle ; caparison my  
 horse.  
 Call up Lord Stanley, bid him bring his power :  
 I will lead forth my soldiers to the plain, 292  
 And thus my battle shall be ordered :  
 My foreward shall be drawn out all in length  
 Consisting equally of horse and foot ;  
 Our archers shall be placed in the midst : 296  
 John Duke of Norfolk, Thomas Earl of Surrey,  
 Shall have the leading of this foot and horse.  
 They thus directed, we will follow  
 In the main battle, whose puissance on either side  
 Shall be well winged with our chiefest horse. 301  
 This, and Saint George to boot ! What think'st thou,  
 Norfolk ?

NORFOLK. A good direction, warlike sovereign.  
 This found I on my tent this morning. [Giving a scroll.

KING RICHARD. 'Jockey of Norfolk, be not too bold,  
 For Dickon thy master is bought and sold.'  
 A thing devised by the enemy.  
 Go, gentlemen ; every man to his charge : 308  
 Let not our babbling dreams affright our souls ;  
 Conscience is but a word that cowards use,  
 Devis'd at first to keep the strong in awe :



Our strong arms be our conscience, swords our law.  
 March on, join bravely, let us to 't pell-mell; 313  
 If not to heaven, then hand in hand to hell.

His oration to his Army.

What shall I say more than I have inferr'd ?  
 Remember whom you are to cope withal : 316  
 A sort of vagabonds, rascals, and runaways,  
 A scum of Bretons and base lackey peasants,  
 Whom their o'er-cloyed country vomits forth  
 To desperate adventures and assur'd destruction.  
 You sleeping safe, they bring you to unrest ; 321  
 You having lands, and bless'd with beauteous wives,  
 They would restrain the one, distain the other.  
 And who doth lead them but a paltry fellow, 324  
 Long kept in Britaine at our mother's cost ?  
 A milksop, one that never in his life  
 Felt so much cold as over shoes in snow ?  
 Let's whip these stragglers o'er the sea again ; 328  
 Lash hence these overweening rags of France,  
 These famish'd beggars, weary of their lives ;  
 Who, but for dreaming on this fond exploit,  
 For want of means, poor rats, had hang'd themselves :  
 If we be conquer'd, let men conquer us, 333  
 And not these bastard Bretons ; whom our fathers  
 Have in their own land beaten, bobb'd, and thump'd,  
 And, on record, left them the heirs of shame. 336  
 Shall these enjoy our lands ? lie with our wives ?  
 Ravish our daughters ? [Drum afar off.

Hark ! I hear their drum.  
 Fight, gentlemen of England ! fight, bold yeomen !  
 Draw, archers, draw your arrows to the head ! 340  
 Spur your proud horses hard, and ride in blood ;  
 Amaze the welkin with your broken staves !

Enter a Messenger.

What says Lord Stanley ? will he bring his power ?  
 MESSENGER. My lord, he doth deny to come. 344  
 KING RICHARD. Off with his son George's head !  
 NORFOLK. My lord, the enemy is pass'd the marsh :  
 After the battle let George Stanley die.

KING RICHARD. A thousand hearts are great within  
 my bosom : 348

Advance our standards ! set upon our foes !  
 Our ancient word of courage, fair Saint George,  
 Inspire us with the spleen of fiery dragons ! 351  
 Upon them ! Victory sits upon our helms. [Exeunt.

## SCENE IV.—Another Part of the Field.

Alarum : Excursions. Enter Norfolk and Forces ; to him CATESBY.

CATESBY. Rescue, my Lord of Norfolk ! rescue, rescue !  
 The king enacts more wonders than a man,  
 Daring an opposite to every danger :  
 His horse is slain, and all on foot he fights, 4  
 Seeking for Richmond in the throat of death.  
 Rescue, fair lord, or else the day is lost !

Alarum. Enter KING RICHARD.

KING RICHARD. A horse ! a horse ! my kingdom for  
 a horse !

CATESBY. Withdraw, my lord ; I'll help you to a  
 horse. 8

KING RICHARD. Slave ! I have set my life upon a cast,  
 And I will stand the hazard of the die.  
 I think there be six Richmonds in the field ;  
 Five have I slain to-day, instead of him.— 12  
 A horse ! a horse ! my kingdom for a horse ! [Exeunt.

Alarums. Enter from opposite sides KING RICHARD and RICHMOND,  
 and exeunt fighting. Retreat and flourish. Then re-enter  
 RICHMOND, STANLEY, bearing the crown, with divers other  
 Lords, and Forces.

RICHMOND. God and your arms be prais'd, victorious  
 friends ;

The day is ours, the bloody dog is dead.

STANLEY. Courageous Richmond, well hast thou  
 acquit thee ! 16

Lo ! here, this long-usurped royalty  
 From the dead temples of this bloody wretch  
 Have I pluck'd off, to grace thy brows withal ;  
 Wear it, enjoy it, and make much of it. 20

RICHMOND. Great God of heaven, say amen to all !  
 But, tell me, is young George Stanley living ?

STANLEY. He is, my lord, and safe in Leicester town ;  
 Whither, if you please, we may withdraw us. 24



THE FAMOUS HISTORY OF  
THE LIFE OF  
KING HENRY THE EIGHTH



# THE FAMOUS HISTORY OF THE LIFE OF KING HENRY THE EIGHTH

## INTRODUCTION

*The Famous History of the Life of King Henry the Eighth* was first printed—and with comparative accuracy of text—in the folio, 1623. The Prologue, probably written by the dramatist, John Fletcher, prepares the spectators for a play of sad and serious import, concerned mainly with the fall of persons of high estate; if any have paid their shilling to witness a splendid show, they will not be disappointed; but ‘fool and fight’ and unbecoming mirth must not be expected; the history aims at ‘truth’ (l. 9), ‘chosen truth’ (l. 18); and a third time (l. 21) the plea on behalf of the play as ‘true’ is reiterated. We might well believe that as *Twelfth Night* had a second title, *What you Will*, so *Henry VIII* had originally added to its historical name the sub-title, *All is True*.

‘Now, to let matters of State sleep,’ wrote Sir Henry Wotton to his nephew on July 2, 1613, ‘I will entertain you at the present with what hath happened this Week at the Banks side. The Kings Players had a new Play, called *All is True*, representing some principal pieces of the reign of *Henry* the 8<sup>th</sup>, which was set forth with many extraordinary circumstances of Pomp and Majesty, even to the matting of the Stage; the Knights of the Order, with their Georges and Garter, the Guards with their embroidered Coats, and the like; sufficient in truth within a while to make Greatness very familiar, if not ridiculous. Now, King *Henry* making a Masque at the Cardinal *Wolsey*’s House, and certain cannons being shot off at his entry, some of the Paper, or other stuff, wherewith one of them was stopped, did light on the Thatch, where

being thought at first but an idle smoak, and their eyes more attentive to the show, it kindled inwardly, and ran round like a train, consuming within less than an hour the whole House to the very ground.' On 'the last of June' Thomas Lorkin writes that 'yesterday', while 'Bourbage his companie were acting at ye Globe the play of Hen: 8', the building was consumed. Other testimony to the like effect may be found in a letter of Chamberlaine, and in Howes's continuation of the *Chronicle* by Stow. Doubts have been raised on the slenderest grounds as to the identity of the play which Wotton describes as 'new' and that which we find in the folio. The probability that the Globe Theatre was burnt down on the occasion of a first or early performance of the play before us seems to me to amount almost to certainty.

No one questioned that the play was wholly of Shakespeare's authorship for more than two centuries. But Johnson remarked that 'the genius of Shakespeare comes in and goes out with Katharine', and the Cambridge scholar Roderick noticed peculiarities of versification, and especially the large number of lines in the play which close with a redundant syllable. It may be added here that the redundant syllable is not always glided over, as happens so often with Shakespeare, but is sometimes emphatic, as we find it not infrequently with Fletcher. Some years before 1850, Tennyson, whose ear was of the finest quality, observed, with James Spedding as a listener, that 'many passages in *Henry VIII* were very much in the manner of Fletcher'. Tennyson's mature opinion is recorded by his son (*Life*, chap. xxxvii): 'I have no doubt that much of *Henry VIII* is not Shakespeare. It is largely written by Fletcher, with passages unmistakably by Shakespeare, notably the two first scenes in the first Act, which are sane and compact in thought, expression, and simile. I could swear to Shakespeare in the *Field of the Cloth of Gold* :

"To-day the French  
All clinquant, all in gold, like heathen gods,  
Shone down the English; and to-morrow they  
*Made Britain India: every man that stood*  
*Show'd like a mine.*"

It must be added that Emerson, in *Representative Men* (1850), spoke of the 'cropping out', in *Henry VIII*, of the original rock on which Shakespeare's finer stratum was laid. The original play, he supposed, was written by 'a superior, thoughtful man, with a vicious ear'. He pointed to 'Wolsey's soliloquy' as an example of the non-Shakespearean work. The secret of Shakespeare's metre, he added, is that 'the thought constructs the tune', but here tune is conceived first, and 'the verse has even a trace of pulpit eloquence'.

In the same year that saw the publication of *Representative Men*, James Spedding published in *The Gentleman's Magazine* a memorable paper, which gave the results of an investigation, suggested to him by the casual words of Tennyson. He found in *Henry VIII* the work certainly of two hands, perhaps the work of three. One of the writers was undoubtedly Shakespeare; one was as undoubtedly Fletcher. The two scenes in Act I which Tennyson ascribes to Shakespeare (i, ii) are ascribed to Shakespeare by Spedding. Of the same authorship are Scenes iii and iv of Act II, Scene ii (to 'exit King') of Act III, and the first scene of Act V. It is a singular circumstance that in this division of the work of Shakespeare and Fletcher a scholar, Samuel Hickson, who had devoted special attention to a comparison of the two writers' verse in a published study of *The Two Noble Kinsmen*, anticipated Spedding by some years, though his conclusions—substantially identical with Spedding's—had not appeared in print and were known only to his private friends. The application of verse-tests by later scholars tended to confirm the results obtained by Spedding and Hickson.

The theory of triple authorship was suggested by Spedding; it was adopted and developed by Mr. Fleay. Dismissing those of his conjectures which seem to me unsupported by sufficient evidence, I think it may be enough to say that he assigns the play given in the folio to Shakespeare, Fletcher, and Massinger; attempts a division which leaves little of the work to Shakespeare; and finally falters with a question as to whether the claim of Beaumont may not be as good as any claim which we can make for the author to whom alone the editors of the folio attribute not a part of the drama but the



whole. The suggestion that Beaumont had any hand in *Henry VIII* has found little support. But so cautious and well-informed a critic as Mr. Craig—while rejecting the theory of Boyle that the authors of the play were Fletcher and Massinger—is prepared to admit that Massinger may have contributed some scenes. Such, indeed, may be the fact ; but all that can, in my opinion, be asserted with confidence is that we have here the new play of 1613, and that in it the work of Shakespeare lies side by side with the work of Fletcher. We must, however, admit the fact that certain eminent scholars have not been convinced by Spedding's argument. The views of Swinburne, deserving the highest consideration, will be seen in the General Introduction to this edition. Dr. Aldis Wright finds in *Henry VIII* undoubtedly the hand of Fletcher ; he cannot find the hand of Shakespeare, and seems prepared to admit that Shakespeare's fellows, who superintended the production of the first folio, foisted upon the public an entire play to which the alleged author of the volume made no contribution.

We cannot readily believe that Shakespeare planned the play. It has been not unjustly described by Hertzberg, in often quoted words, as 'a chronicle history with three and a half catastrophes, varied by a marriage and a coronation-pageant, ending abruptly with the baptism of a child'. If we sympathize aright with Queen Katharine in her fall, how are we to rejoice in the triumph of her rival ? In a philosophy of history the rise of a great monarchy and the decline of the power of the feudal nobility might be represented by the fall of Buckingham ; the decline of Catholicism and the victory of the Protestant faith might be represented by the fall of Wolsey and the rise of Cranmer. But Shakespeare's plays present no philosophy of history ; they are works of dramatic art ; and as a work of dramatic art *Henry VIII* is incoherent. May we conjecture that after the court celebrations connected with the wedding of King James's daughter, in the early part of the year 1613, the managers of the Globe Theatre conceived the idea that a play of splendid spectacle, to be seen for a shilling, would be acceptable to the London public ; and that, needing such a play in a hurry, they engaged the services of the popular

dramatist Fletcher, and drew from his retirement, to contribute at least some scenes, the greater dramatist whose name in connexion with chronicle history, as author of *Henry IV*, *Henry V*, and other pieces ever welcome, was the name wherewith to conjure? Rowley's *When you see me you know me*, printed in 1605, served as an example of what should be avoided in dealing with the reign of *Henry VIII*. It had too much of 'fool and fight'; it was eminently untrue; this new play—setting aside a dramatic rearrangement of historic dates—should be true, as the prologue declares, and it should be sad and serious, while yet it must close with joy and send away the spectators in a happy mood. Fletcher's facile genius could swiftly devise a scheme which should present occasions for brilliant spectacle, and also provide opportunities for his own gift of pathetic rhetoric. If Shakespeare opened the first act, Fletcher might bring the last act to a close. The greater dramatist, a master of characterization, might introduce each of the leading dramatis personae; Fletcher might develop these as seemed most fitting to him. Some such theory as this may meet the difficulties and account for the incoherent structure of the play.

For their historical material the dramatists went to the *Chronicles* of Holinshed and of Hall. Cavendish's *Life of Cardinal Wolsey*, which is sometimes closely followed, then lay in manuscript, but it had been seen and used by Holinshed. In the fifth act, in the part that concerns Cranmer, the *Acts and Monuments of the Church*, by Foxe, afforded assistance; Foxe himself was indebted to a life of Cranmer written by the archbishop's secretary, Ralph Morice. The historical period dealt with in the play extends from 1520 to 1544 or 1545; but the chronology is artfully confused. From the appearance of Cranmer before the Council the play advances to the baptism of Elizabeth, which, in fact, was earlier in date by almost or fully a dozen years.

The portions of the play which can be ascribed to Shakespeare are in his latest manner—that of *The Winter's Tale*—both in feeling and in versification. 'In his earlier plays,' wrote Spedding, 'when his versification was regular and his language com-

paratively diffuse, there is none of the studied variety of cadence which we find here; and by the time his versification had acquired more variety, the current of his thought had become more gushing, rapid, and full of eddies.' This is well said, and the reader who attends aright to some of the fine bravura speeches of the play, such as that of Buckingham as he passes from his arraignment, and the address of the fallen Wolsey to Cromwell, will quickly perceive that the limpid and lingering rhetoric of Fletcher is in his ears, and not the eddying, urgent utterance of Shakespeare. As in *The Winter's Tale*, so here there is a royal sufferer, a great queen wronged, indignant, yet of fine temper in her control of indignation, and her sense of truth and justice. Who living in 1613, except the author of *The Winter's Tale*, could have written the noble scene (II. iv) in which the queen pleads her cause before Campeius and Wolsey? On the other hand the scene at Kimbolton where Katharine beholds the vision of angels is in Fletcher's highest vein, and may well take its place in a play to which Shakespeare was a contributor.

The character of Wolsey has been censured as lacking unity of conception. To me it seems a superb part for a great actor, but, as it is gradually developed, more in Fletcher's manner of presenting a great personage than in that of Shakespeare. The king does hateful things, but is not himself as hateful as Hazlitt has described him. He has an easy leonine power; he is a strong, overbearing, and yet a majestic, creature.

No historical play of the Elizabethan period with which Shakespeare is wholly unconnected has held the stage as has *Henry VIII.* Pepys saw it in Restoration times (1663-4), and thought it a thing of patches, made up of shows and processions. Betterton played the King, and was said to have been instructed in the part by D'Avenant, 'who had it from Mr. Lowin, that had his instructions from Mr. Shakespear himself.' Many great actors and actresses of the eighteenth century appeared in the play. Mrs. Siddons was a Queen Katharine who has never been surpassed; her dying scene is described by the actor Terry, as 'the most entirely faultless specimen of the art that any age ever

witnessed.' Johnson inquired of her which character in Shakespeare she was most pleased with ; her reply was that she thought that of Queen Katharine in *Henry VIII* the most natural. 'I think so too, madam,' said Johnson, 'and whenever you perform it, I will once more hobble to the theatre myself.' Kemble and Kean, Macready and Phelps, were Wolseys or Henrys of the nineteenth century. The play has recently been revived by Sir Herbert Tree. Of our most eminent actors Garrick almost alone is unassociated with the part of Wolsey.

## DRAMATIS PERSONAE

KING HENRY THE EIGHTH.

CARDINAL WOLSEY.

CARDINAL CAMPEIUS.

CAPUCIUS, Ambassador from the Emperor Charles the Fifth.

CRANMER, Archbishop of Canterbury.

DUKE OF NORFOLK.

DUKE OF SUFFOLK.

DUKE OF BUCKINGHAM.

EARL OF SURREY.

Lord Chancellor.

Lord Chamberlain.

GARDINER, Bishop of Winchester.

BISHOP OF LINCOLN.

LORD ABERGAVENNY.

LORD SANDS.

SIR THOMAS LOVELL.

SIR HENRY GUILDFORD.

SIR ANTHONY DENNY.

SIR NICHOLAS VAUX.

Secretaries to Wolsey.

CROMWELL, Servant to Wolsey.

GRIFFITH, Gentleman-Usher to Queen Katharine.

Three Gentlemen.

Garter King-at-Arms.

DOCTOR BUTTS, Physician to the King.

Surveyor to the Duke of Buckingham.

BRANDON, and a Sergeant-at-Arms.

Door-keeper of the Council Chamber.

Porter, and his Man.

Page to Gardiner.

A Crier.

QUEEN KATHARINE, Wife to King Henry ; afterwards divorced.

ANNE BULLEN, her Maid of Honour ; afterwards Queen.

An Old Lady, Friend to Anne Bullen.

PATIENCE, Woman to Queen Katharine.

Several Lords and Ladies in the Dumb Shows ; Women attending upon the Queen ; Spirits which appear to her ; Scribes, Officers, Guards, and other Attendants.

SCENE.—Chiefly in London and Westminster ; once, at Kimbolton.

# THE FAMOUS HISTORY OF THE LIFE OF KING HENRY THE EIGHTH

## PROLOGUE

I come no more to make you laugh : things now,  
 That bear a weighty and a serious brow,  
 Sad, high, and working, full of state and woe,  
 Such noble scenes as draw the eye to flow, 4  
 We now present. Those that can pity, here  
 May, if they think it well, let fall a tear ;  
 The subject will deserve it. Such as give  
 Their money out of hope they may believe, 8  
 May here find truth too. Those that come to see  
 Only a show or two, and so agree  
 The play may pass, if they be still and willing,  
 I'll undertake may see away their shilling 12  
 Richly in two short hours. Only they  
 That come to hear a merry, bawdy play,  
 A noise of targets, or to see a fellow  
 In a long motley coat guarded with yellow, 16  
 Will be deceiv'd ; for, gentle hearers, know,  
 To rank our chosen truth with such a show  
 As fool and fight is, besides forfeiting  
 Our own brains, and the opinion that we bring, 20  
 To make that only true we now intend,  
 Will leave us never an understanding friend.  
 Therefore, for goodness' sake, and as you are known  
 The first and happiest hearers of the town, 24  
 Be sad, as we would make ye : think ye see  
 The very persons of our noble story  
 As they were living ; think you see them great,  
 And follow'd with the general throng and sweat 28

Of thousand friends ; then, in a moment see  
 How soon this mightiness meets misery :  
 And if you can be merry then, I'll say  
 A man may weep upon his wedding-day.

32

## ACT I.

SCENE I.—London. An Ante-chamber in the Palace.

Enter at one door the DUKE OF NORFOLK ; at the other, the DUKE OF  
 BUCKINGHAM and the LORD ABERGAVENNY.

BUCKINGHAM. Good morrow, and well met. How  
 have you done,  
 Since last we saw in France ?

NORFOLK. I thank your Grace,  
 Healthful ; and ever since a fresh admirer  
 Of what I saw there.

BUCKINGHAM. An untimely ague  
 Stay'd me a prisoner in my chamber, when  
 Those suns of glory, those two lights of men,  
 Met in the vale of Andren.

NORFOLK. Twixt Guynes and Arde :  
 I was then present, saw them salute on horseback ; 8  
 Beheld them, when they lighted, how they clung  
 In their embracement, as they grew together ;  
 Which had they, what four thron'd ones could have weigh'd  
 Such a compounded one ?

BUCKINGHAM. All the whole time 12  
 I was my chamber's prisoner.

NORFOLK. Then you lost  
 The view of earthly glory : men might say,  
 Till this time, pomp was single, but now married  
 To one above itself. Each following day 16  
 Became the next day's master, till the last  
 Made former wonders its. To-day the French  
 All clinquant, all in gold, like heathen gods,  
 Shone down the English ; and to-morrow they 20  
 Made Britain India : every man that stood  
 Show'd like a mine. Their dwarfish pages were  
 As cherubins, all gilt : the madams, too,  
 Not us'd to toil, did almost sweat to bear 24  
 The pride upon them, that their very labour  
 Was to them as a painting. Now this masque

Was cried incomparable ; and the ensuing night  
Made it a fool, and beggar. The two kings, 28  
Equal in lustre, were now best, now worst,  
As presence did present them ; him in eye,  
Still him in praise ; and, being present both,  
'Twas said they saw but one ; and no discerner 32  
Durst wag his tongue in censure. When these suns—  
For so they phrase 'em—by their heralds challeng'd  
The noble spirits to arms, they did perform  
Beyond thought's compass ; that former fabulous story,  
Being now seen possible enough, got credit, 37  
That Bevis was believ'd.

BUCKINGHAM. O ! you go far.

NORFOLK. As I belong to worship, and affect  
In honour honesty, the tract of every thing 40  
Would by a good discourser lose some life,  
Which action's self was tongue to. All was royal ;  
To the disposing of it nought rebell'd,  
Order gave each thing view ; the office did 44  
Distinctly his full function.

BUCKINGHAM. Who did guide,  
I mean, who set the body and the limbs  
Of this great sport together, as you guess ?

NORFOLK. One certes, that promises no element  
In such a business.

BUCKINGHAM. I pray you, who, my lord ? 49

NORFOLK. All this was order'd by the good discretion  
Of the right reverend Cardinal of York.

BUCKINGHAM. The devil speed him ! no man's pie is  
freed 52

From his ambitious finger. What had he  
To do in these fierce vanities ? I wonder  
That such a keech can with his very bulk  
Take up the rays o' the beneficial sun, 56  
And keep it from the earth.

NORFOLK. Surely, sir,  
There's in him stuff that puts him to these ends ;  
For, being not propp'd by ancestry, whose grace  
Chalks successors their way, nor call'd upon 60  
For high feats done to the crown ; neither allied  
To eminent assistants ; but, spider-like,  
Out of his self-drawing web, he gives us note,  
The force of his own merit makes his way ; 64



A gift that heaven gives for him, which buys  
A place next to the king.

ABERGAVERNNEY. I cannot tell  
What heaven hath given him: let some graver eye  
Pierce into that; but I can see his pride 68  
Peep through each part of him: whence has he that?  
If not from hell, the devil is a niggard,  
Or has given all before, and he begins  
A new hell in himself.

BUCKINGHAM. Why the devil, 72  
Upon this French going-out took he upon him,  
Without the privy o' the king, to appoint  
Who should attend on him? He makes up the file  
Of all the gentry; for the most part such 76  
To whom as great a charge as little honour  
He meant to lay upon: and his own letter,—  
The honourable board of council out,—  
Must fetch him in he papers.

ABERGAVERNNEY. I do know 80  
Kinsmen of mine, three at the least, that have  
By this so sicken'd their estates that never  
They shall abound as formerly.

BUCKINGHAM. O! many  
Have broke their backs with laying manors on 'em  
For this great journey. What did this vanity 85  
But minister communication of  
A most poor issue?

NORFOLK. Grievingly I think,  
The peace between the French and us not values, 88  
The cost that did conclude it.

BUCKINGHAM. Every man,  
After the hideous storm that follow'd, was  
A thing inspir'd; and, not consulting, broke  
Into a general prophecy: That this tempest, 92  
Dashing the garment of this peace, aboded  
The sudden breach on 't.

NORFOLK. Which is budded out;  
For France hath flaw'd the league, and hath attach'd  
Our merchants' goods at Bourdeaux.

ABERGAVERNNEY. Is it therefore  
The ambassador is silenc'd?

NORFOLK. Marry, is 't. 97

ABERGAVERNNEY. A proper title of a peace; and purchas'd

At a superfluous rate!

BUCKINGHAM. Why, all this business  
Our reverend cardinal carried.

NORFOLK. Like it your Grace,  
The state takes notice of the private difference 101  
Betwixt you and the cardinal. I advise you,—  
And take it from a heart that wishes towards you  
Honour and plenteous safety,—that you read 104  
The cardinal's malice and his potency  
Together; to consider further that  
What his high hatred would effect wants not  
A minister in his power. You know his nature, 108  
That he's revengeful; and I know his sword  
Hath a sharp edge: it's long, and 't may be said,  
It reaches far; and where 'twill not extend,  
Thither he darts it. Bosom up my counsel, 112  
You'll find it wholesome. Lo, where comes that rock  
That I advise your shunning.

Enter CARDINAL WOLSEY,—the Purse borne before him,—certain of  
the Guard, and two Secretaries with papers. The CARDINAL in  
his passage fixeth his eye on BUCKINGHAM, and BUCKINGHAM  
on him, both full of disdain.

WOLSEY. The Duke of Buckingham's surveyor, ha?  
Where's his examination?

FIRST SECRETARY. Here, so please you. 116

WOLSEY. Is he in person ready?

FIRST SECRETARY. Ay, please your Grace.

WOLSEY. Well, we shall then know more; and  
Buckingham

Shall lessen this big look. [Exeunt WOLSEY and Train.

BUCKINGHAM. 'This butcher's cur is venom-mouth'd,  
and I 120

Have not the power to muzzle him; therefore best  
Not wake him in his slumber. A beggar's book  
Outworths a noble's blood.

NORFOLK. What! are you chaf'd?  
Ask God for temperance; that's the appliance only  
Which your disease requires.

BUCKINGHAM. I read in 's looks 125  
Matter against me; and his eye revil'd  
Me, as his abject object: at this instant  
He bores me with some trick: he's gone to the king;  
I'll follow, and outstare him.

NORFOLK. Stay, my lord, 120  
 And let your reason with your choler question  
 What 'tis you go about. To climb steep hills  
 Requires slow pace at first: anger is like 132  
 A full-hot horse, who being allow'd his way,  
 Self-mettle tires him. Not a man in England  
 Can advise me like you: be to yourself  
 As you would to your friend.

BUCKINGHAM. I'll to the king; 136  
 And from a mouth of honour quite cry down,  
 This Ipswich fellow's insolence, or proclaim  
 There's difference in no persons.

NORFOLK. Be advis'd; 140  
 Heat not a furnace for your foe so hot  
 That it do singe yourself. We may outrun  
 By violent swiftness that which we run at,  
 And lose by over-running. Know you not, 144  
 The fire that mounts the liquor till it run o'er,  
 In seeming to augment it wastes it? Be advis'd:  
 I say again, there is no English soul  
 More stronger to direct you than yourself,  
 If with the sap of reason you would quench, 148  
 Or but allay, the fire of passion.

BUCKINGHAM. Sir, 152  
 I am thankful to you, and I'll go along  
 By your prescription: but this top-proud fellow,  
 Whom from the flow of gall I name not, but  
 From sincere motions,—by intelligence,  
 And proofs as clear as founts in July, when  
 We see each grain of gravel,—I do know  
 To be corrupt and treasonous.

NORFOLK. Say not 'treasonous'.

BUCKINGHAM. To the king I'll say 't; and make my 157  
 vouch as strong  
 As shore of rock. Attend. This holy fox,  
 Or wolf, or both,—for he is equal ravenous  
 As he is subtle, and as prone to mischief 160  
 As able to perform 't, his mind and place  
 Infecting one another, yea, reciprocally,  
 Only to show his pomp as well in France  
 As here at home, suggests the king our master 164  
 To this last costly treaty, the interview,  
 That swallow'd so much treasure, and like a glass

Did break i' the rinsing.

NORFOLK.

Faith, and so it did.

BUCKINGHAM. Pray give me favour, sir. This cunning cardinal 168

The articles o' the combination drew

As himself pleas'd ; and they were ratified

As he cried ' Thus let be ', to as much end

As give a crutch to the dead. But our count-cardinal  
Has done this, and 'tis well ; for worthy Wolsey, 173

Who cannot err, he did it. Now this follows,—

Which, as I take it, is a kind of puppy

To the old dam, treason,—Charles the emperor, 176

Under pretence to see the queen his aunt,—

For 'twas indeed his colour, but he came

To whisper Wolsey,—here makes visitation :

His fears were, that the interview betwixt 180

England and France might, through their amity,

Breed him some prejudice ; for from this league

Peep'd harms that menac'd him. He privily  
Deals with our cardinal, and, as I trow, 184

Which I do well ; for, I am sure the emperor

Paid ere he promis'd ; whereby his suit was granted

Ere it was ask'd ; but when the way was made,  
And pay'd with gold, the emperor thus desir'd : 188

That he would please to alter the king's course,

And break the foresaid peace. Let the king know—

As soon he shall by me—that thus the cardinal  
Does buy and sell his honour as he pleases, 192

And for his own advantage.

NORFOLK.

I am sorry

To hear this of him ; and could wish he were  
Something mistaken in 't.

BUCKINGHAM.

No, not a syllable :

I do pronounce him in that very shape 196  
He shall appear in proof.

Enter BRANDON ; a Sergeant-at-Arms before him.

BRANDON. Your office, sergeant ; execute it.

SERGEANT.

Sir,

My Lord the Duke of Buckingham, and Earl

Of Hereford, Stafford, and Northampton, I 200

Arrest thee of high treason, in the name

Of our most sovereign king.

BUCKINGHAM. Lo you, my lord,  
The net has fall'n upon me ! I shall perish  
Under device and practice.

BRANDON. I am sorry 204  
To see you ta'en from liberty, to look on  
The business present. 'Tis his highness' pleasure  
You shall to the Tower.

BUCKINGHAM. It will help me nothing  
To plead mine innocence, for that dye is on me 208  
Which makes my whitest part black. The will of heaven  
Be done in this and all things ! I obey.  
O ! my Lord Abergavenny, fare you well !

BRANDON. Nay, he must bear you company. [To

ABERGAVENNY.] The king 212  
Is pleas'd you shall to the Tower, till you know  
How he determines further.

ABERGAVENNY. As the duke said,  
The will of heaven be done, and the king's pleasure  
By me obey'd !

BRANDON. Here is a warrant from 216  
The king to attach Lord Montacute ; and the bodies  
Of the duke's confessor, John de la Car,  
One Gilbert Peck, his chancellor,—

BUCKINGHAM. So, so ;  
These are the limbs o' the plot : no more, I hope. 220

BRANDON. A monk o' the Chartreux.

BUCKINGHAM. O ! Nicholas Hopkins ?

BRANDON. He.

BUCKINGHAM. My surveyor is false ; the o'er-great  
cardinal

Hath show'd him gold. My life is spann'd already :  
I am the shadow of poor Buckingham, 224  
Whose figure even this instant cloud puts on,  
By darkening my clear sun. My lord, farewell. [Exeunt.

#### SCENE II.—The Council-Chamber.

Enter the KING, leaning on the CARDINAL's shoulder, the Lords of  
the Council, Sir THOMAS LOVELL, Officers, and Attendants.  
The CARDINAL places himself under the KING's feet on the  
right side.

KING HENRY. My life itself, and the best heart of it,  
Thanks you for this great care : I stood i' the level  
Of a full-charg'd confederacy, and give thanks

To you that chok'd it. Let be call'd before us 4  
That gentleman of Buckingham's ; in person  
I'll hear him his confessions justify ;  
And point by point the treasons of his master  
He shall again relate. 8

A noise within, crying, 'Room for the Queen!' Enter QUEEN  
KATHARINE, ushered by the DUKES OF NORFOLK and SUFFOLK :  
she kneels. The KING riseth from his state, takes her up,  
kisses, and placeth her by him.

QUEEN KATHARINE. Nay, we must longer kneel : I am  
a suitor.

KING HENRY. Arise, and take place by us : half your  
suit

Never name to us ; you have half our power :  
The other moiety, ere you ask, is given ; 12  
Repeat your will, and take it.

QUEEN KATHARINE. Thank your majesty.  
That you would love yourself, and in that love  
Not unconsider'd leave your honour, nor  
The dignity of your office, is the point 16  
Of my petition.

KING HENRY. Lady mine, proceed.

QUEEN KATHARINE. I am solicited, not by a few,  
And those of true condition, that your subjects 19  
Are in great grievance : there have been commissions  
Sent down among 'em, which hath flaw'd the heart  
Of all their loyalties : wherein although,  
My good Lord Cardinal, they vent reproaches  
Most bitterly on you, as putter-on 24  
Of these exactions, yet the king our master,—  
Whose honour heaven shield from soil !—even he escapes  
not

Language unmannerly ; yea, such which breaks  
The sides of loyalty, and almost appears 28  
In loud rebellion.

NORFOLK. Not almost appears,  
It doth appear ; for, upon these taxations,  
The clothiers all, not able to maintain  
The many to them 'longing, have put off 32  
The spinsters, carders, fullers, weavers, who,  
Unfit for other life, compell'd by hunger  
And lack of other means, in desperate manner  
Daring the event to the teeth, are all in uproar, 36

And danger serves among them.

KING HENRY.

Taxation!

Wherein? and what taxation? My Lord Cardinal,  
You that are blam'd for it alike with us,  
Know you of this taxation?

WOLSEY.

Please you, sir,

40

I know but of a single part in aught  
Pertains to the state; and front but in that file  
Where others tell steps with me.

QUEEN KATHARINE.

No, my lord,

You know no more than others; but you frame 44  
Things that are known alike; which are not wholesome  
To those which would not know them, and yet must  
Perforce be their acquaintance. These exactions,  
Whereof my sovereign would have note, they are 48  
Most pestilent to the hearing; and to bear 'em,  
The back is sacrifice to the load. They say  
They are devis'd by you, or else you suffer  
Too hard an exclamation.

KING HENRY.

Still exaction!

52

The nature of it? In what kind, let's know,  
Is this exaction?

QUEEN KATHARINE.

I am much too venturous

In tempting of your patience; but am bolden'd  
Under your promis'd pardon. The subjects' grief 56  
Comes through commissions, which compel from each  
The sixth part of his substance, to be levied  
Without delay; and the pretence for this 59  
Is nam'd your wars in France. This makes bold mouths:  
Tongues spit their duties out, and cold hearts freeze  
Allegiance in them; their curses now  
Live where their prayers did; and it's come to pass,  
This tractable obedience is a slave 64  
To each incensed will. I would your highness  
Would give it quick consideration, for  
There is no primer business.

KING HENRY.

By my life,

This is against our pleasure.

WOLSEY.

And for me,

68

I have no further gone in this than by  
A single voice, and that not pass'd me but  
By learned approbation of the judges. If I am  
Traduc'd by ignorant tongues, which neither know 72

My faculties nor person, yet will be  
 The chronicles of my doing, let me say  
 'Tis but the fate of place, and the rough brake  
 That virtue must go through. We must not stint 76  
 Our necessary actions, in the fear  
 To cope malicious censurers ; which ever,  
 As ravenous fishes, do a vessel follow  
 That is new-trimm'd, but benefit no further 80  
 Than vainly longing. What we oft do best  
 By sick interpreters, once weak ones, is  
 Not ours, or not allow'd ; what worst, as oft,  
 Hitting a grosser quality, is cried up 84  
 For our best act. If we shall stand still,  
 In fear our motion will be mock'd or carp'd at,  
 We should take root here where we sit, or sit  
 State-statues only.

KING HENRY. Things done well, 88  
 And with a care, exempt themselves from fear ;  
 Things done without example, in their issue  
 Are to be fear'd. Have you a precedent  
 Of this commission ? I believe, not any. 92  
 We must not rend our subjects from our laws,  
 And stick them in our will. Sixth part of each ?  
 A trembling contribution ! Why, we take  
 From every tree, lop, bark, and part o' the timber ;  
 And, though we leave it with a root, thus hack'd, 97  
 The air will drink the sap. To every county  
 Where this is question'd, send our letters, with  
 Free pardon to each man that has denied 100  
 The force of this commission. Pray, look to 't ;  
 I put it to your care.

WOLSEY. [To the Secretary.] A word with you.  
 Let there be letters writ to every shire,  
 Of the king's grace and pardon. The griev'd commons  
 Hardly conceive of me ; let it be nois'd 105  
 That through our intercession this revokement  
 And pardon comes : I shall anon advise you  
 Further in the proceeding. [Exit Secretary.]

Enter Surveyor.

QUEEN KATHARINE. I am sorry that the Duke of  
 Buckingham 109  
 Is run in your displeasure.



KING HENRY. It grieves many :  
 The gentleman is learn'd, and a most rare speaker,  
 To nature none more bound ; his training such 112  
 That he may furnish and instruct great teachers,  
 And never seek for aid out of himself. Yet see,  
 When these so noble benefits shall prove 115  
 Not well dispos'd, the mind growing once corrupt,  
 They turn to vicious forms, ten times more ugly  
 Than ever they were fair. This man so complete,  
 Who was enroll'd 'mongst wonders, and when we,  
 Almost with ravish'd listening, could not find 120  
 His hour of speech a minute ; he, my lady,  
 Hath into monstrous habits put the graces  
 That once were his, and is become as black  
 As if besmear'd in hell. Sit by us ; you shall hear—  
 This was his gentleman in trust—of him 125  
 Things to strike honour sad. Bid him recount  
 The fore-recited practices ; whereof  
 We cannot feel too little, hear too much. 128

WOLSEY. Stand forth ; and with bold spirit relate  
 what you,  
 Most like a careful subject, have collected  
 Out of the Duke of Buckingham.

KING HENRY. Speak freely.

SURVEYOR. First, it was usual with him, every day  
 It would infect his speech, that if the king 133  
 Should without issue die, he'd carry it so  
 To make the sceptre his. These very words  
 I've heard him utter to his son-in-law, 136  
 Lord Abergavenny, to whom by oath he menac'd  
 Revenge upon the cardinal.

WOLSEY. Please your highness, note  
 This dangerous conception in this point.  
 Not friended by his wish, to your high person 140  
 His will is most malignant ; and it stretches  
 Beyond you, to your friends.

QUEEN KATHARINE. My learn'd Lord Cardinal,  
 Deliver all with charity.

KING HENRY. Speak on :  
 How grounded he his title to the crown 144  
 Upon our fail ? to this point hast thou heard him.  
 At any time speak aught ?

SURVEYOR. He was brought to this

By a vain prophecy of Nicholas Hopkins.

KING HENRY. What was that Hopkins ?

SURVEYOR. Sir, a Chartreux friar,  
His confessor, who fed him every minute 149  
With words of sovereignty.

KING HENRY. How know'st thou this ?

SURVEYOR. Not long before your highness sped to  
France,

The duke being at the Rose, within the parish 152  
Saint Lawrence Poultney, did of me demand  
What was the speech among the Londoners  
Concerning the French journey : I replied,  
Men fear'd the French would prove perfidious, 156  
To the king's danger. Presently the duke  
Said, 'twas the fear, indeed ; and that he doubted  
'Twould prove the verity of certain words  
Spoke by a holy monk ; ' that oft,' says he, 160  
' Hath sent to me, wishing me to permit  
John de la Car, my chaplain, a choice hour  
To hear from him a matter of some moment :  
Whom after under the confession's seal 164  
He solemnly had sworn that what he spoke  
My chaplain to no creature living but  
To me should utter, with demure confidence 167  
This pausingly ensu'd : neither the king nor 's heirs—  
Tell you the duke—shall prosper : bid him strive  
To gain the love o' the commonalty ; the duke  
Shall govern England.'

QUEEN KATHARINE. If I know you well, 171  
You were the duke's surveyor, and lost your office  
On the complaint o' the tenants : take good heed  
You charge not in your spleen a noble person,  
And spoil your nobler soul. I say, take heed ;  
Yes, heartily beseech you.

KING HENRY. Let him on. 176  
Go forward.

SURVEYOR. On my soul, I'll speak but truth.  
I told my lord the duke, by the devil's illusions  
The monk might be deceiv'd ; and that 'twas dangerous  
for him  
To ruminate on this so far, until 180  
It forg'd him some design, which, being believ'd,  
It was much like to do. He answer'd, 'Tush !

It can do me no damage ; ' adding further,  
That had the king in his last sickness fail'd, 184  
The cardinal's and Sir Thomas Lovell's heads  
Should have gone off.

KING HENRY. Ha ! what, so rank ? Ah, ha !  
There 's mischief in this man. Canst thou say further ?

SURVEYOR. I can, my liege.

KING HENRY. Proceed.

SURVEYOR. Being at Greenwich,  
After your highness had reprov'd the duke 189  
About Sir William Blomer,—

KING HENRY. I remember  
Of such a time : being my sworn servant,  
The duke retain'd him his. But on ; what hence ?

SURVEYOR. ' If,' quoth he, ' I for this had been com-  
mitted, 193

As, to the Tower, I thought, I would have play'd  
The part my father meant to act upon  
The usurper Richard ; who, being at Salisbury, 196  
Made suit to come in 's presence ; which if granted,  
As he made semblance of his duty, would  
Have put his knife into him.'

KING HENRY. A giant traitor !

WOLSEY. Now, madam, may his highness live in  
freedom, 200  
And this man out of prison ?

QUEEN KATHARINE. God mend all !

KING HENRY. There 's something more would out of  
thee ? what sayst ?

SURVEYOR. After 'the duke his father', with 'the  
knife',  
He stretch'd him, and, with one hand on his dagger,  
Another spread on 's breast, mounting his eyes, 205  
He did discharge a horrible oath ; whose tenour  
Was, were he evil us'd, he would outgo  
His father by as much as a performance 208  
Does an irresolute purpose.

KING HENRY. There 's his period ;  
To sheathe his knife in us. He is attach'd ;  
Call him to present trial : if he may  
Find mercy in the law, 'tis his ; if none, 212  
Let him not seek 't of us : by day and night !  
He 's traitor to the height.

[Exeunt.

## SCENE III.—A Room in the Palace.

Enter the Lord Chamberlain and LORD SANDS.

CHAMBERLAIN. Is 't possible the spells of France  
should juggle

Men into such strange mysteries?

SANDS. New customs,  
Though they be never so ridiculous,  
Nay, let 'em be unmanly, yet are follow'd. 4

CHAMBERLAIN. As far as I see, all the good our English  
Have got by the late voyage is but merely  
A fit or two o' the face; but they are shrewd ones;  
For when they hold 'em, you would swear directly  
Their very noses had been counsellors 9  
To Pepin or Clotharius, they keep state so.

SANDS. They have all new legs, and lame ones: one  
would take it,  
That never saw 'em pace before, the spavin 12  
Or springhalt reign'd among 'em.

CHAMBERLAIN. Death! my lord,  
Their clothes are after such a pagan cut too,  
That, sure, they've worn out Christendom.

Enter SIR THOMAS LOVELL.

How now!

What news, Sir Thomas Lovell?

LOVELL. Faith, my lord, 16  
I hear of none, but the new proclamation  
That 's clapp'd upon the court-gate.

CHAMBERLAIN. What is 't for?

LOVELL. The reformation of our travell'd gallants,  
That fill the court with quarrels, talk, and tailors.

CHAMBERLAIN. I am glad 'tis there: now I would  
pray our monsieurs 21

To think an English courtier may be wise,  
And never see the Louvre.

LOVELL. They must either—  
For so run the conditions—leave those remnants 24  
Of fool and feather that they got in France,  
With all their honourable points of ignorance  
Pertaining thereunto, as fights and fireworks;  
Abusing better men than they can be, 28  
Out of a foreign wisdom;—renouncing clean

The faith they have in tennis and tall stockings,  
 Short blister'd breeches, and those types of travel,  
 And understand again like honest men ; 32  
 Or pack to their old playfellows : there, I take it,  
 They may, cum privilegio, wear away  
 The lag end of their lewdness, and be laugh'd at.  
 SANDS. 'Tis time to give 'em physic, their diseases  
 Are grown so catching.

CHAMBERLAIN. What a loss our ladies 37  
 Will have of these trim vanities !

LOVELL. Ay, marry,  
 There will be woe indeed, lords : the sly whoresons  
 Have got a speeding trick to lay down ladies ; 40  
 A French song and a fiddle has no fellow.

SANDS. The devil fiddle 'em ! I am glad they're going :  
 For, sure, there 's no converting of 'em : now  
 An honest country lord, as I am, beaten 44  
 A long time out of play, may bring his plain-song  
 And have an hour of hearing ; and, by 'r lady,  
 Held current music too.

CHAMBERLAIN. Well said, Lord Sands ;  
 Your colt's tooth is not cast yet.

SANDS. No, my lord ; 48  
 Nor shall not, while I have a stump.

CHAMBERLAIN. Sir Thomas,  
 Whither were you a-going ?

LOVELL. To the cardinal's :  
 Your lordship is a guest too.

CHAMBERLAIN. O ! 'tis true : 52  
 This night he makes a supper, and a great one,  
 To many lords and ladies ; there will be  
 The beauty of this kingdom, I'll assure you.

LOVELL. That churchman bears a bounteous mind  
 indeed,  
 A hand as fruitful as the land that feeds us : 56  
 His dews fall every where.

CHAMBERLAIN. No doubt he 's noble.  
 He had a black mouth that said other of him.

SANDS. He may, my lord ; he has wherewithal : in  
 him  
 Sparring would show a worse sin than ill doctrine : 60  
 Men of his way should be most liberal ;  
 They are set here for examples.

CHAMBERLAIN. True, they are so ;  
 But few now give so great ones. My barge stays ;  
 Your lordship shall along. Come, good Sir Thomas  
 We shall be late else ; which I would not be, 65  
 For I was spoke to, with Sir Henry Guildford,  
 This night to be comptrollers.  
 SANDS. I am your lordship's. [Exeunt.

## SCENE IV.—The Presence-Chamber in York Place.

Hautboys. A small table under a state for CARDINAL WOLSEY, a longer table for the guests. Enter, at one door, ANNE BULLEN, and divers Lords, Ladies, and Gentlewomen, as guests ; at another door, enter SIR HENRY GUILDFORD.

GUILDFORD. Ladies, a general welcome from his Grace  
 Salutes ye all ; this night he dedicates  
 To fair content and you. None here, he hopes,  
 In all this noble bevy, has brought with her 4  
 One care abroad ; he would have all as merry  
 As, first, good company, good wine, good welcome,  
 Can make good people.

Enter Lord Chamberlain, LORD SANDS, and SIR THOMAS LOVELL.

O, my lord ! you're tardy :  
 The very thought of this fair company 8  
 Clapp'd wings to me.

CHAMBERLAIN. You are young, Sir Harry Guildford.

SANDS. Sir Thomas Lovell, had the cardinal  
 But half my lay-thoughts in him, some of these  
 Should find a running banquet ere they rested, 12  
 I think would better please 'em : by my life,  
 They are a sweet society of fair ones.

LOVELL. O ! that your lordship were but now confessor  
 To one or two of these !

SANDS. I would I were ; 16  
 They should find easy penance.

LOVELL. Faith, how easy ?

SANDS. As easy as a down-bed would afford it.

CHAMBERLAIN. Sweet ladies, will it please you sit ?

Sir Harry,  
 Place you that side, I'll take the charge of this ; 20  
 His Grace is entering. Nay, you must not freeze  
 Two women plac'd together makes cold weather :

My Lord Sands, you are one will keep 'em waxing ;  
Pray, sit between these ladies.

SANDS. By my faith, 24  
And thank your lordship. By your leave, sweet ladies :

[Seats himself between ANNE BULLEN and another Lady.

If I chance to talk a little wild, forgive me ;  
I had it from my father.

ANNE. Was he mad, sir ?

SANDS. O ! very mad, exceeding mad ; in love too :  
But he would bite none ; just as I do now, 29  
He would kiss you twenty with a breath. [Kisses her.

CHAMBERLAIN. Well said, my lord.  
So, now you're fairly seated. Gentlemen,  
The penance lies on you, if these fair ladies 32  
Pass away frowning.

SANDS. For my little cure,  
Let me alone.

Hautboys. Enter CARDINAL WOLSEY, attended, and takes his state.

WOLSEY. You're welcome, my fair guests : that noble  
lady,

Or gentleman, that is not freely merry, 36  
Is not my friend : this, to confirm my welcome ;  
And to you all, good health. [Drinks.

SANDS. Your Grace is noble :  
Let me have such a bowl may hold my thanks,  
And save me so much talking.

WOLSEY. My Lord Sands, 40  
I am beholding to you : cheer your neighbours.  
Ladies, you are not merry : gentlemen,  
Whose fault is this ?

SANDS. The red wine first must rise  
In their fair cheeks, my lord ; then, we shall have 'em  
Talk us to silence.

ANNE. You are a merry gamester, 45  
My Lord Sands.

SANDS. Yes, if I make my play.  
Here 's to your ladyship ; and pledge it, madam,  
For 'tis to such a thing,—

ANNE. You cannot show me. 48

SANDS. I told your Grace they would talk anon.

[Drum and trumpets within ; chambers discharged.

WOLSEY. What 's that ?

CHAMBERLAIN. Look out there, some of ye.

WOLSEY.

[Exit a Servant.  
What warlike voice,  
And to what end, is this? Nay, ladies, fear not;  
By all the laws of war you're privileg'd.

52

Re-enter Servant.

CHAMBERLAIN. How now, what is 't?

SERVANT.

A noble troop of strangers;  
For so they seem: they've left their barge and landed;  
And hither make, as great ambassadors  
From foreign princes.

WOLSEY.

Good Lord Chamberlain, 56  
Go, give 'em welcome; you can speak the French tongue;  
And, pray, receive 'em nobly, and conduct 'em  
Into our presence, where this heaven of beauty  
Shall shine at full upon them. Some attend him. 60

[Exit the Lord Chamberlain, attended. All  
arise, and tables removed.

You have now a broken banquet; but we'll mend it.  
A good digestion to you all; and once more  
I shower a welcome on ye; welcome all.

Hautboys. Enter the KING, and Others, as masquers, habited like  
shepherds, ushered by the Lord Chamberlain. They pass  
directly before the CARDINAL, and gracefully salute him.

A noble company! what are their pleasures? 64

CHAMBERLAIN. Because they speak no English, thus  
they pray'd

To tell your Grace: that, having heard by fame  
Of this so noble and so fair assembly  
This night to meet here, they could do no less, 68  
Out of the great respect they bear to beauty,  
But leave their flocks; and, under your fair conduct,  
Crave leave to view these ladies, and entreat  
An hour of revels with 'em.

WOLSEY.

Say, Lord Chamberlain,  
They have done my poor house grace; for which I  
pay 'em 73

A thousand thanks, and pray 'em take their pleasures.

[They choose Ladies for the dance. The

KING chooses ANNE BULLEN.

KING HENRY. The fairest hand I ever touch'd! O  
beauty,



Till now I never knew thee !

[Music. Dance.

WOLSEY. My lord.

CHAMBERLAIN. Your Grace ?

WOLSEY. Pray tell them thus much from me :  
There should be one amongst 'em, by his person,  
More worthy this place than myself ; to whom,  
If I but knew him, with my love and duty 80  
I would surrender it.

CHAMBERLAIN. I will, my lord. [Whispers the Masquers.

WOLSEY. What say they ?

CHAMBERLAIN. Such a one, they all confess,  
There is indeed ; which they would have your Grace  
Find out, and he will take it.

WOLSEY. Let me see then. 84

[Comes from his state.

By all your good leaves, gentlemen, here I'll make  
My royal choice.

KING HENRY. [Unmasking.] You have found him, cardinal.  
You hold a fair assembly ; you do well, lord :  
You are a churchman, or, I'll tell you, cardinal, 88  
I should judge now unhappily.

WOLSEY. I am glad  
Your Grace is grown so pleasant.

KING HENRY. My Lord Chamberlain,  
Prithee, come hither. What fair lady's that ?

CHAMBERLAIN. An't please your Grace, Sir Thomas  
Bullen's daughter, 92  
The Viscount Rochford, one of her highness' women.

KING HENRY. By heaven, she is a dainty one. Sweet-  
heart,

I were unmannerly to take you out,  
And not to kiss you. A health, gentlemen ! 96  
Let it go round.

WOLSEY. Sir Thomas Lovell, is the banquet ready  
I' the privy chamber ?

LOVELL. Yes, my lord.

WOLSEY. Your Grace,  
I fear, with dancing is a little heated. 100

KING HENRY. I fear, too much.

WOLSEY. There's fresher air, my lord,  
In the next chamber.

KING HENRY. Lead in your ladies, every one. Sweet  
partner,

I must not yet forsake you. Let 's be merry : 10  
 Good my Lord Cardinal, I have half a dozen healths  
 To drink to these fair ladies, and a measure  
 To lead 'em once again ; and then let 's dream  
 Who 's best in favour. Let the music knock it. 108  
 [Exeunt with trumpets.

## ACT II.

SCENE I.—Westminster. A Street.

Enter two Gentlemen, meeting.

FIRST GENTLEMAN. Whither away so fast ?

SECOND GENTLEMAN. O ! God save ye.  
 E'en to the hall, to hear what shall become  
 Of the great Duke of Buckingham.

FIRST GENTLEMAN. I'll save you  
 That labour, sir. All 's now done but the ceremony  
 Of bringing back the prisoner.

SECOND GENTLEMAN. Were you there ? 5

FIRST GENTLEMAN. Yes, indeed, was I.

SECOND GENTLEMAN. Pray speak what has happen'd.

FIRST GENTLEMAN. You may guess quickly what.

SECOND GENTLEMAN. Is he found guilty ?

FIRST GENTLEMAN. Yes, truly is he, and condemn'd  
 upon 't. 8

SECOND GENTLEMAN. I am sorry for 't.

FIRST GENTLEMAN. So are a number more.

SECOND GENTLEMAN. But, pray, how pass'd it ?

FIRST GENTLEMAN. I'll tell you in a little. The great  
 duke

Came to the bar ; where, to his accusations 12

He pleaded still not guilty, and alleg'd

Many sharp reasons to defeat the law.

The king's attorney on the contrary

Urg'd on the examinations, proofs, confessions 16

Of divers witnesses, which the duke desir'd

To have brought, viva voce, to his face :

At which appear'd against him his surveyor ;

Sir Gilbert Peck his chancellor ; and John Car, 20

Confessor to him ; with that devil-monk,  
 Hopkins, that made this mischief.

SECOND GENTLEMAN.

That was he

That fed him with his prophecies ?

FIRST GENTLEMAN.

The same.

All these accus'd him strongly ; which he fain 24

Would have flung from him, but, indeed, he could not:

And so his peers, upon this evidence,

Have found him guilty of high treason. Much

He spoke, and learnedly, for life ; but all 28

Was either pitied in him or forgotten.

SECOND GENTLEMAN. After all this how did he bear himself ?

FIRST GENTLEMAN. When he was brought again to the bar, to hear

His knell rung out, his judgment, he was stirr'd 32

With such an agony, he sweat extremely,

And something spoke in choler, ill and hasty :

But he fell to himself again, and sweetly

In all the rest show'd a most noble patience. 36

SECOND GENTLEMAN. I do not think he fears death.

FIRST GENTLEMAN.

Sure, he does not;

He never was so womanish ; the cause

He may a little grieve at.

SECOND GENTLEMAN. Certainly

The cardinal is the end of this.

FIRST GENTLEMAN.

'Tis likely

40

By all conjectures : first, Kildare's attainder,

Then deputy of Ireland ; who remov'd,

Earl Surrey was sent thither, and in haste too,

Lest he should help his father.

SECOND GENTLEMAN.

That trick of state

Was a deep envious one.

FIRST GENTLEMAN.

At his return,

45

No doubt he will requite it. This is noted,

And generally, whoever the king favours,

The cardinal instantly will find employment, 48

And far enough from court too.

SECOND GENTLEMAN.

All the commons

Hate him perniciously, and o' my conscience,

Wish him ten fathom deep : this duke as much

They love and dote on ; call him bounteous Buckingham,

The mirror of all courtesy ;—

FIRST GENTLEMAN.

Stay there, sir,

53

And see the noble ruin'd man you speak of.

Enter BUCKINGHAM from his arraignment ; tipstaves before him ; the axe with the edge towards him ; halberds on each side : with him SIR THOMAS LOVELL, SIR NICHOLAS VAUX, SIR WILLIAM SANDS, and common people.

SECOND GENTLEMAN. Let 's stand close, and behold him.

BUCKINGHAM.

All good people,

You that thus far have come to pity me, 56

Hear what I say, and then go home and lose me.

I have this day receiv'd a traitor's judgment,

And by that name must die : yet, heaven bear witness,

And if I have a conscience, let it sink me, 60

Even as the axe falls, if I be not faithful !

The law I bear no malice for my death,

'T has done upon the premisses but justice ;

But those that sought it I could wish more Christians :

Be what they will, I heartily forgive 'em. 65

Yet let 'em look they glory not in mischief,

Nor build their evils on the graves of great men ;

For then my guiltless blood must cry against 'em. 68

For further life in this world I ne'er hope,

Nor will I sue, although the king have mercies

More than I dare make faults. You few that lov'd me,

And dare be bold to weep for Buckingham, 72

His noble friends and fellows, whom to leave

Is only bitter to him, only dying,

Go with me, like good angels, to my end ;

And, as the long divorce of steel falls on me, 76

Make of your prayers one sweet sacrifice,

And lift my soul to heaven. Lead on, o' God's name.

LOVELL. I do beseech your Grace, for charity,

If ever any malice in your heart 80

Were hid against me, now to forgive me frankly.

BUCKINGHAM. Sir Thomas Lovell, I as free forgive you

As I would be forgiven : I forgive all.

There cannot be those numberless offences 84

'Gainst me that I cannot take peace with : no black envy

Shall mark my grave. Commend me to his Grace ;

And, if he speak of Buckingham, pray, tell him

You met him half in heaven. My vows and prayers

Yet are the king's ; and, till my soul forsake, 89

Shall cry for blessings on him : may he live

Longer than I have time to tell his years !

Ever belov'd and loving may his rule be ! 92  
And when old time shall lead him to his end,  
Goodness and he fill up one monument !

LOVELL. To the water side I must conduct your Grace ;  
Then give my charge up to Sir Nicholas Vaux, 96  
Who undertakes you to your end.

VAUX. Prepare there !  
The duke is coming : see the barge be ready ;  
And fit it with such furniture as suits  
The greatness of his person.

BUCKINGHAM. Nay, Sir Nicholas, 100  
Let it alone ; my state now will but mock me.  
When I came hither, I was Lord High Constable  
And Duke of Buckingham ; now, poor Edward Bohun :  
Yet I am richer than my base accusers, 104  
That never knew what truth meant : I now seal it ;  
And with that blood will make them one day groan for 't.  
My noble father, Henry of Buckingham,  
Who first rais'd head against usurping Richard, 108  
Flying for succour to his servant Banister,  
Being distress'd, was by that wretch betray'd,  
And without trial fell : God's peace be with him !  
Henry the Seventh succeeding, truly pitying 112  
My father's loss, like a most royal prince,  
Restor'd me to my honours, and, out of ruins,  
Made my name once more noble. Now his son,  
Henry the Eighth, life, honour, name, and all 116  
That made me happy, at one stroke has taken  
For ever from the world. I had my trial,  
And, must needs say, a noble one ; which makes me  
A little happier than my wretched father : 120  
Yet thus far we are one in fortunes ; both  
Fell by our servants, by those men we lov'd most :  
A most unnatural and faithless service !  
Heaven has an end in all ; yet, you that hear me,  
This from a dying man receive as certain : 125  
Where you are liberal of your loves and counsels  
Be sure you be not loose ; for those you make friends  
And give your hearts to, when they once perceive  
The least rub in your fortunes, fall away 129  
Like water from ye, never found again  
But where they mean to sink ye. All good people,  
Pray for me ! I must now forsake ye : the last hour

Of my long weary life is come upon me. 133  
Farewell :

And when you would say something that is sad,  
Speak how I fell. I have done ; and God forgive me !

[Exit BUCKINGHAM and Train.

FIRST GENTLEMAN. O ! this is full of pity ! Sir, it calls,  
I fear, too many curses on their heads  
That were the authors.

SECOND GENTLEMAN. If the duke be guiltless,  
'Tis full of woe ; yet I can give you inkling 140  
Of an ensuing evil, if it fall,  
Greater than this.

FIRST GENTLEMAN. Good angels keep it from us !  
What may it be ? You do not doubt my faith, sir ?

SECOND GENTLEMAN. This secret is so weighty, 'twill  
require 144  
A strong faith to conceal it.

FIRST GENTLEMAN. Let me have it ;  
I do not talk much.

SECOND GENTLEMAN. I am confident :  
You shall, sir. Did you not of late days hear  
A buzzing of a separation 148  
Between the king and Katharine ?

FIRST GENTLEMAN. Yes, but it held not ;  
For when the king once heard it, out of anger  
He sent command to the lord mayor straight  
To stop the rumour, and allay those tongues 152  
That durst disperse it.

SECOND GENTLEMAN. But that slander, sir,  
Is found a truth now ; for it grows again  
Fresher than e'er it was ; and held for certain  
The king will venture at it. Either the cardinal, 156  
Or some about him near, have, out of malice  
To the good queen, possess'd him with a scruple  
That will undo her : to confirm this too,  
Cardinal Campeius is arriv'd, and lately ; 160  
As all think, for this business.

FIRST GENTLEMAN. 'Tis the cardinal ;  
And merely to revenge him on the emperor  
For not bestowing on him, at his asking,  
The archbishopric of Toledo, this is purpos'd. 164

SECOND GENTLEMAN. I think you have hit the mark :  
but is 't not cruel

That ~~she~~ ~~should~~ feel the smart of this ? The cardinal  
Will have his will, and she must fall.

FIRST GENTLEMAN.

'Tis woeful.

We are too open here to argue this ;

168

Let 's think in private more.

[Exeunt.

SCENE II.—An Ante-chamber in the Palace.

Enter the Lord Chamberlain, reading a letter.

CHAMBERLAIN. 'My lord, The horses your lordship  
sent for, with all the care I had, I saw well chosen,  
ridden, and furnished. They were young and hand-  
some, and of the best breed in the north. When they  
were ready to set out for London, a man of my Lord  
Cardinal's, by commission and main power, took them  
from me ; with this reason : His master would be  
served before a subject, if not before the king ; which  
stopped our mouths, sir.'

9

I fear he will indeed. Well, let him have them :  
He will have all, I think.

Enter the DUKES OF NORFOLK and SUFFOLK.

NORFOLK. Well met, my Lord Chamberlain. 12

CHAMBERLAIN. Good day to both your Graces.

SUFFOLK. How is the king employ'd ?

CHAMBERLAIN. I left him private,  
Full of sad thoughts and troubles.

NORFOLK. What 's the cause ?

CHAMBERLAIN. It seems the marriage with his  
brother's wife

16

Has crept too near his conscience.

SUFFOLK. No ; his conscience  
Has crept too near another lady.

NORFOLK. 'Tis so :

This is the cardinal's doing, the king-cardinal :  
That blind priest, like the eldest son of Fortune, 20  
Turns what he list. The king will know him one day.

SUFFOLK. Pray God he do ! he'll never know himself  
else.

NORFOLK. How holily he works in all his business,  
And with what zeal ! for, now he has crack'd the league  
Between us and the emperor, the queen's great nephew,

He dives into the king's soul, and there scatters  
Dangers, doubts, wringing of the conscience, 27<sup>3</sup>  
Fears, and despairs ; and all these for his marriage :  
And out of all these, to restore the king,  
He counsels a divorce ; a loss of her  
That like a jewel has hung twenty years  
About his neck, yet never lost her lustre ; 32  
Of her, that loves him with that excellence  
That angels love good men with ; even of her,  
That, when the greatest stroke of fortune falls,  
Will bless the king : and is not this course pious ?

CHAMBERLAIN. Heaven keep me from such counsel !

'Tis most true 37

These news are every where ; every tongue speaks 'em,  
And every true heart weeps for 't. All that dare  
Look into these affairs, see this main end, 40  
The French king's sister. Heaven will one day open  
The king's eyes, that so long have slept upon  
This bold bad man.

SUFFOLK. And free us from his slavery.

NORFOLK. We had need pray, 44  
And heartily, for our deliverance ;  
Or this imperious man will work us all  
From princes into pages. All men's honours  
Lie like one lump before him, to be fashion'd 48  
Into what pitch he please.

SUFFOLK. For me, my lords,  
I love him not, nor fear him ; there's my creed.  
As I am made without him, so I'll stand,  
If the king please ; his curses and his blessings 52  
Touch me alike, they're breath I not believe in.  
I knew him, and I know him ; so I leave him  
To him that made him proud, the pope.

NORFOLK. Let's in ;

And with some other business put the king 56  
From these sad thoughts, that work too much upon him.  
My lord, you'll bear us company ?

CHAMBERLAIN. Excuse me ;

The king hath sent me elsewhere : besides,  
You'll find a most unfit time to disturb him : 60  
Health to your lordships.

NORFOLK. Thanks, my good Lord Chamberlain.

[Exit Lord Chamberlain.]



NORFOLK opens a folding-door. The KING is discovered sitting and reading pensively.

SUFFOLK. How sad he looks! sure, he is much afflicted.

KING HENRY. Who is there, ha?

NORFOLK. Pray God he be not angry.

KING HENRY. Who's there, I say? How dare you thrust yourselves 64

Into my private meditations?

Who am I, ha?

NORFOLK. A gracious king that pardons all offences  
Malice ne'er meant: our breach of duty this way 68  
Is business of estate; in which we come  
To know your royal pleasure.

KING HENRY. Ye are too bold.  
Go to; I'll make ye know your times of business:  
Is this an hour for temporal affairs, ha? 72

Enter WOLSEY and CAMPEIUS.

Who's there? my good Lord Cardinal? O! my Wolsey,  
The quiet of my wounded conscience;  
Thou art a cure fit for a king. [To CAMPEIUS.] You're welcome,  
Most learned reverend sir, into our kingdom: 76  
Use us, and it. [To WOLSEY.] My good lord, have great care  
I be not found a talker.

WOLSEY. Sir, you cannot.  
I would your Grace would give us but an hour 79  
Of private conference.

KING HENRY. [To NORFOLK and SUFFOLK.] We are busy: go.

NORFOLK. [Aside to SUFFOLK.] This priest has no pride in him!

SUFFOLK. [Aside to NORFOLK.] Not to speak of;  
I would not be so sick though for his place:  
But this cannot continue.

NORFOLK. [Aside to SUFFOLK.] If it do,  
I'll venture one have-at-him.

SUFFOLK. [Aside to NORFOLK.] I another. 84

[Exeunt NORFOLK and SUFFOLK.]

WOLSEY. Your Grace has given a precedent of wisdom  
Above all princes, in committing freely  
Your scruple to the voice of Christendom.  
Who can be angry now? what envy reach you? 88

The Spaniard, tied by blood and favour to her,  
Must now confess, if they have any goodness,  
The trial just and noble. All the clerks,  
I mean the learned ones, in Christian kingdoms 92  
Have their free voices : Rome, the nurse of judgment,  
Invited by your noble self, hath sent  
One general tongue unto us, this good man,  
This just and learned priest, Cardinal Campeius ; 96  
Whom once more I present unto your highness.

KING HENRY. And once more in my arms I bid him  
welcome,  
And thank the holy conclave for their loves :  
They have sent me such a man I would have wish'd for.  
CAMPEIUS. Your Grace must needs deserve all  
strangers' loves, 101

You are so noble. To your highness' hand  
I tender my commission, by whose virtue,—  
The court of Rome commanding,—you, my Lord 104  
Cardinal of York, are join'd with me, their servant,  
In the impartial judging of this business.

KING HENRY. Two equal men. The queen shall be  
acquainted 107  
Forthwith for what you come. Where's Gardiner ?

WOLSEY. I know your majesty has always lov'd her  
So dear in heart, not to deny her that  
A woman of less place might ask by law,  
Scholars, allow'd freely to argue for her. 112

KING HENRY. Ay, and the best, she shall have ; and  
my favour  
To him that does best : God forbid else. Cardinal,  
Prithee, call Gardiner to me, my new secretary :  
I find him a fit fellow. [Exit WOLSEY.

Re-enter WOLSEY, with GARDINER.

WOLSEY. [Aside to GARDINER.] Give me your hand ; much  
joy and favour to you ; 117  
You are the king's now.

GARDINER. [Aside to WOLSEY.] But to be commanded  
For ever by your Grace, whose hand has rais'd me.

KING HENRY. Come hither, Gardiner. [They converse apart.

CAMPEIUS. My Lord of York, was not one Doctor Pace  
In this man's place before him ?

WOLSEY. Yes, he was.

CAMPEIUS. Was he not held a learned man ?

WOLSEY.

Yes, surely.

CAMPEIUS. Believe me, there's an ill opinion spread  
then 124

Even of yourself, Lord Cardinal.

WOLSEY.

How ! of me ?

CAMPEIUS. They will not stick to say, you envied him,  
And fearing he would rise, he was so virtuous,  
Kept him a foreign man still ; which so griev'd him  
That he ran mad and died.

WOLSEY.

Heaven's peace be with him !

That's Christian care enough : for living murmurers  
There's places of rebuke. He was a fool, 131  
For he would needs be virtuous : that good fellow,  
If I command him, follows my appointment :  
I will have none so near else. Learn this, brother,  
We live not to be grip'd by meaner persons.

KING HENRY. Deliver this with modesty to the queen.

[Exit GARDINER.]

The most convenient place that I can think of 137  
For such receipt of learning, is Black-Friars ;  
There ye shall meet about this weighty business  
My Wolsey, see it furnish'd. O my lord ! 140  
Would it not grieve an able man to leave  
So sweet a bedfellow ? But, conscience, conscience !  
O ! 'tis a tender place, and I must leave her. [Exeunt.]

SCENE III.—An Ante-chamber in the QUEEN'S Apartments.

Enter ANNE BULLEN and an Old Lady.

ANNE. Not for that neither : here's the pang that  
pinches :

His highness having liv'd so long with her, and she  
So good a lady that no tongue could ever  
Pronounce dishonour of her ; by my life, 4  
She never knew harm-doing ; O ! now, after  
So many courses of the sun enthron'd,  
Still growing in a majesty and pomp, the which  
To leave a thousand-fold more bitter than 8  
'Tis sweet at first to acquire, after this process  
To give her the avaunt ! it is a pity  
Would move a monster.

OLD LADY.

Hearts of most hard temper

Melt and lament for her.

ANNE. O! God's will; much better  
She ne'er had known pomp: though 't be temporal,  
Yet, if that quarrel, Fortune, do divorce  
It from the bearer, 'tis a sufferance panging  
As soul and body's severing.

OLD LADY. Alas! poor lady, 16  
She's a stranger now again.

ANNE. So much the more  
Must pity drop upon her. Verily,  
I swear, 'tis better to be lowly born,  
And range with humble livers in content, 20  
Than to be perk'd up in a glistening grief  
And wear a golden sorrow.

OLD LADY. Our content  
Is our best having.

ANNE. By my troth and maidenhead  
I would not be a queen.

OLD LADY. Beshrew me, I would, 24  
And venture maidenhead for 't; and so would you,  
For all this spice of your hypocrisy.  
You, that have so fair parts of woman on you,  
Have too a woman's heart; which ever yet 28  
Affected eminence, wealth, sovereignty:  
Which, to say sooth, are blessings, and which gifts—  
Saving your mincing—the capacity  
Of your soft cheveril conscience would receive, 32  
If you might please to stretch it.

ANNE. Nay, good troth.

OLD LADY. Yes, troth, and troth; you would not be  
a queen?

ANNE. No, not for all the riches under heaven.

OLD LADY. 'Tis strange: a three-pence bow'd would  
hire me, 36

Old as I am, to queen it. But, I pray you,  
What think you of a duchess? have you limbs  
To bear that load of title?

ANNE. No, in truth.

OLD LADY. Then you are weakly made. Pluck off  
a little: 40

I would not be a young count in your way,  
For more than blushing comes to: if your back  
Cannot vouchsafe this burden, 'tis too weak

Ever to get a boy.

ANNE. How you do talk ! 44

I swear again, I would not be a queen  
For all the world.

OLD LADY. In faith, for little England  
You'd venture an emballing : I myself 47  
Would for Carnarvonshire, although there 'long'd  
No more to the crown but that. Lo ! who comes here ?

Enter the Lord Chamberlain.

CHAMBERLAIN. Good morrow, ladies. What were 't  
worth to know  
The secret of your conference ?

ANNE. My good lord,  
Not your demand ; it values not your asking : 52  
Our mistress' sorrows we were pitying.

CHAMBERLAIN. It was a gentle business, and be-  
coming  
The action of good women : there is hope  
All will be well.

ANNE. Now, I pray God, amen ! 56

CHAMBERLAIN. You bear a gentle mind, and heavenly  
blessings

Follow such creatures. That you may, fair lady,  
Perceive I speak sincerely, and high note 's  
Ta'en of your many virtues, the king's majesty 60  
Commends his good opinion of you, and  
Does purpose honour to you no less flowing  
Than Marchioness of Pembroke ; to which title  
A thousand pound a year, annual support, 64  
Out of his grace he adds.

ANNE. I do not know  
What kind of my obedience I should tender ;  
More than my all is nothing, nor my prayers  
Are not words duly hallow'd, nor my wishes 68  
More worth than empty vanities ; yet prayers and  
wishes

Are all I can return. Beseech your lordship,  
Vouchsafe to speak my thanks and my obedience  
As from a blushing handmaid, to his highness, 72  
Whose health and royalty I pray for.

CHAMBERLAIN. Lady,  
I shall not fail to approve the fair conceit

The king hath of you. [Aside.] I have perus'd her well;  
Beauty and honour in her are so mingled 76  
That they have caught the king; and who knows  
yet

But from this lady may proceed a gem  
To lighten all this isle? [To her.] I'll to the king,  
And say, I spoke with you.

ANNE. My honour'd lord. [Exit Lord Chamberlain.]

OLD LADY. Why, this it is; see, see! 81  
I have been begging sixteen years in court,  
Am yet a courtier beggarly, nor could  
Come pat betwixt too early and too late 84  
For any suit of pounds; and you, O fate!  
A very fresh-fish here,—fie, fie, upon  
This compell'd fortune!—have your mouth fill'd up  
Before you open it.

ANNE. This is strange to me. 88

OLD LADY. How tastes it? is it bitter? forty pence,  
no.

There was a lady once,—'tis an old story,—  
That would not be a queen, that would she not,  
For all the mud in Egypt: have you heard it? 92

ANNE. Come, you are pleasant.

OLD LADY. With your theme I could  
O'er mount the lark. The Marchioness of Pembroke!  
A thousand pounds a year, for pure respect!  
No other obligation! By my life 96  
That promises more thousands: honour's train  
Is longer than his foreskirt. By this time  
I know your back will bear a duchess: say,  
Are you not stronger than you were?

ANNE. Good lady, 100  
Make yourself mirth with your particular fancy,  
And leave me out on 't. Would I had no being,  
If this salute my blood a jot: it faints me,  
To think what follows. 104

The queen is comfortless, and we forgetful  
In our long absence. Pray, do not deliver  
What here you've heard to her.

OLD LADY. What do you think me?

[Exeunt.]

## SCENE IV.—A Hall in Black-Friars.

Trumpets, sennet, and cornets. Enter two Vergers, with short silver wands; next them, two Scribes, in the habit of doctors; after them, the ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY, alone; after him, the BISHOPS OF LINCOLN, ELY, ROCHESTER, and SAINT ASAPH; next them, at some small distance, follows a Gentleman bearing the purse, with the great seal, and a cardinal's hat; then two Priests, bearing each a silver cross; then a Gentleman-Usher bare-headed, accompanied with a Sergeant-at-Arms, bearing a silver mace; then two Gentlemen, bearing two great silver pillars; after them, side by side, the two CARDINALS; two Noblemen with the sword and mace. Then enter the KING and QUEEN, and their Trains. The KING takes place under the cloth of state; the two CARDINALS sit under him as judges. The QUEEN takes place at some distance from the KING. The BISHOPS place themselves on each side the court, in manner of a consistory; below them, the Scribes. The Lords sit next the BISHOPS. The Crier and the rest of the Attendants stand in convenient order about the Stage.

WOLSEY. Whilst our commission from Rome is read,  
Let silence be commanded.

KING HENRY. What's the need?  
It hath already publicly been read,  
And on all sides the authority allow'd; 4  
You may then spare that time.

WOLSEY. Be't so. Proceed.

SCRIBE. Say, Henry King of England, come into the court.

CRIER. Henry King of England, come into the court.

KING HENRY. Here. 8

SCRIBE. Say, Katharine Queen of England, come into the court.

CRIER. Katherine Queen of England, come into the court.

[The QUEEN makes no answer, rises out of her chair, goes about the court, comes to the KING, and kneels at his feet; then speaks.

QUEEN KATHERINE. Sir, I desire you do me right and justice;

And to bestow your pity on me; for 12  
I am a most poor woman, and a stranger,  
Born out of your dominions; having here  
No judge indifferent, nor no more assurance  
Of equal friendship and proceeding. Alas! sir, 16  
In what have I offended you? what cause  
Hath my behaviour given to your displeasure.

That thus you should proceed to put me off  
And take your good grace from me ? Heaven witness,  
I have been to you a true and humble wife, 21  
At all times to your will conformable ;  
Ever in fear to kindle your dislike,  
Yea, subject to your countenance, glad or sorry 24  
As I saw it inclin'd. When was the hour  
I ever contradicted your desire,  
Or made it not mine too ? Or which of your friends  
Have I not strove to love, although I knew 28  
He were mine enemy ? what friend of mine  
That had to him deriv'd your anger, did I  
Continue in my liking ? nay, gave notice  
He was from thence discharg'd. Sir, call to mind  
That I have been your wife, in this obedience, 33  
Upward of twenty years, and have been blest  
With many children by you : if, in the course  
And process of this time, you can report, 36  
And prove it too, against mine honour aught,  
My bond to wedlock, or my love and duty,  
Against your sacred person, in God's name  
Turn me away ; and let the foul'st contempt 40  
Shut door upon me, and so give me up  
To the sharp'st kind of justice. Please you, sir,  
The king, your father, was reputed for  
A prince most prudent, of an excellent 44  
And unmatched wit and judgment : Ferdinand,  
My father, King of Spain, was reckon'd one  
The wisest prince that there had reign'd by many  
A year before : it is not to be question'd 48  
That they had gather'd a wise council to them  
Of every realm, that did debate this business,  
Who deem'd our marriage lawful. Wherefore I humbly  
Beseech you, sir, to spare me, till I may 52  
Be by my friends in Spain advis'd, whose counsel  
I will implore : if not, i' the name of God,  
Your pleasure be fulfill'd !

WOLSEY. You have here, lady,—  
And of your choice,—these reverend fathers ; men  
Of singular integrity and learning, 57  
Yea, the elect o' the land, who are assembled  
To plead your cause. It shall be therefore bootless  
That longer you desire the court, as well 60



For your own quiet, as to rectify  
What is unsettled in the king.

CAMPEIUS.

His Grace

Hath spoken well and justly : therefore, madam,  
It's fit this royal session do proceed,  
And that, without delay, their arguments  
Be now produc'd and heard.

64

QUEEN KATHARINE.

Lord Cardinal,

To you I speak.

WOLSEY. Your pleasure, madam ?

QUEEN KATHARINE.

Sir,

I am about to weep ; but, thinking that  
We are a queen,—or long have dream'd so,—certain  
The daughter of a king, my drops of tears  
I'll turn to sparks of fire.

68

WOLSEY.

Be patient yet.

QUEEN KATHARINE. I will, when you are humble ;  
nay, before,

72

Or God will punish me. I do believe,  
Induc'd by potent circumstances, that  
You are mine enemy ; and make my challenge  
You shall not be my judge ; for it is you  
Have blown this coal betwixt my lord and me,  
Which God's dew quench ! Therefore I say again,  
I utterly abhor, yea, from my soul  
Refuse you for my judge, whom, yet once more,  
I hold my most malicious foe, and think not  
At all a friend to truth.

76

80

WOLSEY.

I do profess

You speak not like yourself ; who ever yet  
Have stood to charity, and display'd the effects  
Of disposition gentle, and of wisdom  
O'ertopping woman's power. Madam, you do me wrong :  
I have no spleen against you ; nor injustice  
For you or any : how far I have proceeded,  
Or how far further shall, is warranted  
By a commission from the consistory,  
Yea, the whole consistory of Rome. You charge me  
That I have blown this coal : I do deny it.  
The king is present : if it be known to him  
That I gainsay my deed, how may he wound,  
And worthily, my falsehood ; yea, as much  
As you have done my truth. If he know

84

88

92

96

That I am free of your report, he knows  
 I am not of your wrong. Therefore in him  
 It lies to cure me ; and the cure is, to  
 Remove these thoughts from you : the which before  
 His highness shall speak in, I do beseech 101  
 You, gracious madam, to unthink your speaking,  
 And to say so no more.

QUEEN KATHARINE. My lord, my lord,  
 I am a simple woman, much too weak 104  
 To oppose your cunning. You're meek and humble-  
 mouth'd ;

You sign your place and calling, in full seeming,  
 With meekness and humility ; but your heart  
 Is cramm'd with arrogancy, spleen, and pride. 106  
 You have, by fortune and his highness' favours,  
 Gone slightly o'er low steps, and now are mounted  
 Where powers are your retainers, and your words,  
 Domestics to you, serve your will as 't please 112  
 Yourself pronounce their office. I must tell you,  
 You tender more your person's honour than  
 Your high profession spiritual ; that again  
 I do refuse you for my judge ; and here, 116  
 Before you all, appeal unto the pope,  
 To bring my whole cause 'fore his holiness,  
 And to be judg'd by him.

[She curtsies to the KING, and offers to depart.

CAMPEIUS. The queen is obstinate,  
 Stubborn to justice, apt to accuse it, and 120  
 Disdainful to be tried by 't : 'tis not well.  
 She's going away.

KING HENRY. Call her again.

CRIER. Katharine Queen of England, come into the  
 court. 124

GRIFFITH. Madam, you are call'd back.

QUEEN KATHARINE. What need you note it ? pray  
 you, keep your way :

When you are call'd, return. Now, the Lord help !  
 They vex me past my patience. Pray you, pass on :  
 I will not tarry ; no, nor ever more 129  
 Upon this business my appearance make

In any of their courts. [Exeunt QUEEN, and her Attendants.

KING HENRY. Go thy ways, Kate :  
 That man i' the world who shall report he has 132

A better wife, let him in nought be trusted,  
 For speaking false in that : thou art, alone,—  
 If thy rare qualities, sweet gentleness,  
 Thy meekness saint-like, wife-like government, 136  
 Obeying in commanding, and thy parts  
 Sovereign and pious else, could speak thee out,—  
 The queen of earthly queens. She's noble born ;  
 And, like her true nobility, she has 140  
 Carried herself towards me.

WOISEY.

Most gracious sir,

In humblest manner I require your highness,  
 That it shall please you to declare, in hearing  
 Of all these ears,—for where I am robb'd and bound  
 There must I be unloos'd, although not there 145  
 At once and fully satisfied,—whether ever I  
 Did broach this business to your highness, or  
 Laid any scruple in your way, which might 148  
 Induce you to the question on 't? or ever  
 Have to you, but with thanks to God for such  
 A royal lady, spake one the least word that might  
 Be to the prejudice of her present state, 152  
 Or touch of her good person?

KING HENRY.

My Lord Cardinal,

I do excuse you ; yea, upon mine honour,  
 I free you from 't. You are not to be taught  
 That you have many enemies, that know not 156  
 Why they are so, but, like to village curs,  
 Bark when their fellows do : by some of these  
 The queen is put in anger. You're excus'd :  
 But will you be more justified ? you ever 160  
 Have wish'd the sleeping of this business ; never  
 Desir'd it to be stirr'd ; but oft have hinder'd, oft,  
 The passages made toward it. On my honour,  
 I speak my good Lord Cardinal to this point, 164  
 And thus far clear him. Now, what mov'd me to 't,  
 I will be bold with time and your attention :  
 Then mark the inducement. Thus it came ; give heed to 't :  
 My conscience first receiv'd a tenderness, 168  
 Scruple, and prick, on certain speeches utter'd  
 By the Bishop of Bayonne, then French ambassador,  
 Who had been hither sent on the debating  
 A marriage 'twixt the Duke of Orleans and 172  
 Our daughter Mary. I' the progress of this business,

Ere a determinate resolution, he—  
 I mean, the bishop—did require a respite ;  
 Wherein he might the king his lord advertise 173  
 Whether our daughter were legitimate,  
 Respecting this our marriage with the dowager,  
 Sometimes our brother's wife. This respite shook  
 The bosom of my conscience, enter'd me, 180  
 Yea, with a splitting power, and made to tremble  
 The region of my breast ; which forc'd such way  
 That many maz'd considerings did throng,  
 And press'd in with this caution. First, methought  
 I stood not in the smile of heaven, who had 185  
 Commanded nature, that my lady's womb,  
 If it conceiv'd a male child by me, should  
 Do no more offices of life to 't than 188  
 The grave does to the dead ; for her male issue  
 Or died where they were made, or shortly after  
 This world had air'd them. Hence I took a thought  
 This was a judgment on me ; that my kingdom,  
 Well worthy the best heir o' the world, should not  
 Be gladdened in 't by me. Then follows that  
 I weigh'd the danger which my realms stood in  
 By this my issue's fail ; and that gave to me 196  
 Many a groaning throe. Thus hulling in  
 The wild sea of my conscience, I did steer  
 Toward this remedy, whereupon we are  
 Now present here together ; that 's to say, 200  
 I meant to rectify my conscience, which  
 I then did feel full sick, and yet not well,  
 By all the reverend fathers of the land  
 And doctors learn'd. First, I began in private 204  
 With you, my Lord of Lincoln ; you remember  
 How under my oppression I did reek,  
 When I first mov'd you.

LINCOLN.

Very well, my liege.

KING HENRY. I have spoke long : be pleas'd yourself  
 to say 208

How far you satisfied me.

LINCOLN.

So please your highness,

The question did at first so stagger me,  
 Bearing a state of mighty moment in 't,  
 And consequence of dread, that I committed 212  
 The daring'st counsel that I had to doubt ;

And did entreat your highness to this course  
Which you are running here.

KING HENRY. Then I mov'd you,  
My Lord of Canterbury, and got your leave  
To make this present summons. Unsolicited  
I left no reverend person in this court ;  
But my particular consent proceeded  
Under your hands and seals : therefore, go on ;  
For no dislike i' the world against the person  
Of the good queen, but the sharp thorny points  
Of my alleged reasons drive this forward.  
Prove but our marriage lawful, by my life  
And kingly dignity, we are contented  
To wear our mortal state to come with her,  
Katharine our queen, before the primest creature  
That's paragon'd o' the world.

216

220

224

CAMPEIUS. So please your highness,  
The queen being absent, 'tis a needful fitness 229  
That we adjourn this court till further day :  
Meanwhile must be an earnest motion  
Made to the queen, to call back her appeal 232  
She intends unto his holiness. [They rise to depart.]

KING HENRY. [Aside.] I may perceive  
These cardinals trifle with me : I abhor  
This dilatory sloth and tricks of Rome.  
My learn'd and well-beloved servant Cranmer, 230  
Prithee, return : with thy approach, I know,  
My comfort comes along. Break up the court :  
I say, set on. [Exeunt, in manner as they entered.]

ACT III.

SCENE I.—The Palace at Bridewell. A Room in the QUEEN'S Apartment.

The QUEEN and her Women at work.

QUEEN KATHARINE. Take thy lute, wench : my soul  
grows sad with troubles ;  
Sing and disperse 'em, if thou canst. Leave working.

## SONG

Orpheus with his lute made trees,  
And the mountain tops that freeze,  
Bow themselves, when he did sing :

To his music plants and flowers  
 Ever sprung ; as sun and showers  
 There had made a lasting spring. 8

Every thing that heard him play,  
 Even the billows of the sea,  
 Hung their heads, and then lay by.  
 In sweet music is such art, 12  
 Killing care and grief of heart  
 Fall asleep, or hearing, die.

•  
 Enter a Gentleman.

QUEEN KATHARINE. How now !

GENTLEMAN. An't please your Grace, the two great  
 cardinals 16

Wait in the presence.

QUEEN KATHARINE. Would they speak with me ?

GENTLEMAN. They will'd me say so, madam.

QUEEN KATHARINE. Pray their Graces  
 To come near. [Exit Gentleman.] What can be their busi-  
 ness 19

With me, a poor weak woman, fall'n from favour ?  
 I do not like their coming, now I think on 't.  
 They should be good men, their affairs as righteous ;  
 But all hoods make not monks.

Enter WOLSEY and CAMPEIUS.

WOLSEY. Peace to your highness !

QUEEN KATHARINE. Your Graces find me here part of  
 a housewife, 24

I would be all, against the worst may happen.  
 What are your pleasures with me, reverend lords ?

WOLSEY. May it please you, noble madam, to with-  
 draw

Into your private chamber, we shall give you 28  
 The full cause of our coming.

QUEEN KATHARINE. Speak it here ;  
 There 's nothing I have done yet, o' my conscience,  
 Deserves a corner : would all other women  
 Could speak this with as free a soul as I do ! 32  
 My lords, I care not—so much I am happy  
 Above a number—if my actions  
 Were tried by every tongue, every eye saw 'em,

Envy and base opinion set against 'em, 36  
 I know my life so even. If your business  
 Seek me out, and that way I am wife in.  
 Out with it boldly : truth loves open dealing.

WOLSEY. *Tanta est erga te mentis integritas, regina  
 serenissima,—* 40

QUEEN KATHARINE. O, good my lord, no Latin ;  
 I am not such a truant since my coming  
 As not to know the language I have liv'd in :  
 A strange tongue makes my cause more strange, suspi- 41  
 cious ;

Pray, speak in English : here are some will thank you,  
 If you speak truth, for their poor mistress' sake :  
 Believe me, she has had much wrong. Lord Cardinal,  
 The willing'st sin I ever yet committed 48  
 May be absolv'd in English.

WOLSEY. Noble Lady,  
 I am sorry my integrity should breed,—  
 And service to his majesty and you,—  
 So deep suspicion, where all faith was meant. 52  
 We come not by the way of accusation,  
 To taint that honour every good tongue blesses,  
 Nor to betray you any way to sorrow—  
 You have too much, good lady ; but to know 56  
 How you stand minded in the weighty difference  
 Between the king and you ; and to deliver,  
 Like free and honest men, our just opinions  
 And comforts to your cause.

CAMPEIUS. Most honour'd madam,  
 My Lord of York, out of his noble nature, 61  
 Zeal and obedience he still bore your Grace,  
 Forgetting, like a good man, your late censure  
 Both of his truth and him,—which was too far,— 64  
 Offers, as I do, in sign of peace,  
 His service and his counsel.

QUEEN KATHARINE. [Aside.] To betray me.  
 My lords, I thank you both for your good wills ;  
 Ye speak like honest men,—pray God, ye prove so !—  
 But how to make ye suddenly an answer, 69  
 In such a point of weight, so near mine honour,—  
 More near my life, I fear,—with my weak wit,  
 And to such men of gravity and learning, 72  
 In truth, I know not. I was set at work

Among my maids ; full little, God knows, looking  
Either for such men or such business.

For her sake that I have been,—for I feel 76

The last fit of my greatness,—good your Graces,

Let me have time and counsel for my cause :

Alas ! I am a woman, friendless, hopeless.

WOLSEY. Madam, you wrong the king's love with  
these fears : 80

Your hopes and friends are infinite.

QUEEN KATHARINE.

In England

But little for my profit. Can you think, lords,

That any Englishman dare give me counsel ?

Or be a known friend, 'gainst his highness' pleasure,—

Though he be grown so desperate to be honest,— 85

And live a subject ? Nay, forsooth, my friends,

They that must weigh out my afflictions,

They that my trust must grow to, live not here : 88

They are, as all my other comforts, far hence

In mine own country, lords.

CAMPEIUS.

I would your Grace

Would leave your griefs, and take my counsel.

QUEEN KATHARINE.

How, sir ?

CAMPEIUS. Put your main cause into the king's pro-  
tection ; 92

He's loving and most gracious : 'twill be much

Both for your honour better and your cause ;

For if the trial of the law o'ertake ye,

You'll part away disgrac'd.

WOLSEY.

He tells you rightly. 96

QUEEN KATHARINE. Ye tell me what ye wish for both ;  
my ruin.

Is this your Christian counsel ? out upon ye !

Heaven is above all yet ; there sits a judge

That no king can corrupt.

CAMPEIUS.

Your rage mistakes us. 100

QUEEN KATHARINE. The more shame for ye ! holy  
men I thought ye,

Upon my soul, two reverend cardinal virtues ;

But cardinal sins and hollow hearts I fear ye.

Mend 'em, for shame ; my lords. Is this your comfort ?

The cordial that ye bring a wretched lady, 105

A woman lost among ye, laugh'd at, scorn'd ?

I will not wish ye half my miseries,



I have more charity; but say, I warn'd ye: 108  
Take heed, for heaven's sake, take heed, lest at once  
The burden of my sorrows fall upon ye.

WOLSEY. Madam, this is a mere distraction;  
You turn the good we offer into envy. 112

QUEEN KATHARINE. Ye turn me into nothing: woe  
upon ye,

And all such false professors! Would ye have me,—  
If ye have any justice, any pity;  
If ye be anything but churchmen's habits,— 116  
Put my sick cause into his hands that hates me?  
Alas! he has banish'd me his bed already,  
His love, too long ago! I am old, my lords,  
And all the fellowship I hold now with him 120  
Is only my obedience. What can happen  
To me above this wretchedness? all your studies  
Make me a curse like this.

CAMPEIUS. Your fears are worse.

QUEEN KATHARINE. Have I liv'd thus long—let me  
speak myself, 124

Since virtue finds no friends—a wife, a true one?  
A woman, I dare say without vain-glory,  
Never yet branded with suspicion?  
Have I with all my full affections 128  
Still met the king? lov'd him next heaven? obey'd him?  
Been, out of fondness, superstitious to him?  
Almost forgot my prayers to content him?  
And am I thus rewarded? 'tis not well, lords. 132  
Bring me a constant woman to her husband,  
One that ne'er dream'd a joy beyond his pleasure,  
And to that woman, when she has done most,  
Yet will I add an honour, a great patience. 136

WOLSEY. Madam, you wander from the good we aim at.

QUEEN KATHARINE. My lord, I dare not make myself  
so guilty,

To give up willingly that noble title  
Your master wed me to: nothing but death 140  
Shall e'er divorce my dignities.

WOLSEY. Pray hear me.

QUEEN KATHARINE. Would I had never trod this  
English earth,  
Or felt the flatteries that grow upon it!  
Ye have angels' faces, but heaven knows your hearts.

What will become of me now, wretched lady? 145  
I am the most unhappy woman living.

[To her women.] \*Alas ! poor wenches, where are now your fortunes ?

Shipwreck'd upon a kingdom, where no pity, 148  
No friends, no hope ; no kindred weep for me ;  
Almost no grave allow'd me. Like the lily,  
That once was mistress of the field and flourish'd,  
I'll hang my head and perish.

WOLSEY. If your Grace 152  
Could but be brought to know our ends are honest,  
You'd feel more comfort. Why should we, good lady,  
Upon what cause, wrong you ? alas ! our places,  
The way of our profession is against it : 156  
We are to cure such sorrows, not to sow them.  
For goodness' sake, consider what you do ;  
How you may hurt yourself, ay, utterly  
Grow from the king's acquaintance, by this carriage.  
The hearts of princes kiss obedience, 161  
So much they love it ; but to stubborn spirits  
They swell, and grow as terrible as storms.  
I know you have a gentle, noble temper, 164  
A soul as even as a calm : pray think us  
Those we profess, peace-makers, friends, and servants.

CAMPEIUS. Madam, you'll find it so. You wrong your virtues

With these weak women's fears : a noble spirit, 168  
As yours was put into you, ever casts  
Such doubts, as false coin, from it. The king loves you ;  
Beware you lose it not : for us, if you please  
To trust us in your business, we are ready 172  
To use our utmost studies in your service.

QUEEN KATHARINE. Do what ye will, my lords : and, pray, forgive me

If I have us'd myself unmannerly.  
You know I am a woman, lacking wit 176  
To make a seemly answer to such persons.

Pray do my service to his majesty :  
He has my heart yet ; and shall have my prayers  
While I shall have my life. Come, reverend fathers,  
Bestow your counsels on me : she now begs 181  
That little thought, when she set footing here,  
She should have bought her dignities so dear. [Exeunt.

SCENE II.—Ante-chamber to the KING's Apartment.

Enter the DUKE OF NORFOLK, the DUKE OF SUFFOLK, the EARL OF SURREY, and the Lord Chamberlain.

NORFOLK. If you will now unite in your complaints,  
And force them with a constancy, the cardinal  
Cannot stand under them: if you omit  
The offer of this time, I cannot promise 4  
But that you shall sustain moe new disgraces  
With these you bear already.

SURREY. I am joyful  
To meet the least occasion that may give me  
Remembrance of my father-in-law, the duke, 8  
To be reveng'd on him.

SUFFOLK. Which of the peers  
Have uncontemn'd gone by him, or at least  
Strangely neglected? when did he regard  
The stamp of nobleness in any person, 12  
Out of himself?

CHAMBERLAIN. My lords, you speak your pleasures:  
What he deserves of you and me, I know;  
What we can do to him,—though now the time  
Gives way to us,—I much fear. If you cannot 16  
Bar his access to the king, never attempt  
Any thing on him, for he hath a witchcraft  
Over the king in's tongue.

NORFOLK. O! fear him not;  
His spell in that is out: the king hath found 20  
Matter against him that for ever mars  
The honey of his language. No, he's settled,  
Not to come off, in his displeasure.

SURREY. Sir,  
I should be glad to hear such news as this 24  
Once every hour.

NORFOLK. Believe it, this is true:  
In the divorce his contrary proceedings  
Are all unfolded; wherein he appears  
As I would wish mine enemy.

SURREY. How came 28  
His practices to light?

SUFFOLK. Most strangely.

SURREY. O! how? how?

SUFFOLK. The cardinal's letter to the pope miscarried,

And came to the eye o' the king ; wherein was read  
That the cardinal did entreat his holiness 32  
To stay the judgment o' the divorce ; for if  
It did take place, ' I do,' quoth he, ' perceive  
My king is tangled in affection to  
A creature of the queen's, Lady Anne Bullen.' 36

SURREY. Has the king this ?

SUFFOLK. Believe it.

SURREY.

Will this work ?

CHAMBERLAIN. The king in this perceives him, how  
he coasts

And hedges his own way. But in this point  
All his tricks founder, and he brings his physic 40  
After his patient's death : the king already  
Hath married the fair lady.

SURREY. Would he had !

SUFFOLK. May you be happy in your wish, my lord !  
For I profess, you have it.

SURREY. Now all my joy 44

Trace the conjunction !

SUFFOLK. My amen to 't !

NORFOLK. All men's.

SUFFOLK. There's order given for her coronation :  
Marry, this is yet but young, and may be left  
To some ears unrecounted. But, my lords, 48  
She is a gallant creature, and complete  
In mind and feature : I persuade me, from her  
Will fall some blessing to this land, which shall  
In it be memoriz'd.

SURREY. But will the king 52  
Digest this letter of the cardinal's ?  
The Lord forbid !

NORFOLK. Marry, amen !

SUFFOLK. No, no ;

There be moe wasps that buzz about his nose 55  
Will make this sting the sooner. Cardinal Campeius  
Is stol'n away to Rome ; hath ta'en no leave ;  
Has left the cause o' the king unhandled ; and  
Is posted, as the agent of our cardinal,  
To second all his plot. I do assure you 60  
The king cried Ha ! at this.

CHAMBERLAIN. Now, God incense him,  
And let him cry Ha ! louder.

- NORFOLK. But, my lord,  
When returns Cranmer ?
- SUFFOLK. He is return'd in his opinions, which 64  
Have satisfied the king for his divorce,  
Together with all famous colleges  
Almost in Christendom. Shortly, I believe,  
His second marriage shall be publish'd, and 68  
Her coronation. Katharine no more  
Shall be call'd queen, but princess dowager,  
And widow to Prince Arthur.
- NORFOLK. This same Cranmer's  
A worthy fellow, and hath ta'en much pain 72  
In the king's business.
- SUFFOLK. He has ; and we shall see him  
For it an archbishop.
- NORFOLK. So I hear.
- SUFFOLK. 'Tis so.  
The cardinal !
- Enter WOLSEY and CROMWELL.
- NORFOLK. Observe, observe ; he's moody.
- WOLSEY. The packet, Cromwell, 76  
Gave't you the king ?
- CROMWELL. To his own hand, in his bedchamber.
- WOLSEY. Look'd he o' the inside of the paper ?
- CROMWELL. Presently  
He did unseal them ; and the first he view'd, 80  
He did it with a serious mind ; a heed  
Was in his countenance. You he bade  
Attend him here this morning.
- WOLSEY. Is he ready  
To come abroad ?
- CROMWELL. I think, by this he is. 84
- WOLSEY. Leave me awhile. [Exit CROMWELL.]
- [Aside.] It shall be to the Duchess of Alençon,  
The French King's sister ; he shall marry her.  
Anne Bullen ! No ; I'll no Anne Bullens for him : 88  
There's more in't than fair visage. Bullen !  
No, we'll no Bullens. Speedily I wish  
To hear from Rome. The Marchioness of Pembroke !
- NORFOLK. He's discontented.
- SUFFOLK. May be he hears the king  
Does whet his anger to him.
- SURREY. Sharp enough, 93

Lord, for thy justice !

WOLSEY. The late queen's gentlewoman, a knight's daughter,

To be her mistress' mistress ! the queen's queen ! 96

This candle burns not clear : 'tis I must snuff it ;

Then, out it goes. What though I know her virtuous

And well deserving ? yet I know her for

A spleeny Lutheran ; and not wholesome to 100

Our cause, that she should lie i' the bosom of

Our hard-rul'd king. Again, there is sprung up

A heretic, an arch one, Cranmer ; one

Hath crawl'd into the favour of the king, 104

And is his oracle.

NORFOLK. He is vex'd at something.

SURREY. I would 'twere something that would fret  
the string,

The master-cord on's heart !

Enter the KING, reading a schedule ; and LOVELL.

SUFFOLK. The king, the king !

KING HENRY. What piles of wealth hath he accumu-  
lated 108

To his own portion ! and what expense by the hour

Seems to flow from him ! How, i' the name of thrift,

Does he rake this together ? Now, my lords,

Saw you the cardinal ?

NORFOLK. My lord, we have 112

Stood here observing him ; some strange commotion

Is in his brain : he bites his lip, and starts ;

Stops on a sudden, looks upon the ground,

Then lays his finger on his temple ; straight 116

Springs out into fast gait ; then stops again,

Strikes his breast hard ; and anon he casts

His eye against the moon : in most strange postures

We have seen him set himself.

KING HENRY. It may well be : 120

There is a mutiny in's mind. This morning

Papers of state he sent me to peruse,

As I requir'd ; and wot you what I found

There, on my conscience, put unwittingly ? 124

Forsooth, an inventory, thus importing ;

The several parcels of his plate, his treasure,

Rich stuffs and ornaments of household, which



SURREY. [Aside.] The Lord increase this business!

KING HENRY. Have I not made you  
The prime man of the state? I pray you, tell me  
If what I now pronounce you have found true; 164  
And if you may confess it, say withal,  
If you are bound to us or no. What say you?

WOLSEY. My sovereign, I confess your royal graces,  
Shower'd on me daily, have been more than could 169  
My studied purposes requite; which went  
Beyond all man's endeavours: my endeavours  
Have ever come too short of my desires,  
Yet fil'd with my abilities. Mine own ends 172  
Have been mine so, that evermore they pointed  
To the good of your most sacred person and  
The profit of the state. For your great graces  
Heap'd upon me, poor undeserver, I 176  
Can nothing render but allegiant thanks,  
My prayers to heaven for you, my loyalty,  
Which ever has and ever shall be growing,  
Till death, that winter, kill it.

KING HENRY. Fairly answer'd; 180  
A loyal and obedient subject is  
Therein illustrated; the honour of it  
Does pay the act of it, as, i' the contrary,  
The foulness is the punishment. I presume 184  
That as my hand has open'd bounty to you,  
My heart dropp'd love, my power rain'd honour, more  
On you than any; so your hand and heart,  
Your brain, and every function of your power, 188  
Should, notwithstanding that your bond of duty,  
As 'twere in love's particular, be more  
To me, your friend, than any.

WOLSEY. I do profess,  
That for your highness' good I ever labour'd 192  
More than mine own; that am, have, and will be—  
Though all the world should crack their duty to you,  
And throw it from their soul; though perils did  
Abound as thick as thought could make 'em, and 196  
Appear in forms more horrid, yet my duty,  
As doth a rock against the chiding flood,  
Should the approach of this wild river break,  
And stand unshaken yours.

KING HENRY. 'Tis nobly spoken. 200



Take notice, lords, he has a loyal breast,  
For you have seen him open 't. Read o'er this ;

[Giving him papers.

And after, this : and then to breakfast with 203  
What appetite you have.

[Exit KING, frowning upon CARDINAL WOLSEY ; the Nobles throng after him, smiling, and whispering.

WOLSEY.

What should this mean ?

What sudden anger 's this ? how have I reap'd it ?

He parted frowning from me, as if ruin

Leap'd from his eyes : so looks the chafed lion\*

Upon the daring huntsman that has gall'd him ; 208

Then makes him nothing. I must read this paper ;

I fear, the story of his anger. 'Tis so ;

This paper has undone me ! 'Tis the account

Of all that world of wealth I have drawn together 212

For mine own ends ; indeed, to gain the popedom,

And fee my friends in Rome. O negligence !

Fit for a fool to fall by : what cross devil

Made me put this main secret in the packet 216

I sent the king ? Is there no way to cure this ?

No new device to beat this from his brains ?

I know 'twill stir him strongly ; yet I know

A way, if it take right, in spite of fortune 220

Will bring me off again. What 's this ?—'To the Pope !'

The letter, as I live, with all the business

I writ to 's holiness. Nay then, farewell !

I have touch'd the highest point of all my greatness ;

And from that full meridian of my glory, 225

I haste now to my setting : I shall fall

Like a bright exhalation in the evening,

And no man see me more. 228

Re-enter the DUKES OF NORFOLK and SUFFOLK, the EARL OF SURREY,  
and the Lord Chamberlain.

NORFOLK. Hear the king's pleasure, cardinal : who  
commands you

To render up the great seal presently

Into our hands ; and to confine yourself

To Asher-house, my Lord of Winchester's, 232

Till you hear further from his highness.

WOLSEY.

Stay,

Where 's your commission, lord ? words cannot carry  
Authority so weighty.

SCENE II] KING HENRY THE EIGHTH

SUFFOLK. Who dare cross 'em, 235  
Bearing the king's will from his mouth expressly ?

WOLSEY. Till I find more than will or words to do it,  
I mean your malice, know, officious lords,  
I dare and must deny it. Now I feel  
Of what coarse metal ye are moulded, envy : 240  
How eagerly ye follow my disgraces,  
As if it fed ye ! and how sleek and wanton  
Ye appear in every thing may bring my ruin !  
Follow your envious courtes, men of malice ; 244  
You have Christian warrant for 'em, and, no doubt,  
In time will find their fit rewards. That seal  
You ask with such a violence, the king— 247  
Mine and your master—with his own hand gave me ;  
Bade me enjoy it with the place and honours  
During my life ; and to confirm his goodness,  
Tied it by letters-patents : now who'll take it ? 251

SURREY. The king, that gave it.

WOLSEY. It must be himself then.

SURREY. Thou art a proud traitor, priest.

WOLSEY. Proud lord, thou liest :  
Within these forty hours Surrey durst better  
Have burnt that tongue than said so.

SURREY. Thy ambition,  
Thou scarlet sin, robb'd this bewailing land 256  
Of noble Buckingham, my father-in-law :  
The heads of all thy brother cardinals—  
With thee and all thy best parts bound together—  
Weigh'd not a hair of his. Plague of your policy !  
You sent me deputy for Ireland, 261  
Far from his succour, from the king, from all  
That might have mercy on the fault thou gavest him ;  
Whilst your great goodness, out of holy pity, 264  
Absolv'd him with an axe.

WOLSEY. This, and all else  
This talking lord can lay upon my credit,  
I answer, is most false. The duke by law 268  
Found his deserts : how innocent I was  
From any private malice in his end,  
His noble jury and foul cause can witness.  
If I lov'd many words, lord, I should tell you,  
You have as little honesty as honour, 272  
That in the way of loyalty and truth

Toward the king, my ever royal master,  
Dare mate a sounder man than Surrey can be,  
And all that love his follies.

SURREY. By my soul, 276  
Your long coat, priest, protects you; thou shouldst feel  
My sword i' the life-blood of thee else. My lords,  
Can ye endure to hear this arrogance?  
And from this fellow? If we live thus tamely, 280  
To be thus jaded by a piece of scarlet,  
Farewell nobility; let his Grace go forward,  
And dare us with his cap like larks.

WOLSEY. All goodness  
Is poison to thy stomach.

SURREY. Yes, that goodness 284  
Of gleanings all the land's wealth into one,  
Into your own hands, cardinal, by extortion;  
The goodness of your intercepted packets,  
You writ to the pope against the king; your goodness,  
Since you provoke me, shall be most notorious. 289  
My Lord of Norfolk, as you are truly noble,  
As you respect the common good, the state  
Of our despis'd nobility, our issues, 292  
Who, if he live, will scarce be gentlemen,  
Produce the grand sum of his sins, the articles  
Collected from his life; I'll startle you  
Worse than the sacring bell, when the brown wench  
Lay kissing in your arms, Lord Cardinal. 297

WOLSEY. How much, methinks, I could despise this  
man,  
But that I am bound in charity against it!  
NORFOLK. Those articles, my lord, are in the king's  
hand; 300  
But, thus much, they are foul ones.

WOLSEY. So much fairer  
And spotless shall mine innocence arise  
When the king knows my truth.

SURREY. This cannot save you:  
I thank my memory, I yet remember 304  
Some of these articles; and out they shall.  
Now, if you can blush, and cry 'guilty', cardinal,  
You'll show a little honesty.

WOLSEY. Speak on, sir;  
I dare your worst objection; if I blush, 308

It is to see a nobleman want manners.

SURREY. I had rather want those than my heart. Leave  
at you !

First, that, without the king's assent or knowledge,  
You wrought to be a legate ; by which power 312  
You maim'd the jurisdiction of all bishops.

NORFOLK. Then, that in all you writ to Rome, or else  
To foreign princes, ' Ego et Rex meus ' 315  
Was still inscrib'd ; in which you brought the king  
To be your servant.

SUFFOLK. Then, that without the knowledge  
Either of king or council, when you went  
Ambassador to the emperor, you made bold  
To carry into Flanders the great seal. 320

SURREY. Item, you sent a large commission  
To Gregory de Cassado, to conclude,  
Without the king's will or the state's allowance,  
A league between his highness and Ferrara. 324

SUFFOLK. That, out of mere ambition, you have caus'd  
Your holy hat to be stamp'd on the king's coin.

SURREY. Then, that you have sent innumerable sub-  
stance,—  
By what means got I leave to your own conscience,—  
To furnish Rome, and to prepare the ways 329  
You have for dignities ; to the mere undoing  
Of all the kingdom. Many more there are ;  
Which, since they are of you, and odious, 332  
I will not taint my mouth with.

CHAMBERLAIN. O my lord !  
Press not a falling man too far ; 'tis virtue :  
His faults lie open to the laws ; let them,  
Not you, correct him. My heart weeps to see him 336  
So little of his great self.

SURREY. I forgive him.

SUFFOLK. Lord Cardinal, the king's further pleasure is,  
Because all those things you have done of late,  
By your power legatine, within this kingdom, 340  
Fall into the compass of a præmunire,  
That therefore such a writ be su'd against you ;  
To forfeit all your goods, lands, tenements,  
Chattels, and whatsoever, and to be 344  
Out of the king's protection. This is my charge.

NORFOLK. And so we'll leave you to your meditations

How to live better. For your stubborn answer  
 About the giving back the great seal to us, 348  
 The king shall know it, and, no doubt, shall thank you.  
 So fare you well, my little good Lord Cardinal.

[Exeunt all except WOLSEY.]

WOLSEY. So farewell to the little good you bear me.  
 Farewell ! a long farewell, to all my greatness ! 352  
 This is the state of man : to-day he puts forth  
 The tender leaves of hopes ; to-morrow blossoms,  
 And bears his blushing honours thick upon him ;  
 The third day comes a frost, a killing frost ; 356  
 And, when he thinks, good easy man, full surely  
 His greatness is a-ripening, nips his root,  
 And then he falls, as I do. I have ventur'd,  
 Like little wanton boys that swim on bladders, 360  
 This many summers in a sea of glory,  
 But far beyond my depth : my high-blown pride  
 At length broke under me, and now has left me,  
 Weary and old with service, to the mercy 364  
 Of a rude stream, that must for ever hide me.  
 Vain pomp and glory of this world, I hate ye :  
 I feel my heart new open'd. O ! how wretched  
 Is that poor man that hangs on princes' favours ! 368  
 There is, betwixt that smile we would aspire to,  
 That sweet aspect of princes, and their ruin,  
 More pangs and fears than wars or women have ;  
 And when he falls, he falls like Lucifer, 372  
 Never to hope again.

Enter CROMWELL, and stands amazed.

Why, how now, Cromwell !

CROMWELL. I have no power to speak, sir.

WOLSEY.

What ! amaz'd

At my misfortunes ? can thy spirit wonder  
 A great man should decline ? Nay, an you weep, 376  
 I am fall'n indeed.

CROMWELL.

How does your Grace ?

WOLSEY.

Why, well ;

Never so truly happy, my good Cromwell.  
 I know myself now ; and I feel within me  
 A peace above all earthly dignities, 380  
 A still and quiet conscience. The king has cur'd me,  
 I humbly thank his Grace ; and from these shoulders,  
 These ruin'd pillars, out of pity taken

A load would sink a navy, too much honour : 384  
O ! 'tis a burden, Cromwell, 'tis a burden  
Too heavy for a man that hopes for heaven.

CROMWELL. I am glad your Grace has made that  
right use of it.

WOLSEY. I hope I have : I am able now, methinks,—  
Out of a fortitude of soul I feel,— 389

To endure more miseries and greater far  
Than my weak-hearted enemies dare offer.

What news abroad ?

CROMWELL. The heaviest and the worst,  
Is your displeasure with the king.

WOLSEY. God bless him !

CROMWELL. The next is, that Sir Thomas More is chosen.  
Lord Chancellor in your place.

WOLSEY. That's somewhat sudden :  
But he's a learned man. May he continue 396  
Long in his highness' favour, and do justice  
For truth's sake and his conscience ; that his bones,  
When he has run his course and sleeps in blessings,  
May have a tomb of orphans' tears wept on 'em ! 400  
What more ?

CROMWELL. That Cranmer is return'd with welcome,  
Install'd Lord Archbishop of Canterbury.

WOLSEY. That's news indeed.

CROMWELL. Last, that the Lady Anne,  
Whom the king hath in secrecy long married, 404  
This day was view'd in open as his queen,  
Going to chapel ; and the voice is now  
Only about her coronation.

WOLSEY. There was the weight that pull'd me down.

O Cromwell ! 408

The king has gone beyond me : all my glories  
In that one woman I have lost for ever.  
No sun shall ever usher forth mine honours,  
Or gild again the noble troops that waited 412  
Upon my smiles. Go, get thee from me, Cromwell ;  
I am a poor fall'n man, unworthy now  
To be thy lord and master : seek the king ;— 415  
That sun, I pray, may never set !—I have told him  
What, and how true thou art : he will advance thee ;  
Some little memory of me will stir him—  
I know his noble nature—not to let

Thy hopeful service perish too. Good Cromwell, 420  
Neglect him not; make use now, and provide  
For thine own future safety.

CROMWELL.

O my lord!

Must I then leave you? must I needs forego 424  
So good, so noble, and so true a master?

Bear witness all that have not hearts of iron,  
With what a sorrow Cromwell leaves his lord.  
The king shall have my service; but my prayers  
For ever and for ever shall be yours. 428

WOLSEY. Cromwell, I did not think to shed a tear

In all my miseries; but thou hast forc'd me,

Out of thy honest truth, to play the woman.

Let's dry our eyes: and thus far hear me, Cromwell;

And, when I am forgotten, as I shall be, 433

And sleep in dull cold marble, where no mention

Of me more must be heard of, say, I taught thee, 436

Say, Wolsey, that once trod the ways of glory,

And sounded all the depths and shoals of honour,

Found thee a way, out of his wrack, to rise in;

A sure and safe one, though thy master miss'd it.

Mark but my fall, and that that ruin'd me. 440

Cromwell, I charge thee, fling away ambition:

By that sin fell the angels; how can man then,

The image of his Maker, hope to win by it?

Love thyself last: cherish those hearts that hate thee;

Corruption wins not more than honesty. 445

Still in thy right hand carry gentle peace,

To silence envious tongues: be just, and fear not.

Let all the ends thou aim'st at be thy country's, 448

Thy God's, and truth's; then if thou fall'st, O Cromwell!

Thou fall'st a blessed martyr. Serve the king;

And,—prithee, lead me in:

There take an inventory of all I have, 452

To the last penny; 'tis the king's: my robe,

And my integrity to heaven is all

I dare now call mine own. O Cromwell, Cromwell!

Had I but served my God with half the zeal 456

I serv'd my king, he would not in mine age

Have left me naked to mine enemies.

CROMWELL. Good sir, have patience.

WOLSEY.

So I have. Farewell

The hopes of court! my hopes in heaven do dwell. [Exeunt.

ACT IV.

SCENE I.—A Street in Westminster.

Enter two Gentlemen, meeting.

FIRST GENTLEMAN. You're well met once again.

SECOND GENTLEMAN. So are you.

FIRST GENTLEMAN. You come to take your stand  
here, and behold

The Lady Anne pass from her coronation ?

SECOND GENTLEMAN. 'Tis all my business. At our  
last encounter 4

The Duke of Buckingham came from his trial.

FIRST GENTLEMAN. 'Tis very true : but that time  
offer'd sorrow ;

This, general joy.

SECOND GENTLEMAN. 'Tis well : the citizens,  
I am sure, have shown at full their royal minds, 8  
As, let 'em have their rights, they are ever forward,  
In celebration of this day with shows,  
Pageants, and sights of honour.

FIRST GENTLEMAN. Never greater ;  
Nor, I'll assure you, better taken, sir. 12

SECOND GENTLEMAN. May I be bold to ask what that  
contains,

That paper in your hand ?

FIRST GENTLEMAN. Yes ; 'tis the list  
Of those that claim their offices this day  
By custom of the coronation. 16

The Duke of Suffolk is the first, and claims  
To be high-steward ; next, the Duke of Norfolk,  
He to be earl marshal : you may read the rest.

SECOND GENTLEMAN. I thank you, sir : had I not  
known those customs, 20  
I should have been beholding to your paper.

But, I beseech you, what's become of Katharine,  
The princess dowager ? how goes her business ?

FIRST GENTLEMAN. That I can tell you too. The  
Archbishop 24

Of Canterbury, accompanied with other  
Learned and reverend fathers of his order,  
Held a late court at Dunstable, six miles off  
From Ampthill, where the princess lay ; to which 28



She was often cited by them, but appear'd not :  
 And, to be short, for not appearance and  
 The king's late scruple, by the main assent  
 Of all these learned men she was divorc'd, 32  
 And the late marriage made of none effect :  
 Since which she was remov'd to Kimbolton,  
 Where she remains now sick.

SECOND GENTLEMAN.

Alas ! good lady !

The trumpets sound : stand close, the queen is coming. [Trumpets.  
 [Hautboys.

THE ORDER OF THE CORONATION.

A lively flourish of trumpets.

1. Two Judges.
2. Lord Chancellor, with the purse and mace before him.
3. Choristers, singing. [Music.
4. Mayor of London, bearing the mace. Then Garter, in his coat of arms, and on his head a gilt copper crown.
5. MARQUESS DORSET, bearing a sceptre of gold, on his head a demi-coronal of gold. With him, the EARL OF SURREY, bearing the rod of silver with the dove, crowned with an earl's coronet. Collars of SS.
6. DUKE OF SUFFOLK, in his robe of estate, his coronet on his head, bearing a long white wand, as high-steward. With him, the DUKE OF NORFOLK, with the rod of marshalship, a coronet on his head. Collars of SS.
7. A canopy borne by four of the Cinque-ports ; under it, the QUEEN in her robe ; in her hair richly adorned with pearl, crowned. On each side of her, the BISHOPS OF LONDON and WINCHESTER.
8. The old DUCHESS OF NORFOLK, in a coronal of gold, wrought with flowers, bearing the QUEEN's train.
9. Certain Ladies or Countesses, with plain circlets of gold without flowers.

They pass over the stage in order and state.

SECOND GENTLEMAN. A royal train, believe me. These  
 I know ; 37

Who's that that bears the sceptre ?

FIRST GENTLEMAN. Marquess Dorset :  
 And that the Earl of Surrey with the rod.

SECOND GENTLEMAN. A bold brave gentleman. That  
 should be 40  
 The Duke of Suffolk ?

FIRST GENTLEMAN. 'Tis the same ; high-steward.

SECOND GENTLEMAN. And that my Lord of Norfolk ?

FIRST GENTLEMAN. Yes.

SECOND GENTLEMAN. [Looking on the QUEEN.] Heaven bless thee !

Thou hast the sweetest face I ever look'd on.  
 Sir, as I have a soul, she is an angel ; 44  
 Our king has all the Indies in his arms,  
 And more and richer, when he strains that lady :  
 I cannot blame his conscience.

FIRST GENTLEMAN. They that bear  
 The cloth of honour over her, are four baron ; 48  
 Of the Cinque-ports.

SECOND GENTLEMAN. Those men are happy ; and so  
 are all are near her.

I take it, she that carries up the train  
 Is that old noble lady, Duchess of Norfolk. 52

FIRST GENTLEMAN. It is ; and all the rest are countesses.

SECOND GENTLEMAN. Their coronets say so. These  
 are stars indeed ;  
 And sometimes falling ones.

FIRST GENTLEMAN. No more of that.

[Exit Procession, with a great flourish of trumpets.

Enter a third Gentleman.

God save you, sir ! Where have you been broiling ?

THIRD GENTLEMAN. Among the crowd i' the Abbey ;  
 where a finger 57

Could not be wedg'd in more : I am stifled  
 With the mere rankness of their joy.

SECOND GENTLEMAN. You saw

The ceremony ?

THIRD GENTLEMAN. That I did.

FIRST GENTLEMAN. How was it ? 60

THIRD GENTLEMAN. Well worth the seeing.

SECOND GENTLEMAN. Good sir, speak it to us.

THIRD GENTLEMAN. As well as I am able. The rich  
 stream

Of lords and ladies, having brought the queen  
 To a prepar'd place in the choir, fell off 64  
 A distance from her ; while her Grace sat down  
 To rest awhile, some half an hour or so,  
 In a rich chair of state, opposing freely  
 The beauty of her person to the people. 68  
 Believe me, sir, she is the goodliest woman

That ever lay by man : which when the people  
 Had the full view of, such a noise arose  
 As the shrouds make at sea in a stiff tempest, 72  
 As loud, and to as many tunes : hats, cloaks,—  
 Doublets, I think,—flew'up ; and had their faces  
 Been loose, this day they had been lost. Such joy  
 I never saw before. Great-bellied women, 76  
 That had not half a week to go, like rams  
 In the old time of war, would shake the press,  
 And make 'em reel before 'em. No man living  
 Could say, 'This is my wife,' there ; all were woven  
 So strangely in one piece.

SECOND GENTLEMAN. But what follow'd ? 81

THIRD GENTLEMAN. At length her Grace rose, and  
 with modest paces  
 Came to the altar ; where she kneel'd, and, saint-like,  
 Cast her fair eyes to heaven and pray'd devoutly. 84  
 Then rose again and bow'd her to the people :  
 When by the Archbishop of Canterbury  
 She had all the royal makings of a queen ;  
 As holy oil, Edward Confessor's crown, 88  
 The rod, and bird of peace, and all such emblems  
 Laid nobly on her : which perform'd, the choir,  
 With all the choicest music of the kingdom,  
 Together sung Te Deum. So she parted, 92  
 And with the same full state pac'd back again  
 To York-place, where the feast is held.

FIRST GENTLEMAN. Sir,  
 You must no more call it York-place, that's past ;  
 For, since the cardinal fell, that title's lost : 96  
 'Tis now the king's, and call'd Whitehall.

THIRD GENTLEMAN. I know it ;  
 But 'tis so lately alter'd that the old name  
 Is fresh about me.

SECOND GENTLEMAN. What two reverend bishops  
 Were those that went on each side of the queen ? 100

THIRD GENTLEMAN. Stokesly and Gardiner ; the one  
 of Winchester,—

Newly prefer'd from the king's secretary,—  
 The other, London.

SECOND GENTLEMAN. He of Winchester  
 Is held no great good lover of the archbishop's, 104  
 The virtuous Cranmer.

THIRD GENTLEMAN. All the land knows that :  
However, yet there's no great breach ; when it comes,  
Cranmer will find a friend will not shrink from him.

SECOND GENTLEMAN. Who may that be, I pray you ?

THIRD GENTLEMAN. Thomas Cromwell :  
A man in much esteem with the king, and truly 109  
A worthy friend. The king  
Has made him master o' the jewel house,  
And one, already, of the privy council. 112

SECOND GENTLEMAN. He will deserve more.

THIRD GENTLEMAN. Yes, without all doubt.  
Come, gentlemen, ye shall go my way, which  
Is to the court, and there ye shall be my guests :  
Something I can command. As I walk thither, 116  
I'll tell ye more.

BOTH. You may command us, sir. [Exeunt.

## SCENE II.—Kimbolton.

Enter KATHARINE, Dowager, sick : led between GRIFFITH and  
PATIENCE.

GRIFFITH. How does your Grace ?

KATHARINE. O Griffith ! sick to death !  
My legs, like loaden branches, bow to the earth,  
Willing to leave their burden. Reach a chair :  
So ; now, methinks, I feel a little ease. 4  
Didst thou not tell me, Griffith, as thou ledd'st me,  
That the great child of honour, Cardinal Wolsey,  
Was dead ?

GRIFFITH. Yes, madam ; but I think your Grace,  
Out of the pain you suffer'd, gave no ear to 't. 8

KATHARINE. Prithee, good Griffith, tell me how he died :  
If well, he stepp'd before me, happily,  
For my example.

GRIFFITH. Well, the voice goes, madam :  
For after the stout Earl Northumberland 12  
Arrested him at York, and brought him forward,  
As a man sorely tainted, to his answer,  
He fell sick suddenly, and grew so ill  
He could not sit his mule.

KATHARINE. Alas ! poor man. 16

GRIFFITH. At last, with easy roads, he came to  
Leicester ;

Lodg'd in the abbey, where the reverend abbot,  
 With all his covent, honourably receiv'd him :  
 To whom he gave these words : ' O ! father abbot, 20  
 An old man, broken with the storms of state,  
 Is come to lay his weary bones among ye ;  
 Give him a little earth for charity.'  
 So went to bed, where eagerly his sickness 24  
 Pursu'd him still ; and three nights after this,  
 About the hour of eight,—which he himself  
 Foretold should be his last,—full of repentance,  
 Continual meditations, tears, and sorrows, 28  
 He gave his honours to the world again,  
 His blessed part to heaven, and slept in peace.

KATHARINE. So may he rest ; his faults lie gently on  
 him !

Yet thus far, Griffith, give me leave to speak him, 32  
 And yet with charity. He was a man  
 Of an unbounded stomach, ever ranking  
 Himself with princes ; one, that by suggestion  
 Tied all the kingdom ; simony was fair-play ; 36  
 His own opinion was his law ; i' the presence  
 He would say untruths, and be ever double  
 Both in his words and meaning. He was never,  
 But where he meant to ruin, pitiful ; 40  
 His promises were, as he then was, mighty ;  
 But his performance, as he is now, nothing :  
 Of his own body he was ill, and gave  
 The clergy ill example.

GRIFFITH. Noble madam, 44  
 Men's evil manners live in brass ; their virtues  
 We write in water. May it please your highness  
 To hear me speak his good now ?

KATHARINE. Yes, good Griffith,  
 I were malicious else.

GRIFFITH. This cardinal, 48  
 Though from a humble stock, undoubtedly  
 Was fashion'd to much honour from his cradle.  
 He was a scholar, and a ripe and good one ;  
 Exceeding wise, fair-spoken, and persuading ; 52  
 Lofty and sour to them that lov'd him not ;  
 But, to those men that sought him sweet as summer.  
 And though he were unsatisfied in getting,—  
 Which was a sin,—yet in bestowing, madam, 56

He was most princely. Ever witness for him  
 Those twins of learning that he rais'd in you,  
 Ipswich, and Oxford ! one of which fell with him,  
 Unwilling to outlive the good that did it ; 30  
 The other, though unfinish'd, yet so famous,  
 So excellent in art, and still so rising,  
 That Christendom shall ever speak his virtue.  
 His overthrow heap'd happiness upon him ; 64  
 For then, and not till then, he felt himself,  
 And found the blessedness of being little :  
 And, to add greater honours to his age  
 Than man could give him, he died fearing God. 68

KATHARINE. After my death I wish no other herald,  
 No other speaker of my living actions,  
 To keep mine honour from corruption,  
 But such an honest chronicler as Griffith. 72  
 Whom I most hated living, thou hast made me,  
 With thy religious truth and modesty,  
 Now in his ashes honour. Peace be with him !  
 Patience, be near me still ; and set me lower : 76  
 I have not long to trouble thee. Good Griffith,  
 Cause the musicians play me that sad note  
 I nam'd my knell, whilst I sit meditating  
 On that celestial harmony I go to. [Sad and solemn music.

GRIFFITH. She is asleep : good wench, let's sit down  
 quiet, 81  
 For fear we wake her : softly, gentle Patience.

The Vision. Enter, solemnly tripping one after another, six Personages, clad in white robes, wearing on their heads garlands of bays, and golden vizards on their faces ; branches of bays or palm in their hands. They first congee unto her, then dance ; and, at certain changes, the first two hold a spare garland over her head ; at which, the other four make reverend curtsies : then, the two that held the garland deliver the same to the other next two, who observe the same order in their changes, and holding the garland over her head : which done, they deliver the same garland to the last two, who likewise observe the same order, at which,—as it were by inspiration,—she makes in her sleep signs of rejoicing, and holdeth up her hands to heaven : and so in their dancing they vanish, carrying the garland with them. The music continues.

KATHARINE. Spirits of peace, where are ye ? Are ye  
 all gone,  
 And leave me here in wretchedness behind ye ? 84

GRIFFITH. Madam, we are here.

KATHARINE. It is not you I call for :  
Saw ye none enter since I slept ?

GRIFFITH. None, madam.

KATHARINE. No ? Saw you not, even now, a blessed  
troop

Invite me to a banquet ; whose bright faces 88

Cast thousand beams upon me, like the sun ?

They promis'd me eternal happiness,

And brought me garlands, Griffith, which I feel

I am not worthy yet to wear : I shall, assuredly. 92

GRIFFITH. I am most joyful, madam, such good dreams  
Possess your fancy.

KATHARINE. Bid the music leave,  
They are harsh and heavy to me. [Music ceases.

PATIENCE. Do you note  
How much her Grace is alter'd on the sudden ? 96

How long her face is drawn ? How pale she looks,

And of an earthy cold ? Mark her eyes !

GRIFFITH. She is going, wench. Pray, pray.

PATIENCE. Heaven comfort her ! 100

Enter a Messenger.

MESSENGER. An't like your Grace,—

KATHARINE. You are a saucy fellow :  
Deserve we no more reverence ?

GRIFFITH. You are to blame,  
Knowing she will not lose her wonted greatness,  
To use so rude behaviour ; go to, kneel. 104

MESSENGER. I humbly do entreat your highness'  
pardon ;

My haste made me unmannerly. There is staying  
A gentleman, sent from the king, to see you.

KATHARINE. Admit him entrance, Griffith : but this  
fellow 108

Let me ne'er see again. [Exeunt GRIFFITH and Messenger.

Re-enter GRIFFITH, with CAPUCIUS.

If my sight fail not,  
You should be lord ambassador from the emperor,  
My royal nephew, and your name Capucius.

CAPUCIUS. Madam, the same ; your servant.

KATHARINE. O my lord !

The times and titles now are alter'd strangely 113  
With me since first you knew me. But, I pray you,  
What is your pleasure with me ?

CAPUCIUS. Noble lady,  
First, mine own service to your Grace ; the next, 116  
The king's request that I would visit you ;  
Who grieves much for your weakness, and by me  
Sends you his princely commendations,  
And heartily entreats you take good comfort. 120

KATHARINE. O ! my good lord, that comfort comes  
too late ;

'Tis like a pardon after execution :  
That gentle physic, given in time, had cur'd me ;  
But now I am past all comforts here but prayers. 124  
How does his highness ?

CAPUCIUS. Madam, in good health.  
KATHARINE. So may he ever do ! and ever flourish,  
When I shall dwell with worms, and my poor name  
Banish'd the kingdom. Patience, is that letter 128  
I caus'd you write, yet sent away ?

PATIENCE. No, madam.  
[Giving it to KATHARINE.

KATHARINE. Sir, I most humbly pray you to deliver  
This to my lord the king.

CAPUCIUS. Most willing, madam.  
KATHARINE. In which I have commended to his  
goodness 132

The model of our chaste loves, his young daughter,—  
The dew of heaven fall thick in blessings on her !  
Beseeching him to give her virtuous breeding,—  
She is young, and of a noble modest nature, 136  
I hope she will deserve well,—and a little  
To love her for her mother's sake, that lov'd him,  
Heaven knows how dearly. My next poor petition  
Is, that his noble Grace would have some pity 140  
Upon my wretched women, that so long  
Have follow'd both my fortunes faithfully :  
Of which there is not one, I dare avow,—  
And now I should not lie,—but will deserve, 144  
For virtue, and true beauty of the soul,  
For honesty and decent carriage,  
A right good husband, let him be a noble ;  
And, sure, those men are happy that shall have 'em.



922. KING HENRY THE EIGHTH [ACT IV, SC. II

The last is, for my men : they are the poorest, 149  
 But poverty could never draw 'em from me ;  
 That they may have their wages duly paid 'em,  
 And something over to remember me by : 152  
 If heaven had pleas'd to have given me longer life  
 And able means, we had not parted thus.  
 These are the whole contents : and, good my lord,  
 By that you love the dearest in this world, 156  
 As you wish Christian peace to souls departed,  
 Stand these poor people's friend, and urge the king  
 To do me this last right.

CAPUCIUS. By heaven, I will,  
 Or let me lose the fashion of a man ! 160

KATHARINE. I thank you, honest lord. Remember me  
 In all humility unto his highness :  
 Say his long trouble now is passing  
 Out of this world ; tell him, in death I bless'd him,  
 For so I will. Mine eyes grow dim. Farewell, 165  
 My lord. Griffith, farewell. Nay, Patience,  
 You must not leave me yet : I must to bed ;  
 Call in more women. When I am dead, good wench,  
 Let me be us'd with honour : strew me over 169  
 With maiden flowers, that all the world may know  
 I was a chaste wife to my grave : embalm me,  
 Then lay me forth : although unqueen'd, yet like 172  
 A queen, and daughter to a king, inter me.  
 I can no more. [Exeunt, leading KATHARINE.

ACT V.

SCENE I.—London. A Gallery in the Palace.

Enter GARDINER, Bishop of Winchester, a Page with a torch before  
 him, met by SIR THOMAS LOVELL.

GARDINER. It's one o'clock, boy, is 't not ?

BOY.

It hath struck.

GARDINER. These should be hours for necessities,  
 Not for delights ; times to repair our nature  
 With comforting repose, and not for us 4  
 To waste these times. Good hour of night, Sir Thomas !  
 Whither so late ?

LOVELL. Came you from the king, my lord ?

GARDINER. I did, Sir Thomas ; and left him at  
 primero

With the Duke of Suffolk.

LOVELL. I must to him too, 8  
Before he go to bed. I'll take my leave.

GARDINER. Not yet, Sir Thomas Lovell. What's the matter ?

It seems you are in haste : an if there be  
No great offence belongs to 't, give your friend 12  
Some touch of your late business : affairs that walk—  
As they say spirits do—at midnight, have  
In them a wilder nature than the business  
That seeks dispatch by day.

LOVELL. My lord, I love you, 16  
And durst commend a secret to your ear  
Much weightier than this work. The queen's in labour,  
They say, in great extremity ; and fear'd  
She'll with the labour end.

GARDINER. The fruit she goes with  
I pray for heartily, that it may find 21  
Good time, and live : but for the stock, Sir Thomas,  
I wish it grubb'd up now.

LOVELL. Methinks I could  
Cry the amen ; and yet my conscience says 24  
She's a good creature, and, sweet lady, does  
Deserve our better wishes.

GARDINER. But, sir, sir,  
Hear me, Sir Thomas : you're a gentleman  
Of mine own way ; I know you wise, religious ; 28  
And, let me tell you, it will ne'er be well,  
'Twill not, Sir Thomas Lovell, take 't of me,  
Till Cranmer, Cromwell, her two hands, and she,  
Sleep in their graves.

LOVELL. Now, sir, you speak of two 32  
The most remark'd i' the kingdom. As for Cromwell,  
Beside that of the jewel-house, is made master  
O' the rolls, and the king's secretary ; further, sir,  
Stands in the gap and trade of moe preferments, 36  
With which the time will load him. The archbishop  
Is the king's hand and tongue ; and who dare speak  
One syllable against him ?

GARDINER. Yes, yes, Sir Thomas,  
There are that dare ; and I myself have ventur'd 40  
To speak my mind of him : and indeed this day,  
Sir,—I may tell it you,—I think I have

Incens'd the lords o' the council that he is—  
 For so I know he is, they know he is— 44  
 A most arch-heretic, a pestilence  
 That does infect the land : with which they mov'd  
 Have broken with the king ; who hath so far  
 Given ear to our complaint,—of his great grace 48  
 And princely care, foreseeing those fell mischiefs  
 Our reasons laid before him,—hath commanded  
 To-morrow morning to the council-board  
 He be convented. He's a rank weed, Sir Thomas, 52  
 And we must root him out. From your affairs  
 I hinder you too long : good night, Sir Thomas !  
 LOVELL. Many good nights, my lord. I rest your  
 servant. [Exeunt GARDINER and Page.

Enter the KING and SUFFOLK.

KING HENRY. Charles, I will play no more to-night ;  
 My mind's not on't ; you are too hard for me. 57

SUFFOLK. Sir, I did never win of you before.

KING HENRY. But little, Charles ;  
 Nor shall not when my fancy's on my play. 60  
 Now, Lovell, from the queen what is the news ?

LOVELL. I could not personally deliver to her  
 What you commanded me, but by her woman  
 I sent your message ; who return'd her thanks 64  
 In the great'st humbleness, and desir'd your highness  
 Most heartily to pray for her.

KING HENRY. What sayst thou, ha ?  
 To pray for her ? what ! is she crying out ?

LOVELL. So said her woman ; and that her sufferance  
 made 68  
 Almost each pang a death.

KING HENRY. Alas ! good lady.

SUFFOLK. God safely quit her of her burden, and  
 With gentle travail, to the gladding of  
 Your highness with an heir !

KING HENRY. 'Tis midnight, Charles ;  
 Prithce, to bed ; and in thy prayers remember 73  
 The estate of my poor queen. Leave me alone ;  
 For I must think of that which company  
 Would not be friendly to.

SUFFOLK. I wish your highness 76  
 A quiet night ; and my good mistress will

Remember in my prayers.

KING HENRY.

Charles, good night.

[Exit SUFFOLK.]

Enter SIR ANTHONY DENNY.

Well, sir, what follows?

DENNY. Sir, I have brought my lord the archbishop,  
As you commanded me.

KING HENRY. Ha! Canterbury? 81

DENNY. Ay, my good lord.

KING HENRY. 'Tis true: where is he, Denny?

DENNY. He attends your highness' pleasure.

KING HENRY. Bring him to us.

[Exit DENNY.]

LOVELL. [Aside.] This is about that which the bishop  
spake: 84

I am happily come hither.

Re-enter DENNY, with CRANMER.

KING HENRY.

Avoid the gallery.

[LOVELL seems to stay.]

Ha! I have said. Begone.

What!—

[Exeunt LOVELL and DENNY.]

CRANMER. I am fearful. Wherefore frowns he thus?

'Tis his aspect of terror: all's not well. 89

KING HENRY. How now, my lord! You do desire to  
know

Wherefore I sent for you.

CRANMER. [Kneeling.] It is my duty

To attend your highness' pleasure.

KING HENRY.

Pray you, arise,

My good and gracious Lord of Canterbury. 93

Come, you and I must walk a turn together;

I have news to tell you: come, come, give me your hand.

Ah! my good lord, I grieve at what I speak, 96

And am right sorry to repeat what follows.

I have, and most unwillingly, of late

Heard many grievous, I do say, my lord,

Grievous complaints of you; which, being consider'd,

Have mov'd us and our council, that you shall 101

This morning come before us; where, I know,

You cannot with such freedom purge yourself,

But that, till further trial in those charges 104

Which will require your answer, you must take

Your patience to you, and be well contented  
 To make your house our Tower : you a brother of us,  
 It fits we thus proceed, or else no witness 108  
 Would come against you.

CRANMER. [Kneeling.] I humbly thank your highness ;  
 And am right glad to catch this good occasion  
 Most throughly to be winnow'd, where my chaff  
 And corn shall fly asunder ; for I know 112  
 There 's none stands under more calumnious tongues  
 Than I myself, poor man.

KING HENRY. Stand up, good Canterbury :  
 Thy truth and thy integrity is rooted  
 In us, thy friend : give me thy hand, stand up : 116  
 Prithee, let 's walk. Now, by my holidame,  
 What manner of man are you ? My lord, I look'd  
 You would have given me your petition, that  
 I should have ta'en some pains to bring together 120  
 Yourself and your accusers ; and to have heard you,  
 Without indurance, further.

CRANMER. Most dread liege,  
 The good I stand on is my truth and honesty :  
 If they shall fail, I, with mine enemies, 124  
 Will triumph o'er my person ; which I weigh not,  
 Being of those virtues vacant. I fear nothing  
 What can be said against me.

KING HENRY. Know you not  
 How your state stands i' the world, with the whole  
 world ? 128  
 Your enemies are many, and not small ; their practices  
 Must bear the same proportion ; and not ever  
 The justice and the truth o' the question carries  
 The due o' the verdict with it. At what ease 132  
 Might corrupt minds procure knaves as corrupt  
 To swear against you ? such things have been done.  
 You are potently oppos'd, and with a malice  
 Of as great size. Ween you of better luck, 136  
 I mean in perjur'd witness, than your master,  
 Whose minister you are, whiles here he liv'd  
 Upon this naughty earth ? Go to, go to ;  
 You take a precipice for no leap of danger, 140  
 And woo your own destruction.

CRANMER. God and your majesty  
 Protect mine innocence ! or I fall into '

The trap is laid for me ?

KING HENRY. Be of good cheer ;  
 They shall no more prevail than we give way to 144  
 Keep comfort to you ; and this morning see  
 You do appear before them. If they shall chance,  
 In charging you with matters, to commit you,  
 The best persuasions to the contrary 148  
 Fail not to use, and with what vehemency  
 The occasion shall instruct you : if entreaties  
 Will render you no remedy, this ring  
 Deliver them, and your appeal to us 152  
 There make before them. Look ! the good man weeps ;  
 He's honest, on mine honour. God's blest mother !  
 I swear he is true-hearted ; and a soul  
 None better in my kingdom. Get you gone, 156  
 And do as I have bid you. [Exit CRANMER.] He has strangled  
 His language in his tears.

Enter an Old Lady.

GENTLEMAN. [Within.] Come back : what mean you ?

OLD LADY. I'll not come back ; the tidings that I  
 bring  
 Will make my boldness manners. Now, good angels  
 Fly o'er thy royal head, and shade thy person 161  
 Under their blessed wings !

KING HENRY. Now, by thy looks  
 I guess thy message. Is the queen deliver'd ?  
 Say, ay ; and of a boy.

OLD LADY. Ay, ay, my liege ; 164  
 And of a lovely boy : the God of heaven  
 Both now and ever bless her ! 'tis a girl,  
 Promises boys hereafter. Sir, your queen  
 Desires your visitation, and to be 168  
 Acquainted with this stranger : 'tis as like you  
 As cherry is to cherry.

KING HENRY. Lovell !

Re-enter LOVELL.

LOVELL. Sir !

KING HENRY. Give her a hundred marks. I'll to the  
 queen. [Exit.

OLD LADY. A hundred marks ! By this light, I'll ha'  
 more. 172

An ordinary groom is for such payment :

I will have more, or scold it out of him.

Said I for this the girl was like to him ?

I will have more, or else unsay 't ; and now,

While it is hot, I'll put it to the issue.

176

[Exeunt.]

SCENE II.—The Lobby before the Council-Chamber.

Enter CRANMER ; Pursuivants, Pages, &c., attending.

CRANMER. I hope I am not too late ; and yet the gentleman,

That was sent to me from the council, pray'd me  
To make great haste. All fast ? what means this ? Ho !  
Who waits there ?

Enter Keeper.

Sure, you know me ?

KEEPER.

Yes, my lord ;

But yet I cannot help you.

\*CRANMER.

Why ?

5

KEEPER. Your Grace must wait till you be call'd for.

Enter DOCTOR BUTTS.

CRANMER.

So.

BUTTS. [Aside.] This is a piece of malice. I am glad  
I came this way so happily : the king  
Shall understand it presently.

8

CRANMER.

[Aside.] 'Tis Butts,

The king's physician. As he pass'd along,  
How earnestly he cast his eyes upon me.  
Pray heaven he sound not my disgrace ! For certain,  
This is of purpose laid by some that hate me,—  
God turn their hearts ! I never sought their malice,—  
To quench mine honour ; they would shame to make me  
Wait else at door, a fellow-counsellor,  
'Mong boys, grooms, and lackeys. But their pleasures  
Must be fulfill'd, and I attend with patience.

11

16

Enter, at a window above, the KING and BUTTS.

BUTTS. I'll show your Grace the strangest sight—

KING HENRY.

What's that, Butts ?

BUTTS. I think your highness saw this many a day.

KING HENRY. Body o' me, where is it ?

BUTTS.

There, my lord,

The high promotion of his Grace of Canterbury ;  
Who holds his state at door, 'mongst pursuivants  
Pages, and footboys.

KING HENRY. Ha ! 'Tis he, indeed : 24  
Is this the honour they do one another ?  
'Tis well there 's one above 'em yet. I had thought  
They had parted so much honesty among 'em,—  
At least, good manners,—as not thus to suffer 28  
A man of his place, and so near our favour,  
To dance attendance on their lordships' pleasures,  
And at the door too, like a post with packets.  
By holy Mary, Butts, there 's knavery : 32  
Let 'em alone, and draw the curtain close ;  
We shall hear more anon. [Exeunt above.

## SCENE III.—The Council-Chamber.

Enter the Lord Chancellor, the DUKE OF SUFFOLK, the DUKE OF  
NORFOLK, EARL OF SURREY, Lord Chamberlain, GARDINER, and  
CROMWELL. The Chancellor places himself at the upper end  
of the table on the left hand ; a seat being left void above him,  
as for the ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY. The rest seat them-  
selves in order on each side. CROMWELL at the lower end as  
secretary.

CHANCELLOR. Speak to the business, Master secre-  
tary :

Why are we met in council ?

CROMWELL. Please your honours,  
The chief cause concerns his Grace of Canterbury. 3

GARDINER. Has he had knowledge of it ?

CROMWELL. Yes.

NORFOLK. Who waits there ?

KEEPER. Without, my noble lords ?

GARDINER. Yes.

KEEPER. My lord archbishop :  
And has done half an hour, to know your pleasures.

CHANCELLOR. Let him come in.

KEEPER. Your Grace may enter now.

[CRANMER enters and approaches the council-table.

CHANCELLOR. My good lord archbishop, I'm very  
sorry 3

To sit here at this present and behold  
That chair stand empty : but we all are men,  
In our own natures frail, and capable



Of our flesh ; few are angels : out of which frailty 12  
 And want of wisdom, you, that best should teach us,  
 Have misdemean'd yourself, and not a little,  
 Toward the king first, then his laws, in filling  
 The whole realm, by your teaching and your chaplains,—  
 For so we are inform'd,—with new opinions, 17  
 Divers and dangerous ; which are heresies,  
 And, not reform'd, may prove pernicious.

GARDINER. Which reformation must be sudden too,  
 My noble lords ; for those that tame wild horses 21  
 Pace 'em not in their hands to make 'em gentle,  
 But stop their mouths with stubborn bits, and spur 'em,  
 Till they obey the manage. If we suffer— 24  
 Out of our easiness and childish pity  
 To one man's honour—this contagious sickness,  
 Farewell all physic : and what follows then ?  
 Commotions, uproars, with a general taint 28  
 Of the whole state : as, of late days, our neighbours,  
 The upper Germany, can dearly witness,  
 Yet freshly pitied in our memories.

CRANMER. My good lords, hitherto in all the progress  
 Both of my life and office, I have labour'd, 33  
 And with no little study, that my teaching  
 And the strong course of my authority  
 Might go one way, and safely ; and the end 36  
 Was ever to do well : nor is there living,—  
 I speak it with a single heart, my lords,—  
 A man that more detests, more stirs against,  
 Both in his private conscience and his place, 40  
 Defacers of a public peace, than I do.  
 Pray heaven the king may never find a heart  
 With less allegiance in it ! Men, that make  
 Envy and crooked malice nourishment 44  
 Dare bite the best. I do beseech your lordships  
 That, in this case of justice, my accusers,  
 Be what they will, may stand forth face to face,  
 And freely urge against me.

SUFFOLK. Nay, my lord, 48  
 That cannot be : you are a counsellor,  
 And by that virtue no man dare accuse you.

GARDINER. My lord, because we have business of more  
 moment,  
 We will be short with you. 'Tis his highness' pleasure,

And our consent, for better trial of you, 53  
 From hence you be committed to the Tower ;  
 Where, being but a private man again,  
 You shall know many dare accuse you boldly, 56  
 More than, I fear, you are provided for.

CRANMER. Ah ! my good Lord of Winchester, I thank  
 you ;

You are always my good friend : if your will pass,  
 I shall both find your lordship judge and juror, 60  
 You are so merciful. I see your end ;  
 'Tis my undoing : love and meekness, lord,  
 Become a churchman better than ambition :  
 Win straying souls with modesty again, 64  
 Cast none away. That I shall clear myself,  
 Lay all the weight ye can upon my patience,  
 I make as little doubt, as you do conscience  
 In doing daily wrongs. I could say more, 68  
 But reverence to your calling makes me modest.

GARDINER. My lord, my lord, you are a sectary ;  
 That 's the plain truth : your painted gloss discovers,  
 To men that understand you, words and weakness.

CROMWELL. My Lord of Winchester, you are a little,  
 By your good favour, too sharp ; men so noble,  
 However faulty, yet should find respect  
 For what they have been : 'tis a cruelty 76  
 To load a falling man.

GARDINER. Good Master secretary,  
 I cry your honour mercy ; you may, worst  
 Of all this table, say so.

CROMWELL. Why, my lord ?

GARDINER. Do not I know you for a favourer 80  
 Of this new sect ? ye are not sound.

CROMWELL. Not sound ?

GARDINER. Not sound, I say.

CROMWELL. Would you were half so honest !  
 Men's prayers then would seek you, not their fears.

GARDINER. I shall remember this bold language.

CROMWELL. Do.

Remember your bold life too.

CHANCELLOR. This is too much ; 85  
 Forbear, for shame, my lords.

GARDINER. I have done.

CROMWELL. And I.

CHANCELLOR. Then thus for you, my lord : it stands agreed,

I take it, by all voices, that forthwith 88

You be convey'd to the Tower a prisoner ;

There to remain till the king's further pleasure

Be known unto us. Are you all agreed, lords ? 91

ALL. We are.

CRANMER. Is there no other way of mercy,  
But I must needs to the Tower, my lords ?

GARDINER. What other  
Would you expect ? You are strangely troublesome.  
Let some o' the guard be ready there.

Enter Guard.

CRANMER. For me ?  
Must I go like a traitor thither ?

GARDINER. Receive him, 96  
And see him safe i' the Tower.

CRANMER. Stay, good my lords ;  
I have a little yet to say. Look there, my lords ;  
By virtue of that ring I take my cause  
Out of the gripes of cruel men, and give it 100  
To a most noble judge, the king my master.

CHANCELLOR. This is the king's ring.

SURREY. 'Tis no counterfeit.

SUFFOLK. 'Tis the right ring, by heaven ! I told ye all,  
When we first put this dangerous stone a-rolling, 104  
'Twould fall upon ourselves.

NORFOLK. Do you think, my lords,  
The king will suffer but the little finger  
Of this man to be vex'd ?

CHAMBERLAIN. 'Tis now too certain :  
How much more is his life in value with him ? 108  
Would I were fairly out on 't.

CROMWELL. My mind gave me,  
In seeking tales and informations  
Against this man—whose honesty the devil  
And his disciples only envy at— 112  
Ye blew the fire that burns ye : now have at ye !

Enter the KING, frowning on them : he takes his seat.

GARDINER. Dread sovereign, how much are we bound  
to heaven

In daily thanks, that gave us such a prince ;  
 Not only good and wise, but most religious : 116  
 One that in all obedience makes the Church  
 The chief aim of his honour ; and, to strengthen  
 That holy duty, out of dear respect,  
 His royal self in judgment comes to hear 120  
 The cause betwixt her and this great offender.

KING HENRY. You were ever good at sudden com-  
 mendations,  
 Bishop of Winchester ; but know, I come not  
 To hear such flattery now, and in my presence ; 124  
 They are too thin and bare to hide offences.  
 To me you cannot reach ; you play the spaniel,  
 And think with wagging of your tongue to win me ;  
 But, whatsoe'er thou takest me for, I'm sure 128  
 Thou hast a cruel nature and a bloody.

[TO CRANMER.] Good man, sit down. Now let me see the  
 proudest

He, that dares most, but wag his finger at thee :  
 By all that 's holy, he had better starve 132  
 Than but once think this place becomes thee not.

SURREY. May it please your Grace.—

KING HENRY. No, sir, it does not please me.  
 I had thought I had had men of some understanding  
 And wisdom of my council ; but I find none. 136  
 Was it discretion, lords, to let this man,  
 This good man,—few of you deserve that title,—  
 This honest man, wait like a lousy footboy  
 At chamber-door ? and one as great as you are ? 140  
 Why, what a shame was this ! Did my commission  
 Bid ye so far forget yourselves ? I gave ye  
 Power as he was a counsellor to try him,  
 Not as a groom. There 's some of ye, I see, 144  
 More out of malice than integrity,  
 Would try him to the utmost, had ye mean ;  
 Which ye shall never have while I live.

CHANCELLOR. Thus far,  
 My most dread sovereign, may it like your Grace 148  
 To let my tongue excuse all. What was purpos'd  
 Concerning his imprisonment, was rather—  
 If there be faith in men—meant for his trial  
 And fair purgation to the world, than malice, 152  
 I'm sure, in me.

KING HENRY. Well, well, my lords, respect him ;  
Take him, and use him well ; he 's worthy of it.

I will say thus much for him, if a prince

May be beholding to a subject, I 156

Am, for his love and service, so to him.

Make me no more ado, but all embrace him :

Be friends, for shame, my lords ! My Lord of Canterbury,

I have a suit which you must not deny me ; 160

That is, a fair young maid that yet wants baptism,

You must be godfather, and answer for her.

CRANMER. 'The greatest monarch now alive may glory

In such an honour : how may I deserve it, 164

That am a poor and humble subject to you ?

KING HENRY. Come, come, my lord, you'd spare your

spoons : you shall have two noble partners with you ;

the old Duchess of Norfolk, and Lady Marquess Dorset :

will these please you ? 169

Once more, my Lord of Winchester, I charge you,

Embrace and love this man.

GARDINER. With a true heart

And brother-love I do it.

CRANMER. And let heaven 172

Witness, how dear I hold this confirmation.

KING HENRY. Good man! those joyful tears show

thy true heart :

The common voice, I see, is verified

Of thee, which says thus, ' Do my Lord of Canterbury

A shrewd turn, and he is your friend for ever.' 177

Come, lords, we trifle time away : I long

To have this young one made a Christian.

As I have made ve one, lords, one remain : 180

So I grow stronger, you more honour gain. [Exeunt.]

SCENE IV.—The Palace Yard.

Noise and tumult within. Enter Porter and his Man.

PORTER. You'll leave your noise anon, ye rascals. Do you take the court for Paris-garden? ye rude slaves, leave your gaping. 3

[Within.] Good Master porter, I belong to the larder.

PORTER. Belong to the gallows, and be hang'd, you rogue! Is this a place to roar in? Fetch me a dozen crab-tree staves, and strong ones: these are but switches

to 'em. I'll scratch your heads : you must be seeing christenings ! Do you look for ale and cakes here, you rude rascals ? 10

MAN. Pray, sir, be patient : 'tis as much impossible— Unless we sweep 'em from the door with cannons— To scatter 'em, as 'tis to make 'em sleep 13 On May-day morning ; which will never be. We may as well push against Paul's as stir 'em.

PORTER. How got they in, and be hang'd ? 16

MAN. Alas, I know not ; how gets the tide in ? As much as one sound cudgel of four foot— You see the poor remainder—could distribute, I made no spare, sir.

PORTER. You did nothing, sir. 20

MAN. I am not Samson, nor Sir Guy, nor Colbrand, To mow 'em down before me ; but if I spar'd any That had a head to hit, either young or old, He or she, cuckold or cuckold-maker, 24 Let me ne'er hope to see a chine again ; And that I would not for a cow, God save her !

[Within.] Do you hear, Master porter ?

PORTER. I shall be with you presently, good Master puppy. Keep the door close, sirrah. 29

MAN. What would you have me do ?

PORTER. What should you do, but knock 'em down by the dozens ? Is this Moorfields to muster in ? or have we some strange Indian with the great tool come to court, the women so besiege us ? Bless me, what a fry of fornication is at door ! On my Christian conscience, this one christening will beget a thousand : here will be father, godfather, and all together. 37

MAN. The spoons will be the bigger, sir. There is a fellow somewhat near the door, he should be a brazier by his face, for, o' my conscience, twenty of the dog-days now reign in 's nose : all that stand about him are under the line, they need no other penance. That fire-drake did I hit three times on the head, and three times was his nose discharged against me : he stands there, like a mortar-piece, to blow us. There was a haberdasher's wife of small wit near him, that railed upon me till her pinked porringer fell off her head, for kindling such a combustion in the state. I missed the meteor once, and hit that woman, who

cried out, 'Clubs!' when I might see from far some forty truncheoners draw to her succour, which were the hope o' the Strand, where she was quartered. They fell on; I made good my place; at length they came to the broomstaff to me; I defied 'em still; when suddenly a file of boys behind 'em, loose shot, delivered such a shower of pebbles, that I was fain to draw mine honour in, and let 'em win the work. The devil was amongst 'em, I think, surely. 58

PORTER. These are the youths that thunder at a play-house, and fight for bitten apples; that no audience; but the Tribulation of Tower-hill, or the Limbs of Limehouse, their dear brothers, are able to endure. I have some of 'em in Limbo Patrum, and there they are like to dance these three days; besides the running banquet of two beadles, that is to come. 65

Enter the Lord Chamberlain.

CHAMBERLAIN. Mercy o' me, what a multitude are here! They grow still too, from all parts they are coming, As if we kept a fair here! Where are these porters, These lazy knaves? Ye have made a fine hand, fellows: There 's a trim rabble let in. Are all these Your faithful friends o' the suburbs? We shall have Great store of room, no doubt, left for the ladies, 72 When they pass back from the christening.

PORTER. An't please your honour, We are but men, and what so many may do, Not being torn a-pieces, we have done: An army cannot rule 'em.

CHAMBERLAIN. As I live, 76 If the king blame me for 't, I'll lay ye all By the heels, and suddenly; and on your heads Clap round fines for neglect: ye're lazy knaves; And here ye lie baiting of bombards, when 80 Ye should do service. Hark! the trumpets sound; They're come already from the christening. Go, break among the press, and find a way out To let the troop pass fairly, or I'll find 84 A Marshalsea shall hold ye play these two months.

PORTER. Make way there for the princess.

MAN. You great fellow, Stand close up, or I'll make your head ache.

PORTER. You i' the camlet, get up o' the rail : 88  
I'll pick you o'er the pales else. [Exit.

## SCENE V.—The Palace.

Enter trumpets, sounding ; then two Aldermen, Lord Mayor, Garter, CRANMER, DUKE OF NORFOLK, with his marshal's staff, DUKE OF SUFFOLK, two Noblemen bearing great standing-bowls for the christening gifts ; then, four Noblemen bearing a canopy, under which the DUCHESS OF NORFOLK, godmother, bearing the child, richly habited in a mantle, &c., train borne by a Lady ; then follows the MARCHIONESS DORSET, the other godmother, and Ladies. The troop pass once about the stage, and Garter speaks.

GARTER. Heaven, from thy endless goodness, send prosperous life, long, and ever happy. to the high and mighty Princess of England, Elizabeth !

Flourish. Enter KING and Train.

CRANMER. [Kneeling.] And to your royal Grace, and the good queen, 4

My noble partners, and myself, thus pray :  
All comfort, joy, in this most gracious lady,  
Heaven ever laid up to make parents happy,  
May hourly fall upon ye !

KING HENRY. Thank you, good lord archbishop :  
What is her name ?

CRANMER. Elizabeth.

KING HENRY. Stand up, lord. 9  
[The KING kisses the Child.

With this kiss take my blessing ; God protect thee !  
Into whose hand I give thy life.

CRANMER. Amen.

KING HENRY. My noble gossips, ye have been too prodigal : 12

I thank ye heartily : so shall this lady  
When she has so much English.

CRANMER. Let me speak, sir,  
For heaven now bids me ; and the words I utter  
Let none think flattery, for they'll find 'em truth. 16  
This royal infant,—heaven still move about her !—  
Though in her cradle, yet now promises  
Upon this land a thousand thousand blessings,  
Which time shall bring to ripeness : she shall be— 20



But few now living can behold that goodness—  
 A pattern to all princes living with her,  
 And all that shall succeed : Saba was never  
 More covetous of wisdom and fair virtue 24  
 Than this pure soul shall be : all princely graces,  
 That mould up such a mighty piece as this is,  
 With all the virtues that attend the good,  
 Shall still be doubled on her ; truth shall nurse her ;  
 Holy and heavenly thoughts still counsel her ; 29  
 She shall be lov'd and fear'd ; her own shall bless her ;  
 Her foes shake like a field of beaten corn,  
 And hang their heads with sorrow ; good grows with her.  
 In her days every man shall eat in safety 33  
 Under his own vine what he plants ; and sing  
 The merry songs of peace to all his neighbours.  
 God shall be truly known ; and those about her 36  
 From her shall read the perfect ways of honour,  
 And by those claim their greatness, not by blood.  
 Nor shall this peace sleep with her ; but as when  
 The bird of wonder dies, the maiden phoenix, 40  
 Her ashes new-create another heir  
 As great in admiration as herself,  
 So shall she leave her blessedness to one,—  
 When heaven shall call her from this cloud of darkness,—  
 Who, from the sacred ashes of her honour, 45  
 Shall star-like rise, as great in fame as she was,  
 And so stand fix'd. Peace, plenty, love, truth, terror,  
 That were the servants to this chosen infant, 48  
 Shall then be his, and like a vine grow to him :  
 Wherever the bright sun of heaven shall shine,  
 His honour and the greatness of his name  
 Shall be, and make new nations ; he shall flourish, 52  
 And, like a mountain cedar, reach his branches  
 To all the plains about him ; our children's children  
 Shall see this, and bless heaven.

KING HENRY.

Thou speakest wonders.

CRANMER. She shall be, to the happiness of England,  
 An aged princess ; many days shall see her, 57  
 And yet no day without a deed to crown it.  
 Would I had known no more ! but she must die,  
 She must, the saints must have her, yet a virgin ; 60  
 A most unspotted lily shall she pass  
 To the ground, and all the world shall mourn her.

KING HENRY. O lord archbishop !  
 Thou hast made me now a man : never, before 64  
 This happy child, did I get any thing.  
 This oracle of comfort has so pleas'd me.  
 That when I am in heaven, I shall desire  
 To see what this child does, and praise my Maker. 68  
 I thank ye all. To you, my good Lord Mayor,  
 And your good brethren, I am much beholding ;  
 I have receiv'd much honour by your presence, 71  
 And ye shall find me thankful. Lead the way, lords :  
 Ye must all see the queen, and she must thank ye ;  
 She will be sick else. This day, no man think  
 He has business at his house ; for all shall stay :  
 This little one shall make it holiday. [Exeunt.

## EPILOGUE

'Tis ten to one, this play can never please  
 All that are here : some come to take their ease  
 And sleep an act or two ; but those, we fear,  
 We've frighted with our trumpets ; so, 'tis clear 4  
 They'll say 'tis naught : others, to hear the city  
 Abus'd extremely, and to cry, ' That 's witty ! '  
 Which we have not done neither : that, I fear,  
 All the expected good we're like to hear 8  
 For this play at this time, is only in  
 The merciful construction of good women ;  
 For such a one we show'd 'em : if they smile,  
 And say 'twill do, I know, within a while 12  
 All the best men are ours ; for 'tis ill hap  
 If they hold when their ladies bid 'em clap.



# **VENUS AND ADONIS**



# VENUS AND ADONIS

## INTRODUCTION

THIS poem was first published in 1593, in a quarto printed probably from Shakespeare's manuscript, and certainly with remarkable correctness. The title-page ran as follows: 'VENUS AND ADONIS *Vilia miretur vulgus: mihi flavus Apollo Pocula Castalia plena ministret aqua.*' LONDON. Imprinted by Richard Field, and are to be sold at the signe of the white Greyhound in Paules Church-yard. 1593.' On April 18 of that year the copy had been entered to Richard Field 'under thandes of the Archbishop of Canterbury and master Warden Stirrop.' The bookseller at the White Greyhound was John Harrison. Field was the son of a Stratford tanner; he had been in London since 1579; and it seems probable that Shakespeare chose him as the printer of his first poem on the ground that he was a fellow townsman of Stratford and a personal acquaintance.

The poem immediately became popular; a second edition appeared in 1594; many authorized London editions followed, and in 1627 it was reprinted at Edinburgh. It is probably alluded to in 1595 by William Covell in his *Polimanteia* (a book often erroneously ascribed to William Clarke), and by Thomas Edwardes in the *Envoy* to his *Cephalus and Procris*. Meres in a well-known passage informs the reader of his *Palladis Tamia* that 'the sweete wittie soul of *Ovid* lives in mellifluous and hony-tongued *Shakespeare*, witnes his *Venus* and *Adonis*, his *Lucrece*, his sugred Sonnets among his private friends,' &c. Drummond of Hawthornden put on record his possession of a copy of *Venus and Adonis* in the year 1611.

The date at which Shakespeare wrote the poem cannot be ascertained; but there is no good reason for supposing that he kept it by him for any considerable

time unpublished. We may conjecturally date it 1592-3. In the dedication he speaks of it as the first heir of his invention, and doubtless some of his dramatic work is of earlier date than 1592. But of this work a part at least was not wholly original; a part was founded upon older dramas, and was perhaps achieved in collaboration with other writers; nothing had appeared from Shakespeare's pen in book-form previous to the publication of *Venus and Adonis*. A poem such as this, publicly connected with his name and entirely his own, may be regarded as his first bid not for profit but for fame, and might not unjustly have been styled the first heir of his invention.

Henry Wriothesley, third Earl of Southampton, to whom the poem is dedicated, was twenty years old in the year of its publication. John Florio, author of the Italian Dictionary, *A Worlde of Wordes* (1598), had been his tutor, and the young earl, he assures us, acquired a thorough knowledge of the Italian language; always a lover of literature, he probably was acquainted with some of the poetry of the Italian Renaissance. He was a patron of letters, and at an early age was celebrated in a sonnet by Barnabe Barnes, and was described by Nashe as 'a dear lover and cherisher as well of the lovers of poets as of the poets themselves'. If we were to indulge in merely imaginary conjecture we might suppose that the earl had suggested to Shakespeare, with whom his love for the drama may have brought him into connexion, the subject of this earliest poem. Dr. Sidney Lee has traced the history of the Venus and Adonis theme through the Renaissance literature of Italy. Dolce's *La Favola d'Adone* of 1545 was followed, he tells us, in 1550 by *L'Adone* of Tarchagnota, and again, within less than a decade, by a poem bearing the same title as Dolce's, from the pen of Girolamo Parabosco. An attempt is made by Dr. Lee to show that Shakespeare in certain passages is 'levying loans' on his Italian predecessors, but it cannot be said that the learned critic has proved his case.

It does not appear that Shakespeare was indebted to the French or Spanish writers who had contributed to the Venus and Adonis literature. But he may have read in the first canto of the third book of Spenser's

*Faerie Queene* of the costly arras of Castle Joyeous in which was portrayed

The love of Venus and her Paramoure,  
The faire Adonis, turned to a flowre ;

he may have known the song of Greene in *Perimedes the Blacke-Smith* (1588) which describes Venus by a fountain with Adonis toying on her knee—

She kist the wag, her darling of accompt,  
The Boie gan blush, which when his lover see,  
She smild and told him love might challenge debt,  
And he was young and might be wanton yet ;

or that other lyric in Greene's *Never too late* (1590) with its pretty refrain of Venus—

Je vous en prie, pity me ;  
N'oserez vous, mon bel, mon bel,  
N'oserez vous, mon bel ami ?

The opening lines of Shakespeare's poem seem to borrow for Adonis the epithet 'rose-cheek'd' from the *Hero and Leander* of Marlowe, whose death took place in the year which saw the publication of *Venus and Adonis* ; but if this be the case, the splendid fragment of Marlowe must have been seen in manuscript, for it did not appear in print until 1598. Possibly, indeed, lines of Marlowe in the same fragment—

Venus in her naked glory strove  
To please the careless and disdainful eyes  
Of proud Adonis, that before her lies—

may have influenced Shakespeare in his treatment of the subject, as has been suggested by Dr. Lee. *The Shepheard's Song* by Henry Constable, which appeared in *England's Helicon* (1600), and which Malone believed to have preceded *Venus and Adonis*, more probably followed it ; and such in all likelihood is also the case with the sonnets in *The Passionate Pilgrim* which deal with Shakespeare's theme. Dr. Lee has noticed some striking parallels between Spenser's *Astrophel*, a lament for the death of Sir Philip Sidney, and the portion of Shakespeare's poem which describes the death of Adonis. *Astrophel* was doubtless written before *Venus and Adonis*, but its publication was of later date than that of the first heir of Shakespeare's invention.



There can be no question that Shakespeare's chief debt was to the *Metamorphoses* of Ovid (Book X), known to him certainly in Arthur Golding's translation, and probably known also at first hand in the Latin. There he read of the passion of Venus, her warnings against the boar-hunt, the death of her beloved and his transformation to a flower; but the Adonis of Ovid is not, like Shakespeare's Adonis, actively hostile to the advances of Venus. This motive of the English poem is transferred to Adonis from the Hermaphroditus of Ovid's fourth book, who is more than indifferent to the passion of Salmacis. For the description of the boar Shakespeare evidently turned to the eighth book in Golding's translation, where the English versifier expands Ovid's words picturing the boar of Calydon in the following—

His eies did glister blud and fire: right dreadfull was to see  
His brawned necke, right dredfull was his haire which grew as thicke  
With pricking points as one of them could well by other sticke.  
And like a front of armed Pikes set close in battell ray,  
The sturdie bristles on his back stoode staring up alway.

(Compare *Venus and Adonis*, 619–627.) It may be added that a tale of Ovid—that of Glaucus and Scylla—had been rehandled by Lodge in 1589, and in the stanza used by Shakespeare in the present poem. The Venus and Adonis theme is slightly touched. But the most noteworthy point of comparison lies elsewhere. 'Lodge,' as Dr. Lee has put it, 'radically changed his Ovidian material. The Latin version presents a normal pursuit of a modest maiden Scylla by an impassioned lover' Glaucus. Lodge took on himself to reverse the position of the man and woman. His tale tells of the refusal of Glaucus to countenance the lascivious advances of Scilla.' I cannot doubt that Shakespeare was familiar with Lodge's poem, and was influenced by it, inferior though it be to the handiwork of even the immature poet of the *Venus and Adonis*.

Enough has been said of the writings which may possibly have stirred the imagination of Shakespeare when engaged upon his first narrative poem. But, as I have elsewhere written, 'Shakespeare's Poems can be valued aright only when they are viewed in their

literary environment, among the works of his contemporaries.' Undoubtedly when so viewed they are seen to take a high rank. The subject of *Venus and Adonis* might have inspired a great Venetian painter of the Renaissance with a certain enthusiasm. Here was the amorous queen of love in her unclothed beauty; here, the lovely boy whose heart was in the chase, not in amorous entanglements. There was scope in verse for thoughts on sensual passion, on grief, on death, which no painting could fully express. There were occasions for the relief afforded by the prospects and the incidents of external nature, and the sight, present or imagined, of the creatures of the woodland or the plain—the mighty stallion, the boar, the hunted hare, the fawn hid in some brake, the lark mounting from his moist cabinet. But we must judge a poem not merely from the historical point of view; we must endeavour to estimate it at its abiding worth. To me, although *Venus and Adonis* contains some almost perfect stanzas and many incomparable lines, the poem as a whole appears to be a glittering error of Shakespeare's earlier years. It is a narrative poem which is cloyed with dramatic *tirades* that are eminently undramatic. Let Coleridge have his word on the one side, and then let Hazlitt appear as devil's advocate, before we grow idolatrous because the poem carries with it the name of our greatest poet. The subject, Coleridge admits, is unpleasing; but for that very reason he thinks it is the more illustrative of Shakespeare; he finds in it the self-detachment of the highest poets: 'To become all things and yet remain the same,—to make the changeful god be felt in the river, the lion and the flame;—this it is that is the true imagination.' And then, etherealizing the frank sensuality of the poem, which is quite in keeping with much of Renaissance art, he adds: 'Shakespeare writes in this poem, as if he were of another planet, charming you to gaze on the movements of Venus and Adonis, as you would on the twinkling dances of two vernal butterflies.' This is exquisitely imagined by Coleridge, but it is the reading of nineteenth-century romanticism, not the interpretation of one who lived in the great age which had produced the inventions of Titian and

Tintoretto. To me *Venus and Adonis* has always seemed a somewhat laborious study of sensual passion, deliberate and overwrought, rather than a poem of genuine youthful rapture, such as we might have obtained from Keats in his earlier years. 'The two poems of *Venus and Adonis* and of *Tarquin and Lucrece*,' wrote Hazlitt, 'appear to us like a couple of ice-houses. They are about as hard, as glittering, and as cold. The author seems all the time to be thinking of his verses, and not of his subject,—not of what his characters would feel, but of what he shall say; and as it must happen in all such cases, he always puts into their mouths those things which they would be the last to think of, and which it shows the greatest ingenuity in him to find out. The whole is laboured uphill work. The poet is perpetually singling out the difficulties of the art to make an exhibition of his strength and skill in wrestling with them.' Hazlitt, indeed, fails to perceive that Shakespeare was here following a fashion of his time. Even in the prose *Arcadia* the narrative wades through a trammelling tangle of deep grasses and flowers; the prose tirades, the endless soliloquies, weary and disenchant the reader. The beauties of phrase, of line, of melody in *Venus and Adonis* are innumerable. But one who would fain be always in sympathy with a great master cannot but feel disturbed by the frequent intrusion of the judgement, 'This is not like nature,' and 'This is not like true art'. It brings some soothing to a critic's ruffled self-esteem to read the words of the great lyrical poet of the Victorian age in the General Introduction to this edition of Shakespeare—words with which my slight notice may fitly close: 'There are touches of inspiration and streaks of beauty in "*Venus and Adonis*": there are fits of power and freaks of poetry in the "*Rape of Lucrece*": but good poems they are not.'

## VENUS AND ADONIS

‘Vilia miretur vulgus ; mihi flavus Apollo  
Pocula Castalia plena ministret aqua.’

TO THE RIGHT HONOURABLE  
HENRY WRIOTHESLEY,

EARL OF SOUTHAMPTON, AND BARON OF TICHFIELD.

RIGHT HONOURABLE,

I KNOW not how I shall offend in dedicating my unpolished lines to your lordship, nor how the world will censure me for choosing so strong a prop to support so weak a burthen : only, if your honour seem but pleased, I account myself highly praised, and vow to take advantage of all idle hours, till I have honoured you with some graver labour. But if the first heir of my invention prove deformed, I shall be sorry it had so noble a godfather, and never after ear so barren a land, for fear it yield me still so bad a harvest. I leave it to your honourable survey, and your honour to your heart's content ; which I wish may always answer your own wish and the world's hopeful expectation.

Your honour's in all duty,  
WILLIAM SHAKESPEARE.

## VENUS AND ADONIS

EVEN as the sun with purple-colour'd face  
Had ta'en his last leave of the weeping morn,  
Rose-cheek'd Adonis hied him to the chase;  
Hunting he lov'd, but love he laugh'd to scorn; 4  
Sick-thoughted Venus makes amain unto him,  
And like a bold-fac'd suitor 'gins to woo him.

'Thrice fairer than myself,' thus she began,  
'The field's chief flower, sweet above compare, 8  
Stain to all nymphs, more lovely than a man,  
More white and red than doves or roses are;  
Nature that made thee, with herself at strife,  
Saith that the world hath ending with thy life. 12

'Vouchsafe, thou wonder, to alight thy steed,  
And rein his proud head to the saddle-bow;  
If thou wilt deign this favour, for thy meed  
A thousand honey secrets shalt thou know: 16  
Here come and sit, where never serpent hisses;  
And being set, I'll smother thee with kisses:

'And yet not cloy thy lips with loath'd satiety,  
But rather famish them amid their plenty, 20  
Making them red and pale with fresh variety;  
Ten kisses short as one, one long as twenty:  
A summer's day will seem an hour but short,  
Being wasted in such time-beguiling sport.' 24

With this she seizeth on his sweating palm,  
The precedent of pith and livelihood,  
And, trembling in her passion, calls it balm,  
Earth's sovereign salve to do a goddess good: 28  
Being so enrag'd, desire doth lend her force  
Courageously to pluck him from his horse.

Over one arm the lusty courser's rein,  
 Under her other was the tender boy, 2  
 Who blush'd and pouted in a dull disdain,  
 With leaden appetite, unapt to toy ;  
 She red and hot as coals of glowing fire,  
 He red for shame, but frosty in desire. 36

The studded bridle on a ragged bough  
 Nimble she fastens ;—O ! how quick is love .—  
 The steed is stalled up, and even now  
 To tie the rider she begins to prove : 40  
 Backward she push'd him, as she would be thrust,  
 And govern'd him in strength, though not in lust.

So soon was she along, as he was down,  
 Each leaning on their elbows and their hips : 44  
 Now doth she stroke his cheek, now doth he frown,  
 And 'gins to chide, but soon she stops his lips ;  
 And kissing speaks, with lustful language broken,  
 ' If thou wilt chide, thy lips shall never open.' 48

He burns with bashful shame ; she with her tears  
 Doth quench the maiden burning of his cheeks ;  
 Then with her windy sighs and golden hairs  
 To fan and blow them dry again she seeks : 52  
 He saith she is immodest, blames her miss ;  
 What follows more she murders with a kiss.

Even as an empty eagle, sharp by fast,  
 • Tires with her beak on feathers, flesh and bone, 56  
 Shaking her wings, devouring all in haste,  
 Till either gorge be stuff'd or prey be gone ;  
 Even so she kiss'd his brow, his cheek, his chin,  
 And where she ends she doth anew begin. 60

Forc'd to content, but never to obey,  
 Panting he lies, and breatheth in her face ;  
 She feedeth on the steam, as on a prey,  
 And calls it heavenly moisture, air of grace ; 64  
 Wishing her cheeks were gardens full of flowers,  
 So they were dew'd with such distilling showers.

Look ! how a bird lies tangled in a net,  
 So fasten'd in her arms Adonis lies ; 68  
 Pure shame and aw'd resistance made him fret,  
 Which bred more beauty in his angry eyes :  
     Rain added to a river that is rank  
     Perforce will force it overflow the bank. 72

Still she entreats, and prettily entreats,  
 For to a pretty ear she tunes her tale ;  
 Still is he sullen, still he lours and frets,  
 'Twixt crimson shame and anger ashy-pale ; 76  
     Being red, she loves him best ; and being white,  
     Her best is better'd with a more delight.

Look how he can, she cannot choose but love ;  
 And by her fair immortal hand she swears, 80  
 From his soft bosom never to remove,  
 Till he take truce with her contending tears,  
     Which long have rain'd, making her cheeks all wet ;  
     And one sweet kiss shall pay this countless debt.

Upon this promise did he raise his chin 85  
 Like a dive-dapper peering through a wave,  
 Who, being look'd on, ducks as quickly in ;  
 So offers he to give what she did crave ; 88  
     But when her lips were ready for his pay,  
     He winks, and turns his lips another way.

Never did passenger in summer's heat  
 More thirst for drink than she for this good turn. 92  
 Her help she sees, but help she cannot get ;  
 She bathes in water, yet her fire must burn :  
     'O ! pity,' gan she cry, ' flint-hearted boy :  
     'Tis but a kiss I beg ; why art thou coy ? 96

' I have been woo'd, as I entreat thee now,  
 Even by the stern and direful god of war,  
 Whose sinewy neck in battle ne'er did bow,  
 Who conquers where he comes in every jar ; 100  
     Yet hath he been my captive and my slave,  
     And begg'd for that which thou unask'd shalt have.

' Over my altars hath he hung his lance,  
His batter'd shield, his uncontrolled crest, 104  
And for my sake hath learn'd to sport and dance,  
To toy, to wanton, dally, smile, and jest :  
Scorning his churlish drum and ensign red,  
Making my arms his field, his tent my bed. 108

' Thus he that overrul'd I oversway'd.  
Leading him prisoner in a red-rose chain :  
Strong-temper'd steel his stronger strength obey'd,  
Yet was he servile to my coy disdain. 112  
O ! be not proud, nor brag not of thy might,  
For mastering her that foil'd the god of fight.

Touch but my lips with those fair lips of thine,—  
Though mine be not so fair, yet are they red,— 116  
The kiss shall be thine own as well as mine :  
What seest thou in the ground ? hold up thy head :  
Look in mine eyeballs, there thy beauty lies ;  
Then why not lips on lips, since eyes in eyes ? 120

' Art thou asham'd to kiss ? then wink again,  
And I will wink ; so shall the day seem night ;  
Love keeps his revels where there are but twain ;  
Be bold to play, our sport is not in sight : 124  
These blue-vein'd violets whereon we lean  
Never can blab, nor know not what we mean.

•  
' The tender spring upon thy tempting lip 127  
Shows thee unripe, yet mayst thou well be tasted :  
Make use of time, let not advantage slip ;  
Beauty within itself should not be wasted :  
Fair flowers that are not gather'd in their prime  
Rot and consume themselves in little time. 132

' Were I hard-favour'd, foul, or wrinkled-old,  
Ill-nurtur'd, crooked, churlish, harsh in voice,  
O'erworn, despised, rheumatic, and cold,  
Thick-sighted, barren, lean, and lacking juice, 136  
Then mightst thou pause, for then I were not for thee ;  
But having no defects, why dost abhor me ?



‘Thou canst not see one wrinkle in my brow ; 139  
 Mine eyes are grey and bright, and quick in turning ;  
 My beauty as the spring doth yearly grow ;  
 My flesh is soft and plump, my marrow burning ;  
 My smooth moist hand, were it with thy hand felt,  
 Would in thy palm dissolve, or seem to melt. 144

‘Bid me discourse, I will enchant thine ear,  
 Or like a fairy, trip upon the green,  
 Or, like a nymph, with long dishevell’d hair,  
 Dance on the sands, and yet no footing seen ? 148  
 Love is a spirit all compact of fire,  
 Not gross to sink, but light, and will aspire.

‘Witness this primrose bank whereon I lie ; 151  
 These forceless flowers like sturdy trees support me ;  
 Two strengthless doves will draw me through the sky,  
 From morn till night, even where I list to sport me :  
 Is love so light, sweet boy, and may it be  
 That thou shouldst think it heavy unto thee ? 156

‘Is thine own heart to thine own face affected ?  
 Can thy right hand seize love upon thy left ?  
 Then woo thyself, be of thyself rejected,  
 Steal thine own freedom, and complain on theft. 160  
 Narcissus so himself himself forsook,  
 And died to kiss his shadow in the brook.

‘Torches are made to light, jewels to wear,  
 Dainties to taste, fresh beauty for the use, 164  
 Herbs for their smell, and sappy plants to bear ;  
 Things growing to themselves are growth’s abuse :  
 Seeds spring from seeds, and beauty breedeth beauty ;  
 Thou wast begot ; to get it is thy duty. 168

‘Upon the earth’s increase why shouldst thou feed,  
 Unless the earth with thy increase be fed ?  
 By law of nature thou art bound to breed,  
 That thine may live when thou thyself art dead ; 172  
 And so in spite of death thou dost survive,  
 In that thy likeness still is left alive.’

By this the love-sick queen began to sweat,  
 For where they lay the shadow had forsook them, 176  
 And Titan, tired in the mid-day heat,  
 With burning eye did hotly overlook them,  
 Wishing Adonis had his tear to guide,  
 So he were like him and by Venus' side. 180

And now Adonis with a lazy spright,  
 And with a heavy, dark, disliking eye,  
 His louring brows o'erwhelming his fair sight,  
 Like misty vapours when they blot the sky, 184  
 Souring his cheeks, cries, 'Fie! no more of love:  
 The sun doth burn my face; I must remove.'

'Ay me,' quoth Venus, 'young, and so unkind!  
 What bare excuses mak'st thou to be gone! 188  
 I'll sigh celestial breath, whose gentle wind  
 Shall cool the heat of this descending sun:  
 I'll make a shadow for thee of my hairs; 191  
 If they burn too, I'll quench them with my tears.'

'The sun that shines from heaven shines but warm,  
 And lo! I lie between that sun and thee:  
 The heat I have from thence doth little harm,  
 Thine eye darts forth the fire that burneth me; 196  
 And were I not immortal, life were done  
 Between this heavenly and earthly sun.'

•  
 'Art thou obdurate, flinty, hard as steel?  
 Nay, more than flint, for stone at rain relenteth: 200  
 Art thou a woman's son, and canst not feel  
 What 'tis to love? how want of love tormenteth?  
 O! had thy mother borne so hard a mind, 203  
 She had not brought forth thee, but died unkind.'

'What am I that thou shouldst condemn me this?  
 Or what great danger dwells upon my suit?  
 What were thy lips the worse for one poor kiss?  
 Speak, fair; but speak fair words, or else be mute: 208  
 Give me one kiss, I'll give it thee again,  
 And one for interest, if thou wilt have twain.'

'Fie ! lifeless picture, cold and senseless stone,  
 Well-painted idol, image dull and dead, 212  
 Statue contenting but the eye alone,  
 Thing like a man, but of no woman bred :  
 Thou art no man, though of a man's complexion,  
 For men will kiss even by their own direction.' 216

This said, impatience chokes her pleading tongue,  
 And swelling passion doth provoke a pause ;  
 Red cheeks and fiery eyes blaze forth her wrong ;  
 Being judge in love, she cannot right her cause : 220  
 And now she weeps, and now she fain would speak,  
 And now her sobs do her intendments break.

Sometimes she shakes her head, and then his hand ;  
 Now gazeth she on him, now on the ground ; 224  
 Sometimes her arms infold him like a band :  
 She would, he will not in her arms be bound ;  
 And when from thence he struggles to be gone,  
 She locks her lily fingers one in one. 228

'Fondling,' she saith, 'since I have hemm'd thee here  
 Within the circuit of this ivory pale,  
 I'll be a park, and thou shalt be my deer ;  
 Feed where thou wilt, on mountain or in dale : 232  
 Graze on my lips, and if those hills be dry,  
 Stray lower, where the pleasant fountains lie.

'Within this limit is relief enough,  
 Sweet bottom-grass and high delightful plain, 236  
 Round rising hillocks, brakes obscure and rough,  
 To shelter thee from tempest and from rain :  
 Then be my deer, since I am such a park ; 239  
 No dog shall rouse thee, though a thousand bark.'

At this Adonis smiles as in disdain,  
 That in each cheek appears a pretty dimple :  
 Love made those hollows, if himself were slain,  
 He might be buried in a tomb so simple ; 244  
 Foreknowing well, if there he came to lie,  
 Why, there Love liv'd, and there he could not die.

These lovely caves, these round enchanting pits,  
Open'd their mouths to swallow Venus' liking. 248  
Being mad before, how doth she now for wits ?  
Struck dead at first, what needs a second striking ?  
Poor queen of love, in thine own law forlorn,  
To love a cheek that smiles at thee in scorn ! 252

Now which way shall she turn ? what shall she say ?  
Her words are done, her woes the more increasing ;  
The time is spent, her object will away,  
And from her twining arms doth urge releasing : 256  
'Pity,' she cries ; 'some favour, some remorse !'  
Away he springs, and hasteth to his horse.

But, lo ! from forth a copse that neighbours by,  
A breeding jennet, lusty, young, and proud, 260  
Adonis' trampling courser doth espy,  
And forth she rushes, snorts and neighs aloud :  
The strong-neck'd steed, being tied unto a tree,  
Breaketh his rein, and to her straight goes he. 264

Imperiously he leaps, he neighs, he bounds,  
And now his woven girths he breaks asunder ;  
The bearing earth with his hard hoof he wounds,  
Whose hollow womb resounds like heaven's thunder ;  
The iron bit he crusheth 'tween his teeth, 269  
Controlling what he was controlled with.

•  
His ears up-prick'd ; his braided hanging mane  
Upon his compass'd crest now stand on end ; 272  
His nostrils drink the air, and forth again,  
As from a furnace, vapours doth he send :  
His eye, which scornfully glisters like fire,  
Shows his hot courage and his high desire. 276

Sometime he trots, as if he told the steps,  
With gentle majesty and modest pride ;  
Anon he rears upright, curvets and leaps,  
As who should say, 'Lo ! thus my strength is tried ;  
And this I do to captivate the eye 281  
Of the fair breeder that is standing by.'

What recketh he his rider's angry stir,  
 His flattering 'Holla', or his 'Stand, I say' ? 284  
 What cares he now for curb or pricking spur ?  
 For rich caparisons or trapping gay ?

He sees his love, and nothing else he sees,  
 Nor nothing else with his proud sight agrees. 288

Look, when a painter would surpass the life,  
 In limning out a well-proportion'd steed,  
 His art with nature's workmanship at strife,  
 As if the dead the living should exceed ; 292  
 So did this horse excel a common one,  
 In shape, in courage, colour, pace and bone.

Round-hoof'd, short-jointed, fetlocks shag and long,  
 Broad breast, full eye, small head, and nostril wide,  
 High crest, short ears, straight legs and passing strong,  
 Thin mane, thick tail, broad buttock, tender hide :  
 Look, what a horse should have he did not lack,  
 Save a proud rider on so proud a back.. 300

Sometimes he scuds far off, and there he stares ;  
 Anon he starts at stirring of a feather ;  
 To bid the wind a base he now prepares,  
 And whe'r he run or fly they know not whether ; 304  
 For through his mane and tail the high wind sings,  
 Fanning the hairs, who wave like feather'd wings.

He looks upon his love, and neighs unto her ;  
 She answers him as if she knew his mind ; 308  
 Being proud, as females are, to see him woo her,  
 She puts on outward strangeness, seems unkind,  
 Spurns at his love and scorns the heat he feels,  
 Beating his kind embracements with her heels. 312

Then, like a melancholy malcontent,  
 He vails his tail, that, like a falling plume,  
 Cool shadow to his melting buttock lent :  
 He stamps, and bites the poor flies in his fume. 316  
 His love, perceiving how he is enrag'd,  
 Grew kinder, and his fury was assuag'd.

His testy master goeth about to take him ;  
 When lo ! the unback'd breeder, full of fear, 320  
 Jealous of catching, swiftly doth forsake him,  
 With her the horse, and left Adonis there :  
 As they were mad, unto the wood they hie them,  
 Outstripping crows that strive to overfly them. 324

All swoln with chafing, down Adonis sits,  
 Banning his boisterous and unruly beast :  
 And now the happy season once more fits,  
 That love-sick Love by pleading may be blest ; 328  
 For lovers say, the heart hath treble wrong  
 When it is barr'd the aidance of the tongue.

An oven that is stopp'd, or river stay'd,  
 Burneth more hotly, swelleth with more rage : 332  
 So of concealed sorrow may be said ;  
 Free vent of words love's fire doth assuage ;  
 But when the heart's attorney once is mute,  
 The client breaks, as desperate in his suit. 336

He sees her coming, and begins to glow,—  
 Even as a dying coal revives with wind,—  
 And with his bonnet hides his angry brow ;  
 Looks on the dull earth with disturbed mind, 340  
 Taking no notice that she is so nigh,  
 For all askance he holds her in his eye.

•  
 O ! what a sight it was, wistly to view  
 • How she came stealing to the wayward boy ; 344  
 To note the fighting conflict of her hue,  
 How white and red each other did destroy :  
 But now her cheek was pale, and by and by  
 It flash'd forth fire, as lightning from the sky. 348

Now was she just before him as he sat,  
 And like a lowly lover down she kneels ;  
 With one fair hand she heaveth up his hat,  
 Her other tender hand his fair cheek feels : 352  
 • His tenderer cheek receives her soft hand's print,  
 As apt as new-fall'n snow takes any dint.

O ! what a war of looks was then between them ;  
 Her eyes petitioners to his eyes suing ; 356  
 His eyes saw her eyes as they had not seen them ;  
 Her eyes woo'd still, his eyes disdain'd the wooing :  
 And all this dumb play had his acts made plain  
 With tears, which, chorus-like, her eyes did rain.

Full gently now she takes him by the hand, 361  
 A lily prison'd in a gaol of snow,  
 Or ivory in an alabaster band ;  
 So white a friend engirts so white a foe : 364  
 This beauteous combat, wilful and unwilling,  
 Show'd like two silver doves that sit a-billing.

Once more the engine of her thoughts began :  
 ' O fairest mover on this mortal round, 368  
 Would thou wert as I am, and I a man,  
 My heart all whole as thine, thy heart my wound ;  
 For one sweet look thy help I would assure thee,  
 Though nothing but my body's bane would cure thee.'

' Give me my hand,' saith he, ' why dost thou feel it ?'  
 ' Give me my heart,' saith she, ' and thou shalt have it ;  
 O ! give it me, lest thy hard heart do steel it,  
 And being steel'd, soft sighs can never grave it : 376  
 Then love's deep groans I never shall regard,  
 Because Adonis' heart hath made mine hard.'

' For shame,' he cries, ' let go, and let me go ;  
 My day's delight is past, my horse is gone, 380  
 And 'tis your fault I am bereft him so :  
 I pray you hence, and leave me here alone :  
 For all my mind; my thought, my busy care,  
 Is how to get my palfrey from the mare.' 384

Thus she replies : ' Thy palfrey, as he should,  
 Welcomes the warm approach of sweet desire :  
 Affection is a coal that must be cool'd ;  
 Else, suffer'd, it will set the heart on fire : 388  
 The sea hath bounds, but deep desire hath none ;  
 Therefore no marvel though thy horse be gone.

‘How like a jade he stood, tied to the tree,  
 Servilely master’d with a leathern rein ! 392  
 But when he saw his love, his youth’s fair fee,  
 He held such petty bondage in disdain;  
 Throwing the base thong from his bending crest,  
 Enfranchising his mouth, his back, his breast. 396

‘Who sees his true-love in her naked bed,  
 Teaching the sheets a whiter hue than white,  
 But, when his glutton eye so full hath fed,  
 His other agents aim at like delight ? 400  
 Who is so faint, that dare not be so bold  
 To touch the fire, the weather being cold ?

‘Let me excuse thy courser, gentle boy ;  
 And learn of him, I heartily beseech thee, 404  
 To take advantage on presented joy ;  
 Though I were dumb, yet his proceedings teach thee.  
 O learn to love ; the lesson is but plain,  
 And once made perfect, never lost again. 408

‘I know not love,’ quoth he, ‘nor will not know it,  
 Unless it be a boar, and then I chase it ;  
 ’Tis much to borrow, and I will not owe it ;  
 My love to love is love but to disgrace it ; 412  
 For I have heard it is a life in death,  
 That laughs and weeps, and all but with a breath.

•  
 ‘Who wears a garment shapeless and unfinish’d ?  
 •Who plucks the bud before one leaf put forth ? 416  
 If springing things be any jot diminish’d,  
 They wither in their prime, prove nothing worth :  
 The colt that’s back’d and burdeh’d being young  
 Loseth his pride, and never waxeth strong. 420

‘You hurt my hand with wringing ; let us part,  
 And leave this idle theme, this bootless chat :  
 Remove your siege from my unyielding heart ;  
 To love’s alarms it will not ope the gate : 424  
 Dismiss your vows, your feigned tears, your flattery ;  
 For where a heart is hard they make no battery.’



'What! canst thou talk?' quoth she, 'hast thou a tongue?  
 O! would thou hadst not, or I had no hearing; 428  
 Thy mermaid's voice hath done me double wrong;  
 I had my load before, now press'd with bearing:  
 Melodious discord, heavenly tune, harsh-sounding,  
 Ear's deep-sweet music, and heart's deep-sore wounding.

'Had I no eyes but ears, my ears would love 433  
 That inward beauty and invisible;  
 Or were I deaf, thy outward parts would move  
 Each part in me that were but sensible: 436  
 Though neither eyes nor ears, to hear nor see,  
 Yet should I be in love by touching thee.

'Say, that the sense of feeling were bereft me,  
 And that I could not see, nor hear, nor touch, 440  
 And nothing but the very smell were left me,  
 Yet would my love to thee be still as much;  
 For from the stillitory of thy face excelling  
 Comes breath perfum'd that breedeth love by smelling.

'But O! what banquet wert thou to the taste, 445  
 Being nurse and feeder of the other four;  
 Would they not wish the feast might ever last,  
 And bid Suspicion double-lock the door, 448  
 Lest Jealousy, that sour unwelcome guest,  
 Should, by his stealing in, disturb the feast?'

Once more the ruby-colour'd portal open'd,  
 Which to his speech did honey passage yield, 452  
 Like a red morn, that ever yet betoken'd  
 Wrack to the seaman, tempest to the field,  
 Sorrow to shepherds, woe unto the birds,  
 Gusts and foul flaws to herdmen and to herds. 456

This ill presage advisedly she marketh:  
 Even as the wind is hush'd before it raineth,  
 Or as the wolf doth grin before he barketh,  
 Or as the berry breaks before it staineth, 460  
 Or like the deadly bullet of a gun,  
 His meaning struck her ere his words begun.

And at his look she flatly falleth down,  
 For looks kill love, and love by looks reviveth ; 164  
 A smile recures the wounding of a frown ;  
 But blessed bankrupt, that by love so thriveth !  
 The silly boy, believing she is dead,  
 Claps her pale cheek, till clapping makes it red ; 468

And all amaz'd brake off his late intent,  
 For sharply he did think to reprehend her,  
 Which cupning love did wittily prevent :  
 Fair fall the wit that can' so well defend her ! 472  
 For on the grass she lies as she were slain,  
 Till his breath breatheth life in her again.

He wrings her nose, he strikes her on the cheeks,  
 He bends her fingers, holds her pulses hard, 476  
 He chafes her lips ; a thousand ways he seeks  
 To mend the hurt that his unkindness marr'd :  
 He kisses her ; and she, by her good will,  
 Will never rise, so he will kiss her still. 480

The night of sorrow now is turn'd to day :  
 Her two blue windows faintly she up-heaveth,  
 Like the fair sun, when in his fresh array  
 He cheers the morn, and all the world relieveth : 484  
 And as the bright sun glorifies the sky,  
 So is her face illumin'd with her eye ;

•  
 Whose beams upon his hairless face are fix'd,  
 As if from thence they borrow'd all their shine. 488  
 Were never four such lamps together mix'd,  
 Had not his clouded with his brow's repine ;  
 But hers, which through the crystal tears gave light,  
 Shone like the moon in water seen by night. 492

' O ! where am I ? ' quoth she, ' in earth or heaven,  
 Or in the ocean drench'd, or in the fire ?  
 What hour is this ? or morn or weary even ?  
 Do I delight to die, or life desire ? 496  
 But now I liv'd, and life was death's annoy ;  
 But now I died, and death was lively joy.

‘ O ! thou didst kill me ; kill me once again :  
 Thy eyes’ shrewd tutor, that hard heart of thine, 500  
 Hath taught them scornful tricks, and such disdain,  
 That they have murder’d this poor heart of mine ;  
 And these mine eyes, true leaders to their queen,  
 But for thy piteous lips no more had seen. 504

‘ Long may they kiss each other for this cure !  
 O ! never let their crimson liveries wear ;  
 And as they last, their verdure still endure,  
 To drive infection from the dangerous year : 508  
 That the star-gazers, having writ on death,  
 May say, the plague is banish’d by thy breath.

‘ Pure lips, sweet seals in my soft lips imprinted,  
 What bargains may I make, still to be sealing ? 512  
 To sell myself I can be well contented,  
 So thou wilt buy and pay and use good dealing ;  
 Which purchase if thou make, for fear of slips  
 Set thy seal-manual on my wax-red lips. 516

‘ A thousand kisses buys my heart from me ;  
 And pay them at thy leisure, one by one.  
 What is ten hundred touches unto thee ?  
 Are they not quickly told and quickly gone ? 520  
 Say, for non-payment that the debt should double,  
 Is twenty hundred kisses such a trouble ?’

‘ Fair queen,’ quoth he, ‘ if any love you owe me,  
 Measure my strangeness with my unripe years : 524  
 Before I know myself, seek not to know me ;  
 No fisher but the ungrown fry forbears :  
 The mellow plum doth fall, the green sticks fast,  
 Or being early pluck’d is sour to taste. 528

‘ Look ! the world’s comforter, with weary gait  
 His day’s hot task hath ended in the west ;  
 The owl, night’s herald, shrieks, ’tis very late ;  
 The sheep are gone to fold, birds to their nest, 532  
 And coal-black clouds that shadow heaven’s light  
 Do summon us to part, and bid good night.

' Now let me say good night, and so say you ;  
 If you will say so, you shall have a kiss.' 536  
 ' Good night,' quoth she ; and ere he says adieu  
 The honey fee of parting tender'd is :  
 Her arms do lend his neck & sweet embrace ;  
 Incorporate then they seem, face grows to face. 540

Till, breathless, he disjoin'd, and backward drew  
 The heavenly moisture, that sweet coral mouth,  
 Whose precious taste her thirsty lips well knew,  
 Whereon they surfeit, yet complain on drouth : 544  
 He with her plenty press'd, she faint with dearth,  
 Their lips together glu'd, fall to the earth.

Now quick desire hath caught the yielding prey,  
 And glutton-like she feeds, yet never filleth ; 548  
 Her lips are conquerors, his lips obey,  
 Paying what ransom the insulter willeth ;  
 Whose vulture thought doth pitch the price so high,  
 That she will draw his lips' rich treasure dry. 552

And having felt the sweetness of the spoil,  
 With blindfold fury she begins to forage ;  
 Her face doth reek and smoke, her blood doth boil,  
 And careless lust stirs up a desperate courage ; 556  
 Planting oblivion, beating reason back,  
 Forgetting shame's pure blush and honour's wrack.

•  
 Hot, faint, and weary, with her hard embracing,  
 Like a wild bird being tam'd with too much handling,  
 Or as the fleet-foot roe that's tir'd with chasing, 561  
 Or like the froward infant still'd with dandling,  
 He now obeys, and now no more resisteth,  
 While she takes all she can, not all she listeth. 564

What wax so frozen but dissolves with tempering,  
 And yields at last to every light impression ?  
 Things out of hope are compass'd oft with venturing,  
 Chiefly in love, whose leave exceeds commission : 568  
 Affection faints not like a pale-fac'd coward,  
 But then woos best when most his choice is froward.

When he did frown, O! had she then gave over,  
 Such nectar from his lips she had not suck'd. 572  
 Foul words and frowns must not repel a lover ;  
 What though the rose have prickles, yet 'tis pluck'd :  
     Were beauty under twenty locks kept fast,  
     Yet love breaks through and picks them all at last.

For pity now she can no more detain him ; 577  
 The poor fool prays her that he may depart :  
 She is resolv'd no longer to restrain him,  
 Bids him farewell, and look well to her heart, 580  
     The which, by Cupid's bow she doth protest,  
     He carries thence incaged in his breast.

' Sweet boy,' she says, ' this night I'll waste in sorrow,  
 For my sick heart commands mine eyes to watch. 584  
 Tell me, Love's master, shall we meet to-morrow ?  
 Say, shall we ? shall we ? wilt thou make the match ?'  
     He tells her, no ; to-morrow he intends  
     To hunt the boar with certain of his friends. 588

' The boar ! ' quoth she ; whereat a sudden pale,  
 Like lawn being spread upon the blushing rose,  
 Usurps her cheeks, she trembles at his tale,  
 And on his neck her yoking arms she throws : 592  
     She sinketh down, still hanging by his neck,  
     He on her belly falls, she on her back.

Now is she in the very lists of love,  
 Her champion mounted for the hot encounter : 596  
 All is imaginary she doth prove,  
 He will not manage her, although he mount her ;  
     That worse than Tantalus' is her annoy,  
     To clip Elysium and to lack her joy. 600

Even as poor birds, deceiv'd with painted grapes,  
 Do surfeit by the eye and pine the maw,  
 Even so she languisheth in her mishaps,  
 As those poor birds that helpless berries saw. 604  
     The warm effects which she in him finds missing,  
     She seeks to kindle with continual kissing.

But all in vain ; good queen, it will not be :  
 She hath assay'd as much as may be prov'd ; 908  
 Her pleading hath deserv'd a greater fee ;  
 She's Love, she loves, and yet she is not lov'd.  
 ' Fie, fie ! ' he says, ' you crush me ; let me go ;  
 You have no reason to withhold me so.' 612

' Thou hadst been gone,' quoth she, ' sweet boy, ere this,  
 But that thou told'st me thou wouldst hunt the boar.  
 O ! be advis'd ; thou know'st not what it is  
 With javelin's point a churlish swine to gore, 616  
 Whose tushes never sheath'd he whetteth still,  
 Like to a mortal butcher, bent to kill.

' On his bow-back he hath a battle set  
 Of bristly pikes, that ever threat his foes ; 620  
 His eyes like glow-worms shine when he doth fret ;  
 His snout digs sepulchres where'er he goes ;  
 Being mov'd, he strikes whate'er is in his way,  
 And whom he strikes his crooked tushes slay. 624

' His brawny sides, with hairy bristles arm'd,  
 Are better proof than thy spear's point can enter ;  
 His short thick neck cannot be easily harm'd ;  
 Being ireful, on the lion he will venture : 628  
 The thorny brambles and embracing bushes,  
 As fearful of him, part, through whom he rushes.

•  
 ' Alas ! he nought esteems that face of thine,  
 To which Love's eyes pay tributary gazes ; 632  
 Nor thy soft hands, sweet lips, and crystal eyne,  
 Whose full perfection all the world amazes ;  
 But having thee at vantage, wondrous dread !  
 Would root these beauties as he roots the mead.

' O ! let him keep his loathsome cabin still ; 637  
 Beauty hath nought to do with such foul fiends :  
 Come not within his danger by thy will ;  
 They that thrive well take counsel of their friends.  
 When thou didst name the boar, not to dissemble,  
 I fear'd thy fortune, and my joints did tremble.

' Didst thou not mark my face ? was it not white ?  
 Saw'st thou not signs of fear lurk in mine eye ? 644  
 Grew I not faint ? And fell I not downright ?  
 Within my bosom, whereon thou dost lie,  
 My boding heart pants,\* beats, and takes no rest,  
 But, like an earthquake, shakes thee on my breast.

' For where Love reigns, disturbing Jealousy 649  
 Doth call himself Affection's sentinel ;  
 Gives false alarms, suggesteth mutiny,  
 And in a peaceful hour doth cry " Kill, kill ! " 652  
 Distempering gentle Love in his desire,  
 As air and water do abate the fire.

' This sour informer, this bate-breeding spy,  
 This canker that eats up Love's tender spring, 656  
 This carry-tale, dissentious Jealousy,  
 That sometime true news, sometime false doth bring,  
 Knocks at my heart, and whispers in mine ear  
 That if I love thee, I thy death should fear : 660

' And more than so, presenteth to mine eye  
 The picture of an angry-chafing boar,  
 Under whose sharp fangs on his back doth lie  
 An image like thyself, all stain'd with gore ; 664  
 Whose blood upon the fresh flowers being shed  
 Doth make them droop with grief and hang the head.

' What should I do, seeing thee so indeed,  
 That tremble at the imagination ? 668  
 The thought of it doth make my faint heart bleed,  
 And fear doth teach it divination :  
 I prophesy thy death, my living sorrow,  
 If thou encounter with the boar to-morrow. 672

' But if thou needs wilt hunt, be rul'd by me ;  
 Uncouple at the timorous flying hare,  
 Or at the fox which lives by subtilty,  
 Or at the roe which no encounter dare : 676  
 Pursue these fearful creatures o'er the downs,  
 And on thy well-breath'd horse keep with thy hounds.

' And when thou hast on foot the purblind hare,  
Mark the poor wretch, to overshoot his troubles 380  
How he outruns the winds, and with what care  
He cranks and crosses with a thousand doubles :  
The many musits through the which he goes  
Are like a labyrinth to amaze his foes. 684

' Sometime he runs among a flock of sheep,  
To make the cunning hounds mistake their smell,  
And sometime where earth-delving conies keep,  
To stop the loud pursuers in their yell, 688  
And sometime sorteth with a herd of deer ;  
Danger deviseth shifts, wit waits on fear :

' For there his smell with others being mingled, 691  
The hot scent-snuffing hounds are driven to doubt,  
Ceasing their clamorous cry till they have singled  
With much ado the cold fault cleanly out ;  
Then do they spend their mouths : Echo replies,  
As if another chase were in the skies. 696

' By this, poor Wat, far off upon a hill,  
Stands on his hinder legs with listening ear,  
To hearken if his foes pursue him still :  
Anon their loud alarums he doth hear ; 700  
And now his grief may be compared well  
To one sore sick that hears the passing bell.

•  
' Then shalt thou see the dew-bedabbled wretch  
Turn, and return, indenting with the way ; 704  
Each envious briar his weary legs doth scratch,  
Each shadow makes him stop, each murmur stay :  
For misery is trodden on by many,  
And being low never reliev'd by any. 708

' Lie quietly, and hear a little more ;  
Nay, do not struggle, for thou shalt not rise :  
To make thee hate the hunting of the boar,  
Unlike myself thou hear'st me moralize, 712  
Applying this to that, and so to so ;  
For love can comment upon every woe.



'Where did I leave?' 'No matter where,' quoth he;  
 'Leave me, and then the story aptly ends: 716  
 The night is spent,' 'Why, what of that?' quoth she.  
 'I am,' quoth he, 'expected of my friends;  
 And now 'tis dark, and going I shall fall.'  
 'In night,' quoth she, 'desire sees best of all.' 720

But if thou fall, O! then imagine this,  
 The earth, in love with thee, thy footing trips,  
 And all is but to rob thee of a kiss. 723  
 Rich preys make true men thieves; so do thy lips  
 Make modest Dian cloudy and forlorn,  
 Lest she should steal a kiss and die forsworn.

'Now of this dark night I perceive the reason:  
 Cynthia for shame obscures her silver shine, 728  
 Till forging Nature be condemn'd of treason,  
 For stealing moulds from heaven that were divine;  
 Wherein she fram'd thee in high heaven's despite,  
 To shame the sun by day and her by night. 732

'And therefore hath she brib'd the Destinies,  
 To cross the curious workmanship of nature,  
 To mingle beauty with infirmities,  
 And pure perfection with impure defeature; 736  
 Making it subject to the tyranny  
 Of mad mischances and much misery;

'As burning fevers, agues pale and faint,  
 Life-poisoning pestilence and frenzies wood, 740  
 The marrow-eating sickness, whose attaint  
 Disorder breeds by heating of the blood;  
 Surfeits, imposthumes, grief, and damn'd despair,  
 Swear nature's death for framing thee so fair. 744

'And not the least of all these maladies  
 But in one minute's fight brings beauty under: .  
 Both favour, savour, hue, and qualities,  
 Whereat the impartial gazer late did wonder, 748  
 Are on the sudden wasted, thaw'd and done,  
 As mountain-snow melts with the mid-day sun.

‘ Therefore, despite of fruitless chastity,  
Love-lacking vestals and self-loving nuns, 752  
That on the earth would breed a scarcity  
And barren dearth of daughters and of sons,  
Be prodigal : the lamp that burns by night  
Dries up his oil to lend the world his light. 756

‘ What is thy body but a swallowing grave,  
Seeming to bury that posterity  
Which by the rights of time thou needs must have,  
If thou destroy them not in dark obscurity? 760  
If so, the world will hold thee in disdain,  
Sith in thy pride so fair a hope is slain.

‘ So in thyself thyself art made away ;  
A mischief worse than civil home-bred strife, 764  
Or theirs whose desperate hands themselves do slay,  
Or butcher-sire that reaves his son of life.  
Foul-cankering rust the hidden treasure frets,  
But gold that’s put to use more gold begets ’ 768

‘ Nay then,’ quoth Adon, ‘ you will fall again  
Into your idle over-handled theme ;  
The kiss I gave you is bestow’d in vain,  
And all in vain you strive against the stream ; 772  
For by this black-fac’d night, desire’s foul nurse,  
Your treatise makes me like you worse and worse.

•  
‘ If love have lent you twenty thousand tongues,  
And every tongue more moving than your own, 776  
Bewitching like the wanton mermaid’s songs,  
Yet from mine ear the tempting tupe is blown ;  
For know, my heart stands armed in mine ear,  
And will not let a false sound enter there ; 780

•  
‘ Lest the deceiving harmony should run  
Into the quiet closure of my breast ;  
And then my little heart were quite undone,  
In his bedchamber to be barr’d of rest. 784  
No, lady, no ; my heart longs not to groan,  
But soundly sleeps, while now it sleeps alone.

' What have you urg'd that I cannot reprove ?  
 The path is smooth that leadeth on to danger ; 788  
 I hate not love, but your device in love,  
 That lends embracements unto every stranger.

You do it for increase : O strange excuse !  
 When reason is the bawd to lust's abuse. 792

' Call it not love, for Love to heaven is fled,  
 Since sweating Lust on earth usurp'd his name ;  
 Under whose simple semblance he hath fed •  
 Upon fresh beauty, blotting it with blame ; 796  
 Which the hot tyrant stains and soon bereaves,  
 As caterpillars do the tender leaves.

' Love comforteth like sunshine after rain,  
 But Lust's effect is tempest after sun ; 800  
 Love's gentle spring doth always fresh remain,  
 Lust's winter comes ere summer half be done.

Love surfeits not, Lust like a glutton dies ;  
 Love is all truth, Lust full of forged lies. 804

' More I could tell, but more I dare not say ;  
 The text is old, the orator too green.  
 Therefore, in sadness, now I will away ;  
 My face is full of shame, my heart of teen : 808  
 Mine ears, that to your wanton talk attended,  
 Do burn themselves for having so offended.'

With this he breaketh from the sweet embrace 811  
 Of those fair arms which bound him to her breast,  
 And homeward through the dark laund runs apace ;  
 Leaves Love upon her back deeply distress'd.

Look, how a bright star shooteth from the sky  
 So glides he in the night from Venus' eye ; 816

Which after him she darts, as one on shore  
 Gazing upon a late-embarked friend,  
 Till the wild waves will have him seen no more,  
 Whose ridges with the meeting clouds contend : 820  
 So did the merciless and pitchy night  
 Fold in the object that did feed her sight.

Whereat amaz'd, as one that unaware  
 Hath dropp'd a precious jewel in the flood, 824  
 Or 'stonish'd as night-wanderers often are,  
 Their light blown out in some mistrustful wood :  
 Even so confounded in the dark she lay,  
 Having lost the fair discovery of her way. 828

And now she beats her heart, whereat it groans,  
 That all the neighbour caves, as seeming troubled,  
 Make verbal repetition of her moans ;  
 Passion on passion deeply is redoubled : 832  
 ' Ay me ! ' she cries, and twenty times, ' Woe, woe ! '  
 And twenty echoes twenty times cry so.

She marking them, begins a wailing note,  
 And sings extemporally a woeful ditty ; 836  
 How love makes young men thrall and old men dote ;  
 How love is wise in folly, foolish-witty :  
 Her heavy anthem still concludes in woe,  
 And still the choir of echoes answer so. 840

Her song was tedious, and outwore the night,  
 For lovers' hours are long, though seeming short :  
 If pleas'd themselves, others, they think, delight  
 In such like circumstance, with such like sport : 844  
 Their copious stories, oftentimes begun,  
 End without audience, and are never done.

For who hath she to spend the night withal,  
 But idle sounds resembling parasites ; 848  
 Like shrill-tongu'd tapsters answering every call,  
 Soothing the humour of fantastic wits ?  
 She says, ' 'Tis so : ' they answer all, ' 'Tis so ; '  
 And would say after her, if she said ' No '. 852

Lo ! here the gentle lark, weary of rest,  
 From his moist cabinet mounts up on high,  
 And wakes the morning, from whose silver breast  
 The sun ariseth in his majesty ; 856  
 Who doth the world so gloriously behold,  
 That cedar-tops and hills seem burnish'd gold.

Venus salutes him with this fair good morrow :  
'O thou clear god, and patron of all light, 860  
From whom each lamp and shining star doth borrow  
The beauteous influence that makes him bright,  
There lives a son that suck'd an earthly mother,  
May lend thee light, as thou dost lend to other.'

This said, she hasteth to a myrtle grove, 865  
Musing the morning is so much o'erworn,  
And yet she hears no tidings of her love ;  
She hearkens for his hounds and for his horn : 868  
Anon she hears them chant it lustily,  
And all in haste she coasteth to the cry.

And as she runs, the bushes in the way  
Some catch her by the neck, some kiss her face, 872  
Some twine about her thigh to make her stay :  
She wildly breaketh from their strict embrace,  
Like a milch doe, whose swelling dugs do ache,  
Hasting to feed her fawn hid in some brake. 876

By this she hears the hounds are at a bay ;  
Whereat she starts, like one that spies an adder  
Wreath'd up in fatal folds just in his way,  
The fear whereof doth make him shake and shudder ;  
Even so the timorous yelping of the hounds 881  
Appals her senses, and her spirit confounds.

For now she knows it is no gentle chase,  
But the blunt boar, rough bear, or lion proud, 884  
Because the cry remaineth in one place,  
Where fearfully the dogs exclaim aloud :  
Finding their enemy to be so curst,  
They all strain courtesy who shall cope him first.

This dismal cry rings sadly in her ear, 889  
Through which it enters to surprise her heart ;  
Who, overcome by doubt and bloodless fear,  
With cold-pale weakness numbs each feeling part ;  
Like soldiers, when their captain once doth yield,  
They basely fly and dare not stay the field.

Thus stands she in a trembling ecstasy,  
Till, cheering up her senses sore dismay'd, 896  
She tells them 'tis a causeless fantasy,  
And childish error, that they are afraid ;  
Bids them leave quaking, bids them fear no more :  
And with that word she spied the hunted boar ;

Whose frothy mouth bepainted all with red, 901  
Like milk and blood being mingled both together,  
A second fear through all her sinews spread,  
Which madly hurries her she knows not whither : 904  
This way she runs, and now she will no further,  
But back retires to rate the boar for murther.

A thousand spleens bear her a thousand ways,  
She treads the path that she untreads again ; 908  
Her more than haste is mated with delays,  
Like the proceedings of a drunken brain,  
Full of respects, yet nought at all respecting,  
In hand with all things, nought at all effecting.

Here kennel'd in a brake she finds a hound, 913  
And asks the weary caitiff for his master,  
And there another licking of his wound,  
'Gainst venom'd sores the only sovereign plaster ; 916  
And here she meets another sadly scowling,  
To whom she speaks, and he replies with howling.

When he hath ceas'd his ill-resounding noise,  
Another flap-mouth'd mourner, black and grim, 920  
Against the welkin volleys out his voice ;  
Another and another answer him,  
Clapping their proud tails to the ground below,  
Shaking their scratch'd ears, bleeding as they go.

Look, how the world's poor people are amaz'd 925  
At apparitions, signs, and prodigies,  
Whereon with fearful eyes they long have gaz'd,  
Infusing them with dreadful prophecies ; 928  
So she at these sad sighs draws up her breath,  
And, sighing it again, exclaims on Death.

' Hard-favour'd tyrant, ugly, meagre, lean, 931  
 Hateful divorce of love,'—thus chides she Death,—  
 ' Grim-grinning ghost, earth's worm, what dost thou mean  
 To stifle beauty and to steal his breath,  
 Who when he liv'd, his 'breath and beauty set  
 Gloss on the rose, smell to the violet ? 936

' If he be dead, O no ! it cannot be,  
 Seeing his beauty, thou shouldst strike at it ;  
 O yes ! it may ; thou hast no eyes to see,  
 But hatefully at random dost thou hit. 940  
 Thy mark is feeble age, but thy false dart  
 Mistakes that aim and cleaves an infant's heart.

' Hadst thou but bid beware, then he had spoke,  
 And, hearing him, thy power had lost his power. 944  
 The Destinies will curse thee for this stroke ;  
 They bid thee crop a weed, thou pluck'st a flower.  
 Love's golden arrow at him should have fled,  
 And not Death's ebon dart, to strike him dead. 948

' Dost thou drink tears, that thou provok'st such weeping ?  
 What may a heavy groan advantage thee ?  
 Why hast thou cast into eternal sleeping  
 Those eyes that taught all other eyes to see ? 952  
 Now Nature cares not for thy mortal vigour,  
 Since her best work is ruin'd with thy rigour.'

Here overcome, as one full of despair,  
 She vail'd her eyelids, who, like sluices, stopp'd 956  
 The crystal tide that from her two cheeks fair  
 In the sweet channel of her bosom dropp'd ;  
 But through the flood-gates breaks the silver rain,  
 And with his strong course opens them again. 960

O ! how her eyes and tears did lend and borrow ;  
 Her eyes seen in the tears, tears in her eye ;  
 Both crystals, where they view'd each other's sorrow,  
 Sorrow that friendly sighs sought still to dry ; 964  
 But like a stormy day, now wind, now rain,  
 Sighs dry her cheeks, tears make them wet again.

Variable passions throng her constant woe,  
 As striving who should best become her grief ; 966  
 All entertain'd, each passion labours so,  
 That every present sorrow seemeth chief,  
 But none is best ; then join they all together,  
 Like many clouds consulting for foul weather. 972

By this, far off she hears some huntsman holloa ;  
 A nurse's song ne'er pleas'd her babe so well :  
 The dire imagination she did follow  
 This sound of hope doth labour to expel ; 976  
 For now reviving joy bids her rejoice,  
 And flatters her it is Adonis' voice.

Whereat her tears began to turn their tide,  
 Being prison'd in her eye, like pearls in glass ; 980  
 Yet sometimes falls an orient drop beside,  
 Which her cheek melts, as scorning it should pass  
 To wash the foul face of the sluttish ground,  
 Who is but drunken when she seemeth drown'd.

O hard-believing love ! how strange it seems 985  
 Not to believe, and yet too credulous ;  
 Thy weal and woe are both of them extremes ;  
 Despair and hope make thee ridiculous : 988  
 The one doth flatter thee in thoughts unlikely,  
 In likely thoughts the other kills thee quickly.

•  
 Now she unweaves the web that she hath wrought,  
 Adonis lives, and Death is not to blame ; 992  
 It was not she that call'd him all to naught,  
 Now she adds honours to his hateful name ;  
 She clepes him king of graves, and grave for kings,  
 Imperious supreme of all mortal things. 996

'No, no,' quoth she, 'sweet Death, I did but jest ;  
 Yet pardon me, I felt a kind of fear  
 Whenas I met the boar, that bloody beast,  
 Which knows no pity, but is still severe ; 1000  
 Then, gentle shadow,—truth I must confess —  
 I rail'd on thee, fearing my love's decease.



'Tis not my fault : the boar provok'd my tongue ;  
 Be wreak'd on him, invisible commander ; 1004  
 'Tis he, foul creature, that hath done thee wrong ;  
 I did but act, he 's author of my slander :  
 Grief hath two tongues : and never woman yet,  
 Could rule them both without ten women's wit.'

Thus hoping that Adonis is alive, 1009  
 Her rash suspect she doth extenuate ;  
 And that his beauty may the better thrive,  
 With Death she humbly doth insinuate ; 1012  
 Tells him of trophies, statues, tombs ; and stories  
 His victories, his triumphs, and his glories.

' O Jove ! ' quoth she, ' how much a fool was I,  
 To be of such a weak and silly mind 1016  
 To wail his death who lives and must not die  
 Till mutual overthrow of mortal kind ;  
 For he being dead, with him is beauty slain,  
 And, beauty dead, black chaos comes again. 1020

' Fie, fie, fond love ! thou art so full of fear  
 As one with treasure laden, hemm'd with thieves  
 Trifles, unwitnessed with eye or ear,  
 Thy coward heart with false bethinking grieves.' 1024  
 Even at this word she hears a merry horn,  
 Whereat she leaps that was but late forlorn.

As falcon to the lure, away she flies ;  
 The grass stoops not, she treads on it so light ; 1028  
 And in her haste unfortunately spies  
 The foul boar's conquest on her fair delight ;  
 Which seen, her eyes, as murder'd with the view,  
 Like stars asham'd of day, themselves withdrew :

Or, as the snail, whose tender horns being hit, 1033  
 Shrinks backwards in his shelly cave with pain,  
 And there, all smother'd up, in shade doth sit,  
 Long after fearing to creep forth again ; 1036  
 So, at his bloody view, her eyes are fled  
 Into the deep dark cabins of her head ;

Where they resign their office and their light  
 To the disposing of her troubled brain ; 1040  
 Who bids them still consort with ugly night,  
 And never wound the heart with looks again ;  
 Who, like a king perplexed in his throne,  
 By their suggestion gives a deadly groan, 1044

Whereat each tributary subject quakes ;  
 As when the wind, imprison'd in the ground,  
 Struggling for passage, earth's foundation shakes,  
 Which with cold terror doth men's minds confound.  
 This mutiny each part doth so surprise 1049  
 That from their dark beds once more leap her eyes ;

And, being open'd, threw unwilling light  
 Upon the wide wound that the boar had trench'd  
 In his soft flank ; whose wonted lily white 1053  
 With purple tears, that his wound wept, was drench'd :  
 No flower was nigh, no grass, herb, leaf, or weed,  
 But stole his blood and seem'd with him to bleed.

This solemn sympathy poor Venus noteth, 1057  
 Over one shoulder doth she hang her head,  
 Dumbly she passions, frantically she doteth ;  
 She thinks he could not die, he is not dead : 1060  
 Her voice is stopp'd, her joints forget to bow,  
 Her eyes are mad that they have wept till now.

•  
 Upon his hurt she looks so steadfastly,  
 That her sight dazzling makes the wound seem three ;  
 And then she reprehends her mangling eye, 1065  
 That makes more gashes where no breach should be :  
 His face seems twain, each several limb is doubled ;  
 For oft the eye mistakes, the brain being troubled.

•  
 ' My tongue cannot express my grief for one, 1069  
 And yet,' quoth she, ' behold two Adons dead !  
 My sighs are blown away, my salt tears gone,  
 Mine eyes are turn'd to fire, my heart to lead : 1072  
 Heavy heart's lead, melt at mine eyes' red fire !  
 So shall I die by drops of hot desire.

' Alas ! poor world, what treasure hast thou lost !  
 What face remains alive that 's worth the viewing ?  
 Whose tongue is music now ? what canst thou boast  
 Of things long since, or anything ensuing ? 1078

The flowers are sweet, their colours fresh and trim ;  
 But true-sweet beauty liv'd and died with him.

' Bonnet nor veil henceforth no creature wear ! 1081  
 Nor sun nor wind will ever strive to kiss you :  
 Having no fair to lose, you need not fear ;  
 The sun doth scorn you, and the wind doth hiss you :  
 But when Adonis liv'd, sun and sharp air 1085  
 Lurk'd like two thieves, to rob him of his fair :

' And therefore would he put his bonnet on,  
 Under whose brim the gaudy sun would peep ; 1088  
 The wind would blow it off, and, being gone,  
 Play with his locks : then would Adonis weep ;  
 And straight, in pity of his tender years,  
 They both would strive who first should dry his tears.

' To see his face the lion walk'd along 1093  
 Behind some hedge, because he would not fear him ;  
 To recreate himself when he hath sung,  
 The tiger would be tame and gently hear him ; 1096  
 If he had spoke, the wolf would leave his prey,  
 And never fright the silly lamb that day.

' When he beheld his shadow in the brook,  
 The fishes spread on it their golden gills ; 1100  
 When he was by, the birds such pleasure took,  
 That some would sing, some other in their bills  
 Would bring him mulberries and ripe-red cherries .  
 He fed them with his sight, they him with berries.

' But this foul, grim, and urchin-snouted boar, 1105  
 Whose downward eye still looketh for a grave,  
 Ne'er saw the beauteous livery that he wore ;  
 Witness the entertainment that he gave : 1108  
 If he did see his face, why then I know  
 He thought to kiss him, and hath kill'd him so.

'Tis true, 'tis true ; thus was Adonis slain :  
 He ran upon the boar with his sharp spear, 1102  
 Who did not whet his teeth at him again,  
 But by a kiss thought to persuade him there ;  
 And nuzzling in his flank, the loving swine  
 Sheath'd unaware the tusk in his soft groin. 1116

' Had I been tooth'd like him, I must confess,  
 With kissing him I should have kill'd him first ;  
 But he is dead, and never did he bless  
 My youth with his ; the more am I accurst.' 1120  
 With this she falleth in the place she stood,  
 And stains her face with his congealed blood.

She looks upon his lips, and they are pale ;  
 She takes him by the hand, and that is cold ; 1124  
 She whispers in his ears a heavy tale,  
 As if they heard the woeful words she told ;  
 She lifts the coffer-lids that close his eyes,  
 Where, lo ! two lamps, burnt out, in darkness lies ;

Two glasses where herself herself beheld 1129  
 A thousand times, and now no more reflect ;  
 Their virtue lost, wherein they late excell'd,  
 And every beauty robb'd of his effect : 1132  
 ' Wonder of time,' quoth she, ' this is my spite,  
 That, you being dead, the day should yet be light.

' Since thou art dead, lo ! here I prophesy,  
 Sorrow on love hereafter shall attend : 1136  
 It shall be waited on with jealousy,  
 Find sweet beginning, but unsavoury end ;  
 Ne'er settled equally, but high or low ;  
 That all love's pleasure shall not match his woe.

' It shall be fickle, false, and full of fraud, 1141  
 Bud and be blasted in a breathing-while ;  
 The bottom poison, and the top o'erstraw'd  
 With sweets that shall the truest sight beguile : 1144  
 The strongest body shall it make most weak,  
 Strike the wise dumb and teach the fool to speak.

' It shall be sparing and too full of riot,  
 Teaching decrepit age to tread the measures ; 1148  
 The staring ruffian shall it keep in quiet,  
 Pluck down the rich, enrich the poor with treasures ;  
 It shall be raging mad, and silly mild,  
 Make the young old, the old become a child. 1152

' It shall suspect where is no cause of fear ;  
 It shall not fear where it should most mistrust ;  
 It shall be merciful, and too severe,  
 And most deceiving when it seems most just ; 1156  
 Perverse it shall be, where it shows most toward,  
 Put fear to valour, courage to the coward.

' It shall be cause of war and dire events,  
 And set dissension 'twixt the son and sire ; 1160  
 Subject and servile to all discontents,  
 As dry combustious matter is to fire :  
 Sith in his prime Death doth my love destroy,  
 They that love best their love shall not enjoy.' 1164

By this, the boy that by her side lay kill'd  
 Was melted like a vapour from her sight,  
 And in his blood that on the ground lay spill'd,  
 A purple flower sprung up, chequer'd with white ; 1168  
 Resembling well his pale cheeks, and the blood  
 Which in round drops upon their whiteness stood.

She bows her head, the new-sprung flower to smell,  
 Comparing it to her Adonis' breath ; 1172  
 And says within her bosom it shall dwell,  
 Since he himself is reft from her by death :  
 She crops the stalk, and in the breach appears  
 Green dropping sap, which she compares to tears.

' Poor flower,' quoth she, ' this was thy father's guise,  
 Sweet issue of a more sweet-smelling sire,  
 For every little grief to wet his eyes :  
 To grow unto himself was his desire, 1180  
 And so 'tis thine ; but know, it is as good  
 To wither in my breast as in his blood.

' Here was thy father's bed, here in my breast ;  
Thou art the next of blood, and 'tis thy right : 1184  
Lo ! in this hollow cradle take thy rest,  
My throbbing heart shall rock thee day and night :  
There shall not be one minute in an hour  
Wherein I will not kiss my sweet love's flower.'

Thus weary of the world, away she hies, 1189  
And yokes her silver doves ; by whose swift aid  
Their mistress, mounted, through the empty skies  
In her light chariot quickly is convey'd ; 1192  
Holding their course to Paphos, where their queen  
Means to immure herself and not be seen.



# THE RAPE OF LUCRECE





# THE RAPE OF LUCRECE

## INTRODUCTION

IN the dedication of *Venus and Adonis* to the young Earl of Southampton Shakespeare gave promise of a poem to follow, and perhaps to surpass, the 'first heir' of his invention: 'if your honour seem but pleased, I account myself highly praised, and vow to take advantage of all idle hours, till I have honoured you with some graver labour.' These words appeared in print in 1593. On May 9, 1594, Shakespeare's second non-dramatic poem was entered to Master Harrison senior, in the Stationers' Register, under the title 'the Ravyshement of Lucrece'. It was published in the same year, having been printed 'by Richard Field for John Harrison', and was named on the title-page *Lucrece*; the running title was *The Rape of Lucrece*: these words appeared for the first time on the title-page, and with the name of the author for the first time, in an edition of 1616 (the year of Shakespeare's death) which is described, but with slight warrant, as 'newly revised'. This, which was the fifth edition, was followed in 1624 by a sixth; the poem evidently was popular, but was somewhat less popular than *Venus and Adonis*.

We cannot doubt that *Lucrece* was the 'graver labour', the achievement of which Shakespeare had anticipated in 1593. It deals with matter of history rather than of mythology; it is more tragic in subject, it is of much greater length, than the earlier poem. Again the poet dedicates his work to Southampton, but now in terms of the warmest devotion: 'The love I dedicate to your Lordship is without end. . . . What I have done is yours; what I have to do is yours; being part in all I have, devoted yours.' The date of composition, 1593-4, is determined with certainty and with unusual precision. In 1594 was also published *Titus Andronicus*; a surviving copy, found in Sweden in 1905, now represents the entire edition. Attention

has been called by Dr. Sidney Lee to the fact that both *Titus* and *Lucrece* are founded upon Roman history, and that the wrong inflicted upon Lucrece has a certain parallel, but yet more savage, in the outrages endured by Lavinia, the daughter of Titus. Tarquin,

That left the camp to sin in Lucrece' bed,

is mentioned in ll. 63, 64 of Act iv, Scene i, of the play. Whether Shakespeare wrote or merely revised *Titus Andronicus*, his imagination was occupied in the year 1593-4 with the horrors of unlicensed passion and injured chastity.

The two narrative poems of Shakespeare may be viewed as companion pieces; the second reverses the motive of the first. In *Venus and Adonis* the Queen of Love pleads, entreats, caresses; but the boy cares only for the chase, and she cannot attain the fulfilment of her longing; death suddenly enters, and she is defrauded of all her hopes and desires. In *Lucrece* a man is inflamed by evil passion; he triumphs over the chaste wife who is his victim, but has no joy in his triumph; and death again, not now through misadventure, but self-inflicted and deliberate, closes the scene. The metre is no longer the stanza of six lines; it is the more beautiful seven-line stanza which Chaucer had adopted from the French, and used with the finest effects in his *Troilus and Criseyde*.

Chaucer had told the story of Lucrece in *The Legende of Good Women*. It is almost certain that Shakespeare read it in Chaucer's version; but that great master of poetical narrative told the story briefly in some two hundred lines, and treated it, with a strong flow of interest in the action, in a manner far different from that of Shakespeare. Before Tarquinius—in Chaucer's poem—leaves the besieged Ardea all in post on his dreadful adventure, he has had proof of the wifely fidelity of Lucrece, and there is a meeting full of tender joy between Colatyne and his beloved. There are brief speeches, all tending to action, in Chaucer's poem, but no long tirades, no inlaid moralizings, no cumbrous digressions; the tragic tale hastens to its close. Yet we can hear some echoes of Chaucer's verse in Shakespeare's *Lucrece*. 'Chaucer,' writes Mr. Wyndham,

omits Lucretia's unsuspecting welcome of Tarquin, making him "*stalke*" straight into the house, "ful theefly". Shakespeare retains [from Ovid] the welcome, and reserves the phrase, "Into the chamber wickedly he stalks," for a later incident. On the other hand, Chaucer renders the passage, *Tunc quoque jam moriens ne non procumbat honeste, respicit*, somewhat quaintly:—

And as she fel adown, she cast her look  
And of her clothës yit she hedð took,  
For in her falling yit she haddë care  
Lest that her feet or swichë thing lay bare:—

and Shakespeare omits it. Both keep the image of the lamb and the wolf, together with Lucretia's *flavi capilli*, which are nowhere mentioned by Livy.

Chaucer refers to his authorities 'Ovyde and Titus Lyvius'. To these authorities rather than to Gower in the *Confessio Amantis*, or to Lydgate in his *Fall of Princes*, Shakespeare is indebted. But a book which Shakespeare took loans from in some of his plays—Paynter's *Palace of Pleasure*—was probably known to him when he worked upon his *Lucrece*. The tale of Tarquin's crime is the 'Second Novell' in that great collection. We know that an English ballad on the subject of Tarquin and Lucretia existed in Shakespeare's time, but we cannot tell whether or not it had been seen by him. It may be said with assurance that his chief sources were the *Fasti* of Ovid, and the history of Livy, known probably at first hand and also through Paynter's version. The *Fasti* was not translated into English, as far as we know, until 1640. There can be little doubt that Shakespeare's knowledge of Latin was sufficient to enable him to construe the original. In the digression which describes the 'painting made for Priam's Troy' a debt to Virgil can be discovered.

The art of Shakespeare in his *Lucrece* concerned itself in chief with the expansion, dramatic or quasi-dramatic, of his material derived from Ovid and Livy. If a critic should presumptuously play the part of Polonius, he might apply to this poem the words of that grave and reverend elder—'This is too long.' Its faults are the same as the faults of *Venus and Adonis*; it is too laborious a study of all that could be said in each

situation presented; the deep things that come from the sub-conscious self of an artist possessed by a great theme appear too rarely; an elaborate rhetoric displaces those sudden outbreaks of nature which distinguish Shakespeare's greater dramas. There is less of sensuous beauty than we find in *Venus and Adonis*; there is more of ethical reflection; there is the same ingenious casuistry; there are fewer passages of relief among the sounds and sights of external nature. Shakespeare's dramatic instinct delays the narrative; and the necessity of narrative makes the dramatic instinct toil, as it were, against the stream. Yet, though as faulty, it is a greater poem than *Venus and Adonis*; the theme gives scope for deeper passion. As we can understand the one poem only by abandoning ourselves for a time to the Renaissance lust for beauty, so we can understand the other only by abandoning ourselves for a time to the Renaissance delight in what then would have been described as 'wit', that is, the ingenuity of intellect prompted by imagination. 'Lucrece,' I have written elsewhere, 'in her agony delivers tirades on Night, on Time, on Opportunity, including, indeed, lines of power and grandeur, but written in passages as if they were theses for a degree in some academy of wit. Still the effect on a reader in the right mood is not that of frigid cleverness; the faults are partly those of the age, partly the errors of immaturity. . . . Now and again the poetry surprises, not by singularity, but as Keats has said that poetry ought to surprise, by a fine excess; among lines of gilded and twisted rhetoric appear lines which are of unalloyed poetic gold.' If we place *Lucrece* side by side with kindred work of Shakespeare's contemporaries, we shall see that it is a remarkable study in a province of art which was not properly his own.

By one of these achievements of his contemporaries, a poem in the same seven-line stanza, it is evident that Shakespeare was to some extent influenced. *The Complaint of Rosamond*, by Samuel Daniel, was published, together with the second edition of his sonnet-sequence *Delia*, in 1592. In 1594 appeared a new edition 'augmented'. The subject of fair Rosamond's ruin had something in common with that of Shake-

spears's *Lucrece*. Daniel's poem has fewer sins against good judgement and good taste than Shakespeare's; it is written with a more level equality of style; but it has incomparably fewer beauties. Daniel's brain was slow and regular in its working; Shakespeare's was nimble and adventurous. For some points of detail I may be permitted to quote from Dr. Sidney Lee's Introduction to this poem in the Clarendon Press facsimile of the first edition: 'Both heroines seek consolation from a work of art. Shakespeare's *Lucrece* closely scans a picture of the siege of Troy, the details of which she applies to her own sad circumstance. Daniel's *Rosamond* examines a casket finely engraved with ornament suggesting her own sufferings. . . . *Rosamond's* casket was wrought

So rare that art did seem to strive with nature  
To express the cunning workman's curious thought.

To Shakespeare's piece of skilful painting

In scorn of nature, art gave lifeless life.

Daniel's phraseology seems to be echoed in single lines such as these:—

*An expir'd date cancell'd ere well begun (Lucrece, 26).*

*Cancell'd with Time, will have their date expir'd (Rosamond, 242).*

*Sable night, mother of dread and fear (Lucrece, 117).*

*Night, mother of sleep and fear, who with her sable mantle (Rosamond, 432).'*

Additional examples follow in Dr. Lee's pages; those quoted, with others, had been noticed by Malone.

But Shakespeare's greatest lines are wholly his own. Of these some are hardly surpassed by those wonderful utterances in his plays where thought or passion amasses itself into one brief memorable phrase.

For sorrow, like a heavy-hanging bell,  
Once set on ringing, with his own weight goes.

It is not easy in two lines to say more, or to say it more imaginatively. And how could the meeting of the wronged wife and her husband be rendered with a finer instinct for truth than in the following lines?

He hath no power to ask her how she fares:  
Both stood like old acquaintance in a trance,  
Met far from home, wondering each other's chance.

Perhaps in Renaissance days the liability to error through over-ingenious conceits was often a condition of that animation and vividness of mind which produced the deeper things of the imagination. The instance of John Donne may be cited in support of this suggestion; we find in him wire-drawn ingenuities, and with these a revelation of the true mysteries of the heart. The same may be said of the poem before us. That Shakespeare, however, in writing narrative poetry was deserting his true line of development is evidenced by the fact that, unless possibly in *A Lover's Complaint*, his work of this kind ceased with *The Rape of Lucrece*.

# THE RAPE OF LUCRECE

TO THE RIGHT HONOURABLE  
HENRY WRIOTHESLEY

EARL OF SOUTHAMPTON AND BARON OF TICHFIELD

THE love I dedicate to your lordship is without end; whereof this pamphlet, without beginning, is but a superfluous moiety. The warrant I have of your honourable disposition, not the worth of my untutored lines, makes it assured of acceptance. What I have done is yours; what I have to do is yours; being part in all I have, devoted yours. Were my worth greater, my duty would show greater; meantime, as it is, it is bound to your lordship, to whom I wish long life, still lengthened with happiness.

Your lordship's in all duty,  
WILLIAM SHAKESPEARE.

## THE ARGUMENT

LUCIUS TARQUINIUS,—for his excessive pride surnamed Superbus,—after he had caused his own father-in-law, Servius Tullius, to be cruelly murdered, and, contrary to the Roman laws and customs, not requiring or staying for the people's suffrages, had possessed himself of the kingdom, went, accompanied with his sons and other noblemen of Rome, to besiege Ardea. During which siege the principal men of the army meeting one evening at the tent of Sextus Tarquinius, the king's son, in their discourses after supper every one commended the virtues of his own wife: among whom Collatinus extolled the incomparable chastity of his wife Lucretia. In that pleasant humour they all posted to Rome; and intending, by their secret and sudden arrival, to make trial of that which every one had before avouched, only



Collatinus finds his wife—though it were late in the night—spinning amongst her maids: the other ladies were all found dancing and revelling, or in several disports. Whereupon the noblemen yielded Collatinus the victory, and his wife the fame. At that time Sextus Tarquinius, being inflamed with Lucrece' beauty, yet smothering his passions for the present, departed with the rest back to the camp; from whence he shortly after privily withdrew himself, and was, according to his estate, royally entertained and lodged by Lucrece at Collatium. The same night he treacherously stealeth into her chamber, violently ravished her, and early in the morning speedeth away. Lucrece, in this lamentable plight, hastily dispatcheth messengers, one to Rome for her father, and another to the camp for Collatine. They came, the one accompanied with Junius Brutus, the other with Publius Valerius; and finding Lucrece attired in mourning habit, demanded the cause of her sorrow. She, first taking an oath of them for her revenge, revealed the actor, and the whole manner of his dealing, and withal suddenly stabbed herself. Which done, with one consent they all vowed to root out the whole hated family of the Tarquins; and, bearing the dead body to Rome, Brutus acquainted the people with the doer and manner of the vile deed, with a bitter invective against the tyranny of the king: wherewith the people were so moved, that with one consent and a general acclamation the Tarquins were all exiled, and the state government changed from kings to consuls. •

## THE RAPE OF LUCRECE

FROM the besieged Ardea all in post,  
Borne by the trustless wings of false desire,  
Lust-breathed Tarquin leaves the Roman host,  
And to Collatium bears the lightless fire 4  
Which, in pale embers hid, lurks to aspire,  
And girdle with embracing flames the waist  
Of Collatine's fair love, Lucrece the chaste.

Haply that name of chaste unhappily set 8  
This bateless edge on his keen appetite;  
When Collatine unwisely did not let  
To praise the clear unmatched red and white  
Which triumph'd in that sky of his delight, 12  
Where mortal stars, as bright as heaven's beauties,  
With pure aspects did him peculiar duties.

For he the night before, in Tarquin's tent,  
Unlook'd the treasure of his happy state; 16  
What priceless wealth the heavens had him lent  
In the possession of his beauteous mate;  
Reckoning his fortune at such high-proud rate,  
That kings might be espoused to more fame, 20  
But king nor peer to such a peerless dame.

O happiness enjoy'd but of a few!  
And, if possess'd, as soon decay'd and done  
As is the morning's silver-melting dew 24  
Against the golden splendour of the sun;  
An expir'd date, canoell'd ere well begun:  
Honour and beauty, in the owner's arms,  
Are weakly fortress'd from a world of harms. 28

Beauty itself doth of itself persuade  
 The eyes of men without an orator ;  
 What needeth then apology be made  
 To set forth that which is so singular ? 32  
 Or why is Collatine the publisher  
 Of that rich jewel he should keep unknown  
 From thievish ears, because it is his own ?

Perchance his boast of Lucrece' sovereignty 36  
 Suggested this proud issue of a king ;  
 For by our ears our hearts oft tainted be :  
 Perchance that envy of so rich a thing,  
 Braving compare, disdainfully did sting 40  
 His high-pitch'd thoughts, that meaner men should  
 vaunt  
 That golden hap which their superiors want.

But some untimely thought did instigate  
 His all-too-timeless speed, if none of those : 44  
 His honour, his affairs, his friends, his state,  
 Neglected all, with swift intent he goes  
 To quench the coal which in his liver glows.  
 O ! rash false heat, wrapp'd in repentant cold, 48  
 Thy hasty spring still blasts, and ne'er grows old.

When at Collatium this false lord arriv'd,  
 Well was he welcom'd by the Roman dame,  
 Within whose face beauty and virtue striv'd 52  
 Which of them both should underprop her fame :  
 When virtue bragg'd, beauty would blush for shame ;  
 When beauty boasted blushes, in despite  
 Virtue would stain, that o'er with silver white. 56

But beauty, in that white intituled,  
 From Venus' doves doth challenge that fair field ;  
 Then virtue claims from beauty beauty's red,  
 Which virtue gave the golden age to gild 60  
 Their silver cheeks, and call'd it then their shield ;  
 Teaching them thus to use it in the fight,  
 When shame assail'd, the red should fence the white.

This heraldry in Lucrece' face was seen, 64  
 Argu'd by beauty's red and virtue's white :  
 Of either's colour was the other queen,  
 Proving from world's minority their right :  
 Yet their ambition makes them still to fight ; 68  
 The sovereignty of either being so great,  
 That oft they interchange each other's seat.

This silent war of lilies and of roses,  
 Which Tarquin view'd in her fair face's field, 72  
 In their pure ranks his traitor eye encloses ;  
 Where, lest between them both it should be kill'd,  
 The coward captive vanquished doth yield  
 To those two armies that would let him go, 76  
 Rather than triumph in so false a foe.

Now thinks he that her husband's shallow tongue—  
 'The niggard prodigal that prais'd her so—  
 In that high task hath done her beauty wrong, 80  
 Which far exceeds his barren skill to show :  
 Therefore that praise which Collatine doth owe  
 Enchanted Tarquin answers with surmise,  
 In silent wonder of still-gazing eyes. 84

This earthly saint, adored by this devil,  
 Little suspecteth the false worshipper ;  
 For unstain'd thoughts do seldom dream on evil,  
 • Birds never lim'd no secret bushes fear : 88  
 So guiltless she securely gives good cheer  
 And reverend welcome to her princely guest,  
 Whose inward ill no outward harm express'd :

For that he colour'd with his high estate, 92  
 Hiding base sin in plaits of majesty ;  
 That nothing in him seem'd inordinate,  
 Save sometime too much wonder of his eye,  
 Which, having all, all could not satisfy ; 96  
 But, poorly rich, so wanteth in his store,  
 That, cloy'd with much, he pineth still for more.

But she, that never cop'd with stranger eyes,  
 Could pick no meaning from their parling looks, 100  
 Nor read the subtle-shining secrecies  
 Writ in the glassy margents of such books :  
 She touch'd no unknown baits, nor fear'd no hooks ;  
 Nor could she moralize his wanton sight, 104  
 More than his eyes were open'd to the light.

He stories to her ears her husband's fame,  
 Won in the fields of fruitful Italy ;  
 And decks with praises Collatine's high name, 108  
 Made glorious by his manly chivalry  
 With bruised arms and wreaths of victory :  
 Her joy with heav'd-up hand she doth express,  
 And wordless so greets heaven for his success. 112

Far from the purpose of his coming thither,  
 He makes excuses for his being there :  
 No cloudy show of stormy blustering weather  
 Doth yet in his fair welkin once appear ; 116  
 Till sable Night, mother of Dread and Fear,  
 Upon the world dim darkness doth display,  
 And in her vaulty prison stows the Day.

For then is Tarquin brought unto his bed, 120  
 Intending weariness with heavy spright ;  
 For after supper long he questioned  
 With modest Lucrece, and wore out the night :  
 Now leaden slumber with life's strength doth fight,  
 And every one to rest themselves betake, 125  
 Save thieves, and cares, and troubled minds, that wake.

As one of which doth Tarquin lie revolving  
 The sundry dangers of his will's obtaining ; 128  
 Yet ever to obtain his will resolving,  
 Though weak-built hopes persuade him to abstaining :  
 Despair to gain doth traffic oft for gaining ;  
 And when great treasure is the meed propos'd, 132  
 Though death be adjunct, there's no death suppos'd.

Those that much covet are with gain so fond,  
For what they have not, that which they possess  
They scatter and unloose it from their bond, 136  
And so, by hoping more, they have but less ;  
Or, gaining more, the profit of excess  
Is but to surfeit, and such griefs sustain,  
That they prove bankrupt in this poor-rich gain.

The aim of all is but to nurse the life 141  
With honour, wealth, and ease, in waning age ;  
And in this aim there is such thwarting strife,  
That one for all, or all for one we gage ; 144  
As life for honour in fell battles' rage ;  
Honour for wealth ; and oft that wealth doth cost  
The death of all, and all together lost.

So that in venturing ill we leave to be 148  
The things we are for that which we expect ;  
And this ambitious foul infirmity,  
In having much, torments us with defect  
Of that we have : so then we do neglect 152  
The thing we have, and, all for want of wit,  
Make something nothing by augmenting it.

Such hazard now must doting Tarquin make,  
Pawning his honour to obtain his lust, 156  
And for himself himself he must forsake :  
Then where is truth, if there be no self-trust ?  
When shall he think to find a stranger just,  
When he himself himself confounds, betrays 160  
To slanderous tongues and wretched hateful days ?

Now stole upon the time the dead of night,  
When heavy sleep had closed up mortal eyes ;  
No comfortable star did lend his light, 164  
No noise but owls' and wolves' death-boding cries ;  
Now serves the season that they may surprise  
The silly lambs ; pure thoughts are dead and still,  
While lust and murder wake to stain and kill. 168

And now this lustful lord leap'd from his bed,  
 Throwing his mantle rudely o'er his arm ;  
 Is madly toss'd between desire and dread ;  
 Th' one sweetly flatters, th' other feareth harm ; 172  
 But honest fear, bewitch'd with lust's foul charm,  
 Doth too too oft betake him to retire,  
 Beaten away by brain-sick rude desire.

His falchion on a flint he softly smiteth, 176  
 That from the cold stone sparks of fire do fly ;  
 Whereat a waxen torch forthwith he lighteth,  
 Which must be lode-star to his lustful eye ;  
 And to the flame thus speaks advisedly : 180  
 ' As from this cold flint I enforc'd this fire,  
 So Lucrece must I force to my desire.'

Here pale with fear he doth premeditate  
 The dangers of his loathsome enterprise, 184  
 And in his inward mind he doth debate  
 What following sorrow may on this arise :  
 Then looking scornfully, he doth despise  
 His naked armour of still-slaughter'd lust, 188  
 And justly thus controls his thoughts unjust :

' Fair torch, burn out thy light, and lend it not  
 To darken her whose light excelleth thine ;  
 And die, unhallow'd thoughts, before you blot 192  
 With your uncleanness that which is divine ;  
 Offer pure incense to so pure a shrine :  
 Let fair humanity abhor the deed  
 That spots and stains love's modest snow-white weed.

' O shame to knighthood apd to shining arms, 197  
 O foul dishonour to my household's grave !  
 O impious act, including all foul harms !  
 A martial man to be soft fancy's slave ! 200  
 True valour still a true respect should have ;  
 Then my digression is so vile, so base,  
 That it will live engraven in my face.'

# THE RAPE OF LUCRECE

1001

' Yea, though I die, the scandal will survive, 204  
And be an eye-sore in my golden coat ;  
Some loathsome dash the herald will contrive,  
To cipher me how fondly I did dote ;  
That my posterity sham'd with the note, 208  
Shall curse my bones, and hold it for no sin  
To wish that I their father had not been.

' What win I if I gain the thing I seek ?  
A dream, a breath, a froth of fleeting joy. 212  
Who buys a minute's mirth to wail a week ?  
Or sells eternity to get a toy ?  
For one sweet grape who will the vine destroy ?  
Or what fond beggar, but to touch the crown, 216  
Would with the sceptre straight be stricken down ?

' If Collatinus dream of my intent,  
Will he not wake, and in a desperate rage  
Post hither, this vile purpose to prevent ? 220  
This siege that hath engirt his marriage,  
This blur to youth, this sorrow to the sage,  
This dying virtue, this surviving shame,  
Whose crime will bear an ever-during blame ? 224

' O ! what excuse can my invention make,  
When thou shalt charge me with so black a deed ?  
Will not my tongue be mute, my frail joints shake,  
Mine eyes forego their light, my false heart bleed ?  
The guilt being great, the fear doth still exceed ; 229  
And extreme fear can neither fight nor fly,  
But coward-like with trembling terror die.

' Had Collatinus kill'd my son or sire, 232  
Or lain in ambush to betray my life,  
Or were he not my dear friend, this desire  
Might have excuse to work upon his wife,  
As in revenge or quittal of such strife : 236  
But as he is my kinsman, my dear friend,  
The shame and fault finds no excuse nor end.



'Shameful it is; ay, if the fact be known:  
 Hateful it is; there is no hate in loving: 240  
 I'll bog her love; but she is not her own:  
 The worst is but denial and reproving:  
 My will is strong, past reason's weak removing.  
 Who fears a sentence or an old man's saw, 244  
 Shall by a painted cloth be kept in awe.'

Thus, graceless, holds he disputation  
 'Tween frozen conscience and hot burning will,  
 And with good thoughts makes dispensation, 248  
 Urging the worser sense for vantage still;  
 Which in a moment doth confound and kill  
 All pure effects, and doth so far proceed,  
 That what is vile shows like a virtuous deed. 252

Quoth he, 'She took me kindly by the hand,  
 And gaz'd for tidings in my eager eyes,  
 Fearing some hard news from the warlike band  
 Where her beloved Collatinus lies. 256  
 O! how her fear did make her colour rise:  
 First red as roses that on lawn we lay,  
 Then white as lawn, the roses took away.

'And how her hand, in my hand being lock'd, 260  
 Forc'd it to tremble with her loyal fear!  
 Which struck her sad, and then it faster rock'd,  
 Until her husband's welfare she did hear;  
 Whereat she smiled with so sweet a cheer, 264  
 That had Narcissus seen her as she stood,  
 Self-love had never drown'd him in the flood.

'Why hunt I then for colour or excuses?  
 All orators are dumb when beauty pleadeth; 268  
 Poor wretches have remorse in poor abuses;  
 Love thrives not in the heart that shadows dreadeth:  
 Affection is my captain, and he leadeth;  
 And when his gaudy banner is display'd, 272  
 The coward fights, and will not be dismay'd.

'Then, childish fear, avaunt ! debating, die !  
Respect and reason, wait on wrinkled age !  
My heart shall never countermand mine eye ;      276  
Sad pause and deep regard beseems the sage ;  
My part is youth, and beats these from the stage .  
Desire my pilot is, beauty my prize ;  
Then who fears sinking where such treasure lies ?'

As corn o'ergrown by weeds, so heedful fear      281  
Is almost chok'd by unresisted lust.  
Away he steals with open listening ear,  
Full of foul hope, and full of fond mistrust ;      284  
Both which, as servitors to the unjust,  
So cross him with their opposite persuasion,  
That now he vows a league, and now invasion.

Within his thought her heavenly image sits,      288  
And in the self-same seat sits Collatine :  
That eye which looks on her confounds his wits ;  
That eye which him beholds, as more divine,  
Unto a view so false will not incline ;      292  
But with a pure appeal seeks to the heart,  
Which once corrupted, takes the worser part ;

And therein heartens up his servile powers,  
Who, flatter'd by their leader's jocund show,      296  
Stuff up his lust, as minutes fill up hours ;  
And as their captain, so their pride doth grow,  
Paying more slavish tribute than they owe.  
By reprobate desire thus madly led,      300  
The Roman lord marcheth to Lucrece' bed.

The locks between her chamber and his will,  
Each one by him enforc'd, retires his ward ;  
But as they open they all rate his ill,      304  
Which drives the creeping thief to some regard :  
The threshold grates the door to have him heard ;  
Night-wandering weasels shriek to see him there ;  
They fright him, yet he still pursues his fear.      308

As each unwilling portal yields him way,  
 Through little vents and crannies of the place  
 The wind wars with his torch to make him stay,  
 And blows the smoke of it into his face, 312  
 Extinguishing his conduct in this case ;

But his hot heart, which fond desire doth scorch,  
 Puffs forth another wind that fires the torch :

And being lighted, by the light he spies 316  
 Lucretia's glove, wherein her needle sticks :  
 He takes it from the rushes where it lies,  
 And griping it, the neeld his finger pricks ;  
 As who should say, ' This glove to wanton tricks 320  
 Is not inur'd ; return again in haste ;  
 Thou seest our mistress' ornaments are chaste.'

But all these poor forbiddings could not stay him ;  
 He in the worst sense construes their denial : 324  
 The door, the wind, the glove, that did delay him,  
 He takes for accidental things of trial ;  
 Or as those bars which stop the hourly dial,  
 Who with a lingering stay his course doth let, 328  
 Till every minute pays the hour his debt.

' So, so,' quoth he, ' these lets attend the time,  
 Like little frosts that sometime threat the spring,  
 To add a more rejoicing to the prime, 332  
 And give the sneaped birds more cause to sing.  
 Pain pays the income of each precious thing ;  
 Huge rocks, high winds, strong pirates, shelves and  
 sands,  
 The merchant fears,,ere rich at home he lands.'

Now is he come unto the chamber door, 337  
 That shuts him from the heaven of his thought,  
 Which with a yielding latch, and with no more,  
 Hath barr'd him from the blessed thing he sought.  
 So from himself impiety hath wrought, 341  
 That for his prey to pray he doth begin,  
 As if the heavens should countenance his sin.

But in the midst of his unfruitful prayer, 344  
Having solicited the eternal power  
That his foul thoughts might compass his fair fair,  
And they would stand auspicious to the hour,  
Even there he starts: quoth he, 'I must deflower;  
'The powers to whom I pray abhor this fact, 349  
How can they then assist me in the act ?

'Then Love and Fortune be my gods, my guide !  
My will is back'd with resolution : 352  
Thoughts are but dreams till their effects be tried ;  
The blackest sin is clear'd with absolution ;  
Against love's fire fear's frost hath dissolution.  
The eye of heaven is out, and misty night 356  
Covers the shame that follows sweet delight.'

This said, his guilty hand pluck'd up the latch,  
And with his knee the door he opens wide.  
The dove sleeps fast that this night-owl will catch :  
Thus treason works ere traitors be espied. 361  
Who sees the lurking serpent steps aside ;  
But she, sound sleeping, fearing no such thing,  
Lies at the mercy of his mortal sting. 364

Into the chamber wickedly he stalks,  
And gazeth on her yet unstained bed.  
The curtains being close, about he walks,  
Rolling his greedy eyeballs in his head : 368  
By their high treason is his heart misled ;  
Which gives the watchword to his hand full soon,  
To draw the cloud that hides the silver moon.

Look, as the fair and fiery-pointed sun, 372  
Rushing from forth a cloud, bereaves our sight ;  
Even so, the curtain drawn, his eyes begun  
To wink, being blinded with a greater light :  
Whether it is that she reflects so bright, 376  
That dazzleth them, or else some shame supposed,  
But blind they are, and keep themselves enclosed.

O! had they in that darksome prison died,  
 Then had they seen the period of their ill; 380  
 Then Collatine again, by Lucrece' side,  
 In his clear bed might have reposed still:  
 But they must ope, this blessed league to kill,  
 And holy-thoughted Lucrece to their sight 384  
 Must sell her joy, her life, her world's delight.

Her lily hand her rosy cheek lies under,  
 Cozening the pillow of a lawful kiss;  
 Who, therefore angry, seems to part in sunder, 388  
 Swelling on either side to want his bliss;  
 Between whose hills her head entombed is:  
 Where, like a virtuous monument she lies,  
 To be admir'd of lewd unhallow'd eyes. 392

Without the bed her other fair hand was,  
 On the green coverlet; whose perfect white  
 Show'd like an April daisy on the grass,  
 With pearly sweat, resembling dew of night. 396  
 Her eyes, like marigolds, had sheath'd their light,  
 And canopied in darkness sweetly lay,  
 Till they might open to adorn the day.

Her hair, like golden threads, play'd with her breath;  
 O modest wantons! wanton modesty! 401  
 Showing life's triumph in the map of death,  
 And death's dim look in life's mortality:  
 Each in her sleep themselves so beautify, 404  
 As if between them twain there were no strife,  
 But that life liv'd in death, and death in life.

Her breasts, like ivory globes circled with blue,  
 A pair of maiden worlds unconquered, 408  
 Save of their lord no bearing yoke they knew,  
 And him by oath they truly honoured.  
 These worlds in Tarquin new ambition bred;  
 Who, like a foul usurper, went about 412  
 From this fair throne to heave the owner out.

What could he see but mightily he noted ?  
What did he note but strongly he desir'd ?  
What he beheld, on that he firmly doted,  
And in his will his wilful eye he tir'd. 418  
With more than admiration he admir'd  
Her azure veins, her alabaster skin,  
Her coral lips, her snow-white dimpled chin. 420

As the grim lion fawneth o'er his prey,  
Sharp hunger by the conquest satisfied,  
So o'er this sleeping soul doth Tarquin stay,  
His rage of lust by gazing qualified ; 424  
Slack'd, not suppress'd ; for standing by her side,  
His eye, which late this mutiny restrains,  
Unto a greater uproar tempts his veins :

And they, like straggling slaves for pillage fighting,  
Obdurate vassals fell exploits effecting, 429  
In bloody death and ravishment delighting,  
Nor children's tears nor mother's groans respecting,  
Swell in their pride, the onset still expecting : 432  
Anon his beating heart, alarum striking,  
Gives the hot charge and bids them do their liking.

His drumming heart cheers up his burning eye,  
His eye commends the leading to his hand ; 436  
His hand, as proud of such a dignity,  
Smoking with pride, march'd on to make his stand  
On her bare breast, the heart of all her land ;  
Whose ranks of blue veins, as his hand did scale,  
Left their round turrets destitute and pale. 441

They, mustering to the quiet cabinet  
Where their dear governess and lady lies,  
Do tell her she is dreadfully beset, 444  
And fright her with confusion of their cries :  
She, much amaz'd, breaks ope her lock'd-up eyes,  
Who, peeping forth this tumult to behold,  
Are by his flaming torch dimm'd and controll'd.

Imagine her as one in dead of night 449  
 From forth dull sleep by dreadful fancy waking,  
 That thinks she hath beheld some ghastly sprite,  
 Whose grim aspect sets every joint a-shaking ; 452  
 What terror 'tis ! but she, in worser taking,  
 From sleep disturbed, heedfully doth view  
 The sight which makes supposed terror true.

Wrapp'd and confounded in a thousand fears, 456  
 Like to a new-kill'd bird she trembling lies ;  
 She dares not look ; yet, winking, there appears  
 Quick-shifting antics, ugly in her eyes :  
 Such shadows are the weak brain's forgeries ; 460  
 Who, angry that the eyes fly from their lights,  
 In darkness daunts them with more dreadful sights.

His hand, that yet remains upon her breast,—  
 Rude ram to batter such an ivory wall !— 464  
 May feel her heart,—poor citizen,—distress'd,  
 Wounding itself to death, rise up and fall,  
 Beating her bulk, that his hand shakes withal.  
 This moves in him more rage and lesser pity, 468  
 To make the breach and enter this sweet city.

First, like a trumpet, doth his tongue begin  
 To sound a parley to his heartless foe ;  
 Who o'er the white sheet peers her whiter chin, 472  
 The reason of this rash alarm to know,  
 Which he by dumb demeanour seeks to show ;  
 But she with vehement prayers urgeth still  
 Under what colour he commits this ill. 476

Thus he replies : ' The colour in thy face,  
 That even for anger makes the lily pale,  
 And the red rose blush at her own disgrace,  
 Shall plead for me and tell my loving tale ; 480  
 Under that colour am I come to scale  
 Thy never-conquer'd fort : the fault is thine,  
 For those thine eyes betray thee unto mine.

# THE RAPE OF LUCRECE

1009

‘ Thus I forestall thee, if thou mean to chide : 484  
 Thy beauty hath ensnar’d thee to this night,  
 Where thou with patience must my will abide,  
 My will that marks thee for my earth’s delight,  
 Which I to conquer sought with all my might ; 488  
 But as reproof and reason beat it dead,  
 By thy bright beauty was it newly bred.

‘ I see what crosses my attempt will bring ;  
 I know what thorns the growing rose defends ; 492  
 I think the honey guarded with a sting ;  
 All this, beforehand, counsel comprehends :  
 But will is deaf and hears no heedful friends ;  
 Only he hath an eye to gaze on beauty, 496  
 And dotes on what he looks, ’gainst law or duty.

‘ I have debated, even in my soul,  
 What wrong, what shame, what sorrow I shall breed ;  
 But nothing can affection’s course control, 500  
 Or stop the headlong fury of his speed.  
 I know repentant tears ensue the deed,  
 Reproach, disdain, and deadly enmity ;  
 Yet strive I to embrace mine infamy.’ 504

This said, he shakes aloft his Roman blade,  
 Which, like a falcon towering in the skies,  
 Coucheth the fowl below with his wings’ shade,  
 Whose crooked beak threatens if he mount he dies : 508  
 So under his insulting falchion lies  
 Harmless Lucretia, marking what he tells  
 With trembling fear, as fowl hear falcon’s bells.

‘ Lucrece,’ quoth he, ‘ this night I must enjoy thee :  
 If thou deny, then force must work my way, 513  
 For in thy bed I purpose to destroy thee :  
 That done, some worthless slave of thine I’ll slay,  
 To kill thine honour with thy life’s decay ; 516  
 And in thy dead arms do I mean to place him,  
 Swearing I slew him, seeing thee embrace him.



' So thy surviving husband shall remain  
 The scornful mark of every open eye ; 520  
 Thy kinsmen hang their heads at this disdain,  
 Thy issue blurr'd with nameless bastardy :  
 And thou, the author of their obloquy,  
     Shalt have thy trespass cited up in rimes, 524  
     And sung by children in succeeding times.

' But if thou yield, I rest thy secret friend :  
 The fault unknown is as a thought unacted ;  
 A little harm done to a great good end, 528  
 For lawful policy remains enacted.  
 The poisonous simple sometime is compacted  
     In a pure compound ; being so applied,  
     His venom in effect is purified. 532

' Then for thy husband and thy children's sake,  
 Tender my suit : bequeath not to their lot  
 The shame that from them no device can take,  
 The blemish that will never be forgot ; 536  
 Worse than a slavish wipe or birth-hour's blot :  
     For marks descried in men's nativity  
     Are nature's faults, not their own infamy.'

Here with a cockatrice' dead-killing eye 540  
 He rouseth up himself, and makes a pause ;  
 While she, the picture of pure piety,  
 Like a white hind under the gripe's sharp claws,  
 Pleads in a wilderness where are no laws, 544  
     To the rough beast that knows no gentle right,  
     Nor aught obeys but his foul appetite.

But when a black-fac'd cloud the world doth threat,  
 In his dim mist the aspiring mountains hiding, 548  
 From earth's dark womb some gentle gust doth get,  
 Which blows these pitchy vapours from their biding,  
 Hindering their present fall by this dividing ;  
     So his unhallow'd haste her words delays, 552  
     And moody Pluto winks while Orpheus plays.

Yet, foul night-waking cat, he doth but dally,  
While in his hold-fast foot the weak mouse panteth :  
Her sad behaviour feeds his vulture folly, 56  
A swallowing gulf that even in plenty wanteth :  
His ear her prayers admits, but his heart granteth  
No penetrable entrance to her plaining :  
Tears harden lust though marble wear with raining.

Her pity-pleading eyes are sadly fix'd 561  
In the remorseless wrinkles of his face ;  
Her modest eloquence with sighs is mix'd,  
Which to her oratory adds more grace. 564  
She puts the period often from his place,  
And midst the sentence so her accent breaks,  
That twice she doth begin ere once she speaks.

She conjures him by high almighty Jove, 568  
By knighthood, gentry, and sweet friendship's oath,  
By her untimely tears, her husband's love,  
By holy human law, and common troth,  
By heaven and earth, and all the power of both, 572  
That to his borrow'd bed he make retire,  
And stoop to honour, not to foul desire.

Quoth she, 'Reward not hospitality  
With such black payment as thou hast pretended ;  
Mud not the fountain that gave drink to thee ; 577  
• Mar not the thing that cannot be amended ;  
End thy ill aim before thy shoot be ended ;  
He is no woodman that doth bend his bow 580  
To strike a poor unseasonable doe.

' My husband is thy friend, for his sake spare me ;  
Thyself art mighty, for thine own sake leave me ;  
Myself a weakling, do not, then, ensnare me ; 584  
Thou look'dst not like deceit, do not deceive me.  
My sighs, like whirlwinds, labour hence to heave thee ;  
If ever man were mov'd with woman's moans,  
Be moved with my tears, my sighs, my groans.

' So shall these slaves be king, and thou their slave ;  
 Thou nobly base, they basely dignified ; 660  
 Thou their fair life, and they thy fouler grave ;  
 Thou loathed in their shame, they in thy pride :  
 The lesser thing should not the greater hide ;  
 The cedar stoops not to the base shrub's foot, 664  
 But low shrubs wither at the cedar's root.

' So let thy thoughts, low vassals to thy state '—  
 ' No more,' quoth he ; ' by heaven, I will not hear thee :  
 Yield to my love ; if not, enforced hate, 668  
 Instead of love's coy touch, shall rudely tear thee ;  
 That done, despitefully I mean to bear thee  
 Unto the base bed of some rascal groom,  
 To be thy partner in this shameful doom.' 672

This said, he sets his foot upon the light,  
 For light and lust are deadly enemies :  
 Shame folded up in blind concealing night,  
 When most unseen, then most doth tyrannize. 676  
 The wolf hath seiz'd his prey, the poor lamb cries ;  
 Till with her own white fleece her voice controll'd  
 Entombs her outcry in her lips' sweet fold :

For with the nightly linen that she wears 680  
 He pens her piteous clamours in her head,  
 Cooling his hot face in the chastest tears  
 That ever modest eyes with sorrow shed.  
 O ! that prone lust should stain so pure a bed, 684  
 The spots whereof could weeping purify,  
 Her tears should drop on them perpetually.

But she hath lost a dearer thing than life,  
 And he hath won what he would lose again ; 688  
 This forced league doth force a further strife ;  
 This momentary joy breeds months of pain ;  
 This hot desire converts to cold disdain :  
 Pure Chastity is rifled of her store, 692  
 And Lust, the thief, far poorer than before.

Look ! as the full-fed hound or gorged hawk,  
 Unapt for tender smell or speedy flight,  
 Make slow pursuit, or altogether balk 696  
 The prey wherein by nature they delight ;  
 So surfeit-taking Tarquin fares this night :  
 His taste delicious, in digestion souring,  
 Devours his will, that liv'd by foul devouring. 700

O ! deeper sin than bottomless conceit  
 Can comprehend in still imagination ;  
 Drunken Desire must vomit his receipt,  
 Ere he can see his own abomination. 704  
 While Lust is in his pride, no exclamation  
 Can curb his heat, or rein his rash desire,  
 ill, like a jade, Self-will himself doth tire.

And then with lank and lean discolour'd cheek, 708  
 With heavy eye, knit brow, and strengthless pace,  
 Feeble Desire, all recreant, poor, and meek,  
 Like to a bankrupt beggar wails his case :  
 The flesh being proud, Desire doth fight with Grace,  
 For there it revels ; and when that decays, 713  
 The guilty rebel for remission prays.

So fares it with this faultful lord of Rome,  
 Who this accomplishment so hotly chas'd ; 716  
 For now against himself he sounds this doom,  
 That through the length of times he stands disgrac'd ;  
 Besides, his soul's fair temple is defac'd ;  
 To whose weak ruins muster troops of cares, 720  
 To ask the spotted princess how she fares.

She says, her subjects with foul insurrection  
 Have batter'd down her consecrated wall,  
 And by their mortal fault brought in subjection 724  
 Her immortality, and made her thrall  
 To living death and pain perpetual :  
 Which in her prescience she controlled still,  
 But her foresight could not forestall their will. 728

Even in this thought through the dark night he stealeth,  
 A captive victor that hath lost in gain;  
 Bearing away the wound that nothing healeth,  
 The scar that will despite of cure remain; 732  
 Leaving his spoil perplex'd in greater pain.  
     She bears the load of lust he left behind,  
     And he the burden of a guilty mind.

He like a thievish dog creeps sadly thence, 736  
 She like a wearied lamb lies panting there; •  
 He scowls and hates himself for his offence,  
 She desperate with her nails her flesh doth tear;  
 He faintly flies, sweating with guilty fear, 740  
     She stays, exclaiming on the direful night;  
     He runs, and chides his vanish'd, loath'd delight.

He thence departs a heavy convertite,  
 She there remains a hopeless castaway; 744  
 He in his speed looks for the morning light;  
 She prays she never may behold the day;  
 'For day,' quoth she, 'night's 'scapes doth open lay,  
     And my true eyes have never practis'd how 748  
     To cloak offences with a cunning brow.

'They think not but that every eye can see  
 The same disgrace which they themselves behold;  
 And therefore would they still in darkness be, 752  
 To have their unseen sin remain untold;  
 For they their guilt with weeping will unfold,  
     And grave, like water that doth eat in steel,  
     Upon my cheeks what helpless shame I feel.' 756

Here she exclaims against repose and rest,  
 And bids her eyes hereafter still be blind.  
 She wakes her heart by beating on her breast,  
 And bids it leap from thence, where it may find 760  
 Some purer chest to close so pure a mind.  
     Frantic with grief thus breathes she forth her spite  
     Against the unseen secrecy of night: •

' O comfort-killing Night, image of hell ! 764  
Dim register and notary of shame !  
Black stage for tragedies and murders fell !  
Vast sin-concealing chaos ! nurse of blame !  
Blind muffled bawd ! dark harbour for defame ! 768  
Grim cave of death ! whispering conspirator  
With close-tongu'd treason and the ravisher !

' O hateful, vaporous, and foggy Night !  
Since thou art guilty of my cureless crime, 772  
Muster thy mists to meet the eastern light,  
Make war against proportion'd course of time ;  
Or if thou wilt permit the sun to climb  
His wonted height, yet ere he go to bed, 776  
Knit poisonous clouds about his golden head.

' With rotten damps ravish the morning air ;  
Let their exhal'd unwholesome breaths make sick  
The life of purity, the supreme fair, 780  
Ere he arrive his weary noontide prick ;  
And let thy misty vapours march so thick,  
That in their smoky ranks his smother'd light  
May set at noon and make perpetual night. 784

' Were Tarquin Night, as he is but Night's child,  
The silver-shining queen he would distain ;  
Her twinkling handmaids too, by him defil'd,  
Through Night's black bosom should not peep again ;  
So should I have co-partners in my pain ; 789  
And fellowship in woe doth woe assuage,  
As palmers' chat makes short their pilgrimage.

' Where now I have no one to blush with me, 792  
To cross their arms and hang their heads with mine,  
To mask their brows and hide their infamy ;  
But I alone alone must sit and pine,  
Seasoning the earth with showers of silver brine, 796  
Mingling my talk with tears, my grief with groans,  
Poor wasting monuments of lasting moans.

' O Night ! thou furnace of foul-reeking smoke,  
 Let not the jealous Day behold that face 800  
 Which underneath thy black all-hiding cloak  
 Immodestly lies martyr'd with disgrace :  
 Keep still possession of thy gloomy place,  
 That all the faults which in thy reign are made  
 May likewise be sepulchred in thy shade. 805

' Make me not object to the tell-tale Day !  
 The light will show, character'd in my brow, •  
 The story of sweet chastity's decay, 808  
 The impious breach of holy wedlock vow :  
 Yea, the illiterate, that know not how  
 To 'cipher what is writ in learned books,  
 Will quote my loathsome trespass in my looks. 812

The nurse, to still her child, will tell my story,  
 And fright her crying babe with Tarquin's name ;  
 The orator, to deck his oratory,  
 Will couple my reproach to Tarquin's shame ; 816  
 Feast-finding minstrels, tuning my defame,  
 Will tie the hearers to attend each line,  
 How Tarquin wronged me, I Collatine.

' Let my good name, that senseless reputation, 820  
 For Collatine's dear love be kept unspotted :  
 If that be made a theme for disputation,  
 The branches of another root are rotted,  
 And undeserv'd reproach to him allotted 824  
 That is as clear from this attain of mine,  
 As I ere this was pure to Collatine.

' O unseen shame ! invisible disgrace !  
 O unfelt sore ! crest-wounding, private scar ! 828  
 Reproach is stamp'd in Collatinus' face,  
 And Tarquin's eye may read the mot afar,  
 How he in peace is wounded, not in war.  
 Alas ! how many bear such shameful blows, 832  
 Which not themselves, but he that gives them knows.

' If, Collatine, thine honour lay in me,  
 From me by strong assault it is bereft.  
 My honey lost, and I, a drone-like bee,  
 Have no perfection of my summer left,  
 But robb'd and ransack'd by injurious theft :  
 In thy weak hive a wandering wasp hath crept,  
 And suck'd the honey which thy chaste bee kept.

' Yet am I guilty of thy honour's wrack ;  
 Yet for thy honour did I entertain him ;  
 Coming from thee, I could not put him back,  
 For it had been dishonour to disdain him :  
 Besides, of weariness he did complain him,  
 And talk'd of virtue : O ! unlook'd-for evil,  
 When virtue is profan'd in such a devil.

' Why should the worm intrude the maiden bud ?  
 Or hateful cuckoos hatch in sparrows' nests ?  
 Or toads infect fair founts with venom mud ?  
 Or tyrant folly lurk in gentle breasts ?  
 Or kings be breakers of their own behests ?  
 But no perfection is so absolute,  
 That some impurity doth not pollute.

' The aged man that coffers up his gold  
 Is plagu'd with cramps and gout and painful fits ;  
 And scarce hath eyes his treasure to behold,  
 But like still-pining Tantalus he sits,  
 And useless barns the harvest of his wits ;  
 Having no other pleasure of his gain  
 But torment that it cannot cure his pain.

' So then he hath it when he cannot use it,  
 And leaves it to be master'd by his young ;  
 Who in their pride do presently abuse it :  
 Their father was too weak, and they too strong,  
 To hold their cursed-blessed fortune long.  
 The sweets we wish for turn to loathed sour  
 Even in the moment that we call them ours.



'Unruly blasts wait on the tender spring ;  
 Unwholesome weeds take root with precious flowers ;  
 The adder hisses where the sweet birds sing ;  
 What virtue breeds iniquity devours : 872  
 We have no good that we can say is ours,  
 But ill-annexed Opportunity  
 Or kills his life, or else his quality.

' O Opportunity ! thy guilt is great, 876  
 'Tis thou that execut'st the traitor's treason ;  
 Thou sett'st the wolf where he the lamb may get ;  
 Whoever plots the sin, thou point'st the season ;  
 'Tis thou that spurn'st at right, at law, at reason ;  
 And in thy shady cell, where none may spy him,  
 Sits Sin to seize the souls that wander by him.

' Thou makest the vestal violate her oath ; 883  
 Thou blow'st the fire when temperance is thaw'd ;  
 Thou smother'st honesty, thou murder'st troth ;  
 Thou foul abettor ! thou notorious bawd !  
 Thou plantest scandal and displacest laud :  
 Thou ravisher, thou traitor, thou false thief, 888  
 Thy honey turns to gall, thy joy to grief !

' Thy secret pleasure turns to open shame,  
 Thy private feasting to a public fast,  
 Thy smoothing titles to a ragged name, 892  
 Thy sugar'd tongue to bitter wormwood taste :  
 Thy violent vanities can never last.  
 How comes it then, vile Opportunity,  
 Being so bad, such numbers seek for thee ? 896

' When wilt thou be the humble suppliant's friend,  
 And bring him where his suit may be obtain'd ?  
 When wilt thou sort an hour great strifes to end ?  
 Or free that soul which wretchedness hath chain'd ?  
 Give physic to the sick, ease to the pain'd ? 901  
 The poor, lame, blind, halt, creep, cry out for thee ;  
 But they ne'er meet with Opportunity.

' The patient dies while the physician sleeps ; 904  
 The orphan pines while the oppressor feeds ;  
 Justice is feasting while the widow weeps ;  
 Advice is sporting while infection breeds :  
 Thou grant'st no time for charitable deeds : 908  
 Wrath, envy, treason, rape, and murder's rages,  
 Thy heinous hours wait on them as their pages.

' When Truth and Virtue have to do with thee,  
 A thousand crosses keep them from thy aid : 912  
 They buy thy help ; but Sin ne'er gives a fee,  
 He gratis comes ; and thou art well appaid.  
 As well to hear as grant what he hath said.  
 My Collatine would else have come to me 916  
 When Tarquin did, but he was stay'd by thee.

' Guilty thou art of murder and of theft,  
 Guilty of perjury and subornation,  
 Guilty of treason, forgery, and shift, 920  
 Guilty of incest, that abomination ;  
 An accessory by thine inclination  
 To all sins past and all that are to come,  
 From the creation to the general doom. 924

' Mis-shapen Time, copesmate of ugly Night,  
 Swift subtle post, carrier of grisly care,  
 Eater of youth, false slave to false delight,  
 Base watch of woes, sin's pack-horse, virtue's snare ;  
 Thou nursest all, and murderest all that are : 929  
 O ! hear me then, injurious, shifting Time,  
 Be guilty of my death, since of my crime.

' Why hath thy servant Opportunity 932  
 Betray'd the hours thou gav'st me to repose ?  
 Cancell'd my fortunes, and enchained me  
 To endless date of never-ending woes ?  
 Time's office is to fine the hate of foes, 936  
 To eat up errors by opinion bred,  
 Not spend the dowry of a lawful bed.

' Time's glory is to calm contending kings,  
 To unmask falsehood and bring truth to light, 940  
 To stamp the seal of time in aged things,  
 To wake the morn and sentinel the night,  
 To wrong the wronger till he render right,  
 To ruinate proud buildings with thy hours, 944  
 And smear with dust their glittering golden towers ;

' To fill with worm-holes stately monuments,  
 To feed oblivion with decay of things,  
 To blot old books and alter their contents, 948  
 To pluck the quills from ancient ravens' wings,  
 To dry the old oak's sap and cherish springs,  
 To spoil antiquities of hammer'd steel,  
 And turn the giddy round of Fortune's wheel ; 952

' To show the beldam daughters of her daughter,  
 To make the child a man, the man a child,  
 To slay the tiger that doth live by slaughter,  
 To tame the unicorn and lion wild, 956  
 To mock the subtle, in themselves beguil'd,  
 To cheer the ploughman with increaseful crops,  
 And waste huge stones with little water-drops.

" Why work'st thou mischief in thy pilgrimage, 960  
 Unless thou couldst return to make amends ?  
 One poor retiring minute in an age  
 Would purchase thee a thousand thousand friends,  
 Lending him wit that to bad debtors lends : 964  
 O ! this dread night, wouldst thou one hour come back,  
 I could prevent this storm and shun thy wrack.

" Thou ceaseless lackey to eternity,  
 With some mischance cross Tarquin in his flight : 968  
 Devise extremes beyond extremity,  
 To make him curse this cursed crimeful night :  
 Let ghastly shadows his lewd eyes affright,  
 And the dire thought of his committed evil 972  
 Shape every bush a hideous shapeless devil.

' Disturb his hours of rest with restless trances,  
 Afflict him in his bed with bedrid groans ;  
 Let there bechance him pitiful mischances, 976  
 To make him moan, but pity not his moans :  
 Stone him with harden'd hearts, harder than stones ;  
 And let mild women to him lose their mildness,  
 Wilder to him than tigers in their wildness. 980

' Let him have time to tear his curled hair,  
 Let him have time against himself to rave,  
 Let him have time of Time's help to despair,  
 Let him have time to live a loathed slave, 984  
 Let him have time a beggar's orts to crave,  
 And time to see one that by alms doth live  
 Disdain to him disdained scraps to give.

' Let him have time to see his friends his foes, 988  
 And merry fools to mock at him resort ;  
 Let him have time to mark how slow time goes  
 In time of sorrow, and how swift and short  
 His time of folly and his time of sport ; 992  
 And ever let his unrecalling crime  
 Have time to wail the abusing of his time.

' O Time ! thou tutor both to good and bad,  
 Teach me to curse him that thou taught'st this ill ;  
 At his own shadow let the thief run mad, 997  
 Himself himself seek every hour to kill :  
 Such wretched hands such wretched blood should spill ;  
 For who so base would such an office have 1000  
 As slanderous deathsman to so base a slave ?

' The baser is he, coming from a king,  
 To shame his hope with deeds degenerate :  
 The mightier man, the mightier is the thing 1004  
 That makes him honour'd, or begets him hate ;  
 For greatest scandal waits on greatest state,  
 The moon being clouded presently is miss'd,  
 But little stars may hide them when they list. 1008

'The crow ~~may bathe~~ his coal-black wings in mine,  
 And unperceiv'd fly with the filth away;  
 But if the like the snow-white swan desire,  
 The stain upon his silver down will stay. 1012  
 Poor grooms are sightless night, kings glorious day:  
 Gnats are unnoted wheresoe'er they fly,  
 But eagles gaz'd upon with every eye.

'Out, idle words! servants to shallow fools, 1016  
 Unprofitable sounds, weak arbitrators!  
 Busy yourselves in skill-contending schools;  
 Debate where leisure serves with dull debaters;  
 To trembling clients be you mediators; 1020  
 For me, I force not argument a straw,  
 Since that my case is past the help of law.

'In vain I rail at Opportunity,  
 At Time, at Tarquin, and uncheerful Night; 1024  
 In vain I cavil with mine infamy,  
 In vain I spurn at my confirm'd despite;  
 This helpless smoke of words doth me no right.  
 The remedy indeed to do me good, 1028  
 Is to let forth my foul-defiled blood.

'Poor hand, why quiver'st thou at this decree?  
 Honour thyself to rid me of this shame;  
 For if I die, my honour lives in thee, 1032  
 But if I live, thou liv'st in my defame;  
 Since thou couldst not defend thy loyal dame,  
 And wast afraid to scratch her wicked foe,  
 Kill both thyself and her for yielding so.' 1036

This said, from her be-tumbled couch she starteth,  
 To find some desperate instrument of death;  
 But this no slaughter-house no tool imparteth  
 To make more vent for passage of her breath; 1040  
 Which, thronging through her lips, so vanisheth  
 As smoke from Ætna, that in air consumes,  
 Or that which from discharged cannon fumes.

'In vain,' quoth she, 'I live, and seek in vain,  
Some happy mean to end a hapless life. 1044

I fear'd by Tarquin's falchion to be slain,  
Yet for the self-same purpose seek a knife :  
But when I fear'd I was a loyal wife : 1048

So am I now : O no ! that cannot be ;  
Of that true type hath Tarquin rifled me.

'O ! that is gone for which I sought to live,  
And therefore now I need not fear to die. 1052  
To clear this spot by death, at least I give  
A badge of fame to slander's livery,  
A dying life to living infamy :

Poor helpless help, the treasure stol'n away, 1056  
To burn the guiltless casket where it lay !

'Well, well, dear Collatine, thou shalt not know  
The stained taste of violated troth ;  
I will not wrong thy true affection so, 1060  
To flatter thee with an infringed oath ;  
This bastard graff shall never come to growth ;  
He shall not boast who did thy stock pollute  
That thou art doting father of his fruit. 1064

'Nor shall he smile at thee in secret thought,  
Nor laugh with his companions at thy state ;  
But thou shalt know thy interest was not bought  
Basely with gold, but stol'n from forth thy gate.  
For me, I am the mistress of my fate, 1069  
And with my trespass never will dispense,  
Till life to death acquit my forc'd offence.

'I will not poison thee with my attaint, 1072  
Nor fold my fault in cleanly-coin'd excuses ;  
My sable ground of sin I will not paint,  
To hide the truth of this false night's abuses :  
My tongue shall utter all ; mine eyes, like sluices,  
As from a mountain-spring that feeds a dale, 1077  
Shall gush pure streams to purge my impure tale.

By this, lamenting Philomel had ended  
 The well-tun'd warble of her nightly sorrow, 1080  
 And solemn night with slow sad gait descended  
 To ugly hell; when, lo! the blushing morrow  
 Lends light to all fair eyes that light will borrow :  
 But cloudy Lucrece shames herself to see, 1084  
 And therefore still in night would cloister'd be.

Revealing day through every cranny spies,  
 And seems to point her out where she sits weeping ;  
 To whom she sobbing speaks : ' O eye of eyes, 1088  
 Why pry'st thou through my window ? leave thy peeping ;  
 Mock with thy tickling beams eyes that are sleeping :  
 Brand not my forehead with thy piercing light,  
 For day hath nought to do what 's done by night.'

Thus cavils she with everything she sees 1093  
 True grief is fond and testy as a child,  
 Who wayward once, his mood with nought agrees :  
 Old woes, not infant sorrows, bear them mild ;  
 Continuance tames the one ; the other wild, 1097  
 Like an unpractis'd swimmer plunging still,  
 With too much labour drowns for want of skill.

So she, deep-drenched in a sea of care, 1100  
 Holds disputation with each thing she views,  
 And to herself all sorrow doth compare ;  
 No object but her passion's strength renews,  
 And as one shifts, another straight ensues : 1104  
 Sometime her grief is dumb and hath no words ;  
 Sometime 'tis mad and too much talk affords.

The little birds that tune their morning's joy  
 Make her moans mad with their sweet melody : 1108  
 For mirth doth search the bottom of annoy ;  
 Sad souls are slain in merry company ;  
 Grief best is pleas'd with grief's society :  
 True sorrow, then is feelingly suffic'd 1112  
 When with like semblance it is sympathiz'd.

'Tis double death to drown in ken of shore ;  
 He ten times pines that pines beholding food ; 115  
 To see the salve doth make the wound ache more ;  
 Great grief grieves most at that would do it good ;  
 Deep woes roll forward like a gentle flood,  
 Who, being stopp'd, the bounding banks o'erflows ;  
 Grief dallied with nor law nor limit knows. 1120

' You mocking birds,' quoth she, ' your tunes entomb  
 Within your hollow-swelling feather'd breasts,  
 And in my hearing be you mute and dumb :  
 My restless discord loves no stops nor rests ; 1124  
 A woeful hostess brooks not merry guests :  
 Relish your nimble notes to pleasing ears ;  
 Distress likes dumps when time is kept with tears.

' Come, Philomel, that sing'st of ravishment, 1128  
 Make thy sad grove in my dishevell'd hair :  
 As the dank earth weeps at thy languishment,  
 So I at each sad strain will strain a tear,  
 And with deep groans the diapason bear ; 1132  
 For burthen-wise I'll hum on Tarquin still,  
 While thou on Tereus descant'st better skill.

' And whiles against a thorn thou bear'st thy part,  
 To keep thy sharp woes waking, wretched I, 1136  
 To imitate thee well, against my heart  
 Will fix a sharp knife to affright mine eye,  
 Who, if it wink, shall thereon fall and die.  
 These means, as frets upon an instrument, 1140  
 Shall tune our heart-strings to true languishment.

' And for, poor bird, thou sing'st not in the day,  
 As shaming any eye should thee behold,  
 Some dark deep desert, seated from the way, 1144  
 That knows not parching heat nor freezing cold,  
 Will we find out ; and there we will unfold  
 To creatures stern sad tunes, to change their kinds :  
 Since men prove beasts, let beasts bear gentle minds.'



As the poor frightened deer, that stands at gaze, 1149  
 Wildly determining which way to fly,  
 Or one encompass'd with a winding maze,  
 That cannot tread the way out readily ;  
 So with herself is she in mutiny, 1153  
 To live or die which of the twain were better,  
 When life is sham'd, and death reproach's debtor.

' To kill myself,' quoth she, ' alack ! what were it  
 But with my body my poor soul's pollution ?' 1157  
 They that lose half with greater patience bear it  
 Than they whose whole is swallow'd in confusion.  
 That mother tries a merciless conclusion, 1160  
 Who, having two sweet babes, when death takes one,  
 Will slay the other and be nurse to none.

' My body or my soul, which was the dearer,  
 When the one pure, the other made divine ?' 1164  
 Whose love of either to myself was nearer,  
 When both were kept for heaven and Collatine ?  
 Ay me ! the bark peel'd from the lofty pine,  
 His leaves will wither and his sap decay ; 1168  
 So must my soul, her bark being peel'd away.

' Her house is sack'd, her quiet interrupted,  
 Her mansion batter'd by the enemy ;  
 Her sacred temple spotted, spoil'd, corrupted, 1172  
 Grossly engirt with daring infamy :  
 Then let it not be call'd impiety,  
 If in this blemish'd fort I make some hole  
 Through which I may convey this troubled soul.

' Yet die I will not till my Collatine 1177  
 Have heard the cause of my untimely death ;  
 That he may vow, in that sad hour of mine,  
 Revenge on him that made me stop my breath.  
 My stained blood to Tarquin I'll bequeath, 1181  
 Which by him tainted, shall for him be spent,  
 And as his due writ in my testament.'

# THE RAPE OF LUORECE

1029

' My honour I'll bequeath unto the knife      1164  
That wounds my body so dishonoured.  
'Tis honour to deprive dishonour'd life ;  
The one will live, the other being dead :  
So of shame's ashes shall my fame be bred ;      1188  
For in my death I murder shameful scorn :  
My shame so dead, mine honour is new-born.

' Dear lord of that dear jewel I have lost,  
What legacy shall I bequeath to thee ?      1192  
My resolution, love, shall be thy boast,  
By whose example thou reveng'd mayst be.  
How Tarquin must be us'd, read it in me :  
Myself, thy friend, will kill myself, thy foe,      1196  
And for my sake serve thou false Tarquin so.

' This brief abridgment of my will I make :  
My soul and body to the skies and ground ;      1199  
My resolution, husband, do thou take ;  
Mine honour be the knife's that makes my wound ;  
My shame be his that did my fame confound ;  
And all my fame that lives disbursed be      1203  
To those that live, and think no shame of me.

' Thou, Collatine, shalt oversee this will ;  
How ~~was~~ I overseen that thou shalt see it !  
My blood shall wash the slander of mine ill ;  
My life's foul deed, my life's fair end shall free it.      1208  
Faint not, faint heart, but stoutly say ' So be it : '  
Yield to my hand ; my hand shall conquer thee :  
Thou dead, both die, and both shall victors be.'

This plot of death when sadly she had laid,      1212  
And wip'd the brinish pearl from her bright eyes,  
With untun'd tongue she hoarsely calls her maid,  
Whose swift obedience to her mistress hies ;  
For fleet-wing'd duty with thought's feathers flies.  
Poor Luorece' cheeks unto her maid seem so      1217  
As winter meads when sun doth melt their snow.

Her mistress she doth give demure good-morrow,  
 With soft slow tongue, true mark of modesty, 1220  
 And sorts a sad look to her lady's sorrow;  
 For why her face wore sorrow's livery;  
 But durst not ask of her audaciously  
 Why her two suns were cloud-eclipsed so, 1224  
 Nor why her fair cheeks over-wash'd with woe.

But as the earth doth weep, the sun being set,  
 Each flower moisten'd like a melting eye;  
 Even so the maid with swelling drops 'gan wet 1228  
 Her circled eyne, enforc'd by sympathy  
 Of those fair suns set in her mistress' sky,  
 Who in a salt-wav'd ocean quench their light,  
 Which makes the maid weep like the dewy night.

A pretty while these pretty creatures stand, 1233  
 Like ivory conduits coral cisterns filling:  
 One justly weeps, the other takes in hand  
 No cause, but company, of her drops spilling:  
 Their gentle sex to weep are often willing, 1237  
 Grieving themselves to guess at others' smarts,  
 And then they drown their eyes or break their hearts.

For men have marble, women waxen, minds, 1240  
 And therefore are they form'd as marble will;  
 The weak oppress'd, the impression of strange kinds  
 Is form'd in them by force, by fraud, or skill:  
 Then call them not the authors of their ill, 1244  
 No more than wax shall be accounted evil  
 Wherein is stamp'd the semblance of a devil.

Their smoothness, like a goodly champaign plain,  
 Lays open all the little worms that creep; 1248  
 In men, as in a rough-grown grove, remain  
 Cave-keeping evils that obscurely sleep:  
 Through crystal walls each little mote will peep:  
 Though men can cover crimes with bold stern looks,  
 Poor women's faces are their own faults' books.

No man inveigh against the wither'd flower,  
 But chide rough winter that the flower hath kill'd :  
 Not that devour'd, but that which doth devour, 1256  
 Is worthy blame. O ! let it not be hild  
 Poor women's faults, that they are so fulfill'd  
 With men's abuses : those proud lords, to blame,  
 Make weak-made women tenants to their shame.

The precedent whereof in Lucrece view, 1261  
 Assail'd by night with circumstances strong  
 Of present death, and shame that might ensue  
 By that her death, to do her husband wrong :  
 Such danger to resistance did belong, 1265  
 That dying fear through all her body spread ;  
 And who cannot abuse a body dead ?

By this, mild patience bid fair Lucrece speak 1268  
 To the poor counterfeit of her complaining :  
 ' My girl,' quoth she, ' on what occasion break  
 Those tears from thee, that down thy cheeks are raining ?  
 If thou dost weep for grief of my sustaining, 1272  
 Know, gentle wench, it small avails my mood :  
 If tears could help, mine own would do me good.

' But tell me, girl, when went '—and there she stay'd  
 Till after a deep groan—' Tarquin from hence ? '—  
 ' Madam, ere I was up,' replied the maid, 1277  
 ' The more to blame my sluggard negligence :  
 Yet with the fault I thus far can dispense ;  
 Myself was stirring ere the break of day, 1280  
 And, ere I rose, was Tarquin gone away.

' But, lady, if your maid may be so bold,  
 She would request to know your heaviness.'  
 ' O ! peace,' quoth Lucrece ; ' if it should be told,  
 The repetition cannot make it less ; 1285  
 For more it is than I can well express :  
 And that deep torture may be call'd a hell,  
 When more is felt than one hath power to tell. 1288

'Go, get me hither paper, ink, and pen :  
 Yet save that labour, for I have them here.  
 What should I say ? One of my husband's men  
 Bid thou be ready, by and by, to bear 1292  
 A letter to my lord, my love, my dear :  
 Bid him with speed prepare to carry it ;  
 The cause craves haste, and it will soon be writ.'

Her maid is gone, and she prepares to write, 1296  
 First hovering o'er the paper with her quill :  
 Conceit and grief an eager combat fight ;  
 What wit sets down is blotted straight with will ;  
 This is too curious-good, this blunt and ill : 1300  
 Much like a press of people at a door,  
 Throng her inventions, which shall go before.

At last she thus begins : 'Thou worthy lord  
 Of that unworthy wife that greeteth thee, 1304  
 Health to thy person ! next vouchsafe t' afford—  
 If ever, love, thy Lucrece thou wilt see—  
 Some present speed to come and visit me.  
 So I commend me from our house in grief : 1308  
 My woes are tedious, though my words are brief.'

Here folds she up the tenour of her woe,  
 Her certain sorrow writ uncertainly.  
 By this short schedule Collatine may know 1312  
 Her grief, but not her grief's true quality :  
 She dares not thereof make discovery,  
 Lest he should hold it her own gross abuse,  
 Ere she with blood had stain'd her stain'd excuse.

Besides, the life and feeling of her passion : 1317  
 She hoards, to spend when he is by to hear her ;  
 When sighs, and groans, and tears may grace the fashion  
 Of her disgrace, the better so to clear her 1320  
 From that suspicion which the world might bear her.  
 To shun this blot, she would not blot the letter  
 With words, till action might become them better.

To see sad sights moves more than hear them told ;  
 For then the eye interprets to the ear 1325  
 The heavy motion that it doth behold,  
 When every part a part of woe doth bear.  
 'Tis but a part of sorrow that we hear ; 1328  
 Deep sounds make lesser noise than shallow fords,  
 And sorrow ebbs, being blown with wind of words.

Her letter now is seal'd, and on it writ  
 ' At Ardea to my lord with more than haste ' 1332  
 The post attends, and she delivers it,  
 Charging the sour-fac'd groom to hie as fast  
 As lagging fowls before the northern blast :  
 Speed more than speed but dull and slow she deems :  
 Extremity still urgeth such extremes. 1337

The homely villein curtsies to her low ;  
 And, blushing on her, with a steadfast eye  
 Receives the scroll without or yea or no, 1340  
 And forth with bashful innocence doth hie.  
 But they whose guilt within their bosoms lie  
 Imagine every eye beholds their blame ;  
 For Lucrece thought he blush'd to see her shame :

When, silly groom ! God wot, it was defect 1345  
 Of spirit, life, and bold audacity.  
 Such harmless creatures have a true respect  
 To talk in deeds, while others saucily  
 Promise more speed, but do it leisurely : 1349  
 Even so this pattern of the worn-out age  
 Pawn'd honest looks, but laid no words to gage.

His kindled duty kindled her mistrust, 1352  
 That two red fires in both their faces blaz'd ;  
 She thought he blush'd, as knowing Tarquin's lust,  
 And, blushing with him, wistly on him gaz'd ;  
 Her earnest eye did make him more amaz'd : 1356  
 The more she saw the blood his cheeks replenish,  
 The more she thought he spied in her some blemish.

But long she thinks till he return again,  
 And yet the duteous vassal scarce is gone. 1360  
 The weary time she cannot entertain,  
 For now 'tis stale to sigh, to weep, and groan :  
 So woe hath wearied woe, moan tired moan,  
 That she her plaints a little while doth stay, 1364  
 Pausing for means to mourn some newer way.

At last she calls to mind where hangs a piece  
 Of skilful painting, made for Priam's Troy ;  
 Before the which is drawn the power of Greece, 1368  
 For Helen's rape the city to destroy,  
 Threat'ning cloud-kissing Ilion with annoy ;  
 Which the conceited painter drew so proud,  
 As heaven, it seem'd, to kiss the turrets bow'd.

A thousand lamentable objects there, 1373  
 In scorn of nature, art gave lifeless life ;  
 Many a dry drop seem'd a weeping tear,  
 Shed for the slaughter'd husband by the wife : 1376  
 The red blood reek'd, to show the painter's strife ;  
 And dying eyes gleam'd forth their ashy lights,  
 Like dying coals burnt out in tedious nights.

There might you see the labouring pioner 1380  
 Begrim'd with sweat, and smeared all with dust ;  
 And from the towers of Troy there would appear  
 The very eyes of men through loop-holes thrust,  
 Gazing upon the Greeks with little lust : 1384  
 Such sweet observance in this work was had,  
 That one might see those far-off eyes look sad.

In great commanders grace and majesty  
 You might behold, triumphing in their faces ; 1388  
 In youth quick bearing and dexterity ;  
 And here and there the painter interlaces  
 Pale cowards, marching on with trembling paces ;  
 Which heartless peasants did so well resemble,  
 That one would swear he saw them quake and tremble.

In Ajax and Ulysses, O ! what art  
 Of physiognomy might one behold ;  
 The face of either cipher'd either's heart ; 1396  
 Their face their manners most expressly told :  
 In Ajax' eyes blunt rage and rigour roll'd ;  
 But the mild glance that sly Ulysses lent  
 Show'd deep regard and smiling government. 1400

There pleading might you see grave Nestor stand,  
 As 'twere encouraging the Greeks to fight ;  
 Making such sober action with his hand,  
 That it beguil'd attention, charm'd the sight : 1404  
 In speech, it seem'd, his beard, all silver white,  
 Wag'd up and down, and from his lips did fly  
 Thin winding breath, which purld up to the sky.

About him were a press of gaping faces, 1408  
 Which seem'd to swallow up his sound advice ;  
 All jointly listening, but with several graces,  
 As if some mermaid did their ears entice,  
 Some high, some low, the painter was so nice ; 1412  
 The scalps of many, almost hid behind,  
 To jump up higher seem'd, to mock the mind.

Here one man's hand lean'd on another's head, 1415  
 His nose being shadow'd by his neighbour's ear ;  
 Here one being throng'd bears back, all boll'n and red ;  
 Another smother'd, seems to pelt and swear ;  
 And in their rage such signs of rage they bear,  
 As, but for loss of Nestor's golden words, 1420  
 It seem'd they would debate with angry swords.

For much imaginary work was there ;  
 Conceit deceitful, so compact, so kind,  
 That for Achilles' image stood his spear, 1424  
 Grip'd in an armed hand ; himself behind  
 Was left unseen, save to the eye of mind :  
 A hand, a foot, a face, a leg, a head,  
 Stood for the whole to be imagined. 1428



And from the walls of strong-besieged Troy,  
 When their brave hope, bold Hector, march'd to field,  
 Stood many Trojan mothers, sharing joy  
 To see their youthful sons bright weapons wield ; 1432  
 And to their hope they such odd action yield,  
     That through their light joy seemed to appear,—  
     Like bright things stain'd—a kind of heavy fear.

And from the strand of Dardan, where they fought,  
 To Simois' reedy banks the red blood ran, 1437  
 Whose waves to imitate the battle sought  
 With swelling ridges ; and their ranks began  
 To break upon the galled shore, and than 1440  
     Retire again, till meeting greater ranks  
     They join, and shoot their foam at Simois' banks.

To this well-painted piece is Lucrece come,  
 To find a face where all distress is stell'd. 1444  
 Many she sees where cares have carved some,  
 But none where all distress and dolour dwell'd,  
 Till she despairing Hecuba beheld, 1447  
     Staring on Priam's wounds with her old eyes,  
     Which bleeding under Pyrrhus' proud foot lies.

In her the painter had anatomiz'd  
 Time's ruin, beauty's wrack, and grim care's reign ;  
 Her cheeks with chaps and wrinkles were disguis'd ;  
 Of what she was no semblance did remain : 1453  
 Her blue blood chang'd to black in every vein,  
     Wanting the spring that those shrunk pipes had fed,  
     Show'd life imprison'd in a body dead. 1456

On this sad shadow Lucrece spends her eyes,  
 And shapes her sorrow to the beldam's woes,  
 Who nothing wants to answer her but cries,  
 And bitter words to ban her cruel foes : 1460  
 The painter was no god to lend her those ;  
     And therefore Lucrece swears he did her wrong,  
     To give her so much grief and not a tongue.

' Poor instrument,' quoth she, ' without a sound, 1464  
 I'll tune thy woes with my lamenting tongue ;  
 And drop sweet balm in Priam's painted wound,  
 And rail on Pyrrhus that hath done him wrong ;  
 And with my tears quench Troy that burns so long ;  
 And with my knife scratch out the angry eyes  
 Of all the Greeks that are thine enemies.

' Show me the strumpet that began this stir,  
 That with my nails her beauty I may tear. 1472  
 Thy heat of lust, fond Paris, did incur .  
 This load of wrath that burning Troy doth bear :  
 Thy eye kindled the fire that burneth here ;  
 And here in Troy, for trespass of thine eye, 1476  
 The sire, the son, the dame, and daughter die.

' Why should the private pleasure of some one  
 Become the public plague of many moe ?  
 Let sin, alone committed, light alone  
 Upon his head that hath transgressed so ; 1581  
 Let guiltless souls be freed from guilty woe ;  
 For one's offence why should so many fall,  
 To plague a private sin in general ? 1484

' Lo ! here weeps Hecuba, here Priam dies,  
 Here manly Hector faints, here Troilus swoonds,  
 Here friend by friend in bloody channel lies,  
 And friend to friend gives unadvised wounds, 1488  
 And one man's lust these many lives confounds :  
 Had doting Priam check'd his son's desire,  
 Troy had been bright with fame and not with fire.'

Here feelingly she weeps Troy's painted woes ; 1492  
 For sorrow, like a heavy-hanging bell,  
 Once set on ringing, with his own weight goes ;  
 Then little strength rings out the doleful knell :  
 So Lucrece, set a-work, sad tales doth tell 1496  
 To pencil'd pensiveness and colour'd sorrow ;  
 She lends them words, and she their looks doth borrow.

She throws her eyes about the painting round,  
 And whom she finds forlorn she doth lament : 1500  
 At last she sees a wretched image bound,  
 That piteous looks to Phrygian shepherds lent ;  
 His face, though full of cares, yet show'd content ;  
 Onward to Troy with the blunt swains he goes, 1504  
 So mild, that Patience seem'd to scorn his woes.

In him the painter labour'd with his skill  
 To hide deceit, and give the harmless show  
 An humble gait, calm looks, eyes wailing still, 1508  
 A brow unbent that seem'd to welcome woe ;  
 Cheeks neither red nor pale, but mingled so  
 That blushing red no guilty instance gave,  
 Nor ashy pale the fear that false hearts have. 1512

But, like a constant and confirmed devil,  
 He entertain'd a show so seeming-just,  
 And therein so ensconced his secret evil,  
 That jealousy itself could not mistrust 1516  
 False-creeping craft and perjury should thrust  
 Into so bright a day such black-fac'd storms,  
 Or blot with hell-born sin such saint-like forms.

The well-skill'd workman this mild image drew 1520  
 For perjur'd Sinon, whose enchanting story  
 The credulous old Priam after slew ;  
 Whose words like wildfire burnt the shining glory  
 Of rich-built Ilion, that the skies were sorry, 1524  
 And little stars shot from their fixed places,  
 When their glass fell wherein they view'd their faces.

This picture she advisedly perus'd,  
 And chid the painter for his wondrous skill, 1528  
 Saying, some shape in Sinon's was abus'd ;  
 So fair a form lodg'd not a mind so ill :  
 And still on him she gaz'd, and gazing still,  
 Such signs of truth in his plain face she spied, 1532  
 That she concludes the picture was belied.

'It cannot be,' quoth she, 'that so much guile;—  
 She would have said—'can lurk in such a look;'  
 But Tarquin's shape came in her mind the while,  
 And from her tongue 'can lurk' from 'cannot' took:  
 'It cannot be,' she in that sense forsook,  
 And turn'd it thus, 'It cannot be, I find,  
 But such a face should bear a wicked mind : 1540

'For even as subtle Sinon here is painted,  
 So sober-sad, so weary, and so mild,  
 As if with grief or travail he had fainted,  
 To me came Tarquin armed; so beguil'd 1544  
 With outward honesty, but yet defil'd  
 With inward vice; as Priam him did cherish,  
 So did I Tarquin; so my Troy did perish.

'Look, look, how listening Priam wets his eyes, 1548  
 To see those borrow'd tears that Sinon sheds!  
 Priam, why art thou old and yet not wise?  
 For every tear he falls a Trojan bleeds:  
 His eye drops fire, no water thence proceeds; 1552  
 Those round clear pearls of his, that move thy pity,  
 Are balls of quenchless fire to burn thy city.

'Such devils steal effects from lightless hell; 1555  
 For Sinon in his fire doth quake with cold,  
 And in that cold hot-burning fire doth dwell;  
 These contraries such unity do hold,  
 Only to flatter fools and make them bold : 1559  
 So Priam's trust false Sinon's tears doth flatter,  
 That he finds means to burn his Troy with water.'

Here, all enrag'd, such passion her assails,  
 That patience is quite beaten from her breast.  
 She tears the senseless Sinon with her nails, 1564  
 Comparing him to that unhappy guest  
 Whose deed hath made herself herself detest:  
 At last she smilingly with this gives o'er;  
 'Fool, fool!! quoth she, 'his wounds will not be sore.'

Thus ebbs and flows the current of her sorrow, 1569  
 And time doth weary time with her complaining.  
 She looks for night, and then she longs for morrow,  
 And both she thinks too long with her remaining :  
 Short time seems long in sorrow's sharp sustaining :  
     Though woe be heavy, yet it seldom sleeps ;  
     And they that watch see time how slow it creeps.

While all this time hath overslipp'd her thought,  
 That she with painted images hath spent ; 1577  
 Being from the feeling of her own grief brought  
 By deep surmise of others' detriment ;  
 Losing her woes in shows of discontent.  
     It easeth some, though none it ever cur'd, 1581  
     To think their dolour others have endur'd.

But now the mindful messenger, come back,  
 Brings home his lord and other company ; 1584  
 Who finds his Lucrece clad in mourning black ;  
 And round about her tear-distained eye  
 Blue circles stream'd, like rainbows in the sky :  
     These water-galls in her dim element 1588  
     Foretell new storms to those already spent.

Which when her sad-beholding husband saw,  
 Amazedly in her sad face he stares :  
 Her eyes, though sod in tears, look'd red and raw,  
 Her lively colour kill'd with deadly cares. 1593  
 He hath no power to ask her how she fares :  
     Both stood like old acquaintance in a trance,  
     Met far from home; wondering each other's chance.

At last he takes her by the bloodless hand, 1597  
 And thus begins : ' What uncouth ill event  
 Hath thee befall'n, that thou dost trembling stand ?  
 Sweet love, what spite hath thy fair colour spent ?  
 Why art thou thus attir'd in discontent ? 1601  
     Unmask, dear dear, this moody heaviness,  
     And tell thy grief, that we may give redress.'

# THE RAPE OF LUCRECE

1041

Three times with sighs she gives her sorrow fire, 1004  
 Ere once she can discharge one word of woe :  
 At length address'd to answer his desire,  
 She modestly prepares to let them know  
 Her honour is ta'en prisoner by the foe ; 1608  
 While Collatine and his consorted lords  
 With sad attention long to hear her words.

And now this pale swan in her watery nest  
 Begins the sad dirge of her certain ending. 1612  
 ' Few words,' quoth she, ' shall fit the trespass best,  
 Where no excuse can give the fault amending ;  
 In me more woe than words are now depending ;  
 And my laments would be drawn out too long, 1616  
 To tell them all with one poor tired tongue.

' Then be this all the task it hath to say :  
 Dear husband, in the interest of thy bed  
 A stranger came, and on that pillow lay 1620  
 Where thou wast wont to rest thy weary head ;  
 And what wrong else may be imagined  
 By foul enforcement might be done to me,  
 From that, alas ! thy Lucrece is not free. 1624

' For in the dreadful dead of dark midnight,  
 With shining falchion in my chamber came  
 A creeping creature with a flaming light,  
 And softly cried, " Awake, thou Roman dame, 1628  
 And entertain my love ; else lasting shame  
 On thee and thine this night I will inflict,  
 If thou my love's desire do contradict.

" For some hard-favour'd groom of thine," quoth he,  
 " Unless thou yoke thy liking to my will, 1633  
 I'll murder straight, and then I'll slaughter thee,  
 And swear I found you where you did fulfil  
 The loathsome act of lust, and so did kill 1636  
 The lechers in their deed ; this act will be  
 My fame, and thy perpetual infamy."

' With this I did begin to start and cry,  
 And then against my heart he set his sword; 1640  
 Swearing, unless I took all patiently,  
 I should not live to speak another word;  
 So should my shame still fest upon record,  
 And never be forgot in mighty Rome 1644  
 Th' adulterate death of Lucrece and her groom.

' Mine enemy was strong, my poor self weak,  
 And far the weaker with so strong a fear :  
 My bloody judge forbade my tongue to speak ; 1648  
 No rightful plea might plead for justice there :  
 His scarlet lust came evidence to swear  
 That my poor beauty had purloin'd his eyes ;  
 And when the judge is robb'd the prisoner dies.

' O ! teach me how to make mine own excuse, 1653  
 Or, at the least, this refuge let me find ;  
 Though my gross blood be stain'd with this abuse,  
 Immaculate and spotless is my mind ;  
 That was not forc'd ; that never was inclin'd 1657  
 To accessary yieldings, but still pure  
 Doth in her poison'd closet yet endure.'

Lo ! here the helpless merchant of this loss, 1660  
 With head declin'd, and voice damm'd up with woe  
 With sad set eyes, and wretched arms across,  
 From lips new-waxen pale begins to blow  
 The grief away that stops his answer so : 1664  
 But, wretched as he is, he strives in vain ;  
 What he breathes out his breath drinks up again.

As through an arch the violent roaring tide  
 Outruns the eye that doth behold his haste, 1668  
 Yet in the eddy boundeth in his pride  
 Back to the strait that forc'd him on so fast ;  
 In rage sent out, recall'd in rage, being past :  
 Even so his sighs, his sorrows, make a saw, 1672  
 To push grief on, and back the same grief draw.

Which speechless woe of his poor she attendeth,  
 And his untimely frenzy thus awaketh :  
 ' Dear lord, thy sorrow to my sorrow lendeth 1376  
 Another power ; no flood by raining slaketh.  
 My woe too sensible thy passion maketh  
 More feeling-painful : let it then suffice  
 To drown one woe, one pair of weeping eyes. 1680

' And for my sake, when I might charm thee so,  
 For she that was thy Lucrece, now attend me :  
 Be suddenly revenged on my foe, 1683  
 Thine, mine, his own : suppose thou dost defend me  
 From what is past : the help that thou shalt lend me  
 Comes all too late, yet let the traitor die ;  
 For sparing justice feeds iniquity. 1687

' But ere I name him, you fair lords,' quoth she,—  
 Speaking to those that came with Collatine,—  
 ' Shall plight your honourable faiths to me,  
 With swift pursuit to venge this wrong of mine ;  
 For 'tis a meritorious fair design 1692  
 To chase injustice with revengeful arms :  
 Knights, by their oaths, should right poor ladies' harms.

At this request, with noble disposition  
 Each present lord began to promise aid, 1696  
 As bound in knighthood to her imposition,  
 Longing to hear the hateful foe bewray'd.  
 But she, that yet her sad task hath not said, 1699  
 The protestation stops. ' O ! speak,' quoth she,  
 ' How may this forced stain be wip'd from me ?

' What is the quality of mine offence,  
 Being constrain'd with dreadful circumstance ?  
 May my pure mind with the foul act dispense, 1704  
 My low-declined honour to advance ?  
 May any terms acquit me from this chance ?  
 The poison'd fountain clears itself again ;  
 And why not I from this compelled stain ? ' 1708



With this, they all at once began to say,  
 Her body's stain her mind untainted clears ;  
 While with a joyless smile she turns away  
 The face, that map which deep impression bears 1712  
 Of hard misfortune, carv'd in it with tears.  
 ' No, no,' quoth she, ' no dame, hereafter living,  
 By my excuse shall claim excuse's giving.'

Here with a sigh, as if her heart would break, 1716  
 She throws forth Tarquin's name, ' He, he,' she says,  
 But more than ' he ' her poor tongue could not speak ;  
 Till after many accents and delays,  
 Untimely breathings, sick and short assays, 1720  
 She utters this, ' He, he, fair lords, 'tis he,  
 That guides this hand to give this wound to me.'

Even here she sheathed in her harmless breast  
 A harmful knife, that thence her soul unsheath'd :  
 That blow did bail it from the deep unrest 1725  
 Of that polluted prison where it breath'd ;  
 Her contrite sighs unto the clouds bequeath'd  
 Her winged sprite, and through her wounds doth fly  
 Life's lasting date from cancell'd destiny. 1729

Stone-still, astonish'd with this deadly deed,  
 Stood Collatine and all his lordly crew ;  
 Till Lucrece' father, that beholds her bleed, 1732  
 Himself on her self-slaughter'd body threw ;  
 And from the purple fountain Brutus drew  
 The murderous knife, and as it left the place,  
 Her blood, in poor revenge, held it in chase ; 1736

And bubbling from her breast, it doth divide  
 In two slow rivers, that the crimson blood  
 Circles her body in on every side,  
 Who, like a late-sack'd island, vastly stood, 1740  
 Bare and unpeopled in this fearful flood.  
 Some of her blood still pure and red remain'd,  
 And some look'd black, and that false Tarquin stain'd.

## 1943

1744

1748

1753

1760

1768

1776

The deep vexation of his inward soul  
 Hath serv'd a dumb arrest upon his tongue ; 1780  
 Who, mad that sorrow should his use control,  
 Or keep him from heart-easing words so long,  
 Begins to talk ; but through his lips do throng  
 Weak words, so thick come in his poor heart's aid,  
 That no man could distinguish what he said. 1785

Yet sometime ' Tarquin ' was pronounced plain,  
 But through his teeth, as if the name he tore. •  
 This windy tempest, till it blow up rain, 1788  
 Held back his sorrow's tide, to make it more ;  
 At last it rains, and busy winds give o'er :  
 Then son and father weep with equal strife  
 Who should weep most, for daughter or for wife.

The one doth call her his, the other his, 1793  
 Yet neither may possess the claim they lay.  
 The father says, ' She 's mine.' ' O ! mine she is,'  
 Replies her husband ; ' do not take away  
 My sorrow's interest ; let no mourner say 1797  
 He weeps for her, for she was only mine,  
 And only must be wail'd by Collatine.'

' O ! ' quoth Lucretius, ' I did give that life 1800  
 Which she too early and too late hath spill'd.'  
 ' Woe, woe,' quoth Collatine, ' she was my wife, °  
 I ow'd her, and 'tis mine that she hath kill'd.'  
 ' My daughter ' and ' my wife ' with clamours fill'd  
 The dispers'd air, who, holding Lucrece' life, 1805  
 Answer'd their cries, ' my daughter ' and ' my wife '.

Brutus, who pluck'd the knife from Lucrece' side,  
 Seeing such emulation in their woe, 1808  
 Began to clothe his wit in state and pride,  
 Burying in Lucrece' wound his folly's show.  
 He with the Romans was esteemed so  
 As silly-jeering idiots are with kings, 1812  
 For sportive words and uttering foolish things :

But now he throws that shallow habit by,  
 Wherein deep policy did him disguise ;  
 And arm'd his long-hid wits advisedly, 1816  
 To check the tears in Collatinus' eyes.  
 'Thou wronged lord of Rome,' quoth he, 'arise :  
 Let my unsounded self, suppos'd a fool,  
 Now set thy long-experienc'd wit to school. 1820

'Why, Collatine, is woe the cure for woe ?  
 Do wounds help wounds; or grief help grievous deeds ?  
 Is it revenge to give thyself a blow  
 For his foul act by whom thy fair wife bleeds ? 1824  
 Such childish humour from weak minds proceeds :  
 Thy wretched wife mistook the matter so,  
 To slay herself, that should have slain her foe.

'Courageous Roman, do not steep thy heart 1828  
 In such relenting dew of lamentations ;  
 But kneel with me and help to bear thy part,  
 To rouse our Roman gods with invocations,  
 That they will suffer these abominations, 1832  
 Since Rome herself in them doth stand disgrac'd,  
 By our strong arms from forth her fair streets chas'd.

'Now, by the Capitol that we adore,  
 And by this chaste blood so unjustly stain'd, 1836  
 By heaven's fair sun that breeds the fat earth's store,  
 By all our country rights in Rome maintain'd,  
 And by chaste Lucrece' soul that late complain'd  
 Her wrongs to us, and by this bloody knife, 1840  
 We will revenge the death of this true wife.'

This said, he struck his hand upon his breast,  
 And kiss'd the fatal knife to end his vow ;  
 And to his protestation urg'd the rest, 1844  
 Who, wondering at him, did his words allow :  
 Then jointly to the ground their knees they bow ;  
 And that deep vow, which Brutus made before,  
 He doth again repeat, and that they swore. 1848

When they had sworn to this advised doom,  
They did conclude to bear dead Lucrece thence ;  
To show her bleeding body thorough Rome,  
And so to publish Tarquin's foul offence :  
Which being done with speedy diligence,  
The Romans plausibly did give consent  
To Tarquin's everlasting banishment.

## SONNETS



# SONNETS

## INTRODUCTION

SONNETS by Shakespeare are first heard of in the well-known reference of Meres in the *Palladis Tamia*, 1598: 'his sugred Sonnets among his private friends.' The word 'sonnet' was often used in Elizabethan days in the sense of 'song', and we cannot be certain that Meres referred to any of the poems which we now know as Shakespeare's Sonnets. But 'sonnet' was also often used in the stricter sense of a quatorzain, and the words 'among his private friends' suit well the poems before us, which were never published with the writer's authority. The probability that Meres had seen or had heard of some of the sonnets in the collection which we possess is increased by the fact that two of these were printed, with some textual variations, in the following year, 1599, in the surreptitious publication *The Passionate Pilgrim*. The sonnets which appear in that volume were given a prominent place as if they were novelties; they are Nos. 138 and 144 of the series which was issued ten years later, and are of a very intimate nature, showing, if the autobiographical theory be accepted, that in the year 1599 at latest the relations of Shakespeare with his friend and the so-called 'dark lady' had been established, and had reached a crisis of grave trouble. Nothing further is heard of the *Sonnets* until the entry on the Stationers' Register, May 20, 1609, of 'a Booke called Shakespeares Sonnettes'. In the same year the volume was published in quarto: 'Shake-speares Sonnets. Never before imprinted. At London By G. Eld for T. T. and are to be solde by William Aspley. 1609.' From the entry in the Stationers' Register we know that T. T. stands for Thomas Thorpe, and the dedication, which has given rise to so many conjectures, is also signed with the



same initials. The vogue of the English sonnet was great during the last decade of the sixteenth century. By 1609 the tide had ebbed, and Thorpe's volume seems to have attracted little attention. The *Sonnets* were not re-issued until 1640, when the publisher, Benson, included them (with the omission of eight), singly or in disordered groups, bearing newly invented titles, in his volume named 'Poems. Written by Wil. Shake-speare Gent.' Benson may have found his copy elsewhere than in Thorpe's volume; he informs his reader that the Poems are 'of the same purity the Authour then living avouched'; he describes them as 'seren, clear, and elegantly plain'; the sonnets are represented in the titles, with some exceptions, as addressed by a lover to the lady of his love. The book, which gives poems not of Shakespeare's authorship, was evidently a publisher's venture, and carries with it no authority.

Thorpe, for whom the volume of 1609 was printed, was a comparatively humble person connected with the book-trade. 'Fortune,' writes Sir Sidney Lee, 'rarely favoured him, and he held his own with difficulty for some thirty years in the lowest ranks of the London publishing trade.' How he obtained his copy we cannot tell; but the uncorrected errors of the press, such as the frequent misprint *their* for *thy*, may assure us that the writer of the *Sonnets* never corrected a proof.

The *Sonnets* consist in the main of two series. If we accept the original order of the poems (and no better order can be found among the many that have been proposed) the first series, addressed to a young man of great beauty and apparently of high station, includes the Sonnets from 1 to 125, and closes with an envoy, 126, consisting of six couplets. That envoy is complete in its twelve lines, but the printers of the edition of 1609, supposing it to be an imperfect sonnet, marked by parentheses, which enclose blanks, the supposed omission of two lines. The second series, the order of which seems somewhat confused, runs from 127 to 152; the poems are either addressed to a woman or suggested by the relations of the writer with her. The entire collection closes with two sonnets—153 and 154—which deal with the same theme, the 'fire of Cupid's

brand, and it was noticed by Hertzberg that these are variations on a Greek epigram by Marianus found in the *Palatine Anthology* (ix. 627), which had been translated into Latin: *Selecta Epigrammata*, Basel, 1529, and again several times before the close of the sixteenth century.

The *Sonnets* shadow forth a story, real or imaginary, a parallel for which has not been found in the whole range of English sonnet-literature, whether autobiographical or merely imaginative. A young man, for whom the writer professes admiration, and to whom he offers devoted affection, is entreated to marry, so to perpetuate his beauty in offspring and hand down the honour of his house; apparently the youth prefers the liberty of youth. The writer, according to the poetical convention of the time, resolves at least to give him immortality in verse. The friendship between the poet and the youth is, for a time, ardent and intimate. Then come two causes of strain and trouble, which after a period result in a temporary alienation. The youth favours a rival poet, and the writer feels that he has lost some of the love and loyalty which had been so highly valued by him. The second cause of alienation is yet more cruel. The poet has been snared by a woman who disregards her marriage-vow (142), who is skilled in music (128), and possesses an irresistible fascination, though she is not beautiful according to the ideals of the time, for she is dark-haired, dark-eyed, and lacks the roseate cheeks of the conventional beauty of the poets (130). Faithless in marriage, she is also faithless in her lawless love; she abandons the poet for his young and distinguished friend. Silence and estrangement between the two friends follow. But after a long lapse of time the erring youth is forgiven, and friendship, now built upon a surer basis, is restored. Such, in a few words, is the story adumbrated in the *Sonnets*. Is all this an ingenious invention of the sonneteer, or had it some origin in facts of Shakespeare's life?

The *Sonnets* in poetic worth immeasurably surpass the *Venus and Adonis* and the *Lucrece*, nor can the author have been unaware of this fact. Why did not Shakespeare publish them, if they were a mere work

of art, as he had published his narrative poems? It would have been easy, in a few words of prose or verse, to have explained that the story was not real but imagined, if such was indeed the case. For at least ten years, however, the poems were held in reserve, and when they were published Shakespeare had no hand in the publication, and in no way protested—as far as we know—against the seizure by Thorpe of the creature of his invention.

The reasons against believing the *Sonnets* to have had an autobiographical basis seem to be chiefly two. First, many things in them correspond with the current conventions of sonnet-literature. But this surely was almost inevitable, and a convention is often a convenient garb for what is real. Milton actually sorrowed for the death of Edward King; but when he sang his sorrow he adopted the pastoral disguise, and became, for the occasion, a shepherd. Secondly, some of those who honour Shakespeare are unwilling to believe that he erred through passion for a woman, and that he bestowed extravagant homage and affection on a young man who may not have deserved such devotion. But the struggle between passion and judgement sounds through many of Shakespeare's plays, as it does through some of the later sonnets. We have no right to assume that he was an immaculate being; we may honour him, who transcended all unworthy passion before the close, who knew the serene heights of vision when *The Tempest* was written, who loved his English Imogen better than he had ever loved his enchantress Cleopatra; we can honour him even though we admit his errors on the way. As to Shakespeare's devotion and homage to a youth, in its expression there is no doubt sometimes an element of conventionality; but the feeling itself seems to have been real. In Renaissance days the passion of friendship was idealized, and was often placed on a more transcendent height than the passion of love. The affection, expressed also in enthusiastic sonnets, of Michael Angelo for Tommaso Cavalieri, that of Languet for Philip Sidney, that of Montaigne for Estienne de la Boëtie, and, to come down to more recent days, that of the poet Gray for the young Bonstetten, furnish parallels which forbid us to think

that Shakespeare was singular in his admiration or his love.

It would be pleasant to read the *Sonnets* for the sake of their incomparable beauty alone, and to forget Thorpe's perplexing dedication, and all the questions which it raises; but we cannot read the *Sonnets* without problems arising which compel us to attempt their solution. Thorpe dedicates the poems to 'Mr. W. H.' as the 'only begetter' of them, wishing at the same time, for the same person 'all happiness and that eternity promised by our ever-living poet'. The natural interpretation assuredly is that Mr. W. H. was the person who inspired the *Sonnets*, and to whom the poet promised immortality either through offspring begotten by him, or through verse of which he was the inspirer. It has been asserted, indeed, that 'begetter' may mean 'procurer', and that the *Sonnets* may be dedicated to some obscure person who discovered the copy and presented it to Thorpe. No example in Elizabethan literature of 'begetter' in the sense of procurer has been discovered; nor, in my opinion, has any example been adduced—save one, which is put into the mouth of a speaker in Dekker's *Satiromastix*, who amusingly mars his English, and has an unbecoming reason for marring it in this particular instance—of the use of 'beget' in the sense of 'procure', except when the procurement is the result of producing. We may 'beget' ourselves a reputation, that is, procure it by producing it. But to an Elizabethan, as to a reader of the present day, it would, I believe, have seemed absurd to speak of begetting a manuscript or begetting a poem, unless the begetter had been either the author or the inspirer. To consider any conjecture founded on this misconception of Elizabethan English is unnecessary.

If Thorpe was right, then some one the initials of whose name were 'W. H.' was the inspirer of Shakespeare's *Sonnets*. In the 135th and 136th *Sonnets* Shakespeare plays upon his own Christian name, and the name of the friend who had robbed him of his love. The play, which involves the meaning of the word 'will' in the Elizabethan sense of amorous desire, is pointed out by the italics of the original edition.

By no strained, unnatural interpretation can the conclusion be escaped that the friend who had wronged the poet was named, like the poet himself, 'William.' And here the sonnet agrees with the dedication. Mr. W. H. was undoubtedly Mr. William H. Having arrived at this point, however, it must be admitted that certainty ends, and we are left to conjecture.

Yet we may be thankful for small mercies: this at least disposes of the theory that Henry Wriothesley, Earl of Southampton, was addressed in the *Sonnets*. The case made for William Herbert, Earl of Pembroke, to whom, with his brother Philip, as patrons of Shakespeare, the first folio was dedicated, is less easily dismissed. It would, indeed, have been impossible for Thorpe, as Sir Sidney Lee has shown, to have addressed a peer as Mr. W. H.; but who can say that the earl may not himself have permitted the address as a disguise? To suppose this, however, is a mere conjecture. A most ingenious argument has been developed by Mr. Tyler, in his edition of the *Sonnets*, in support of the Herbert theory; the lady of the sonnets, Mr. Tyler maintains, was the queen's maid of honour, Mary Fitton, who unquestionably was Herbert's mistress. It remains in dispute, however, whether Mary Fitton was dark or fair, and there is not a shadow of evidence to connect her with Shakespeare. We must be content to remain in ignorance. We lose ourselves in countless mazes of controversy; and in this and we can identify neither the high-born youth nor the dark-eyed woman. But from such controversy we can always return with renewed delight to the enchantment of the poems.<sup>1</sup>

To identify the rival poet may appear less difficult, for his genius and his work are characterized in several sonnets. He is 'learned' compared with Shakespeare (78); he is no 'saucy bark' like Shakespeare, but 'of tall building and of goodly pride' (80); he is visited at night by some 'affable familiar ghost' (86); he writes 'hymns' in his patron's praise (85). Among many guesses, which include Marlowe, Jonson, Drayton, Daniel, and Barnabe Barnes, by far the happiest guess

<sup>1</sup> The italicised *Heus* of Sonnet 20, l. 7, in the original edition has suggested that the name of Shakespeare's friend may have been *Hughes*; but the guess is unsupported by any evidence.

is that of the late Professor Minto, who pointed to Chapman, the translator of Homer, the author of two hymns in honour of Night; who (as the poet tells us in prose) was visited by 'Skill', coming 'like a heavenly familiar'. A portion of Chapman's *Homer* appeared in 1598; in a later edition sonnets addressed to both Southampton and Pembroke are connected with the translation. The argument in favour of Chapman has been considerably strengthened by Mr. Acheson, in his valuable study, *Shakespeare and the Rival Poet*. Certainty is, indeed, unattainable, but this conjecture is not without some basis of evidence, and may be regarded as possibly right.

The date at which the *Sonnets* were written cannot be ascertained. Echoes, in language and in idea, are heard in the early plays, and again echoes are heard in the plays which lie around the year 1600. The line 'Lilies that fester smell far worse than weeds' (94) appears also in the play *Edward III*, printed in 1596, and in a scene which some critics have attributed to Shakespeare. We cannot, however, tell whether the line is adopted by the sonnet from the play or by the play from this sonnet as known 'among' Shakespeare's 'private friends'. It is urged that the line in 107, 'The mortal moon hath her eclipse endured', must refer to the death of Elizabeth (1603), but to me it seems that the reference is to the restored brightness of the love between Shakespeare and his friend, which had suffered an eclipse. Mr. Tyler has argued that the phrasing of some lines in 55 imply a debt to the *Palladis Tamia* of Meres (1598), but the argument is met by Dr. Lee, who finds a possible suggestion for these lines in Golding's translation of Ovid's *Metamorphoses*. We know from 104 that when that sonnet was written three years had elapsed since the poet had first made acquaintance with his distinguished friend. The supporters of the Southampton theory must place many of the sonnets as early as 1595-6; the supporters of the Herbert theory must date many of them about 1598-1601. Here, again, certainty is unattainable.

It remains to say a word as to the order in which we find the sonnets in the edition of 1609. Written as they were from time to time during a period of at least

three years—years of love, estrangement, and renewed affection—we cannot expect to find an uninterrupted series. But a close examination of 1-126 has convinced me that many sonnets form continuous groups, and that we cannot with advantage disturb the order in which they have come down to us. 'I find it possible,' I have written elsewhere, 'to go on without interruption from 1 to 32; from 33 to 42; from 43 to 74; from 75 to 96; from 97 to 99; from 100 to 126.' Smaller groups can be formed within some of these; thus, perhaps, there is a break after 58, and perhaps there are breaks elsewhere; in the main, however, the sonnets of friendship seem to me well arranged; they tell a story in a natural sequence of thoughts, feelings, incidents. The sonnets of passion for a woman impress me as somewhat chaotic in their array or disarray; but in some instances a sonnet is even here evidently linked with its successor or predecessor.

The form of Shakespeare's sonnets—three quatrains followed by a couplet—is found in the work of several predecessors. Surrey had used this form; Shakespeare was perhaps more influenced by Daniel than by any other writer; but the sonnets of Daniel, compared with those of Shakespeare, it has been well said, are as moonlight unto sunlight, and as water unto wine.

## SONNETS

TO · THE · ONLIE · BEGETTER · OF ·  
THESE · INSUING · SONNETS ·  
MR. W. H., ALL · HAPPINESSE ·  
AND · THAT · ETERNITIE ·  
PROMISED ·  
BY ·  
OUR · EVER-LIVING · POET ·  
WISHETH ·  
THE · WELL-WISHING ·  
ADVENTURER · IN ·  
SETTING ·  
FORTH ·  
· T. T.

### I

FROM fairest creatures we desire increase,  
That thereby beauty's rose might never die,  
But as the ripper should by time decease,  
His tender heir might bear his memory :  
But thou, contracted to thine own bright eyes,  
Feed'st thy light's flame with self-substantial fuel, 6  
Making a famine where abundance lies,  
Thyself thy foe, to thy sweet self too cruel.  
Thou that art now the world's fresh ornament  
And only herald to the gaudy spring,  
Within thine own bud buriest thy content  
And, tender churl, mak'st waste in niggarding. 12  
Pity the world, or else this glutton be,  
To eat the world's due, by the grave and thee.



## II

When forty winters shall besiege thy brow,  
 And dig deep trenches in thy beauty's field,  
 Thy youth's proud livery,\* so gaz'd on now,  
 Will be a tatter'd weed, of small worth held:  
 Then being ask'd where all thy beauty lies,  
 Where all the treasure of thy lusty days,  
 To say, within thine own deep-sunken eyes,  
 Were an all-eating shame and thriftless praise.  
 How much more praise deserv'd thy beauty's use,  
 If thou couldst answer 'This fair child of mine  
 Shall sum my count, and make my old excuse,'  
 Proving his beauty by succession thine !  
 This were to be new made when thou art old,  
 And see thy blood warm when thou feel'st it cold.

6

12

## III

Look in thy glass, and tell the face thou viewest  
 Now is the time that face should form another ;  
 Whose fresh repair if now thou not renewest,  
 Thou dost beguile the world, unbless some mother.  
 For where is she so fair whose unear'd womb  
 Disdains the tillage of thy husbandry ?  
 Or who is he so fond will be the tomb  
 Of his self-love, to stop posterity ?  
 Thou art thy mother's glass, and she in thee  
 Calls back the lovely April of her prime ;  
 So thou through windows of thine age shalt see,  
 Despite of wrinkles, this thy golden time.  
 But if thou live, remember'd not to be,  
 Die single, and thine image dies with thee.

6

12

## IV

Unthrifty loveliness, why dost thou spend  
 Upon thyself thy beauty's legacy ?  
 Nature's bequest gives nothing, but doth lend,  
 And being frank, she lends to those are free :  
 Then,auteous niggard, why dost thou abuse  
 The bounteous largess given thee to give ?

6

Profitless usurer, why dost thou use  
 So great a sum of sums, yet canst not live ?  
 For having traffic with thyself alone,  
 Thou of thyself thy sweet self dost deceive :  
 Then how, when Nature calls thee to be gone,  
 What acceptable audit canst thou leave ?  
 Thy unus'd beauty must be tomb'd with thee,  
 Which, used, lives th' executor to be.

12

## V

Those hours, that with gentle work did frame  
 The lovely gaze where every eye doth dwell,  
 Will play the tyrants to the very same  
 And that unfair which fairly doth excel ;  
 For never-resting time leads summer on  
 To hideous winter, and confounds him there ;  
 Sap check'd with frost, and lusty leaves quite gone,  
 Beauty o'ersnow'd and bareness every where :  
 Then, were not summer's distillation left,  
 A liquid prisoner pent in walls of glass,  
 Beauty's effect with beauty were bereft,  
 Nor it, nor no remembrance what it was :  
 But flowers distill'd, though they with winter meet,  
 Leese but their show ; their substance still lives sweet.

6

12

## VI

Then let not winter's ragged hand deface  
 In thee thy summer, ere thou be distill'd :  
 Make sweet some vial ; treasure thou some place  
 With beauty's treasure, ere it be self-kill'd.  
 That use is not forbidden usury,  
 Which happies those that pay the willing loan ;  
 That's for thyself to breed another thee,  
 Or ten times happier, be it ten for one ;  
 Ten times thyself were happier than thou art,  
 If ten of thine ten times refigur'd thee ;  
 Then what could death do, if thou shouldst depart,  
 Leaving thee living in posterity ?  
 Be not self-will'd, for thou art much too fair  
 To be death's conquest and make worms thine heir.

6

12

## VII

Lo ! in the orient when the gracious light  
 Lifts up his burning head, each under eye  
 Doth homage to his new-appearing sight,  
 Serving with looks his sacred majesty ;  
 And having climb'd the steep-up heavenly hill,  
 Resembling strong youth in his middle age, 6  
 Yet mortal looks adore his beauty still,  
 Attending on his golden pilgrimage ;  
 But when from highmost pitch, with weary car,  
 Like feeble age, he reeleth from the day,  
 The eyes, 'fore duteous, now converted are  
 From his low tract, and look another way : 12  
 So thou, thyself outgoing in thy noon,  
 Unlook'd on diest, unless thou get a son.

## VIII

Music to hear, why hear'st thou music sadly ?  
 Sweets with sweets war not, joy delights in joy :  
 Why lov'st thou that which thou receiv'st not gladly,  
 Or else receiv'st with pleasure thine annoy ?  
 If the true concord of well-tuned sounds,  
 By unions married, do offend thine ear, 6  
 They do but sweetly chide thee, who confounds  
 In singleness the parts that thou shouldst bear.  
 Mark how one string, sweet husband to another,  
 Strikes each in each by mutual ordering ;  
 Resembling sire and child and happy mother,  
 Who, all in one, one pleasing note do sing : 12  
 Whose speechless song, being many, seeming one,  
 Sings this to thee : ' Thou single wilt prove none.'

## IX

Is it for fear to wet a widow's eye  
 That thou consum'st thyself in single life ?  
 Ah ! if thou issueless shalt hap to die,  
 The world will wail thee, like a makeless wife :  
 The world will be thy widow, and still weep  
 That thou no form of thee hast left behind,

When every private widow well may keep  
 By children's eyes her husband's shape in mind.  
 Look ! what an unthrift in the world doth spend  
 Shifts but his place, for still the world enjoys it ;  
 But beauty's waste hath in the world an end,  
 And kept unus'd, the user so destroys it. 12  
 No love toward others in that bosom sits  
 That on himself such murderous shame commits.

For shame ! deny that thou bear'st love to any,  
 Who for thyself art so unprovident.  
 Grant, if thou wilt, thou art belov'd of many,  
 But that thou none lov'st is most evident ;  
 For thou art so possess'd with murderous hate  
 That 'gainst thyself thou stick'st not to conspire, 6  
 Seeking that beauteous roof to ruinate  
 Which to repair should be thy chief desire.  
 O ! change thy thought, that I may change my mind :  
 Shall hate be fairer lodg'd than gentle love ?  
 Be, as thy presence is, gracious and kind,  
 Or to thyself at least kind-hearted prove : 12  
 Make thee another self, for love of me,  
 That beauty still may live in thine or thee.

## XI

As fast as thou shalt wane, so fast thou grow'st  
 In one of thine, from that which thou departest ;  
 And that fresh blood which youngly thou bestow'st  
 Thou mayst call thine when thou from youth convertest  
 Herein lives wisdom, beauty and increase ;  
 Without this, folly, age and cold decay : 6  
 If all were minded so, the times should cease  
 And threescore year would make the world away.  
 Let those whom Nature hath not made for store,  
 Harsh, featureless, and rude, barrenly perish :  
 Look, whom she best endow'd she gave the more ;  
 Which bounteous gift thou shouldst in bounty cherish :  
 She carv'd thee for her seal, and meant thereby 13  
 Thou shouldst print more, not let that copy die.

## XII

When I do count the clock that tells the time,  
 And see the brave day sunk in hideous night ;  
 When I behold the violet past prime,  
 And sable curls, all silver'd o'er with white ;  
 When lofty trees I see barren of leaves,  
 Which erst from heat did canopy the herd, 6  
 And summer's green all girded up' in sheaves,  
 Borne on the bier with white and bristly beard,  
 Then of thy beauty do I question make,  
 That thou among the wastes of time must go,  
 Since sweets and beauties do themselves forsake  
 And die as fast as they see others grow ; 12  
 And nothing 'gainst Time's scythe can make defence  
 Save breed, to brave him when he takes thee hence.

## XIII

O ! that you were yourself ; but, love, you are  
 No longer yours than you yourself here live :  
 Against this coming end you should prepare,  
 And your sweet semblance to some other give :  
 So should that beauty which you hold in lease 6  
 Find no determination ; then you were  
 Yourself again, after yourself's decease,  
 When your sweet issue your sweet form should bear.  
 Who lets so fair a house fall to decay,  
 Which husbandry in honour might uphold  
 Against the stormy gusts of winter's day  
 And barren rage of death's eternal cold ? 12  
 O ! none but unthrifths. Dear my love, you know  
 You had a father : let your son say so.

## XIV

Not from the stars do I my judgment pluck ;  
 And yet methinks I have astronomy,  
 But not to tell of good or evil luck,  
 Of plagues, of dearths, or seasons' quality ;  
 Nor can I fortune to brief minutes tell,  
 Pointing to each his thunder, rain, and wind,

Or say with princes if it shall go well,  
 By oft predict that I in heaven find :  
 But from thine eyes my knowledge I derive,  
 And, constant stars, in them I read such art  
 As ' Truth and beauty shall together thrive,  
 If from thyself to store thou wouldst convert ' ; 12  
 Or else of thee this I prognosticate :  
 ' Thy end is truth's and beauty's doom and date.'

## XV

When I consider every thing that grows  
 Holds in perfection but a little moment,  
 That this huge stage presenteth nought but shows  
 Whereon the stars in secret influence comment ;  
 When I perceive that men as plants increase,  
 Cheered and check'd even by the self-same sky, 6  
 Vaunt in their youthful sap, at height decrease,  
 And wear their brave state out of memory ;  
 Then the conceit of this inconstant stay  
 Sets you most rich in youth before my sight,  
 Where wasteful Time debateth with Decay,  
 To change your day of youth to sullied night ; 12  
 And, all in war with Time for love of you,  
 As he takes from you, I engraft you new.

## XVI

But wherefore do not you a mightier way  
 Make war upon this bloody tyrant, Time ?  
 And fortify yourself in your decay  
 With means more blessed than my barren rime ?  
 Now stand you on the top of happy hours,  
 And many maiden gardens, yet unset, 6  
 With virtuous wish would bear you living flowers,  
 Much liker than your painted counterfeit :  
 So should the lines of life that life repair,  
 Which this, Time's pencil, or my pupil pen,  
 Neither in inward worth nor outward fair,  
 Can make you live yourself in eyes of men. 12  
 To give away yourself keeps yourself still ;  
 And you must live, drawn by your own sweet skill.

## XVII

Who will believe my verse in time to come,  
 If it were fill'd with your most high deserts?  
 Though yet, heaven knows, it is but as a tomb  
 Which hides your life and shows not half your parts.  
 If I could write the beauty of your eyes  
 And in fresh numbers number all your graces,  
 The age to come would say 'This poet lies;  
 Such heavenly touches ne'er touch'd earthly faces.'  
 So should my papers, yellow'd with their age,  
 Be scorn'd, like old men of less truth than tongue,  
 And your true rights be term'd a poet's rage  
 And stretched metre of an antique song: 12  
     But were some child of yours alive that time,  
     You should live twice,—in it and in my rime.

## XVIII

Shall I compare thee to a summer's day?  
 Thou art more lovely and more temperate:  
 Rough winds do shake the darling buds of May,  
 And summer's lease hath all too short a date:  
 Sometime too hot the eye of heaven shines,  
 And often is his gold complexion dimm'd; 6  
 And every fair from fair sometime declines,  
 By chance, or nature's changing course untrimm'd;  
 But thy eternal summer shall not fade,  
 Nor lose possession of that fair thou ow'st,  
 Nor shall death brag thou wander'st in his shade,  
 When in eternal lines to time thou grow'st; 12  
     So long as men can breathe, or eyes can see,  
     So long lives this, and this gives life to thee.

## XIX

Devouring Time, blunt thou the lion's paws,  
 And make the earth devour her own sweet brood;  
 Pluck the keen teeth from the fierce tiger's jaws,  
 And burn the long-liv'd phoenix in her blood;  
 Make glad and sorry seasons as thou fleets,  
 And do whate'er thou wilt, swift-footed Time, 6

To the wide world and all her fading sweets;  
 But I forbid thee one most heinous crime:  
 O! carve not with thy hours my love's fair brow,  
 Nor draw no lines there with thine antique pen;  
 Him in thy course untainted do allow  
 For beauty's pattern to succeeding men. 12  
 Yet, do thy worst, old Time: despite thy wrong,  
 My love shall in my verse ever live young.

## XX

A woman's face with Nature's own hand painted  
 Hast thou, the master-mistress of my passion;  
 A woman's gentle heart, but not acquainted  
 With shifting change, as is false women's fashion;  
 An eye more bright than theirs, less false in rolling,  
 Gilding the object whereupon it gazeth; 6  
 A man in hue all 'hues' in his controlling,  
 Which steals men's eyes and women's souls amazeth.  
 And for a woman wert thou first created;  
 Till Nature, as she wrought thee, fell a-doting,  
 And by addition me of thee defeated,  
 By adding one thing to my purpose nothing. 12  
 But since she prick'd thee out for women's pleasure,  
 Mine be thy love, and thy love's use their treasure.

## XXI

So is it not with me as with that Muse  
 Stirr'd by a painted beauty to his verse,  
 Who heaven itself for ornament doth use  
 And every fair with his fair doth rehearse,  
 Making a couplement of proud compare, 5  
 With sun and moon, with earth and sea's rich gems,  
 With April's first-born flowers, and all things rare  
 That heaven's air in this huge rondure hems.  
 O! let me, true in love, but truly write,  
 And then believe me, my love is as fair  
 As any mother's child, though not so bright  
 As those gold candles fix'd in heaven's air: 12  
 Let them say more that like of hear-say well;  
 I will not praise that purpose not to sell.



## XXII

My glass shall not persuade me I am old,  
 So long as youth and thou are of one date ;  
 But when in thee time's furrows I behold,  
 Then look I death my days should expiate.  
 For all that beauty that doth cover thee  
 Is but the seemly raiment of my heart,  
 Which in thy breast doth live, as thine in me :  
 How can I then be elder than thou art ?  
 O ! therefore, love, be of thyself so wary  
 As I, not for myself, but for thee will ;  
 Bearing thy heart, which I will keep so chary  
 As tender nurse her babe from faring ill. 6  
 Presume not on thy heart when mine is slain ;  
 Thou gav'st me thine, not to give back again. 12

## XXIII

As an unperfect actor on the stage,  
 Who with his fear is put besides his part,  
 Or some fierce thing replete with too much rage,  
 Whose strength's abundance weakens his own heart ;  
 So I, for fear of trust, forget to say  
 The perfect ceremony of love's rite, 6  
 And in mine own love's strength seem to decay,  
 O'ercharg'd with burthen of mine own love's might.  
 O ! let my books be then the eloquence  
 And dumb presagers of my speaking breast,  
 Who plead for love, and look for recompense,  
 More than that tongue that more hath more express'd.  
 O ! learn to read what silent love hath writ : 13  
 To hear with eyes belongs to love's fine wit.

## XXIV

Mine eye hath play'd the painter and hath stell'd  
 Thy beauty's form in table of my heart ;  
 My body is the frame wherein 'tis held,  
 And perspective it is best painter's art.  
 For through the painter must you see his skill,  
 To find where your true image pictur'd lies, 6

Which in my bosom's shop is hanging still,  
 That hath his windows glazed with thine eyes.  
 Now see what good turns eyes for eyes have done :  
 Mine eyes have drawn thy shape, and thine for me  
 Are windows to my breast, where-through the sun  
 Delights to peep, to gaze therein on thee ; 12  
 Yet eyes this cunning want to grace their art,  
 They draw but what they see, know not the heart.

## XXV

Let those who are in favour with their stars  
 Of public honour and proud titles boast,  
 Whilst I, whom fortune of such triumph bars  
 Unlook'd for joy in that I honour most.  
 Great princes' favourites their fair leaves spread 6  
 But as the marigold at the sun's eye,  
 And in themselves their pride lies buried,  
 For at a frown they in their glory die.  
 The painful warrior famoused for fight,  
 After a thousand victories once foil'd,  
 Is from the book of honour razed quite,  
 And all the rest forgot for which he toil'd : 12  
 Then happy I, that love and am belov'd,  
 Where I may not remove nor be remov'd.

Lord of my love, to whom in vassalage  
 Thy merit hath my duty strongly knit,  
 To thee I send this written ambassage,  
 To witness duty, not to show my wit :  
 Duty so great, which wit so poor as mine 5  
 May make seem bare, in wanting words to show it,  
 But that I hope some good conceit of thine  
 In thy soul's thought, all naked, will bestow it ;  
 Till whatsoever star that guides my moving,  
 Points on me graciously with fair aspect,  
 And puts apparel on my tatter'd loving,  
 To show me worthy of thy sweet respect : 12  
 Then may I dare to boast how I do love thee ;  
 Till then not show my head where thou mayst prove  
 me.

## XXVII

Weary with toil, I haste me to my bed,  
 The dear repose for limbs with travel tir'd;  
 But then begins a journey in my head  
 To work my mind, when body's work 's expir'd:  
 For then my thoughts—from far where I abide—  
 Intend a zealous pilgrimage to thee,      6  
 And keep my drooping eyelids open wide,  
 Looking on darkness which the blind do see:  
 Save that my soul's imaginary sight  
 Presents thy shadow to my sightless view,  
 Which, like a jewel hung in ghastly night,      11  
 Makes black night beauteous and her old face new.  
 Lo! thus, by day my limbs, by night my mind,  
 For thee, and for myself no quiet find.

## XXVIII

How can I then return in happy plight,  
 That am debarr'd the benefit of rest?  
 When day's oppression is not eas'd by night,  
 But day by night and night by day oppress'd,  
 And each, though enemies to either's reign,  
 Do in consent shake hands to torture me,      6  
 The one by toil, the other to complain  
 How far I toil, still farther off from thee.  
 I tell the day, to please him thou art bright,  
 And dost him grace when clouds do blot the heaven:  
 So flatter I the swart-complexion'd night;      11  
 When sparkling stars twire not thou gild'st the even.  
 But day doth daily draw my sorrows longer,  
 And night doth nightly make grief's strength seem  
 stronger.

## XXIX

When in disgrace with fortune and men's eyes  
 I all alone bewep my outcast state,  
 And trouble deaf heaven with my bootless cries,  
 And look upon myself, and curse my fate;  
 Wishing me like to one more rich in hope,  
 Featur'd like him, like him with friends possess'd,      6

Desiring this man's art, and that man's scope,  
 With what I most enjoy contented least ;  
 Yet in these thoughts myself almost despising,  
 Haply I think on thee,—and then my state,  
 Like to the lark at break of day arising  
 From sullen earth, sings hymns at heaven's gate ;   12  
 For thy sweet love remember'd such wealth brings  
 That then I scorn to change my state with kings.

## XXX

When to the sessions of sweet silent thought  
 I summon up remembrance of things past,  
 I sigh the lack of many a thing I sought,  
 And with old woes new wail my dear times' waste :  
 Then can I drown an eye, unus'd to flow,  
 For precious friends hid in death's dateless night,   6  
 And weep afresh love's long since cancell'd woe,  
 And moan the expense of many a vanish'd sight :  
 Then can I grieve at grievances foregone,  
 And heavily from woe to woe tell o'er  
 The sad account of fore-bemoaned moan,  
 Which I new pay as if not paid before.   12  
 But if the while I think on thee, dear friend,  
 All losses are restor'd and sorrows end.

## XXXI

Thy bosom is endeared with all hearts,  
 Which I by lacking have supposed dead ;  
 And there reigns Love, and all Love's loving parts,  
 And all those friends which I thought buried.  
 How many a holy and obsequious tear  
 Hath dear religious love stol'n from mine eye,   6  
 As interest of the dead, which now appear  
 But things remov'd that hidden in thee lie !  
 Thou art the grave where buried love doth live,  
 Hung with the trophies of my lovers gone,  
 Who all their parts of me to thee did give,  
 That due of many now is thine alone :   12  
 Their images I lov'd I view in thee,  
 And thou—all they—hast all the all of me.

## XXXII

If thou survive my well-contented day,  
 When that churl Death my bones with dust shall cover,  
 And shalt by fortune once more re-survey  
 These poor rude lines of thy deceased lover,  
 Compare them with the bettering of the time,  
 And though they be outstripp'd by every pen,  
 Reserve them for my love, not for their rime,  
 Exceeded by the height of happier men.      6  
 O ! then vouchsafe me but this loving thought :  
 ' Had my friend's Muse grown with this growing age,  
 A dearer birth than this his love had brought,  
 To march in ranks of better equipage :      12  
 But since he died, and poets better prove,  
 Theirs for their style I'll read, his for his love.'

## XXXIII

Full many a glorious morning have I seen  
 Flatter the mountain-tops with sovereign eye,  
 Kissing with golden face the meadows green,  
 Gilding pale streams with heavenly alchemy ;  
 Anon permit the basest clouds to ride  
 With ugly rack on his celestial face,      6  
 And from the forlorn world his visage hide,  
 Stealing unseen to west with this disgrace :  
 Even so my sun one early morn did shine,  
 With all-triumphant splendour on my brow ;  
 But out ! alack ! he was but one hour mine,  
 The region cloud hath mask'd him from me now.      12  
 Yet him for this my love no whit disdaineth ;  
 Suns of the world may stain when heaven's sun  
 staineth.

## XXXIV

Why didst thou promise such a beauteous day,  
 And make me travel forth without my cloak,  
 To let base clouds o'ertake me in my way,  
 Hiding thy bravery in their rotten smoke ?  
 'Tis not enough that through the cloud thou break,  
 To dry the rain on my storm-beaten face,      6

For no man well of such a salve can speak  
 That heals the wound and cures not the disgrace :  
 Nor can thy shame give physic to my grief ;  
 Though thou repent, yet I have still the loss :  
 The offender's sorrow lends but weak relief  
 To him that bears the strong offence's cross. 12  
 Ah ! but those tears are pearl which thy love sheds,  
 And they are rich and ransom all ill deeds.

## XXXV

No more be griev'd at that which thou hast done :  
 Poses have thorns, and silver fountains mud ;  
 Clouds and eclipses stain both moon and sun,  
 And loathsome canker lives in sweetest bud.  
 All men make faults, and even I in this, \*  
 Authorizing thy trespass with compare, 6  
 Myself corrupting, salving thy amiss,  
 Excusing thy sins more than thy sins are ;  
 For to thy sensual fault I bring in sense,—  
 Thy adverse party is thy advocate,—  
 And 'gainst myself a lawful plea commence : 12  
 Such civil war is in my love and hate,  
 That I an accessary needs must be  
 To that sweet thief which sourly robs from me.

## XXXVI

Let me confess that we two must be twain,  
 Although our undivided loves are one :  
 So shall those blots that do with me remain,  
 Without thy help, by me be borne alone.  
 In our two loves there is but one respect,  
 Though in our lives a separable spite, 6  
 Which, though it alter not love's sole effect,  
 Yet doth it steal sweet hours from love's delight.  
 I may not evermore acknowledge thee,  
 Lest my bewailed guilt should do thee shame,  
 Nor thou with public kindness honour me,  
 Unless thou take that honour from thy name : 12  
 But do not so ; I love thee in such sort  
 As thou being mine, mine is thy good report.

## XXXVII

As a decrepit father takes delight  
 To see his active child do deeds of youth,  
 So I, made lame by fortune's dearest spite,  
 Take all my comfort of thy worth and truth ;  
 For whether beauty, birth, or wealth, or wit,  
 Or any of these all, or all, or more,  
 Entitled in thy parts do crowned 'sit,  
 I make my love engrafted to this store :  
 So then I am not lame, poor, nor despis'd,  
 Whilst that this shadow doth such substance give  
 That I in thy abundance am suffic'd  
 And by a part of all thy glory live. 6  
 Look what is best, that best I wish in thee :  
 This wish I have ; then ten times happy me ! 12

## XXXVIII

How can my Muse want subject to invent,  
 While thou dost breathe, that pour'st into my verse  
 Thine own sweet argument, too excellent  
 For every vulgar paper to rehearse ?  
 O ! give thyself the thanks, if aught in me  
 Worthy perusal stand against thy sight ; 6  
 For who's so dumb that cannot write to thee,  
 When thou thyself dost give invention light ?  
 Be thou the tenth Muse, ten times more in worth  
 Than those old nine which rimers invoke ;  
 And he that calls on thee, let him bring forth  
 Eternal numbers to outlive long date. 12  
 If my slight Muse do please these curious days,  
 The pain be mine, but thine shall be the praise.

## XXXIX

O ! how thy worth with manners may I sing,  
 When thou art all the better part of me ?  
 What can mine own praise to mine own self bring ?  
 And what is 't but mine own when I praise thee ?  
 Even for this let us divided live,  
 And our dear love lose name of single one, 6

That by this separation I may give  
 That due to thee, which thou deserv'st alone.  
 O absence ! what a torment wouldst thou prove,  
 Were it not thy sour leisure gave sweet leave  
 To entertain the time with thoughts of love,  
 Which time and thoughts so sweetly doth deceive, 12  
 And that thou teachest how to make one twain,  
 By praising him here who doth hence remain.

## XL

Take all my loves, my love, yea, take them all ;  
 What hast thou then more than thou hadst before ?  
 No love, my love, that thou mayst true love call ;  
 All mine was thine before thou hadst this more.  
 Then, if for my love thou my love receivest,  
 I cannot blame thee for my love thou usest ; 6  
 But yet be blam'd, if thou thyself deceivest  
 By wilful taste of what thyself refusest  
 I do forgive thy robbery, gentle thief,  
 Although thou steal thee all my poverty :  
 And yet, love knows it is a greater grief  
 To bear love's wrong than hate's known injury. 12  
 Lascivious grace, in whom all ill well shows,  
 Kill me with spites ; yet we must not be foes.

## XLI

Those pretty wrongs that liberty commits,  
 When I am sometime absent from thy heart,  
 Thy beauty and thy years full well befits,  
 For still temptation follows where thou art  
 Gentle thou art, and therefore to be won,  
 Beauteous thou art, therefore to be assail'd ; 6  
 And when a woman woos, what woman's son  
 Will sourly leave her till she have prevail'd ?  
 Ay me ! but yet thou mightst my seat forbear,  
 And chide thy beauty and thy straying youth,  
 Who lead thee in their riot even there  
 Where thou art forc'd to break a twofold truth ;—  
 Hers, by thy beauty tempting her to thee, 13  
 Thine, by thy beauty being false to me.



## XLII

That thou hast her, it is not all my grief,  
 And yet it may be said I lov'd her dearly ;  
 That she hath thee, is of my wailing chief,  
 A loss in love that touches me more nearly.  
 Loving offenders, thus I will excuse ye :  
 Thou dost love her, because thou know'st I love her ;  
 And for my sake even so doth she abuse me, 7  
 Suffering my friend for my sake to approve her.  
 If I lose thee, my loss is my love's gain,  
 And losing her, my friend hath found that loss ;  
 Both find each other, and I lose both twain,  
 And both for my sake lay on me this cross : 12  
     But here 's the joy ; my friend and I are one ;  
     Sweet flattery ! then she loves but me alone.

## XLIII

When most I wink, then do mine eyes best see,  
 For all the day they view things unrespected ;  
 But when I sleep, in dreams they look on thee,  
 And darkly bright, are bright in dark directed.  
 Then thou, whose shadow shadows doth make bright,  
 How would thy shadow's form form happy show 6  
 To the clear day with thy much clearer light,  
 When to unseeing eyes thy shade shines so !  
 How would, I say, mine eyes be blessed made  
 By looking on thee in the living day,  
 When in dead night thy fair imperfect shade  
 Through heavy sleep on sightless eyes doth stay ! 12  
     All days are nights to see till I see thee,  
     And nights bright days when dreams do show thee me.

## XLIV

If the dull substance of my flesh were thought,  
 Injurious distance should not stop my way ;  
 For then, despite of space, I would be brought,  
 From limits far remote, where thou dost stay.  
 No matter then although my foot did stand  
 Upon the farthest earth remov'd from thee ;

For nimble thought can jump both sea and land,  
 As soon as think the place where he would be.  
 But, ah ! thought kills me that I am not thought;  
 To leap large lengths of miles when thou art gone,  
 But that, so much of earth and water wrought,  
 I must attend time's leisure with my moan ; 12  
     Receiving nought by elements so slow  
     But heavy tears, badges of either's woe.

## XLV

The other two, slight air and purging fire  
 Are both with thee, wherever I abide ;  
 The first my thought, the other my desire  
 These present-absent with swift motion slide.  
 For when these quicker elements are gone 6  
 In tender embassy of love to thee,  
 My life, being made of four, with two alone  
 Sinks down to death, oppress'd with melancholy ;  
 Until life's composition be recur'd  
 By those swift messengers return'd from thee,  
 Who even but now, come back again, assur'd 12  
 Of thy fair health, recounting it to me :  
     This told, I joy ; but then no longer glad,  
     I send them back again, and straight grow sad.

## XLVI

Mine eye and heart are at a mortal war,  
 How to divide the conquest of thy sight ;  
 Mine eye my heart, thy picture's sight would bar,  
 My heart mine eye the freedom of that right.  
 My heart doth plead that thou in him dost lie,— 6  
 A closet never pierc'd with crystal eyes,—  
 But the defendant doth that plea deny,  
 And says in him thy fair appearance lies.  
 To 'cide this title is impannelled  
 A quest of thoughts, all tenants to the heart ;  
 And by their verdict is determined  
 The clear eye's moiety and the dear heart's part : 12  
     As thus ; mine eye's due is thine outward part,  
     And my heart's right thine inward love of heart.

## XLVII

Betwixt mine eye and heart a league is took,  
 And each doth good turns now unto the other :  
 When that mine eye is famish'd for a look,  
 Or heart in love with sighs himself doth smother,  
 With my love's picture then my eye doth feast,  
 And to the painted banquet bids my heart ;      6  
 Another time mine eye is my heart's guest,  
 And in his thoughts of love doth share a part :  
 So, either by thy picture or my love,  
 Thyself away art present still with me ;  
 For thou not farther than my thoughts canst move,  
 And I am still with them and they with thee ;      12  
     Or, if they sleep, thy picture in my sight  
     Awakes my heart to heart's and eye's delight.

## XLVIII

How careful was I when I took my way,  
 Each trifle under truest bars to thrust,  
 That to my use it might unused star  
 From hands of falsehood, in sure wards of trust !  
 But thou, to whom my jewels trifles are,  
 Most worthy comfort, now my greatest grief,      6  
 Thou, best of dearest and mine only care,  
 Art left the prey of every vulgar thief.  
 Thee have I not lock'd up in any chest,  
 Save where thou art not, though I feel thou art,  
 Within the gentle closure of my breast,      11  
 From whence at pleasure thou mayst come and part ;  
     And even thence thou wilt be stol'n, I fear,  
     For truth proves thievish for a prize so dear.

## XLIX

Against that time, if ever that time come,  
 When I shall see thee frown on my defects,  
 When as thy love hath cast his utmost sum,  
 Call'd to that audit by advis'd respects ;  
 Against that time, when thou shalt strangely pass,  
 And scarcely greet me with that sun, thine eye,      6

When love, the thing it was,  
 Shall reason find a certain gravity,  
 Against that time do I ensconce me here  
 Within the knowledge of mine own desert,  
 And this my hand against myself uprear,  
 To guard the lawful reasons on thy part : 12  
 To leave poor me thou hast the strength of laws,  
 Since why to love I can allege no cause.

How heavy do I journey on the way,  
 When what I seek, my weary travel's end,  
 Doth teach that ease and that repose to say,  
 ' Thus far the miles are measur'd from thy friend !'  
 The beast that bears me, tired with my woe,  
 Plods dully on, to bear that weight in me, 6  
 As if by some instinct the wretch did know  
 His rider lov'd not speed, being made from thee :  
 The bloody spur cannot provoke him on  
 That sometimes anger thrusts into his hide,  
 Which heavily he answers with a groan,  
 More sharp to me than spurring to his side ; 12  
 For that same groan doth put this in my mind :  
 My grief lies onward, and my joy behind.

LI

Thus can my love excuse the slow offence  
 Of my dull bearer when from thee I speed :  
 From where thou art why should I haste me thence ?  
 Till I return, of posting is no need.  
 O ! what excuse will my poor beast then find,  
 When swift extremity can seem but slow ? 6  
 Then should I spur, though mounted on the wind,  
 In winged speed no motion shall I know :  
 Then can no horse with my desire keep pace ;  
 Therefore desire, of perfect'st love being made,  
 Shall neigh—no dull flesh—in his fiery race ;  
 But love, for love, thus shall excuse my jade,— 12  
 ' Since from thee going he went wilful-slow,  
 Towards thee I'll run and give him leave to go.'

## LII

So am I as the rich, whose blessed key  
 Can bring him to his sweet up-locked treasure,  
 The which he will not every hour survey,  
 For blunting the fine point of seldom pleasure.  
 Therefore are feasts so solemn and so rare,  
 Since, seldom coming, in the long year set,  
 Like stones of worth they thinly placed are,  
 Or captain jewels in the carconet.  
 So is the time that keeps you as my chest,  
 Or as the wardrobe which the robe doth hide,  
 To make some special instant special blest,  
 By new unfolding his imprison'd pride. 6  
 Blessed are you, whose worthiness gives scope,  
 Being had, to triumph ; being lack'd, to hope. 12

## LIII

What is your substance, whereof are you made,  
 That millions of strange shadows on you tend ?  
 Since every one hath, every one, one shade,  
 And you, but one, can every shadow lend.  
 Describe Adonis, and the counterfeit  
 Is poorly imitated after you ;  
 On Helen's cheek all art of beauty set,  
 And you in Grecian tires are painted new :  
 Speak of the spring and foison of the year,  
 The one doth shadow of your beauty show,  
 The other as your bounty doth appear ;  
 And you in every blessed shape we know. 6  
 In all external grace you have some part,  
 But you like none, none you, for constant heart. 12

## LIV

O ! how much more doth beauty beauteous seem  
 By that sweet ornament which truth doth give.  
 The rose looks fair, but fairer we it deem  
 For that sweet odour which doth in it live.  
 The canker-blooms have full as deep a dye  
 As the perfumed tincture of the roses. 6

Hang on such thorns, and play as wantonly  
 When summer's breath their masked buds discloses  
 But, for their virtue only is their show,  
 They live unwoo'd, and unrespected fade;  
 Die to themselves. Sweet roses do not so;  
 Of their sweet deaths are sweetest odours made: 12  
 And so of you, beauteous and lovely youth,  
 When that shall vade, my verse distils your truth.

## LV

Not marble, nor the gilded monuments  
 Of princes, shall outlive this powerful rime;  
 But you shall shine more bright in these contents  
 Than unswept stone, besmear'd with sluttish time.  
 When wasteful war shall statues overturn,  
 And broils root out the work of masonry, 6  
 Nor Mars his sword nor war's quick fire shall burn  
 The living record of your memory.  
 'Gainst death and all-oblivious enmity  
 Shall you pace forth; your praise shall still find room  
 Even in the eyes of all posterity  
 That wear this world out to the ending doom. 12  
 So, till the judgment that yourself arise,  
 You live in this, and dwell in lovers' eyes.

## LVI

Sweet love, renew thy force; be it not said  
 Thy edge should blunter be than appetite,  
 Which but to-day by feeding is allay'd,  
 To-morrow sharpen'd in his former might:  
 So, love, be thou; although to-day thou fill  
 Thy hungry eyes, even till they wink with fulness, 6  
 To-morrow see again, and do not kill  
 The spirit of love with a perpetual dulness.  
 Let this sad interim like the ocean be  
 Which parts the shore, where two contracted new  
 Come daily to the banks, that, when they see  
 Return of love, more blest may be the view; 12  
 Or call it winter, which, being full of care,  
 Makes summer's welcome thrice more wish'd, more  
 rare.

## LVII

Being your slave, what should I do but tend  
 Upon the hours and times of your desire ?  
 I have no precious time at all to spend,  
 Nor services to do, till you require.  
 Nor dare I chide the world-without-end hour  
 Whilst I, my sovereign, watch the clock for you, 6  
 Nor think the bitterness of absence sour  
 When you have bid your servant once adieu ;  
 Nor dare I question with my jealous thought  
 Where you may be, or your affairs suppose,  
 But, like a sad slave, stay and think of nought  
 Save, where you are how happy you make those. 12  
 So true a fool is love that in your will,  
 Though you do anything, he thinks no ill.

## LVIII

That god forbid that made me first your slave,  
 I should in thought control your times of pleasure,  
 Or at your hand the account of hours to crave,  
 Being your vassal, bound to stay your leisure !  
 O ! let me suffer, being at your beck,  
 The imprison'd absence of your liberty ; 6  
 And patience, tame to sufferance, bide each cheek,  
 Without accusing you of injury.  
 Be where you list, your charter is so strong  
 That you yourself may privilege your time  
 To what you will ; to you it doth belong  
 Yourself to pardon of self-doing crime. 12  
 I am to wait, though waiting so be hell,  
 Not blame your pleasure, be it ill or well.

## LIX

If there be nothing new, but that which is  
 Hath been before, how are our brains beguil'd,  
 Which, labouring for invention, bear amiss  
 The second burthen of a former child !  
 O ! that record could with a backward look,  
 Even of five hundred courses of the sun,

Show me your image in some antique book,  
 Since mind at first in character was done !  
 That I might see what the old world could say  
 To this composed wonder of your frame ;  
 Whe'r we are mended, or whe'r better they,  
 Or whether revolution be the same.

12

O ! sure I am, the wits of former days  
 To subjects worse have given admiring praise.

## LX

Like as the waves make towards the pebbled shore,  
 So do our minutes hasten to their end ;  
 Each changing place with that which goes before,  
 In sequent toil all forwards do contend.

Nativity, once in the main of light,  
 Crawls to maturity, wherewith being crown'd,  
 Crooked eclipses 'gainst his glory fight,  
 And Time that gave doth now his gift confound.  
 Time doth transfix the flourish set on youth  
 And delves the parallels in beauty's brow,  
 Feeds on the rarities of nature's truth,  
 And nothing stands but for his scythe to mow :

6

12

And yet to times in hope my verse shall stand,  
 Praising thy worth, despite his cruel hand.

## LXI

Is it thy will thy image should keep open  
 My heavy eyelids to the weary night ?  
 Dost thou desire my slumbers should be broken,  
 While shadows, like to thee, do mock my sight ?  
 Is it thy spirit that thou send'st from thee  
 So far from home, into my deeds to pry,  
 To find out shames and idle hours in me,  
 The scope and tenour of thy jealousy ?  
 O, no ! thy love, though much, is not so great :  
 It is my love that keeps mine eye awake ;  
 Mine own true love that doth my rest defeat,  
 To play the watchman ever for thy sake :

6

12

For thee watch I whilst thou dost wake elsewhere,  
 From me far off, with others all too near.



## LXII

Sin of self-love possesseth all mine eye  
 And all my soul and all my every part ;  
 And for this sin there is no remedy,  
 It is so grounded inward in my heart.  
 Methinks no face so gracious is as mine,  
 No shape so true, no truth of such account ; 6  
 And for myself mine own worth do define,  
 As I all other in all worths surmount.  
 But when my glass shows me myself indeed,<  
 Beated and chopp'd with tann'd antiquity,  
 Mine own self-love quite contrary I read ;  
 Self so self-loving were iniquity. 12  
 'Tis thee,—myself,—that for myself I praise,  
 Painting my age with beauty of thy days.

## LXIII

Against my love shall be, as I am now,  
 With Time's injurious hand crush'd and o'erworn ;  
 When hours have drain'd his blood and fill'd his brow  
 With lines and wrinkles ; when his youthful morn  
 Hath travell'd on to age's steepy night ;  
 And all those beauties whereof now he's king 6  
 Are vanishing or vanish'd out of sight,  
 Stealing away the treasure of his spring ;  
 For such a time do I now fortify  
 Against confounding age's cruel knife,  
 That he shall never cut from memory  
 My sweet love's beauty, though my lover's life : 12  
 His beauty shall in these black lines be seen,  
 And they shall live, and he in them still green.

## LXIV

When I have seen by Time's fell hand defac'd  
 The rich-proud cost of outworn buried age ;  
 When sometime lofty towers I see down-raz'd,  
 And brass eternal slave to mortal rage ;  
 When I have seen the hungry ocean gain  
 Advantage on the kingdom of the shore,

## SONNETS

1043

And the firm soil win of the watery main,  
 Increasing store with loss, and loss with store ;  
 When I have seen such interchange of state,  
 Or state itself confounded to decay ;  
 Ruin hath taught me thus to-ruminate—  
 That time will come and take my love away. 12  
 This thought is as a death, which cannot choose  
 But weep to have that which it fears to lose.

## LXV

Since brass, nor stone, nor earth, nor boundless sea,  
 But sad mortality o'ersways their power,  
 How with this rage shall beauty hold a plea,  
 Whose action is no stronger than a flower ?  
 O ! how shall summer's honey breath hold out  
 Against the wrackful siege of battering days, 6  
 When rocks impregnable are not so stout,  
 Nor gates of steel so strong, but Time decays ?  
 O fearful meditation ! where, alack,  
 Shall Time's best jewel from Time's chest lie hid ?  
 Or what strong hand can hold his swift foot back ?  
 Or who his spoil of beauty can forbid ? 12  
 O ! none, unless this miracle have might,  
 That in black ink my love may still shine bright.

## LXVI

Tir'd with all these, for restful death I cry,  
 As to behold desert a beggar born,  
 And needy nothing trimm'd in jollity,  
 And purest faith unhappily forsworn,  
 And gilded honour shamefully misplac'd,  
 And maiden virtue rudely strumpeted, 6  
 And right perfection wrongfully disgrac'd,  
 And strength by limping sway disabled,  
 And art made tongue-tied by authority,  
 And folly—doctor-like—controlling skill,  
 And simple truth miscall'd simplicity,  
 And captive good attending captain ill : 12  
 Tir'd with all these, from these would I be gone,  
 Save that, to die, I leave my love alone.

## LXVII

Ah ! wherefore with infection should he live,  
 And with his presence grace impiety,  
 That sin by him advantage should achieve,  
 And lace itself with his society ?  
 Why should false painting imitate his cheek,  
 And steel dead seeing of his living hue ?      6  
 Why should poor beauty indirectly seek  
 Roses of shadow, since his rose is true ?  
 Why should he live, now Nature bankrupt is,  
 Beggar'd of blood to blush through lively veins ?  
 For she hath no exchequer now but his,  
 And, proud of many, lives upon his gains.      12  
     O ! him she stores, to show what wealth she had  
     In days long since, before these last so bad.

## LXVIII

Thus is his cheek the map of days outworn,  
 When beauty liv'd and died as flowers do now,  
 Before these bastard signs of fair were born,  
 Or durst inhabit on a living brow ;  
 Before the golden tresses of the dead,  
 The right of sepulchres, were shorn away,      6  
 To live a second life on second head ;  
 Ere beauty's dead fleece made another gay :  
 In him those holy antique hours are seen,  
 Without all ornament, itself and true,  
 Making no summer of another's green,  
 Robbing no old to dress his beauty new ;      12  
     And him as for a map doth Nature store,  
     To show false Art what beauty was of yore.

## LXIX

Those parts of thee that the world's eye doth view  
 Want nothing that the thought of hearts can mend ;  
 All tongues—the voice of souls—give thee that due,  
 Uttering bare truth, even so as foes commend.  
 Thy outward thus, with outward praise is crown'd ;  
 But those same tongues, that give thee so thine own,

In other accents do this praise confound 7  
 By seeing farther than the eye hath shown.  
 They look into the beauty of thy mind,  
 And that, in guess, they measure by thy deeds;  
 Then,—churls,—their thoughts, although their eyes were  
 kind,  
 To thy fair flower add the rank smell of weeds : 12  
 But why thy odour matcheth not thy show,  
 The soil is this, that thou dost common grow.

## LXX

That thou art blam'd shall not be thy defect,  
 For slander's mark was ever yet the fair ;  
 The ornament of beauty is suspect,  
 A crow that flies in heaven's sweetest air.  
 So thou be good, slander doth but approve  
 Thy worth the greater, being woo'd of time ; 6  
 For canker vice the sweetest buds doth love,  
 And thou present'st a pure unstained prime.  
 Thou hast pass'd by the ambush of young days  
 Either not assail'd, or victor being charg'd ;  
 Yet this thy praise cannot be so thy praise,  
 To tie up envy evermore enlarg'd : 12  
 If some suspect of ill mask'd not thy show,  
 Then thou alone kingdoms of hearts shouldst owe. .

## LXXI

No longer mourn for me when I am dead  
 Than you shall hear the surly sullen bell  
 Give warning to the world that I am fled  
 From this vile world, with vilest worms to dwell :  
 Nay, if you read this line, remember not  
 The hand that writ it ; for I love you so, 6  
 That I in your sweet thoughts would be forgot,  
 If thinking on me then should make you woe.  
 O ! if,—I say, you look upon this verse,  
 When I perhaps compounded am with clay,  
 Do not so much as my poor name rehearse,  
 But let your love even with my life decay ; 12  
 Lest the wise world should look into your moan,  
 And mock you with me after I am gone.

## LXXII

O ! lest the world should task you to recite  
 What merit lived in me, that you should love  
 After my death,—dear love, forget me quite,  
 For you in me can nothing worthy prove ;  
 Unless you would devise some virtuous lie,  
 To do more for me than mine own desert,      6  
 And hang more praise upon deceased I  
 Than niggard truth would willingly impart :  
 O ! lest your true love may seem false in this  
 That you for love speak well of me untrue,  
 My name be buried where my body is,  
 And live no more to shame nor me nor you.      12  
     For I am sham'd by that which I bring forth,  
     And so should you, to love things nothing worth.

## LXXIII

That time of year thou mayst in me behold  
 When yellow leaves, or none, or few, do hang  
 Upon those boughs which shake against the cold,  
 Bare ruin'd choirs, where late the sweet birds sang.  
 In me thou see'st the twilight of such day  
 As after sunset fadeth in the west ;      6  
 Which by and by black night doth take away,  
 Death's second self, that seals up all in rest.  
 In me thou see'st the glowing of such fire,  
 That on the ashes of his youth doth lie,  
 As the death-bed whereon it must expire,  
 Consum'd with that which it was nourish'd by.      12  
     This thou perceiv'st, which makes thy love more strong,  
     To love that well which thou must leave ere long.

## LXXIV

But be contented : when that fell arrest  
 Without all bail shall carry me away,  
 My life hath in this line some interest,  
 Which for memorial still with thee shall stay.  
 When thou reviewest this, thou dost review  
 The very part was consecrate to thee : 。

The earth can have but earth, which is his due ;  
 My spirit is thine, the better part of me :  
 So then thou hast but lost the dregs of life,  
 The prey of worms, my body being dead ;  
 The coward conquest of a wretch's knife,  
 Too base of thee to be remembered.

12

The worth of that is that which it contains,  
 And that is this, and this with thee remains.

## LXXV

So are you to my thoughts as food to life,  
 Or as sweet-season'd showers are to the ground ;  
 And for the peace of you I hold such strife  
 As 'twixt a miser and his wealth is found ;  
 Now proud as an enjoyer, and anon  
 Doubting the filching age will steal his treasure ;  
 Now counting best to be with you alone,  
 Then better'd that the world may see my pleasure :  
 Sometime at full with feasting on your sight,  
 And by and by clean starved for a look ;  
 Possessing or pursuing no delight,  
 Save what is had or must from you be took.

6

12

Thus do I pine and surfeit day by day,  
 Or gluttoning on all, or all away.

## LXXVI

Why is my verse so barren of new pride,  
 So far from variation or quick change ?  
 Why with the time do I not glance aside  
 To new-found methods and to compounds strange ?  
 Why write I still all one, ever the same,  
 And keep invention in a noted weed,  
 That every word doth almost tell my name,  
 Shewing their birth, and where they did proceed ?  
 O ! know, sweet love, I always write of you,  
 And you and love are still my argument ;  
 So all my best is dressing old words new,  
 Spending again what is already spent :

6

12

For as the sun is daily new and old,  
 So is my love still telling what is told.

## LXXVII

Thy glass will show thee how thy beauties wear,  
 Thy dial how thy precious minutes waste;  
 The vacant leaves thy mind's imprint will bear,  
 And of this book this learning mayst thou taste.  
 The wrinkles which thy glass will truly show  
 Of mouthed graves will give thee memory;  
 Thou by thy dial's shady stealth mayst know  
 Time's thievish progress to eternity.  
 Look! what thy memory cannot contain,  
 Commit to these waste blanks, and thou shalt find  
 Those children nursed, deliver'd from thy brain,  
 To take a new acquaintance of thy mind. 6  
 These offices, so oft as thou wilt look,  
 Shall profit thee and much enrich thy book. 12

## LXXVIII

So oft have I invok'd thee for my Muse  
 And found such fair assistance in my verse  
 As every alien pen hath got my use  
 And under thee their poesy disperse.  
 Thine eyes, that taught the dumb on high to sing  
 And heavy ignorance aloft to fly, 6  
 Have added feathers to the learned's wing  
 And given grace a double majesty.  
 Yet be most proud of that which I compile,  
 Whose influence is thine, and born of thee;  
 In others' works thou dost but mend the style,  
 And arts with thy sweet graces graced be; 12  
 But thou art all my art, and dost advance  
 As high as learning my rude ignorance.

## LXXIX

Whilst I alone did call upon thy aid,  
 My verse alone had all thy gentle grace;  
 But now my gracious numbers are decay'd,  
 And my sick Muse doth give another place.  
 I grant, sweet love, thy lovely argument  
 Deserves the travail of a worthier pen;

Yet what of thee thy poet doth invent  
 He robs thee of, and pays it thee again.  
 He lends thee virtue, and he stole that word  
 From thy behaviour; beauty doth he give,  
 And found it in thy cheek; he can afford  
 No praise to thee but what in thee doth live.  
 Then thank him not for that which he doth say,  
 Since what he owes thee thou thyself dost pay.

## LXXX

O! how I faint when I of you do write,  
 Knowing a better spirit doth use your name,  
 And in the praise thereof spends all his might,  
 To make me tongue-tied, speaking of your fame!  
 But since your worth—wide as the ocean is,—  
 The humble as the proudest sail doth bear,  
 My saucy bark, inferior far to his,  
 On your broad main doth wilfully appear.  
 Your shallowest help will hold me up afloat,  
 Whilst he upon your soundless deep doth ride;  
 Or, being wrack'd, I am a worthless boat,  
 He of tall building and of goodly-pride:  
 Then if he thrive and I be cast away,  
 The worst was this,—my love was my decay.

## LXXXI

Or I shall live your epitaph to make,  
 Or you survive when I in earth am rotten;  
 From hence your memory death cannot take,  
 Although in me each part will be forgotten.  
 Your name from hence immortal life shall have,  
 Though I, once gone, to all the world must die:  
 The earth can yield me but a common grave,  
 When you entombed in men's eyes shall lie.  
 Your monument shall be my gentle verse,  
 Which eyes not yet created shall o'er-read;  
 And tongues to be your being shall rehearse,  
 When all the breathers of this world are dead;  
 You still shall live,—such virtue hath my pen,—  
 Where breath most breathes, even in the mouths of men.



## LXXXII

I grant thou wert not married to my Muse,  
 And therefore mayst without attain't o'erlook  
 The dedicated words which writers use  
 Of their fair subject, blessing every book.  
 Thou art as fair in knowledge as in hue,  
 Finding thy worth a limit past my praise ; 6  
 And therefore art enforc'd to seek anew  
 Some fresher stamp of the time-bettering days.  
 And do so, love ; yet when they have devis'd  
 What strained touches rhetoric can lend,  
 Thou truly fair wert truly sympathiz'd  
 In true plain words by thy true-telling friend ; 12  
 And their gross painting might be better us'd  
 Where cheeks need blood ; in thee it is abus'd.

## LXXXIII

I never saw that you did painting need,  
 And therefore to your fair no painting set ;  
 I found, or thought I found, you did exceed  
 The barren tender of a poet's debt :  
 And therefore have I slept in your report,  
 That you yourself, being extant, well might show 6  
 How far a modern quill doth come too short,  
 Speaking of worth, what worth in you doth grow.  
 This silence for my sin you did impute,  
 Which shall be most my glory, being dumb ;  
 For I impair not beauty being mute,  
 When others would give life, and bring a tomb. 12  
 There lives more life in one of your fair eyes  
 Than both your poets can in praise devise.

## LXXXIV

Who is it that says most ? which can say more  
 Than this rich praise,—that you alone are you ?  
 In whose confine immured is the store  
 Which should example where your equal grew.  
 Lean penury within that pen doth dwell  
 That to his subject lends not some small glory ;

But he that writes of you, if he can tell  
 That you are you, so dignifies his story,  
 Let him but copy what in you is writ,  
 Not making worse what nature made so clear,  
 And such a counterpart shall fame his wit,  
 Making his style admired every where. 12  
 You to your beauteous blessings add a curse,  
 Being fond on praise, which makes your praises worse.

## LXXXV

My tongue-tied Muse in manners holds her still,  
 While comments of your praise, richly compil'd,  
 Reserve their character with golden quill,  
 And precious phrase by all the Muses fil'd.  
 I think good thoughts, whilst others write good words,  
 And, like unletter'd clerk, still cry 'Amen' 6  
 To every hymn that able spirit affords,  
 In polish'd form of well-refined pen.  
 Hearing you prais'd, I say, 'Tis so, 'tis true,'  
 And to the most of praise add something more;  
 But that is in my thought, whose love to you,  
 Though words come hindmost, holds his rank before.  
 Then others for the breath of words respect, 13  
 Me for my dumb thoughts, speaking in effect.

## LXXXVI

Was it the proud full sail of his great verse,  
 Bound for the prize of all too precious you,  
 That did my ripe thoughts in my brain inhearse,  
 Making their tomb the womb wherein they grew?  
 Was it his spirit, by spirits taught to write  
 Above a mortal pitch, that struck me dead? 6  
 No, neither he, nor his compeers by night  
 Giving him aid, my verse astonished.  
 He, nor that affable familiar ghost  
 Which nightly gulls him with intelligence,  
 As victors of my silence cannot boast;  
 I was not sick of any fear from thence: 12  
 But when your countenance fill'd up his line,  
 Then lack'd I matter; that enfeebled mine.

## LXXXVII

Farewell ! thou art too dear for my possessing,  
 And like enough thou know'st thy estimate :  
 The charter of thy worth gives thee releasing ;  
 My bonds in thee are all determinate.  
 For how do I hold thee but by thy granting ?  
 And for that riches where is my deserving ? 6  
 The cause of this fair gift in me is wanting,  
 And so my patent back again is swerving.  
 Thyself thou gav'st, thy own worth then not knowing,  
 Or me, to whom thou gav'st it, else mistaking ;  
 So thy great gift, upon misprision growing,  
 Comes home again, on better judgment making. 12  
 Thus have I had thee, as a dream doth flatter,  
 In sleep a king, but, waking, no such matter.

## LXXXVIII

When thou shalt be dispos'd to set me light,  
 And place my merit in the eye of scorn,  
 Upon thy side against myself I'll fight,  
 And prove thee virtuous, though thou art forsworn.  
 With mine own weakness, being best acquainted,  
 Upon thy part I can set down a story 6  
 Of faults conceal'd, wherein I am attainted ;  
 That thou in losing me shalt win much glory :  
 And I by this will be a gainer too ;  
 For bending all my loving thoughts on thee,  
 The injuries that to myself I do,  
 Doing thee vantage, double-vantage me. 12  
 Such is my love, to thee I so belong,  
 That for thy right myself will bear all wrong.

## LXXXIX

Say that thou didst forsake me for some fault,  
 And I will comment upon that offence :  
 Speak of my lameness, and I straight will halt,  
 Against thy reasons making no defence.  
 Thou canst not, love, disgrace me half so ill,  
 To set a form upon desired change,

As I'll myself disgrace ; knowing thy will,  
 I will acquaintance strangle, and look strange ;  
 Be absent from thy walks ; and in my tongue  
 Thy sweet beloved name no more shall dwell,  
 Lest I, too much profane, should do it wrong,  
 And haply of our old acquaintance tell. 12  
 For thee, against myself I'll vow debate,  
 'For I must ne'er love him whom thou dost hate.

## XC

Then hate me when thou wilt ; if ever, now ;  
 Now, while the world is bent my deeds to cross,  
 Join with the spite of fortune, make me bow,  
 And do not drop in for an after-loss :  
 Ah ! do not, when my heart hath 'scap'd this sorrow,  
 Come in the rearward of a conquer'd woe ; 6  
 Give not a windy night a rainy morrow,  
 To linger out a purpos'd overthrow.  
 If thou wilt leave me, do not leave me last,  
 When other petty griefs have done their spite,  
 But in the onset come : so shall I taste  
 At first the very worst of fortune's might ; 12  
 And other strains of woe, which now seem woe,  
 Compar'd with loss of thee will not seem so.

## XCI

Some glory in their birth, some in their skill,  
 Some in their wealth, some in their body's force,  
 Some in their garments, though new-fangled ill ;  
 Some in their hawks and hounds, some in their horse ;  
 And every humour hath his adjunct pleasure,  
 Wherein it finds a joy above the rest : 6  
 But these particulars are not my measure .  
 All these I better in one general best.  
 Thy love is better than high birth to me,  
 Richer than wealth, prouder than garments' cost,  
 Of more delight than hawks or horses be ;  
 And having thee, of all men's pride I boast : 12  
 Wretched in this alone, that thou mayst take  
 All this away, and me most wretched make.

## XCII

But do thy worst to steal thyself away,  
 For term of life thou art assured mine ;  
 And life no longer than thy love will stay,  
 For it depends upon that love of thine.  
 Then need I not to fear the worst of wrongs,  
 When in the least of them my life hath end.      6  
 I see a better state to me belongs  
 Than that which on thy humour doth depend :  
 Thou canst not vex me with inconstant mind,  
 Since that my life on thy revolt doth lie.  
 O ! what a happy title do I find,  
 Happy to have thy love, happy to die !      12  
     But what's so blessed-fair that fears no blot ?  
     Thou mayst be false, and yet I know it not.

## XCIII

So shall I live, supposing thou art true,  
 Like a deceived husband ; so love's face  
 May still seem love to me, though alter'd new ;  
 Thy looks with me, thy heart in other place :  
 For there can live no hatred in thine eye,  
 Therefore in that I cannot know thy change.      6  
 In many's looks the false heart's history  
 Is writ in moods, and frowns, and wrinkles strange,  
 But heaven in thy creation did decree  
 That in thy face sweet love should ever dwell ;  
 Whate'er thy thoughts or thy heart's workings be,  
 Thy looks should nothing thence but sweetness tell.  
     How like Eve's apple doth thy beauty grow,      13  
     If thy sweet virtue answer not thy show !

## XCIV

They that have power to hurt and will do none,  
 That do not do the thing they most do show,  
 Who, moving others, are themselves as stone,  
 Unmoved, cold, and to temptation slow ;  
 They rightly do inherit heaven's graces,  
 And husband nature's riches from expense ;

They are the lords and owners of their faces,  
 Others but stewards of their excellence.  
 The summer's flower is to the summer sweet,  
 Though to itself it only live and die,  
 But if that flower with base infection meet,  
 The basest weed outbraves his dignity : 12  
     For sweetest things turn sourest by their deeds ;  
     • Lilies that fester smell far worse than weeds.

## XCV

How sweet and lovely dost thou make the shame  
 Which, like a canker in the fragrant rose,  
 Doth spot the beauty of thy budding name !  
 O ! in what sweets dost thou thy sins enclose.  
 That tongue that tells the story of thy days,  
 Making lascivious comments on thy sport, 6  
 Cannot dispraise but in a kind of praise ;  
 Naming thy name blesses an ill report.  
 O ! what a mansion have those vices got  
 Which for their habitation chose out thee,  
 Where beauty's veil doth cover every blot  
 And all things turn to fair that eyes can see ! 12  
     Take heed, dear heart, of this large privilege ;  
     The hardest knife ill-us'd doth lose his edge.

## XCVI

Some say thy fault is youth, some wantonness ;  
 Some say thy grace is youth and gentle sport ;  
 Both grace and faults are lov'd of more and less :  
 Thou makest faults graces that to thee resort.  
 As on the finger of a throned queen  
 The basest jewel will be well esteem'd, 6  
 So are those errors that in thee are seen  
 To truths translated and for true things deem'd.  
 How many lambs might the stern wolf betray,  
 If like a lamb he could his looks translate !  
 How many gazers mightst thou lead away,  
 If thou wouldst use the strength of all thy state !  
     But do not so ; I love thee in such sort, 13  
     As, thou being mine, mine is thy good report.

## XCVII

How like a winter hath my absence been  
 From thee, the pleasure of the fleeting year !  
 What freezings have I felt, what dark days seen !  
 What old December's bareness every where !  
 And yet this time remov'd was summer's time ;  
 The teeming autumn, big with rich increase, .6  
 Bearing the wanton burthen of the prime,  
 Like widow'd wombs after their lords' decease :  
 Yet this abundant issue seem'd to me  
 But hope of orphans and unfather'd fruit ;  
 For summer and his pleasures wait on thee,  
 And, thou away, the very birds are mute : 12  
 Or, if they sing, 'tis with so dull a cheer,  
 That leaves look pale, dreading the winter's near.

## XCVIII

From you have I been absent in the spring,  
 When proud-pied April, dress'd in all his trim,  
 Hath put a spirit of youth in every thing,  
 That heavy Saturn laugh'd and leap'd with him.  
 Yet nor the lays of birds, nor the sweet smell  
 Of different flowers in odour and in hue, 6  
 Could make me any summer's story tell,  
 Or from their proud lap pluck them where they grew :  
 Nor did I wonder at the Kly's white,  
 Nor praise the deep vermilion in the rose ;  
 They were but sweet, but figures of delight,  
 Drawn after you, you pattern of all those. 12  
 Yet seem'd it winter still, and, you away,  
 As with your shadow I with these did play.

## XCIX

The forward violet thus did I chide :  
 Sweet thief, whence didst thou steal thy sweet that  
 smells,  
 If not from my love's breath ? The purple pride  
 Which on thy soft cheek for complexion dwells  
 In my love's veins thou hast too grossly dy'd.  
 The lily I condemned for thy hand, 6

And buds of marjoram had stol'n thy hair ;  
 The roses fearfully on thorns did stand,  
 One blushing shame, another white despair ;  
 A third, nor red nor white, had stol'n of both,  
 And to his robbery had annex'd thy breath ;  
 But, for his theft, in pride of all his growth 12  
 A vengeful canker eat him up to death.  
 More flowers I noted, yet I none could see  
 But sweet or colour it had stol'n from thee.

Where art thou, Muse, that thou forget'st so long  
 To speak of that which gives thee all thy might ?  
 Spend'st thou thy fury on some worthless song,  
 Darkening thy power to lend base subjects light ?  
 Return, forgetful Muse, and straight redeem 6  
 In gentle numbers time so idly spent ;  
 Sing to the ear that doth thy lays esteem  
 And gives thy pen both skill and argument.  
 Rise, resty Muse, my love's sweet face survey,  
 If Time have any wrinkle graven there ;  
 If any, be a satire to decay,  
 And make Time's spoils despised every where. 12  
 Give my love fame faster than Time wastes life ;  
 So thou prevent'st his scythe and crooked knife.

## CI

O truant Muse, what shall be thy amends  
 For thy neglect of truth in beauty dy'd ?  
 Both truth and beauty on my love depends ;  
 So dost thou too, and therein dignified.  
 Make answer, Muse : wilt thou not haply say,  
 ' Truth needs no colour, with his colour fix'd ; 6  
 Beauty no pencil, beauty's truth to lay ;  
 But best is best, if never intermix'd ' ?  
 Because he needs no praise, wilt thou be dumb ?  
 Excuse not silence so, for 't lies in thee  
 To make him much outlive a gilded tomb  
 And to be prais'd of ages yet to be. 12  
 Then do thy office, Muse ; I teach thee how  
 To make him seem long hence as he shows now.



## CII

My love is strengthen'd, though more weak in seeming ;  
 I love not less, though less the show appear :  
 That love is merchandiz'd whose rich esteeming  
 The owner's tongue doth publish every where.  
 Our love was new, and then but in the spring,  
 When I was wont to greet it with my lays ; 6  
 As Philomel in summer's front doth sing,  
 And stops her pipe in growth of riper days :  
 Not that the summer is less pleasant now  
 Than when her mournful hymns did hush the night,  
 But that wild music burthens every bough, 11  
 And sweets grown common lose their dear delight.  
 Therefore, like her, I sometime hold my tongue,  
 Because I would not dull you with my song.

## CIII

Alack ! what poverty my Muse brings forth,  
 That having such a scope to show her pride,  
 The argument, all bare, is of more worth  
 Than when it hath my added praise beside !  
 O ! blame me not, if I no more can write !  
 Look in your glass, and there appears a face 6  
 That over-goes my blunt invention quite,  
 Dulling my lines and doing me disgrace.  
 Were it not sinful then, striving to mend,  
 To mar the subject that before was well ?  
 For to no other pass my verses tend  
 Than of your graces and your gifts to tell ; 12  
 And more, much more, than in my verse can sit,  
 Your own glass shows you when you look in it.

## CIV

To me, fair friend, you never can be old,  
 For as you were when first your eye I ey'd,  
 Such seems your beauty still. Three winters cold  
 Have from the forests shook three summers' pride,  
 Three beauteous springs to yellow autumn turn'd  
 In process of the seasons have I seen,

Three April perfumes in three hot Junes burn'd,  
 Since first I saw you fresh, which yet are green.  
 Ah ! yet doth beauty, like a dial-hand,  
 Steal from his figure, and no pace perceiv'd ;  
 So your sweet hue, which methinks still doth stand,  
 Hath motion, and mine eye may be deceiv'd : 12  
 For fear of which, hear this, thou age unbred :  
 Ere you were born, was beauty's summer dead.

## CV

Let not my love be call'd idolatry,  
 Nor my beloved as an idol show,  
 Since all alike my songs and praises be  
 To one, of one, still such, and ever so.  
 Kind is my love to-day, to-morrow kind,  
 Still constant in a wondrous excellence ; 6  
 Therefore my verse, to constancy confin'd,  
 One thing expressing, leaves out difference.  
 ' Fair, kind, and true,' is all my argument,  
 ' Fair, kind, and true,' varying to other words ;  
 And in this change is my invention spent, 11  
 Three themes in one, which wondrous scope affords.  
 ' Fair, kind, and true,' have often liv'd alone,  
 Which three till now never kept seat in one.

## CVI

When in the chronicle of wasted time  
 I see descriptions of the fairest wights,  
 And beauty making beautiful old rime,  
 In praise of ladies dead and lovely knights,  
 Them, in the blazon of sweet beauty's best,  
 Of hand, of foot, of lip, of eye, of brow, 6  
 I see their antique pen would have express'd  
 Even such a beauty as you master now.  
 So all their praises are but prophecies  
 Of this our time, all you prefiguring ;  
 And, for they look'd but with divining eyes,  
 They had not skill enough your worth to sing : 12  
 For we, which now behold these present days,  
 Have eyes to wonder, but lack tongues to praise

## CVII

Not mine own fears, nor the prophetic soul  
 Of the wide world dreaming on things to come,  
 Can yet the lease of my true love control,  
 Suppos'd as forfeit to a confin'd doom.  
 The mortal moon hath her eclipse endur'd,  
 And the sad augurs mock their own presage ; 6  
 Incertainties now crown themselves assur'd,  
 And peace proclaims olives of endless age.  
 Now with the drops of this most balmy time  
 My love looks fresh, and Death to me subscribes,  
 Since, spite of him, I'll live in this poor rime,  
 While he insults o'er dull and speechless tribes : 12  
 And thou in this shalt find thy monument,  
 When tyrants' crests and tombs of brass are spent.

## CVIII

What 's in the brain, that ink may character,  
 Which hath not figur'd to thee my true spirit ?  
 What 's new to speak, what new to register,  
 That may express my love, or thy dear merit ?  
 Nothing, sweet boy ; butt yet, like prayers divine, 6  
 I must each day say o'er the very same ;  
 Counting no old thing old, thou mine, I thine,  
 Even as when first I hallow'd thy fair name.  
 So that eternal love in love's fresh case  
 Weighs not the dust and injury of age,  
 Nor gives to necessary wrinkles place,  
 But makes antiquity for aye his page ; 12  
 Finding the first conceit of love there bred,  
 Where time and outward form would show it dead

## CIX

O ! never say that I was false of heart,  
 Though absence seem'd my flame to qualify.  
 As easy might I from myself depart  
 As from my soul, which in thy breast doth lie :  
 That is my home of love : if I have rang'd,  
 Like him that travels, I return again ;

Just to the time, not with the time exchang'd,  
 So that myself bring water for my stain.  
 Never believe, though in my nature reign'd  
 All frailties that besiege all kinds of blood,  
 That it could so preposterously be stain'd,  
 To leave for nothing all thy sum of good ; 12  
 For nothing this wide universe I call,  
 Save thou, my rose ; in it thou art my all.

## CX

Alas ! 'tis true I have gone here and there,  
 And made myself a motley to the view,  
 Gor'd mine own thoughts, sold cheap what is most dear.  
 Made old offences of affections new ;  
 Most true it is that I have look'd on truth 6  
 Askance and strangely ; but, by all above,  
 These blenches gave my heart another youth,  
 And worse essays prov'd thee my best of love.  
 Now all is done, save what shall have no end :  
 Mine appetite I never more will grind  
 On newer proof, to try an older friend,  
 A god in love, to whom I am confin'd. 12  
 Then give me welcome, next my heaven the best,  
 Even to thy pure and most loving breast.

## CXI

O ! for my sake do you with Fortune chide,  
 The guilty goddess of my harmful deeds,  
 That did not better for my life provide  
 Than public means which public manners breeds.  
 Thence comes it that my name receives a brand,  
 And almost thence my nature is subdu'd 6  
 To what it works in, like the dyer's hand :  
 Pity me, then, and wish I were renew'd ;  
 Whilst, like a willing patient, I will drink  
 Potions of eisel 'gainst my strong infection ;  
 No bitterness that I will bitter think,  
 Nor double penance, to correct correction. 12  
 Pity me, then, dear friend, and I assure ye  
 Even that your pity is enough to cure me.

## CXII

Your love and pity doth the impression fill  
 Which vulgar scandal stamp'd upon my brow ;  
 For what care I who calls me well or ill,  
 So you o'er-green my bad, my good allow ?  
 You are my all-the-world, and I must strive  
 To know my shames and praises from your tongue ;  
 None else to me, nor I to none alive,  
 That my steel'd sense or changes right or wrong.  
 In so profound abysm I throw all care  
 Of others' voices, that my adder's sense  
 To critic and to flatterer stopped are.  
 Mark how with my neglect I do dispense :  
 You are so strongly in my purpose bred,  
 That all the world besides methinks are dead.

## CXIII

Since I left you, mine eye is in my mind ;  
 And that which governs me to go about  
 Doth part his function and is partly blind,  
 Seems seeing, but effectually is out ;  
 For it no form delivers to the heart  
 Of bird, of flower, or shape, which it doth latch :  
 Of his quick objects hath the mind no part,  
 Nor his own vision holds what it doth catch ;  
 For if it see the rud'st or gentlest sight,  
 The most sweet favour or deformed'st creature,  
 The mountain or the sea, the day or night,  
 The crow or dove, it shapes them to your feature  
 Incapable of more, replete with you,  
 My most true mind thus maketh mine untrue.

## CXIV

Or whether doth my mind, being crown'd with you,  
 Drink up the monarch's plague, this flattery ?  
 Or whether shall I say, mine eye saith true,  
 And that your love taught it this alchemy,  
 To make of monsters and things indigest  
 Such cherubins as your sweet self resemble,

Creating every bad a perfect best,  
 As fast as objects to his beams assemble ?  
 O ! 'tis the first, 'tis flattery in my seeing,  
 And my great mind most kingly drinks it up :  
 Mine eye well knows what with his gust is 'greeing,  
 And to his palate doth prepare the cup :      12  
 If it be poison'd, 'tis the lesser sin  
 That mine eye loves it and doth first begin.

## CXV

Those lines that I before have writ do lie,  
 Even those that said I could not love you dearer :  
 Yet then my judgment knew no reason why  
 My most full flame should afterwards burn clearer.  
 But reckoning Time, whose million'd accidents      6  
 Creep in 'twixt vows, and change decrees of kings,  
 Tan sacred beauty, blunt the sharp'st intents,  
 Divert strong minds to the course of altering things ;  
 Alas ! why, fearing of Time's tyranny,  
 Might I not then say, ' Now I love you best,'  
 When I was certain o'er incertainty,  
 Crowning the present, doubting of the rest ?      12  
 Love is a babe ; then might I not say so,  
 To give full growth to that which still doth grow ?

## CXVI

Let me not to the marriage of true minds  
 Admit impediments. Love is not love  
 Which alters when it alteration finds,  
 Or bends with the remover to remove :  
 O, no ! it is an ever-fixed mark, •  
 That looks on tempests and is never shaken ;      6  
 It is the star to every wandering bark,  
 Whose worth's unknown, although his height be taken  
 Love's not Time's fool, though rosy lips and cheeks  
 Within his bending sickle's compass come ;  
 Love alters not with his brief hours and weeks,  
 But bears it out even to the edge of doom.      12  
 If this be error, and upon me prov'd,  
 I never writ, nor no man ever lov'd.

## CXVII

Accuse me thus : that I have scanted all  
 Wherein I should your great deserts repay;  
 Forgot upon your dearest love to call,  
 Whereto all bonds do tie me day by day;  
 That I have frequent been with unknown minds, . .  
 And given to time your own dear-purchas'd right ; 6  
 That I have hoisted sail to all the winds  
 Which should transport me farthest from your sight.  
 Book both my wilfulness and errors down,  
 And on just proof surmise accumulate ; .  
 Bring me within the level of your frown,  
 But shoot not at me in your waken'd hate ; 12  
     Since my appeal says I did strive to prove  
     The constancy and virtue of your love.

## CXVIII

Like as, to make our appetites more keen,  
 With eager compounds we our palate urge ;  
 As, to prevent our maladies unseen, \*  
 We sicken to shun sickness when we purge ;  
 Even so, being full of your ne'er-cloying sweetness,  
 To bitter sauces did I frame my feeding ; 6  
 And, sick of welfare, found a kind of meetness  
 To be diseas'd, ere that there was true needing.  
 Thus policy in love, to anticipate  
 The ills that were not, grew to faults assur'd,  
 And brought to medicine a healthful state,  
 Which, rank of goodness, would by ill be cur'd ; 12  
     But thence I learn, and find the lesson true,  
     Drugs poison him that so fell sick of you.

## CXIX

What potions have I drunk of Siren tears,  
 Distill'd from limbecks foul as hell within,  
 Applying fears to hopes, and hopes to fears,  
 Still losing when I saw myself to win !  
 What wretched errors hath my heart committed,  
 Whilst it hath thought itself so blessed never !

How have mine eyes out of their spheres been fitted,  
 In the distraction of this madding fever !  
 O benefit of ill ! now I find true  
 That better is by evil still made better ;  
 And ruin'd love, when it is built anew,  
 Grows fairer than at first, more strong, far greater.  
 So I return rebuk'd to my content,  
 And gain by ill thrice more than I have spent.

13

## CXX

That you were once unkind befriends me now,  
 And for that sorrow, which I then did feel,  
 Needs must I under my transgression bow,  
 Unless my nerves were brass or hammer'd steel.  
 For if you were by my unkindness shaken,  
 As I by yours, you've pass'd a hell of time ;  
 And I, a tyrant, have no leisure taken  
 To weigh how once I suffer'd in your crime.  
 O ! that our night of woe might have remember'd  
 My deepest sense, how hard true sorrow hits,  
 And soon to you, as you to me, then tender'd  
 The humble salve which wounded bosoms fits !  
 But that your trespass now becomes a fee ;  
 Mine ransoms yours, and yours must ransom me.

6

12

## CXXI

'Tis better to be vile than vile esteem'd,  
 When not to be receives reproach of being ;  
 And the just pleasure lost, which is so deem'd  
 Not by our feeling, but by others' seeing :  
 For why should others' false adulterate eyes  
 Give salutation to my sportive blood ?  
 Or on my frailties why are frailer spies,  
 Which in their wills count bad what I think good ?  
 No, I am that I am, and they that level  
 At my abuses reckon up their own :  
 I may be straight though they themselves be bevel ;  
 By their rank thoughts my deeds must not be shown ;  
 Unless this general evil they maintain,  
 All men are bad and in their badness reign.

6

13



## CXXII

Thy gift, thy tables, are within my brain  
 Full character'd with lasting memory,  
 Which shall above that idle rank remain,  
 Beyond all date, even to eternity :  
 Or, at the least, so long as brain and heart  
 Have faculty by nature to subsist ;         •         6  
 Till each to raz'd oblivion yield his part  
 Of thee, thy record never can be miss'd.         •  
 That poor retention could not so much hold,  
 Nor need I tallies thy dear love to score ;         .  
 Therefore to give them from me was I bold,  
 To trust those tables that receive thee more :         12  
     To keep an adjunct to remember thee  
     Were to import forgetfulness in me.

## CXXIII

No, Time, thou shalt not boast that I do change :  
 Thy pyramids built up with newer might  
 To me are nothing novel, nothing strange ;         •  
 They are but dressings of a former sight.  
 Our dates are brief, and therefore we admire  
 What thou dost foist upon us that is old ;         6  
 And rather make them born to our desire  
 Than think that we before have heard them told.  
 Thy registers and thee I both defy,         •  
 Not wondering at the present nor the past,         •  
 For thy records and what we see doth lie,  
 Made more or less by thy continual haste.         12  
     This I do vow, and this shall ever be ;  
     I will be true, despite thy scythe and thee.

## CXXIV

If my dear love were but the child of state,  
 It might for Fortune's bastard be unfather'd,  
 As subject to Time's love or to Time's hate,  
 Weeds among weeds, or flowers with flowers gather'd  
 No, it was builded far from accident ;  
 It suffers not in smiling pomp, nor falls         •         6

Under the blow of thrall'd discontent,  
 Whereto th' inviting time our fashion calls :  
 If fears not policy, that heretic,  
 Which works on leases of short number'd hours,  
 But all alone stands hugely politic,  
 That it nor grows with heat, nor drowns with showers.  
 To this I witness call the fools of time, 13  
 • Which die for goodness, who have liv'd for crime.

## CXXV

Were 't aught to me I bore the canopy,  
 With my extern the outward honouring,  
 Or laid great bases for eternity,  
 Which proves more short than waste or ruining ?  
 Have I not seen dwellers on form and favour  
 Lose all and more by paying too much rent, 6  
 For compound sweet foregoing simple savour,  
 Pitiful thrivers, in their gazing spent ?  
 No ; let me be obsequious in thy heart,  
 And take thou my oblation, poor but free,  
 Which is not mix'd with seconds, knows no art,  
 But mutual render, only me for thee. 12  
 Hence, thou suborn'd informer ! a true soul  
 When most impeach'd stands least in thy control.

## CXXVI

O thou, my lovely boy, who in thy power  
 Dost hold Time's fickle glass, his sickle hour ;  
 Who hast by waning grown, and therein show'st  
 Thy lovers withering as thy sweet self grow'st ;  
 If Nature, sovereign mistress over wrack,  
 As thou goest onwards, still will pluck thee back, 6  
 She keeps thee to this purpose, that her skill  
 May time disgrace and wretched minutes kill.  
 Yet fear her, O thou minion of her pleasure !  
 She may detain, but not still keep, her treasure :  
 Her audit, though delay'd, answer'd must be,  
 And her quietus is to render thee. 12

## CXXVII

In the old age black was not counted fair,  
 Or if it were, it bore not beauty's name ;  
 But now is black beauty's successive heir,  
 And beauty slander'd with a bastard's shame :  
 For since each hand hath put on Nature's power,  
 Fairing the foul with Art's false borrow'd face,  
 Sweet beauty hath no name, no holy bower,  
 But is profan'd, if not lives in disgrace.  
 Therefore my mistress' brows are raven black;  
 Her eyes so suited, and they mourners seem  
 At such who, not born fair, no beauty lack,  
 Sland'ring creation with a false esteem :  
 Yet so they mourn, becoming of their woe,  
 That every tongue says beauty should look so.

6

12

## CXXVIII

How oft, when thou, my music, music play'st,  
 Upon that blessed wood whose motion sounds  
 With thy sweet fingers, when thou gently sway'st,  
 The wiry concord that mine ear confounds,  
 Do I envy those jacks that nimble leap  
 To kiss the tender inward of thy hand,  
 Whilst my poor lips, which should that harvest reap,  
 At the wood's boldness by thee blushing stand !  
 To be so tickled, they would change their state  
 And situation with those dancing chips,  
 O'er whom thy fingers walk with gentle gait,  
 Making dead wood more bless'd than living lips.  
 Since saucy jacks so happy are in this,  
 Give them thy fingers, me thy lips to kiss.

6

18

## CXXIX

The expense of spirit in a waste of shame  
 Is lust in action ; and till action, lust  
 Is perjur'd, murderous, bloody, full of blame,  
 Savage, extreme, rude, cruel, not to trust ;  
 Enjoy'd no sooner but despised straight ;  
 Past reason hunted ; and no sooner had,

Past reason hated, as a swallow'd bait,  
 On purpose laid to make the taker mad :  
 Mad in pursuit, and in possession so ;  
 Had, having, and in quest to have, extreme ;  
 A bliss in proof,—and prov'd, a very woe ;  
 Before, a joy propos'd ; behind, a dream. 12  
 All this the world well knows ; yet none knows well  
 To shun the heaven that leads men to this hell.

## CXXX

My mistress' eyes are nothing like the sun ;  
 Coral is far more red than her lips' red :  
 If snow be white, why then her breasts are dun ;  
 If hairs be wires, black wires grow on her head.  
 I have seen roses damask'd, red and white,  
 But no such roses see I in her cheeks ; 6  
 And in some perfumes is there more delight  
 Than in the breath that from my mistress reeks.  
 I love to hear her speak, yet well I know  
 That music hath a far more pleasing sound :  
 I grant I never saw a goddess go,—  
 My mistress, when she walks, treads on the ground :  
 And yet, by heaven, I think my love as rare 13  
 As any she belied with false compare.

## CXXXI

Thou art as tyrannous, so as thou art,  
 As those whose beauties proudly make them cruel ;  
 For well thou know'st to my dear dotting heart  
 Thou art the fairest and most precious jewel.  
 Yet, in good faith, some say that thee behold,  
 Thy face hath not the power to make love groan :  
 To say they err I dare not be so bold, 7  
 Although I swear it to myself alone.  
 And to be sure that is not false I swear,  
 A thousand groans, but thinking on thy face,  
 One on another's neck, do witness bear  
 Thy black is fairest in my judgment's place. 12  
 In nothing art thou black save in thy deeds,  
 And thence this slander, as I think, proceeds.

## CXXXII

Thine eyes I love, and they, as pitying me,  
 Knowing thy heart torments me with disdain,  
 Have put on black and loving mourners be,  
 Looking with pretty ruth upon my pain.  
 And truly not the morning sun of heaven  
 Better becomes the grey cheeks of the east,  
 Nor that full star that ushers in the even,  
 Doth half that glory to the sober west,  
 As those two mourning eyes become thy face:  
 O! let it then as well beseem thy heart  
 To mourn for me, since mourning doth thee grace,  
 And suit thy pity like in every part.  
 Then will I swear beauty herself is black,  
 And all they foul that thy complexion lack.

## CXXXIII

Beshrew that heart that makes my heart to groan  
 For that deep wound it gives my friend and me!  
 Is 't not enough to torture me alone,  
 But slave to slavery my sweet'st friend must be?  
 Me from myself thy cruel eye hath taken,  
 And my next self thou harder hast engross'd:  
 Of him, myself, and thee, I am forsaken;  
 A torment thrice threefold thus to be cross'd.  
 Prison my heart in thy steel bosom's ward,  
 But then my friend's heart let my poor heart bail;  
 Whoe'er keeps me, let my heart be his guard;  
 Thou canst not then use rigour in my jail:  
 And yet thou wilt; for I, being pent in thee,  
 Perforce am thine, and all that is in me.

## CXXXIV

So, now I have confess'd that he is thine,  
 And I myself am mortgag'd to thy will,  
 Myself I'll forfeit, so that other mine  
 Thou wilt restore, to be my comfort still:  
 But thou wilt not, nor he will not be free,  
 For thou art covetous and he is kind;

He learn'd but surety-like to write for me,  
 Under that bond that him as fast doth bind.  
 The statute of thy beauty thou wilt take,  
 Thou usurer, that putt'st forth all to use,  
 And sue a friend came debtor for my sake ;  
 So him I lose through my unkind abuse.  
 Him have I lost ; thou hast both him and me :  
 He pays the whole, and yet am I not free.

12

## CXXXV

Whoever hath her wish, thou hast thy 'Will,'  
 And ' Will ! to boot, and ' Will ' in over-plus ;  
 More than enough am I that vex'd thee still,  
 To thy sweet will making addition thus.  
 Wilt thou, whose will is large and spacious,  
 Not once vouchsafe to hide my will in thine ?  
 Shall will in others seem right gracious,  
 And in my will no fair acceptance shine ?  
 The sea, all water, yet receives rain still,  
 And in abundance addeth to his store ;  
 So thou, being rich in ' Will,' add to thy ' Will '  
 One will of mine, to make thy large ' Will ' more.  
 Let no unkind ' No ' fair beseechers kill ;  
 Think all but one, and me in that one ' Will.'

6

12

## CXXXVI

If thy soul check thee that I come so near,  
 Swear to thy blind soul that I was thy ' Will,'  
 And will, thy soul knows, is admitted there ;  
 Thus far for love, my love-suit, sweet, fulfil.  
 ' Will ' will fulfil the treasure of thy love,  
 Ay, fill it full with wills, and my will one.  
 In things of great receipt with ease we prove  
 Among a number one is reckon'd none :  
 Then in the number let me pass untold,  
 Though in thy stores' account I one must be ;  
 For nothing hold me, so it please thee hold  
 That nothing me, a something sweet to thee :  
 Make but my name thy love, and love that still,  
 And then thou lovest me, for my name is ' Will.'

6

12

## CXXXVII

Thou blind fool, Love, what dost thou to mine eyes,  
 That they behold, and see not what they see ?  
 They know what beauty is; see where it lies,  
 Yet what the best is take the worst to be.  
 If eyes, corrupt by over-partial looks,  
 Be anchor'd in the bay where all men ride,  
 Why of eyes' falsehood hast thou forged hooks,  
 Whereto the judgment of my heart is tied ?  
 Why should my heart think that a several plot  
 Which my heart knows the wide world's common place ?  
 Or mine eyes, seeing this, say this is not,  
 To put fair truth upon so foul a face ?  
 In things right true my heart and eyes have err'd,  
 And to this false plague are they now transferr'd.

## CXXXVIII

When my love swears that she is made of truth,  
 I do believe her, though I know she lies;  
 That she might think me some untutor'd youth,  
 Unlearned in the world's false subtleties.  
 Thus vainly thinking that she thinks me young,  
 Although she knows my days are past the best,  
 Simply I credit her false-speaking tongue :  
 On both sides thus is simple truth suppress'd.  
 But wherefore says she not she is unjust ?  
 And wherefore say not I that I am old ?  
 O ! love's best habit is in seeming trust,  
 And age in love loves not to have years told :  
 Therefore I lie with her, and she with me,  
 And in our faults by lies we flatter'd be.

## CXXXIX

O ! call not me to justify the wrong  
 That thy unkindness lays upon my heart ;  
 Wound me not with thine eye, but with thy tongue :  
 Use power with power, and slay me not by art.  
 Tell me thou lovest elsewhere ; but in my sight,  
 Dear heart, forbear to glance thine eye aside :

What need'st thou wound with cunning, when thy might  
 Is more than my o'erpress'd defence can bide ?  
 Let me excuse thee : ah ! my love well knows  
 Her pretty looks have been mine enemies ;  
 And therefore from my face she turns my foes,  
 That they elsewhere might dart their injuries : 12  
 . . Yet do not so ; but since I am near slain,  
 Kill me outright with looks, and rid my pain.

## CXL

Be wise as thou art cruel ; do not press •  
 My tongue-tied patience with too much disdain ;  
 Lest sorrow lend me words, and words express  
 The manner of my pity-wanting pain.  
 If I might teach thee wit, better it were,  
 Though not to love, yet, love, to tell me so ;— 6  
 As testy sick men, when their deaths be near,  
 No news but health from their physicians know ;—  
 For, if I should despair, I should grow mad,  
 And in my madness might speak ill of thee :  
 Now this ill-wresting world is grown so bad,  
 Mad slanderers by mad ears believed be. 12  
 That I may not be so, nor thou belied,  
 Bear thine eyes straight, though thy proud heart  
 go wide.

## CXLI

In faith, I do not love thee with mine eyes,  
 • For they in thee a thousand errors note ;  
 But 'tis my heart that loves what they despise,  
 Who, in despite of view, is pleas'd to dote.  
 Nor are mine ears with thy tongue's tune delighted ;  
 Nor tender feeling, to base touches prone, 6  
 Nor taste, nor smell, desire to be invited  
 To any sensual feast with thee alone :  
 But my five wits nor my five senses can  
 Dissuade one foolish heart from serving thee,  
 Who leaves unsway'd the likeness of a man,  
 Thy proud heart's slave and vassal wretch to be :  
 Only my plague thus far I count my gain, 13  
 That she that makes me sin awards me pain.



## CXLII

Love is my sin, and thy dear virtue hate,  
 Hate of my sin, grounded on sinful loving :  
 O ! but with mine compare thou thine own state,  
 And thou shalt find it merits not reproving ;  
 Or, if it do, not from those lips of thine,  
 That have profan'd their scarlet ornaments 6  
 And seal'd false bonds of love as oft as mine,  
 Robb'd others' beds' revenues of their rents.  
 Be it lawful I love thee, as thou lov'st those  
 Whom thine eyes woo as mine importune thee :  
 Root pity in thy heart, that, when it grows,  
 Thy pity may deserve to pitied be. 12  
 If thou dost seek to have what thou dost hide,  
 By self-example mayst thou be denied !

## CXLIII

Lo, as a careful housewife runs to catch  
 One of her feather'd creatures broke away,  
 Sets down her babe, and makes all swift dispatch  
 In pursuit of the thing she would have stay ;  
 Whilst her neglected child holds her in chase,  
 Cries to catch her whose busy care is bent 6  
 To follow that which flies before her face,  
 Not prizing her poor infant's discontent :  
 So runn'st thou after that which flies from thee, 8  
 Whilst I thy babe chase thee afar behind ;  
 But if thou catch thy hope, turn back to me,  
 And play the mother's part, kiss me, be kind ; 12  
 So will I pray that thou mayst have thy ' Will,'  
 If thou turn back and my loud crying still.

## CXLIV

Two loves I have of comfort and despair,  
 Which like two spirits do suggest me still :  
 The better angel is a man right fair,  
 The worser spirit a woman colour'd ill.  
 To win me soon to hell, my female evil  
 Tempteth my better angel from my side,

And would corrupt my saint to be a devil,  
 Wooing his purity with her foul pride.  
 And whether that my angel be turn'd fiend  
 Suspect I may, yet not directly tell;  
 But being both from me, both to each friend,  
 I guess one angel in another's hell :  
 Yet this shall I ne'er know, but live in doubt,  
 Till my bad angel fire my good one out.

12

## CXLV

Those lips that Love's own hand did make,  
 Breath'd forth the sound that said ' I hate,'  
 To me that languish'd for her sake :  
 But when she saw my woeful state,  
 Straight in her heart did mercy come,  
 Chiding that tongue that ever sweet  
 Was us'd in giving gentle doom ;  
 And taught it thus anew to greet ;  
 ' I hate,' she alter'd with an end,  
 That follow'd it as gentle day  
 Doth follow night, who like a fiend  
 From heaven to hell is flown away.  
 ' I hate ' from hate away she threw,  
 And sav'd my life, saying ' Not you.'

6

12

## CXLVI

Poor soul, the centre of my sinful earth,  
 Fool'd by these rebel powers that thee array,  
 Why dost thou pine within and suffer dearth,  
 Painting thy outward walls so costly gay ?  
 Why so large cost, having so short a lease,  
 Dost thou upon thy fading mansion spend ?  
 Shall worms, inheritors of this excess,  
 Eat up thy charge ? Is this thy body's end ?  
 Then, soul, live thou upon thy servant's loss,  
 And let that pine to aggravate thy store ;  
 Buy terms divine in selling hours of dross ;  
 Within be fed, without be rich no more :  
 So shalt thou feed on Death, that feeds on men,  
 And Death once dead, there 's no more dying then.

6

12

## CXLVII

My love is as a fever, longing still  
 For that which longer nurseth the disease ;  
 Feeding on that which doth preserve the ill,  
 The uncertain sickly appetite to please.  
 My reason, the physician to my love,  
 Angry that his prescriptions are not kept,  
 Hath left me, and I desperate now approve  
 Desire is death, which physic did except.  
 Past cure I am, now Reason is past care,  
 And frantic-mad with evermore unrest ;  
 My thoughts and my discourse as madmen's are,  
 As random from the truth vainly express'd ;  
 For I have sworn thee fair, and thought thee bright,  
 Who art as black as hell, as dark as night.

## CXLVIII

O me ! what eyes hath Love put in my head,  
 Which have no correspondence with true sight ;  
 Or, if they have, where is my judgment fled,  
 That censures falsely what they see aright ?  
 If that be fair whereon my false eyes dote,  
 What means the world to say it is not so ?  
 If it be not, then love doth well denote  
 Love's eye is not so true as all men's : no,  
 How can it ? O ! how can Love's eye be true,  
 That is so vex'd with watching and with tears ?  
 No marvel then, though I mistake my view ;  
 The sun itself sees not till heaven clears.  
 O cunning Love ! with tears thou keep'st me blind,  
 Lest eyes well-seeing thy foul faults should find.

## CXLIX

Canst thou, O cruel ! say I love thee not,  
 When I against myself with thee partake ?  
 Do I not think on thee, when I forget  
 Am of myself, all tyrant, for thy sake ?  
 Who hateth thee that I do call my friend ?  
 On whom frown'st thou that I do fawn upon ?

Nay, if thou lov'st on me, do I not spend  
 Revenge upon myself with present moan ?  
 What merit do I in myself respect,  
 That is so proud thy service to despise,  
 When all my best doth worship thy defect,  
 Commanded by the motion of thine eyes ? 12  
 But, love, hate on, for now I know thy mind ;  
 Those that can see thou lov'st, and I am blind.

## CL

O ! from what power hast thou this powerful might,  
 With insufficiency my heart to sway ?  
 To make me give the lie to my true sight,  
 And swear that brightness doth not grace the day ?  
 Whence hast thou this becoming of things ill,  
 That in the very refuse of thy deeds 6  
 There is such strength and warrantise of skill,  
 That, in my mind, thy worst all best exceeds ?  
 Who taught thee how to make me love thee more,  
 The more I hear and see just cause of hate ?  
 O ! though I love what others do abhor,  
 With others thou shouldst not abhor my state : 12  
 If thy unworthiness rais'd love in me,  
 More worthy I to be belov'd of thee.

## CLL

Love is too young to know what conscience is ;  
 Yet who knows not conscience is born of love ?  
 Then, gentle cheater, urge not my amiss,  
 Lest guilty of my faults thy sweet self prove :  
 For, thou betraying me, I do betray 6  
 My nobler part to my gross body's treason ;  
 My soul doth tell my body that he may  
 Triumph in love ; flesh stays no farther reason,  
 But rising at thy name doth point out thee  
 As his triumphant prize. Proud of this pride,  
 He is contented thy poor drudge to be,  
 To stand in thy affairs, fall by thy side. 12  
 No want of conscience hold it that I call  
 Her ' love ' for whose dear love I rise and fall.

## CLII

In loving thee thou know'st I am forsworn,  
 But thou art twice forsworn, to me love swearing;  
 In act thy bed-vow broke, and new faith torn,  
 In vowing new hate after new love bearing.  
 But why of two oaths' breach do I accuse thee,  
 When I break twenty? I am perjur'd most;  
 For all my vows are oaths but to misuse thee,  
 And all my honest faith in thee is lost:  
 For I have sworn deep oaths of thy deep kindness,  
 Oaths of thy love, thy truth, thy constancy;  
 And, to enlighten thee, gave eyes to blindness,  
 Or made them swear against the thing they see;  
 For I have sworn thee fair; more perjur'd I,  
 To swear against the truth so foul a lie!

## CLIII

Cupid laid by his brand and fell asleep:  
 A maid of Dian's this advantage found,  
 And his love-kindling fire did quickly steep  
 In a cold valley-fountain of that ground;  
 Which borrow'd from this holy fire of Love  
 A dateless lively heat, still to endure,  
 And grew a seething bath, which yet men prove  
 Against strange maladies, a sovereign cure.  
 But at my mistress' eye Love's brand new-fired,  
 The boy for trial needs would touch my breast;  
 I, sick withal, the help of bath desired,  
 And thither hied, a sad distemper'd guest,  
 But found no cure: the bath for my help lies  
 Where Cupid got new fire, my mistress' eyes.

## CLIV

The little Love-god lying once asleep  
 Laid by his side his heart-inflaming brand,  
 Whilst many nymphs that vow'd chaste life to keep  
 Came tripping by; but in her maiden hand  
 The fairest votary took up that fire  
 Which many legions of true hearts had warm'd;

And so the general of hot desire  
Was, sleeping, by a virgin hand disarm'd.  
This brand she quenched in a cool well by,  
Which from Love's fire took heat perpetual,  
Growing a bath and healthful remedy  
For men diseas'd ; but I, my mistress' thrall,      12  
Came there for cure, and this by that I prove,  
Love's fire heats water, water cools not love.



# **À LOVER'S COMPLAINT**



# A LOVER'S COMPLAINT

## INTRODUCTION

THIS poem follows Shakespeare's *Sonnets* in the first edition, the quarto of 1609. It is there expressly ascribed to 'William Shake-speare'. There appears to be no good reason to question the correctness of this ascription, but we are without evidence as to the date when the poem was written. It has been suggested by Professor Gollancz that we have here 'an early exercise in the Spenserian style', and he compares the opening lines of Spenser's *The Ruins of Time* with the opening of *A Lover's Complaint*. If the suggestion of the weeping woman came from Spenser we are carried back to a French original, for in Spenser's *Visions of Bellay* we find lines which seem to have inspired those that form the opening stanzas of *The Ruins of Time*. No original for the story told by the deserted lover is known, but the theme is common to the poetry of unhappy love.

## A LOVER'S COMPLAINT

FROM off a hill whose concave womb re-worded  
A plaintful story from a sistering vale,  
My spirits to attend this double voice accorded,  
And down I laid to list the sad-tun'd tale ; 4  
Ere long espied a fickle maid full pale,  
Tearing of papers, breaking rings a-twain,  
Storming her world with sorrow's wind and rain.

Upon her head a platted hive of straw, 8  
Which fortified her visage from the sun,  
Whereon the thought might think sometime it saw  
The carcass of a beauty spent and done :  
Time had not scythed all that youth begun, 12  
Nor youth all quit ; but, spite of heaven's fell rage,  
Some beauty peep'd through lattice of sear'd age.

Oft did she heave her napkin to her eyne,  
Which on it had conceited characters, 16  
Laundering the silken figures in the brine  
That season'd woe had pelleted in tears,  
And often reading what content it bears ;  
As often shrieking undistinguish'd woe, 20  
In clamours of all size, both high and low.

Sometimes her levell'd eyes their carriage ride,  
As they did battery to the spheres intend ;  
Sometime diverted, their poor balls are tied 24  
To the orb'd earth ; sometimes they do extend  
Their view right on ; anon their gazes lend  
To every place at once, and nowhere fix'd,  
The mind and sight distractedly commix'd. 28

Her hair, nor loose nor tied in formal plat,  
 Proclaim'd in her a careless hand of pride ;  
 For some, untuck'd, descended her sheav'd hat,  
 Hanging her pale and pined cheek beside ; 3  
 Some in her threaden fillet still did bide,  
 And true to bondage would not break from thence,  
 Though slackly braided in loose negligence.

A thousand favours from a maund she drew 36  
 Of amber, crystal, and of beaded jet,  
 Which one by one she in a river threw,  
 Upon whose weeping margent she was set ;  
 Like usury, applying wet to wet, 40  
 Or monarch's hands that let not bounty fall  
 Where want cries some, but where excess begs all.

Of folded schedules had she many a one, 43  
 Which she perus'd, sigh'd, tore, and gave the flood ;  
 Crack'd many a ring of posied gold and bone,  
 Bidding them find their sepulchres in mud ;  
 Found yet more letters sadly penn'd in blood,  
 With sleided silk feat and affectedly 48  
 Enswath'd, and seal'd to curious secrecy.

These often bath'd she in her fluxive eyes,  
 And often kiss'd, and often 'gan to tear ;  
 Cried ' O false blood, thou register of lies, 52  
 What unapproved witness dost thou bear  
 Ink would have seem'd more black and damned here !  
 This said, in top of rage the lines she rents,  
 Big discontent so breaking their contents. 56

A reverend man that graz'd his cattle nigh—  
 Sometime a blusterer, that the ruffle knew  
 Of court, of city, and had let go by  
 The swiftest hours, observed as they flew— 60  
 Towards this afflicted fancy fastly drew ;  
 And, privileg'd by age, desires to know  
 In brief the grounds and motives of her woe.

So slides he down upon his grained bat, 64  
And comely-distant sits he by her side ;  
When he again desires her, being sat,  
Her grievance with his hearing to divide :  
If that from him there may be aught applied 68  
Which may her suffering ecstasy assuage,  
'Tis promis'd in the charity of age.

' Father,' she says, ' though in me you behold  
The injury of many a blasting hour, 72  
Let it not tell your judgment I am old ;  
Not age, but sorrow, over me hath power :  
I might as yet have been a spreading flower,  
Fresh to myself, if I had self-applied 76  
Love to myself, and to no love beside.

' But woe is me ! ' too early I attended  
A youthful suit, it was to gain my grace,  
Of one by nature's outwards so commended, 80  
That maidens' eyes stuck over all his face.  
Love Jack'd a dwelling and made him her place ;  
And when in his fair parts she did abide,  
She was new lodg'd and newly deified. 84

' His browny locks did hang in crooked curls,  
And every light occasion of the wind  
Upon his lips their silken parcels hurls.  
What's sweet to do, to do will aptly find : 88  
Each eye that saw him did enchant the mind,  
For on his visage was in little drawn  
What largeness thinks in Paradise was sawn.

' Small show of man was yet upon his chin ; 92  
His phoenix down began but to appear  
Like unshorn velvet on that termless skin  
Whose bare out-bragg'd the web it seem'd to wear ;  
Yet show'd his visage by that cost more dear, 96  
And nice affections wavering stood in doubt  
If best were as it was, or best without.

' His qualities were beauteous as his form,  
 For maiden-tongu'd he was, and thereof free ; 100  
 Yet, if men mov'd him, was he such a storm  
 As oft 'twixt May and April is to see,  
 When winds breathe sweet, unruly though they be.  
 His rudeness so with his authoriz'd youth 104  
 Did livery falseness in a pride of truth.

' Well could he ride, and often men would say  
 " That horse his mettle from his rider takes :  
 Proud of subjection, noble by the sway, 108  
 What rounds, what bounds, what course, what stop he  
 makes ! "

And controversy hence a question takes,  
 Whether the horse by him became his deed,  
 Or he his manage by the well-doing steed. 112

' But quickly on this side the verdict went :  
 His real habitude gave life and grace  
 To appertainings and to ornament,  
 Accomplish'd in himself, not in his case : 116  
 All aids, themselves made fairer by their place,  
 Came for additions ; yet their purpos'd trim  
 Piec'd not his grace, but were all grac'd by him.

' So on the tip of his subduing tongue 120  
 All kind of arguments and question deep,  
 All replication prompt, and reason strong,  
 For his advantage still did wake and sleep :  
 To make the weeper laugh, the laughter weep, 124  
 He had the dialect and different skill,  
 Catching all passions in his craft of will :

' That he did in the general bosom reign 128  
 Of young, of old, and sexes both enchanted,  
 To dwell with him in thoughts, or to remain  
 In personal duty, following where he haunted :  
 Consents bewitch'd, ere he desire, have granted,  
 And dialogu'd for him what he would say, 132  
 Ask'd their own wills, and made their wills obey.

## A LOVER'S COMPLAINT

123

' Many there were that did his picture get,  
To serve their eyes, and in it put their mind ;  
Like fools that in the imagination set 136  
The goodly objects which abroad they find  
Of lands and mansions, theirs in thought assign'd ;  
And labouring in more pleasures to bestow them  
Than the true gouty landlord which doth owe them.

' So many have, that lover touch'd his hand, 141  
Sweetly suppos'd them mistress of his heart.  
My woeful self, that did in freedom stand,  
And was my own fee-simple, not in part,  
What with his art in youth and youth in art 145  
Threw my affections in his charmed power,  
Reserv'd the stalk and gave him all my flower.

' Yet did I not, as some my equals did, 148  
Demand of him, nor being desired yielded ;  
Finding myself in honour so forbid,  
With safest distance I mine honour shielded.  
Experience for me many bulwarks builded 152  
Of proofs new-bleeding, which remain'd the foil  
Of this false jewel, and his amorous spoil.

' But, ah ! who ever shunn'd by precedent 156  
The destin'd ill she must herself assay ?  
Or forc'd examples, 'gainst her own content,  
To put the by-past perils in her way ?  
Counsel may stop awhile what will not stay ;  
For when we rage, advice is often seen 160  
By blunting us to make our wits more keen.

' Nor gives it satisfaction to our blood,  
That we must curb it upon others' proof ;  
To be forbid the sweets that seem so good, 164  
For fear of harms that preach in our behoof.  
O appetite ! from judgment stand aloof !  
The one a palate hath that needs will taste,  
Though Reason weep, and cry " It is thy last ". 168

' For further I could say " This man 's untrue ",  
 And knew the patterns of his foul beguiling ;  
 Heard where his plants in others' orchards grew ;  
 Saw how deceits were gilded in his smiling ; 172  
 Knew vows were ever brokers to defiling ;  
 Thought characters and words merely but art,  
 And bastards of his foul adulterate heart.

' And long upon these terms I held my city, 176  
 Till thus he 'gan besiege me : " Gentle maid,  
 Have of my suffering youth some feeling pity,  
 And be not of my holy vows afraid :  
 That 's to ye sworn to none was ever said ; 180  
 For feasts of love I have been call'd unto,  
 Till now did ne'er invite, nor never woo.

' " All my offences that abroad you see  
 Are errors of the blood, none of the mind ; 184  
 Love made them not : with acture they may be,  
 Where neither party is nor true nor kind :  
 They sought their shame that so their shame did find,  
 And so much less of shame in me remains, 188  
 By how much of me their reproach contains.

' " Among the many that mine eyes have seen,  
 Not one whose flame my heart so much as warm'd,  
 Or my affection put to the smallest teen, 192  
 Or any of my leisures ever charm'd :  
 Harm have I done to them, but ne'er was harm'd ;  
 Kept hearts in liveries, but mine own was free,  
 And reign'd, commanding in his monarchy. 196

' " Look here, what tributes wounded fancies sent me,  
 Of paled pearls and rubies red as blood ;  
 Figuring that they their passions likewise lent me  
 Of grief and blushes, aptly understood 200  
 In bloodless white and the encrimson'd mood ;  
 Effects of terror and dear modesty,  
 Encamp'd in hearts, but fighting outwardly.

# A LOVER'S COMPLAINT

1131

“ And, lo ! behold these talents of their hair, 204  
 With twisted metal amorously impleach'd,  
 I have receiv'd from many a several fair,  
 Their kind acceptance weepingly beseech'd,  
 With the annexions of fair gems enrich'd, 208  
 And deep-brain'd sonnets, that did amplify  
 Each stone's dear nature, worth, and quality.

“ The diamond ; why, 'twas beautiful and hard,  
 Whereto his invis'd properties did tend ; 212  
 The deep-green emerald, in whose fresh regard  
 Weak sights their sickly radiance do amend ;  
 The heaven-hu'd sapphire and the opal blend  
 With objects manifold : each several stone, 216  
 With wit well blazon'd, smil'd or made some moan.

“ Lo ! all these trophies of affections hot,  
 Of pensiv'd and subdu'd desires the tender,  
 Nature hath charg'd me that I hoard them not, 220  
 But yield them up where I myself must render,  
 That is, to you, my origin and ender ;  
 For these, of force, must your oblations be,  
 Since I their altar, you enpatron me. 224

“ O ! then, advance of yours that phraseless hand,  
 Whose white weighs down the airy scale of praise ;  
 Take all these similes to your own command,  
 Hallow'd with sighs that burning lungs did raise ;  
 What me your minister, for you obeys, 229  
 Works under you ; and to your audit comes  
 Their distract parcels in combined sums.

“ Lo ! this device was sent me from a nun, 232  
 Or sister sanctified, of holiest note ;  
 Which late her noble suit in court did shun,  
 Whose rarest havings made the blossoms dote ;  
 For she was sought by spirits of richest coat, 236  
 But kept cold distance, and did thence remove,  
 To spend her living in eternal love.



" But, O my sweet ! what labour is 't to leave  
 The thing we have not, mastering what not strives,  
 Paling the place which did no form receive, 241  
 Playing patient sports in unconstrained gyves ?  
 She that her fame so to herself contrives,  
 The scars of battle 'scapeth by the flight, 244  
 And makes her absence valiant, not her might.

" O ! pardon me, in that my boast is true ;  
 The accident which brought me to her eye  
 Upon the moment did her force subdue, 248  
 And now she would the caged cloister fly :  
 Religious love put out Religion's eye :  
 Not to be tempted, would she be immur'd,  
 And now, to tempt, all liberty procur'd. 252

" How mighty then you are, O ! hear me tell :  
 The broken bosoms that to me belong  
 Have emptied all their fountains in my well,  
 And mine I pour your ocean all among : 256  
 I strong o'er them, and you o'er me being strong,  
 Must for your victory us all congeat,  
 As compound love to physic your cold breast.

" My parts had power to charm a sacred nun,  
 Who, disciplin'd, ay, dieted in grace,  
 Believ'd her eyes when they to assail begun,  
 All vows and consecrations giving place : 260  
 O most potential love ! vow, bond, nor space, 264  
 In thee hath neither sting, knot, nor confine,  
 For thou art all, and all things else are thine.

" When thou impresses, what are precepts worth  
 Of stale example ? When thou wilt inflame, 268  
 How coldly those impediments stand forth  
 Of wealth, of filial fear, law, kindred, fame !  
 Love's arms are peace, 'gainst rule, 'gainst sense, 'gainst  
 shame,  
 And sweetens, in the suffering pangs it bears, 272  
 The aloes of all forces, shocks, and fears.

" Now all these hearts that do on mine depend,  
 Feeling it break, with bleeding groans they pine ;  
 And supplicant their sighs to you extend, 276  
 To leave the battery that you make 'gainst mine,  
 Lending soft audience to my sweet design,  
 And credent soul to that strong-bonded oath  
 That shall prefer and undertake my troth." 280

' This said, his watery eyes he did dismount,  
 Whose sights till then were levell'd on my face ;  
 Each cheek a river running from a fount  
 With brinish current downward flow'd apace : 284  
 O, how the channel to the stream gave grace !  
 Who glaz'd with crystal gate the glowing roses  
 That flame through water which their hue encloses.

' O father, what a hell of witchcraft lies 288  
 In the small orb of one particular tear !  
 But with the inundation of the eyes  
 What rocky heart to water will not wear ?  
 What breast so cold that is not warmed here ? 292  
 O cleft effect ! cold modesty, hot wrath,  
 Both fire from hence and chill extincture hath.

' For, lo ! his passion, but an art of craft,  
 Even there resolv'd my reason into tears ; 296  
 There my white stole of chastity I daff'd,  
 Shook off my sober guards and civil fears ;  
 Appear to him, as he to me appears,  
 All melting ; though our drops this difference bore,  
 His poison'd me, and mine did him restore. 301

' In him a plenitude of subtle matter,  
 Applied to cautels, all strange forms receives,  
 Of burning blushes, or of weeping water, 304  
 Or swooning paleness ; and he takes and leaves,  
 In either's aptness, as it best deceives,  
 To blush at speechless rank, to weep at woes,  
 Or to turn white and swound at tragic shows : 308

'That not a heart which in his level came  
 Could 'scape the hail of his all-hurting aim,  
 Showing fair nature is both kind and tame ; 311  
 And, veil'd in them, did win whom he would main :  
 Against the thing he sought he would exclaim ;  
 When he most burn'd in heart-wish'd luxury,  
 He preach'd pure maid, and prais'd cold chastity.

' Thus merely with the garment of a Grace 316  
 The naked and concealed fiend he cover'd ;  
 That the unexperient gave the tempter place,  
 Which like a cherubin above them hover'd.  
 Who, young and simple, would not be so lover'd ?  
 Ay me ! I fell ; and yet do question make 321  
 What I should do again for such a sake.

' O ! that infected moisture of his eye,  
 O ! that false fire which in his cheek so glow'd, 324  
 O ! that forc'd thunder from his heart did fly,  
 O ! that sad breath his spongy lungs bestow'd,  
 O ! all that borrow'd motion seeming 'ow'd.  
 Would yet again betray the fore-betray'd, 328  
 And new pervert a reconciled maid.'

# THE PASSIONATE PILGRIM



# THE PASSIONATE PILGRIM

## INTRODUCTION

*The Passionate Pilgrim*, one of several collections of verse by various authors which were put forth by enterprising publishers, in the Elizabethan and Jacobean period, appeared, with the name 'W. Shakespeare' on the title-page, in the year 1599. The collection is slender, and, probably to make it large enough to tempt a purchaser, it is printed on one side of the paper only; but in order to fit the concluding matter into the last sheet this unusual device is abandoned before the close, the last three leaves being printed on both sides. It was printed for W. Jaggard, whose name is connected with the first folio (1623), a publisher who started on a long career of labour in 1594, and it was sold by W. Leake, who published in the same year (1599) an edition of *Venus and Adonis*. We may assume that a second edition of *The Passionate Pilgrim*, of which no copy is known, was issued at some later date, for that which appeared in 1612 is styled the third edition. It involved no great discredit to publish a collection of verse from manuscript copies, or even from printed sources, without the authority of the writer or writers. There can be little doubt that *The Passionate Pilgrim* was such a pirated collection. The edition of 1612 added 'two Love-Epistles'—letters in verse represented as written, one by Paris to Helen, the other by Helen to Paris—poems by Thomas Heywood, which with the purchaser of the volume might pass for the work of Shakespeare. Heywood, in an *Apology for Actors*, published in the same year, protested against the injustice done to him, and it is interesting to know that Shakespeare is declared to be a sharer in his indignation—as I must acknowledge, writes Heywood, 'my lines not worth his patronage [Shakespeare's patronage] under whom he [Jaggard] hath published them, so the Author

[Shakespeare], I know, much offended with M[aster] Jaggard that altogether unknowne to him presumed to make so bold with his name.' From the later copies of this edition the name of Shakespeare was omitted.

*Passionate*, in the title, means amorous; love-poems were not infrequently styled passions in verse. *Pilgrim* had the merit, affected in such titles, of alliteration, and the lover clad in palmer's or pilgrim's weeds was a personage known to Elizabethan lyrical poetry and Elizabethan drama.

The collection consists of twenty short pieces, which some editors have erroneously made twenty-two, by dividing 'Good night, good rest' into two, and again the last poem, 'As it fell upon a day', into two. In the original edition a separate title, 'Sonnets to sundry notes of Musicke,' is introduced immediately before 'It was a Lordings daughter'. *Sonnets* here is of course used in the old sense of songs.

Only five of the poems are certainly by Shakespeare. Meres, in 1598, had spoken of the poet's 'sugred Sonnets among his private friends'. Of two of these Jaggard had somehow secured copies. The other poems by Shakespeare had appeared in print, in the first quarto of *Love's Labour's Lost* (1598); but the variations of readings lead us to suppose that Jaggard had manuscript copies here also, and did not follow the text as given in the quarto. Sonnets on the subject of Venus and Adonis might well pass with the unwary reader as coming from Shakespeare's pen. Other pieces were written in the stanza which *Venus and Adonis*, among other Elizabethan poems, had made widely popular.

We shall go through the poems in Jaggard's little volume, one by one.

I. 'When my love swears that, &c.' This is Sonnet 138 of Shakespeare's Sonnets in the edition of 1609, where it is evidently linked with the sonnet that precedes it. The reader who compares the two versions will notice several different readings. The sonnet is one which tells of the poet's infatuation with his so-called 'dark mistress'; the later version seems to me in every respect the better of the two.

II. 'Two loves I have.' This is again a sonnet—144

—found in the *Sonnets* of 1609. The variations of text are few, but *The Passionate Pilgrim* form has the merit of reading 'side' as the last word of l. 6, where the 1609 edition has the misprint 'sight'.

III. 'Did not the heavenly rhetoric.' Longaville's sonnet to Maria in Act iv, Scene iii of *Love's Labour's Lost*. The variations of text are not very important, and may perhaps be accounted for by nasty transcription.

IV. 'Sweet Cytherea.' This seems to be connected with the three other Venus and Adonis sonnets—vi, ix, and xi—of the collection. The author is unknown. 'All of them,' writes Sir Sidney Lee, 'embody reminiscences of Shakespeare's narrative poem, but none show any trace of his workmanship.' This and vi ('Scarce had the sun') may perhaps have been suggested by two lines in the second scene of the Induction to *The Taming of the Shrew* :—

Adonis painted by a running brook,  
And Cytherea all in sedges hid (ll. 50, 51).

V. 'If love make me forsworn.' Berowne's sonnet to Rosaline, read aloud by Nathaniel in Act iv, Scene ii of *Love's Labour's Lost*. There are some variations of text, the version in the play being certainly the better.

VI. 'Scarce had the sun.' See note above on IV.

VII. 'Fair is my love.' Found only here. The author is unknown. Sir Sidney Lee compares the poem to a song by Greene, beginning with the words, 'Fair is my love.'

VIII. 'If music and sweet poetry agree.' By Richard Barnfield; published in 1598, in his volume printed for Jaggard's brother John, *The Encomion of Lady Pecunia: or The Praise of Money*. In the fourth section of this volume, entitled *Poems: in divers humors*, the poem occurs, and this section, with a title of its own and separate pagination, may perhaps be regarded as a separate volume, bound with *The Encomion*.

IX. 'Fair was the morn.' See note above, on IV. Malone noticed the omission of l. 2 of this sonnet.

X. 'Sweet rose.' Author unknown. Found only here. Malone supposed that this 'was intended for



a dirge to be sung by Venus on the death of Adonis'. The conjecture was—I think rightly—rejected by James Boswell the younger.

XI. 'Venus with Adonis.' By Bartholomew Griffin; a different form of the third sonnet in his *Fidessa*, 1596. In l. 1, *Fidessa* reads rightly, 'Venus with yong Adonis,' and again in l. 4, 'so fell she to him.' There are other different readings of slight importance; the last six lines entirely differ. *Fidessa* reads:—

But he a wayward boy refusde her offer,  
And ran away, the beautilous Queene neglecting :  
Showing both folly to abuse her proffer,  
And all his sex of cowardise detecting.  
Oh that I had my mistres at that bay,  
To kisse and clippe me till I ranne away.

Jaggard's text is supposed by Sir Sidney Lee to be 'a trial version which Griffin distributed among private friends'. He conjectures that the other Venus and Adonis sonnets in *The Passionate Pilgrim* may be by Griffin, but there is nothing to support the conjecture.

XII. 'Crabbed age and youth.' Perhaps the earliest existing version of a lyric popular in the seventeenth century; it forms part, with textual variations, of a poem in Deloney's *Garland of Good Will*, and may have appeared in an edition of that anthology earlier in date than the oldest now extant, that of 1604. We know from Nashe that the *Garland* had appeared in or before 1595.

XIII. 'Beauty is but a vain, &c.' Author unknown. Found only here.

XIV. 'Good night, good rest.' Author unknown. Found only here. Divided erroneously by Malone (1780) and many later editors into two poems, the second beginning with the third stanza.

XV. (The first of *Sonnets to Sundry Notes of Music*.) 'It was a lording's daughter.' Author unknown. Found only here. Dr. Lee conjectures that it may be by Deloney.

XVI. 'On a day.' By Shakespeare: Dumaine's lines to 'most divine Kate' in *Love's Labour's Lost*, Act IV, Scene iii. In the play the lines

Do not call it sin in me,  
That I am forsworn for thee

follow the line, 'Youth so apt to pluck a sweet.' The poem is reprinted in *England's Helicon*, 1600, where the above two lines are also omitted, and the title, *The Passionate Shepherd's Song* is added, in accordance with the pastoral character of that anthology.

XVII. 'My flocks feed not.' Perhaps by Barnfield. The poem is given with variations of text in the *Madrigals* (1597) of the musical composer Thomas Weelkes. It appears with the title, *The Unknown Shepherd's Complaint* in *England's Helicon* (1600), where it is subscribed *Ignoto*; but it is followed in that collection by a fragment of the Ode, 'As it fell upon a day,' known to be by Barnfield, and before this fragment appears the heading, 'Another of the same Shepherd's.' If, therefore, Barnfield wrote one of these poems in the *Helicon*, he possibly wrote both.

XVIII. 'When as thine eye.' Author unknown. Found only here. A parallel, in substance and metrical form, is found in *Willobie his Avis*, 1594, Canto 44, where W. S. gives advice to the lover H. W. (Henry Willobie). In commendatory verses prefixed to *Willobie his Avis*, the name of Shakespeare is found for the first time in print. It has been suggested that W. S. stands for William Shakespeare. Halliwell in his *Folio Shakespeare*, gives a version of the present poem with differences of text, from a MS. which he believed to be of earlier date than *The Passionate Pilgrim*.

XIX. 'Live with me.' By Marlowe; the last stanza, *Love's Answer*, by Raleigh. Marlowe's poem, having his name attached, appears with a slightly differing text, and two added stanzas in *England's Helicon* (1600). Shakespeare puts the poem to serio-comic uses where Sir Hugh Evans, in *The Merry Wives*, is waiting for his antagonist, Dr. Caius. The music to Marlowe's poem is given in Corkine's *Second Book of Ayres*, 1612. In the *Helicon* 'Love's Answer' is entitled 'The Nymph's Reply to the Shepherd'; there are five added stanzas. The initials S. W. R. (Sir Walter Raleigh) are attached, but 'these letters', writes Dr. Lee, 'were pasted over with a blank slip of paper in most published copies of *England's Helicon*, perhaps in deference to some exceptional protest on Sir Walter's part to the unauthorized inclusion of the piece in the anthology.'

Walton, in his *Compleat Angler*, makes his handsome milkmaid sing Kit Marlowe's smooth song, and her mother responds with the answer 'made by Sir Walter Raleigh in his younger days'. In the second edition of Walton's book a stanza is added to each of the poems.

XX. 'As it fell, &c.' By Richard Barnfield, from *Poems: in divers humors* (see VIII.) The version given here is from the printed volume of 1598, which however does not include lines 27, 28. In *England's Helicon* appears an abbreviated form, which closes with these lines (27, 28). Many editors of *The Passionate Pilgrim* have divided this poem into two, the first ending with line 26. Mr. John Bell Henneman in 'An English Miscellany', Oxford (1901), argues that the poem as given in *England's Helicon* is by Shakespeare, and that the portion from l. 29 to the end, as here given, belongs to Barnfield. Dr. Lee conjectures that much else in *The Passionate Pilgrim* is derived from Barnfield.

## THE PASSIONATE PILGRIM

### I

WHEN my love swears that she is made of truth,  
I do believe her, though I know she lies,  
That she might think me some untutor'd youth,  
Unskilful in the world's false forgeries.  
Thus vainly thinking that she thinks me young,  
Although I know my years be past the best, 6  
I smiling credit her false-speaking tongue,  
Outfacing faults in love with love's ill rest:  
But wherefore says my love that she is young?  
And wherefore say not I that I am old?  
O! love's best habit is a soothing tongue,  
And age, in love, loves not to have years told 12  
Therefore I'll lie with love, and love with me,  
Since that our faults in love thus smother'd be.

### II

Two loves I have, of comfort and despair,  
Which like two spirits do suggest me still;  
The better angel is a man, right fair,  
The worser spirit a woman, colour'd ill.  
To win me soon to hell, my female evil  
Tempteth my better angel from my side, 6  
And would corrupt my saint to be a devil,  
Wooing his purity with her fair pride:  
And whether that my angel be turn'd fiend  
Suspect I may, but not directly tell;  
For being both to me, both to each friend,  
I guess one angel in another's hell. 12  
The truth I shall not know, but live in doubt,  
Till my bad angel fire my good one out.

## III

Did not the heavenly rhetoric of thine eye,  
 'Gainst whom the world could not hold argument,  
 Persuade my heart to this false perjury ?  
 Vows for thee broke deserve not punishment.  
 A woman I forswore ; but I will prove,  
 Thou being a goddess, I forswore not thee :  
 My vow was earthly, thou a heavenly love ;  
 Thy grace being gain'd cures all disgrace in me.  
 My vow was breath, and breath a vapour is ;  
 Then thou, fair sun, that on this earth doth shine,  
 Exhale this vapour vow ; in thee it is :  
 If broken, then it is no fault of mine. 12  
 If by me broke, what fool is not so wise  
 To break an oath, to win a paradise ?

## IV

Sweet Cytherea, sitting by a brook  
 With young Adonis, lovely, fresh, and green,  
 Did court the lad with many a lovely look,  
 Such looks as none could look but beauty's queen.  
 She told him stories to delight his ear ;  
 She show'd him favours to allure his eye ; 6  
 To win his heart, she touch'd him here and there,—  
 Touches so soft still conquer chastity.  
 But whether unripe years did want conceit,  
 Or he refus'd to take her figur'd proffer,  
 The tender nibbler would not touch the bait,  
 But smile and jest at every gentle offer : 12  
 Then fell she on her back, fair queen, and toward :  
 He rose and ran away ; ah ! fool too froward.

## 17

If love make me forsworn, how shall I swear to love ?  
 O ! never faith could hold, if not to beauty vow'd :  
 Though to myself forsworn, to thee I'll constant prove ;  
 Those thoughts, to me like oaks, to thee like osiers  
 bow'd. 4  
 Study his bias leaves, and makes his book thine eyes,  
 Where all those pleasures live that art can comprehend.

If knowledge be the mark, to know thee shall suffice ;  
 Well learned is that tongue that well can thee commend ;  
 All ignorant that soul that sees thee without wonder ;  
 Which is to me some praise, that I thy parts admire :  
 Thine eye Jove's lightning seems, thy voice his dreadful  
 thunder, 11

Which, not to anger bent, is music and sweet fire.

• • Celestial as thou art, O ! do not love that wrong,  
 To sing heaven's praise with such an earthly tongue.

## VI

Scarce had the sun dried up the dewy morn,  
 And scarce the herd gone to the hedge for shade,  
 When Cytherea, all in love forlorn,  
 A longing tarriance for Adonis made  
 Under an osier growing by a brook,  
 A brook where Adon us'd to cool his spleen : 6  
 Hot was the day ; she hotter that did look  
 For his approach, that often there had been.  
 Anon he comes, and throws his mantle by,  
 And stood stark naked on the brook's green brim :  
 The sun look'd on the world with glorious eye,  
 Yet not so wistly as this queen on him : 12  
 He, spying her, bounc'd in, whereas he stood :  
 ' O Jove,' quoth she, ' why was not I a flood ! '

## VII

Fair is my love, but not so fair as fickle ;  
 • Mild as a dove, but neither true nor trusty ;  
 Brighter than glass, and yet, as glass is, brittle ;  
 Softer than wax, and yet, as iron, rusty :  
 A lily pale, with damask dye to grace her,  
 None fairer, nor none false<sup>r</sup> to deface her.

Her lips to mine how often hath she join'd,  
 Between each kiss her oaths of true love swearing  
 How many tales to please me hath she coin'd,  
 Dreading my love, the loss thereof still fearing !  
 Yet in the midst of all her pure protestings,  
 Her faith, her oaths, her tears, and all were jestings.

She burn'd with love, as straw with fire flameth ; 13  
 She burn'd out love, as soon as straw outburneth ;  
 She fram'd the love, and yet she foil'd the framing ;  
 She bade love last, and yet she fell a-turning.  
 Was this a lover, or a lecher whether ?  
 Bad in the best, though excellent in neither. 18

## VIII

If music and sweet poetry agree,  
 As they must needs, the sister and the brother,  
 Then must the love be great 'twixt thee and me.  
 Because thou lov'st the one, and I the other.  
 Dowland to thee is dear, whose heavenly touch  
 Upon the lute doth ravish human sense ; 6  
 Spenser to me, whose deep conceit is such  
 As, passing all conceit, needs no defence,  
 Thou lov'st to hear the sweet melodious sound  
 That Phœbus' lute, the queen of music, makes ;  
 And I in deep delight am chiefly drown'd  
 When as himself to singing he betakes. 12  
 One god is god of both, as poets feign ;  
 One knight loves both, and both in thee remain.

## IX

Fair was the morn when the fair queen of love,  
 Paler for sorrow than her milk-white dove,  
 For Adon's sake, a youngster proud and wild ;  
 Her stand she takes upon a steep-up hill :  
 Anon Adonis comes with horn and hounds ; 6  
 She, silly queen, with more than love's good will,  
 Forbade the boy he should not pass those grounds :  
 ' Once,' quoth she, ' did I see a fair sweet youth  
 Here in these brakes deep-wounded with a boar,  
 Deep in the thigh, a spectacle of ruth !  
 See, in my thigh,' quoth she, ' here was the sore.' 12  
 She showed hers ; he saw more wounds than one,  
 And blushing fled, and left her all alone.

## X

Sweet rose, fair flower, untimely pluck'd, soon vaded,  
 Pluck'd in the bud, and vaded in the spring !  
 Bright orient pearl, alack ! too timely shaded ;  
 Fair creature, kill'd too soon by death's sharp sting !  
 Like a green plum that hangs upon a tree,  
 And falls, through wind, before the fall should be.

I weep for thee, and yet no cause I have ; 7  
 For why thou left'st me nothing in thy will :  
 And yet thou left'st me more than I did crave ;  
 For why I craved nothing of thee still :  
 O yes, dear friend, I pardon crave of thee,  
 Thy discontent thou didst bequeath to me. 12

## XI

Venus, with young Adonis sitting by her  
 Under a myrtle shade, began to woo him :  
 She told the youngling how god Mars did try her,  
 And as he fell to her, so fell she to him.  
 ' Even thus,' quoth she, ' the warlike god embrac'd me,'  
 And then she clipp'd Adonis in her arms ; 6  
 ' Even thus,' quoth she, ' the warlike god unlac'd me,'  
 As if the boy should use like loving charms.  
 ' Even thus,' quoth she, ' he seized on my lips,'  
 And with her lips on his did act the seizure ;  
 And as she fetch'd breath, away he skips, 11  
 And would not take her meaning nor her pleasure.  
 Ah ! that I had my lady at this bay,  
 To kiss and clip me till I ran away.

## XII

Crabbed age and youth cannot live together :  
 Youth is full of pleasance, age is full of care ;  
 Youth like summer morn, age like winter weather ;  
 Youth like summer brave, age like winter bare.  
 Youth is full of sport, age's breath is short ;  
 Youth is nimble, age is lame ; 6  
 Youth is hot and bold, age is weak and cold ;  
 Youth is wild, and age is tame.



Age, I do abhor thee ; youth, I do adore thee ;  
 O ! my love, my love is young :  
 Age, I do defy thee : O ! sweet shepherd, hie thee,  
 For methinks thou stay'st too long.

12

## XIII

Beauty is but a vain and doubtful good ;  
 A shining gloss that vadeth suddenly ;  
 A flower that dies when first it 'gins to bud ;  
 A brittle glass that 's broken presently :  
 A doubtful good, a gloss, a glass, a flower,  
 Lost, vaded, broken, dead within an hour.

6

And as goods lost are sold or never found,  
 As vaded gloss no rubbing will refresh,  
 As flowers dead lie wither'd on the ground,  
 As broken glass no cement can redress,  
 So beauty blemish'd once 's for ever lost,  
 In spite of physic, painting, pain, and cost.

12

## XIV

Good night, good rest. Ah ! neither be my share :  
 She bade good night that kept my rest away ;  
 And daff'd me to a cabin hang'd with care,  
 To descant on the doubts of my decay.  
 ' Farewell,' quoth she, ' and come again to-morrow :'  
 Fare well I could not, for I supp'd with sorrow.

Yet at my parting sweetly did she smile,  
 In scorn or friendship, nill I construe whether :  
 'T may be, she joy'd to jest at my exile,  
 'T may be, again to make me wander thither :  
 ' Wander,' a word for skadows like myself,  
 As take the pain, but cannot pluck the pelf.

12

Lord ! how mine eyes throw gazes to the east ;  
 My heart doth charge the watch ; the morning rise  
 Doth cite each moving sense from idle rest.

Not daring trust the office of mine eyes,  
 While Philomela sits and sings, I sit and mark,  
 And wish her lays were tuned like the lark ;

18

For she doth welcome daylight with her ditty,  
And drives away dark dismal-dreaming night :  
The night so pack'd, I post unto my pretty ;  
Heart hath his hope, and eyes their wished sight.

Sorrow chang'd to solace, solace mix'd with sorrow ;  
For why, she sigh'd, and bade me come to-morrow.

Were I with her, the night would post too soon ;  
But now are minutes added to the hours ; 26  
To spite me now, each minute seems a moon ;  
Yet not for me, shine sun to succour flowers !  
Pack night, peep day ; good day, of night now borrow :  
Short, night, to-night, and length thyself to-morrow.

## SONNETS TO 'SUNDRY NOTES OF MUSIC

### I

It was a lording's daughter, the fairest one of three,  
That liked of her master as well as well might be,  
Till looking on an Englishman, the fair'st that eye  
could see,

Her fancy fell a-turning. 4  
Long was the combat doubtful that love with love did  
fight,

To leave the master loveless, or kill the gallant knight :  
To put in practice either, alas ! it was a spite

Unto the silly damsel. 8  
But one must be refused ; more mickle was the pain  
That nothing could be used to turn them both to gain,  
For of the two the trusty knight was wounded with  
disdain :

Alas ! she could not help it. 12  
Thus art with arms contending was victor of the day,  
Which by a gift of learning did bear the maid away ;  
Then lullaby, the learned man hath got the lady gay ;  
For now my song is ended. 16

### II

On a day, alack the day !  
Love, whose month was ever May, .  
Spied a blossom passing fair,  
Playing in the wanton air : .  
Through the velvet leaves the wind  
All unseen 'gain passage find ;  
That the lover, sick to death,  
Wish'd himself the heaven's breath.  
' Air,' quoth he, ' thy cheeks may blow ;  
Air, would I might triumph so !

But, alas ! my hand hath sworn  
 Ne'er to pluck thee from thy thorn : 12  
 Vow, alack ! for youth unmeet :  
 Youth, so apt to pluck a sweet.  
 Thou for whom Jove would swear  
 Juno but an Ethiop were ; 16  
 And deny himself for Jove,  
 Turning mortal for thy love.

## III

My flocks feed not,  
 My ewes breed not,  
 My rams speed not,  
 All is amiss : 4  
 Love's denying,  
 Faith's defying,  
 Heart's renying,  
 Causer of this. 8  
 All my merry jigs are quite forgot,  
 All my lady's love is lost, God wot :  
 Where her faith was firmly fix'd in love,  
 There a nay is plac'd without remove. 12  
 One silly cross  
 Wrought all my loss ;  
 O frowning Fortune, cursed, fickle dame ;  
 For now I see 16  
 Inconstancy  
 More in women than in men remain.

In black mourn I,  
 All fears scorn I, 20  
 Love hath forlorn me,  
 • Living in thrall :  
 Heart is bleeding,  
 All help needing, 24  
 O cruel speeding,  
 Fraughted with gall.  
 My shepherd's pipe can sound no deal,  
 My wether's bell rings doleful knell ; 28  
 My curtal dog, that wont to have play'd,  
 Plays not at all, but seems afraid ;

- My sighs so deep  
 Procure to weep, 32  
 In howling wise, to see my doleful plight.  
 How sighs resound  
 Through heartless ground,  
 Like a thousand vanquish'd men in bloody fight !
- Clear wells spring not, 37  
 Sweet birds sing not,  
 Green plants bring not  
 Forth their dye ; 40  
 Herds stand weeping,  
 Flocks all sleeping,  
 Nymphs back peeping  
 Fearfully : 44  
 All our pleasure known to us poor swains,  
 All our merry meetings on the plains,  
 All our evening sport from us is fled,  
 All our love is lost, for Love is dead, 48  
 Farewell, sweet lass,  
 Thy like ne'er was  
 For a sweet content, the cause of all my moan :  
 Poor Corydon 52  
 Must live alone ;  
 Other help for him I see that there is none.

## IV

- When as thine eye hath chose the dame,  
 And stall'd the deer that thou shouldst strike,  
 Let reason rule things worthy blame,  
 As well as fancy, partial wight : 4  
 Take counsel of some wiser head,  
 Neither too young nor yet 'unwed.
- And when thou com'st thy tale to tell,  
 Smooth not thy tongue with filed talk, 8  
 Lest she some subtle practice smell ;  
 A cripple soon can find a halt :  
 But plainly say thou lov'st her well,  
 And set thy person forth to sell. 12

What though her frowning brows be bent,  
Her cloudy looks will clear ere night ;  
And then too late she will repent  
That thus dissembled her delight ; 16  
And twice desire, ere it be day,  
That which with scorn she put away.

What though she strive to try her strength,  
And ban and brawl, and say thee nay, 20  
Her feeble force will yield at length,  
When craft hath taught her thus to say,  
' Had women been so strong as men,  
In faith, you had not had it then.' 24

And to her will frame all thy ways ;  
Spare not to spend, and chiefly there  
Where thy desert may merit praise,  
By ringing in thy lady's ear : 28  
The strongest castle, tower, and town,  
The golden bullet beats it down.

Serve always with assured trust,  
And in thy suit be humble true ; 32  
Unless thy lady prove unjust,  
Seek never thou to choose anew.  
When time shall serve, be thou not slack  
To proffer, though she put thee back. 36

The wiles and guiles that women work,  
Dissembled with an outward show,  
The tricks and toys that in them lurk,  
The cock that treads them shall not know. 40  
Have you not heard it said full oft,  
' A woman's nay doth stand for nought ?

Think, women love to match with men,  
And not to live so like a saint : 44  
Here is no heaven ; they holy then  
Begin, when age doth them attain.  
Were kisses all the joys in bed,  
One woman would another wed. 48

## SONNETS TO SUNDRY

But, soft ! enough ! too much, I fear ;  
 For if my mistress hear my song,  
 She will not stick to ring my ear,  
 To teach my tongue to be so long ;  
 Yet will she blush, here be it said,  
 To hear her secrets so bewray'd.

52

## V

Live with me, and be my love,  
 And we will all the pleasures prove  
 That hills and valleys, dales and fields,  
 And all the craggy mountains yields.

There will we sit upon the rocks,  
 And see the shepherds feed their flocks,  
 By shallow rivers, by whose falls  
 Melodious birds sing madrigals.

8

There will I make thee a bed of roses,  
 With a thousand fragrant posies,  
 A cap of flowers, and a kirtle  
 Embroider'd all with leaves of myrtle.

12

A belt of straw and ivy buds,  
 With coral clasps and amber studs ;  
 And if these pleasures may thee move,  
 Then live with me and be my love.

16

## LOVE'S ANSWER

If that the world and love were young,  
 And truth in every shepherd's tongue,  
 These pretty pleasures might me move,  
 To live with thee and be thy love.

20

## VI

As it fell upon a day  
 In the merry month of May,  
 Sitting in a pleasant shade  
 Which a grove of myrtles made,

4

- Beasts did leap, and birds did sing,  
 • Trees did grow, and plants did spring ;  
 Every thing did banish moan,  
 Save the nightingale alone : 8  
 She, poor bird, as all forlorn,  
 Lean'd her breast up-till a thorn,  
 And there sung the dolefull'st ditty,  
 That to hear it was great pity : 12  
 ' Fie, fie, fie,' now would she cry ;  
 ' Tereu, Tereu ! ' by and by ;  
 That to hear her so complain,  
 Scarce I could from tears refrain ; 16  
 For her griefs, so lively shown,  
 Made me think upon mine own.  
 Ah ! thought I, thou mourn'st in vain,  
 None takes pity on thy pain : 20  
 Senseless trees they cannot hear thee,  
 Ruthless beasts they will not cheer thee :  
 King Pandion he is dead,  
 All thy friends are lapp'd in lead, 24  
 All thy fellow birds do sing,  
 Careless of thy sorrowing.  
 • Even so, poor bird, like thee,  
 None alive will pity me. 28  
 Whilst as fickle Fortune smil'd,  
 Thou and I were both beguil'd.  
 Every one that flatters thee  
 Is no friend in misery. 32  
 Words are easy, like the wind ;  
 • Faithful friends are hard to find :  
 Every man will be thy friend  
 Whilst thou hast wherewith to spend ; 36  
 But if store of crowns be scant,  
 No man will supply thy want.  
 If that one be prodigal,  
 • Bountiful they will him call, 40  
 And with such-like flattering,  
 ' Pity but he were a king.'  
 If he be addict to vice,  
 Quickly him they will entice ; 44  
 If to women he be bent,  
 They have him at commandment :



But if Fortune once do frown, Then farewell his great renown ; They that fawn'd on him before Use his company no more.	48
He that is thy friend indeed, He will help thee in thy need : If thou sorrow, he will weep ; If thou wake, he cannot sleep :	52
Thus of every grief in heart He with thee does bear a part. These are certain signs to know . Faithful friend, from flattering foe.	56

**THE PHOENIX AND THE  
TURTLE**



# THE PHOENIX AND THE TURTLE

## INTRODUCTION

*The Phoenix and the Turtle* appeared, with Shakspeare's name appended, among 'Diverse Poeticall Essaies' which were contributed 'by the best and chiefest of our moderne writers' to bring to a close Robert Chester's volume, *Love's Martyr: or Rosalins Complaint*, 1601 (edited for 'The New Shakspeare Society' in 1878 by Dr. Grosart). Ben Jonson, Chapman, and Marston contributed to the volume pieces on the same theme, 'consecrated to the love and merite of the true-noble Knight, Sir John Salisburie,' one of Queen Elizabeth's 'Esquires of the body', to whom Chester dedicated his obscure and tedious poem. I may be permitted here to reproduce words of my own prefixed to an edition of 'The Poems and Sonnets of Shakspeare', 1903: '*The Phoenix and the Turtle*, taken out of its original environment, seems hardly intelligible, but studied *in situ*, the general significance becomes clear. *Love's Martyr: or Rosalins Complaint*, a long, an incoherent, and a dull poem, professedly, but not really, a translation from the Italian. . . . tells of the chaste love of a phoenix, who represents a woman, and a turtle, who represents a man; they are consumed in the flames of the Arabian pyre, and from their ashes arises a new phoenix—perfect Love. The theme was proposed, perhaps by Chester, to several poets of eminence, Marston, Chapman, Ben Jonson, Shakspeare, and they were willing, if not for hire (which one writer repudiates) yet in honour of Sir John Salisbury, . . . to make their several contributions to this strange volume. The hypothesis of Dr. Grosart, that the phoenix is Elizabeth, and the turtle Essex, seems to me to be without the slenderest foundation. Shakspeare, like his fellow-poets,

## 1160 THE PHOENIX AND THE TURTLE

endeavours to do justice to the prescribed theme ; his general intention is to celebrate the decease of two chaste lovers, who were perfectly united in an ideal passion ; but he omits one motive of which Marston makes much—the birth of the new phoenix, ideal Love, from the ashes of the chaste and impassioned birds. If actual persons were allegorized, it must not be assumed that the fiery transmutation typifies death in the literal sense of the word.'

# THE PHOENIX AND THE TURTLE

LET the bird of loudest lay,  
On the sole Arabian tree,  
Herald sad and trumpet be,  
To whose sound chaste wings obey. 4

But thou shrieking harbinger,  
Foul precurrer of the fiend,  
Augur of the fever's end,  
To this troop come thou not near. 8

From this session interdict  
Every fowl of tyrant wing,  
Save the eagle, feather'd king :  
Keep the obsequy so strict. 12

Let the priest in surplice white,  
That defunctive music can,  
Be the death-divining swan,  
Lest the requiem lack his right. 16

And thou treble-dated crow,  
That thy sable gender mak'st  
With the breath thou giv'st and tak'st,  
'Mongst our mourners shalt thou go. 20

Here the anthem doth commence :  
Love and constancy is dead ;  
Phoenix and the turtle fled  
In a mutual flame from hence. 24

So they lov'd, as love in twain  
Had the essence but in one ;  
Two distincts, division none :  
Number there in love was slain. 28

# 1162 THE PHOENIX AND THE TURTLE

Hearts remote, yet not asunder ;  
Distance, and no space was seen  
'Twixt the turtle and his queen :  
But in them it were a wonder. 32

So between them love did shine,  
That the turtle saw his right  
Flaming in the phoenix' sight ;  
Either was the other's mine. 36

Property was thus appall'd,  
That the self was not the same ;  
Single nature's double name  
Neither two nor one was call'd. 40

Reason, in itself confounded,  
Saw division grow together ;  
To themselves yet either neither,  
Simple were so well compounded, 44

That it cried, ' How true a twain  
Seemeth this concordant one !  
Love hath reason, reason none,  
If what parts can so remain.' 48

Whereupon it made this threne  
To the phoenix and the dove,  
Co-supremes and stars of love,  
As chorus to their tragic scene. 52

## THRENOS

Beauty, truth, and rarity,  
Grace in all simplicity,  
Here enclos'd in cinders lie. 55

Death is now the phoenix' nest ;  
And the turtle's loyal breast  
To eternity doth rest, 58

Leaving no posterity :  
'Twas not their infirmity,  
It was married chastity. 61

THE PHOENIX AND THE TURTLE . 1163

Truth may seem, but cannot be ;  
Beauty brag, but 'tis not she ;  
Truth and beauty buried be. 64

To this urn let those repair  
That are either true or fair ;  
For these dead birds sigh a prayer. 67





# GLOSSARY TO THE HISTORIES AND POEMS

1H4 ....=King Henry the Fourth. Part I.  
 2H4 ....=King Henry the Fourth. Part II.  
 H5 ....=The Life of King Henry the Fifth.  
 1H6 ....=King Henry the Sixth. Part I.  
 2H6 ....=King Henry the Sixth. Part II.  
 3H6 ....=King Henry the Sixth. Part III.  
 H8 ....=King Henry the Eighth.  
 John ....=The Life and Death of King John.  
 Lov. C. ....=A Lover's Complaint.  
 Luc. ....=The Rape of Lucrece.  
 Pas. P. ....=The Passionate Pilgrim.  
 Phoen. ....=The Phoenix and the Turtle.  
 R2 ....=King Richard the Second.  
 R3 ....=King Richard the Third.  
 Son. ....=Sonnets.  
 Son. to } =Sonnets to Sundry Notes of Music.  
 Music }  
 V. and A. =Venus and Adonis.

a', he. John i. 1. 68; &c.  
**abate**, blunt. 2H4 i. 1. 17; R3 v. 4. 48.  
**abhor**, view with horror. H8 ii. 4. 79.  
**abide**, undergo. R2 v. 6. 22; 2H4 ii. 3. 36.  
**abject**, degraded person. R3 i. 1. 106.  
**able**, manageable. 2H4 j. 1. 43.  
**abode**, **abodements**, forebode, forebodings. 3H6 iv. 13; v. 6. 45; H8 i. 1. 93.  
**abortive**, miscarriage. John iii. 4. 158; fruitless. 2H6 iv. 1. 60.  
**abroach**, **set**, cause. 2H4 iv. 2. 14; R3 i. 3. 625.  
**abrook**, endure. 2H6 ii. 4. 10.  
**absent time**, time of absence. R2 ii. 3. 79.  
**absey-book**, A.B.C. book, primer. John i. 1. 196.  
**absolute**, perfect. H5 iii. 7. 26; Luc. 853.  
**abstract**, summary. John ii. 1. 101.  
**abuse**, injure. Son. 42. 7.  
**abutting**, projecting. H5 chor. 21.  
**accept**, acceptance. H5 v. 2. 82.  
**accident**, event. 1H6 v. 3. 4.  
**accite**, arouse, excite. 2H4 ii. 2. 60; v. 2. 141.  
**accomplish**, associates. 1H6 v. 2. 9.  
**accomplish**, equip, perfect. R2 ii. 1. 178; H5 iv. chor. 12; get. 3H6 iii. 2. 152.  
**account**, account, accounts. H5 chor. 17.  
**accorded**, agreed. Lov. C. 3.  
**account**, reckoning. R3 v. 3. 11.  
**account of**, make, hold in estimation. R3 iii. 2. 69.  
**accuse**, accusation. 2H6 iii. 1. 160.  
**achieve**, win. H5 iv. 3. 91.  
**achievement**, completion. H5 iii. 5. 60.  
**Achilles' spear**. Telephus, having

been wounded with the point, was healed with the rust of the spear of Achilles. 2H6 v. 1. 100.  
**aconitum**, a preparation of aconite sometimes used as a poison. 2H4 iv. 4. 48.  
**acquaintance of**, take, acquaint themselves with. Son. 77. 12.  
**acquit**, repay. H5 ii. 2. 144; to discharge a duty. R3 v. 4. 16; pay for. Lucr. 1071.  
**acquittance**, give an acquittance or discharge. R3 iii. 7. 231.  
**act**, state. H5 i. 2. 189; put into action. 2H6 v. 1. 103; in act, in the very doing. Son. 152. 3.  
**acture**, the process of acting, action. Lov. C. 185.  
**addict**, attach, devote. 2H4 iv. 3. 123; Son. to Music vi. 43.  
**addiction**, inclination, bent. H5 i. 1. 54.  
**address**, prepare. 2H4 iv. 4. 5; &c.  
**adjunct**, connected, annexed. John iii. 3. 57; Luc. 133; Son. 91. 5; addition, auxiliary. Son. 122. 13.  
**admiral**, admiral's ship, carrying lantern at stern. 1H4 iii. 3. 25.  
**admiration**, wonder. H5 ii. 2. 108.  
**admonishments**, warnings. 1H6 ii. 5. 98.  
**adsum**, I am here. 2H6 i. 4. 24.  
**adulterate**, stained by adultery, in origin or conduct. R3 iv. 4. 69; lewd. Son. 121. 5.  
**advance**, raise, lift. H5 ii. 2. 102; &c.  
**advantage**, profit, interest, addition. John iii. 3. 22; H5 iv. 3. 50; opportunity. 1H4 ii. 4. 553; iii. 2. 180; Son. 153. 2; occasion. 1H6 ii. 5. 129; increase. R3 iv. 4. 324.  
**advantageable**, of advantage. H5 v. 2. 88.

**adventure**, risk. H5 iv. 1. 118; 2H6 iii. 2. 350; R3 i. 3. 116; enterprise. 3H6 iv. 2. 18.  
**adverse**, opposing, hostile. John iv. 2. 172; R2 i. 3. 82; R3 iv. 4. 191.  
**advertise**, inform. 2H6 iv. 9. 23; &c.  
**advertisement**, announcement. 1H4 iii. 2. 172; advice. 1H4 iv. 1. 36.  
**advice**, due or deliberate consideration. John iii. 4. 11; &c.  
**advise**, bethink. H5 iii. 6. 160.  
**advised**, intentional, deliberate. John iv. 2. 214; R2 i. 3. 188; Son. 49. 4; aware, informed. 2H4 i. 1. 172; H5 ii. chor. 12; careful. 2H6 ii. 4. 38; sedate. 2H6 v. 2. 47.  
**advised**, are ye, have you reflected. 2H6 ii. 1. 47.  
**advised**, be, reflect, consider. John iii. 1. 5; &c.  
**advised**, well, in sound senses. R3 i. 3. 318.  
**advisedly**, deliberately. V. & A. 457; &c.  
**aery**, airy, eagle's nest. John v. 2. 149; eagle's brood. R3 i. 3. 264, 270.  
**affect**, resemble. John i. 1. 86; love. 2H4 iv. 5. 143; 1H6 v. 5. 57; aim at. 2H6 iv. 7. 96.  
**affected to**, enamoured of. V. & A. 157.  
**affected**, stand, is disposed. R3 iii. 1. 171.  
**affectedly**, fancifully. Lov. C. 48.  
**affection**, passion. John v. 2. 41; Luc. 500; inclination. 1H4 iii. 2. 30; 2H4 iv. 4. 65; v. 2. 124.  
**affects**, affections. R2 i. 4. 30.  
**affiance**, confidence. H5 ii. 2. 127; 2H6 iii. 1. 74.  
**affliction**, one afflicted by sorrow. John iii. 4. 36.  
**affy**, betroth. 2H6 iv. 1. 80.  
**a-front**, abreast. 1H4 ii. 4. 202.  
**after**, according to. 2H4 v. 2. 129; afterwards. H5 iv. 2. 59; H8 iii. 2. 203.  
**after-loss**, future grief. Son. 90. 4.  
**against**, in anticipation. R2 iii. 4. 28; 2H4 iv. 2. 81; Son. 63. 1.  
**agate**, very diminutive person, in allusion to small figures cut in agates for seals. 2H4 i. 2. 17.  
**agazed on**, affrighted at. 1H6 i. 1. 126.  
**aggravate**, increase, intensify. R2 i. 1. 43; Son. 146. 10; blunder for 'moderate'. 2H4 ii. 4. 175.  
**a-high**, on high. R3 iv. 4. 86.  
**aidance**, assistance. 2H6 iii. 2. 165; V. & A. 330.  
**aids**, means of help. 2H4 i. 3. 24.  
**airy**, see 'aery'.  
**aim**, guess. 3H6 iii. 2. 68.  
**aim at**, have for object. 3H6 iii. 2. 68.  
**aim**, cry, applaud (from archery). John ii. 1. 196.

**alarms**, attacks. V. & A. 424.  
**alderliest**, dearest of all. 2H6 i. 1. 28.  
**ale-wife**, woman ale-house keeper. 2H4 ii. 2. 83.  
**alight**, alight from. V. & A. 13.  
**alike**, to all. H8 i. 2. 45.  
**all**, both. 2H4 iii. 1. 35; 2H6 ii. 2. 26; quite. 2H4 iv. 1. 156; any. Son. 74. 2.  
**allay**, repress. H8 ii. 1. 152.  
**allegiant**, loyal. H8 iii. 2. 177.  
**All-Hallowen summer**, season of fine weather about Nov. 1 (All Saints' Day); brightness in old age. 1H4 i. 2. 160.  
**alliance**, relationship. 1H6 ii. 5. 53.  
**all-oblivious**, bringing oblivion upon everything. Son. 55. 9.  
**allow**, approve. 2H4 iv. 2. 54; &c.; acknowledge. R2 v. 2. 40.  
**all to naught**, call, vilify. V. & A. 993.  
**all-too-timeless**, most unseasonable. Luc. 44.  
**all-unable**, quite unable. H5 v. 2. 388.  
**all-watched**, wholly watched through. H5 iv. chor. 38.  
**almsdeed**, practice of almsgiving. 3H6 v. 5. 7.  
**aloes**, bitterness. Lov. C. 273.  
**along**, lying at length. V. & A. 43.  
**amain**, with all their strength. 1H6 i. 1. 128; at full speed. 2H6 iii. 1. 282.  
**Amalmon**, name of a devil. 1H4 ii. 4. 341.  
**amaze**, bewilder, confuse. John iv. 2. 137; R2 v. 2. 85; confound, affright. 1H4 v. 4. 6; &c.; astonish greatly. V. & A. 634.  
**amazement**, distraction. John v. 1. 35.  
**amazing**, causing fear. R2 i. 3. 81.  
**ambling**, tripping, walking affectedly. R3 i. 1. 17.  
**amiss**, error. Son. 35. 7.  
**amort**, all, spiritless, dejected. 1H6 iii. 2. 124.  
**an**, **an if**, if. John i. 1. 138; 2H4 i. 2. 59; &c.  
**anatomise**, lay open, show distinctly. 2H4 ind. 21; Luc. 1450.  
**anatomy**, Death. John iii. 4. 40.  
**ancient**, ensign, bearer of the ensign. 1H4 iv. 2. 23; &c.; old. R3 iii. 1. 182.  
**angel**, gold coin, value 10s., stamped with figure of Archangel Michael slaying the dragon. John ii. 1. 590; &c.  
**angrily**, with resentment. John iv. 1. 82.  
**angry-chafing**, raging. V. & A. 662.  
**annexion**, addition. Lov. C. 206.  
**annoy**, hurt. H5 ii. 2. 102; annoyance. R3 v. 3. 157; V. & A. 599.  
**anointed**, as in the coronation rite. R3 iv. 1. 61.  
**anon**, coming! 1H4 ii. 1. 4; &c.

- another, the other. H5 i. 2. 118.  
**answer**, atone. John iv. 2. 89; encounter. John v. 7. 60; repay. 1H4 i. 3. 135; be ready for battle. H5 ii. 4. 3; defence. 2H6 ii. 1. 200; solve. 3H6 iii. 3. 238; suffer the consequences of. R3 iv. 2. 92.  
**antic**, **antick**, **antique**, buffoon. R2 iii. 2. 162; H5 iii. 2. 32; 1H6 iv. 7. 18; fantastic shape. Luc. 456.  
**an't like**, if it please. 2H6 v. 1. 72.  
**antiquity**, age. 2H4 i. 2. 186.  
**any way**, either way. 1H4 i. 1. 61.  
**apace**, speedily. 1H4 v. 2. 89.  
**ape**, term of endearment. 2H4 ii. 4. 234.  
**a-pieces**, in pieces. H8 v. 4. 75.  
**appaid**, pleased, content. Luc. 914.  
**appalled**, enfeebled. Phoen. 37; made pale. 1H6 i. 2. 48.  
**apparent**, heir-apparent. 3H6 ii. 2. 64; evident, manifest. John iv. 2. 93; R2 i. 1. 13; iv. 1. 124; 1H6 ii. 1. 3; R3 iii. 5. 29.  
**appeach**, impeach. R2 v. 2. 79, 102.  
**appeal**, accuse, esp. of treason. R2 i. 1. 9, 27, 142; i. 3. 21; accusation. R2 i. 1. 4; iv. 1. 45, 79.  
**appearance**, sight. H5 ii. 2. 76.  
**appellant**, the accuser. R2 i. 1. 34; i. 3. 4, 52; iv. 1. 104.  
**appertinent**, belonging, thing belonging. 2H4 i. 2. 174; H5 ii. 2. 87.  
**apple-john**, kind of apple said to keep two years, and to be in perfection when shrivelled and withered. 1H4 iii. 3. 4; 2H6 ii. 4. 2.  
**appliance**, medical apparatus. 2H4 iii. 1. 29.  
**appoint**, equip. John ii. 1. 296; 1H4 i. 2. 176; 3H6 ii. 1. 113.  
**apprehend**, have the idea of. 1H4 i. 3. 209.  
**apprehension**, imagination. R2 i. 3. 300; perception. H5 iii. 7. 139; conception of me. 1H6 ii. 4. 102.  
**apprehensive**, discerning. 2H4 iv. 3. 98.  
**apprenticeshood**, apprenticeship. R2 i. 3. 271.  
**approbation**, proof, sanction. H5 i. 2. 19; H8 i. 2. 71.  
**approve**, prove. R2 i. 3. 112; &c.; confirm. H8 ii. 3. 74; find by experience. Son. 147. 7.  
**apricock**, apricot. R2 iii. 4. 29.  
**apt**, ready. H5 ii. 2. 86.  
**arbitrement**, inquiry. 1H4 iv. 1. 70; decision. H5 iv. 1. 162.  
**arch**, chief, notorious. John iii. 4. 192; R3 iv. 3. 2; H8 iii. 2. 103.  
**argo**, blunder for 'ergo', therefore. 2H8 iv. 2. 80.  
**argosy**, a merchant-ship. 3H6 ii. 6. 36.  
**argue**, show, prove. 1H6 ii. 5. 7; 2H6 iii. 3. 30.  
**argument**, subject, subject-matter, subject for conversation. R2 i. 1. 12; &c.; cause of quarrel. H5 iii. 1. 21; iii. 7. 96; token. 1H6 v. 1. 46; 2H6 i. 2. 82; iii. 1. 241.  
**armado**, fleet. John iii. 4. 2.  
**armed**, spurred. 2H4 i. 1. 4.  
**armour**, suit of armour. 2H4 iv. 2. 29; H5 iii. 7. 1.  
**arms**, coat of arms. 1H6 i. 1. 80; 2H6 iv. 1. 82.  
**arras**, tapestry-hangings. John iv. 1. 2; 1H4 ii. 4. 539.  
**arrive**, arrive at. 3H6 v. 3. 8. Luc. 781.  
**art**, **arts**, learning. Son. 66. 9; 78. 12.  
**Arthur's show**, exhibition of archery by London archers who assumed the names of Arthur and his knights. 2H4 iii. 2. 289.  
**articles**, items, clauses. John ii. 1. 111.  
**articulate**, formulated in articles. 1H4 v. 1. 72.  
**artificer**, craftsman. John iv. 2. 201.  
**as**, as though there. H5 ii. 4. 20; that. 1H6 iii. 1. 16; &c.; as if. H8 i. 1. 10; as for example. Son. 66. 2.  
**askance**, with a side glance. V. & A. 342; Son. 110. 6; turn aside. Luc. 637.  
**Asmath**, name of evil spirit. 2H6 i. 4. 25.  
**aspect**, look, air. John iv. 2. 72; way, direction. 1H4 i. 1. 97.  
**aspire**, mount up. V. & A. 150.  
**assay**, attempt. 2H6 iv. 5. 9; Lucr. 1720; essay, try. 1H4 v. 4. 34; 3H6 i. 4. 118; Lov. C. 156.  
**assemblance**, appearance. 2H4 iii. 2. 269.  
**assurance**, security. 2H4 i. 2. 32.  
**assured**, betrothed. John ii. 1. 535.  
**astonish**, stun. Son. 86. 8.  
**astronomy**, astrology. Son. 14. 2.  
**at**, by. John v. 2. 75; with. H8 v. 1. 132.  
**at a word**, briefly. 2H4 iii. 2. 307.  
**athwart**, in opposition to the expected course. 1H4 i. 1. 36; across. H5 v. chor. 9.  
**atomy**, anatomy, skeleton. 2H4 v. 4. 30.  
**at once**, in a word. 2H6 iii. 1. 66; R3 iii. 4. 1.  
**atone**, reconcile. R2 i. 1. 202.  
**atonement**, agreement, concord. 2H4 iv. 1. 221; R3 i. 3. 36.  
**attach**, arrest. R2 ii. 3. 156; &c.; seize, lay hold of. 2H4 ii. 2. 3; H8 i. 1. 95.  
**attainder**, stain, taint, disgrace. R2 iv. 1. 24; R3 iii. 5. 31; H8 ii. 1. 41.  
**attaint**, fatigue. H5 iv. chor. 39; tainted, disgraced. 1H6 ii. 4. 92; convicted of capital treason. 1H6 ii. 4. 96; 2H6 ii. 4. 59; touched. 1H6 v. 5. 81; infection. V. & A. 741; stain, disgrace. Luc. 825; blame, discredit. Son. 82. 2.

**attainure**, attainder. 2H6 i. 2. 106.  
**attempts**, aims. 1H4 iii. 2. 13.  
**attend**, wait for. R2 i. 3. 116; &c.  
**attorney**, by commission. R3 v. 3. 84.  
**attorneyship**, proxy. 1H6 v. 5. 56.  
**attribution**, praise. 1H4 iv. 1. 3.  
**auditor**, an official who received accounts of money. 1H4 ii. 1. 61.  
**auspicious**, ancient, the bearer of an ensign. H5 iii. 6. 12.  
**avaunt**, be off. John iv. 3. 77; H5 iii. 2. 22; H8 ii. 3. 10.  
**Ave-Mary**, 'Hail Mary!' the angelic salutation of the Virgin, used as a devotional recitation. 2H6 i. 3. 57; 3H6 ii. 1. 162.  
**avoid**, begone. 2H6 i. 4. 41; leave. H8 v. 1. 88.  
**away**, march away. 1H4 iv. 2. 56.  
**away with**, get on with. 2H4 iii. 2. 207.  
**aweless**, fearless. John i. 1. 266; not inspiring awe. R3 ii. 4. 52.  
**awful**, awe-inspiring. R2 iii. 3. 76; &c.  
**awful banks**, respectful bounds. 2H4 iv. 1. 176.  
**awkward**, unfair. H5 ii. 4. 85; adverse. 2H6 iii. 2. 83.  
**a-work**, to work. 2H4 iv. 3. 113.  
**ay, when**, canst tell, expression of contempt. 1H4 ii. 1. 41.  
**back**, their backs. 1H4 i. 2. 185; mount. 1H4 ii. 3. 72.  
**backsword man**, player at singlestick. 2H4 iii. 2. 68.  
**baffle**, disgrace a perjured knight with infamy. R2 i. 1. 170; 1H4 i. 2. 103.  
**bagpipe**, formerly a favourite rural English musical instrument. 1H4 i. 2. 77.  
**bail**, surety. 2H6 v. 1. 120; release. Son. 133. 10.  
**bait**, flap the wings. 1H4 iv. 1. 99; harass. R3 i. 3. 109; fill. H8 v. 4. 80.  
**bald**, paltry. 1H4 i. 3. 65.  
**balk**, heaped up. 1H4 i. 1. 69; miss. Luc. 696.  
**ballad-monger**, ballad-maker, poet. 1H4 iii. 1. 129.  
**balm**, fragrant oil or ointment used for anointing. R2 iii. 2. 55; &c.  
**ban**, curse. 1H6 v. 3. 42; &c.  
**band**, bond. R2 i. 1. 2; &c.  
**ban-dog**, dog tied up to guard a house. 2H6 i. 4. 19.  
**bane**, ruin. 2H6 v. 1. 120; V. & A. 372.  
**banished**, exiled. 1H4 i. 3. 181.  
**bank**, coast, skirt. John v. 2. 104.  
**bankrupt**, at the end of all resources. H5 iv. 2. 43.  
**banquet**, running, hasty refreshment. H8 i. 4. 12.  
**bar**, impediment. H5 i. 2. 35; barrier, place of congress. H5 v. 2. 27;

debar. R3 iii. 2. 54; V. & A. 784; prevent. H8 iii. 2. 17.  
**Barbary hen**, a hen whose feathers are naturally ruffled. 2H4 ii. 4. 99.  
**Barbascon**, name of a fiend. H5 ii. 1. 56.  
**barbed**, protected by armour on the breast and flank. R2 iii. 3. 117; R3 i. 1. 10.  
**bare**, simple self. Lov. C. 95.  
**bare, all**, without addition. Son. 103. 3.  
**barely**, merely. R2 ii. 1. 227.  
**bare-ribbed**, skeleton. John v. 2. 177.  
**barn**, store in a barn. Luc. 859.  
**Barston**, probably Barton in Warwickshire. 2H4 v. 3. 91.  
**Bartholomew boar-pig**, a pig sold at the fair held in Smithfield on August 24 (St. Bartholomew's Day). 2H4 ii. 4. 235.  
**Bartholomew-tide**, the Feast of St. Bartholomew, August 24. H5 v. 2. 319.  
**base**, low. R2 ii. 4. 20; Luc. 664; mean, shameful. 1H4 i. 3. 108; cowardly. 3H6 i. 1. 178.  
**base, bid** of challenge to a chase. V. & A. 303.  
**base court**, lower or outer court of castle. R2 iii. 3. 176, 180.  
**Basilius-like**, the reference is to a passage in a play called *Soliman and Perseda*. John i. 1. 244.  
**basilisk**, fabulous serpent whose mere look was fatal. 2H6 ii. 2. 52; &c.; applied to a kind of cannon. 1H4 ii. 3. 54; H5 v. 2. 17.  
**basket-hilt**, a hilt provided with a curved defence for the hand. 2H4 ii. 4. 131.  
**bastard**, sweet Spanish wine. 1H4 ii. 4. 27, 74.  
**bastinado**, cudgelling. John ii. 1. 463.  
**bat**, staff. Lov. C. 64.  
**bate**, diminish. 1H4 iii. 3. 2; discord. 2H4 ii. 4. 256; strike off. 2H4 Epil. 14; flutter as a hawk. H5 iii. 7. 116.  
**bate-breeding**, strife-breeding. V. & A. 655.  
**bateless**, keen, that cannot be blunted. Luc. 9.  
**battail**, army. R3 v. 3. fl. c.  
**battery**, wound, bruise. V. & A. 426.  
**battle**, army, array of battle. John v. 2. 78; &c.; main body of army. R3 v. 3. 300; martial line. V. & A. 619.  
**bavin**, brushwood. 1H4 iii. 2. 61.  
**bawcock**, fine fellow. H5 iii. 2. 26; iv. 1. 44.  
**bawl out**, bawl out of. 2H4 ii. 2. 23.  
**bay**, the turning to bay of a hunted animal. R2 ii. 3. 128; bark. 2H4 i. 3. 80; close quarters. V. & A. 877.

- beachy**, pebbly, shingly. 2H4 iii. 1. 50.  
**beads**, rosary. R2 iii. 3. 147; prayers. R3 iii. 7. 92.  
**beadsmān**, a pensioner who prays for the soul of his benefactor. R2 iii. 2. 116.  
**beard**, defy. 1H6 i. 3. 44; 2H6 iv. 10. 37.  
**bear hard**, take ill. 1H4 i. 3. 270.  
**bear-herd**, keeper of a bear. 2H4 i. 2. 171.  
**bearing-cloth**, child's christening robe. 1H6 i. 3. 42.  
**bear in hand**, abuse with false pretences. 2H4 i. 2. 36.  
**bear it out**, endure. Son. 116. 12.  
**bear-ward**, keeper of a bear. 2H6 v. 1. 149.  
**beated**, beaten. Son. 62. 10.  
**beaver**, fate-guard of helmet, the helmet itself. 1H4 iv. 1. 104; &c.  
**because**, in order that. 2H6 iii. 2. 99.  
**beck**, beckon. John iii. 3. 13.  
**become**, adorn, grace, do credit to. John v. 1. 35; 1H4 ii. 4. 507; H5 i. 2. 8.  
**become, where is**, what has become of. 3H6 ii. 1. 10; iv. 4. 25.  
**becoming**, action of gracing. Son. 150. 5.  
**becoming of**, making comely. Son. 127. 13.  
**bedlam**, lunatic. John ii. 1. 183; mad, foolish. H5 v. 1. 19; 2H6 iii. 1. 51; v. 1. 132; madhouse (from Hospital of St. Mary of Bethlehem). 2H6 v. 1. 131.  
**beefs**, oxen. 2H4 iii. 2. 337.  
**beetle**, ~~three-man~~, rammer requiring three men to lift. 2H4 i. 2. 230.  
**before**, go on before. 2H4 iv. 1. 228.  
**before-breach**, previous breaking. H5 v. 1. 42.  
**befriend**, benefit. Son. 120. 1.  
**begnaw**, gnaw at. R3 i. 3. 222.  
**beguile**, deceive, cheat. John iii. 1. 99; &c.  
**beguiled**, guilefully disguised. Luc. 1544.  
**beholding**, beholden, indebted. John i. 1. 239; R3 ii. 1. 130; H8 i. 4. 41.  
**behoos**, benefit. 2H6 iv. 7. 77.  
**being**, seeing. 2H4 ii. 1. 187.  
**beldam**, contemptuous term for old woman. John iv. 2. 185; 2H6 i. 4. 43; grandmother. 1H4 iii. 1. 32; Luc. 953.  
**belied**, full of lies. Luc. 1533.  
**belike**, I suppose. 2H4 ii. 2. 9; 3H6 i. 1. 51; perhaps, probably. R3 i. 1. 49.  
**bell, book, and candle**, ritual of excommunication, and generally the pain of spiritual penalties. John iii. 3. 12.  
**bells**, an allusion to small bells used to frighten birds in hawk-ing. 3H6 i. 1. 47.  
**bend**, aim, point. John ii. 37; H5 v. 2. 16; R3 i. 2. 95.  
**bending**, as under a weight. H5 v. 2. 388.  
**bend up**, strain, as a bow. H5 iii. 1. 16.  
**beneficial**, beneficent. H8 i. 1. 56.  
**benefit**, benefaction. 1H6 v. 4. 152.  
**bequeath**, assign. John i. 1. 109; deliver, yield. John v. 7. 104.  
**bereave**, despoil. V. & A. 797.  
**bereft**, removed. Son. 5. 11.  
**bereached**, desired. Lov. C. 207.  
**beseech**, beseech. 2H4 ii. 4. 165.  
**beseeems**, are becoming to. Luc. 277.  
**beshrew**, beshrew me, beshrew my soul, mild oaths. John v. 4. 49; &c.  
**beside**, beyond. 1H4 iii. 1. 178; besides. 1H6 iii. 1. 24.  
**besides his part**, put, put out. Son. 23. 2.  
**beslobber**, besmear. 1H4 ii. 4. 314.  
**besmirch**, sully, dim. H5 iv. 3. 110.  
**bespeak**, speak to. R2 v. 2. 20.  
**best**, bravest. H5 iii. 2. 38.  
**bestained**, stained. John iv. 3. 24.  
**bested**, worse, more hard pressed. 2H6 ii. 3. 56.  
**bestow**, behave. 2H4 ii. 2. 171; repair to your post. H5 iv. 3. 68; place, lodge, shelter. 1H6 iii. 2. 88; Son. 26. 8.  
**bestowed**, spent. 2H4 v. 5. 12.  
**bestrid**, **bestride**, defend a fallen man by standing over his body. 1H4 v. 1. 122; 2H6 v. 3. 9.  
**best**, were, had better. 1H6 v. 3. 83; R3 i. 1. 100.  
**betid**, happened. R2 v. 1. 42.  
**betide on**, happen to. R3 i. 3. 6.  
**betime**, **betimes**, in good time, before it is too late. John iv. 3. 98; 2H6 iii. 1. 285; 3H6 v. 4. 45.  
**bettering**, making of increased value. R3 iv. 4. 122.  
**be-tumbled**, disordered. Luc. 1097.  
**bevel**, aslant. Son. 121. 11.  
**bewray**, betray. 3H6 i. 1. 211; Son. to Music, iv. 54; expose. Luc. 1698.  
**bezonian**, raw recruit, beggarly fellow. 2H4 v. 3. 114; 2H6 iv. 1. 134.  
**bias**, originally the weight of lead let into one side of a bowl to make it turn towards that side. John ii. 1. 574; R2 iii. 4. 5.  
**bickering**, altercation. 2H6 i. 1. 142.  
**bid**, gave. R3 iv. 4. 305.  
**bide**, come to, endure. 1H4 iv. 4. 10.  
**biding**, dwelling. Luc. 550.  
**big**, pregnant. 2H4 Ind. 13.  
**bigamy**, marriage with one who had been married before. R3 iii. 7. 188.  
**biggins**, night-cap. 2H4 iv. 5. 28.  
**bills**, halberds. R2 iii. 2. 118; 2H6 iv. 7. 13; promissory notes. 2H6 iv. 7. 125.

**bird**, young of any bird. 1H4 v. 1. 69.

**blabbing**, blurring out secrets. 2H6 iv. 1. 1.

**blank**, blank charter, document with spaces left blank, to be filled up at the pleasure of the person to whom it is given. R2 i. 4. 48; ii. 1. 251.

**blanks**, blank pages. Son. 77. 10.

**blasts**, blows. Luc. 49.

**blaze**, burn with passion. 3H6 v. 4. 71.

**blazon**, set forth. Lov. C. 217.

**bleed**, let blood. R2 i. 1. 157; be bled. 2H4 iv. 1. 57.

**bleach**, side-glance. Son. 110. 7.

**blend**, blended. Lov. C. 215.

**blistered**, puffed. H8 i. 3. 31.

**blood**, temperament, passion. H5 ii. 2. 133; Son. 109. 10; Lov. C. 162; full vigour. 1H6 iv. 2. 48.

**blood**, lusty, roisterer. John ii. 1. 461.

**bloods**, men of fire. John ii. 1. 278.

**blood**, true, the blood of true men. John iii. 4. 147.

**bloody**, fierce, blood-thirsty. 2H4 iv. 1. 34.

**blot**, disfigurement. John iii. 1. 45.

**blow us**, blow us up. H8 v. 4. 45.

**blue**, livid. Luc. 1587.

**blue-bottle**, nick-name for a man in a dark-blue uniform, as a beadle. 2H4 v. 4. 21.

**blue-cap**, Scotchman. 1H4 ii. 4. 362.

**blunt**, dull witted. 2H4 Ind. 18; rough, savage. 3H6 iv. 8. 2; V. & A. 884; Luc. 1504; clumsy. Son. 103. 7.

**bob**, buffet. R3 v. 3. 335.

**bodge**, do clumsily. 3H6 i. 4. 19.

**boisterous**, painfully rough. John iv. 1. 95.

**bold**, boldly. R2 i. 3. 3.

**bollen**, swollen. Luc. 1417.

**bolted**, sifted. H5 ii. 2. 137.

**bolter**, piece of cloth used for sifting. 1H4 iii. 3. 73.

**bolting-hutch**, hutch in which meal was sifted. 1H4 ii. 4. 459.

**bombard**, leathern jug or bottle for liquor. 1H4 ii. 4. 460; H8 v. 4. 80.

**bombast**, padding, stuffing. 1H4 ii. 4. 331.

**bona-roba**, wench. 2H4 iii. 2. 25.

**bond**, claim, qwnership. Luc. 136; Son. 87. 4.

**bones**, ten, fingers. 2H6 i. 3. 191.

**bonnet**, head-covering, hat, cap. R2 i. 4. 31; H5 iv. 1. 212.

**book**, written document. H4 iii. 1. 224, 268; register. H5 iv. 7. 72; learning. 2H6 iv. 7. 71; H8 i. 1. 122;

**note-book**. R3 iii. 5. 26.

**boot**, avail. R2 i. 1. 164; iii. 4. 18; 1H6 iv. 6. 52; R3 v. 3. 302<sup>4</sup> booty. 1H4 ii. 1. 85; H5 i. 2. 194; put on one's boots. 2H4 v. 8. 136.

**bootless**, profitless. 1H4 iii. 1. 68; V. & A. 422; useless, uselessly. H5 iii. 3. 24; &c.

**bore**, to trick, cheat. H8 i. 1<sup>st</sup> 128.

**borne**, overborne, covered. 2H4 ii. 4. 376.

**borrowed**, taken, not his own. John i. 1. 4.

**bosom**, secret counsels. 1H4 i. 3. 266.

**bosom up**, keep in mind. H8 i. 1. 112.

**bots**, parasitical worms in horses. 1H4 ii. 1. 10.

**bottled**, bloated. R3 i. 5. 242; iv. 4. 81.

**bottom**, ship. John ii. 1. 73; H5 iii. chor. 12; low-lying land. 1H4 iii. 1. 109.

**bottomy-grass**, grass growing in low-lying land. V. & A. 236.

**bought and sold**, betrayed, deceived. John v. 4. 10; 1H6 iv. 4. 13; R3 v. 3. 306.

**bound**, boundary. John iii. 1. 23; 1H6 i. 2. 54; rebound. R2 i. 2. 58; cause to leap. H5 v. 2. 144.

**bounden**, indebted. John iii. 3. 29.

**bow**, bend. 1H6 iv. 5. 29.

**bowed**, bent. H8 ii. 3. 36.

**bower**, dwelling. Son. 127. 7.

**brabblor**, brawler. John v. 2. 162.

**brach**, bitch-hound. 1H4 iii. 1. 239.

**brain-pan**, skull. 2H6 iv. 10. 11.

**brainsick**, foolish, frantic. 1H6 iv. 1. 111.

**brake**, clump of bushes. H8 i. 2. 75; V. & A. 237, 876.

**brave**, bravado. John v. 2. 159; menace, defy. John iv. 2. 243; &c.; fine, finely appointed, beautiful. 1H4 i. 2. 65; H5 iii. chor. 5; Son. 12. 2.

**bravely**, making a fine show. H5 iv. 3. 69.

**bravery**, splendour. Son. 34. 4.

**braving**, defiant. R2 ii. 5. 112; 143; challenging. Luc. 40.

**brawn**, boar. 1H4 ii. 4. 111; 2H4 i. 1. 19.

**break**, am bankrupt. 2H4 Epil. 12.

**break up**, break open. 1H6 i. 3. 13; 2H6 i. 4. 20.

**break with**, broach the subject to. John iv. 2. 227; 1H4 iii. 1. 143; H8 v. 1. 47.

**breath**, breathing time. R2 iii. 2. 164; H5 ii. 4. 145.

**breath**, give breathing space to. 2H4 i. 1. 38.

**breathers**, living beings. Son. 81. 12.

**breathing**, beginning of the word upon a breath. Luc. 1720.

**breathing-while**, time of a breath. V. & A. 1142.

**bred**, fostered. Son. 112. 13.

**brewer's horse**, a term of contempt (for a dull-headed beast). 1H4 iii. 3. 9.

bridge, i.e. London Bridge. R3 iii. 2. 70.  
 brief, epitome. John ii. 1. 103; ripe, prevalent. John iv. 3. 158; in short. John v. 6. 18; letter. 1H4 iv. 4. 1; speedy. R3 ii. 2. 43.  
 bring, accompany. R2 i. 3. 304; H5 ii. 3. 2.  
 brisk, smartly-dressed. spruce. 1H4 i. 3. 54.  
 broached, thrust through. H5 v. chor. 32; pricked on. 3H6 ii. 2. 159.  
 broken, broken up, done away with. R3 ii. 2. 117.  
 broken music, music arranged for different instruments. H5 v. 2. 249.  
 broke out, came out. John v. 6. 24.  
 broker, agent, go-between. John ii. 1. 568; 2H6 i. 2. 100; 3H6 i. 1. 63.  
 broking down, acting as a broker. R2 ii. 1. 293.  
 brooch, jewel. R2 v. 5. 66.  
 brooded, having a brood to watch over; or, brooding. John iii. 3. 52.  
 brook, like. R2 iii. 2. 2; endure. 2H6 v. 1. 92; R3 i. 1. 125.  
 brow, projecting edge of the wall. John ii. 1. 38; front. 2H6 v. 3. 4.  
 brown bill, halberd. browned to preserve from rust. 2H6 iv. 10. 12.  
 bruised, battered. H5 v. chor. 18.  
 bruising, wounding. 1H4 iii. 2. 105.  
 bruising irons, wounding swords. R3 v. 3. 111.  
 bruit, rumour. 2H4 i. 1. 114; 1H6 ii. 3. 68; 3H6 iv. 7. 64.  
 brush, hostile encounter. 2H6 v. 3. 3.  
 bubukles, confusion of bubo (inflamed swellings) and carbuncle (red pimples). H5 iii. 6. 103.  
 buck, linen for washing. 2H6 iv. 2. 49.  
 buckle, bend under stress. 2H4 i. 1. 141; engage, grapple. 1H6 i. 2. 95; iv. 2. 5; 3H6 i. 4. 50.  
 buckler, shield, defend. 2H6 iii. 2. 216; 3H6 iii. 3. 99.  
 buckram, coarse linen or cloth. 1H4 i. 2. 180; ii. 4. 198; 2H6 iv. 7. 25.  
 buff jerkin, a coat of buff leather worn by soldiers. 1H4 i. 2. 47.  
 bug, bugbear. 3H6 v. 2. 2.  
 building, build. Son. 80. 12.  
 bulk, body. R3 i. 4. 40; Luc. 467.  
 bull-bowes, the flesh of bullocks, beef. 1H6 i. 2. 9.  
 bully, fine fellow. H5 iv. 1. 48.  
 bunch-backed, hunch-backed. R3 i. 3. 246.  
 bung, pick-pocket. 2H4 ii. 4. 119.  
 burdened, the burden of. R3 iv. 4. 111.  
 burgonet, close-fitting helmet. 2H6 v. 1. 200.  
 burnet, a plant common in meadows. H5 v. 2. 49.  
 burning, on fire. 1H4 iii. 3. 210.  
 burst, had broken. 2H4 iii. 2. 332.

burthenwise, as if it were a burthen or refrain. Luc. 1153.  
 bushy, bushy. 1H4 v. 1. 2.  
 buss, kiss. John iii. 4. 35; 2H4 ii. 4. 275.  
 bustle, bestir oneself. R3 i. 1. 151.  
 but, except. R2 iv. 1. 123; &c.  
 but now, just now. R2 iii. 2. 76.  
 but that, only that one. 2H6 ii. 1. 99.  
 buxom, jolly, gay. H5 iii. 6. 26.  
 buy, atone for. 3H6 v. 1. 68.  
 buzz, whisper. R2 ii. 1. 26; 2H6 i. 2. 99; H3 ii. 1. 14.  
 by, by reason of, consequent upon. R2 ii. 1. 52; 2H4 iv. 5. 85; concerning. R2 ii. 1. 214; according to. 2H6 iii. 1. 243; near, close at hand. R3 iv. 2. 100.  
 by and by, immediately. 2H6 ii. 1. 139.  
 by-drinking, drinking between meals. 1H4 iii. 3. 76.  
 by that, on that subject. 2H6 ii. 1. 16.  
 by this, by this time. R2 ii. 3. 16.  
 by yea and nay, a mild imprecation. 2H4 iii. 2. 10.  
 cabinet, lodging, nest. V. & A. 854.  
 cacodemon, evil spirit. R3 i. 3. 144.  
 caddis, worsted yarn. 1H4 ii. 4. 71.  
 cade, small barrel. 2H6 iv. 2. 34.  
 cage, lock-up. 2H6 iv. 2. 53.  
 caiffie, vile. R2 i. 2. 53; wretch. R3 iv. 4. 101.  
 caliver, light musket. 1H4 iv. 2. 19; 2H4 iii. 2. 280.  
 call, decoy bird. John iii. 4. 174.  
 callet, callot, low woman, scold. 2H6 i. 3. 84; 3H6 i. 2. 145.  
 call in, withdraw. R2 ii. 1. 203.  
 calm, blunder for 'qualm'. 2H4 ii. 4. 38.  
 calmed, becalmed. 2H6 iv. 9. 33.  
 Cambyzes' vein, a ranting style. 1H4 ii. 4. 393.  
 came, became. 2H4 ii. 3. 57.  
 camlet, a name originally for a costly Eastern stuff, afterwards applied to imitations and substitutes. H8 v. 4. 88.  
 can, knows. Phoen. 14.  
 canaries, canary, a light sweet wine from the Canary Islands. 2H4 ii. 4. 27.  
 candle-mine, magazine of tallow. 2H4 ii. 4. 310.  
 candy, sugared. 1H4 i. 3. 251.  
 canker, corroding evil. John v. 2. 14; dog-rose. 1H4 i. 3. 176; canker-worm. 1H4 iv. 2. 29; &c.  
 canker-bloom, dog-rose. Son. 54. 5.  
 cankered, venomous, malignant, wicked. John ii. 1. 194; 1H4 i. 3. 137; polluted. 2H4 iv. 5. 70.  
 cannibal, blunder for Hannibal. 2H4 ii. 4. 170.  
 canopy, cover as with a canopy. Son. 12. 6.



**candlestick**, ? contracted form of 'candlestick'. 1H4 iii. 1. 180.

**cantle**, section, segment. 1H4 iii. 1. 101.

**canvass**, toss in a canvas sheet. 2H4 ii. 4. 229; 1H6 i. 3. 36.

**cap**, a cardinal's hat. 1H6 v. 1. 33.

**capable**, intelligent. R3 iii. 1. 155.

**capable of**, susceptible to. John iii. 1. 12; 2H4 i. 1. 172; H8 v. 3. 11.

**caparison**, harness, put trappings on. R3 v. 3. 290.

**caper**, dance, jump. 1H4 iii. 2. 63; 2H6 iii. 1. 365.

**capital**, chief. H5 v. 2. 96.

**capitulate**, draw up articles of agreement. 1H4 iii. 2. 120.

**captain**, chief, principal. Son. 52. 8; 66. 12.

**captivate**, captive. 1K6 ii. 3. 12; take captive. 3H6 i. 4. 115.

**captived**, taken captive. H5 ii. 4. 55.

**carat**, a measure used in stating the fineness of gold. 2H4 iv. 5. 140.

**caraways**, sweetmeat containing caraway seeds. 2H4 v. 3. 3.

**carbonado**, fish, flesh, or fowl scored across, and grilled or broiled upon the coals. 1H4 v. 3. 59.

**carconet**, necklaco. Son. 52. 8.

**card**, stir together, mix. 1H4 iii. 2. 62.

**card, cooling**, ? a term of some unknown game; applied to anything that 'cools' a person's passion or enthusiasm. 1H6 v. 3. 84.

**career**, horse's charge in a combat. R2 i. 2. 49.

**careers, passes**, ? indulges in sallies of wit. H5 ii. 1. 128.

**careful**, anxious. R2 ii. 2. 75; H5 iv. 1. 236; R3 i. 3. 83.

**care-tuned**, tuned to care. R2 iii. 2. 92.

**carnal**, carnivorous, bloody, murderous. R3 iv. 4. 58.

**carried**, carried on, managed. H8 i. 1. 100.

**carry coals**, to do dirty or degrading work, to submit to humiliation or insult. H5 iii. 2. 50.

**carry-tale**, a talebearer, telltale. V. & A. 657.

**cart**, used for conveying criminals to the gallows and instead of a drop. 1H4 ii. 4. 507.

**case**, put on a mask. 1H4 ii. 2. 52; set of four, as musical instruments. H5 iii. 2. 4; condition. Son. 108. 9; dress. Lov. C. 116.

**cask**, cask. 2H6 iii. 2. 409.

**casque**, helmet. R2 i. 3. 81; H5 i. chor. 13.

**cast**, calculated. 2H4 i. 1. 168.

**casted**, cast off. H5 iv. 1. 23.

**cast his utmost sum**, closed the account. Son. 49. 3.

**caterpillar**, extortioner. 1H4 ii. 2. 85.

**cates**, delicacies. 1H4 iii. 1. 162; 1H6 ii. 3. 79.

**cautel**, crafty device. Lov. C. 303.

**caution**, act of heedfulness. 1H6 ii. 4. 184.

**cavaleiro**, gallant. 2H4 v. 3. 59.

**cease**, cause to cease. 2H6 v. 2. 45.

**ceinture**, girdle. John iv. 3. 155.

**censer, thin man in a**, figure in low relief on the lid of vessels in which perfumes were burned. 2H4 v. 4. 20.

**censure**, judge, estimate. John ii. 1. 328 &c.; judgement, opinion. 1H6 ii. 3. 10; &c.

**censure well**, approve. 2H6 iii. 1. 275.

**certes**, certainly. H8 i. 1. 48.

**cess**, assessment, estimation. 1H4 ii. 1. 1.

**chace**, term at tennis. H5 i. 2. 266.

**chafe**, heat, warm. 2H6 iii. 2. 141.

**chafed**, enraged. John iii. 1. 259; 3H6 ii. 5. 126; H8 i. 1. 123.

**chair**, throne. R3 iv. 4. 470.

**chair-days**, old age, when one sits more than walks. 2H6 v. 2. 48.

**challenge**, claim. R2 ii. 3. 134; 1H6 v. 4. 153; 2H6 iv. 6. 6; objection. H8 ii. 4. 75.

**challenger**, claimant. H5 ii. 4. 95.

**chamber**, province or city directly subject to the king; royal residence. R3 iii. 1. 1.

**chambers**, ordinance used to fire salutes. 2H4 ii. 4. 53; H8 i. 4. 49 (stage direction).

**chameleon**, a small reptile, distinguished by its power of changing the colour of the skin. 3H6 iii. 2. 191.

**champaign**, stretch of open country. Luc. 1247.

**chance**, happens it. 2H4 iv. 4. 20; H5 v. chor. 40.

**changing**, exchanging. 1H4 i. 3. 101.

**channel**, wear into channels. 1H4 i. 1. 7; gutter. 2H4 ii. 1. 48; 2H6 ii. 2. 141.

**chaps**, jaws. John ii. 1. 352; 2H6 iii. 1. 259; wrinkles. Luc. 1452.

**characters**, written characters. R3 iii. 1. 81; figures. Lov. C. 16.

**charge**, cost, expense. John i. 1. 49; &c.; baggage. 1H4 ii. F. 49; command. 1H4 ii. 4. 556; R3 v. 3. 25;

attack. 2H4 ii. 4. 122; Son. 70. 10; burden. H5 i. 2. 15; blame. P.P. xiv. 14.

**charge, given in**, commanded. R3 i. 1. 85.

**charge, in**, ready for the charge. 2H4 iv. 1. 120.

**charges, be at**, bear the expense. R3 i. 2. 257.

**charity, my**, the charity shown to me. R3 i. 3. 277.

**Charles' Wain**, seven bright stars in Ursa Major. 1H4 ii. 1. 2.

**charm**, silence. 2H6 iv. 1. 64; 3H6 v. 5. 31.  
**charming**, exercising magic power. 1H6 v. 3. 2.  
**charneco**, kind of wine. 2H6 ii. 3. 63.  
**chary**, charily, carefully. Son. 22. 11.  
**chase**, object of pursuit. 3H6 ii. 4. 12.  
**chat**, talk. 1H4 i. 3. 65.  
**cheater**, decoy-duck, or other animal used as decoy. 2H4 ii. 4. 98; escheator, officer of exchequer. 2H4 ii. 4. 102.  
**check**, reprove. R2 v. 5. 46; 2H4 i. 2. 197; 2H6 i. 2. 54; reproof. 2H4 iv. 3. 31; rebuff. Son. 58. 7.  
**cheer**, countenance. 1H6 i. 2. 48; Luc. 24.  
**cheerly**, cheerfully. R2 i. 3. 66; &c.  
**chest**, treasury. Son. 65. 10.  
**cheveril**, flexible, elastic (as kid-leather). H8 ii. 3. 32.  
**chewet**, chough; chatterer. 1H4 v. 1. 29.  
**chid**, driven by scolding. 3H6 ii. 5. 17.  
**chide**, used of brawling streams. &c. 1H4 iii. 1. 45; H5 ii. 4. 125; quarrel. V. & A. 46.  
**chiding**, resounding. H8 iii. 2. 198.  
**choler**, anger. R2 i. 1. 153; H5 iv. 7. 178.  
**chopped**, chapped. 2H4 iii. 2. 284; Son. 62. 10.  
**chopping**, jerky, abrupt. R2 v. 3. 123.  
**chops**, a name for a person with fat or bloated cheeks. 1H4 i. 2. 136.  
**christen**, Christian. 1H4 ii. 4. 7.  
**christendom**, by my, as I am a Christian! John iv. 1. 16.  
**christom**, a child in its christening-robe, under a month old. H5 ii. 2. 12.  
**chuck**, a familiar term. H5 iii. 2. 26.  
**chuff**, churl. 1H4 ii. 2. 91.  
**churl**, miser. Son. 1. 12.  
**churlish**, rough. John ii. 1. 76; John ii. 1. 519; 2H4 i. 3. 62.  
**Ciicester**, Cirencester. R2 v. 6. 3.  
**'cide**, decide. Son. 46. 9.  
**cipher**, express. Luc. 207, 1396; decipher. Luc. 811.  
**circle**, crown, coronet, diadem. John v. 1. 2; circuit or compass of a plate. John v. 2. 136.  
**circuit**, circlet, diadem. 2H6 iii. 1. 352; enclosure. V. & A. 230.  
**circumstance**, details. John ii. 1. 77; 1H6 i. 1. 109; V. & A. 844; ado, detail. 2H6 i. 1. 103; something adventitious or casual. 2H6 v. 2. 39; circumstantial evidence. R3 i. 2. 77.  
**cital**, reproof, impeachment. 1H4 v. 2. 61.  
**cite**, incite, urge. 2H6 iii. 2. 281;

call, bring. R3 i. 4. 14; summon. 3H6 ii. 1. 34; H8 iv. 1. 29.  
**civil**, orderly, decorous. 2H4 iv. 1. 42; Lov. C. 298.  
**clap**, put, shut. R2 iii. 2. 119.  
**clap** **the clout**, hit the mark. 2H4 iii. 2. 50.  
**clap** **to**, shut, slam. 1H4 ii. 4. 279.  
**clap** **up**, settle hastily. John ii. 1. 235; imprison. 2H6 i. 4. 51.  
**clean**, **cleanly**, completely. R2 iii. 1. 10; V. & A. 694; Son. 75. 10.  
**clearly**, completely. John v. 5. 7.  
**cleft**, divided, twofold. Lov. C. 293.  
**clepe**, call by name of. V. & A. 995.  
**clerk**, scholar. H8 ii. 2. 91.  
**clerkly**, scholarly. 2H6 iii. 1. 179.  
**climate**, region of the sky. John ii. 1. 344; region of the earth. R2 iv. 1. 130.  
**clime**, climate, land. 2H6 iii. 2. 84.  
**clinquant**, glittering. H8 i. 1. 19.  
**clip**, clasp, embrace. John v. 2. 34; 2H6 iv. 1. 6; V. & A. 600.  
**clip** **in**, encompass. 1H4 iii. 1. 44.  
**clipper**, mutilator of current coin, by fraudulently paring the edges. H5 iv. 1. 234.  
**cloister**, become a nun. R2 v. 1. 23.  
**close**, **closely**, secret, secretly. John iv. 1. 133; &c.; conclusion of musical phrase, theme, or movement. R2 ii. 1. 12; H5 i. 2. 182; grapple, hand-to-hand fight. 1H4 i. 1. 13; make peace. 2H4 ii. 4. 338; strictly confined. R3 iv. 2. 52.  
**closet**, private apartment. John iv. 2. 267.  
**closure**, limit, circuit. R3 iii. 3. 10; enclosure. V. & A. 782.  
**cloudy**, having gloomy looks. 1H4 iii. 2. 83; R3 ii. 2. 112.  
**clout**, mark shot at in archery. 2H4 iii. 2. 50.  
**clouted shoon**, hob-nailed boots. 2H6 iv. 2. 184.  
**clouts**, **babe** **of**, rag-doll. John iii. 4. 58.  
**cloy**, gratify beyond desire. H5 ii. 2. 9.  
**coast**, proceed circuitously as a vessel hugging the shore. H8 iii. 2. 38; V. & A. 870.  
**coat**, coat of arms. R2 iii. 1. 24; &c.  
**cock**, cock-crow. 1H4 ii. 1. 19.  
**cock** **and** **pie**, an asseveration, meaning possibly, 'cock, God, and pie', the ordinal of the R. C. Church. 2H4 v. 1. 1.  
**cockatrice**, serpent, said to kill by its mere glance, and to be hatched from a cock's egg. R3 iv. 1. 54; Luc. 540.  
**cockered**, pampered, indulged. John v. 1. 70.  
**cock-shut** **time**, twilight (either when poultry are shut up, or when woodcocks 'shoot', i. e. fly). R3 v. 3. 70.  
**cog**, cheat. R3 i. 3. 48.

**significance**, device or mark by which a person is known or distinguished; badge. 1H6 ii. 4. 108.  
**coherence**, agreement. 2H4 v. 1. 67.  
**coll**, fuss, ado. John ii. 1. 165.  
**cold**, unimpassioned. 2H4 v. 2. 98; coldness. H8 iv. 2. 98.  
**coldest**, least encouraging. 2H4 v. 2. 31.  
**cold fault**, cold or lost scent in hunting. V. & A. 604.  
**collect**, conclude, deduce, infer. 2H6 iii. 1. 35.  
**collop**, slice of meat. 1H6 v. 4. 18.  
**colour**, give a specious appearance to. 1H4 i. 3. 109; excuse, 2H4 i. 2. 248; pretence. 2H4 v. 3. 88; 1H6 ii. 4. 34; pretext. 2H6 iii. 1. 236; H8 i. 1. 178; Luc. 267.  
**colours**, fear no, fear no foe. 2H4 v. 5. 91.  
**colt**, befool, cheat, 'take in'. 1H4 ii. 2. 37.  
**combustions**, combustible. V. & A. 1162.  
**come**, you, wherein you come. R2 i. 1. 26.  
**come near**, touch. 1H4 i. 2. 13.  
**come o'er**, taunt. H5 i. 2. 267.  
**come off**, get off, escape. H8 iii. 2. 23.  
**comfit-maker**, sweetmeat-maker. 1H4 iii. 1. 251.  
**comfortable**, comforting, consolatory. R2 ii. 2. 76; Luc. 164.  
**coming in**, income. H5 iv. 1. 248.  
**commandment**, command. 2H4 iii. 2. 26; v. 3. 139.  
**commandment on**, command over. John iv. 2. 92.  
**commandments**, ten, ten finger-nails. 2H6 i. 3. 143.  
**commence**, make a start on. 2H4 iv. 3. 115.  
**commend**, greeting. R2 iii. 1. 38; iii. 3. 126; commit. R2 iii. 3. 116; express to you. H8 ii. 3. 61; present as worthy. Luc. 436.  
**comment**, enlarge. Son. 89. 2.  
**commission**, warrant. H8 i. 2. 20; V. & A. 568.  
**commit**, consign to prison. 2H4 v. 2. 83.  
**commix**, blend. Lov. C. 28.  
**commixture**, mixture, compound. 3H6 ii. 6. 6.  
**commodity**, profit. John ii. 1. 573; 2H4 i. 2. 251; supply. 1H4 i. 2. 85; merchandize. 2H6 iv. 7. 125.  
**common-hackneyed**, ordinarily seen. 1H4 iii. 2. 40.  
**commotion**, tumult, rebellion. 2H4 iv. 1. 36; 2H6 iii. 1. 358.  
**community**, ordinary occurrence. 1H4 iii. 2. 77.  
**compact**, made up of. V. & A. 149.  
**companies**, company. John iv. 2. 167; H5 i. 1. 55.  
**companion**, fellow. R2 i. 3. 93; 2H4 ii. 4. 123; 2H6 iv. 10. 30.

**compare**, comparison. Luc. 40; Son. 21. 5.  
**compare between**, make comparison between [thee and him]. R2 ii. 1. 188.  
**compass**, bounds, moderation. 1H4 iii. 3. 19; obtain. H5 iv. 1. 299.  
**compassed**, curved, arched. V. & A. 272.  
**compassionate**, be, display sorrow. R2 i. 3. 174.  
**compelled**, taken by force. H5 iii. 6. 109; thrust on one by force. H8 ii. 3. 87.  
**competitor**, confederate. R3 iv. 4. 505.  
**compile**, compose, especially a work of definite form, as a sonnet. Son. 73. 9.  
**complain**, bewail. R2 iii. 4. 13; Luc. 1839.  
**complement**, observance. H5 ii. 2. 134.  
**complete**, fully-endowed, accomplished. H8 i. 2. 118.  
**complices**, accomplices. R2 ii. 3. 165; 2H4 i. 1. 163.  
**complot**, plot. 2H6 iii. 1. 147; R3 iii. 1. 192.  
**composition**, settlement, agreement. John ii. 2. 561; constitution of body. R2 ii. 1. 73.  
**compound**, agree. John ii. 1. 281; come to terms with. H5 iv. 6. 33.  
**con**, get by heart. H5 iii. 6. 76.  
**concealments**, secret knowledge. 1H4 iii. 1. 166.  
**conceit**, intelligence, understanding. John iii. 3. 50; 1H6 v. 5. 15; P.P. iv. 9; fancy, invention. R2 ii. 2. 33; 1H6 iv. 1. 102; conception. R3 iii. 4. 49; &c.  
**conceited**, said. 2H4 v. 1. 36; imaginative. Luc. 1371.  
**concert**, combination of voices. 2H6 iii. 2. 327.  
**conclave**, the body of cardinals. H8 ii. 2. 99.  
**conclude**, settle the matter. John i. 1. 127; R2 i. 1. 156.  
**concluded**, finally settled. R3 i. 3. 15.  
**conclusion**, experiment. Luc. 1160.  
**condition**, disposition, character. 1H4 i. 3. 6; H5 v. 2. 298; R3 iv. 4. 168; official capacity. 2H4 i. 2. 3. 83; rank. H5 iv. 3. 63; 2H6 v. 1. 64.  
**condole**, sympathize with. H5 ii. 2. 129.  
**conduct**, escort, guard, conductor. John i. 1. 29; &c.; that which guides. Luc. 313.  
**confederacy**, conspiracy. H8 i. 2. 3.  
**confident**, sure of your secrecy. H8 ii. 1. 146.  
**confirmed**, strengthened. R3 iv. 4. 172.  
**confirmity**, blunder for 'infirmity'. 2H4 ii. 4. 53.  
**confound**, destroy, ruin. John v. 7.

58; &c.; spend, exhaust. 1H4 i. 3.  
 100; 2H4 iv. 4. 41.  
**confusion**, destruction. John ii. 1.  
 339.  
**congest**, mass. Lov. C. 253.  
**congregating**, agree together, accord. H5 i. 2. 182.  
**congress**, greet mutually. H5 v. 2. 31.  
**conjunction**, association. 1H4 iv. 1. 37; combination. 2H4 v. 1. 71;  
 union, an astrological term used of two planets in proximity. H8 iii. 2. 45.  
**conjurat**, incantation. R2 iii. 2. 23; 2H6 i. 2. 99.  
**conjure**, call upon, entreat. John iv. 2. 269.  
**conscience**, mind. H5 iv. 2. 120.  
**consecrate**, consecrated. Son. 74. 6.  
**consent**, agree. 2H4 i. 3. 52; 1H6 i. 1. 5; agreement, harmony. 2H4 v. 1. 72; H5 i. 2. 181; sympathy. H5 ii. 2. 22.  
**consent, by my**, in my opinion. 1H6 i. 2. 44.  
**consequence, the, that** which is to follow. R3 iv. 4. 6.  
**consequently**, as a consequence. John iv. 2. 240.  
**considerance**, consideration. 2H4 v. 2. 98.  
**considerate**, thoughtf. R3 iv. 2. 30.  
**considering**, consideration. H8 ii. 4. 183; iii. 2. 136.  
**consign**, subscribe. 2H4 v. ii. 143; H5 v. 2. 80, 310.  
**consist**, be based. 2H4 iv. 1. 187.  
**consorted**, associated, leagued. R2 v. 3. 138; v. 6. 15; R3 iii. 4. 70.  
**constant**, steadfast. H5 ii. 2. 133.  
**contagious**, foul, hurtful. 1H4 i. 2. 199; 2H4 v. 5. 34.  
**contemn**, contemptuously refuse. V. & A. 205.  
**contemptible**, mean, low. 1H6 i. 2. 75.  
**contemptuous**, despicable. 2H6 i. 3. 84.  
**content**, satisfy. R3 iii. 2. 110.  
**contents**, things treated of in writings. Son. 55. 3.  
**continually**, blunder for 'continuously'. 2H4 ii. 1. 26.  
**contract**, contracted. R3 iii. 7. 178.  
**contracted**, engaged to be married. 1H4 iv. 2. 216; Son. 1. 5.  
**contrarious**, contrary. 1H4 v. 1. 32.  
**contrariouly**, diversely. H5 i. 2. 208.  
**contrive**, plan, premeditate. H5 iv. 1. 164; Lov. C. 243.  
**control**, check, restraint. John i. 1. 17; overpower. Luc. 448, 678.  
**controller**, one who directs and manages. 2H6 iii. 2. 207.  
**controlling**, overpowering. Son. 20. 7.

**controlment**, restraint. John i. 1. 20.  
**contumeliously**, despitefully. 1H6 i. 3. 58.  
**convenient**, in keeping. 2H6 i. 4. 8.  
**conventicle**, secret assembly. 2H6 iii. 1. 163.  
**conversation**, behaviour, talk. 2H4 v. 5. 103; connexion. R3 iii. 5. 30.  
**conversion**, change of rank. John i. 1. 189.  
**convert**, turn, change. R2 v. 1. 66; &c.; turn away. Son. 7. 11; 11. 4.  
**convertite**, convert. John v. 1. 19; Luc. 743.  
**convoy**, carry off. R2 iv. 1. 316; 3H6 iv. 6. 81; pass oneself off. H5 i. 2. 74.  
**conveyance**, dishonest practices. 1H6 i. 3. 2; 3H6 iii. 3. 160; riddance. R3 iv. 4. 284.  
**conveyer**, thief, cheat. R2 iv. 1. 317.  
**convict**, convicted. R3 i. 4. 192.  
**convicted**, defeated. John iii. 4. 2.  
**convoy**, travelling-money. H5 iv. 3. 37.  
**cony**, rabbit. V. & A. 687.  
**cooling card**, a term of some unknown game applied to anything that 'cools' a person's enthusiasm. 1H6 v. 3. 84.  
**coop**, shut up. John ii. 1. 25.  
**cope**, encounter. H8 i. 2. 78; V. & A. 888; Luc. 99.  
**copemate**, partner, associate. Luc. 925.  
**copy**, pattern, example. Son. 11. 14.  
**coranto**, a kind of dance. H5 iii. 5. 33.  
**Corinthian**, a wealthy 'man about town'. 1H4 ii. 4. 12.  
**cormorant**, insatiably greedy person or thing. R2 ii. 1. 38.  
**cornet**, company of cavalry. 1H6 iv. 3. 25.  
**corporate**, blunder for 'corporal'. 2H4 iii. 2. 228.  
**corpse**, corpses. 1H4 i. 1. 43; 2H4 i. 1. 192.  
**correct**, perfect. Son. 111. 12.  
**correction**, setting right, punishment. R2 iv. 1. 77; 2H4 v. 1. 111; Son. 111. 12.  
**correctioner**, one who administers correction, name applied to a beadle. 2H4 v. 4. 22.  
**corrival**, rival. 1H4 i. 3. 207; compeer, partner. 1H4 iv. 4. 31.  
**corroborate**, ? a nonsense word. H5 ii. 1. 126.  
**corrosive**, fret. 1H6 iii. 3. 3.  
**corruptibly**, so as to be corrupted. John v. 7. 2.  
**corse**, corpse. R3 i. 2. 32.  
**corrive**, remedy causing pain. 2H6 iii. 2. 403.  
**cost**, that on which money, &c., is expended. 2H4 i. 3. 60; Son. 64. 2: cause the loss of. 3H6 i. 1. 268.

**costard**, head. R3 i. 4. 156.  
**costermonger**, a term of contempt. 2H4 i. 2. 171.  
**co-supreme**, joint ruler. Phoen. 51.  
**couch**, lie down. 1H4 iii. 1. 152; bow down in submission. H5 iv. 2. 37; cause to cower. Luc. 47.  
**count**, account. R3 iv. 1. 46; Son. 2. 11.  
**countenance**, patronage, favour. 1H4 i. 2. 29; 1H4 iii. 2. 65; bearing, conduct. 1H4 v. 1. 69.  
**counterscheck**, check to oppose the course of anything. John ii. 1. 224.  
**counterfeit**, spurious coin. John iii. 1. 99; 1H4 ii. 4. 502; dissembling. H5 v. 1. 71; image, portrait. Luc. 1269; Son. 16. 8; 53. 5.  
**countermand**, revoke the orders of. Luc. 276.  
**counterpart**, exact copy. Son. 84. 11.  
**countries**, travel. John i. 1. 193.  
**cuplement**, union. Son. 21. 3.  
**courage**, heart. 3H6 ii. 2. 57; V. & A. 276.  
**courses of the sun**, years. Son. 59. 6.  
**coursing**, galloping. H5 i. 2. 143.  
**court-hand**, the style of handwriting used in the English law-courts from the sixteenth to the eighteenth centuries, when it was abolished by statute. 2H6 iv. 2. 93.  
**court of guard**, guard-house. 1H6 ii. 1. 4.  
**courtship**, courtliness. 2H6 i. 3. 55.  
**cousin**, a general term of kinship, nephew, grandson, &c. John iii. 1. 339; &c.  
**covert**, convent. H8 iv. 2. 19.  
**cover**, put the lid on. 2H4 ii. 4. 10.  
**covertest**, most secret. R3 iii. 5. 32.  
**coverture**, covering, sheltering. 3H6 iv. 2. 13.  
**covetousness**, inordinate desire. John iv. 2. 23.  
**coy**, shy. V. & A. 112.  
**coz**, cousin, kinsman. John iii. 3. 17.  
**cozen**, cheat. R3 iv. 4. 223.  
**cozener**, cheat, deceiver. 1H4 i. 3. 255.  
**crab-tree**, tree bearing crab-apples. 2H6 iii. 2. 214; H8 v. 4. 7.  
**crack**, lively lad. 2H4 iii. 2. 33.  
**cracker**, boaster. John ii. 1. 147.  
**crafty-sick**, feigning sickness. 2H4 Ind. 37.  
**crank**, twist and turn about. 1H4 iii. 1. 99; V. & A. 682.  
**crasy**, broken, infirm. 1H6 iii. 2. 89.  
**create**, created. John iv. 1. 107; H5 ii. 2. 31.  
**credent**, believing. Lov. C. 279.  
**crecive**, growing. H5 i. 1. 66.  
**creuset**, basket of iron made to hold fire, flaming stuff. 1H4 iii. 1. 15.

**crestless**, not entitled to bear a heraldic crest. 1H6 ii. 4. 85.  
**crest-wounding**, wounding to the honour of the family crest. Luc. 823.  
**crib**, cabin, hovel. 2H4 iii. 1. 9.  
**crisp**, having a surface fretted into minute waves. 1H4 i. 3. 106.  
**cross**, thwart. John iii. 1. 91; V. & A. 734; coin stamped with a cross. 2H4 i. 2. 228.  
**crossings**, thwartings, opposings. 1H4 iii. 1. 56.  
**crossly**, adversely. R2 ii. 4. 24.  
**cross-row**, alphabet. R3 i. 1. 55.  
**crown**, establish as sovereign. 1H4 iii. 1. 217; head. R3 iii. 2. 43.  
**crudy**, curdy, curdled in appearance. 2H4 iv. 3. 97.  
**crushed**, overthrown, subdued. H5 i. 2. 175.  
**cry**, cry for. Lov. C. 42.  
**cry aim**, applaud (a term from archery). John ii. 1. 196.  
**cry on**, invoke. R3 v. 3. 232.  
**crystal button**, button such as vintners wore. 1H4 ii. 4. 70.  
**cuckoo's bird**, young of the cuckoo. 1H4 v. 1. 60.  
**cudgelled**, produced by cudgelling. H5 v. 1. 90.  
**cull**, gather. John ii. 1. 40.  
**cullion**, base fellow. H5 iii. 2. 22; 2H6 i. 8. 41.  
**culverin**, a small fire-arm; later, a cannon. 1H4 ii. 3. 54.  
**cum privilege**, with good leave. H8 i. 3. 34.  
**cunning**, devised with skill. R2 i. 3. 163; skill. H5 v. 2. 148; 1H6 iii. 3. 10.  
**curb**, restrain. 1H4 iii. 1. 170.  
**cure**, charge of souls. H8 i. 4. 33.  
**curious**, elaborate. 3H6 ii. 5. 53; V. & A. 734; fastidious. Son. 37. 13; careful. Lov. C. 49.  
**currance**, current. H5 i. 1. 34.  
**current**, genuine, sterling. R2 i. 3. 231; 2H4 ii. 1. 122; R3 i. 2. 84; occurrence. 1H4 ii. 3. 56.  
**curry**, employ flattery towards. 2H4 v. 1. 75.  
**cursorary**, cursory. H5 v. 2. 77.  
**curst**, ill-tempered, shrewish. 2H6 iii. 2. 312; R3 i. 2. 49; V. & A. 887.  
**curtain**, piece of chainmail hanging from the headpiece to protect the neck; banner. H5 iv. 2. 41.  
**curtle-axe**, short broad cutting sword. H5 iv. 2. 21.  
**curvet**, leap. V. & A. 279.  
**cushes**, thigh-pieces. 1H4 iv. 1. 105.  
**customed**, customary. John iii. 4. 155; 2H6 v. 1. 188.  
**Cut**, name of a horse. 1H4 ii. 1. 5.  
**cuttle**, bully. 2H4 ii. 4. 130.  
**daff**, to thrust out of the way. 1H4 iv. 1. 96; P.P. xiv. 3; put off. Lov. C. 297.  
**Dainty**, Davenport. 3H6 v. 1. 6.

- dalliance**, trifling. H5 ii. cher. 2.  
**dally**, trifle. R3 ii. 1. 12.  
**dam**, confined by a dam. 1H4 iii. 1. 102.  
**damasked**, having the hue of the damask rose. Son. 130. 5.  
**danger**, power. V. & A. 539.  
**dangerous**, difficult to please. 1H4. 5. 1. 69; fraught with danger. R3 iv. 4. 237.  
**dank**, damp. 1H4 ii. 1. 8.  
**dare**, daring. 1H4 iv. 1. 78; defy. H5 iv. 2. 36; daze in order to catch. H3 iii. 2. 283.  
**darnel**, rye-grass. H5 v. 2. 45; 1H6 iii. 2. 44.  
**darraign**, set in array. 3H6 ii. 2. 72.  
**dash**, appearance. 1H6 i. 2. 7; mark of disgrace. Luc. 206.  
**date**, period, duration. R3 iv. 4. 255; Son. 123. 5; limit, end. Son. 14. 14.  
**dateless**, endless. R2 i. 3. 161; Son. 30. 6; eternal. Son. 253. 6.  
**daub**, whitewash, gloss. R3 iii. 5. 28.  
**day**, battle. 2H4 i. 1. 20; space of time. 2H6 ii. 1. 2.  
**day-bed**, sofa. R3 iii. 4. 71.  
**dazzle**, to be dazzled. 3H6 ii. 1. 25.  
**dead**, deadly. John v. 7. 65; R2 iv. 1. 10.  
**deaf**, deafen. John ii. 1. 147.  
**deal**, no, not at all. Son. to Music 3. 27.  
**dealt**, acted. John v. 2. 12f.  
**dear**, costing me dear. John i. 1. 257; heavy. R2 i. 1. 130; 1H4 iv. 1. 34; grievous. R2 i. 3. 151; H5 ii. 2. 181; urgent. 1H4 i. 1. 33; precious, valued. 1H4 iv. 4. 31; Son. 30. 4; earnest. 2H4 iv. 5. 139; extreme. R3 i. 4. 215; ii. 2. 77; Son. 37. 3; dearly. H8 ii. 2. 110; loving. Son. 46. 12.  
**dearer**, better, more worthy. R2 i. 3. 156.  
**dearest**, best, most precious. 1H4 iii. 1. 181; 1H6 iii. 4. 40; 3H6 v. 1. 69; utmost. 1H4 v. 5. 36.  
**deathful**, deadly. 2H6 iii. 2. 404.  
**debate**, contest. 2H4 iv. 4. 2; Son. 15. 11; 89. 13.  
**decay**, destruction. Son. 80. 14.  
**deceivable**, deceitful. R2 ii. 3. 84.  
**decent**, becoming. H8 iv. 2. 146.  
**deck**, pack of cards. 3H6 v. 1. 44.  
**declension**, deviation from a standard. R3 iii. 7. 133.  
**decline**, go through in order. R3 iv. 4. 87.  
**dedicate**, dedicated. 2H6 v. 2. 37.  
**dedicated words**, words of dedication. Son. 82. 3.  
**deep-fat**, deep-fetched. 2H6 ii. 4. 33.  
**defame**, dishonour. Luc. 763, 817, 1033.  
**default**, neglect. 1H6 ii. 1. 60.  
**defeat**, defraud. Son. 20. 11; destroy. Son. 61. 11.  
**defeature**, defacement. V. & A. 738.  
**defect**, fault. Son. 70. 1, defects. Son. 140. 11.  
**defend**, forbid. R2 i. 3. 15; 1H4 iv. 3. 38; R3 iii. 7. 172.  
**defendant**, defensive. H5 ii. 4. 8.  
**defensible**, capable of affording defence. 2H4 ii. 3. 38; H5 iii. 3. 50.  
**defunction**, death. H5 i. 2. 63.  
**defunctive**, suitable to a time of death. Phoen. 14.  
**defy**, reject. John iii. 4. 23; renounce. 1H4 i. 3. 228; despise. 1H4 i. 1. 6; P. P. 12. 11.  
**degenerate**, degraded. R3 i. 1. 144.  
**degree**, rank. H5 iv. 7. 134.  
**delectable**, delightful. R2 ii. 3. 7.  
**delicates**, luxuries. 3H6 ii. 5. 51.  
**deliver**, speak, tell, report. R2 iii. 2. 92, &c.  
**delve parallels**, dig furrows. Son. 60. 10.  
**demanding of**, inquiring about. 2H6 ii. 1. 172.  
**demean**, behave. 2H6 i. 1. 186; 1. 3. 104; 3H6 i. 4. 7.  
**demise**, transmit. R3 iv. 4. 248.  
**demure**, sober, serious. H8 i. 2. 167.  
**denayed**, denied. 2H6 i. 3. 105.  
**denier**, a small copper French coin. 1H4 iii. 3. 82; R3 i. 2. 253.  
**denote**, show. Son. 148. 7.  
**deny**, refuse. R2 ii. 1. 205; 1H4 i. 3. 29; R3 v. 3. 344.  
**depart**, part. John ii. 1. 363; leave. 2H4 iv. 5. 89; Son. 11. 2; departure. 2H6 i. 1. 2; 3H6 iv. 1. 92; death. 3H6 ii. 1. 110.  
**departing**, separation. 3H6 ii. 6. 43.  
**depose**, take a deposition. R2 i. 3. 30.  
**deprive**, to take away. Luc. 1186, 1752.  
**deputation**, appointment as deputy. 1H4 iv. 3. 87.  
**deputy of the ward**, police officers. 1H4 iii. 3. 119.  
**deracinate**, uproot. H5 v. 2. 47.  
**derived**, bring down. H8 ii. 4. 30.  
**derives itself**, pass by descent. 2H4 iv. 5. 42.  
**descension**, descent. 2H4 ii. 2. 175.  
**desory**, discover. R3 v. 3. 9.  
**design**, point out by distinctive signs. R2 i. 1. 203.  
**desperate**, reckless. H8 ii. 1. 85.  
**despised**, despicable. R2 ii. 3. 95.  
**despite**, spite, contempt. 3H6 ii. 1. 59.  
**detect**, expose. 3H6 ii. 2. 143; R3 i. 4. 140.  
**determinate**, bring to an end. R2 i. 3. 150; final, settled. H8 ii. 4. 174; ended. Son. 87. 4.  
**determination**, end. Son. 12. 8.  
**determine**, put an end to. 2H4 iv. 5. 80; limit. 1H6 iv. 6. 9; resolve upon. R3 i. 3. 15.

**determine of**, decide about. R3 iii. 4. 2.  
**device**, heraldic bearing. John i. 1. 210.  
**device in**, manner, inclination. V. & A. 789.  
**devil rides upon a fiddlestick**, the, here's a fine commotion. 1H4 ii. 4. 496.  
**devise**, invent, feign. 1H4 iii. 2. 23; think, plan. 1H6 i. 2. 124.  
**devoted**, holy. R3 i. 2. 35.  
**devotion**, observance. R3 iv. 1. 9.  
**diapason**, bass sounding in concord. Luc. 1132.  
**Dickon**, Dick. R3 v. 3. 306.  
**diet**, mode of life. R3 i. 1. 139.  
**difference**, hostility. R2 i. 1. 201; H8 i. 1. 101.  
**dime**, mistrust. John i. 1. 654. 1H6 iii. 3. 10.  
**diffused**, confused, obscure. H5 v. 2. 61; R3 i. 2. 78.  
**digest**, **digested**, consider. H5 ii. chor. 31; ii. 2. 56.  
**digressing**, transgressing. R2 v. 3. 65.  
**digression**, transgression. Luc. 202.  
**dim**, dull. John iii. 4. 85.  
**dint**, mark. V. & A. 334.  
**direction**, military skill. R3 v. 3. 16.  
**directly**, straightforwardly. 2H4 iv. 2. 52.  
**disallow of**, refuse to admit. John i. 1. 16.  
**disanimate**, deprive of spirit. 1H6 iii. 1. 182.  
**disannul**, bring to nothing. 3H6 iii. 3. 81.  
**discarded**, dismissed. 1H4 iv. 2. 27.  
**discerner**, one who discriminates. H8 i. 1. 32.  
**discharge**, dismiss. 2H4 iv. 2. 61; payment for the soldiers. 2H6 i. 3. 170.  
**disclose**, unclose. Son. 54. 8.  
**discolour**, stain. 2H4 ii. 2. 4.  
**discomfit**, discouragement. 2H6 v. 2. 86.  
**discomfort**, uneasiness. 2H4 i. 2. 105.  
**discomfortable**, destroying comfort. R2 iii. 2. 36.  
**discontents**, discontented men. John iv. 3. 151; 1H4 v. 1. 76.  
**discover**, reveal. H8 v. 3. 71.  
**discoverer**, scout. 2H4 iv. 1. 3.  
**discuss**, make known. H5 iii. 2. 62.  
**disdained**, disdainful. 1H4 i. 3. 183.  
**disgracious**, unpleasing, ungracious. R3 iii. 7. 111; iv. 4. 178.  
**dishabited**, dislodged. John ii. 1. 220.  
**dishonest**, unchaste. H5 i. 2. 49.  
**disjoined**, parted, drew away. V. & A. 541.  
**dislike**, discord. 1H4 v. 1. 28.  
**dismay**, be dismayed. 1H6 iii. 3. 1.

**dismount**, lower. Lov. C. 281.  
**dispark**, convert park land to other uses. R2 iii. 1. 28.  
**dispense with**, compound with. 2H6 v. 1. 181; Luc. 1070; Son. 112. 12.  
**dispiteous**, pitiless. John iv. 1. 34.  
**dispose**, control, disposal. John i. 1. 283; arrange, manage. John iii. 4. 11; have the disposition of. 2H6 iii. 1. 76; incline. H8 i. 2. 116.  
**disputation**, dispute, discussion. 1H4 iii. 1. 205.  
**dissemble**, cover with a contrary appearance. R3 ii. 1. 8.  
**dissembling**, deceitful. R3 i. 1. 19.  
**dissonant**, seditious. R3 i. 3. 46; V. & A. 657.  
**dissolution**, melting. Luc. 355.  
**dissolve**, put asunder. R2 ii. 2. 71.  
**distaff**, women, spinning-women. R2 iii. 2. 118.  
**distain**, stain, defile. R3 v. 3. 223.  
**distemper**, mental derangement. H5 ii. 2. 54; perturb. V. & A. 633.  
**distemperature**, disorder. 1H4 iii. 1. 34; decomposed appearance. 1H4 v. 1. 3.  
**distempered**, disturbed by the elements. John iii. 4. 154; ill-humoured. John iv. 3. 21; out of health. 2H4 iii. 1. 41.  
**distillation**, product of distillation. Son. 5. 9.  
**distract**, perplexed, disordered, mad. 2H6 iii. 2. 318; Lov. C. 231.  
**distracted**, driven mad. 2H4 ii. 1. 108.  
**distrain**, take possession of. R2 ii. 3. 131; 1H6 i. 3. 61.  
**distraught**, distracted. R3 iii. 5. 4.  
**distressful**, gained by severe toil. H5 iv. 1. 275; distressing. 4H6 v. 4. 128.  
**dive-dapper**, a small diving water-fowl. V. & A. 86.  
**divided**, diverse, separate. R3 iii. 1. 179.  
**divide myself**, split myself into two. 1H4 ii. 3. 33.  
**divine**, guess. R2 iii. 4. 79.  
**division**, a florid phrase of melody. 1H4 iii. 1. 216.  
**doit**, put off. John iii. 1. 128; 1H4 v. 1. 12.  
**dogged**, cruel. John iv. 1. 129; iv. 3. 149; 2H6 iii. 1. 158.  
**do him dead**, kill him. 3H6 i. 1. 108.  
**doit**, a small Dutch coin = half a farthing. 2H6 iii. 1. 112.  
**dole**, pain. 2H4 i. 4. 469.  
**do me right**, do me justice. 2H4 v. 3. 74.  
**dominations**, sovereign rights. John ii. 1. 176.  
**done**, finished, finished with. 3H6 iii. 2. 107; iv. 1. 104; Luc. 23; past, lost. Lov. C. 11.  
**do to death**, put to death. 2H6 iii. 2. 179.  
**double**, turn. V. & A. 682.

**double-fatal**, doubly-fatal. R2 iii. 2. 117.

**double tongue**, forked tongue. R2 iii. 2. 21.

**doubt**, fear. John iv. 1. 19; &c.; suspect. Son. 75. 6.

**doubtless**, without fear. John iv. 1. 130.

**dout**, extinguish. H5 iv. 2. 11.

**dowlas**, coarse kind of linen. 1H4 iii. 8. 71.

**down-roping**, dripping down. H5 iv. 2. 48.

**down-trodden**, crushed down by oppression. John ii. 1. 241.

**draff**, refuse, swine's food. 1H4 iv. 2. 35.

**drain**, let fall in drops, strained out. 2H6 iii. 142.

**draw**, lengthen. John i. 1. 103;

draw back, withdraw. 1H4 iv. 1. 73; 2H4 ii. 1. 150; muster. 2H4 i. 3. 109.

**drawer**, one who draws liquor at a tavern. 1H4 ii. 4. 7.

**drawn**, drawn together, gathered. John iv. 2. 118; 1H4 iv. 1. 33.

**drawn fox**, hunted fox and therefore full of cunning. 1H4 iii. 3. 118.

**dread**, dreadful. 1H4 v. 1. 111; held in awe. R3 iii. 1. 97.

**drench**, draught given to an animal. 1H4 ii. 4. 109; H5 iii. 5. 19.

**dress**, make ready. H5 iv. 1. 10.

**dressed**, cultivated. R2 iii. 4. 56.

**dressings**, presentments. Son. 123. 4.

**drew**, levied. John v. 2. 113; drew back. 2H4 i. f. 72.

**drollery**, comic drawing. 2H4 ii. 1. 145.

**drone**, the tone emitted by the bass pipe in a bagpipe. 1H4 i. 2. 77.

**drooping**, declining, drawing to a close. 2H4 Ind. 3; 1H6 iv. 5. 5.

**drop in**, come in. Son. 90. 4.

**drouth**, thirst. V. & A. 544.

**drowse**, be heavy with sleep. 1H4 iii. 2. 81.

**due**, endue. 1H6 iv. 2. 34.

**due o' the verdict**, the verdict which is theirs by right. H8 v. 1. 132.

**duer**, more duly. 2H4 iii. 2. 317.

**dull**, sad. 2H4 iv. 5. 2; render sluggish. H4 ii. 2. 9.

**dullness**, satiety. Son. 56. 8.

**dumb significants**, silent signs. 1H6 ii. 4. 26.

**dump**, mournful melody. Luc. 11. 27.

**dunghill**, term applied to a person of evil life or base station. John iv. 3. 87.

**durance**, a strong cloth out of which prisoners' clothes were made. 1H4 i. 2. 44.

**dust**, a grain of dust. John iv. 1. 93; R2 ii. 3. 91.

**duties**, offices, functions. 1H4 v. 2. 55.

**dwellers on**, those who fix attention on. Son. 125. 5.

**eager**, sharp, bitter, acrid. R2 i. 1. 49; 3H6 ii. 6. 68; Son. 114. 2.

**ean**, bring forth lambs. 3H6 ii. 5. 36.

**ear**, care, plough. R2 iii. 2. 212; V. & A. 6edic.

**earnest**, money paid as an instalment to secure a bargain. H5 ii. 2. 169.

**earnest-gaping**, earnestly gazing. 2H6 iii. 2. 105.

**easy**, slight, easy to be borne. 2H4 v. 2. 71; 2H6 iii. 1. 133.

**eat**, eaten. John i. 1. 234.

**ebon**, black, dark. 2H4 v. 5. 37; V. & A. 948.

**ecstasy**, excitement, disturbance. V. & A. 895; Lov. C. 69.

**effect**, purport. John iv. 1. 38; suitable manner. 2H4 ii. 1. 131; effectively prove. 2H6 iii. 1. 170; execution. R3 i. 2. 121; outward manifestation. Luc. 1555; working efficiency. Son. 36. 7.

**effectually**, actually. Son. 113. 4.

**effuse**, shed. 1H6 v. 4. 52; effusion. 3H6 ii. 6. 28.

**egally**, equally. R3 iii. 7. 212.

**eisel**, vinegar. Son. 111. 10.

**eke out**, supply the deficiencies of. H5 chor. iii. 35.

**elect**, chosen. H8 ii. 4. 58.

**element**, sky. 2H4 iv. 3. 52; H5 iv. 1. 105; Luc. 1588; component part. H8 i. 1. 48.

**elvisch-marked**, marked by fairies. R3 i. 3. 228.

**emballing**, probably used with indelicate sense, or investing with the ball as symbol of royalty. H8 ii. 3. 47.

**embassade**, embassy. 3H6 iv. 3. 31.

**embassage**, embassy, message, mission. John i. 1. 6; &c.

**embattailed**, drawn up in battle array. John iv. 2. 200; H5 iv. 2. 14.

**emblaze**, emblazon. 2H6 iv. 10. 71.

**embossed**, bulging. 1H4 iii. 3. 164.

**embounded**, confined. John iv. 3. 137.

**embowelled**, bowels removed for the purpose of embalming. 1H4 v. 4. 109; disembowelled. R3 v. 2. 10.

**embracement**, embrace. R3 ii. 1. 30; H8 i. 1. 10; V. & A. 312.

**Emmanuel**, documents were frequently headed with the name. 2H6 iv. 2. 98.

**emperry**, empire. H5 i. 2. 226; R3 iii. 7. 135.

**empty**, hungry. 2H6 iii. 1. 248; 3H6 i. 1. 268.

**emulation**, envying. 1H6 iv. 4. 21.

**enact**, perform. R3 v. 4. 2.

**encountered**, met. 2H4 iv. 2. 1.

**end**, saying, phrase. R3 i. 3. 337; at the bottom. H8 ii. 1. 40.



**endamage**, do damage to. 1H6 ii. 1. 77.  
**endamagement**, hurt. John ii. 1. 209.  
**endeared to**, were, laid importance on. 2H4 ii. 3. 11.  
**ending**, near his end. 2H4 iv. 5. 78.  
**end, there an**, there is no more to say. R2 v. 1. 69.  
**endured of**, endured by. R3 iv. 4. 305.  
**enfeoff**, hand over as a fief, surrender. 1H4 iii. 2. 69.  
**enforced**, forced, compelled. John v. 2. 90; R3 iii. 5. 45.  
**enforcement**, application of force. 2H4 i. 1. 120; violation. R3 iii. 7. 8; Luc. 1623; compulsion. R3 iii. 7. 231.  
**enfranchise**, set free. R3 i. 1. 110.  
**enfranchisement**, liberation from imprisonment or subjection. John iv. 2. 52; R2 iii. 3. 114.  
**engaged**, detained as a hostage. 1H4 iv. 3. 95; v. 2. 43; bound. 2H4 i. 1. 180.  
**engaoi**, imprison. R2 i. 3. 166.  
**englut**, swallow up. H5 iv. 3. 83.  
**engrafted**, closely attached. 2H4 ii. 2. 63.  
**engross**, amass. 1H4 iii. 2. 148; 2H4 iv. 5. 69; make gross. R3 iii. 7. 75.  
**engrossment**, that which has been collected greedily from all quarters. 2H4 iv. 5. 78.  
**enlarge**, set at liberty. 1H4 iii. 2. 115; H5 ii. 2. 40; Son. 70. 12; widen. 2H4 i. 1. 204.  
**enlargement**, escape. 1H4 iii. 2. 31; release from confinement. 3H6 iv. 6. 5.  
**enlighten**, shed light on. Son. 152. 11.  
**enow**, enough. H5 iv. 1. 228.  
**enpatron me**, are my patrons saint. Lov. C. 224.  
**enrank**, place in order. 1H6 i. 1. 115.  
**enround**, surround. H5 iv. chor. 36.  
**enschedule**, set out in a schedule. H5 v. 2. 73.  
**ensconce**, shelter. Luc. 1515; Son. 49. 8.  
**ensue**, follow. Luc. 502.  
**ensuing**, coming. R3 ii. 3. 43.  
**entertain**, maintain. R2 ii. 2. 4; engage. 1H4 v. 1. 24; receive, commence. 1H6 v. 4. 175; keep engaged. R3 i. 2. 253.  
**entitled**, having a title or claim. Son. 37. 7.  
**entreat**, treat. R2 iii. 1. 37; 2H6 ii. 4. 82; R3 iv. 4. 152; entreaty. R3 iii. 7. 223.  
**envious**, spiteful, malicious. 2H6 ii. 4. 12, 35; R3 i. 3. 26; V. & A. 705.  
**envious load**, load of malice. 2H6 iii. 1. 157.

**envy**, bear malice. John ii. 4. 73; H8 v. 3. 112; malice, hatred. R2 ii. 1. 49; &c.  
**Ephesian**, boon companion. 2H4 ii. 2. 151.  
**equal**, match. 2H4 i. 3. 67; 3H6 v. 5. 55; impartial. H8 ii. 2. 107.  
**equity**, right, fairness. John ii. 1. 241; 1H4 ii. 2. 102.  
**erroneous**, criminal, wrongful. R3 i. 4. 200.  
**erst**, of old. H5 v. 2. 43.  
**esperance**, the motto of the Percies. 1H4 ii. 3. 72.  
**espials**, spies. 1H6 i. 4. 8; 1H6 iv. 3. 6.  
**essay**, trial. Son. 110. 8.  
**estate**, state, dignity. H5 iv. 1. 98; R3 iii. 2. 212; H8 ii. 2. 69.  
**esteem**, opinion, estimate. Son. 127. 12; account, reputation. 1H6 iii. 4. 8; v. 5. 27.  
**esteeming**, estimation. Son. 102. 3.  
**estimate**, reputation. R2 ii. 3. 56; worth, value. Son. 87. 2.  
**estimation**, conjecture. 1H4 i. 3. 272.  
**estridge**, ostrich. 1H4 iv. 1. 93.  
**eternize**, make perpetually famous. 2H6 v. 3. 61.  
**even**, exactly. John iii. 1. 233; modestly. 1H4 i. 3. 786; plain truth. H5 ii. 1. 124; pure. H8 iii. 1. 37.  
**evenly**, directly. H5 ii. 4. 91.  
**even-pleached**, smoothly intertwined. H5 v. 2. 42.  
**events**, results, ends. R2 ii. 1. 215.  
**ever**, always. H8 v. d. 130.  
**ever among**, continually. 2H4 v. 3. 22.  
**evil**, privy. H8 ii. 1. 67.  
**exactly**, fully, in every point. R2 i. 1. 140.  
**example by**, show for example. H5 i. 2. 156.  
**excellent**, pre-eminent. R3 i. 4. 52.  
**excelling**, exquisite. V. & A. 443.  
**except**, object to. R2 i. 1. 724; excepted. R3 v. 3. 844; protest against. Son. 147. 8.  
**exception**, objection. H5 ii. 4. 34; contrary arguments. H5 iv. 2. 25.  
**exchanged**, changed, altered. Son. 109. 7.  
**exclaim**, exclamation. R2 i. 2. 2; R3 i. 2. 52.  
**exclaim on**, cry out against, rail at. V. & A. 930; Luc. 741.  
**exclamation**, clamour. 2H4 ii. 1. 83; approach. H8 i. 2. 52.  
**executor**, executioner. H5 i. 2. 203.  
**exempt**, remove. 1H6 ii. 4. 93; H8 i. 2. 89.  
**exequies**, funeral ceremonies. 1H6 iii. 2. 133.  
**exercise**, training. John iv. 2. 60; act of religious devotion. R3 iii. 7. 63; act of preaching, discourse. R3 iii. 2. 104.

**exhalation**, meteor. John iii. 4. 163; 1H4 ii. 4. 324; H8 iii. 2. 227.  
**exhale**, disengage, give off. 1H4 v. 1. 19; draw. H6 ii. 1. 64; cause to flow. R3 i. 2. 53.  
**exhibitors**, those who put the case. H5 i. 1. 74.  
**exigent**, end. 1H6 ii. 5. 9.  
**exion**, blunder for 'action'. 2H4 ii. 1. 30.  
**exorcism**, conjuration for raising spirits. 2H6 i. 4. 4.  
**expectation**, hope. 1H4 ii. 3. 19.  
**expedience**, expedition. R2 ii. 1. 287; 1H4 i. 1. 83; H5 iv. 3. 70.  
**expedient**, expeditious. John ii. 1. 60; &c.  
**expedition in**, in motion. H5 ii. 2. 191.  
**expense**, loss. Son. 30. 8; expendi-  
 ture, waste. Son. 94. 6.  
**expite**, terminated. R3 iii. 3. 23;  
 bring to an end. Son. 22. 4.  
**expire**, die out. John v. 4. 36.  
**expressly**, exactly. Luc. 1397.  
**expulsed**, expelled. 1H6 iii. 3. 25.  
**exteriorly**, in appearance. John  
 iv. 2. 257.  
**extern**, external. Son. 125. 2.  
**extinct**, extinguished. R2 i. 3. 222.  
**extincture**, extinction. Lov. C. 294.  
**extirp**, extirpat, uproot. 1H6 iii.  
 3. 24.  
**extraordinarily**, blunder for 'or-  
 dinary'. 2H4 i. 4. 24.  
**extraught**, extracted, 'derived'.  
 3H6 i. 2. 142.  
**extremes**, acts of extreme cruelty.  
 John iv. 1. 108; extremities. 1H6  
 iv. 1. 38.  
**extremity**, utmost degree. R2 ii.  
 2. 72; R3 i. 1. 65.  
**eye of death**, face as pale as  
 death. 1H4 i. 3. 143.  
**eyne**, eyes. V. & A. 633.  
**face**, repair a garment with new  
 facings. 1H4 v. 1. 74; outface. H5  
 iii. 2. 86; act or speak with effron-  
 tery. 1H6 v. 3. 141.  
**face-royal**, royal face; the stamp  
 on a coin, worth about 10s., called  
 the 'royal'. 2H4 i. 2. 23.  
**fact**, deed. 1H6 iv. 1. 30; 2H6 i. 3.  
 174; Luc. 349.  
**factious**, given to forming fac-  
 tions. 2H6 v. 1. 135; R3 i. 3. 128.  
**factor**, deputy. 1H4 iii. 2. 147; R3  
 iii. 2. 433.  
**faculty**, inherent power. H5 ii. 1.  
 66.  
**fall**, death, to die. H8 i. 2. 145; H6 i.  
 2. 184.  
**fain**, obliged. 2H4 ii. 1. 142; glad,  
 gladly. H5 i. 1. 85; R3 i. 4. 278.  
**fain of**, desirous of. 2H6 ii. 1. 8.  
**faint**, make faint. H8 ii. 3. 103.  
**fair**, clear, fine. R2 i. 1. 41; be-  
 coming. R2 i. 1. 54; well. R3 iv.  
 4. 152; beauty. V. & A. 1083, 1086;

Son. 16. 11; make beautiful. Son.  
 127. 6.  
**fairest-boding**, prophesying pleas-  
 ant things. R3 v. 2. 228.  
**fair fall**, fair fortune, befall. John  
 i. 1. 78.  
**fairly**, in respect to beauty. Son.  
 5. 4.  
**faith**, fidelity, loyalty. H8 ii. 1. 145.  
**faithful man**, Christian, man  
 believing in the Christian faith.  
 R3 i. 4. 4.  
**falchion**, sword. 3H6 i. 4. 12.  
**fall**, be brought forth. John iii. 1.  
 99; desert. John iii. 1. 320; let fall.  
 R2 iii. 4. 104; R3 v. 3. 136; Luc. 1551.  
**fall away**, diminish. H5 v. 2. 163.  
**fall off**, desert, prove faithless.  
 John v. 5. 11; 1H4 i. 3. 94.  
**false-boding**, prophesying false  
 things. R3 i. 3. 247.  
**false esteem**, spurious reputation.  
 Son. 127. 12.  
**fame**, make famous. Son. 84. 11.  
**familiar**, attendant spirit. 1H6 iii.  
 2. 122; 2H6 iv. 7. 106.  
**familiarity**, blunder for 'fami-  
 liar'. 2H4 ii. 1. 101.  
**famoured**, famed. Son. 25. 9.  
**fancy**, composition in an im-  
 promptu style. 2H4 iii. 2. 323; love.  
 1H6 v. 3. 91; Luc. 200; Son. to Mu-  
 sic 4. 4; the person loved. Lov.  
 Com. 61.  
**fantasied**, filled with fancies. John  
 iv. 2. 144.  
**fantastic**, imaginary. R2 i. 3. 299.  
**fantastically**, fancifully, capri-  
 ciously. H5 ii. 4. 27.  
**fantasy**, imagination. 2H4 v. 2. 13.  
**farced**, stuffed out, pompous. H5  
 iv. 1. 280.  
**far-fet**, far-fetched. 2H6 iii. 1. 203.  
**fast**, steadfastly. 2H6 v. 2. 21.  
**fastly**, quickly. Lov. Com. 61.  
**fatal**, deadly, destructive. H5 ii.  
 4. 13.  
**father**, father-in-law. 1H4 iii. 1. 88;  
 H8 ii. 1. 44.  
**father-in-law**, step-father. R3 v.  
 3. 82.  
**fat room**, vat room. 1H4 ii. 4. 1.  
**fat-witted**, thick-headed. 1H4 i.  
 2. 2.  
**fault**, loss of scent. V. & A. 694.  
**favour**, countenance, face, fea-  
 tures. R2 iv. 1. 168; 1H4 iii. 2. 136;  
 Son. 113. 10; lady's scarf or glove  
 worn by a knight. 1H4 v. 4. 96; ap-  
 pearance, aspect. H5 v. 2. 63; V. &  
 A. 747; Son. 125. 5; lenity. 2H6 iv.  
 7. 66.  
**fear**, object or cause of fear. 1H4  
 i. 3. 87; &c.; fear for. 1H4 iv. 1. 24;  
 R3 i. 1. 137; fearful thing. 2H4 i.  
 1. 95; frighten. 2H4 iv. 4. 121;  
 &c.  
**fearful**, causing apprehension.  
 John iv. 2. 106; full of fear. R2 iii.  
 2. 110; &c.; timorous. 2H6 iv. 4. 2;

**ask**, cowardly. 2H6 iv. 3. 42; terrified. 2H6 ii. 2. 27; filled with fear. R3 iv. 2. 121.  
**fearful action**, gestures of fear. John iv. 2. 191.  
**fearfully**, in fear. 1H4 i. 3. 105.  
**feast-finding**, attending banquets. Luc. 817.  
**feat**, neat. Lov. C. 48.  
**feature**, external appearance. John iv. 2. 264; 1H3 v. 5. 68, R3 i. 1. 19.  
**fee**, pledge. Son. 120. 13.  
**feeble**, enfeeble. John v. 2. 146.  
**feeling**, by touch. 1H4 iii. 1. 205.  
**fee-simple**, estate belonging to a person without limitation as to the heirs. 2H6 iv. 10. 25.  
**fell**, cruel. John iii. 4. 44, &c.  
**fell-lurking**, lurking to do mischief. 2H6 v. 1. 145.  
**fellow**, comrade. 1H4 ii. 2. 110; equal. H8 i. 3. 41.  
**felon**, felony. 2H6 iii. 1. 132.  
**female**, weakly, effeminate. R2 iii. 2. 114.  
**fence**, skill in fencing. John ii. 1. 290; 2H6 ii. 1. 52; defend. 3H6 ii. 3. 75; Luc. 63.  
**fennel**, a herb used in making sauces. 2H4 ii. 4. 252.  
**fer**, apparently a meaningless word. H5 iv. 4. 29, 31.  
**fern-seed**, the seed of the fern was supposed to be invisible and to make its possessor also invisible. 1H4 ii. 1. 90.  
**ferret**, to hunt (as with ferrets), to worry. H5 iv. 4. 30, 31.  
**fester**, rot. Son. 94. 14.  
**fet**, fetched. H5 iii. 1. 18.  
**fetch about**, turn, make a circuit. John iv. 2. 24.  
**fetch off**, 'do for', get the better of. 2H4 iii. 2. 312.  
**fetlock**, upper part of a horse's leg. H5 iv. 7. 78.  
**few in**, in brief. 2H4 i. 1. 112; H5 i. 2. 245.  
**field**, battlefield. John v. 1. 55; &c.  
**fierce**, excessive. H8 i. 1. 54.  
**fiery-pointed**, having points or darts of fire. Luc. 372.  
**fifteens**, fifteenths (q.v.). 2H6 iv. 7. 22.  
**fifteenth**, fifteenth part of all a subject's personal property. 2H6 i. 1. 131.  
**fig**, insult by thrusting the thumb between two closed fingers or into the mouth. 2H4 v. 3. 120.  
**fig of Spain**, see fig. H5 iii. 6. 60.  
**fgo**, a term of contempt, accompanied by an insulting gesture. H5 iii. 6. 58; iv. 1. 60.  
**figure**, metaphor. 1H4 i. 3. 209; prefigure. 3H6 ii. 1. 32; show by a figure or sign. P.P. 4. 10.  
**file**, list. H8 i. 1. 75; keep pace. H8 iii. 2. 172.

**filed**, polished. Son. 85. 4; Son. to Music. 4. 8.  
**flip**, tap, strike. 2H4 i. 2. 230.\*  
**find**, furnish, provide. H5 i. 2. 72.  
**find-faults**, fault-finders. H5 v. 2. 283.  
**fine**, punishment. John v. 4. 37; end. John v. 4. 38; pay as a fine. H5 iv. 7. 68; put an end to. Luc. 836.  
**fine hand**, ironical, 'fine thing'. H8 v. 4. 69.  
**finer end**, ?blunder for 'final end'. H5 ii. 3. 11.  
**fire-drake**, meteor, a man with a fiery nose. H8 v. 4. 43.  
**fire-new**, fresh from the mint, brand new. R3 i. 3. 256.\*  
**firk**, beat. H5 iv. 4. 37, 32.  
**fit**, grippace. H8 i. 3. 7.  
**fitted**, forced by fits or paroxysms. Son. 119. 7.  
**flaky**, as in flakes. R3 v. 3. 87.  
**flap-dragon**, snap-dragon. 2H4 ii. 4. 252.  
**flap-mouth**, mouth with broad hanging lips. V. & A. 920.  
**flat**, final. 1H4 i. 3. 218; iv. 2. 39.  
**flats**, level ground. John v. 6. 40.  
**flaw**, flake (of snow). 2H6 iv. 4. 35; storm. 2H6 iii. 1. 354; make a flaw in, break. H8 i. 2. 95; i. 2. 21; gust of wind. V. & A. 456.  
**fleece**, strip, plunder. 1H4 ii. 2. 86.  
**fleet**, pass away, vanish. John ii. 1. 285; prison of the Fleet. 2H4 v. 5. 94.  
**fleeting**, inconstant. R3 i. 7. 55; Luc. 212.  
**flesh**, make fierce and eager for combat. John v. 1. 71; 2H4 i. 1. 149; fed with flesh like hound trained for chase. H5 ii. 4. 50; hardened in bloodshed. H5 iii. 3. 11; R3 iv. 3. 6; initiate. 1H6 iv. 7. 36.  
**fleshed**, stained with blood. 1H4 v. 4. 130.  
**fleshy land**, land of flesh. John iv. 2. 245.  
**flexure**, bending. H5 iv. 1. 260.  
**flock**, tuft of wool. 1H4 ii. 1. 6.  
**flood**, sea. John iii. 4. 1; river. H5 i. 2. 45.  
**flourish**, ornament. R3 i. 3. 241; embellishment. Son. 60. 9.  
**flout**, mock, disdain. John ii. 1. 873; R3 ii. 1. 79.  
**flower-de-luce**, fleur de lis, emblem of France. H5 v. 2. 215; 1H6 i. 2. 80; i. 2. 99; 2H6 v. 1. 11.  
**fluxive**, flowing. Lov. C. 50.  
**fixing at the brook**, hawking at waterfowl. 2H6 ii. 1. 2.  
**fobbed**, put off, baffled. 1H4 i. 2. 60.  
**foil**, gold or silver leaf used as background for transparent gems to set off their lustre. R2 i. 3. 266; &c.; defeat. 1H6 iii. 3. 11; &c.  
**foin**, thrust. 2H4 ii. 1. 16.  
**foison**, plentiful harvest. Son. 53. 9.

**follow**, follow up, pursue to an end. 2H4 i. 1. 21.  
**folly**, wantonness. Luc. 851.  
**fond**, fondly, foolishly, foolishly. John ii. 1. 238; &c.  
**fondling**, darling. V. & A. 228.  
**fond on**, doting on. Son. 84. 14.  
**foot**, make or attach a foot to. 1H4 ii. 4. 118; foot-soldiers. 1H4 ii. 4. 557.  
**foot-boys**, boy-attendants. 1H6 iii. 2. 69.  
**footcloth**, large ornamental cloth laid over the back of a horse and hanging down to the ground on each side. 2H6 iv. 1. 54; iv. 7. 46; R3 iii. 4. 83.  
**footed**, landed. H3 ii. 4. 14.  
**footing**, upon the, having our feet set upon. John v. 1. 66.  
**foot land-rakers**, vagabond foot-pads. 1H4 ii. 1. 70.  
**for**, because. John ii. 1. 591; &c.; as. R2 ii. 3. 114; in spite of. 2H4 i. 1. 93; for want of. H5 i. 2. 114; for fear of. 2H6 iv. 1. 74; Son. 52. 4; with. 2H6 iv. 7. 83; in order that. 3H6 iii. 1. 9; iii. 2. 154; as regards. 3H6 iv. 3. 47; R3 v. 3. 474; for having stolen the whiteness of. Son. 99. 6.  
**forage**, prowl about for prey. John v. 1. 59; H5 i. 2. 110.  
**for because**, because. John ii. 1. 588.  
**force**, compel. 1H4 iii. 1. 134; weight, importance. 1H6 iii. 1. 156; 2H6 i. 3. 164; urge. H3 ii. 2. 2; regard, care for. Luc. 1021.  
**force of**, perforce. Lov. C. 223.  
**force perforce**, by very force, in spite of opposition. John iii. 1. 142; 2H4 iv. 1. 116; iv. 4. 46; 2H6 i. 1. 256.  
**forego**, put up with. John iii. 1. 207.  
**foregone**, past. Son. 30. 9.  
**forehand**, shaft, arrow for shooting point-blank. 2H4 iii. 2. 51.  
**foreign**, excluded, kept away. H3 ii. 2. 128.  
**foreign passages**, strange journeys. R2 i. 3. 272.  
**forespent**, spent previously. H5 ii. 4. 36.  
**forestall**, deprive of value by anticipation. 2H4 v. 2. 38; anticipate and prevent. Luc. 728.  
**forethink**, contemplate before-hand. 1H4 iii. 2. 38.  
**forethought**, contrived. John iii. 1. 812.  
**foreward**, vanguard. R3 v. 3. 294.  
**forfeit of my servant's life**, life which he has forfeited. R3 ii. 1. 100.  
**forfend**, forbid. R2 iv. 1. 129; 3H6 ii. 1. 191.  
**forged**, falsely framed. 1H6 iv. 1. 102; shape. H3 i. 2. 181.  
**forgery**, deceit. 3H6 iii. 3. 175.  
**forgetive**, inventive. 2H4 iv. 3. 99.

**form**, reason, explanation. Son. 89. 6.  
**formal**, precise, stiff. R3 iii. 1. 82.  
**for me**, on my side. R3 i. 1. 5.  
**forslow**, delay. 2H6 iii. 56.  
**forsook**, proved false, least. V. & A. 181.  
**forsooth**, in truth. 2H6 iii. 2. 183.  
**forspent**, worn out. 2H4 i. 1. 37; 3H6 ii. 3. 1.  
**forswearing**, swearing falsely, perjury. 1H4 v. 2. 38; R3 i. 4. 207.  
**forth**, out of. 1H6 i. 2. 51; 2H6 iii. 2. 89.  
**forthooming**, under arrest. 2H6 ii. 1. 176.  
**forth of**, away from. R3 iv. 4. 177.  
**fortune**, his fortune, his fate. 1H6 iv. 4. 39.  
**fortune, in the**, to the good fortune. 2H4 i. 1. 15.  
**for us**, as for us. H5 ii. 4. 113.  
**forward**, early. Son. 99. 1.  
**forward of**, eager for. 3H6 iv. 8. 46.  
**forwearied**, wearied. John ii. 1. 233.  
**for why**, because. Luc. 1222; P.P. 10. 8; 14. 24.  
**foster up**, bring up. John v. 2. 75.  
**foul**, ugly, unfavourable. 1H4 v. 1. 8; V. & A. 133; Son. 127. 6; Son. 137. 12; wrongfully. R3 iii. 2. 44.  
**founder**, disable, lame. 2H4 iv. 3. 35.  
**found me**, found it to be so in me. 1H4 i. 3. 3.  
**four by the day**, four o'clock in the morning. 1H4 ii. 1. 1.  
**foutra**, expression of contempt. 2H4 v. 3. 99, 117.  
**fox**, broadsword. H5 iv. 4. 9.  
**fracted**, broken. H5 ii. 1. 126.  
**frame**, compose. 1H4 iii. 1. 123; shape, prepare. H3 i. 2. 44.  
**frank**, sty. 2H4 ii. 2. 148; shut up in a sty. R3 i. 3. 314; iv. 5. 3; liberal. Son. 4. 4.  
**franklin**, freeholder; a man of the class next to the gentry. 1H4 ii. 1. 58.  
**free**, freely. H3 ii. 1. 82; generous. Son. 4. 4.  
**freely**, abundantly. H5 i. 2. 231.  
**free of**, untouched by. H3 ii. 4. 97.  
**frequent**, familiar. Son. 117. 5.  
**fret**, eat away. R2 iii. 3. 167; H3 iii. 2. 106; V. & A. 767; chafe. 1H4 iii. 2. 2; H5 iv. 7. 78; V. & A. 821; violently agitate. 3H6 ii. 6. 33.  
**fretful**, gnawing. 2H6 iii. 2. 403.  
**frets**, stops of a guitar. Luc. 1140.  
**friend**, befriend. H5 iv. 5. 17.  
**fright**, frighten. 2H4 v. 1. 67; H5 v. 2. 234.  
**from**, away from. John iv. 3. 151; &c.; above answering the challenge. H5 iv. 7. 134; free from. R3 iii. 5. 31; of. H3 iii. 2. 269; out of. Luc. 1144.  
**front**, oppose. 1H4 ii. 2. 59; face. H3 i. 2. 42; earliest part. Son. 102. 7.

**frontier**, forehead. 1H4 i. 3. 19; out-work, fortification. 1H4 ii. 3. 53.  
**rubbed off**, put off with excuses. 2H4 ii. 1. 34.  
**fulfil**, fill full. Luc. 1238; satisfy. Son. 136. 5.  
**fuller**, one who is employed in cleansing and thickening cloth. H8 i. 2. 33.  
**full-fraught**, best accomplished. H5 ii. 2. 139.  
**fulsome**, nauseous. John iii. 4. 32; R3 v. 3. 133.  
**furnished**, prepared. H8 ii. 2. 140.  
**furniture**, equipment. 1H4 iii. 3. 209; stores. 2H6 i. 3. 170.  
**furred pack**, pack made of skin with the hair outwards. 2H6 iv. 2. 49.  
**fury**, inspiration. Son. 100. 3.  
**fustian**, worthless, pretentious. 2H4 ii. 4. 193.  
**fustilarian**, term of abuse. 2H4 ii. 1. 61.

**gage**, pledge, pawn; especially the glove of a knight thrown down in challenge. R2 i. 1. 69; &c.  
**gain**, acquiring. R3 iii. 2. 47.  
**gainsay**, deny, contradict. 2H4 i. 1. 91; H8 ii. 4. 94.  
**gait**, walk, walking. 1H4 iii. 1. 134; 2H6 iii. 1. 373; H8 iii. 2. 117.  
**gall**, injure, annoy. John iv. 3. 94. 95; &c.; harass. H5 i. 2. 151; jest bitterly. H5 v. 1. 76.  
**gallant-springing**, growing up in beauty. R3 i. 4. 226.  
**galled**, worn away. H5 iii. 1. 12; Luc. 1440; sore with weeping. R3 iv. 4. 53.  
**Gallia**, France. 3H6 v. 3. 8.  
**Gallian**, French. 1H6 v. 4. 139.  
**galliard**, lively dance. H5 i. 2. 252.  
**gallow-glasses**, heavy-armed Irish foot-soldiers. 2H6 iv. 9. 26.  
**gamester**, player. H5 iii. 6. 113; merry, frolicsome person. H8 i. 4. 45.  
**gan**, began. 2H4 i. 1. 129.  
**gap**, opening, road. H8 v. 1. 36.  
**gaping**, shouting. H8 v. 4. 3.  
**garb**, style, manner. H5 v. 1. 78.  
**garish**, gaudy. R3 iv. 4. 89.  
**garland**, crown. 2H4 v. 2. 84; R3 iii. 2. 40.  
**Garter**, Order of the Garter. R3 iv. 4. 397.  
**gather head**, draw your forces together. 2H8 iv. 3. 10.  
**gaudy**, gay. Son. 1. 10.  
**gave**, misgave. H5 v. 3. 109; impute to. H8 iii. 2. 263.  
**gave out**, reported. 2H4 iv. 1. 23.  
**gawd**, brightness. John iii. 3. 36.  
**gaze**, that which is gazed at. Son. 5. 2.  
**gaze, at**, gazing about. Luc. 1149.  
**gear**, matter, business. 2H6 i. 4. 13; 2H6 iii. 1. 91; R3 i. 4. 155.

**gelded**, deprived. R2 ii. 1. 238.  
**gelding**, cutting off from. 1H4 iii. 1. 111.  
**general**, commander. Son. 134. 7.  
**generation**, progeny. R2 v. 5. 8.  
**gentle**, noble, well-born. H5 iv. chor. 45; R3 i. 3. 73, 163; ennobled. H5 iv. 3. 63.  
**gentles**, gentlefolk. H5 chor. 1. 8.  
**gentry**, nobility. Luc. 569.  
**George**, the jewel which forms part of the insignia of the Order of the Garter. 2H6 iv. 1. 29; R3 i. 4. 367.  
**gesture**, position, movement. H5 iv. chor. 25.  
**ghost**, corpse. 2H6 iii. 2. 181.  
**ghostly father**, father confessor. 3H6 iii. 2. 107.  
**gibber**, hang. 2H4 iii. 2. 273.  
**gib cat**, old tom-cat. 1H4 i. 2. 75.  
**giddy**, dizzy. 2H4 iii. 1. 18; R3 i. 4. 17; light, easily moved. 2H4 iv. 5. 212; 1H6 iii. 1. 83; uncertain. H5 i. 2. 145.  
**giglot**, wanton. 1H6 iv. 7. 41.  
**gilt**, smeared. John ii. 1. 316; gold. H5 ii. chor. 28.  
**gimmal**, double, or made of double rings. H5 iv. 2. 49; contrivance. 1H6 i. 2. 41.  
**gin**, spring. 3H6 i. 4. 81.  
**gird**, gibe, jeer. 2H4 i. 2. 6; beslege. H5 i. 2. 152; iii. chor. 27; rebuke. 1H6 iii. 1. 131; invest. 2H6 i. 1. 63.  
**give**, put. 1H6 i. 3. 29; ascribe. Son. 115. 14.  
**give off**, put off. John v. 1. 27.  
**give out**, give over. 2H6 iv. 8. 23.  
**give way**, allow to go first, leave the way clear for. John i. 1. 136; H8 iii. 2. 16.  
**given**, disposed. 1H4 iii. 3. 11.  
**glad**, make glad, delight. H8 ii. 4. 194; v. 1. 71.  
**gleaned**, that may be gleaned. H5 i. 2. 151.  
**gleek**, scoff. H5 v. 1. 76; 1H6 iii. 2. 123.  
**glister**, glitter, shine. John v. 1. 54; &c.  
**glose**, discourses. R2 ii. 1. 10.  
**gloss**, superficial lustre, deceit. 1H6 iv. 1. 103; H8 v. 3. 71.  
**glose**, interpret. H5 i. 2. 40.  
**gluttoning**, feeding voraciously. Son. 72. 14.  
**gnarling**, snarling. R2 i. 3. 292; 2H6 iii. 1. 192.  
**go**, pass from your thoughts. 2H6 ii. 3. 47; walk. Son. 51. 14; 130. 11.  
**go about**, attempt, prepare. H5 iv. 1. 202; 2H6 ii. 1. 144; V. & A. 319; intend. H8 i. 1. 131.  
**gobbets**, pieces. 2H6 iv. 1. 85; v. 2. 68.  
**God before**, God being our leader, or I swear by God. H5 i. 2. 307; iii. 6. 157.  
**God-den**, good evening. H5 iii. 2. 63.

- going-out, expedition. H8 i. 1. 73.  
**Goliases**, Goliaths. 1H6 i. 2. 33.  
**gone**, dead. John iii. 4. 163.  
**gone out**, taken flight at the game. 2H6 ii. 1. 4.  
**good**, goodness. H8 iv. 2. 60.  
**good cheap**, cheap. 1H4 iii. 3. 46.  
**good den**, good evening. John i. 1. 185.  
**good leave**, permission. H5 v. 2. 88.  
**goodman**, yeoman. 1H4 ii. 4. 95.  
**good-nights**, good-night salutations. 2H4 iii. 2. 328.  
**goods**, good. John iv. 2. 64.  
**good sooth**, in truth. 2H4 ii. 4. 36.  
**good time**, in, opportunity. R3 ii. 1. 45.  
**good time of day**, good day. R3 i. 1. 122.  
**good-year**, a meaningless explication. 2H4 ii. 4. 60, 181.  
**gorbellied**, big-bellied. 1H4 ii. 2. 90.  
**gossips**, godparents, hence of much influence. R3 i. 1. 83; godparents. H8 v. 5. 12.  
**got**, acquired, got for certain. 2H6 v. 3. 20.  
**governance**, government. 2H6 i. 3. 48.  
**government**, self-control. 1H4 i. 2. 27; &c.; command. 1H4 iv. 1. 19.  
**grace**, service, honour. 1H4 iii. 1. 181; ornament. H5 ii. prol. 28.  
**graced**, blessed. R3 iv. 2. 175.  
**graceless**, impious, profligate. 1H6 v. 4. 14; 2H6 iv. 4. 38.  
**gracious**, kind, full of grace. John iii. 4. 11; R3 ii. 4. 20; Son. 62. 5.  
**graft**, graft. 2H4 v. 3. 3; Luc. 1062.  
**graft**, grafted. 2H6 iii. 2. 214; R3 iii. 7. 126.  
**grafter**, the original tree from which a scion has been taken for grafting. H5 iii. 5. 9.  
**grailed**, forked. Nov. C. 64.  
**gratimercy**, many thanks. R3 iii. 2. 105.  
**grandam**, grandmother. John i. 1. 163; 1H4 iii. 1. 34.  
**grant**, in, by grant. H5 ii. 4. 121; assent. 3H6 iii. 3. 130.  
**grapple**, come to close quarters, strive. 1H4 i. 3. 197.  
**grate on**, oppress, be burdensome to. 2H4 iv. 1. 90.  
**gratulate**, congratulate. R3 iv. 1. 10.  
**grave**, day in grave. R2 iii. 2. 140; solemn. 1H6 v. 1. 54; engrave, mark. V. & A. 376; Luc. 755.  
**grazing**, damage done by a spent ball. H5 iv. 3. 105.  
**great**, grown great with what could be said. R2 ii. 1. 225.  
**greeting**, agreeable, pleasant. Son. 114. 11.  
**green**, new, fresh. 2H4 iv. 5. 202.  
**greenly**, foolishly. H5 v. 2. 147.  
**greens**, fields. John ii. 4. 242.  
**grief**, sad tales. R2 v. 1. 43; physical pain. 1H4 i. 3. 51; v. 1. 134.  
**grievance**, 1H4 iv. 3. 42; H5 i. 2. 56; pain, sorrow. 2H4 iii. 1. 143.  
**grind**, make sharp. Son. 10. 14.  
**gripe**, griffin. Luc. 543.  
**grisly**, terrible. 1H6 i. 4. 47.  
**groat**, gold worth 4d. 2H4 i. 2. 237; H5 v. 1. 60; 2H6 iii. 1. 113.  
**gross**, grossly, palpable, palpably, manifestly. H5 ii. 2. 103, 107; Son. 99. 5; stupid, stupidly. John iii. 1. 163, 168; R3 iii. 6. 10; iv. 1. 79.  
**ground**, air on which variations are made. R3 iii. 7. 48.  
**grow to**, be part of. 2H4 i. 2. 89.  
**guard**, trim, ornament. John iv. 2. 10; 2H4 iv. 1. 34; H8 prol. 16.  
**guardant**, guard, sentinel. 1H6 iv. 7. 9.  
**guerdoned**, rewarded, recompensed. 2H6 i. 4. 47; 3H6 iii. 3. 191.  
**gulf**, whirlpool. H5 ii. 4. 10.  
**gull**, bird. 1H4 v. 1. 60; dupe, fool. R3 i. 3. 328.  
**gummed velvet**, velvet stiffened with gum. 1H4 ii. 2. 2.  
**gun-stones**, stone cannon-balls. H5 i. 2. 282.  
**guat**, taste. Son. 114. 11.  
**gyves**, fetters. 1H4 iv. 2. 40.  
**habiliments**, accoutrements. R2 i. 3. 28.  
**habits**, dress. 1H4 i. 2. 176.  
**habitude**, condition of body. Lov. C. 114.  
**had**, would have. H5 iv. 1. 285.  
**haggled**, hacked, mangled. H5 iv. 6. 11.  
**hair**, nature, texture. 1H4 iv. 1. 61.  
**halcyon**, calm, peaceful. 1H6 i. 2. 131.  
**hale**, drag. 2H4 v. 5. 35; 2H6 iv. 1. 131.  
**half-face**, thin face. John i. 1. 92.  
**half-faced**, thin-faced, poor. 1H4 i. 3. 208; 2H4 iii. 2. 274; with only half the face visible. 2H6 iv. 1. 98.  
**half-faced groat**, term applied contemptuously to a thin-faced man. John i. 1. 94.  
**half-kirtle**, kirtle about half the usual length. 2H4 v. 4. 23.  
**Half-moon**, name of a room in an inn. 1H4 ii. 4. 27.  
**half-sword**, at, at close quarters with swords. 1H4 ii. 4. 166.  
**Hallowmas**, the Feast of All Saints. R2 v. 1. 80.  
**halt**, go lamely. R3 i. 1. 423.  
**halting**, lame, hesitating. John v. 2. 174.  
**hammering**, devising, constructing. 2H6 i. 2. 47.  
**hampers**, entangle. 2H6 i. 3. 146.  
**Hampton**, Southampton. H5 ii. 2. 91.  
**hand**, at, by hand. John v. 2. 75.

**hand, hold**, be on an equality. John ii. 1. 494.

**hand, out of**, at once. 1H6 iii. 2. 102; 3H6 iv. 1. 63.

**handiwork**, work. R3 iv. 4. 51.

**handle**, speak of. H5 ii. 3. 37.

**hands**, size. 2H4 ii. 2. 63.

**hangs**, stays, suspend. 2H4 iv. 1. 213.

**hap**, fortune. R2 i. 1. 23; 2H6 iii. 1. 314; R3 i. 2. 17.

**haply**, perhaps. 2H4 i. 1. 32; &c.; fortunately. 3H6 ii. 5. 58.

**happier**, more fortunate. Son. 32. 8.

**happiest**, most favourable. H8 prol. 24.

**happily**, haply, perhaps. R2 v. 3. 22; 2H6 iii. 1. 306; H8 iv. 2. 10.

**happy**, fortunate. R2 iii. 1. 9; make happy. Son. 6. 65.

**happy man be his dole**, happiness be his lot, a proverbial expression. 1H4 ii. 2. 77.

**harbourage**, shelter, lodging. John ii. 1. 234.

**hard-favoured**, ugly, ill-featured. R2 v. 1. 14; &c.

**hardiment**, deed of daring. 1H4 i. 3. 101.

**hardiness**, bravery. H5 i. 2. 220.

**hardly**, with difficulty. R2 ii. 4. 2; 2H6 i. 4. 72; severely, harshly. H8 i. 2. 103.

**hard-ruled**, not easily managed. H8 iii. 2. 102.

**harlotry**, a term of opprobrium for a woman. 1H4 iii. 1. 198; buffoon, jesting. 1H4 ii. 4. 404.

**harness**, armour. John v. 2. 132; 1H4 iii. 2. 101.

**Harry ten shillings**, gold piece. 2H4 iii. 2. 229.

**hatch**, half-door. John i. 1. 171; v. 2. 138.

**hatches**, deck. R3 i. 4. 13.

**hateful-ly**, malignant-ly. R2 ii. 2. 137; V. & A. 940.

**haught**, haughty. R2 iv. 1. 254; 3H6 ii. 1. 169; R3 ii. 3. 28.

**haughty**, proud. 1H6 ii. 5. 79; iv. 1. 36; R3 iv. 2. 37.

**haunch**, the latter end. 2H4 iv. 4. 92.

**hautboy**, a wooden double-reed wind instrument. 2H4 iii. 2. 336.

**have**, hold for the time. 2H6 v. 3. 20.

**have at him**, blow at him. H8 ii. 2. 84.

**have done**, cease. R3 i. 3. 279.

**have through**, let me strike through. 2H6 iv. 8. 61.

**have with**, I'll go with. 1H6 ii. 4. 114; R3 iii. 2. 89.

**having**, possession. H8 ii. 3. 23; Lov. Com. 235.

**haviour**, behaviour. R2 i. 4. 77.

**haveo**, cry, give the order 'haveo' to the army for a sign of general spoliation. John ii. 1. 357.

**hasard**, winning opening in a tennis court. H5 i. 2. 263.

**he**, man. 3H6 i. 1. 46; H8 v. 3. 131.

**head**, chief men. 1H4 iv. 4. 28; force H5 ii. 2. 18; 1H6 i. 4. 100.

**head, make**, gather an army. 1H4 iii. 1. 65; 2H4 i. 1. 168; 3H6 ii. 1. 141.

**head of safety**, chief place of safety. 1H4 iv. 3. 103.

**head of war**, armed force. John v. 2. 113.

**headland**, strip of land in ploughed field left at the end of the furrows, or near the border. 2H4 v. 1. 14.

**heady**, headstrong. 1H4 ii. 3. 56; H5 i. 1. 34.

**heap**, gathering. R3 ii. 1. 53.

**hearken after**, give ear to, heed. R3 i. 1. 54.

**hearkened for**, sought to hear of, desired. 1H4 v. 4. 52.

**hear-say**, talk, report. Son. 21. 13.

**heart**, intent, will, spirit. 2H4 v. 3. 29; H8 i. 2. 1.

**heart-blood**, heart's blood. R2 iv. 1. 28; 1H6 i. 3. 82.

**hearten**, encourage. 3H6 ii. 2. 79; Luc. 235.

**heartless**, disheartened. Luc. 471.

**hearts**, courage. H5 iv. 1. 297.

**heat**, heated. John iv. 1. 61; stress of the battle. 2H4 iv. 3. 24.

**heavenly-harnessed team**, the horses of the Sun-god's chariot. 1H4 iii. 1. 271.

**heavily**, heavily, sadly, sad, sorrowful. 2H6 iii. 2. 346; &c.; gloomy, morose. Son. 98. 4; troublesome. V. & A. 156.

**hedge**, creep along by the hedge. H8 iii. 2. 39.

**height**, high degree. R2 i. 1. 189; highest degree. H8 i. 2. 214; angular altitude. Son. 116. 8.

**heinous**, wicked, sinful. John iii. 4. 90.

**heir**, daughter and heiress. 3H6 iv. 1. 48.

**held**, retained. H5 ii. 4. 94; thought. H8 i. 3. 47.

**helm**, helmet. H5 iv. 7. 154; R3 iii. 2. 11.

**help**, cure. Luc. 1822.

**helpless**, unavailing. R3 i. 2. 13; V. & A. 604; Luc. 1023; unprofitable. V. & A. 604; incurable. Luc. 756.

**hem**, cry, express disapproval by a sharp cough. 1H4 ii. 4. 16.

**hempen candle**, cant term for changing. 2H6 iv. 7. 88.

**hence**, henceforward. John v. 4. 29; 2H4 v. 5. 54.

**herald's coat**, the tabard or sleeveless coat of a herald. 1H4 iv. 2. 44.

**herb of grace**, rue. R2 iii. 4. 105.

**here**, at this point. 2H6 ii. 4. 77, 80.

**best**, behest, determination. 1H4 ii. 3. 63.  
**bid**, hasten. V. & A. 1189.  
**high-blown**, inflated. H8 iii. 2. 362.  
**highmost**, highest. Son. 7. 9.  
**high-reaching**, ambitious. R3 iv. 2. 31.  
**high-stomached**, of high spirit. R2 i. 1. 18.  
**high-swain**, haughty, angry. R3 ii. 2. 117.  
**hild**, held. Luc. 1257.  
**hilding**, base. 2H4 i. 1. 57; H5 iv. 2. 29.  
**hilt**, hilt, sword. H5 ii. chor. 9.  
**hind**, boor, peasant. 1H4 ii. 3. 16; 2H6 iii. 2. 271; iv. 2. 121.  
**hiren**, Irene, name of heroine in lost play by Peele. 2H4 iii. 4. 163.  
**his**, its. John iv. 3. 32, &c.  
**history**, record. 2H4 iv. 1. 203.  
**hitherto**, thus far. 1H4 iii. 1. 75.  
**hive**, head-covering. Lov. C. 8.  
**hoias**, hoist, heave. 2H6 i. 1. 167; R3 iv. 4. 623.  
**hold**, fortress. John v. 7. 19; 2H4 ind. 35; 3H6 i. 2. 52; restrain. John iv. 2. 82.  
**hold hand with**, be equal with. John ii. 1. 494.  
**hold in**, keep silence. 1H4 ii. 1. 80.  
**hold me pace**, keep pace with me, be my equal. 1H4 iii. 1. 49.  
**hold out**, if [my horse] holds out. R2 ii. 1. 300.  
**hollidame**, an oath. H8 v. 1. 117.  
**holpe**, helped. John i. 1. 240; R2 v. 5. 62.  
**holy-rood day**, Holy Cross Day, Sept. 14. 1H4 i. 1. 54.  
**home**, in full, with a home-thrust. 1H4 i. 3. 289.  
**homely**, plain, simple. 3H6 ii. 5. 22.  
**honesty**, chastity. 3H6 iii. 2. 72.  
**honey**, honeyed. R3 iv. 1. 78.  
**honey-suck**, blunder for 'homicide'. 2H4 ii. 1. 53.  
**honey-suckle**, blunder for 'homicidal'. 2H4 ii. 1. 51.  
**honour-owing**, honourable. H5 iv. 3. 8.  
**hooded**, covered, as a falcon before it was let fly at the game. H5 iii. 7. 115.  
**hook on**, attach yourself to her. 2H4 i. 1. 463.  
**hope**, expectation, expect. 1H4 i. 2. 212; H5 iii. 7. 73.  
**horae**, horses. 1H4 ii. 1. 3; Son. 91. 4; horses. 2H6 iv. 3. 12.  
**hose**, clothing for the legs. H5 iii. 7. 54.  
**hose and doublets**, in, i.e. without a cloak. 2H6 iv. 7. 49.  
**hot in question**, urgently discussed. 1H4 i. 1. 34.  
**hound of Crete**, ? bloodhound. H5 ii. 1. 75.  
**household**, of thy house. 2H6 v. 1. 201.

**house-keeping**, hospitality. 2H6 i. 1. 189.  
**how**, for how much. 2H4 ii. 2. 41, 53.  
**hue**, colour, form. Son. 20. 7.  
**huc and ocy**, pursuit of a felon. 1H4 ii. 4. 518.  
**hug**, he close, cuddle. John v. 2. 142.  
**hull**, float at the mercy of the waves. R3 iv. 4. 439; H8 ii. 4. 197.  
**humorous**, capricious, quick-tempered. John iii. 1. 119; &c.  
**humours**, dispositions, moods, whims, caprices. John ii. 1. 66; &c.; used without meaning. H5 ii. 1. 57, 61, 72.  
**humours of blood**, natural moods. 2H4 ii. 3. 30.  
**hungry prey**, prey for which they hunger. 1H6 i. 2. 28.  
**hunt-counter**, one who hunts counter, or traces the scent backward. 2H4 i. 2. 91.  
**hurly**, hurly-burly, tumult, uproar. John iii. 4. 169; 1H4 v. 1. 78; 2H4 iii. 1. 25.  
**husband**, husbandman. 2H4 v. iii. 11; H8 iii. 2. 143.  
**husbandry**, management, ordering. H5 iv. 1. 7; Son. 13. 10; crops. H5 v. 2. 39.  
**huswife**, light woman, hussy. 2H4 iii. 2. 327; H5 v. 1. 82.  
**hydra**, a many-headed snake, whose heads grew again as fast as they were cut off. 1H4 v. 4. 25; 2H4 iv. 2. 38; H5 i. 1. 35.  
**Iceland dog**, shaggy sharp-eared white dog, much imported formerly as ladies' lap-dogs. H5 ii. 1. 44.  
**idea**, image. R3 iii. 7. 13.  
**idle**, empty. Son. 122. 3.  
**'ignis fatuus'**, will-o'-the-wisp. 1H4 iii. 3. 40.  
**ignominy**, shame, dishonour. 1H4 v. 4. 100.  
**ill**, evil intent. Luc. 304.  
**ill-erected**, erected for an ill purpose. R2 v. 1. 2.  
**ill-favouredly**, badly, ill. H5 iv. 2. 40.  
**ill-nurtured**, ill-bred. 2H6 i. 2. 42; V. & A. 134.  
**ill-wresting**, twisting to a bad sense. Son. 140. 119.  
**imagery**, pictures. R2 v. 2. 16.  
**imaginary**, imaginative. John iv. 2. 265; &c.  
**imagined wing**, wings of imagination. H5 iii. chor. 1.  
**imbar**, secure. H5 i. 2. 94.  
**imbrue**, pierce with weapons. 2H4 ii. 4. 201.  
**immunity**, ferocity. 1H6 v. i. 13.  
**immask**, disguise. 1H4 i. 2. 181.  
**immediate**, held directly of the sovereign. 2H4 iv. 5. 41.



- immortal title**, title of immortality. R2 i. 1. 24.  
**immaure**, shut up. V. & A. 1194; Lov. Com. 251.  
**imp**, scion, offshoot. 2H4 v. 5. 44; H5 iv. 1. 45; graft new feather's to a falcon's wing. R2 ii. 1. 292.  
**impaint**, depict. 1H4 v. 1. 80.  
**impale**, circle. 3H6 iii. 3. 189.  
**impart**, bestow, give. Luc. 1039; Son. 72. 8.  
**impawn**, pledge. 1H4 iv. 3. 108; put in hazard. H5 i. 2. 21.  
**impeach**, accuse, reproach. John ii. 1. 116; 1H4 i. 3. 75; 3H6 i. 4. 60; detract from. R2 i. 1. 189.  
**impeachment**, hindrance. H5 iii. 6. 143; accusation. R3 ii. 2. 22.  
**imperious**, imperial. V. & A. 996.  
**impleached**, interwined. Lov. Com. 205.  
**importance**, urgency. John ii. 1. 7.  
**impostumes**, abscess. V. & A. 743.  
**impreas**, device with a motto. R2 iii. 1. 25; compel to serve. 1H4 i. 1. 21.  
**imprimis**, firstly. 2H6 i. 1. 43.  
**impugn**, oppose. 2H6 iii. 1. 281.  
**in**, on. John i. 1. 99; R3 i. 4. 28; with. 2H4 i. 3. 7; into. H5 i. 2. 184; 2H6 iii. 2. 287; R3 i. 2. 260; by reason of. H5 i. 2. 193; by. R3 iv. 1. 2; concerning. H8 ii. 4. 101.  
**incapable**, unapt to receive impressions. R3 ii. 2. 18.  
**in capite**, a feudal term, to hold direct from the sovereign. 2H6 iv. 7. 121.  
**incensed**, incited. R3 iii. 1. 102; urge. H8 v. 1. 43.  
**incertain**, **incertainty**, uncertain, uncertainty. 2H4 i. 3. 24; Son. 115. 11.  
**inch**, at an, close at hand. 2H6 i. 4. 43.  
**incision**, cutting. 2H4 ii. 4. 200.  
**inclusive verge**, enclosing edge. R3 iv. 1. 58.  
**income**, entrance, advent. Luc. 334.  
**incontinent**, immediately. R2 v. 6. 48.  
**increaseful**, productive. Luc. 958.  
**indent**, enter into an engagement. 1H4 i. 3. 87; indentation. 1H4 iii. 1. 105; twist, turn. V. & A. 704.  
**indentures tripartite**, threefold agreement. 1H4 iii. 1. 81.  
**index**, prologue. R3 ii. 2. 148; iv. 4. 85.  
**indifferency**, absence of bias or favour. John ii. 1. 579; moderation. 2H4 iv. 3. 21.  
**indifferent**, impartial. R2 ii. 3. 118; H8 ii. 4. 15.  
**indifferently**, tolerably. H4 i. 1. 57.  
**indigest**, **indigested**, formless [mass], shapeless. John v. 7. 26; &c.  
**indirect**, crooked, false. John iii. 1. 275; 1H4 iv. 3. 105.  
**indirection**, malpractice. John iii. 1. 276.  
**indirectly**, wrongfully. John ii. 1. 49; H5 ii. 4. 94; by suggestion. R3 iv. 4. 226; artificially. Son. 67. 7.  
**indite**, blunder for 'invite'. 2H4 ii. 1. 28.  
**induction**, introduction. 1H4 iii. 1. 2; R3 i. 1. 32; iv. 4. 5.  
**insurance**, imprisonment. H8 v. 1. 122.  
**industrious**, laborious. John ii. 1. 376.  
**infant state**, youthful royalty. John ii. 1. 97.  
**infection**, disease. R2 ii. 1. 44.  
**infer**, imply. 2H4 v. 5. 14; allege, 3H6 ii. 2. 44; R3 iii. 5. 74; iii. 7. 12.  
**infinite**, boundless. H5 v. 2. 160.  
**infinite**, blunder for 'infinite'. 2H4 ii. 1. 24.  
**infortunate**, unfortunate. John ii. 1. 178; 2H6 iv. 9. 18.  
**infuse**, inspire. V. & A. 938.  
**ingrate**, **ingrateful**, ungrateful. John v. 2. 151; H5 ii. 2. 95.  
**inhabitable**, uninhabitable. R2 i. 1. 65.  
**in hand with**, taking in hand. V. & A. 912.  
**inheare**, bury. Son. 86. 3.  
**inherit**, put in possession of. R2 i. 1. 85; receives as his portion. R2 ii. 1. 83.  
**injuries**, wrongs, evils. 1H4 v. 1. 50.  
**injurious**, hurtful. R2 i. 1. 91; insolent. 2H6 i. 4. 49; 3H6 iii. 3. 78; unjust. 3H6 iii. 3. 101; hostile. Son. 44. 2.  
**inkhorn mate**, scribbler. 1H6 iii. 1. 99.  
**inly**, inward, inwardly. H5 iv. chor. 24; 3H6 i. 4. 171.  
**inquire out**, seek for. John v. 3. 115.  
**insinewed**, inspired with strength. 2H4 iv. 1. 172.  
**insinuate**, introduce stealthily, attempt to gain favour slyly. R2 iv. 1. 165; V. & A. 1012.  
**insinuation**, flattering speech. John v. 1. 68.  
**instalment**, establishment. R3 iii. 1. 163.  
**instance**, proof. 2H4 iii. 1. 103; 2H6 iii. 2. 159; motive. H5 ii. 2. 119; cause. R3 iii. 2. 25; token. Luc. 1611.  
**insulter**, assailer. V. & A. 550.  
**insulting**, exulting. 1H6 i. 2. 138.  
**insults**, glories. Son. 107. 12.  
**intelligence**, information brought by spies. John iv. 2. 116; 1H4 iv. 3. 98.  
**intelligencer**, secret agent. 2H4 iv. 2. 20; R3 iv. 4. 71.  
**intemperance**, lack of restraint. 1H4 iii. 2. 120.

**intend**, pretend. R3 iii. 4. 8; iii. 7. 44; Luc. 121; direct. Son. 27. 6.  
**intended**, intending to march. 1H4 iv. 1. 82; understood. 2H4 iv. 1. 186.

**intendment**, aim. H5 i. 2. 144; design. V. & A. 222.

**interchangeably**, by way of exchange, mutually. R2 i. 1. 146; v. 2. 98; 1H4 iii. 1. 82.

**interest**, claim. John v. 2. 89; 1H4 iii. 2. 98; Son. 31. 7; property. Son. 74. 3.

**interior**, inner. R3 i. 3. 65.

**intermissive**, intermittent. 1H6 i. 1. 88.

**interpreters**, agents. H8 i. 2. 82.

**interrogatory**, examination. John iii. 1. 147.

**intertissued**, interwoven. H5 iv. 1. 267.

**intervallum**, interval. 2H4 v. 1. 83.

**intiguled**, having a claim. Luc. 57.

**into**, unto. H5 i. 2. 102; ii. 2. 173.

**intreasured**, stored. 2H4 iii. 1. 85.

**intrude**, thrust into. Luc. 848.

**invasive**, of invasion. John v. 1. 69.

**invention**, imagination. V. & A. dedic.; Son. 38. 8.

**invested**, i.e. with authority. 2H4 iv. 4. 6.

**investing**, showing forth. H5 iv. chor. 26.

**investments**, vestments. 2H4 iv. 1. 45.

**inveterate**, old, long standing. John v. 2. 14; R2 i. 1. 14.

**invincible**, error for 'invisible'. 2H4 iii. 2. 323.

**invioleable**, not to be broken. 3H6 ii. 1. 30.

**invisid**, unseen. Lov. C. 212.

**invocate**, invoke. 1H6 i. 1. 52; R3 i. 2.

**inward**, intimate. R3 iii. 4. 8; inside, palm. Son. 128. 6.

**irk**, grieve. 1H6 i. 4. 105; 3H6 ii. 2. 6.

**iron**, stubborn. 2H4 v. 2. 8.

**iron-witted**, dull-witted. R3 iv. 2. 28.

**irregular**, lawless. 1H4 i. 1. 40.

**issue**, shed tears. H5 iv. 6. 34; descendants. H8 iii. 2. 292.

**it**, he. 2H4 ii. 4. 72.

**item**, likewise, used of each particular in enumeration. 1H4 ii. 4. 546; 2H6 i. 1. 49; H8 iii. 2. 321.

**iteration**, repetition. 1H4 i. 2. 92.

**itself**, its natural self. Son. 68. 10.

**I wis**, certainly. R3 i. 3. 102.

**Jack**, term of contempt. 1H4 ii. 4. 11; iii. 3. 88; R3 i. 3. 72; figure which struck bell in old clocks. R2 v. 5. 60; R3 iv. 2. 113.

**jack-an-apes**, monkey, a contemptuous term. H5 v. 2. 645.

**jacks**, keys of virginal. Son. 128. 5. 13.

**Jack-sauce**, saucy Jack. H5 iv. 7. 139.

**jade**, term of pity or contempt for ill-treated or ill-conditioned horse. R2 iii. 3. 179; &c.; treat with contempt. H8 iii. 2. 281.

**jaded**, worn out. 2H6 iv. 1. 52.

**jar**, tick. R2 v. 5. 51; quarrel. 1H6 i. 1. 44; iii. 1. 70; V. & A. 100; discord. 2H6 iv. 8. 41.

**jaunting**, prancing. R2 v. 5. 94.

**jealous**, apprehensive. V. & A. 321.

**jealousy**, suspicion. H5 ii. 2. 126.

**jennet**, Spanish horse. V. & A. 260.

**jest**, amusement, pleasure. R2 i. 3. 95.

**jet**, encroach. R3 ii. 4. 51.

**Joan**, general name for a female rustic. John i. 1. 184.

**Joan**, old, name of a hawk. 2H6 ii. 1. 4.

**joint-stool**, folding chair. 1H4 ii. 4. 386; 2H4 ii. 4. 254.

**Jordan**, chamber-pot. 1H4 ii. 1. 21; 2H4 ii. 4. 34.

**jot**, least possible amount. R3 ii. 1. 71.

**journey-bated**, worn with travelling. 1H4 iv. 3. 26.

**journeyman**, skilled hired worker. R2 i. 3. 274.

**joy**, glad. John iii. 4. 107; be glad. R2 ii. 3. 15; v. 3. 94; H4 ii. 1. 12;

enjoy. R2 v. 6. 26; 2H6 iii. 2. 365; gladden. R3 i. 2. 220; have delight. R3 iv. 4. 93.

**juggler**, trickster, cheat. 2H4 ii. 4. 132.

**jump**, agree. 1H4 i. 2. 70; R3 iii. 1. 11.

**just**, joust, tournament. R2 v. 2. 52; precise, punctual. H5 iv. 7. 115; Son. 109. 7; as good as his word. R3 i. 1. 36.

**justify**, maintain as true, testify. H8 i. 2. 6.

**justling**, jostling, busy. 1H4 iv. 1. 18.

**jutty**, project beyond. H5 iii. 1. 18.

**juvenile**, youth. 2H4 i. 2. 19.

**kecksies**, dry hemlock stems. H5 v. 2. 52.

**keech**, roll of tallow. H8 i. 1. 55.

**keeps**, guards. Son. 133. 11.

**ken**, sight, perception. 2H4 iv. 1. 151; 2H6 iii. 2. 113; Luc. 1114; discern. 2H6 iii. 2. 101.

**Kendal green**, species of green woollen cloth. 1H4 ii. 4. 224, 234.

**kennel**, gutter. 2H6 iv. 1. 71.

**kept**, dwelt, held the place. 1H4 i. 3. 244.

**kern**, light-armed Irish foot-soldier. R2 ii. 1. 157; H5 iii. 7. 54; 2H6 iii. 1. 310.

**key-cold**, cold as a key. R3 i. 2. 5; Luc. 1774.

**misadventure**, trifle. 2H4 v. 1. 28.  
**kill**, cry of troops charging the enemy. V. & A. 632.  
**Killingworth**, Kenilworth. 2H6 iv. 4. 33, 44.  
**kin**, relation, relationship, related. R2 iv. 1. 141; 2H4 ii. 2. 119.  
**kind**, manner. R2 ii. 3. 143; kin. R2 iv. 1. 141; nature. Luc. 1147; 1242; natural. Luc. 1423.  
**kindle**, incite. John i. 1. 33.  
**kindly**, natural. 2H4 iv. 5. 82; appropriate. 1H6 iii. 1. 131.  
**kindness**, kind feeling, affection. Son. 152. 9.  
**king christen**, Christian king. 1H4 ii. 1. 18.  
**kinged**, made a king. R2 v. 5. 36; furnished with a king. H5 ii. 4. 23.  
**kingly**, royally. Son. 114. 10.  
**kirtle**, jacket with petticoat attached. 2H4 ii. 4. 231.  
**knock it**, sound, strike up. H8 i. 4. 108.  
**knot**, laid out garden. R2 iii. 4. 46.  
**knot-pated**, knotty-pated, block-headed. 1H4 ii. 4. 71, 229.  
**know**, become familiar with. 1H4 iv. 3. 74.  
**labour**, labour for. R3 i. 4. 252.  
**lace**, to adorn as with lace or embroidery. Son. 67. 4.  
**lackey**, hanger-on, camp follower. R3 v. 3. 318.  
**lade**, empty, drain. 3H6 iii. 2. 139.  
**lag**, late. R3 ii. 1. 91.  
**lag-end**, fag-end, last part. 1H4 v. 1. 24; H8 i. 3. 35.  
**laid**, beset, waylaid. 2H6 iv. 10. 4.  
**lanced**, pierce. R3 iv. 4. 225.  
**lane**, path. 3H6 i. 4. 9.  
**lap**, wrap. R3 ii. 1. 116.  
**lard**, enrich, fatten. 1H4 ii. 2. 112; H5 iv. 6. 8.  
**large**, at, in full. R2 iii. 1. 41.  
**largess**, bounty. R2 i. 4. 44.  
**'larum bell**, alarm-bell. 2H4 iii. 1. 17.  
**lasting**, everlasting. John iii. 4. 27.  
**latch**, catch, lay hold of. Son. 113. 6.  
**late**, lately appointed. H5 ii. 2. 61; recent. H8 iv. 1. 31; lasting till lately. H8 iv. 1. 33.  
**latter**, last. 1H6 ii. v. 33.  
**laud**, praise. 1H4 iii. 3. 149; 2H4 iv. 5. 234.  
**laugh**, smile on me. 2H6 ii. 4. 83.  
**laund**, lawn, glade. 3H6 iii. 1. 2; V. & A. 813.  
**launder**, wash. Lov. C. 17.  
**lavish**, lavishly, unrestrained, extravagant. 2H4 iv. 2. 57; iv. 4. 64.  
**lavolta**, waltz-like dance. H5 iii. 5. 33.  
**lawn**, fine linen, resembling cambric. Luc. 258.  
**lay**, wager, stake. 2H6 v. 2. 27; resided. H8 iv. 1. 28; lay on. Son. 101. 7.

**lay apart**, put aside. H5 ii. 4. 78.  
**lay by**, put on one side. 1H4 i. 2. 37.  
**lay by the heels**, imprison. H8 v. 4. 77.  
**lay down**, prepare. H5 i. 2. 137.  
**layer up**, one who fixes the amount. H5 v. 2. 236.  
**lay up**, fold up, put away. 2H4 v. 1. 87.  
**leazar**, leper. H5 i. 1. 15.  
**leaden**, dull, & leaden-hilted. 1H4 ii. 4. 387.  
**leading**, generalship. 1H4 iv. 3. 19.  
**lean**, meagre. 1H4 i. 2. 74.  
**lean-looking**, lean-faced. R2 ii. 4. 11.  
**lean-witted**, with few wits, brainless. R2 ii. 1. 115.  
**leaping-houses**, brothels. 1H4 i. 2. 9.  
**learn**, teach. R2 iv. 1. 120.  
**leas**, arable land. H5 v. 2. 44.  
**leash**, a set of three. 1H4 ii. 4. 27.  
**leather-coats**, golden russetings, kind of apples. 2H4 v. 3. 41.  
**leave**, leave off, desist. 2H6 ii. 1. 179; iii. 2. 333; H8 iv. 2. 94; license. 3H6 iii. 2. 33; V. & A. 568.  
**leave, give us**, courteous form of dismissal. 1H4 iii. 2. 1.  
**leave, good**, full permission. 1H4 i. 3. 20.  
**lecture**, reading, text. R2 iv. 1. 232; Luc. 618.  
**leer**, gape slyly. 2H4 v. 5. 6.  
**leese**, lose. Son. 144.  
**leg**, bow. R3 iii. 3. 175; 1H4 ii. 4. 394.  
**legerity**, lightness, nimbleness. H5 iv. 1. 23.  
**leisure**, time at one's own disposal. R2 i. 1. 5; R3 v. 3. 98, 239; H8 iii. 2. 141.  
**leisures**, leisure hours. Lov. Com. 193.  
**leman**, sweetheart. 2H4 v. 3. 46.  
**lendings**, money advanced to soldiers when the regular pay cannot be given. R2 i. 1. 89.  
**lend me thy hand**, help me. 1H4 ii. 4. 2.  
**length**, long. R2 iv. 1. 11; prolong. P.P. xiv. 30.  
**lesson**, teach, instruct. R3 i. 4. 245.  
**let**, hindrance. H5 v. 2. 65; Luc. 330, 646; forbear. Luc. 10; hinder. Luc. 328.  
**let him**, let him pass. 1H4 i. 1. 91.  
**let him be**, even though he be. H8 iv. 2. 147.  
**let slip**, loose hounds from the leash in order to begin the chase. 1H4 i. 3. 279.  
**level**, aim. 3H6 ii. 2. 16; &c.; take aim. Lov. Com. 22.  
**lewd**, vile, base. R2 i. 1. 60; 1H4 iii. 2. 13; R3 i. 3. 61.  
**lewdly**, wickedly. 2H6 ii. 1. 164.  
**liable**, bound to. John ii. 1. 490; v. 2. 161; apt. iv. 2. 226.  
**liberal**, free. R2 ii. 1. 230.

- lie, lodge. 1H4 i. 2. 129; 2H4 iv. 2. 98; 1H6 iii. 2. 129.  
 lie, be imprisoned. R3 i. 1. 115.  
 lie, willingly. 1H4 i. 2. 18; 2H4 i. 2. 41; H5 iii. 1. 61.  
 lie, dearest. 2H4 iii. 1. 184.  
 lies, charges of falsehood. R2 iv. 1. 53.  
 lien, in, in exchange. John v. 4. 44; H5 i. 2. 265.  
 lie, lie. H5 iii. 2. 116.  
 liggins, by God's, an oath. 2H4 v. 3. 65.  
 light, alight. R2 i. 1. 82; 1H4 i. 1. 63; 2H4 i. 3. 91; lightly. R2 i. 3. 298; Son. 83. 1.  
 lighten, enlighten. 2H4 ii. 1. 194.  
 light-foot, light-footed. R3 ix. 4. 441.  
 lightly, readily. H5 ii. 2. 88; usually. R3 iii. 1. 94.  
 like, likely. John iii. 4. 49; &c.; compare. 2H4 ii. 1. 91; 1H6 iv. 6. 48; equally. H5 ii. 2. 183; please. H5 iii. chor. 32; &c.; same. R3 iv. 1. 9.  
 likelihood, probability. H5 v. chor. 29.  
 likely, giving promise. 2H4 i. 3. 63.  
 like of, care for. Son. 21. 13.  
 liking, condition. 1H4 iii. 3. 5.  
 limbeck, alembic. Son. 119. 2.  
 Limbo Patrum, slang term for 'prison'. H8 v. 4. 63.  
 lime, cement. 3H6 v. 1. 84.  
 limed, smear with bird-lime. 2H6 i. 3. 89; caught with lime. 3H6 v. 6. 13; Luc. 88.  
 lime-twig, twig smeared with bird-lime to catch birds. 2H6 iii. 3. 16.  
 limit, appoint. John v. 2. 123; R3 v. 3. 25; appointed time. R2 i. 3. 151; R3 iii. 3. 7.  
 line, strengthen. John iv. 3. 24; &c.; rank. 1H4 ii. 2. 85.  
 lineal, lineally descended. John ii. 1. 85; H5 i. 2. 82.  
 lines of life, living lines, i. e. children. Son. 16. 9.  
 linger, prolong. R2 ii. 2. 72; H5 ii. chor. 31.  
 link, torch used to light people along the streets. 1H4 iii. 3. 43.  
 linstock, stick holding gunner's match. H5 iii. chor. 93; 1H6 i. 4. 56. (stage direction).  
 liquor, moisten with oil. 1H4 ii. 1. 83.  
 list, listen. John ii. 1. 468; H5 i. 1. 43; Lov. C. 4; limit. 1H4 iv. 4. 4; H5 v. 2. 281; please. H8 ii. 2. 21; desire. V. & A. 664.  
 listen after, inquire after. 2H4 i. 1. 29; 2H6 i. 3. 150.  
 listened, listened to. R2 ii. 1. 9.  
 lither, yielding. 1H6 iv. 7. 21.  
 litter, vehicle containing a couch shut in by curtains. John v. 3. 16.  
 little, in, in miniature. Lov. C. 90.  
 little, in a, briefly. R3 ii. 1. 41.  
 lived, would live. 2H4 iii. 2. 99.  
 livelihood, appearance. H5 iii. 1. 55; vigour, life. V. & A. 23.  
 lively, living. Son. 67. 29; 153. 6.  
 liver, seat of the passions. 2H4 i. 2. 177.  
 livery, delivery of a freehold into the possession of its heir. R2 ii. 1. 205; ii. 3. 129; 1H4 iv. 3. 69; dress. Lov. C. 105.  
 leather, more reluctant. 2H6 iii. 2. 355.  
 loathly, loathsome. 2H4 iv. 4. 122.  
 lob, hang, drop. H5 iv. 2. 47.  
 load-star, pole-star. Luc. 179.  
 lodge, lay flat, beat down. R2 iii. 3. 162; 2H6 iii. 2. 176.  
 lodging, entering into the fold. H5 iii. 7. 33.  
 loggerheads, blockheads. 1H4 ii. 4. 4.  
 long, belong. H5 ii. 4. 80; H8 i. 2. 32.  
 long of, because of. 1H6 iv. 3. 23.  
 long-staff, long cudgel. 1H4 ii. 1. 77.  
 look, look for, expect. 2H4 i. 2. 43; H8 v. 4. 9.  
 look beyond, misjudge. 2H4 iv. 4. 67.  
 loose, discharge as an arrow. H5 i. 2. 207; H8 v. 4. 55; careless of speech. H8 ii. 1. 127.  
 loosely, carelessly. 2H4 ii. 2. 7; v. 2. 94.  
 lop, small branch or twig. H8 i. 2. 96.  
 lording, lord. 2H6 i. 1. 143.  
 lose, cause the loss of. 1H4 iii. 1. 186; forget. H8 ii. 1. 57.  
 loss, removal. H8 ii. 2. 30.  
 lout, bumpkin, clown. John ii. 1. 509; make a fool of. 1H6 iv. 3. 13.  
 love, love's. R2 ii. 3. 62.  
 Love, Venus, queen of love and beauty. V. & A. 328.  
 lowly, flying low. 1H6 iii. 3. 47.  
 lubber, blunder for 'leopard'. 2H4 ii. 1. 28.  
 lugged, baited. 1H4 i. 2. 75.  
 Lombard Street, Lombard Street. 2H4 ii. 1. 28.  
 lure, call or whistle to attract the hawk. V. & A. 1027.  
 lust, liking. Luc. 1384.  
 lust-breathed, breathing lust. Luc. 3.  
 lusty, bold, lively. 2H4 iii. 2. 17; Son. 2. 6.  
 luxurious, luxury, lascivious, lasciviousness. H5 ii. 5. 6; &c.  
 mad, foolish. 1H4 iv. 2. 35.  
 madding, becoming mad with love. 2H6 iii. 2. 117.  
 made up, finished. R3 i. 1. 21.

**magnanimity**, courage, nobility. 3H6 v. 1. 41.  
**maidenhead**, maidenhood. H8 ii. 3. 23.  
**Maid Marian**, a character in the morris-dance. 1H4 iii. 3. 118.  
**mailed up**, wrapped up. 2H6 ii. 4. 31.  
**maim**, injury. R2 i. 3. 156.  
**main**, hand at dice. 1H4 iv. 1. 47; chief point. 2H6 i. 1. 208; maim. 2H6 iv. 2. 182; general. H8 iv. 1. 31; flood. Son. 60. 5.  
**maintenance**, bearing. 1H4 v. 4. 22.  
**major**, major term of a syllogism. 1H4 ii. 4. 506.  
**majority**, pre-eminence. 1H4 iii. 2. 109.  
**make**, take. R2 i. 4. 39; draw out. 2H6 iv. 2. 92; do. R3 i. 3. 164.  
**make forth**, go forth. H5 ii. 4. 5.  
**makeless**, mateless. Son. 9. 4.  
**make shift**, manage. 2H6 iv. 8. 31.  
**make tender of**, have care for. 1H4 v. 4. 49.  
**make up**, go forward. John iii. 2. 5; 1H4 v. 4. 5. 58.  
**makings**, symbols. H8 iv. 1. 87.  
**malapert**, pert, saucy. 3H6 v. 5. 32; R3 i. 3. 255.  
**male**, mate. 3H6 v. 6. 15.  
**malevolent**, evil-disposed. 1H4 i. 1. 97.  
**malice**, hatred, ill-will. 1H6 iii. 1. 128; iv. 1. 408.  
**malmsey-butt**, butt of malmsey, a strong sweet wine. R3 i. 4. 158.  
**malmsey-nose**, red-nosed. 2H4 ii. 1. 39.  
**malt worms**, beer-drinkers. 1H4 ii. 1. 78; 2H4 ii. 4. 345.  
**mammet**, doll. 1H4 ii. 3. 93.  
**manage**, government. John i. 1. 37; measures of control. R2 i. 4. 39; handle. R2 iii. 2. 118; 2H4 iii. 2. 282; training and breaking-in of horses. R2 iii. 3. 179; &c.  
**mandrake**, root supposed to bear human shape, and to shriek when pulled out of the ground, causing madness or death to the hearer. 2H4 i. 2. 15; 2H6 iii. 2. 310.  
**manhood**, courage. 3H6 iv. 2. 20.  
**manifest**, evident. 1H6 i. 3. 33.  
**manned**, provided for or with a man. 2H4 i. 2. 16, 54.  
**manner**, in, in a manner. R2 iii. 1. 11.  
**manners**, decorum. Son. 85. 1.  
**manner**, with the, in the act. 1H4 ii. 4. 319.  
**manors**, estates. R2 iv. 1. 212.  
**man-queller**, murderer. 2H4 ii. 1. 54.  
**manual**, from my hand. R2 iv. 1. 25.  
**many**, multitude. 2H4 i. 3. 97.  
**map**, picture, image. R2 v. 1. 12; &c.

**mar**, cause hurtfully. V. & A. 478.  
**marches**, borders. H5 i. 2. 140; 3H6 ii. 1. 140.  
**mare**, nightmare. 2H4 ii. 1. 78.  
**marish**, marsh. 1H6 i. 1. 50.  
**margenta**, margins. Luc. 102.  
**mark**, thirteen shillings and fourpence. John ii. 1. 530; &c.; listen to. 1H4 i. 2. 87; R3 i. 3. 349.  
**marry**, interjection=indeed, to be sure, &c. R2 i. 4. 16; &c.  
**Martlemas**, Martinmas, November 11, supposed to be a time of fair weather, applied to a hale old man. 2H4 ii. 2. 103.  
**master**, own. 1H4 v. 2. 63; Son. 106. 8.  
**match**, agreement. V. & A. 586.  
**matching**, corresponding. H5 ii. 4. 130.  
**match**, set a, made an appointment for a robbery. 1H4 i. 2. 108.  
**mate**, confound. 2H6 iii. 1. 265; V. & A. 309; match, cope with. H8 iii. 2. 275.  
**matter**, material. John v. 2. 85.  
**matter**, no such, nothing of the kind. 2H4 ind. 15; Son. 87. 14.  
**maund**, basket. Lov. Com. 36.  
**maw**, stomach. John v. 37; H5 ii. 1. 51.  
**may**, can. John v. 4. 21; &c.  
**mazed**, amazed. H8 ii. 4. 183.  
**meagre**, lean. John iii. 4. 85.  
**mean**, intend. John iii. 4. 119; means. 1H4 i. 3. 281; 1H6 ii. 2. 10; H8 v. 3. 146; moderation, medium. 1H6 i. 2. 121.  
**means**, make, use efforts, take steps. R3 v. 3. 249.  
**measure**, music of stately dance. John iii. 1. 364; stately dance. R2 i. 3. 291; &c.; dancing. H5 v. 2. 139.  
**mechanical**, mean. 2H4 v. 5. 36; mechanic. 2H6 i. 3. 194.  
**medicine potable**, cordial. 2H4 iv. 5. 161.  
**medicines**, love-potions. 1H4 ii. 2. 18.  
**meed**, merit. 3H6 ii. 1. 36; iv. 8. 38.  
**meet**, meetest, meetest, proper, fitting, &c. H5 i. 2. 254; &c.  
**meetness**, fitness. Son. 118. 7.  
**melting**, tender, pitiful. 2H4 iv. 4. 32.  
**memento mori**, reminder of death, such as a skull or other symbolical object. 1H4 iii. 3. 32.  
**memorize**, make memorable. H8 iii. 2. 52.  
**mercenary blood**, blood of mercenary, or hired, soldiers. H5 iv. 7. 75.  
**merchandized**, exposed as merchandise, bartered. Son. 102. 3.  
**merchant**, chap, fellow. 1H6 ii. 3. 57.  
**mercy**, cry, beg forgiveness. 1H4 i. 3. 212; 2H6 i. 3. 240; R3 i. 3. 235.

- mere**, absolute, downright. R3 iii. 7. 231; H8 iii. 2. 330.  
**merit**, reward. R2 i. 3. 156.  
**mermaid**, used for 'siren', who drew sailors to their death by sweet singing. 3H6 iii. 2. 186; V. & A. 429; Luc. 1411.  
**marvellous**, marvellous. H5 ii. 1. 49.  
**mess**, sufficient to make a dish. 2H4 ii. 1. 98; party of four. 3H6 i. 4. 73.  
**met**, reached, came to. 2H4 iv. 5. 184.  
**mete**, measure, judge. 2H4 iv. 4. 77.  
**mew up**, imprison. R3 i. 1. 98, 132.  
**mischer**, truant. 1H4 ii. 4. 416.  
**mickle**, great. H5 ii. 1. 68; 1H6 iv. 6. 35; 2H6 v. 1. 174.  
**mid**, middle. R3 v. 3. 78.  
**middest**, midst. 2H6 iv. 8. 61.  
**might**, could. John ii. 1. 325; H5 iv. 5. 21.  
**milk**, giving milk. V. & A. 875.  
**Mile-end Green**, the usual ground for drill and sports. 2H4 iii. 2. 288.  
**milliner**, vendor of fancy wares. 1H4 i. 3. 36.  
**millioned**, numbered by the million. Son. 115. 5.  
**mincing**, affected. 1H4 iii. 1. 133; affected daintiness. H8 ii. 3. 31.  
**mind**, call to mind. H5 iv. chor. 63; remind. H5 iv. 3. 13; intend. 3H6 iv. 1. 8, 106; memory. H8 iii. 2. 129; thought. Son. 58. 8.  
**mind**, royal, devotion to the king. H8 iv. i. 8.  
**minion**, favourite. John ii. 1. 392; &c.; pert, saucy person. 2H6 i. 3. 139.  
**minister**, agent. 2H6 iii. 1. 355.  
**misbegotten**, illegitimate. John v. 4. 4; R2 i. 1. 33.  
**misgarry**, perish. 2H4 iv. 1. 129; &c.  
**misconceived**, misjudging. 1H6 v. 4. 49.  
**miscreate**, created unnaturally. H5 i. 2. 16.  
**misdeemean**, misbehave. H8 v. 3. 14.  
**misdoubt**, apprehension. 2H4 iv. 1. 206; mistrust. 2H6 iii. 1. 332; 3H6 v. 6. 14; R3 iii. 2. 86.  
**misery**, wretch. 1H6 v. 4. 7.  
**misgoverning**, misconduct. Luc. 64.  
**mislike**, dislike. 3H6 iv. 1. 24.  
**misordered**, disordered. 2H4 iv. 2. 33.  
**misprision**, misunderstanding, error. 1H4 i. 3. 27; Son. 87. 11.  
**misproud**, wrongly proud. 3H6 ii. 6. 7.  
**misquote**, misinterpret. 1H4 v. 2. 13.  
**miss**, loss. 1H4 v. 4. 105; misdoing. V. & A. 53.  
**mistaken**, misjudged. H8 i. 1. 195.  
**mistempered**, disordered. John v. 1. 12.  
**mistful**, misty, tearful. H5 ii. 3. 34.  
**misthink**, think ill of. 3H6 iii. 2. 106.  
**mistook**, mistaken. John ii. 1. 374; &c.  
**mistreadings**, misdeeds. 1H4 iii. 2. 11.  
**mistress-court**, chief court, a term in tennis. H5 ii. 4. 133.  
**mistrustful**, producing mistrust or fear. V. & A. 826.  
**misuse**, ill-usage. 1H4 i. 1. 43.  
**mock**, mocking, ridicule, jest at. John v. 1. 72; R2 ii. 1. 85.  
**mockery**, mimic, imitation. R2 iv. 1. 290; H5 iv. chor. 53.  
**mode**, fashion, form. 2H4 iv. 5. 198.  
**model**, copy, image. R2 i. 2. 28; H5 ii. chor. 16; H8 iv. 2. 133; mould, pattern. R2 iii. 2. 153; plot. R2 v. 1. 11; plan. 2H4 i. 3. 42; R3 v. 3. 24.  
**modern**, ordinary, commonplace. John iii. 4. 42; Son. 83. 7.  
**modest**, moderate. H8 v. 3. 69.  
**modesty**, with, without self-conceit. H8 v. 3. 64.  
**module**, counterfeit. John v. 7. 58.  
**moes**, more. John v. 4. 17; &c.  
**moisty**, part, share. 1H4 iii. 1. 97; Luc. Dedication; Son. 46. 12; half. H8 i. 2. 12.  
**moldwarp**, mole. 1H4 iii. 1. 148.  
**Monmouth caps**, caps made at Monmouth. H5 iv. 7. 99.  
**monument**, memorial. 2H6 iii. 2. 342; R3 i. 1. 6.  
**moody**, ill-humoured. 1H4 i. 3. 19.  
**moon's men**, men who rob by night. 1H4 i. 2. 32.  
**moralize**, interpret. R3 iii. 1. 83; Luc. 104.  
**more**, greater. John ii. 1. 34; V. & A. 78; greater faculty. Son. 11. 11.  
**more and less**, high and low. 1H4 iv. 3. 68; 2H4 i. 1. 209; Son. 96. 3.  
**Morrisco**, morris-dancer. 2H6 iii. 1. 365.  
**morris-dance**, dance performed by persons in fancy costume. H5 ii. 4. 25.  
**mortal**, deadly. John iii. 1. 259; &c.  
**mortality**, death. 1H6 iv. 5. 32.  
**mortal rage**, power of mortality. Son. 64. 4.  
**mortal-staring**, with a deadly stare. R3 v. 3. 91.  
**mortified**, slain. H5 i. 1. 28.  
**most**, greatest. 1H6 iv. 1. 38.  
**mot**, motto. Luc. 830.  
**motion**, impulse. John i. 1. 212; propose, counsel. 1H6 i. 3. 63; offer, proposal. 3H6 iii. 3. 244; H8 ii. 4. 231.  
**motive**, impulse. H8 i. 1. 153; puppet-show. Luc. 1326.  
**motive**, moving limb or organ. R2 i. 1. 183.  
**motley**, fool, jester. Son. 110. 2.  
**mought**, might. 3H6 v. 2. 45.

**mould, men of, men of earth, mortal men.** H5 iii. 2. 23.

**moulten, without feathers.** 1H4 iii. 1. 151.

**mount, soar, raise.** John i. 1. 206; H8 i. 2. 205.

**mounted, term in falconry.** H5 iv. 1. 108.

**mounts, causes to mount.** H8 i. 1. 144.

**mournful, making display of sorrow.** 2H6 iii. 1. 226.

**mouse, tear in pieces.** John ii. 1. 354.

**mouth, bark, bay.** 1H6 ii. 4. 12.

**mouthed, gaping.** 1H4 i. 3. 97; Son. 77. 6.

**moving, affecting.** R2 v. 1. 47.

**moy, ? some kind of coin.** H5 iv. 4. 14.

**much, ironical expression.** 2H4 ii. 4. 134; very. 2H4 iv. 4. 111; a serious matter. 1H6 iv. 1. 192; V. & A. 411.

**much at one, much about the same.** H5 v. 2. 197.

**muddy, rascally, dirty.** 1H4 ii. 1. 100; 2H4 ii. 4. 39.

**muleter, muleteer.** 1H6 iii. 2. 68.

**mum, silent.** R3 iii. 7. 3.

**munition, ammunition.** John v. 2. 98; 1H6 i. 1. 168.

**mure, wall.** 2H4 iv. 4. 119.

**mute, wonder.** John iii. 1. 317; &c.

**music, musicians.** H8 iv. 2. 94; thou, who art as music. Son. 8. 1.

**musit, gap in hedge.** V. & A. 683.

**mutine, mutineer.** John ii. 1. 378.

**mutual, joining in mutual action.** 1H4 i. 1. 14.

**myself, my own person.** R2 i. 1. 145.

**mysteries, artificial fashions.** H8 i. 3. 2.

**naked, without defence.** 3H6 v. 4. 42.

**napkin, handkerchief.** 3H6 i. 4. 79; Lov. C. 15.

**narrow ocean, English Channel.** H5 i. chor. 22.

**native, rightful.** R2 iii. 2. 25.

**native graves, graves in their native country.** H5 iv. 3. 96.

**native peace, native country's peace.** R2 ii. 3. 80.

**native punishment, inflicted in one's own country.** H5 iv. 1. 169.

**natural scope, natural temper.** 1H4 iii. 1. 170.

**naught, call all to, vehemently abuse.** V. & A. 993.

**naughty, bad.** 2H6 ii. 1. 164; H8 v. 1. 139.

**nave, centre or block of a wheel.** 2H4 ii. 4. 262.

**neaf, hand, fist.** 2H4 ii. 4. 190.

**near, nearer.** R2 iii. 2. 64; v. 1. 88; in the confidence. 2H4 v. 1. 74.

**neck, directly after.** 1H4 iv. 3. 92.

**needful, wanting supplies.** 3H6 ii. 1. 147.

**needs will, is determined to.** R3 iii. 1. 141.

**neglect, cause to be neglected.** R3 iii. 4. 24; being neglected. Son. 112. 12.

**neglectingly, carelessly.** 1H4 i. 3. 52.

**neglection, neglect.** 1H6 iv. 3. 49.

**neif, fist.** 2H4 ii. 4. 190.

**neighbour, neighbouring.** 2H4 i. 5. 122.

**neighbourhood, friendliness.** H5 v. 2. 366.

**neighbour nearness, closeness, as being next to.** R2 i. 1. 119.

**nephew, cousin.** 1H6 ii. 5. 64.

**nest of spicery, allusion to the death-pile of the Phoenix, a bird supposed to renew itself from its own ashes.** R3 iv. 4. 425.

**net, sophistry.** H5 i. 2. 93.

**nether-stocks, stockings.** 1H4 ii. 4. 117.

**neuter, neutral.** R2 ii. 3. 159.

**new, lately.** John iii. 1. 233; 2H4 iv. 1. 8.

**new-delivered, lately released.** R3 i. 1. 121.

**new reaped, just shaved.** 1H4 i. 3. 34.

**new-trimmed, newly fitted.** H8 i. 2. 80.

**new world, new order of things.** R2 iv. 1. 78.

**nice, -ly, sophisticated, -ly.** R2 ii. 1. 84; H5 i. 2. 15; 3H6 iv. 7. 58; dainty, trivial, petty. 2H4 i. 1. 145; &c.

**fastidious.** H5 v. 2. 279, 284; skifful. Luc. 1412.

**nice of, make, scruple at.** John iii. 4. 138.

**niece, granddaughter.** John ii. 1. 64; R3 iv. 1. 1.

**niggard, act in a niggardly fashion.** Son. i. 12.

**nigh, almost.** 2H6 iii. 2. 82.

**night crow, night-heron.** 3H6 v. 6. 45.

**nil, will not.** Pas. P. 14. 8.

**Nob, Robert.** John i. 1. 147.

**noble, gold coin worth 6s. 8d.** R2 i. 1. 88; &c.

**noblesse, nobility.** R2 iv. 1. 119.

**no had, had not?** John iv. 2. 207.

**noise, band of musicians.** 2H4 ii. 1. 11.

**noised, reported?** H8 i. 2. 105.

**noisome, hurtful.** R2 iii. 4. 38.

**nominate, name.** 2H6 ii. 1. 128.

**nonage, minority.** R3 ii. 3. 13.

**nonce, expressly.** 1H4 i. 2. 181.

**none, not one of them.** R2 v. 2. 99.

**nook-shotten, running out into angles.** H5 iii. 5. 14.

**no other, nothing else.** 2H4 v. 2. 62.

**note, stigma, mark of reproach.** R2 i. 1. 43; intelligence. H5 ii. 2. 6;

sign. H5 iv. chor. 35; notice. H8 i. 1. 63; i. 2. 48; fame. Lov. Com. 233.  
**noted**, known, familiar. John iv. 2. 21; 1H4 i. 2. 181; Son. 76. 6.  
**note**, of, well-known. John iv. 1. 121.  
**not ever**, not always. H8 v. 1. 130.  
**nothing**, not at all. 1H4 iii. 1. 133; H8 v. 1. 126; no violence. H5 ii. 1. 41.  
**notice**, warning. 2H6 iii. 1. 166.  
**nought to do**, nothing to do with. Luc. 1092.  
**numbers**, bands, companies. 2H6 ii. 1. 39.  
**nuthook**, catchpole. 2H4 v. 4. 8.  
**nussling**, posing. V. & A. 1115.  
**o**, anything round. H5 prol. 13; o', off. H8 v. 1. 88.  
**O, the father**, an imprecation. 1H4 ii. 4. 399.  
**ob**, a half-penny. 1H4 ii. 4. 550.  
**obedience**, obeisance. 2H4 iv. 5. 145.  
**objected**, urged, put forward. 1H6 ii. 4. 43.  
**objections**, statements, accusations. H8 iii. 2. 303.  
**oblation**, offering. Son. 135. 10.  
**obligation**, agreement. 2H6 iv. 2. 82.  
**obloquy**, abuse, calumny. 1H6 ii. 5. 49.  
**obscene**, abominable. R2 iv. 1. 131.  
**obsequies**, funeral rites. 2H6 iii. 2. 146.  
**obsequious**, careful in performing the funeral rites. 3H6 ii. 5. 118; funeral. Son. 31. 5; devoted, zealous. Son. 125. 9.  
**obsequiously**, as befits a funeral. R3 i. 2. 3.  
**observance**, homage. 2H4 iv. 3. 15.  
**observe**, treat with attention. 2H4 iv. 4. 30.  
**obviously**, observantly. H5 iv. 1. 6.  
**obstacle**, blunder for 'obstinate'. 1H6 v. 4. 17.  
**occasion**, necessity, cause. John ii. 1. 82; opportunity. John iv. 2. 62; R3 ii. 2. 147; course of events. John iv. 2. 125.  
**occident**, the west. R2 iii. 3. 67.  
**odds**, strife. H5 ii. 4. 129.  
**odds**, at variance, quarrelling. R3 ii. 1. 71.  
**o'erbearing**, overcoming. John iii. 4. 4.  
**o'erblow**, blow away. H5 iii. 3. 31.  
**o'ergreen**, to cover with green. Son. 112. 4.  
**o'erlook**, look through, read. Son. 82. 2.  
**o'ermaster**, hold in possession. John ii. 1. 109.  
**o'erposting**, getting over easily. 2H4 i. 2. 152.  
**o'ershine**, outshine. 2H4 iv. 3. 51.

**o'erstrawed**, overstrawed. V. & A. 1143.  
**o'erwhelm**, overhang. H5 di. 1. 14; V. & A. 183.  
**o'erworn**, old, outworn. R3 i. 1. 181.  
**of**, from. John iii. 4. 55; against. H5 ii. 3. 27, 29; with. H5 iii. 7. 9; for. H5 v. 1. 110; R3 iii. 5. 68; instead of. 3H6 iii. 3. 25.  
**offer**, attempt. John iv. 2. 94; challenge, menace. 1H4 iv. 1. 69; 2H4 iv. 1. 219; opportunity. H8 iii. 2. 4.  
**office**, service. R2 ii. 2. 136.  
**offices**, servants' apartments in a great house, rooms. R2 i. 2. 69; 2H4 i. 3. 47.  
**omit**, leave disregarded, take no notice of. 2H4 iv. 4. 27; 2H6 iii. 2. 382; H8 iii. 2. 3.  
**on**, of. 2H4 i. 3. 102; &c.; in. H5 iv. 5. 18; v. 2. 39; against. R3 i. 1. 131.  
**on ringing**, set, started ringing. Luc. 1494.  
**on to-morrow**, on the morrow. H5 iii. 6. 173.  
**once**, for once. 1H4 i. 2. 142; at one time. H8 i. 2. 82.  
**one**, score, debt. 2H4 ii. 1. 32.  
**one for that**, all's, it does not matter. R3 v. 3. 8.  
**one on another's neck**, one immediately after another. Son. 131. 11.  
**oneyers**, meaning uncertain, possibly 'great ones'. 1H4 ii. 1. 80.  
**only**, alone. 3H6 iv. 1. 45; pre-eminence. Son. 1. 10.  
**onward**, in front. Son. 50. 14.  
**ope**, open. John ii. 1. 536.  
**open**, in, in public. H8 iii. 2. 405.  
**opinion**, self-conceit. 1H4 iii. 1. 184; public opinion. 1H4 iii. 2. 42; H8 prol. 20.  
**opposed**, hostile. 1H4 i. 1. 9; opposite. 1H4 iii. 1. 111.  
**opposing**, presenting. H8 iv. 1. 67.  
**opposite**, opposed. John iii. 1. 254; adversary. 2H4 i. 3. 55; 2H6 v. 3. 22; hostile. R3 ii. 2. 94; **an opposite to**, to oppose. R3 v. 4. 3.  
**opposition**, encounter. 1H4 i. 3. 99.  
**orb**, circuit. 1H4 v. 1. 17.  
**orbed**, rounded. Lov. C. 25.  
**order**, manner. 2H6 iii. 2. 129; arrange, draw up. R3 v. 3. 293.  
**order**, take, take measures, make arrangements. R2 v. 1. 53; &c.  
**ordinance**, ordnance, cannon. John ii. 1. 218.  
**orient**, bright. V. & A. 981.  
**original**, origin. 2H4 i. 2. 116.  
**orison**, prayer. H5 iii. 2. 53.  
**orphans**, posthumous children. Son. 97. 10.  
**ort**, leaving, refuse. Luc. 985.  
**ostent**, show, display. H5 v. chor. 21.  
**ostentation**, outward show. 2H4 ii. 2. 50.  
**other**, anything else. H8 i. 3. 58.



**otherwhere**, elsewhere. H8 ii. 2. 59.

**otherwhiles**, at other times. 1H6 i. 2. 7.

**ought**, owed. 1H4 iii. 3. 141.

**ousel**, blackbird. 2H4 iii. 2. 9.

**out**, out of. 2H4 ii. 2. 23; fail you. 2H4 v. 3. 67; fully. H5 v. 1. 162; H8 ii. 4. 138.

**outbrave**, outdo in excellenc. Son. 94. 12.

**out-breathed**, out of breath. 2H4 i. 1. 108.

**outburn**, be consumed. P.P. vii. 14.

**out-dare**, defy. R2 i. 1. 190; 1H4 v. 1. 40.

**outface**, put down by intimidation. John v. 1. 49; frighten. 1H4 ii. 4. 258; put a good face upon. P.P. i. 8.

**outgo**, go beyond. H8 i. 2. 207.

**outlook**, look down, outstare. John v. 2. 115.

**out of**, except. H8 iii. 2. 13.

**outrage**, outburst of fury. John iii. 4. 106; R3 ii. 4. 64.

**out-speak**, exceed. H8 iii. 2. 128.

**outward eye**, the opening in a ball for the insertion of the bias or weight. John ii. 1. 583.

**outwards**, outward features. Lov. Com. 80.

**outworth**, exceed in value. H8 i. 1. 123.

**overbear**, over-rule. John iv. 2. 37; subdue. H5 iv. chor. 39.

**over-blown**, blown away. 2H6 i. 3. 153.

**overgo**, exceed, transcend. R3 ii. 2. 61; Son. 103. 7.

**overgone**, overcome. 3H6 ii. 5. 123.

**overlive**, outlive. 2H4 iv. 1. 15.

**overlook**, overlook. H3 iii. 5. 9.

**over-lusty**, toolively. H5 iv. chor. 18.

**overpassed**, passed. 1H6 ii. 5. 117.

**overpeer**, tower above, look down on. 1H6 i. 4. 11; 3H6 v. 2. 14.

**over-rode**, rode past. 2H4 i. 1. 30.

**overscuted**, over-whipped. 2H4 iii. 2. 326.

**oversee**, supervise. Luc. 1205.

**overseen**, bewitched. Luc. 1206.

**overshot**, beaten in shooting. H5 iii. 7. 128.

**overween**, be arrogant. 2H4 iv. 1. 149.

**overweening**, presumptuous. R2 i. 1. 147.

**owches**, ornaments. 2H4 ii. 4. 49.

**owe**, own, possess. John ii. 1. 109, &c.

**owse**, ooze, mud. H5 i. 2. 164.

**oyster-wench**, girl who sells oysters. R2 i. 4. 31.

**pace**, put through their paces. H8 v. 3. 22.

**pack**, begone. Pas. P. xiv. 29.

**packed**, sent away. Pas. P. xiv. 21.

**pack-horse**, drudge. R3 i. 3. 122.

**packing**, be, be off. 1H6 iv. 1. 46.

**packing, send me**, send me away. 2H6 iii. 1. 342.

**paaction**, agreement. H5 v. 2. 378.

**pain**, pains. H8 iii. 2. 72; punishment. Son. 141. 14.

**painful**, laborious. Son. 25. 9.

**painted**, counterfeit. John iii. 1. 105; R3 i. 3. 241.

**painting**, wall-hangings painted or worked with figures and scenes. 1H4 iv. 2. 25; Luc. 245.

**pale**, enclosure. R2 iii. 4. 40; H8 v. 4. 89; V. & A. 230; enclose. 3H6 i. 4. 103; paleness. V. & A. 589; Luc. 1512.

**paled**, pale. Lov. Com. 198.

**palisadoes**, palisades. 1H4 ii. 3. 53.

**pallet**, poor bed. 2H4 iii. 1. 10.

**palmer**, pilgrim. R2 iii. 3. 151; 2H6 v. 1. 97; Luc. 7P1.

**paly**, pale. H5 iv. chor. 8; 2H6 iii. 2. 141.

**pang**, to inflict great pain. H8 ii. 3. 15.

**pantry**, servant in charge of pantry. 2H4 ii. 4. 243.

**paper**, letters. R2 i. 3. 250; as white as paper. H5 ii. 2. 74; set down on paper. H8 i. 1. 30.

**paragoned**, regarded as a model or pattern. H8 ii. 4. 228.

**paraquito**, parrot. 1H4 ii. 3. 86.

**parcel**, item, part. 1H4 ii. 4. 103; &c.; divided among several. R3 ii. 2. 81.

**parcel-gilt**, partly gilt. 2H4 ii. 1. 88.

**pared**, diminished. H8 iii. 2. 160.

**Paris-garden**, name of a place at Bankside, Southwark, where was a bear-garden. H8 v. 4. 2.

**parle**, parley. John ii. 1. 205; R2 i. 1. 192; H5 iii. 3. 2.

**parley**, exchange of glances. 1H4 iii. 1. 203.

**parling**, speaking. Luc. 100.

**parlous**, peilous. R3 ii. 4. 35.

**parmaceti**, spermaceti. 1H4 i. 3. 58.

**part**, leave. R2 iii. 1. 3; depart. R2 v. 1. 70; &c.; share, divide. 1H4 iii. 1. 70; &c.; characteristic action. 2H4 iv. 5. 62; party, side. H5 i. 1. 73; &c.; division in music. H5 i. 2. 181.

**partake**, take part. R3 i. 1. 89; Son. 149. 2.

**partaker**, confederate. 1H6 ii. 4. 100.

**partial slander**, reproach of partiality. R2 i. 3. 241.

**partialize**, make partial. R2 i. 1. 120.

**particular**, special sphere. H8 iii. 2. 190; particular objects. Son. 91. 7.

- particular, his**, its details. 2H4 iv. 4. 90.  
**particularities**, individual affairs. 2H6 v. 2. 44.  
**Partlet**, name of hen in *Reynard the Fox*. 1H4 iii. 3. 54.  
**part of**, performing the part of. H8 iii. 1. 24.  
**party, part, side**. R2 iii. 2. 203; &c.  
**party-verdict**, share in a joint verdict. R2 i. 3. 234.  
**pass**, refuse. John ii. 1. 258; passage. H5 ii. chor. 39; indulge in, as a jest. H5 ii. 1. 123; die. 2H6 iii. 3. 25; care for, regard. 2H6 iv. 2. 127; issue. Son. 103. 11.  
**passage**, passing away. 1H6 ii. 5. 108; motion. H8 ii. 4. 163.  
**passages of life, thy**, actions of thy life. 1H4 iii. 2. 8.  
**passenger**, wayfarer. R2 v. 3. 9; 2H6 iii. 1. 129; V. & A. 91.  
**passing**, surpassing, surpassingly. 2H4 iv. 2. 85; 3H6 v. 1. 106; R3 i. 1. 94.  
**passion**, sorrow. 1H4 ii. 4. 392; suffering. 1H4 iii. 1. 35; violent sorrow. 3H6 i. 4. 150; grief. V. & A. 1059.  
**passionate**, sorrowful. John ii. 1. 54.  
**pastern**, leg. H5 iii. 7. 13.  
**patent**, privilege. Son. 87. 8.  
**patronage**, protect, maintain. 1H6 iii. 1. 43; H1. 4. 32.  
**pattern**, that which is made after a model. H5 ii. 4. 61; example. R3 i. 2. 54.  
**paucal** [verbal], in few words. H5 ii. 1. 81.  
**Paul's**, St. Paul's Cathedral, place of general resort for business and amusement. 1H4 ii. 4. 537; 2H4 i. 2. 52; R3 iii. 6. 3.  
**partitioned**, in pavilions or tents. H5 i. 2. 129.  
**pawn**, pledge. John v. 2. 141; &c.  
**piece**, small piece of metal or wood, with figure of Christ on it, offered to laity to kiss; but, blunder for 'pyx', box containing the Host. H5 iii. 6. 41, 46.  
**pay**, hit, kill. 1H4 ii. 4. 194, 220; v. 3. 46; requite. H5 iv. 1. 199.  
**payment**, punishment. H5 iv. 8. 14.  
**peaceful**, untroubled. R2 iii. 2. 125.  
**peach**, turn informer. 1H4 ii. 2. 44.  
**peasant**, belonging to peasants. 2H4 ind. 33.  
**peasod time**, the season for peas. 2H4 ii. 4. 395.  
**peel**, strip. Luc. 1167.  
**peeled**, shaven. 1H6 i. 3. 30.  
**peer**, appear. H5 iv. 7. 84; V. & A. 86; allow to peep out. Luc. 472.  
**pearing over**, overflowing. John ii. 1. 23.  
**peevish**, wayward. John ii. 1. 402; foolish. H5 iii. 7. 139; silly, child-  
 ish. 1H6 ii. 4. 76; R3 i. 3. 134; iv. 2. 96.  
**peevish-fond**, foolishly, perverse. R3 iv. 4. 418.  
**poise**, poise, balanced. John ii. 1. 575; weigh down. R3 v. 3. 106.  
**pelican**, in reference to the fable that the pelican feeds her young with her own blood. R2 ii. 1. 123.  
**pelleted**, formed into pellets. Lov. Com. 18.  
**pell-mell**, close quarters, hand to hand. R3 v. 3. 313.  
**pelt**, to fling about angry words. Luc. 1418.  
**pelting**, insignificant. R2 ii. 1. 69.  
**penail**, paint brush. John iii. 1. 237.  
**pensive**, pensive. Lov. Com. 219.  
**pent-up**, confined. R3 iv. 3. 36.  
**peradventure**, perhaps. John v. 6. 31.  
**perdition**, loss. H5 iii. 6. 98.  
**perdurable**, lasting. H5 iv. 5. 7.  
**perdy**, par Dieu, by God. H5 ii. 1. 51.  
**peremptory**, determined. John ii. 1. 454; unawed. 1H4 i. 3. 17; decisive. H5 v. 2. 82.  
**perfect**, faultless. John v. 6. 6.  
**perforce**, of necessity. H5 v. 2. 153; R3 iii. 1. 30.  
**periapts**, amulets. 1H6 v. 3. 2.  
**period**, end. 1H6 iv. 2. 17; &c.  
**perish**, destroy. 2H6 iii. 2. 100.  
**perked**, dressed. H8 ii. 5. 21.  
**perniciously**, to destruction. H8 ii. 1. 50.  
**perpend**, consider. H5 iv. 4. 8.  
**perplexed**, bewildered. Luc. 733.  
**persistence**, obstinacy. 2H4 ii. 2. 47.  
**personal**, engaged in person. 1H4 iv. 3. 88.  
**perspective**, picture or figure constructed so as to produce some fantastic effect. R2 ii. 2. 18.  
**perspectively**, as through a perspective. H5 v. 2. 332.  
**peruse**, examine. R2 iii. 3. 53; 2H4 iv. 2. 94; 1H6 iv. 2. 43.  
**pew-fellow**, companion. R3 iv. 4. 58.  
**Philip**, name formerly given to a sparrow. John i. 1. 231.  
**phoenix**, matchless. Lov. Com. 93.  
**phraseless**, indescribable. Lov. Com. 225.  
**pibble pabble**, idle talk. H5 iv. 1. 71.  
**pick**, pitch. H8 v. 4. 89.  
**picked**, refined, punctilious. John i. 1. 193.  
**picking**, minute, petty. 2H4 iv. 1. 198.  
**pick-thank**, flatterer, talebearer. 1H4 iii. 2. 28.  
**pies**, magpies. 3H6 v. 6. 48.  
**pill**, pillage, plunder. R2 ii. 1. 247; R3 i. 3. 159.  
**pinch**, vex. 1H4 i. 3. 229.

**pinched**, bitten. 3H6 ii. 1. 16.  
**pine**, afflict. R2 v. 1. 77; starve. V. & A. 602.  
**pinked**, pierced with holes. H8 v. 4. 47.  
**pinnae**, small light vessel. 2H6 iv. 1. 9.  
**pioneer**, pioneer. H5 iii. 2. 38.  
**pipin time**, time when the pipe is sounded. R3 i. 1. 24.  
**pismires**, ants. 1H4 i. 3. 240.  
**pitch**, height to which falcon soars, hence height generally. R2 i. 1. 109; &c.  
**pitch and pay**, pay ready money. H5 ii. 3. 49.  
**pith**, strength. H5 iii. chor. 21; V. & A. 26.  
**pithless**, strengthless. 1H6 ii. 5. 11.  
**pitiful**, compassionate. R2 v. 2. 103; 3H6 iii. 2. 32.  
**pity**, subject for compassion. H8 ii. 3. 10.  
**plagued**, tormented thee for. R3 i. 3. 181.  
**plain**, nothing else but. John ii. 1. 462.  
**plaining**, complaint. R2 i. 3. 175; complaining. Luc. 559.  
**plainness**, straightforwardness. 2H6 i. 1. 189.  
**plain-song**, simple air without variations. H5 iii. 2. 5; H8 i. 3. 45.  
**plaint**, lamentation. R3 ii. 2. 61.  
**plaintful**, mournful. Lov. C. 2.  
**plaits**, folds. Luc. 93.  
**plated**, armed. R2 i. 3. 28.  
**platforms**, plans, designs. 1H6 ii. 1. 77.  
**plausibly**, with acclamation. Luc. 1854.  
**play**, play for. H5 iv. chor. 19.  
**play, make my**, win my game. H8 i. 4. 46.  
**play off**, toss off. 1H4 ii. 4. 17.  
**pleasance**, enjoyment. P.P. xii. 2.  
**pleasant**, facetious. H5 i. 2. 281.  
**please it, pleaseth**, if it please. 2H4 i. 1. 5; H5 v. 2. 78; R3 iv. 4. 488.  
**pleasing**, of pleasure, will. R3 i. 1. 13.  
**plight**, state. Son. 28. 1.  
**plot**, plot of ground, spot. John ii. 1. 40; 2H6 ii. 2. 60.  
**pluck on**, bring on. R3 iv. 2. 64.  
**plume-plucked**, humbled. R2 iv. 1. 108.  
**point**, head of the saddle. 1H4 ii. 1. 6; tagged lace to tie parts of dress. 2H4 i. 1. 53; shoulder-knot or other badge. 2H4 i. 4. 133; appoint. Luc. 879.  
**pointing**, appointing. Son. 14. 6.  
**pointing-stork**, something to be pointed at. 2H6 ii. 4. 46.  
**point of war**, trumpet-blast. 2H4 iv. 1. 62.  
**points, at all**, completely. R2 i. 3. 2.  
**poise**, weigh. 2H8 ii. 1. 201.]

**poisoned**, poisonous. H5 iv. 1. 256.  
**policy**, government. H5 i. 1. 45; shrewd self-interest. 1H4 i. 3. 208; Son. 124. 9.  
**politic**, prudent. Son. 124. 11.  
**politician**, crafty intriguer. 1H4 i. 3. 241.  
**pomegranet**, pomegranate, name of a room in a tavern. 1H4 ii. 4. 38.  
**pompous**, splendid. R2 iv. 1. 250.  
**poorly**, abjectly, humbly. R2 iii. 3. 128.  
**popinjay**, parrot. 1H4 i. 3. 50.  
**popular**, popularity, vulgar, vulgarity. 1H4 iii. 2. 69; H5 iv. 1. 38.  
**popularity**, publicity. H5 i. 1. 59.  
**poring**, musing, for meditation. H5 iv. chor. 2.  
**porpentine**, porcupine. 2H6 iii. 1. 363.  
**porringer**, a cap shaped like a porridge bowl. H8 v. 4. 47.  
**port**, gate. 2H4 iv. 5. 3; bearing, carriage. H5 i. chor. 6; 2H6 iv. 1. 19.  
**portage**, port-hole. H5 iii. 1. 10.  
**posied**, inscribed with a posy or motto. Lov. Com. 45.  
**possessed**, as by a devil. R2 ii. 1. 108; informed. 1H4 iv. 1. 40.  
**possession**, the, then possessor. 1H4 iii. 2. 43.  
**possess with**, inform of. John iv. 2. 41; cause to entertain. H5 iv. 1. 112.  
**post**, go with speed, hasten. R2 i. 1. 56; &c.; haste. R2 ii. 1. 236; 3H6 i. 2. 48; messenger. 1H4 i. 1. 37; 3H6 v. 1. 1; post-horses. 2H4 iv. 3. 36; slur. 2H6 iii. 1. 255.  
**posted off**, put off carelessly. 3H6 iv. 8. 40.  
**postern**, little or back door way. R2 v. 5. 17.  
**pot**, wooden drinking vessel, bound with hoops. 2H6 v. 2. 67.  
**potable**, drinkable, cordial. 2H4 iv. 5. 161.  
**potents**, potentates. John ii. 1. 358.  
**pottle-pot**, tankard holding two quarts. 2H4 i. 2. 78.  
**poulter**, poulterer. 1H4 ii. 4. 445.  
**pounce-box**, perfume-box, with perforated lid. 1H4 i. 3. 38.  
**powder**, salt. 1H4 v. 4. 112.  
**powdering-tub**, salting-tub; hot salt-water bath used in treatment of venereal disease. H5 ii. 1. 77.  
**power**, armed force, army. John i. 3. 70; &c.; persons of highest authority. H8 ii. 4. 111.  
**power, utmost**, highest number. R3 v. 3. 10.  
**practic**, practical. H5 i. 1. 51.  
**practice**, plot, treachery. H5 ii. 2. 90; &c.  
**practisant**, performer in a stratagem. 1H6 iii. 2. 20.  
**practise**, plot, design. John iv. 1. 20; &c.

- prancing**, riding gallantly. 3H6 ii. 1. 24.  
**prate**, chatter. John iv. 1. 25.  
**preachment**, fine discourse. 3H6 i. 4. 72.  
**precedent**, rough draft. John v. 2. 3; R3 iii. 6. 7; proof. R2 ii. 1. 130; sample, example. 1H4 ii. 4. 83; Luc. 1261; indication. V. & A. 26.  
**precept**, summons. 2H4 v. 1. 13; H5 iii. 8. 26.  
**precisely**, entirely. 2H4 iv. 1. 205.  
**precurser**, forerunner. Phoen. 6.  
**predicament**, condition. 1H4 i. 3. 168.  
**predict**, prediction. Son. 14. 8.  
**prefer**, present. 1H6 iii. 1. 30; promote. R3 iv. 2. 30; H5 iv. 1. 103.  
**pregnancy**, lady wit. 2H4 i. 2. 172.  
**premised**, sent before the time. 2H6 v. 2. 41.  
**prepare**, preparation. 3H6 iv. 1. 131; set in battle array. R3 v. 3. 89.  
**preposterously**, unnaturally. H5 ii. 2. 112.  
**presage**, foreboding, prognostication. John iii. 4. 158; R2 ii. 2. 141.  
**prescript**, ordained. H5 iii. 7. 47.  
**prescription**, right derived from immemorial custom. 3H6 iii. 3. 94; direction. H8 i. 1. 151.  
**presence**, person. John i. 1. 137; presence-chamber. R2 i. 3. 289; H8 iii. 1. 117; blunder for 'presents'. 2H6 iv. 7. 30; King's presence. H8 iv. 2. 37.  
**presence**, in, present. R2 iv. 1. 62; H5 ii. 4. 111.  
**present**, represent. 2H4 v. 2. 79; 3H6 ii. 5. 100; show. H5 iv. chor. 27.  
**present**, presently, immediately, immediately. John v. 7. 86; &c.  
**presentation**, semblance. R3 iv. 4. 84.  
**press**, force into military service. R3 iii. 2. 58; 1H4 iv. 2. 15; commission for pressing soldiers. 1H4 iv. 2. 12; crowd, mob. H8 v. 4. 83.  
**presumise**, earlier thought. 2H4 i. 1. 168.  
**pretend**, indicate. 3H6 iv. 1. 54; assert. 3H6 iv. 7. 57; intend. Luc. 1576.  
**pretty**, considerable. Luc. 1233.  
**prevent**, baffle by measures in advance. Son. 100. 14.  
**prey**, in, in search of prey. H5 i. 2. 169.  
**prick**, mark. 2H4 ii. 4. 343; Son. 20. 13; put him on the list. 2H4 iii. 4. 15; dial-point. 3H6 i. 4. 34; Luc. 781.  
**pride**, lust. Luc. 438; Son. 144. 8; proud conquest. Son. 151. 10.  
**prime**, first. R3 iv. 3. 19; H8 iii. 2. 163; spring. Luc. 392; Son. 97. 7.  
**primer**, more urgent. H8 i. 2. 67.  
**primero**, game at cards. H8 v. 1. 7.  
**primest**, most excellent. H8 ii. 4. 227.  
**prince**, lord. John v. 7. 97; 1H6 ii. 1. 178.  
**prisonment**, imprisonment. John iii. 4. 161.  
**private**, private communication. John iv. 3. 18; retired. 2H6 ii. 2. 60; alone. H8 ii. 2. 14; ordinary. Son. 9. 7.  
**privilege**, invest with a privilege. R2 i. 1. 120; Luc. 621.  
**privily**, privately. H8 i. 1. 183.  
**privity**, concurrence. H8 i. 1. 74.  
**prize**, estimate. H5 ii. 4. 119; privilege. 3H6 i. 4. 59; 3H6 ii. 1. 20; captive. R3 iii. 7. 186; regard. Son. 143. 8.  
**preceeding on**, caused by. H5 ii. 2. 54.  
**process**, course. R2 ii. 3. 12; story. R3 iv. 3. 62; iv. 4. 254.  
**procurator**, representative. 2H6 i. 1. 3.  
**prodigious**, prodigiously, monstrous, portentous. John iii. 1. 46, 91; R3 i. 2. 22.  
**proditor**, traitor. 1H6 i. 3. 31.  
**proface**, much good may it do you! 2H4 v. 3. 28.  
**profane**, be profaned by. R2 i. 3. 59.  
**profit**, well-being. R2 iv. 1. 225.  
**profited**, much advanced. 1H4 iii. 1. 165.  
**progeny**, birth, descent. 1H6 iii. 3. 61; descendants, lineage. 1H6 v. 4. 38.  
**project**, idea. 2H4 i. 3. 29.  
**projection**, scheming. H5 ii. 4. 46.  
**prologue to an egg and butter**, grace to an ordinary breakfast. 1H4 i. 2. 21.  
**prolonged**, postponed. R3 iii. 4. 45.  
**promise**, assure. R3 ii. 3. 2.  
**proof**, impenetrability. R2 i. 3. 73; good when tested. 2H4 iv. 3. 90; armour that has been tested. 2H6 iv. 2. 61; R3 v. 3. 220; V. & A. 626; well-worn. 2H6 iv. 2. 61; experience. R3 ii. 3. 43; Lov. C. 163; testing. H8 i. 1. 197.  
**proper**, handsome. John i. 1. 250; appropriate. 2H4 i. 3. 32; own. 2H4 v. 2. 109.  
**property**, make a tool of. John iv. 2. 79; specific quality. R2 iii. 2. 135; individuality. Phoen. 37.  
**proportion**, be proportioned to. H5 iii. 6. 126; shape. 2H6 i. 3. 55.  
**proportionable**, proportionate. R2 ii. 2. 124.  
**proportioned**, regular, orderly. Luc. 774.  
**proportions**, necessary numbers of troops. H5 i. 2. 137, 304.  
**propose**, suppose. 2H4 v. 2. 92.  
**prosperous hope**, hope of prospering. 1H4 iii. 1. 2.  
**protest**, asseveration. 1H4 iii. 1. 253.  
**proud-pied**, variously coloured. Son. 98. 2.  
**prove**, experience. V. & A. 597; test.

**V. & A. 608; be. Son. 8.14; find, show.**  
Son. 72. 4.

**provoke, instigate, impel.** John iv.  
2. 207; 1H6 v. 3. 6.

**prune, trim his feathers.** 1H4 i. 1.  
98.

**puissance, armed force.** John iii.  
1. 339; H5 i. chor. 25; strength,  
power. R3 v. 3. 300.

**puissant, powerful.** H5 i. 2. 116;  
R3 iv. 4. 435.

**puke, a kind of woollen cloth.** 1H4  
ii. 4. 71.

**pulside, blunder for 'pulse'.** 2H4  
ii. 4. 23.

**punch, pierce.** R3 v. 3. 126.

**punish by the heels, send\* to**  
prison. 2H4 i. 2. 124.

**purblind, half-blind.** 1H6 ii. 4. 21.

**purchase, acquire.** R2 i. 3. 282; 2H4  
iv. 5. 198; gain, plunder. 1H4 ii. 1.  
95; H5 iii. 2. 43; R3 iii. 7. 186.

**pure, clear.** John v. 7. 2.

**purl, curl.** Luc. 1407.

**purpled, blood-stained,** John ii. 1.  
322.

**purpose, intent.** John v. 1. 76.

**pursuivant, officers attendant**  
upon a herald. 1H6 ii. 5. 5; 2H6 i.  
3. 36; R3 iii. 4. 87.

**push, thrust.** 2H4 ii. 2. 37.

**push of, stand the, expose himself**  
to. 1H4 iii. 2. 68.

**put, set, made.** 2H6 iii. 1. 43.

**put off, discard, dismiss.** H8 i. 2. 32;  
ii. 4. 19.

**put over, refer.** John i. 1. 62.

**putter-on, instigator.** H8 i. 2. 24.

**puttock, kite.** 2H6 iii. 2. 191.

**puzzel, hussy.** 1H6 i. 4. 107.

**pyramis, pyramid.** 1H6 i. 6. 21.

**Pyrenean, Pyrenees.** John i. 1. 203.

**quaint, fine, dainty.** 1H6 iv. 1. 102;  
2H6 iii. 2. 274.

**quaintly, pleasantly.** 3H6 ii. 5. 24.

**qualify, soften, abate.** John v. 1. 13;  
Luc. 424; Son. 109. 2.

**quality, party.** 1H4 iv. 3. 36; na-  
ture. H8 i. 2. 84.

**quantity, small piece.** John v. 4. 23;  
2H4 v. 1. 64.

**quarter, watch, order.** John v. 5.  
20.

**quean, wench, hussy.** 2H4 ii. 1. 47.

**queasiness, nausea.** 2H4 i. 1. 196.

**queen it, play the queen.** H8 ii. 3.  
37.

**quell, destroy.** 1H6 i. 1. 163.

**quenchless, unquenchable.** 3H6 i.  
4. 28; Luc. 1554.

**quest, inquest, jury.** R3 i. 4. 189;  
Son. 46. 10.

**question, misgiving.** 1H4 iv. 1. 68;  
discussion. H5 i. 1. 5; converse.  
Luc. 122.

**question, in, under trial.** 2H4 i. 2.  
60.

**question, make, feel a doubt.** Son.  
12. 6.

**quick, lively.** 2H4 iv. 3. 99; R3 i. 6;  
5; alive. H5 ii. 2. 79; R3 i. 2. 65.

**hearty.** R3 i. 3. 196.

**quiddity, subtlety.** 1H4 i. 2. 46.

**quietus, discharge of obligation.**  
Son. 126. 12.

**quill, in the, in form and order.**  
2H6 i. 3. 8.

**quillet, tricks in argument, fine**  
points. 1H6 ii. 4. 17; 2H6 iii. 1.  
261.

**quilt, thick covering.** 1H4 iv. 2. 48.

**quip, repartee.** 1H4 i. 2. 46.

**quit, requite.** R2 v. 1. 48; &c.; ex-  
cuse. 1H4 iii. 2. 19; safe, free. 2H4  
iii. 2. 247; acquit. H5 ii. 2. 166.

**quittal, requital.** Luc. 636.

**quittance, requite, requital.** 2H4 i.  
1. 108; H5 ii. 2. 34; 1H6 ii. 1. 14.

**quitting, setting free.** 2H6 iii. 2.  
218.

**quiver, nimble.** 2H4 iii. 2. 290.

**quoif, cap.** 2H4 i. 1. 147.

**quoit, throw.** 2H4 ii. 4. 196.

**quote, note, mark.** John iv. 2. 222;  
observe. Luc. 812.

**quotidian tertian, confusion of**  
quotidian fever, of which the pa-  
roxysms return every day, with  
tertian fever, occurring every  
third day. H5 ii. 1. 121.

**rabbit-sucker, sucking rabbit.**  
1H4 iF. 4. 445.

**rack, move like vapour.** 3H6 ii. 1.  
27; cloud, mass of clouds. Son.  
33. 6.

**racked, oppressed, by extortion.**  
2H6 i. 3. 129.

**rage, rave.** John v. 7. 11.

**raged, epraged.** R2 ii. 1. 70; 174.

**ragged, rugged, rough.** R2 v. 5. 21;  
&c.; beggarly. 2H4 v. 2. 38.

**raggedest, roughest.** 2H4 i. 1. 151.

**raging-wood, raving mad.** 1H6 iv.  
7. 35.

**raise head, gather a force, rebel.**  
H8 ii. 1. 108.

**rampallian, term of abuse.** 2H4  
ii. 1. 60.

**ramping, rampant.** John iii. 1.  
122; 1H4 iii. 1. 152; 3H6 v. 2. 13.

**range, rank.** H8 ii. 3. 20.

**ranged, gone away.** Son. 109. 5.

**rank, excessive.** H5 v. 2. 50; V. &  
A. 71; stek. Son. 118. 12.

**rankle, envenom.** R2 i. 3. 302; R3  
3. 291.

**rankness, excess.** John v. 4. 54;  
H8 iv. 1. 59.

**rare, fine, excellent.** 1H4 i. 2. 63.

**rasnal, lean deer.** 2H4 i. 4. 41; 1H6  
iv. 2. 49.

**rash, rashly, hasty, hastily.** R3 ii.  
1. 33; 1H4 iii. 2. 61; R3 iii. 5. 42;

quickly ignited. 2H4 iv. 4. 48.

**rate, assess.** John v. 4. 37; child.  
1H4 iv. 3. 99; 2H4 iii. 1. 68; Luc. 304;

rely upon. 1H4 iF. 4. 17; estimat-  
tion. H8 iii. 2. 128.

**raught, reached.** H5 iv. 6. 21; 2H6 ii. 3. 49; 3H6 i. 4. 68.  
**reveal out, unravel.** R2 iv. 1. 228.  
**raw, inexperienced.** R2 ii. 3. 42.  
**rawly, without preparation.** H5 iv. 1. 143.  
**rase, root.** 1H4 ii. 1. 26; tear away violently. R3 iii. 2. 11; H4. 4. 81.  
**rase, rase out, erase.** R2 iii. 1. 25; 2H6 i. 1. 69.  
**red, take example.** H8 v. 5. 37.  
**read to, instructed.** 1H4 iii. 1. 46.  
**re-answer, answer.** H5 iii. 6. 129.  
**rear, lift.** 2H6 iii. 2. 34.  
**rearward, rear guard, rear.** 2H4 iii. 2. 825; 1H6 iii. 3. 33; Son. 90. 6.  
**reason, it is reasonable.** John v. 2. 130; 3H6 ii. 3. 93; talk. R3 ii. 3. 39.  
**reave, deprive.** 2H6 v. 1. 187; be-  
 reave. V. & A. 766.  
**rebuke, reproof.** 1H4 v. 1. 111.  
**receipt, what has been received.** R3 i. 1. 126 (money); Luc. 703; re-  
 ception. H8 ii. 2. 138; capacity.  
 Son. 136. 7.  
**reckon, take account of.** Son. 115. 5.  
**recomforture, comfort.** R3 iv. 4. 426.  
**record, history.** Son. 59. 5.  
**recordation to, commemoration of.** 2H4 ii. 3. 61.  
**recreant, cowardly, faithless.** John iii. 3. 129; R2 i. 1. 144.  
**recre, remedy.** R3 iii. 7. 129; V. & A. 465.  
**redbreast, robin.** 1H4 iii. 1. 263.  
**red lattice, ale-house window.** 2H4 ii. 2. 80.  
**redoubted, dreaded.** R2 iii. 3. 198; R3 iv. 4. 14.  
**reduce, bring back.** H5 v. 2. 63; R3 ii. 2. 68; v. 4. 49.  
**red wheat, late wheat.** 2H4 v. 1. 16.  
**re-edified, rebuilt.** R3 iii. 1. 71.  
**refigure, figure again.** Son. 6. 10.  
**reflex, let shine, reflect.** 1H6 v. 4. 87.  
**restrain, check, withhold.** 3H6 ii. 2. 110.  
**refuge shame, find a refuge from shame in the fact.** R2 v. 5. 26.  
**refuse, refuse to acknowledge.** John i. 1. 127.  
**regard, approval.** R2 ii. 1. 28; opinion. 1H4 iv. 3. 57; care for one's own safety. 1H6 iv. 3. 22; delibera-  
 tion. Luc. 1406.  
**regenerate, reborn.** R2 i. 3. 70.  
**region, of the upper air.** Son. 38. 42.  
**regreet, greeting.** John iii. 1. 241; address. R2 i. 3. 67; greet again. R2 i. 3. 142, 185.  
**regardon, reward.** 1H6 iii. 1. 169; 1H6 iii. 4. 23.  
**rehearse, declare.** R2 v. 3. 127.  
**relapse of mortality, deadly re-  
 bound.** H5 iv. 3. 197.  
**relent, comp.** 2H6 iv. 8. 11; soft-  
 en. V. & A. 340.

**relenting, -compassionate.** 2H6 iii. 1. 227; R3 iv. 4. 432.  
**religious house, nunnery.** R2 v. 1. 23.  
**relish, be agreeable with.** Luc. 1128.  
**remainder, unpaid remainder.** R2 i. 1. 200.  
**remember, remind.** John iii. 4. 96; &c.; mention. 2H4 v. 2. 142.  
**remembered, remember.** Luc. 697.  
**remembrance, memory.** John v. 2. 2; v. 6. 12; 2H4 ii. 3. 59; admoni-  
 tion. 2H4 v. 2. 115.  
**remorse, pity, compassion, mercy.** John ii. 1. 478; &c.  
**remorseful, compassionate.** 2H6 iv. 1. 1; R3 i. 2. 153.  
**remorseless, pitiless.** Luc. 562.  
**remove, pass.** Son. 97. 5; fall away. Son. 116. 4.  
**render, report.** 2H4 i. 1. 27; sur-  
 render. Son. 126. 12.  
**render, mutual, give and take.** Son. 125. 12.  
**rendevous, last resort, shift.** H5 ii. 1. 16.  
**renowned, made famous.** H5 i. 2. 118.  
**rents, rend, pull apart.** 3H6 iii. 2. 175; Lov. Com. 55.  
**renying, denying.** Son. to Mus. 3. 7.  
**repair, renovation.** John iii. 4. 113; Son. 3. 3; repairing hither. 3H6 v. 1. 20.  
**repairing, quickly recovering.** 2H6 v. 3. 22.  
**repeal, recall, recall from exile.** R2 ii. 2. 49; 2H6 iii. 2. 349; Luc. 640; revoke. R2 iii. 3. 40.  
**repent, regret.** H5 ii. 2. 152.  
**repine, repining.** V. & A. 490.  
**replenished, complete.** R3 iv. 3. 18.  
**replication, reply.** Lov. Com. 122.  
**reprisal, prize.** 1H4 iv. 1. 118.  
**reproof, refutation.** 1H4 i. 2. 191; iii. 2. 23; angry retort. 1H4 iii. 1. 174.  
**reprove, disprove.** 2H6 iii. 1. 40.  
**repugn, oppose.** 1H6 iv. 1. 94.  
**reputeless, inglorious.** 1H4 iii. 2. 44.  
**reputing, thinking highly.** 2H6 iii. 1. 48.  
**requiring, asking.** H5 ii. 4. 101; Luc. Argum.  
**reserve, keep.** Son. 32. 7.  
**resolve, set free from doubt.** John ii. 1. 371; dissolve. John v. 4. 25; come to a determination. 1H6 i. 2. 91; 3H6 i. 1. 49; steadfast-  
 ness. 1H6 v. 5. 35; satisfy, an-  
 swer. 3H6 iv. 1. 136; R3 iv. 2. 23.  
**removed, resolute.** John v. 8. 32; R3 i. 3. 340; satisfied. H5 i. 2. 4; 1H6 iii. 4. 20; 3H6 ii. 1. 8.  
**resolved correction, chastise-**

ment determined upon. 2H4 iv. 1. 215.

**respect**, consideration, reflection, regard, reason, matter for consideration. John iii. 1. 58; &c.; thought, matter. R2 ii. 1. 25; care, mind, consider, regard, take notice. R2 ii. 1. 131; &c.; attention. 1H4 iv. 3. 31; comparison. 3H6 v. 5. 56.

**respective**, showing regard. John i. 1. 188.

**respite of my wrongs, determined**, fixed time to which the punishment of my wrongs is postponed. R3 v. 1. 19.

**rest**, quiet possession. John iv. 2. 55; resolve. H5 ii. 1. 16; remain. 1H6 i. 3. 70; ii. 1. 75; 3H6 iv. 2. 8.

**restful**, peaceful. R2 iv. 1. 12; Son. 66. 1.

**restrain**, withhold, keep up. R3 v. 3. 323.

**resty**, idle. Son. 100. 9.

**retailed**, related. R3 iii. 1. 77.

**retention**, the power of retaining. Son. 122. 9.

**retire**, withdraw, retreat, draw back. John ii. 1. 326; &c.; return. Luc. 962.

**return**, answer, announce to. R2 i. 3. 122; H5 iii. 3. 46.

**revengement**, vengeance. 1H4 iii. 2. 7.

**reversion**, succession. R2 i. 4. 35; residue. 1H4 iv. 1. 53.

**revokement**, revocation, repeal. H8 i. 2. 106.

**revolt**, rebel. John v. 2. 151; v. 4. 7; turn back. 2H6 iv. 2. 124; fall off. 3H6 i. 1. 151; faithlessness. Son. 92. 10.

**rheum**, moisture, tears. John iii. 1. 22.

**rheumatic**, blunder for 'splenetic'. 2H4 ii. 4. 58; blunder for 'lunatic'. H5 ii. 3. 38; affected or attended with rheum. V. & A. 13. 5.

**ribs**, walls. John ii. 1. 334; R2 iii. 3. 42.

**rich**, fertile. 1H4 iii. 1. 106.

**rid**, destroy. R2 v. 4. 11.

**ride the wild mare**, play at see-saw. 2H4 ii. 4. 253.

**ride way**, gets rid of distance. 3H6 v. 3. 21.

**right drawn**, drawn in a right cause. R2 i. 1. 46.

**right for right**, measure for measure. R3 iv. 4. 14.

**rightly**, directly. R2 ii. 2. 18.

**right now**, just now. 2H6 iii. 2. 40.

**rigol**, circle. 2H4 iv. 5. 35; Luc. 1745.

**rim**, midriff. H5 iv. 4. 15.

**ring**, encircle. John iii. 4. 31; 2H6 iv. 4. 14.

**riot**, revelry. R2 ii. 1. 33.

**ripe**, ripen, mature. John ii. 1. 472;

2H4 iv. 1. 13; 'matured. R3 iii. 7. 157.

**rising**, insurrection. 2H4 i. 1. 204.

**rites**, ceremonies, sacred observances. H5 iv. 8. 125.

**rivage**, shore. H5 iii. chor. 14.

**rive**, discharge. 1H6 iv. 2. 29.

**vivo**, Bacchanalian exclamation. 2H4 ii. 4. 112.

**road**, prostitute. 2H4 ii. 2. 168; in-road. H5 i. 2. 138; journey. H8 iv. 2. 17.

**roan**, horse of one prevailing colour. 1H4 ii. 3. 76.

**roast**, rule the, be master. 2H6 i. 1. 107.

**robustious**, violent action. H5 iii. 7. 152.

**roundure**, circle. Son. 21. 8.

**rood**, crucifix. R3 iii. 2. 75.

**rook**, cower. 3H6 v. 6. 47.

**root**, dig up, with the snout. R3 i. 3. 228; V. & A. 636.

**root upon**, take root. H5 v. 2. 46.

**rope**, a derisive cry. 1H6 i. 3. 53.

**roping**, dripping. H5 iii. 5. 23; iv. 2. 48.

**rosed**, made rosy. H5 v. 2. 306.

**rotten**, rainy. Son. 34. 4.

**round**, whisper. John ii. 1. 366; surround. R2 iii. 2. 161; R3 iv. 1. 59;

plain-spoken. H5 iv. 1. 205; circle. V. & A. 368.

**roundly**, directly. R2 ii. 1. 122; speak out plainly. 1H4 i. 2. 22;

without ceremony. 2H4 iii. 2. 20.

**roundure**, circuit. John ii. 1. 250.

**roust**, mob, gang. 2H4 iv. 1. 33; 2H4 iv. 2. 9; disorderly flight. 2H6 v. 2. 31.

**rowel**, small sharp-pointed wheel at the end of a spur. 2H4 i. 1. 46.

**royal**, gold coin worth about 10s.; R2 v. 5. 67; &c.

**royal battle**, battle for a kingdom. R3 iv. 4. 537.

**royal faith**, loyalty. 2H4 iv. 1. 193.

**royalize**, make royal. R3 i. 3. 125.

**rub**, impediment. John iii. 4. 328; &c.

**ruffle**, stir, bustle. Lov. Com. 58.

**rug-headed**, rough-headed. R2 ii. 1. 157.

**ruin**, fall. 1H6 iv. 7. 10.

**ruinate**, ruin. 3H6 v. 1. 83; Luc. 944; Son. 10. 7.

**ruined**, ruinous. R2 iii. 3. 34.

**rumour**, tumult. John v. 4. 45.

**runagate**, vagabond. R3 iv. 4. 465.

**run in**, fallen under. H8 i. 2. 110.

**running banquet**, hasty refreshment. H8 i. 4. 12; whipping. H8 v. 4. 65.

**ruth**, pity. R2 iii. 4. 106; Son. 132. 4.

**ruthful**, piteous. 3H6 ii. 5. 95.

**Saba**, the queen of Sheba. H8 v. 5. 23.

**sack**, general name for Spanish white wines. 1H4 i. 2. 3; &c.

- sacred**, anointed. John iii. 1. 148;  
 &c.  
**sacring bells**, bell rung during  
 mass at consecration of the ele-  
 ments. H8 iii. 2. 296.  
**sad**, morose. R2 v. 3. 70; grave, seri-  
 ous. 2H4 v. 1. 84; v. 2. 125.  
**sad-eyed**, grave-looking. H5 i. 2.  
 202.  
**sadness**, seriousness. 3H6 iii. 2. 77.  
**safety**, safe-keeping. John iv. 2.  
 158.  
**St. Martin's summer**, days of  
 bright and warm weather coming  
 in November. 1H6 i. 2. 131.  
**St. Nicholas' clerks**, highway-  
 men. 1H4 ii. 1. 64.  
**salamander**, animal supposed to  
 live in fire. H4 iii. 3. 48.  
**sallet**, salad. 2H6 iv. 10. 1; close-  
 fitting helmet. 2H6 iv. 10. 11.  
**salutation** to, give, move, affect.  
 Son. 121. 6.  
**salute**, touch. John ii. 1. 590;  
 affect. H8 ii. 3. 103.  
**salvation**, hopes of salvation. 1H4  
 ii. 4. 9.  
**Samigo**, St. Domingo, patron-  
 saint of drinkers. 2H4 v. 3. 76.  
**sanctuary**, a church or other sac-  
 red place of refuge for fugitives.  
 R3 ii. 4. 66.  
**sand**, sand-bank. H5 iv. 1. 99.  
**sarcenet**, soft silk material, hence,  
 soft. 1H4 iii. 2. 254.  
**satire**, satirist. Son. 100. 11.  
**saucery**, cruelty. John iv. 3. 48;  
 wild growth. H5 v. 2. 47.  
**saving**, with all respect to. H8 ii.  
 3. 31.  
**saving your manhoods**, apolo-  
 getic phrase. 2H4 ii. 1. 27.  
**savour**, smell. John iv. 3. 112;  
 show traces. H5 i. 2. 250.  
**saw**, saying, text. 2H6 i. 3. 59; Luc.  
 24; saw each other, met. H8 i.  
 1. 2.  
**sawn**, seen. Lov. Com. 91.  
**saw**, cloth of fine texture resem-  
 bling serge. 2H6 iv. 7. 25.  
**'sblood**, God's blood, an oath. 1H4  
 i. 2. 74; H5 iv. 8. 9.  
**scab**, term of contempt. 2H4 iii. 2.  
 285.  
**scaffold**, stage. H5 i. chor. 10.  
**scald**, mangy, scabby. H5 v. 1. 5.  
 30.  
**scambling**, scrambling. H5 i. 1. 4;  
 v. 2. 10.  
**scandalized**, falsely slandered.  
 1H4 i. 3. 154.  
**scant**, withhold, be niggardly of.  
 H5 ii. 4. 47; small, few. Son. to  
 Music vi. 37.  
**scape**, escapade. Luc. 747.  
**scathe**, injury. John ii. 1. 75; 2H6  
 ii. 4. 62; R3 i. 3. 317.  
**scattered stray**, stragglers. 2H4  
 iv. 2. 121.  
**scion**, twig, shoot. H5 iii. 5. 7.  
**scorning**, laughing at. R2 iii. 2. 143.  
**sconce**, fort. H5 iii. 6. 73.  
**scope**, range of mind. Son. 28. 7.  
**scope of nature**, natural effect.  
 John iii. 4. 154.  
**scorn**, take, disdain. H5 iv. 7.  
 101.  
**scornful**, mark, object of scorn.  
 Luc. 52.  
**scot and lot**, pay, thoroughly set-  
 tle. 1H4 v. 4. 114.  
**scrivener**, professional scribe. R3  
 iii. 6. stage direction.  
**scroyles**, scabby rascals. John  
 ii. 1. 373.  
**scruple**, doubt, doubtful perplex-  
 ity. R2 v. 5. 13; 1H6 v. 3. 83.  
**scrupulous**, dealing with little  
 points. 3H6 iv. 7. 61.  
**scal**, the Great Scal. R3 ii. 4. 71.  
**sealed up**, confirmed. 2H4 iv. 5.  
 102.  
**sear**, brand. R3 iv. 1. 60.  
**seared**, withered. Lov. Com. 14.  
**seat**, dignity, estate. 1H4 v. 1. 45;  
 throne. H5 i. 1. 88; i. 2. 269.  
**seated**, situated. Luc. 1144.  
**secondary**, be a, hold a second  
 place. John v. 2. 80.  
**seconds**, inferior kind of flour. Son.  
 125. 11.  
**sect**, sex. 2H4 ii. 4. 37.  
**sectary**, belonging to one of the  
 sects. H8 v. 3. 70.  
**secure**, free from care. John iv.  
 1. 130; unsuspecting. R2 v. 3. 42;  
 1H6 ii. 1. 11.  
**securely**, carelessly. R2 ii. 1. 267;  
 unsuspectingly. Luc. 89.  
**security**, carelessness, over-con-  
 fidence. R2 iii. 2. 34; H5 ii. 2. 44.  
**see**, see to. R2 ii. 1. 218.  
**seeing**, appearance. Son. 67. 6.  
**seeks**, appeals. Luc. 293.  
**seeming owed**, seemingly owned.  
 Lov. Com. 327.  
**seld**, seldom. Pas. P. 13. 7.  
**seldom**, rare. 1H4 iii. 2. 58.  
**seldom when**, rarely that. 2H4 iv.  
 4. 79.  
**self**, self-same. H5 i. 1. 1; 3H6 iii. 1.  
 11.  
**self and vain conceit**, vain ~~self~~  
 conceit. R2 iii. 2. 166.  
**self-born**, native. R2 ii. 3. 80.  
**self-mould**, self-same mould. R2 i.  
 2. 23.  
**self-substantial**, thyself for. Son.  
 1. 6.  
**semblable**, similar. 2H4 v. 1. 67.  
**seemingly**, similarly. 1H4 v. 3. 21.  
**semblance**, appearance. John iv.  
 3. 4.  
**seniory**, seniority. R3 iv. 4. 36.  
**senet**, set of notes on the trumpet.  
 3H6 i. 1. 205; R3 iii. 1. 150; H8 ii. 4.  
 Stage direction in each case.  
**sense**, reason. Son. 35. 8.  
**senseless**, addressed to a senseless  
 object. R2 iii. 2. 23; senselessly.



**R3** iii. 1. 44; insensible of the wrong done to it. *Luc.* 820.  
**reasonable**, feeling. *V. & A.* 493.  
**separable**, separating. *Son.* 96. 6.  
**septentrion**, the north. *3H6* i. 4. 138.  
**sepulchred**, buried. *Luc.* 805.  
**servant**, subject. *1H4* i. 3. 19.  
**service**, action. *1H4* iii. 2. 3.  
**service, do thee**, become thy servant. *3H6* v. 1. 33.  
**set**, term at cards, as well as at tennis. *John* v. 2. 107; set out. *H5* ii. chor. 34; sunset. *H5* iv. 1. 277; *R3* v. 3. 19; sitting. *H8* iii. 1. 35; seated. *V. & A.* 18.  
**set a match**, planned a robbery. *1H4* i. 2. 108.  
**set forward**, set out. *John* iv. 3. 19.  
**set off**, put aside. *2H4* iv. 1. 145.  
**set on**, begin to march, set forward. *2H4* i. 3. 109; *H8* ii. 4. 239.  
**sets me else, who**, who else sets me a stake? a term at dice. *R2* iv. 1. 57.  
**setter**, one who plans an appointment. *1H4* ii. 2. 50.  
**set to**, set, as a broken limb. *1H4* v. 1. 132.  
**seven stars**, the Pleiades. *1H4* i. 2. 14; *2H4* ii. 4. 191.  
**several**, detail. *H5* i. 1. 86; separate. *R3* iii. 2. 76; particular. *R3* v. 3. 25; private. *Son.* 137. 9.  
**severe**, merciless. *V. & A.* 1000.  
**shadow**, protect. *John* ii. 1. 14; reflection. *John* ii. 1. 498; merenames. *2H4* iii. 2. 139.  
**shady stealth**, stealthily-moving shadow. *Son.* 77. 7.  
**shag**, shaggy. *2H6* iii. 1. 367; *V. & A.* 295.  
**shale**, shell. *H5* iv. 2. 18.  
**shallow**, stupid. *1H4* ii. 3. 16.  
**shame**, beashamed. *Luc.* 1084, 1143.  
**shamefast**, shame-faced. *R3* i. 4. 140.  
**shape of likelihood**, probability. *1H4* i. 1. 58.  
**sharp provided**, keen. *R3* iii. 1. 132.  
**she**, woman. *H5* ii. 1. 81.  
**shearman**, one who shears cloth. *H5* iv. 2. 132.  
**sheaved**, made of straw. *Low.* Com. 31.  
**sheer**, pure. *R2* v. 3. 60.  
**shelter**, take shelter, hide. *1H4* ii. 2. 1.  
**sherrie, sherrie-sack**, wine of Xeres, in Spain. *2H4* iv. 3. 95, 102.  
**shift**, trick. *3H6* iii. 2. 108; *Luc.* 920, 980.  
**shine**, brightness. *V. & A.* 488, 728.  
**shook**, encounter. *John* v. 7. 117.  
**shog**, move, jog. *H5* ii. 1. 47; ii. 3. 45.  
**shoon**, shoes. *2H6* iv. 2. 184.  
**shoot**, shot. *2H4* iii. 2. 48; *3H6* iii. 1. 7.  
**short**, shorten. *Pas. P.* xiv. 30.  
**shot**, marksmen. *2H4* iii. 2. 234; *1H6* i. 4. 53; *H8* v. 4. 55.

**shot-free**, without paying the tavern charge. *1H4* v. 3. 30.  
**shotten**, having shed its roe. *1H4* ii. 4. 131.  
**shouldered in**, pushed into. *R3* iii. 7. 127.  
**shove-groat shilling**, shilling used in game of shove-groat. *2H4* ii. 4. 196.  
**show**, appearance. *R2* iii. 3. 71; *H5* i. 2. 72; *Luc.* 1597; appear. *H5* iv. 1. 105; *Son.* 115. 2.  
**shrewd, shrewdly**, mischievously, viciously. *John* v. 3. 14; &c.; sharp-tongued. *R3* ii. 4. 35.  
**shrift**, confession. *R3* iii. 4. 94.  
**shriner**, confessor. *3H6* iii. 2. 108.  
**shriving work**, confession. *R3* iii. 2. 113.  
**shroud**, sail-rope. *John* v. 7. 53; *3H6* v. 4. 18; *H8* iv. 1. 72; hide oneself. *3H6* iii. 1. 1; iv. 3. 39.  
**Shrove-tide**, close of the Carnival, a merry time. *2H4* v. 3. 35.  
**sick**, sicken. *2H4* iv. 4. 128; sick with pride. *H8* ii. 2. 82; feeble. *H8* iii. 1. 117.  
**sicken**, impair. *H8* i. 1. 82.  
**sick-fallen**, fallen sick. *John* iv. 3. 153.  
**sick-service**, service in sickness. *John* iv. 1. 52.  
**sightless**, unsightly. *John* iii. 1. 45; blind. *Luc.* 1013.  
**sightly**, pleasing. *John* ii. 1. 143.  
**sights**, eye-holes in a helmet. *2H4* iv. 1. 121; sight. *R3* iv. 1. 24.  
**sign**, to set a stamp on. *John* iv. 2. 222; *H8* ii. 4. 106.  
**signal**, sign of victory. *H5* v. chor. 21.  
**significant**, token. *1H6* ii. 4. 26.  
**sign of the leg**, bootmaker's sign. *2H4* ii. 4. 255.  
**sign of war**, armour, standard, ensign. *R2* ii. 2. 74; *H5* ii. 2. 192.  
**signory**, lordship; estate. *R2* iii. 1. 22; iv. 1. 89.  
**silence**, reduce to silence by prohibition or restraint. *2H4* v. 2. 97; *H8* i. 1. 97.  
**Silent**, time of silence. *2H6* i. 4. 17.  
**silken**, effeminate. *H5* ii. chor. 2; *R3* i. 3. 53.  
**silkman**, one who deals in silks. *2H4* ii. 1. 29.  
**silly**, simple. *R2* v. 5. 25; *V. & A.* 467; poor. *2H6* i. 1. 223; haramless, hapless. *3H6* ii. 5. 43; *V. & A.* 1098; *Luc.* 167; petty. *3H6* iii. 3. 93; used as a term of pity. *Pas. P.* ix. 7; *Son.* to Music 1. 8.  
**similes**, comparisons. *1H4* i. 2. 81.  
**simplicity**, folly. *Son.* 68. 11.  
**since**, when. *2H4* iii. 2. 200; *2H6* iii. 1. 9.  
**sinew**, knit together. *John* v. 7. 88; strength. *1H4* iv. 4. 17; nerve. *V. & A.* 903.

- snow together**, knit in strength. 3H6 ii. 8. 91.  
**sinfully**, while in a state of sin. H5 iv. 1. 160.  
**single**, simple, silly. 2H4 i. 2. 185;  
**sincere**. H8 v. 3. 38.  
**sinister**, unfair. H5 ii. 4. 85.  
**Sir**, title of priests. 2H6 i. 2. 68; R3 iii. 2. 108.  
**stirrah**, word addressed to inferiors. 1H4 i. 2. 180; 1H6 iii. 1. 62; R3 iii. 2. 95.  
**stistering**, neighbouring. Lov. Com. 2.  
**sit**, pass, weigh. R2 ii. 1. 266; sit in council. R3 iii. 1. 173; be comprised. Son. 103. 13.  
**sith**, since. 3H6 i. 1. 110; V. & A. 762.  
**skill**, good policy. 1H4 i. 2. 217.  
**skills net**, matters net. 2H6 iii. 1. 281.  
**skimble-skamble**, wild, confused. 1H4 iii. 1. 153.  
**skin-coat**, lion's skin. John ii. 1. 139.  
**skipping**, flighty, thoughtless. 1H4 iii. 2. 60.  
**skirr**, move rapidly. H5 iv. 7. 60.  
**slander**, reproach. R2 i. 1. 113; that will cause reproach. R2 v. 6. 35.  
**slanderous**, disgraceful. John iii. 1. 44; Luc. 100P.  
**slaughter-man**, butcher. 3H6 i. 4. 169.  
**sleided**, untwisted. Lov. Com. 48.  
**sleight**, artifice, stratagem. 3H6 iv. 2. 20.  
**slept upon**, been blinded to the faults of. H8 ii. 2. 42.  
**slightly**, rapidly. H8 ii. 4. 110.  
**slips**, leash. H5 iii. 1. 31; counterfeit coin. V. & A. 515.  
**slobbery**, sloppy. H5 iii. 5. 13.  
**slops**, loose breeches. 2H4 i. 2. 30.  
**slough**, snakeskin. H5 iv. 1. 23; 2H6 iii. 1. 229.  
**slovenry**, slovenliness. H5 iv. 3. 114.  
**slower**, more serious. R3 i. 2. 117.  
**slug**, sluggard. R3 iii. 1. 22.  
**smack**, savour. John ii. 1. 396; 2H4 i. 2. 99.  
**smart**, painful. 2H6 iii. 2. 325.  
**smearred**, stained. 1H6 iv. 7. 3.  
**smell**, scent. V. & A. 686.  
**smoke**, thrash. John ii. 1. 139.  
**smooth**, flatter. 2H6 i. 1. 154; &c.; bland, insinuating. 2H6 iii. 1. 65.  
**smooth-pate**, sleek-head. 2H4 i. 2. 38.  
**snug**, smooth. 1H4 iii. 1. 103.  
**snatchers**, free-booters. H5 i. 2. 143.  
**sneak-up**, one who shirks drinking. 1H4 iii. 3. 88.  
**sneap**, snub. 2H4 ii. 1. 123; nipped. Luc. 333.  
**snuff**, in, offence at. 1H4 i. 3. 41.  
**so**, if only, providing. John iv. 1. 17; &c.; so be it. 2H4 iii. 2. 245; well. R3 iv. 4. 183.  
**soft**, tender-hearted. H5 iii. 3. 48;  
**hush**, stop. 2H6 ii. 4. 15; R3 v. 3. 179.  
**soft silencing**, gently reproving. 2H4 v. 2. 97.  
**soil**, explanation. Son. 14.  
**solace**, be happy. R3 ii. 2. 30.  
**sole**, unique. John iv. 3. 2.  
**solemnity**, marriage ceremony. John iii. 1. 565; grandeur, dignity. 1H4 iii. 2. 58.  
**solicit**, move, stir up. R2 i. 2. 2; 1H6 v. 3. 189; H8 i. 2. 18.  
**something**, somewhat. 2H4 i. 2. 189; H8 i. 1. 195.  
**sometime**, once. R2 iv. 1. 169; R3 iv. 4. 275; sometimes. 2H6 ii. 4. 42; 3H6 ii. 2. 30.  
**sometimes**, formerly, at one time. R2 i. 2. 54; H8 ii. 4. 179.  
**sonance**, sound. H5 iv. 2. 35.  
**soon at**, this very. 2H4 v. 5. 93.  
**sooth**, truth. John iv. 1. 29; H5 iii. 6. 143; H8 ii. 3. 30.  
**soothe**, flatter, assent to as being true, humour. John iii. 1. 121; 3H6 iii. 3. 175; R3 i. 3. 298.  
**soother**, flatterer. 1H4 iv. 1. 7.  
**sophister**, one who uses false casuistry. 2H6 v. 1. 191.  
**sore**, heavily. R2 ii. 1. 266.  
**sort**, company, set, pack. R2 iv. 1. 246; &c.; manner. 2H4 iv. 5. 199;  
**rank**, degree. H5 i. 2. 190; iv. 7. 134;  
**agree**, fit. H5 iv. 1. 63; sort out, select. H5 iv. 7. 73; 1H6 ii. 3. 27;  
**Luc. 899**; style, array. H5 v. chor. 25; let it fall out. 2H6 i. 2. 107;  
**adapt**. 2H6 ii. 4. 68; Luc. 1221;  
**make**, find. R3 ii. 2. 147; associate. V. & A. 689.  
**sortance**, hold, be in accord. 2H4 iv. 1. 11.  
**sought**, gave occasion for. H8 v. 2. 14.  
**soul-fearing**, soul-terrifying. John ii. 1. 383.  
**soul of adoration**, soul, that men should adore it. H5 iv. 1. 250.  
**sound**, proclaim. John iv. 2. 48; H8 v. 2. 12.  
**sounder**, more loyal. H8 iii. 2. 275.  
**sour**, bitter. R2 iv. 1. 241; 2H6 iii. 2. 301.  
**sourly**, cruelly. Son. 35. 14.  
**souse**, swoop down on. John v. 2. 150.  
**soused garnet**, pickled fish. H4 iv. 2. 12.  
**south**, south wind. 2H4 ii. 4. 375.  
**span-counter**, boys' game. 2H6 iv. 2. 157.  
**spanned**, limited. H8 i. 1. 223.  
**Spanish-pouch**, term of contempt. 1H4 ii. 4. 72.  
**spavin**, a disease in horses. H8 i. 3. 12.  
**speak**, bear witness on behalf of. H8 ii. 4. 124; iii. 1. 124.  
**speculation**, looking-on. H5 iv. 2. 31.

**speed**, succeeded. John iv. 2. 141.  
**speed**, fortune. 1H4 iii. 1. 189.  
**spend**, waste. John v. 2. 89; H5 iii. 3. 24; expend. 1H6 i. 2. 16.  
**spend their mouths**, to give tongue. H5 ii. 4. 70; V. & A. 695.  
**spent**, passed, gone. R2 i. 3. 211.  
**spinster**, spinner. H8 i. 2. 33.  
**spirit**, vital energy. Son. T29. 1.  
**spirituality**, spiritual peers. H5 i. 2. 132.  
**spital**, hospital. H5 ii. 1. 76; v. 1. 83.  
**spite**, vexation. 1H4 iii. 1. 191; 3H6 v. 1. 18.  
**spite of spite**, come the worst that may. 3H6 ii. 3. 5.  
**spleen**, fierce passion, impetuosity. John ii. 1. 68; &c.; quick movement. John ii. 1. 448; v. 7. 50; waywardness. 1H4 ii. 3. 79; fit of passion, caprice. 1H4 iii. 2. 125; v. 2. 19; V. & A. 907; malice, enmity. R3 ii. 4. 64; H8 i. 2. 174.  
**spleenful**, hot, eager. 2H6 iii. 2. 128.  
**spleeny**, passionate, impetuous. H8 iii. 2. 100.  
**splinter**, to bind with splinters, as a broken limb. R3 ii. 2. 118.  
**splitting**, that will split the sides of vessels. 2H6 iii. 2. 97.  
**spoil**, corruption. 1H4 iii. 3. 10; despoil. 2H6 iv. 4. 53; destroy. H8 i. 2. 175.  
**spoke on**, spoken of. 2H4 ii. 2. 65.  
**sport**, disport, amuse. 3H6 ii. 5. 34.  
**sportive**, amorous. Son. 121. 6.  
**spot**, disgrace. John v. 2. 30.  
**spotted**, polluted. R2 iii. 2. 134.  
**spousal**, marriage. H5 v. 2. 375.  
**sprays**, branch, twig. H5 iii. 5. 5; 2H6 ii. 3. 45.  
**spright**, spirit. V. & A. 181.  
**sprightful**, high-spirited. John iv. 2. 177.  
**sprightly**, courageously. R2 i. 3. 3.  
**spring**, beginning. 2H4 iv. 4. 35; blossom, shoot. V. & A. 656; Luc. 950; bloom. V. & A. 417.  
**springhalt**, lameness in horses. H8 i. 3. 13.  
**squire**, square, rule. 1H4 ii. 2. 13.  
**stave**, lance. John ii. 1. 318.  
**stagger**, strike down. R2 v. 5. 110.  
**stain**, grow dim. Son. 33. 14.  
**stained**, mud-stained. 1H4 i. 1. 64.  
**stain to all nymphs**, causing them to appear sullied by contrast. V. & A. 9.  
**stale**, laughing-stock. 3H6 iii. 3. 260.  
**stalk**, to move stealthily, as behind a stalking-horse. Luc. 365.  
**stall**, install. R3 i. 3. 206; fix. Son. to Music. 4. 2.  
**stand**, be. 2H4 v. 3. 82; withstand. 1H6 i. 1. 123.  
**standing tuck**, rapier standing on end. 1H4 ii. 4. 249.  
**stand off**, stand out. H5 ii. 2. 103.  
**stand on**, rely upon. H8 v. 1. 123.

**stands upon**, is important to. R2 ii. 3. 138; R3 iv. 2. 58; insists. 2H4 i. 2. 41.  
**star**, pole-star. Son. 116. 7.  
**stark**, stiff. 1H4 v. 3. 41.  
**start**, impulse, fit. 1H4 iii. 2. 125; H5 v. 2. 391.  
**starting-hole**, refuge, subterfuge. 1H4 ii. 4. 265.  
**startled**, started. R3 iii. 4. 84.  
**starve**, to starve. 1H4 i. 3. 159; benumb with cold. 2H6 iii. 1. 343.  
**starving**, longing. 1H4 v. 1. 81.  
**state**, lord of high estate. John ii. 1. 395; power, majesty. John iv. 2. 243; constitution. R2 iv. 1. 225; chair of state, throne. 1H4 ii. 4. 384; H8 i. 2. 8 (stage direction); regal character. 2H4 v. 2. 99; canopy. H8 i. 4 (stage direction).  
**state of law**, lawgiver's state. R2 ii. 1. 114.  
**statue**, statue. R3 iii. 7. 25.  
**statute**, security. Son. 134. 9.  
**staves**, shafts of lances. R3 v. 3. 65.  
**stay**, command to stop. John ii. 1. 455; wait, wait for, linger. R2 ii. 1. 289; &c.; cease. 2H6 ii. 4. 77.  
**steal**, glide away. Son. 104. 16.  
**stealing**, stealing on imperceptibly. R3 iii. 7. 167.  
**stealth**, stealthy movement. Son. 77. 7.  
**steeled**, hardened. Son. 112. 8.  
**steep-up**, precipitate. Son. 7. 5; Pas. P. ix. 5.  
**steepy**, precipitous. Son. 63. 5.  
**stelled**, fixed. Luc. 144; Son. 24. 1.  
**stern**, place. 1H6 i. 1. 177.  
**sternage of**, to, astern of. H5 iii. chor. 18.  
**stick**, hesitate. 2H4 i. 2. 22; Son. to Music. 4. 51.  
**stiff-borne**, obstinately pursued. 2H4 i. 1. 177.  
**stigmatic**, one bearing a brand of deformity. 2H6 v. 1. 215; 3H6 ii. 2. 136.  
**still**, always, continuously. John v. 7. 73; &c.; constant, continual. R3 iv. 4. 230.  
**still and anon**, now and again. John iv. 1. 47.  
**still-breeding**, ever-breeding. R2 v. 5. 8.  
**still-discordant**, ever discordant. 2H4 ind. 19.  
**stillitory**, still. V. & A. 443.  
**still lasting**, continual. R3 iv. 4. 245.  
**still-pining**, ever-longing. Luc. 859.  
**still-slaughtered**, ever killed but never dying. Luc. 188.  
**still-stand**, standstill. 2H4 ii. 3. 64.  
**stilly**, softly. H5 iv. chor. 5.  
**stint**, check. H8 i. 2. 76.  
**stirs**, strives. H8 v. 3. 39.  
**stock-fish**, dried fish. 1H4 ii. 4. 247.  
**stole**, robe. Rev. C. & n. 297.

**stomach**, appetite. 1H4 ii. 3. 42;  
2H4 iv. 4. 105; pride. 2H4 i. 1. 129;  
H8 iv. 2. 34; anger. 1H8 i. 3. 90;  
2H6 ii. 1. 55.

**stood**, insisted. H5 v. 2. 94.

**stood to**, sided with. H8 ii. 4. 84.

**stoop**, swoop down on the prey.  
H5 iv. 1. 109.

**stop**, hole in a wind instrument by  
the opening or closing of which  
the sounds are produced. 2H4 Ind.  
17.

**store**, increase. Son. 11. 9.

**story**, narrate. V. & A. 1013; Luc.  
106.

**stout**, bold. John iv. 2. 173; R3 i.  
3. 340; haughty. 2H6 i. 1. 185.

**straight**, straightway. John i. 1.  
149; R2 iv. 11. 265; H5 i. 2. 191;  
tight. H5 iii. 7. 55.

**strain**, impulse, emotion. 2H4 iv. 5.  
189; stock, race. H5 ii. 4. 51; em-  
brace. H8 iv. 1. 46.

**strain courtesy**, decline to go  
first. V. & A. 888.

**strained**, excessive. 2H4 i. 1. 161;  
overwrought. Son. 3. 10.

**strait**, straitly, niggardly. John  
v. 7. 42; strict, strictly. 1H4 iv. 3.  
79; &c.

**traiter**, more severely. 2H6 iii. 2.  
20.

**strange**, foreign. 2H4 iv. 4. 69; Luc.  
1242; distant. Son. 89. 8.

**strange achieved**, gained in  
strange ways. 2H4 iv. 5. 70.

**strangely**, like a stranger. 2H4 v.  
2. 63; distantly. Son. 110. 6.

**strangeness**, distant manner, re-  
serve. V. & A. 810.

**stranger**, foreign. John v. 1. 11;  
R2 i. 3. 143.

**strangle**, extinguish. H8 v. 1. 157;  
Son. 89. 8.

**strappado**, punishment in which  
victim was drawn up by his arms  
strapped behind his back, and  
suddenly let fall. 1H4 ii. 4. 239.

**stratagem**, deed of surprising  
violence. 2H4 i. 1. 8; 3H6 ii. 5. 89.

**stray**, body of stragglers. 2H4 iv.  
2. 120; vagrant. 2H6 iv. 10. 25.

**strength**, strong words. 1H4 i. 3.  
25; army. 2H4 i. 3. 76; 2H6 iii. 1.  
380.

**strength of laws**, legal right. Son.  
49. 13.

**stretch**, open wide. H5 ii. 2. 55;  
overstrain. Son. 17. 12.

**strewed**, strewn with rushes. R2  
i. 3. 289.

**strict**, close. V. & A. 84.

**strike**, strike sail, submit, give  
way. R2 ii. 1. 267; &c.

**striker**, dissolute fellow. 1H4 ii. 1.  
77.

**stroke**, keep at the, keep on strik-  
ing. R3 iv. 2. 113.

**strond**, strand. 1H4 i. 1. 4; 2H4 i.  
1. 62.

**strong**, determined. R2 v. 3. 88;  
**strassers**, trowsers. H5 iii. 7. 55.  
**struck**, wounded. 1H4 iv. 2. 19;  
fought. H5 ii. 4. 54; &c. R3  
i. 1. 92.

**studied**, inclined. 2H4 ii. 2. 8.

**stumbling night**, night which  
causes stumbling. John v. 5. 18.

**style**, list of titles. 2H6 i. 1. 108.

**suborn**, procure. R3 iv. 3. 4.

**subornation**, inciting. 2H6 iii. 1.  
45; murderous subornation, guilt  
of underhand murder. 1H4 i. 3.  
163.

**subscribe**, sign. H5 v. 2. 348; yield.  
1H6 ii. 4. 44; 2H6 iii. 1. 38; Son. 107.  
10.

**substitute**, proxy. R3 iii. 7. 180.

**success**, succession. 2H4 iv. 2. 47;  
issue. 3H6 ii. 2. 46; R3 iv. 4. 237.

**successively**, from one to another.  
R3 iii. 1. 73; in order or by right of  
succession. 2H4 iv. 5. 200; R3 iii. 7.  
134.

**sudden**, quick, hasty. John iv. 1.  
27; R3 i. 3. 346; unprepared. John  
v. 6. 26.

**suddenly**, quickly, very soon, im-  
mediately. 1H4 i. 3. 295; &c.

**sue his livery**, lay claim to his  
estate. 1H4 iv. 3. 62.

**suffer**, allow to continue, permit.  
2H6 iii. 2. 262; &c.; allow to have  
way. 2H6 v. 1. 153; 3H6 iv. 8. 8.

**sufferance**, suffering. 1H4 v. 1. 51;  
2H4 v. 4. 26; H8 ii. 3. 86; being al-  
lowed to go unpunished. H5 ii. 2.

46; death by execution. H5 ii. 2.  
159; forbearance. H5 iii. 6. 125;  
patient endurance. Son. 58. 7.

**suggest**, tempt. R2 iii. 4. 75; &c.

**suggestion**, temptation. John iii.  
1. 292; 1H4 iv. 3. 51; 2H4 iv. 4. 45;

instigation. R3 iii. 2. 100; under-  
hand practice. H8 iv. 2. 35.

**suit**, dress. Son. 127. 10; 132. 12.

**sullen**, mournful, gloomy, dark.  
John i. 1. 28; &c.

**sullens**, moroseness. R2 ii. 1. 139.

**sum**, cast up, reckon. Son. 2. 11.

**sumless**, inestimable. H5 i. 2. 165.

**summered**, provided, as cattle  
with pasture. H5 v. 2. 319.

**summer-house**, country house.  
1H4 iii. 1. 163.

**supernal**, high. John ii. 1. 112.

**supple**, easily-bending. R2 i. 4.  
33.

**supplies**, supply, reserve, rein-  
forcements. 1H4 iv. 3. 3; 2H4 iv. 2.  
45.

**supply**, for which, for supply of  
which. H5 i. chor. 31.

**supportance**, support. R2 iii. 4. 32.

**supposed**, imagined. Luc. 377.

**surcease**, cease. Luc. 1766.

**sure**, safe. R3 iii. 2. 83; trust-  
worthy. 1H4 iii. 1. 1.

**sure card**, boon companion. 2H4  
iii. 2. 91.

**surfeit-taking**, indulging to excess. Luc. 698.

**surmise**, thought. Luc. 83.

**surmount**, exceed. R2 ii. 3. 64; 1H6 v. 3. 190.

**surprise**, seize, capture. 1H4 i. 1. 93; 2H6 iv. 9. 8.

**sur-reined**, over-ridden. H5 iii. 5. 19.

**suspect**, suspicion. 2H6 iii. 1. 140; &c.

**inspire**, breathe. John iii. 4. 80; 2H4 iv. 3. 32.

**sutler**, provision-seller to the camp. H5 ii. 1. 113.

**swaggerer**, bully. 2H4 ii. 4. 82.

**sawart**, swarthy. John iii. 1. 46; 1H6 i. 2. 84.

**swasher**, bully, braggart. H5 iii. 2. 30.

**swathling**, swaddling. 1H4 iii. 2. 112.

**swaying**, inclining. H5 i. 1. 73.

**sway of motion**, which controls the motion. John ii. 1. 578.

**sway on**, move on. 2H4 iv. 1. 24.

**sweep**, walk in pomp. 2H6 i. 3. 78.

**sweetening**, term of endearment. 1H6 iii. 3. 21.

**swelling**, angry. R3 ii. 1. 51.

**swift extremity**, extreme swiftness. Son. 51. 6.

**swiftest hours**, prime of life. Lov. Com. 60.

**swilled**, greedily gulped down. H5 iii. 1. 14.

**swinge**, beat. John ii. 1. 288; 2H4 v. 4. 21.

**swinge-buckler**, roysterer. 2H4 iii. 2. 24.

**sword**, sword of State. R3 iv. 4. 470.

**sword-and-buckler**, common fighter. 1H4 i. 3. 230.

**sworder**, gladiator. 2H6 iv. 1. 135.

**sworn brother**, pledged comrade. R2 v. 1. 20; H5 ii. 1. 12.

**swound**, swoon. Luc. 1486.

**sympathize**, share the feeling of. R2 v. 1. 46; equally matched. Luc. 1113; described with appreciation. Son. 82. 11.

**sympathize with**, resemble. H5 iii. 7. 151.

**sympathy**, equality. R2 iv. 1. 33.

**table**, canvas of a picture. John ii. 1. 503, 504; memorandum book. 2H4 ii. 4. 273; Son. 24. 2; 122. 1.

**tackling**, rigging. 3H6 v. 4. 18; R3 iv. 4. 234.

**ta'en tardy**, caught lagging. R3 iv. 1. 51.

**taint**, touched. 1H6 v. 3. 182.

**tainted**, touched, moved. 3H6 iii. 1. 40; disgraced. H8 iv. 2. 14.

**tainture**, disgrace. 2H6 ii. 1. 151.

**take**, make. John iii. 1. 17; H8 ii. 1. 85; V. & A. 82; leap. John v. 2.

136; take fire. H5 ii. 1. 54; catch. H5 iv. 1. 224; strike. R3 i. 4. 156.

**take head**, turn aside. John ii. 1. 579.

**take it**, swear. 1H4 ii. 4. 2.

**take me with you**, make me understand you. 1H4 ii. 4. 469.

**take my death**, swear by my death, an oath. 2H6 ii. 3. 89.

**take order**, take measures. 2H4 iii. 2. 191.

**take the heat**, get the start. 2H4 ii. 4. 308.

**take up**, obtain on credit. 2H4 i. 2. 40; 2H6 iv. 7. 125; encounter. 2H4 i. 3. 73; levy. 2H4 ii. 1. 127; iv. 2. 26.

**talents**, lockets containing hair. Lov. Com. 204.

**tall**, large, strong, able, sturdy, valiant, active. R2 ii. 1. 286; &c.; used ironically. 2H4 v. 1. 80.

**tallow-ketch**, vessel filled with tallow. 1H4 ii. 4. 230.

**tally**, notched stick for keeping accounts. 2H6 iv. 7. 35; Son. 122. 10.

**tap for tap**, tit for tat. 2H4 ii. 1. 193.

**target**, shield. 1H4 ii. 4. 804.

**tarre**, set dogs to fight. John iv. 1. 117.

**tarriance**, stay. Pns. P. 6. 4.

**tarry**, stay. 1H4 i. 2. 145; 2H4 iii. 2. 198.

**Tartar**, Tartarus, Hell. H5 ii. 2. 123.

**task**, challenge, command. John iii. 1. 148; &c.; test. 1H4 iv. 4. 9; tax. 1H4 iv. 3. 92.

**taste**, act the part of taster. John v. 6. 28; test, try the temper. 1H4 iv. 1. 119; experience. H5 vi. 2. 51; iv. 7. 64.

**tawny-coats**, livery worn by ecclesiastical apparitors. 1H6 i. 3. 47.

**tear-falling**, tear-dropping. R3 iv. 2. 65.

**teems**, brings forth. H5 v. 2. 51.

**teen**, grief, vexation, pain. R3 iv. 1. 96; V. & A. 808; Lov. Com. 192.

**tell**, count. R3 iv. 4. 120; Son. 30. 10; count the strokes of. R3 v. 3. 27.

**tell, I cannot**, I don't know what to say. H5 ii. 1. 21.

**temper**, dispose. 1H4 i. 3. 235; disposition. 1H4 iii. 1. 169; H5 v. 2. 150; soften, like wax. 2H4 iv. 3. 129; V. & A. 565; mould, fashion, influence. H5 ii. 2. 118; R3 i. 1. 65; quality, hardness. H6 ii. 4. 13; moisten. 2H6 iii. 1. 311.

**temperality**, blunder for 'temper'. 2H4 ii. 4. 23.

**temperance**, chastity. Luc. 884.

**temper with the stars**, act and think in conformity with fate. 3H6 iv. 6. 29.

**temporize**, come to terms. John v. 2. 125.

**tend**, attend. R2 iv. 1. 199; 2H6 iii.

2. 304; contribute. 2H4 i. 2. 8; regard. 2H6 i. 1. 202.  
**tendence**, attention. H8 iii. 2. 150.  
**tender**, hold dear, take care of, have care for. R2 i. 1. 32; &c.; favour. Luc. 534.  
**tenours**, purport. H5 v. 2. 72.  
**term**, word. 1H4 iv. 1. 83; long period of time. Son. 148. 11.  
**termagant**, an imaginary Mohammedan deity, represented in the old plays as a most violent character. 1H4 v. 4. 114.  
**termless**, indescribable. Lov. Com. 94.  
**territories**, dependencies. John i. 1. 10.  
**tertian**, a fever of which the paroxysms occur every third day. H5 ii. 1. 121.  
**tester**, expence. 2H4 iii. 2. 286.  
**testy**, irritated. V. & A. 319.  
**tetchy**, fretful. R3 iv. 4. 168.  
**than**, then. Luc. 1440.  
**that**, so that. 2H4 i. 1. 197; &c.; would that. 2H6 i. 4. 29; if that. R3 iii. 7. 156.  
**that that**, that which. 2H4 iv. 4. 82.  
**these**, business. 2H4 i. 3. 22.  
**theoric**, theory. H5 i. 1. 52.  
**thereafter**, according. 2H4 iii. 2. 54.  
**therefore**, for that purpose. 1H4 i. 1. 30.  
**thence**, muscles. 2H4 iii. 2. 268.  
**thick**, fast. 2H4 ii. 3. 24; Luc. 1784.  
**thick-eyed**, dim-eyed. 1H4 ii. 3. 47.  
**thick-sighted**, short-sighted. V. & A. 136.  
**thin**, thin-haired. R2 iii. 2. 112; thinly-covered. R3 ii. 1. 118.  
**thinks**, methinks. Lov. Com. 91.  
**think scorn**, disdain. 2H6 iv. 2. 12.  
**this**, thus. V. & A. 205.  
**thorough**, through. 2H6 iv. 1. 87; throughout. Luc. 1851.  
**thorough**, be, complete a bargain. 2H4 i. 2. 40.  
**thoughtful**, careful. 2H4 iv. 5. 71.  
**thought**, in, only in thought. R3 iii. 6. 14.  
**thought**, with a, quick as thought. 1H4 ii. 4. 219.  
**thral**, slave. R3 iv. 1. 45; enslave. V. & A. 357; slavery. Son. to Music 3. 22.  
**thralled**, held in subjection. Son. 124. 7.  
**threaten**, made a thread. H5 iii. chor. 10; Lov. Com. 33.  
**three-farthings**, the three farthing pieces of Elizabeth were thin, and had a rose stamped behind the Queen's head. John i. 1. 143.  
**three-man beetle**, rammer worked by three men. 2H4 i. 2. 230.  
**threne**, dirge. Phoen. 49.  
**thrifless**, unprofitable. Son. 2. 8.  
**thoroughly**, thoroughly. H8 v. 1. 111.  
**tickle**, unstable. 2H6 i. 1. 214.  
**tickle-brain**, strong drink. 1H4 ii. 4. 405.  
**tickled**, irritated. 2H4 i. 4. 151.  
**tiddle-tattle**, tattle-tattle. H5 iv. 1. 70.  
**tide**, time, season. John iii. 1. 86.  
**tied**, brought into bondage. H8 iv. 2. 36.  
**tike**, cur. H5 ii. 1. 30.  
**tilly-fally**, expression of contempt. 2H4 ii. 4. 84.  
**time**, present condition of things. John v. 7. 110; H8 v. 1. 37; world, society. Son. 117. 6.  
**timeless**, untimely. R2 iv. 1. 5; &c.  
**timely**, early. Pas. P. 10. 3.  
**timely-parted**, recently dead. 2H6 iii. 2. 161.  
**time's enemies**, the enemies of the present state of affairs. John iv. 2. 61.  
**times in hope**, future times. Son. 60. 13.  
**tincture**, dye, colour. Son. 54. 6.  
**tire**, feed ravenously. 3H6 i. 1. 269; V. & A. 56; make feed ravenously. Luc. 417; head-dress. Son. 53. 8.  
**tired**, attired. V. & A. 177.  
**tirrits**, blunder for 'terrors'. 2H4 ii. 4. 209.  
**tithe**, take tithes. John iii. 1. 154.  
**title**, claim. 3H6 iii. 1. 48.  
**title-leaf**, title-page. 2H4 i. 1. 60.  
**to**, added to. John i. 1. 144; Luc. 1589; for. 2H4 iii. 2. 171; H5 iii. 7. 60; compared to. 2H4 iv. 3. 53; 1H4 iii. 2. 25; 2H6 iii. 1. 64; as. H5 iii. chor. 30; against. H8 iii. 2. 93.  
**toasting-iron**, sword. John iv. 3. 99.  
**toasts and butter**, effeminate fellows. 1H4 iv. 2. 20.  
**to be**, as to be. H8 iii. 1. 85.  
**toiled**, worn out. R2 iv. 1. 96.  
**toll**, raise a tax. John iii. 1. 154.  
**tomb**, bury. Son. 4. 13.  
**tongue**, English language. 1H4 iii. 1. 125.  
**took it on his death**, swore by his death. John i. 1. 110.  
**too too**, repeated for emphasis. Luc. 174.  
**top-proud**, very proud. H8 i. 1. 151.  
**torn their souls**, perjured themselves. R2 iii. 3. 83.  
**tottering**, hanging in rags. John v. 5. 7.  
**touch**, touchstone. 1H4 iv. 4. 10; R3 iv. 2. 8; dash. R3 iv. 4. 158; hint. H8 v. 1. 13.  
**touched and tried**, tested by the touchstone. John iii. 1. 100.  
**touch**, know no, have no skill. R2 i. 3. 165.  
**toward**, in preparation. 2H4 ii. 4. 215; bold. 3H6 ii. 2. 66; docile, tractable. V. & A. 1157.  
**tower**, soar as a bird of prey. John v. 2. 149; &c.

toy, trifle. John i. 1. 232; &c.; whim.  
Son. to Music. 4. 39.

trace, track, follow. 1H4 iii. 1. 48;  
2H4 iii. 2. 45.

tract, course. H8 i. 1. 40; Son. 7.  
92.

trade, resort. R2 iii. 3. 156; activity.  
2H4 i. 1. 174; beaten track. H8 v. 1.  
36.

traded, practised. John iv. 3. 109.  
trade-fallen, out of employment.

1H4 iv. 2. 29.

tradition, old custom. R2 iii. 2. 173.

traffic, transaction. 1H6 v. 3. 163.

train, entice, allure, decoy. John  
iii. 4. 175; 1H4 v. 2. 21; 1H6 ii. 3. 35.

tranquility, gentility. 1H4 ii. 1.  
79.

transformation, mutilation. 1H4  
i. 1. 44.

translated, changed. Son. 96. 8.

travel-tainted, travel-stained.  
2H4 iv. 3. 36.

traverse, march. 2H4 iii. 2. 281.

treasure, tokens of love due to me  
from you. 1H4 ii. 3. 46; make rich.  
Son. 6. 3; treasury. Son. 136. 5.

treasury, treasure. H5 i. 2. 165;  
2H6 i. 3. 132.

treatise, discourse. V. & A. 774.

treble-dated, living for three ages.  
Phoen. 17.

trench, entrench. 1H4 i. 1. 7; turn  
into another channel. 1H4 iii. 1.  
113; gash. V. & A. 1052.

trencher, plate. 2H6 iv. 1. 57.

Tribulation of Tower-hill, con-  
gregation of puritans. H8 v. 4. 61.

trick, characteristic expression.  
John i. 1. 85; peculiarity. 1H4 ii. 4.  
412; v. 2. 11; custom. 2H4 i. 2. 216.

adorn. H5 iii. 6. 77.

Trigon, Mars, the third of a plane-  
tary triangle. 2H4 ii. 4. 272.

trim, ornamental array. 1H4 iv. 1.  
113.

trimmed in, furnished with. 2H4  
i. 3. 94.

trip, defeat. 2H4 v. 2. 87.

triumph, tournament. R2 v. 2. 52,  
66; 1H6 v. 5. 31; public festivity.  
1H4 iii. 3. 42.

triumphant, triumphal. Son. 151.  
10.

troop, company. R2 iv. 1. 231; march  
in company. 2H4 iv. 1. 62.

truth, faith. R2 v. 2. 78; Luc. 571.

troth-plight, betrothed. H5 ii. 1.  
20.

trow, know, believe. 2H6 ii. 4. 38;  
H8 i. 1. 184; think. 3H6 v. 1. 85.

Trojan, cant name for an evil  
liver. 1H4 ii. 1. 72.

true, honest. 1H4 i. 2. 111.

true defence, defence of my  
honesty. John iv. 3. 84.

trull, harlot. 3H6 i. 4. 114.

trumpet, trumpeter. 1H4 v. 1. 4;  
&c.

truncheon, cudgel. 2H4 ii. 4. 144.

truncheon, person carrying a  
club or truncheon. H8 v. 4. 51.

trust, for fear of, sparing to trust  
myself. Son. 23. 6.

trustless, faithless. Luc. 2.

truth, integrity. R3 iii. 2. 91; alle-  
giance. Son. 41. 12; Adeline. Son.  
110. 5.

uck, rapier. 1H4 ii. 4. 250.

ucket, flourish on trumpet. H5 iv.  
2. 35.

Turk, Grand Turk, Sultan. 2H4  
iii. 2. 318; H5 v. 2. 214.

Turk Gregory, Pope Gregory VII.  
1H4 v. 3. 43.

turn, return. R2 iv. 1. 39; 2H5 ii. 2.  
82; R3 iv. 4. 185.

Turnbull Street, Turnhill Street,  
Clerkenwell, then of notorious  
character. 2H4 iii. 2. 316.

turned, shaped in the turning-  
lathe. 1H4 iii. 1. 130.

turn, good, kind action. V. & A. 92.

tushes, tusks. V. & A. 617.

tway, two. H5 iii. 2. 120.

twelve score, twelve score yards.  
1H4 ii. 4. 557; 2H4 iii. 2. 50.

twire, twinkle. Son. 38. 12.

type, sign, badge, distinguishing  
mark. 3H6 i. 4. 121; R3 iv. 4. 245;  
H8 i. 3. 31.

umbered, darkened. H5 iv. chor. 9.

unable, feeble. 1H6 iv. 5. 4.

unaccustomed, extraordinary.  
1H6 iii. 1. 98.

unadvised, unadvisedly, rashly  
rashly. John ii. 1. 45; &c.; unin-  
tentional. Luc. 1. 88.

unapproved, unconfirmed. J. qv.  
Com. 63.

unavoided, inevitable. R2 iv. 1. 299;  
1H6 iv. 5. 8; R3 iv. 4. 218.

unawares, by surprise. 1H6 iii. 2.  
39.

unbid, unwelcome. 3H6 v. 1. 18.

unbless, neglect to make happy.  
Son. 3. 4.

unblown, unopened. R3 iv. 4. 10.

uncivil, uncivilized. 2H6 iii. 1. 310.

uncoined constancy, which like  
an unimpressed plain piece of  
metal has not yet become current  
coin. H5 v. 2. 157.

uncolled, deprived of one's horse.  
1H4 ii. 2. 39.

unconstant, inconstant, fickle.  
John iii. 1. 243; 3H6 v. 1. 102.

uncouple, loose the dogs. V. & A.  
673.

uncouth, strange, rough. Luc.  
159. c

uncurse, take off the curse from.  
R2 iii. 2. 137.

undeaf, cure deafness. R2 ii. 1. 18.

underbear, endure. John iii. 1. 65;  
R2 i. 4. 29.

underprop, support. John v. 2. 69.

understinker, under-drawer, tap-  
ster. 1H4 ii. 4. 23.

undertaken, takes charge of. H5 ii. 1. 97.  
 under - wrought, undermined. John ii. 1. 95.  
 underserver, man of no merit. 2H4 ii. 1. 388.  
 undid, would undo. H5 v. 2. 137.  
 unearred, unploughed. Son. 3. 5.  
 uneasy, uncomfortable. 2H4 iii. 1. 10.  
 uneth, uneasily, hardly. 2H6 ii. 4. 8.  
 uneven, embarrassing. 1H4 i. 1. 50.  
 unexperient, inexperienced. Lov. Com. 318.  
 unfair, deprive of beauty. Son. 5. 4.  
 unfairly, unnaturally produced. 2H4 iv. 4. 122.  
 unfenced, defenceless. John ii. 1. 388.  
 unfirm, weak. 2H4 i. 3. 73.  
 unfurnished, untapestried. R2 i. 2. 68; left undefended. H5 i. 2. 148.  
 ungotten, unbegotten. H5 i. 2. 287.  
 ungracious, graceless. R2 ii. 3. 89.  
 unhaired, beardless. John v. 2. 133.  
 unhandsome, unbecoming. 1H4 i. 3. 44.  
 unhappied, made unhappy. R2 iii. 1. 10.  
 unhappily, unfavourably. H8 i. 4. 89; mischievously. Son. 66. 4.  
 unhappiness, disposition to evil. R3 i. 2. 25.  
 unhappy, fatal. Luc. 1508.  
 unhelpful, unavailing. 2H6 iii. 1. 218.  
 unjointed, incoherent. 1H4 i. 3. 65.  
 unjust, dishonest. 1H4 iv. 2. 27.  
 unkind, unnatural. 1H6 iv. 1. 193; childless. V. & A. 204.  
 unkinged, dethroned. R2 iv. 1. 220; v. 5. 37.  
 unkind, undo by a kiss. R2 v. 1. 74.  
 unlive, dead. Luc. 1754.  
 unlooked, unlooked for. R3 i. 3. 214.  
 unlooked for, disregarded. Son. 25. 4.  
 unmannered, unmannerly. R3 i. 2. 39.  
 unmeritable, devoid of merit. R3 ii. 7. 131.  
 unminded, unregarded. 1H4 iv. 3. 58.  
 unnecessary, useless. H5 iv. 2. 27.  
 unowned, without an owner. John iv. 2. 247.  
 upay, atone by payment for. 2H4 ii. 1. 120.  
 imperfect, imperfect. Son. 23. 1.  
 impossible, impossible. R2 ii. 2. 125.  
 unprovided, unprepared. H5 iv. 1. 174.  
 unprovident, improvident. Son. 10. 2.  
 uninspired, uninspired. H5 i. chor. 9.  
 unready, unready. 1H6 ii. 1. 39.  
 unrecalling, that recall. Luc. 983.  
 unresisted, irresistible. Luc. 282.

unregarded, unregarded. Son. 41. 2; 64. 10.  
 unrespective, heedless. R3 iv. 1. 29.  
 unrest, disquiet. R2 ii. 4. 22; R3 iv. 4. 29; Luc. 3725.  
 unreverend, disrespectful. John i. 1. 227.  
 unrevellent, irreverent. R2 ii. 1. 123.  
 unruly, rebellious. John iii. 4. 135.  
 unseasonable, out of season. Luc. 581.  
 unseasoned unseasonable. 2H4 iii. 1. 105.  
 unset, unplanted. Son. 16. 8.  
 unsorted, unsuitable. 1H4 ii. 3. 13.  
 unstanchd, unquenched. 3H6 ii. 6. 83.  
 unsteadfast, unsteady. 1H4 i. 3. 193.  
 unsure, render insecure. John ii. 1. 471; insecure, uncertain. John iii. 1. 283; 2H4 i. 3. 89.  
 untainted, unaccused. R3 iii. 6. 9.  
 unblemished. Son. 19. 11.  
 untaught, rude. 1H4 i. 3. 43.  
 untempering, unsoftening. H5 v. 2. 230.  
 unthrift, prodigal. R2 ii. 3. 122; Son. 9. 9; 13. 13.  
 unthrifty, good for nothing. R2 v. 3. 1.  
 untoward, unmannerly. John i. 1. 243.  
 untread, retrace. John v. 4. 52; V. & A. 908.  
 untrimmed, with loose hair, according to bridal custom. John iii. 1. 209.  
 untrue, untruly. Son. 72. 10.  
 untucked, dishevelled. Lov. Com. 31.  
 untutored, untaught, rude. 2H6 iii. 2. 213; 3H6 v. 5. 32.  
 unurgd, unsolicited. John v. 2. 10.  
 unvalued, invaluable. R3 i. 4. 27.  
 unvexed, untroubled. John ii. 1. 253.  
 unwares, unawares. 3H6 ii. 5. 62.  
 unwarily, unexpectedly. John v. 7. 63.  
 unwashed hands, with, immediately. 1H4 iii. 3. 191.  
 unwittingly, unknowingly. H8 iii. 2. 124.  
 unworthy, undeserved. R3 i. 2. 88.  
 unyoke, disjoin. John iii. 1. 241.  
 unyoked, uncurbed, licentious. 1H4 i. 2. 197.  
 up, used with intensive force. John iv. 3. 133; up in arms. 1H4 iii. 2. 120; 2H4 i. 1. 188.  
 up-locked, locked up. Son. 52. 2.  
 upon, on the side of. John i. 1. 34; on account of. John ii. 1. 597; at. H5 i. 1. 91; by. H5 iv. 1. 19; with. R3 iv. 2. 73.  
 up-pricked, pricked up. V. & A. 271.



**upright**, upward. 2H6 iii. 1. 365.  
**upswarmed**, raised in swarms.  
 2H4 iv. 2. 30.

**up-till**, against. Son. to Music 6. 10.  
**urchin-shouted**, with snout like  
 hedgehog's. V. & A. 1105.

**urging**, speaking of. R2 iii. 1. 4.

**urn**, grave. H5 i. 2. 228.

**use**, be accustomed. 3H6 iv. 5. 75;  
 interest. V. & A. 768; Son. 6. 5; 134.  
 10.

**use, make**, take advantage of & the  
 opportunity. H8 iii. 2. 421.

**used myself**, behaved. H8 iii. 1. 175.

**user**, possessor. Son. 9. 12.

**utis**, great fun. 2H4 ii. 4. 19.

**vacant**, empty. H8 v. 1. 126.

**vade**, fade. R2 i. 2. 20; &c.

**vail**, lower. 2H4 i. 1. 129; 1H6 v. 3.  
 25; V. & A. 314.

**vainly**, wrongly. 2H4 iv. 5. 237.

**vainness**, vanity. H5 v. chor. 20.

**valuation**, our, the estimate of  
 us. 2H4 iv. 1. 189.

**valued**, being considered. 1H4 iii.  
 2. 177; estimated. 3H6 v. 3. 14.

**values**, not, is not worth. H8 i. 1.  
 88.

**vantage**, advantage. John ii. 1.  
 550; &c.; superiority. 2H4 ii. 3. 53;  
 H5 iii. 6. 145; iv. 1. 285; opportuni-  
 ty. R3 iii. 5. 73.

**varlet**, knave. 2H4 v. 3. 12; ser-  
 vant. H5 ix. 2. 2.

**vassal**, servile. 1H4 iii. 2. 124.

**wast**, waste, desolate. John iv. 3.  
 152; R3 i. 4. 39.

**vastly**, desolately, like a waste.  
 Luc. 1740.

**vasty**, vast. 1H4 iii. 1. 53; H5 i.  
 chor. 12; ii. 2. 123.

**vaultages**, caverns. H5 ii. 4. 124.

**vaulty**, vaulted, arched. John iii.  
 4. 30; v. 2. 52.

**vaunt**, exult. R3 v. 3. 289; mount  
 upwards. Son. 15. 7.

**vaward**, vanguard. 2H4 i. 2. 178;  
 H5 iv. 3. 130.

**velvet-guard**, person who wears  
 velvet trimmings. 1H4 iii. 1. 259.

**venge**, avenge. R2 i. 2. 39; venge  
 my, avenge myself. H5 i. 2. 292.

**vengeful**, vindictive. Son. 99. 13.

**venom**, ventmed, poisonous. 3H6  
 ii. 2. 138; &c.

**vent**, opening. 2H4 Ind. 2.

**venture**, let us venture. 2H4 i. 1.  
 185; run the hazard of. H5 i. 2.  
 192.

**verge**, compass. R2 ii. 1. 102; 2H6  
 i. 4. 23; R3 iv. 1. 58.

**vexed**, disquieted. John iii. 1. 17.

**via**, let us on. 3H6 ii. 1. 182.

**vice**, grip. 2H4 ii. 1. 22; buffoon  
 in morality plays. 2H4 iii. 2. 329;  
 R3 iii. 1. 82.

**view**, what it can see. Son. 117. 4.

**vigil**, eve. H5 iv. 3. 45.

**villain**, countryman. Luc. 1338.

**villago**, base coward. 2H6 iv. 8.  
 46.

**viol**, guitar. R2 i. 3. 162.

**virginal**, of virgins. 2H6 v. 2. 52.

**virtue**, valour. 1H4 ii. 4. 120.

**virtue**, by that, by virtue of that  
 office. H8 v. 3. 50.

**virtuous**, essential. 2H4 iv. 5. 74.

**visitation**, visit. R3 iii. 7. 106; H8  
 i. 1. 179.

**visor-like**, like a mask. 3H6 A. 4.  
 116.

**vizard**, mask. 1H4 i. 2. 128; R3 iii.  
 2. 28.

**voice**, vote. H5 ii. 2. 113; R3 iii. 2.  
 53; H8 i. 2. 70; rumour. R3 iii. 2.  
 406.

**voice**, free, liberty, to express  
 opinion. H8 ii. 2. 93.

**void**, omit. H5 iii. 1. 52; quit. H5  
 iv. 7. 58; devoid. 2H6 iv. 7. 63.

**voiding lobby**, anteroom. 2H4 iv.  
 1. 61.

**Volquessen**, Vexin. John ii. 1. 527.

**voluntary**, volunteer. John ii. 1.  
 67.

**vouch**, testimony. H8 i. 1. 157.

**vowed**, sworn. 3H6 iii. 3. 50.

**vulgar**, common to all. John ii. 1.  
 387; common soldiers. R5 iv. 7. 76;  
 public. Son. 112. 2.

**vulgar heart**, heart of the people.  
 2H4 i. 3. 90.

**vulture**, ravenous. V. & A. 551.

**wafer-cakes**, i.e. as easily broken.  
 H5 ii. 3. 51.

**waft**, conveyed. John ii. 1. 73;  
 carry. 2H6 iv. 1. 114; 3H6 iii. 3. 233.

**wag**, move. R3 iii. 5. 7.

**wage**, hazard. 1H4 iv. 4. 20.

**wail**, bewail. R2 iii. 2. 172; R3 ii. 2.  
 11.

**waiting**, i.e. for preferment. 1H4  
 i. 2. 70.

**wait upon**, attend. John v. 7. 73.

**wake**, waking. 1H4 iii. 1. 219; keep  
 late revels. Son. 61. 13.

**walks**, wildly, goes to confusion.  
 John iv. 2. 128.

**wall-eyed**, fierce-eyed. John iv. 3.  
 49.

**wane**, decline. 2H6 iv. 10. 20; 3H6  
 iv. 7. 4.

**want**, lack. John iv. 1. 99; R3 v. 3.  
 13.

**want, his present**, present want  
 of him. 1H4 iv. 4. 41.

**wanting**, unskilled in. R2 iii. 3. 179.

**warton**, effeminate boy. John v.  
 1. 70; luxurious. 1H4 iii. 1. 214;  
 2H4 i. 1. 148; play. V. & A. 106.

**wantonly**, playfully, sportively.  
 Son. 54. 7.

**wantonness**, sportiveness. John  
 iv. 1. 16.

**wanton, play the**, dally, trifle.  
 R2 iii. 3. 164.

**want to**, for the want of. Luc. 389.

**ward**, posture of defence. 1H4 i. 2.

- 190; ii. 4. 197; custody. 2H6 v. 1. 112; guard. R. v. 3. 235; bolt. Luc. 303.
- warbler**, truncheon. R2 i. 3. 118; 2H4 iv. 1. 123.
- warm**, ease-loving. 1H4 iv. 2. 17.
- warn**, summon. John ii. 1. 201; R3 i. 3. 39.
- war-proof**, valour proved in war. H5 iii. 1. 18.
- was**, **was**, security. 1H3 i. 3. 13; Son. 150. 7.
- was**, had become. R2 i. 3. 274.
- Washford**, Wexford. 1H6 iv. 7. 63.
- was**, stung, irritable. 1H4 i. 3. 236.
- was**, candle, festal candle. 2H4 i. 2. 160.
- waste**, damage. R2 ii. 1. 103.
- waste of shame**, shameful waste. Son. 129. 1.
- wasteful**, devastating. Son. 55. 5.
- was**, of time, things spoiled by Time. Son. 12. 10.
- was** too far, exceeded proper bounds. H8 iii. 1. 64.
- Wat**, name for hare. V. & A. 697.
- watch**, keep awake. R2 ii. 1. 77; V. & A. 584; stated interval of time. R2 v. 6. 53; candle which marked the hours. R3 v. 3. 63; watchman. Pas. P. 4. 14.
- watch-case**, sentry-box. 2H4 iii. 1. 17.
- watchful fires**, watchfires. H5 iv. ch. 23.
- watch of wood**, divided and marked only by wood. Luc. 128.
- water-colours**, weak fellows. 1H4 v. 2. 80.
- water-flowing**, flowing like water. 3H6 iv. 8. 43.
- water-fall**, secondary rainbow. Luc. 1583.
- watering**, drinking. 1H4 ii. 4. 16.
- water-work**, painting in water-colours. 2H4 ii. 1. 146.
- waterly moon**, i.e. as the tides are. R3 ii. 2. 69.
- waxen**, soft, penetrable. R2 i. 3. 75; easily effaced, perishable. H5 i. 2. 232.
- way**, best course. R3 i. 1. 78; course of life, conduct. H8 i. 3. 61; iii. 1. 156; way of thinking. H8 v. 1. 28.
- weal**, commonwealth. John iv. 2. 65; welfare. John iv. 2. 66.
- wean**, alienate. 3H6 iv. 2. 17.
- wear**, carry. 1H4 i. 2. 162; wear out. 1H4 i. 4. 410; V. & A. 506.
- wear out**, bring to an end. John ii. 1. 110.
- weather**, storm. John iv. 2. 102.
- weed**, garment. Luc. 196; Son. 2. 4.
- ween**, suppose, think. 1H6 ii. 5. 88; H3 v. 1. 136.
- weeping-ripe**, ready to weep. 3H6 i. 2. 172.
- weigh**, value. H8 v. 1. 125.
- weigh out**, out weigh. H8 iii. 1. 87.
- welking sky**. R3 v. 3. 342.
- well**, rightly. 1H4 iv. 3. 94; spring of water. Son. 154. 2; Son. to Music 3. 37.
- well-beseeming**, well-becoming. 1H4 i. 1. 14.
- well-breathed**, well-exercised. V. & A. 678.
- well-given**, well disposed. 2H6 iii. 1. 72.
- well-graced**, graceful. R2 v. 2. 24.
- Welsh hook**, kind of battle-axe. 1H4 ii. 4. 343.
- what**, exclamation of impatience. John i. 1. 245; 1H4 ii. 1. 3; 2H4 v. 1. 2; whatever. R2 ii. 1. 243; 2H6 iii. 1. 132; who. 2H4 i. 1. 2; 2H6 iii. 1. 107.
- what the good-year**, a mild oath. 2H4 ii. 4. 60.
- what though**, what matters it? John i. 1. 169; H5 ii. 1. 9.
- Whetson**, Whitsun. 2H4 ii. 1. 80.
- whale**, pimple. H5 iii. 6. 103.
- when?** exclamation of impatience. R2 i. 1. 162; 3H6 v. 1. 49.
- whenas**, when. V. & A. 999; Son. 49. 3; Son. to Music 4. 1.
- when, canst tell?** expression of contempt. 1H4 ii. 1. 41.
- where**, whereas. R2 iii. 2. 185; &c.; to where. Son. 44. 4.
- whereas**, where. 2H6 i. 2. 58.
- wherefore**, for which. H5 v. 2. 1.
- wheresome'er**, wheresoever. H5 ii. 3. 7.
- whereupon**, wherefore. 1H4 iv. 2. 42.
- whether**, which of the two. V. & A. 304.
- which**, who. 1H4 iii. 1. 46.
- whiffer**, one who cleared the way for a procession. H5 v. chor. 12.
- while**, until. R2 i. 3. 122; present time. R3 ii. 3. 8.
- while as**, while. 2H6 i. 1. 523.
- whipping-cheer**, whipping fare. 2H4 v. 4. 5.
- whit**, jot. R2 ii. 1. 103; R3 iii. 4. 79.
- white-livered**, cowardly. H5 iii. 2. 33; R3 iv. 4. 465.
- whither**, whithersoever. 1H4 v. 3. 22.
- who**, which. 2H4 v. 2. 123.
- whoop**, shout. H5 ii. 2. 108.
- whoreson**, bastard. 2H4 i. 2. 14; &c.
- wight**, person, man. H5 ii. 1. 62.
- wild**, weald. 1H4 ii. 1. 58.
- wildly**, disorderly. John iv. 2. 128.
- wilful blame**, deliberately incurring blame. 1H4 iii. 1. 176.
- wilful-opposite**, wilfully obstinate. John v. 2. 124.
- will**, desire. H5 iii. 77; &c.
- Winchester goose**, cant name for a diseased person. 1H6 i. 3. 53.
- Wincoot**, Wilmeccote near Stratford. 2H4 v. 1. 39.
- wind**, turn in this or that direc-

# 1214 GLOSSARY TO HISTORIES AND POEMS

tion. 1H4 iv. 1. 100; scent. 3H6 iii. 2. 14.  
 windot, eyelids. R3 v. 3. 117.  
 wind up, R4 i. John v. 2. 72.  
 wink, close the eyes. 2H4 i. 3. 33; &c.  
 winked, connived. H5 ii. 2. 55.  
 winking, closed. John ii. 1. 215.  
 wink with fulness, close as after a full meal. S. n. 56. 6.  
 wipe, brand, mark of disgrace. Luc. 537.  
 wise, manner. Son. to Music 3. 33.  
 wishful, longing. 3H6 iii. 1. 14.  
 wistly, wistfully. R2 v. 4. 7; V. & A. 343; Luc. 1355.  
 wit, wisdom, intelligence. 3H6 iv. 7. 61; H3 iii. 1. 71; Luc. 153.  
 witch, bewitch. 1H4 iv. 1. 110; 2H6 iii. 2. 116; 3H6 iii. 2. 150.  
 with, by. John ii. 1. 567; &c.  
 withal, with. 1H4 ii. 4. 528; &c.  
 withhold, restrain. V. & A. 612.  
 within a ken, in sight. 2H4 iv. 1. 151.  
 without, from out. R2 v. 2. 56.  
 witnessed usurpation, traces of usurpation. 2H4 i. 1. 63.  
 wittily, ingeniously. V. & A. 471.  
 witting, knowing. 1H6 ii. 5. 16.  
 wittingly, intentionally. 3H6 ii. 2. 8.  
 wit, to, that is to say. H5 i. 2. 50.  
 witty, intelligent. 3H6 i. 2. 48; cunning. R3 iv. 2. 42.  
 woe, sorrowful. 2H6 iii. 2. 73; Son. 71. 8.  
 woe the while, alas. H5 iv. 7. 74.  
 woman-queller, murderer of women. 2H4 ii. 1. 54.  
 wonby, hollow. H5 ii. 4. 124.  
 wonder, wonder at. Luc. 1596.  
 wont, be accustomed. 1H6 i. 4. 10.  
 wood, mad. V. & A. 740.  
 wooden thing, difficult business. 1H6 v. 3. 89.  
 woodman, huntsman. Luc. 580.  
 woodmonger, dealer in wood. H5 v. 1. 67.  
 word, motto. H5 ii. 3. 49.  
 word, at a, with a, briefly, in short. 1H4 ii. 4. 258; 2H4 iii. 2. 307.  
 work, outwork. H8 v. 4. 57.  
 working, operation of the mind. 2H4 iv. 2. 22; action. 2H4 v. 2. 90.  
 world, soul. Lov. Com. 7.  
 worm, serpent. 2H6 iii. 2. 263; V. & A. 838.  
 worn, worn-out. 2H6 ii. 4. 69.  
 worship, dignity, honour. John iv. 3. 72; &c.  
 worth, excellence. R2 i. 1. 107; stellar influence. Son. 116. 8.  
 worthless, unworthy. 1H6 iv. 4. 21.

worthy, deserved. R2 v. 1. 88; worthy of. 2H6 iii. 1. 68.  
 wot, know. H5 iv. 2. 287; &c.  
 wot, wilt thou. 2H4 ii. 1. 58.  
 would, would have. H5 ii. chor. 18; desire. H5 v. 2. 68; 2H6 ii. 3. 21; wouldst. H5 v. 2. 169.  
 wrack, ruin. 2H6 i. 3. 125; V. & A. 558.  
 wrackful, destructive. Son. 65. 6.  
 wrangler, adversary. H5 i. 2. 204.  
 wrapped, involved. Luc. 456.  
 wreaked, revenged. V. & A. 1002.  
 wreathed twined. V. & A. 879.  
 wrest, take by violence. John iv. 3. 154; take wrongfully. 2H6 iii. 1. 112; twist. 2H6 iii. 1. 186.  
 wroth, hateful. R3 v. 2. 7; Luc. 999.  
 wringing, torture. H5 iv. 1. 241.  
 writ, described himself as. 2H4 i. 2. 26; scripture. 2H6 i. 3. 55; R3 i. 3. 337.  
 writhled, wrickled. 1H6 ii. 3. 72.  
 writ on, predicted. V. & A. 509.  
 wrongs, wrong-doings. R3 v. 1. 19.  
 wrought t's mure, worn away the wall. 2H4 iv. 4. 119.  
 wrought with, effected a connexion with. R2 iv. 1. 4.  
 wrung in the withers, pressed in the shoulders. 1H4 ii. 1. 7.  
 y-clad; clad. 2H6 i. 1. 83.  
 yea-forsooth know, one who swears only mild oaths. 2H4 i. 2. 33.  
 yearn, grieve. R2 v. 5. 76; H5 ii. 3. 3; iv. 3. 26.  
 yedward, Edward. 1H4 i. 2. 294.  
 yeoman, sheriff's officer. 2H4 ii. 1. 3.  
 jerk, jerk. H5 iv. 7. 79.  
 yet, as yet. John ii. 1. 361; even now. 1H4 i. 3. 77; still. 2H4 i. 82; even then. 2H6 ii. 4. 65.  
 yield, admit. 1H6 ii. 4. 42.  
 yoke-fellow, companion. H5 ii. 3. 54; iv. 6. 9.  
 yon, yonder. John iii. 3. 60.  
 yond, yonder. R2 iii. 3. 22.  
 you, in your interests. John iii. 4. 146; yourself. H8 i. 4. 20.  
 young, recent. H8 iii. 2. 47.  
 youngly, in youth. Son. 11. 3.  
 younger, younger. 1H4 ii. 3. 83; 3H6 ii. 1. 24.  
 zeal, ardour, earnestness. John ii. 3. 55; 1H4 iv. 3. 63.  
 zeal of God, zeal for God. 2H4 iv. 2. 2.  
 zounds, an imprecation. John ii. 1. 406.

